

#### **Project Editor**

Andres Marti

#### **Project Administrator**

Brady Golden

#### **Consulting Editors**

Christian Aviles-Scott, Elizabeth DeCarli, Kendra Lockman, Ladie Malek

#### **Mathematics Reviewers**

Larry Copes, Inner Grove Heights, Minnesota

Michael de Villiers, Ph.D., University of Durban, Westville, Pinetown, South Africa

David Rasmussen, Neil's Harbour, Nova Scotia

Abby Tanenbaum, Naperville, Illinois

#### **Teacher Reviewers**

Rich Crandall, Skyline High School, Oakland, California Genie Dunn, Miami Killian Senior High School, Miami, Florida

Judy Hicks, Ralston Valley High School, Arvada, Colorado Susan May, University of Texas, Austin, Texas Steve Phelps, Madeira High School, Cincinnati, Ohio

Adella Pietrzyk, Center Line High School, Center Line, Michigan

#### **Multicultural and Equity Reviewers**

David Keiser, Montclair State University, Upper Montclair, New Jersey

Swapna Mukhopadhyay, Ph.D., San Diego State University, San Diego, California

#### **Accuracy Checkers**

Dudley Brooks, Marcia Ellen Olmstead

#### **Editorial Production Manager**

Christine Osborne

#### Print Production Supervisor

Ann Rothenbuhler

#### **Production Editor**

Angela Chen

#### **Production Coordinator**

Jennifer Young

#### Copyeditor

Jill Pellarin

#### **Cover Designers**

Jill Kongabel, Marilyn Perry, Jensen Barnes

#### **Text Designer**

Marilyn Perry

#### Illustrators

Juan Alvarez, Andy Levine, Claudia Newell, Bill Pasini, William Rieser, Sue Todd, Rose Zgodzinski

#### **Compositor and Technical Art**

Interactive Composition Corporation

#### Printer

Von Hoffmann Corp.

#### **Text book Product Manager**

James Rvan

#### **Executive Editor**

Casey FitzSimons

#### **Publisher**

Steven Rasmussen

© 2008 by Michael Serra. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

®The Geometer's Sketchpad, Dynamic Geometry, and Key Curriculum Press are registered trademarks of Key Curriculum Press. TMThe Discovering Mathematics logo and Sketchpad are trademarks of Key Curriculum Press.

<sup>TM</sup>Fathom Dynamic Data is a trademark of KCP Technologies.

All other trademarks are held by their respective owners.

Key Curriculum Press 1150 65th Street Emeryville, CA 94608 editorial@keypress.com www.keypress.com

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 11 10 09 08 07

ISBN 978-1-55953-882-4

### **Acknowledgments**

First, to all the teachers who have used *Discovering Geometry*, a sincere thank you for your wonderful support and encouragement. I wish to thank my always delightful and ever-so-patient students for their insight, humor, and hard work. I also wish to thank the many students across the country who have written to me with their kind words, comments, and suggestions. And thanks to the marketing and sales staff at Key Curriculum Press for their successful efforts in bringing the first three editions into so many classrooms.

There are three people who have added their touch to earlier editions of *Discovering Geometry*: Steve Rasmussen was editor on the first edition; Dan Bennett was editor on the second edition; and Ladie Malek was editor on the third edition. Thank you, Steve, Dan, and Ladie.

While working on this fourth edition of *Discovering Geometry*, I was fortunate to have the assistance of Andres Marti as project editor. Thank you, Andres, for your commitment to the pedagogy in *Discovering Geometry*, your cooperative temperament in the editorial process, and your patience with me. To the editorial and production staff and managers at Key, the field testers, the advisors, the consultants, and the reviewers Rich Crandall, Genie Dunn, Judy Hicks, Susan May, Steve Phelps, and Adella Pietrzyk, I am grateful for your quality work.

Michael Serra

© 2008 Key Curriculum Press iii

#### A Note from the Publisher

You probably know from your experience in school that you learn best when you understand the concepts and are actively engaged in the learning process. Studies confirm that understanding concepts and getting involved are important in every subject at every grade level. This is the foundation that *Discovering Geometry* is built on, and investigations are at its heart.

If you are a student, you'll discover many important mathematical principles by working together with other students in supportive, small groups doing investigations. First you'll explore concepts visually, looking for patterns, and then you'll learn to explain *why* these patterns exist. This approach is both challenging and fun, and will make you believe in your ability to succeed at mathematics. Rather than memorizing theorems and formulas, you'll learn how to build what you need from what you already know. You'll find that *Discovering Geometry* is easy to follow, and the design includes many interesting photographs and illustrations that connect geometry with art, architecture, science, history, culture, and recreation.

If you are a parent, you'll appreciate that *Discovering Geometry* continues to be the leader in providing a successful, discovery-based approach. You'll know that your student is actively engaged in the process of learning and constructing his or her own understanding of concepts, developing insight, confidence, and increasingly sophisticated mathematical understanding along the way. The effectiveness of *Discovering Geometry*'s approach has been substantiated in thousands of classrooms by millions of students, and has changed the way geometry is taught today. If you go to www.keymath.com/DG, you'll find Dynamic Geometry Explorations that explore important geometry concepts interactively, condensed lessons for when your student is absent, downloadable worksheets to help your student practice his or her skills, and resources designed especially for you as a parent.

If you are a teacher, you'll see that this new edition balances the investigative approach that is at the heart of the *Discovering Mathematics* series with an emphasis on developing students' ability to reason deductively. You'll be supported by a deliberate pedagogy based on educational research that carefully develops your students' ability to make sound logical arguments. *Discovering Geometry* introduces students to reasoning strategies that help them explain their discoveries and enable them to justify their conjectures through proof. There are also more opportunities to review algebra, more ways to use technology, especially The Geometer's Sketchpad®, and there is an enhanced online textbook and other computer-based resources. If you are familiar with earlier editions of *Discovering Geometry*, you'll still find the original and hallmark features, plus improvements based on feedback from many of your colleagues in geometry classrooms.

If you are a student, we believe that as you work through this course you'll gain knowledge for a lifetime. If you are a parent, we believe you'll enjoy watching your student develop mathematical power. If you are a teacher, we believe you'll find that *Discovering Geometry* makes a significant positive impact in your classroom. Whether you are learning, guiding, or teaching, we wish you success and urge you to continue your involvement and interest in mathematics.

Steve Rasmussen, President Key Curriculum Press

# **Contents**

A	A Note to Students from the Author	xiv
CHAPTER	Geometric Art	1
	<ul> <li>0.1 Geometry in Nature and in Art</li> <li>0.2 Line Designs</li> <li>0.3 Circle Designs</li> <li>0.4 Op Art</li> <li>0.5 Knot Designs</li></ul>	2 7 10 13 16 19 20 23 24 26

CHAPTER	Introducing Geometry	27)
	1.1 Building Blocks of Geometry	28
	Investigation: Mathematical Models	32
	Project: Spiral Designs	35
	Using Your Algebra Skills 1: Midpoint	36
	1.2 Poolroom Math	38
	Investigation: Virtual Pool	41
_	1.3 What's a Widget?	47
	Investigation: Defining Angles	49
	1.4 Polygons	54
	Investigation: Special Polygons	56
	1.5 Triangles	59
	Investigation: Triangles	60
	1.6 Special Quadrilaterals	64
	Investigation: Special Quadrilaterals	64
	Project: Drawing the Impossible	68
7	1.7 Circles	69
	Investigation: Defining Circle Terms	70
	1.8 Space Geometry	75
-	Investigation: Space Geometry	77
	1.9 A Picture Is Worth a Thousand Words	81
	Exploration: Geometric Probability I	88
	Activity: Chances Are	88
	Chapter 1 Review	90
	Assessing What You've Learned	94

© 2008 Key Curriculum Press

CHAPTER	Reaso	ning in Geometry	95
		Inductive Reasoning	96
		Investigation: Shape Shifters	98
		Finding the <i>n</i> th Term	102
		Investigation: Finding the Rule	102
		Project: Best-Fit Lines	107
		Mathematical Modeling	108
		Investigation: Party Handshakes	108
		<b>Deductive Reasoning</b>	114
		Investigation: Overlapping Segments	116
	ST 1	oration: The Seven Bridges of Königsberg	120
		Activity: Traveling Networks	120
		Angle Relationships	122
		Investigation 1: The Linear Pair Conjecture	122
	80	Investigation 2: Vertical Angles Conjecture	123
			128
		Investigation 1: Which Angles Are Congruent?	128
		Investigation 2: Is the Converse True?	130
	3	Project: Line Designs	134
	Using	g Your Algebra Skills 2: Slope	135
	•	oration: Patterns in Fractals	137
	_	Activity: The Sierpin´ski Triangle	138
	Chap	oter 2 Review	140
	-	Assessing What You've Learned	142
CHAPTER		Assessing What You've Learned  Tools of Geometry	142 <b>143</b> )
CHAPTER	Using <sup>1</sup>	Tools of Geometry	
CHAPTER	Using 3.1		143
CHAPTER 3	Using 3.1	Tools of Geometry  Duplicating Segments and Angles	<b>143</b>
CHAPTER 3	Using 3.1	Tools of Geometry  Duplicating Segments and Angles Investigation 1: Duplicating a Segment	143 144 145
CHAPTER 3	3.1 3.2	Tools of Geometry  Duplicating Segments and Angles Investigation 1: Duplicating a Segment Investigation 2: Duplicating an Angle	143 144 145 146
CHAPTER  3	3.1 3.2	Tools of Geometry  Duplicating Segments and Angles Investigation 1: Duplicating a Segment Investigation 2: Duplicating an Angle  Constructing Perpendicular Bisectors	144 145 146 149
CHAPTER  3	3.1 3.2	Tools of Geometry  Duplicating Segments and Angles Investigation 1: Duplicating a Segment Investigation 2: Duplicating an Angle  Constructing Perpendicular Bisectors Investigation 1: Finding the Right Bisector Investigation 2: Constructing the Perpendicular Bisector	144 145 146 149 149
CHAPTER  3	3.1 3.2 3.3	Tools of Geometry  Duplicating Segments and Angles Investigation 1: Duplicating a Segment Investigation 2: Duplicating an Angle  Constructing Perpendicular Bisectors Investigation 1: Finding the Right Bisector Investigation 2: Constructing the Perpendicular Bisector	144 145 146 149 149 150
CHAPTER 3	3.1 3.2 3.3	Tools of Geometry  Duplicating Segments and Angles Investigation 1: Duplicating a Segment Investigation 2: Duplicating an Angle  Constructing Perpendicular Bisectors Investigation 1: Finding the Right Bisector Investigation 2: Constructing the Perpendicular Bisector  Constructing Perpendiculars to a Line Investigation 1: Finding the Right Line Investigation 2: Patty-Paper Perpendiculars	144 145 146 149 149 150 154
CHAPTER  3	3.1 3.2 3.3	Tools of Geometry  Duplicating Segments and Angles Investigation 1: Duplicating a Segment Investigation 2: Duplicating an Angle  Constructing Perpendicular Bisectors Investigation 1: Finding the Right Bisector Investigation 2: Constructing the Perpendicular Bisector  Constructing Perpendiculars to a Line Investigation 1: Finding the Right Line	144 145 146 149 149 150 154
CHAPTER  3	3.1 3.2 3.3	Tools of Geometry  Duplicating Segments and Angles Investigation 1: Duplicating a Segment Investigation 2: Duplicating an Angle  Constructing Perpendicular Bisectors Investigation 1: Finding the Right Bisector Investigation 2: Constructing the Perpendicular Bisector  Constructing Perpendiculars to a Line Investigation 1: Finding the Right Line Investigation 2: Patty-Paper Perpendiculars Project: Constructing a Tile Design  Constructing Angle Bisectors	144 145 146 149 149 150 154 155 158 159
CHAPTER  3	3.1 3.2 3.3	Tools of Geometry  Duplicating Segments and Angles Investigation 1: Duplicating a Segment Investigation 2: Duplicating an Angle  Constructing Perpendicular Bisectors Investigation 1: Finding the Right Bisector Investigation 2: Constructing the Perpendicular Bisector  Constructing Perpendiculars to a Line Investigation 1: Finding the Right Line Investigation 2: Patty-Paper Perpendiculars Project: Constructing a Tile Design  Constructing Angle Bisectors Investigation 1: Angle Bisecting by Folding	144 145 146 149 149 150 154 155 158 159 159
CHAPTER  3	3.1 3.2 3.3 3.4	Tools of Geometry  Duplicating Segments and Angles Investigation 1: Duplicating a Segment Investigation 2: Duplicating an Angle  Constructing Perpendicular Bisectors Investigation 1: Finding the Right Bisector Investigation 2: Constructing the Perpendicular Bisector  Constructing Perpendiculars to a Line Investigation 1: Finding the Right Line Investigation 2: Patty-Paper Perpendiculars Project: Constructing a Tile Design  Constructing Angle Bisectors Investigation 1: Angle Bisecting by Folding Investigation 2: Angle Bisecting with Compass	144 145 146 149 149 150 154 155 158 159 160
CHAPTER 3	3.1 3.2 3.3 3.4 3.5	Tools of Geometry  Duplicating Segments and Angles Investigation 1: Duplicating a Segment Investigation 2: Duplicating an Angle  Constructing Perpendicular Bisectors Investigation 1: Finding the Right Bisector Investigation 2: Constructing the Perpendicular Bisector  Constructing Perpendiculars to a Line Investigation 1: Finding the Right Line Investigation 2: Patty-Paper Perpendiculars Project: Constructing a Tile Design  Constructing Angle Bisectors Investigation 1: Angle Bisecting by Folding Investigation 2: Angle Bisecting with Compass  Constructing Parallel Lines	144 145 146 149 149 150 154 155 158 159 160 163
CHAPTER 3	3.1 3.2 3.3 3.4 3.5	Tools of Geometry  Duplicating Segments and Angles Investigation 1: Duplicating a Segment Investigation 2: Duplicating an Angle  Constructing Perpendicular Bisectors Investigation 1: Finding the Right Bisector Investigation 2: Constructing the Perpendicular Bisector  Constructing Perpendiculars to a Line Investigation 1: Finding the Right Line Investigation 2: Patty-Paper Perpendiculars Project: Constructing a Tile Design  Constructing Angle Bisectors Investigation 1: Angle Bisecting by Folding Investigation 2: Angle Bisecting with Compass  Constructing Parallel Lines Investigation: Constructing Parallel Lines by Folding	144 145 146 149 149 150 154 155 158 159 160
CHAPTER 3	3.1 3.2 3.3 3.4 3.5 Using	Tools of Geometry  Duplicating Segments and Angles Investigation 1: Duplicating a Segment Investigation 2: Duplicating an Angle  Constructing Perpendicular Bisectors Investigation 1: Finding the Right Bisector Investigation 2: Constructing the Perpendicular Bisector  Constructing Perpendiculars to a Line Investigation 1: Finding the Right Line Investigation 2: Patty-Paper Perpendiculars Project: Constructing a Tile Design  Constructing Angle Bisectors Investigation 1: Angle Bisecting by Folding Investigation 2: Angle Bisecting with Compass  Constructing Parallel Lines Investigation: Constructing Parallel Lines by Folding Investigation: Constructing Parallel Lines by Folding	144 145 146 149 149 150 154 155 158 159 160 163 163
CHAPTER 3	3.1 3.2 3.3 3.4 3.5 Using	Tools of Geometry  Duplicating Segments and Angles Investigation 1: Duplicating a Segment Investigation 2: Duplicating an Angle  Constructing Perpendicular Bisectors Investigation 1: Finding the Right Bisector Investigation 2: Constructing the Perpendicular Bisector  Constructing Perpendiculars to a Line Investigation 1: Finding the Right Line Investigation 2: Patty-Paper Perpendiculars Project: Constructing a Tile Design  Constructing Angle Bisectors Investigation 1: Angle Bisecting by Folding Investigation 2: Angle Bisecting with Compass  Constructing Parallel Lines Investigation: Constructing Parallel Lines by Folding g Your Algebra Skills 3: Slopes of Parallel and Perpendicular Lines	144 145 146 149 149 150 154 155 158 159 160 163 163
CHAPTER 3	3.1 3.2 3.3 3.4 3.5 Using	Tools of Geometry  Duplicating Segments and Angles Investigation 1: Duplicating a Segment Investigation 2: Duplicating an Angle  Constructing Perpendicular Bisectors Investigation 1: Finding the Right Bisector Investigation 2: Constructing the Perpendicular Bisector  Constructing Perpendiculars to a Line Investigation 1: Finding the Right Line Investigation 2: Patty-Paper Perpendiculars Project: Constructing a Tile Design  Constructing Angle Bisectors Investigation 1: Angle Bisecting by Folding Investigation 2: Angle Bisecting with Compass  Constructing Parallel Lines Investigation: Constructing Parallel Lines by Folding g Your Algebra Skills 3: Slopes of Parallel and Perpendicular Lines Construction Problems	144 145 146 149 149 150 154 155 158 159 160 163 163
CHAPTER 3	3.1 3.2 3.3 3.4 3.5 Using 3.6 Explo	Tools of Geometry  Duplicating Segments and Angles Investigation 1: Duplicating a Segment Investigation 2: Duplicating an Angle  Constructing Perpendicular Bisectors Investigation 1: Finding the Right Bisector Investigation 2: Constructing the Perpendicular Bisector  Constructing Perpendiculars to a Line Investigation 1: Finding the Right Line Investigation 2: Patty-Paper Perpendiculars Project: Constructing a Tile Design  Constructing Angle Bisectors Investigation 1: Angle Bisecting by Folding Investigation 2: Angle Bisecting with Compass  Constructing Parallel Lines Investigation: Constructing Parallel Lines by Folding g Your Algebra Skills 3: Slopes of Parallel and Perpendicular Lines	144 145 146 149 149 150 154 155 158 159 160 163 163

vi © 2008 Key Curriculum Press



2.5		170
3.7	Constructing Points of Concurrency	178
	Investigation 1: Concurrence	178
	Investigation 2: Circumcenter	179
	Investigation 3: Incenter	180
3.8	The Centroid	185
	Investigation 1: Are Medians Concurrent?	185
	Investigation 2: Balancing Act	186
Exp	loration: The Euler Line	191
	Activity: Three Out of Four	191
	Project: Is There More to the Orthocenter?	192
Cha	pter 3 Review	193
	Mixed Review	196
	Assessing What You've Learned	198

CHAPTER 4



Disco	vering and Proving Triangle Properties	199
4.1	Triangle Sum Conjecture	200
	Investigation: The Triangle Sum	200
4.2	Properties of Isosceles Triangles	206
	Investigation 1: Base Angles in an Isosceles Triangle	207
	Investigation 2: Is the Converse True?	208
Usiı	ng Your Algebra Skills 4: Solving Equations	212
4.3	Triangle Inequalities	215
	Investigation 1: What Is the Shortest Path from A to B?	216
	Investigation 2: Where Are the Largest and Smallest Angles?	217
	Investigation 3: Exterior Angles of a Triangle	217
	Project: Random Triangles	220
4.4	Are There Congruence Shortcuts?	221
	Investigation 1: Is SSS a Congruence Shortcut?	222
	Investigation 2: Is SAS a Congruence Shortcut?	223
	Investigation 3: Is SSA a Congruence Shortcut?	223
4.5	Are There Other Congruence Shortcuts?	227
	Investigation 1: Is ASA a Congruence Shortcut?	227
	Investigation 2: Is SAA a Congruence Shortcut?	228
	Investigation 3: Is AAA a Congruence Shortcut?	228
4.6	Corresponding Parts of Congruent Triangles	232
	Project: Polya's Problem	236
4.7	Flowchart Thinking	237
4.8	Proving Special Triangle Conjectures	243
	Investigation: The Symmetry Line in an Isosceles Triangle	244
Exp	loration: Napoleon's Theorem	249
	Activity: Napoleon Triangles	249
	Project: Lines and Isosceles Triangles	250
Cha	pter 4 Review	251
	Take Another Look	255
	Assessing What You've Learned	256

© 2008 Key Curriculum Press vii

CHAPTER	Disco	vering and Proving Polygon Properties	257
	5.1	Polygon Sum Conjecture	258
		Investigation: Is There a Polygon Sum Formula?	258
	5.2	Exterior Angles of a Polygon	262
		Investigation: Is There an Exterior Angle Sum?	262
	Exp	oloration: Star Polygons	266
		Activity: Exploring Star Polygons	266
	5.3	Kite and Trapezoid Properties	268
5.5		Investigation 1: What Are Some Properties of Kites?	268
		Investigation 2: What Are Some Properties of Trapezoids?	270
	5.4	Properties of Midsegments	275
		Investigation 1: Triangle Midsegment Properties	275
N X		Investigation 2: Trapezoid Midsegment Properties	276
THE STATE OF THE S		Project: Building an Arch	280
	5.5	Properties of Parallelograms	281
		Investigation: Four Parallelogram Properties	281
		Project: Drawing Regular Polygons	286
	Usi	ng Your Algebra Skills 5: Writing Linear Equations	287
		Properties of Special Parallelograms	291
		Investigation 1: What Can You Draw with the	
		Double-Edged Straightedge?	291
		Investigation 2: Do Rhombus Diagonals Have	
		Special Properties?	292
		Investigation 3: Do Rectangle Diagonals Have	
		Special Properties?	293
	5.7	Proving Quadrilateral Properties	298
		Investigation: Finding the Square Route	300
		Project: Japanese Puzzle Quilts	303
	Cha	pter 5 Review	304
		Take Another Look	307
		Assessing What You've Learned	308
CHAPTER	Disco	vering and Proving Circle Properties	309
	6.1	Tangent Properties	310
		Investigation 1: Going Off on a Tangent	311
		Investigation 2: Tangent Segments	312
	6.2	Chord Properties	317
		Investigation 1: Defining Angles in a Circle	317
		Investigation 2: Chords and Their Central Angles	318
		Investigation 3: Chords and the Center of the Circle	319
		Investigation 4: Perpendicular Bisector of a Chord	319
	6.3	Arcs and Angles	324
		Investigation 1: Inscribed Angle Properties	324
		Investigation 2: Inscribed Angles Intercepting the Same Arc	325

viii © 2008 Key Curriculum Press



CHAPTER

		Investigation 3: Angles Inscribed in a Semicircle	325
		Investigation 4: Cyclic Quadrilaterals	326
		Investigation 5: Arcs by Parallel Lines	326
	6.4	<b>Proving Circle Conjectures</b>	330
	6.5	The Circumference/Diameter Ratio	335
		Investigation: A Taste of Pi	336
		Project: Needle Toss	340
	6.6	Around the World	341
	Usin	g Your Algebra Skills 6: Solving Systems of Linear Equations	345
	<b>6.7</b>	Arc Length	349
		Investigation: Finding the Arcs	350
		Project: Racetrack Geometry	354
	Expl	loration: Intersecting Lines Through a Circle	355
		Activity 1: Exploring Secants and Chords	355
		Activity 2: Exploring Tangents	357
	Cha	pter 6 Review	359
		Mixed Review	362
		Take Another Look	365
		Assessing What You've Learned	366
Г	rans	formations and Tessellations	36
			368
	7.1	Transformations and Symmetry  Investigation The Pagic Property of a Reflection	
	7.3	Investigation: The Basic Property of a Reflection	370 376
	7.2	Properties of Isometries  Investigation 1: Transformations on a Coordinate Plans	
		Investigation 1: Transformations on a Coordinate Plane	377
	<b>7</b> 2	Investigation 2: Finding a Minimal Path	377 383
	7.3	Compositions of Transformations	
		Investigation 1: Reflections across Two Parallel Lines	384
	<b>-</b> 4	Investigation 2: Reflections across Two Intersecting Lines	385
	7.4	Tessellations with Regular Polygons	389
	7 -	Investigation: The Semiregular Tessellations	390 394
	7.5	Tessellations with Nonregular Polygons  Investigation 1: Do All Trippeles Tessellate?	394
		Investigation 1: Do All Triangles Tessellate?	394
		Investigation 2: Do All Quadrilaterals Tessellate? Project: Penrose Tilings	393
	76	Tessellations Using Only Translations	399
	7.6	Project: Kaleidoscopes	402
	77		402
	7.7	Tessellations That Use Rotations	403
	cxp	loration: Tessellating with the Conway Criterion Activity: Conway Hexagons	408
	7.8	Tessellations That Use Glide Reflections	410
			413
		g Your Algebra Skills 7: Finding Points of Concurrency	416
	Cna <sub>j</sub>	pter 7 Review Take Another Look	416

Assessing What You've Learned

© 2008 Key Curriculum Press

420

CHAPTER	Area		421
	8.1	Areas of Rectangles and Parallelograms	422
		Investigation: Area Formula for Parallelograms	424
		Project: Random Rectangles	428
	8.2	Areas of Triangles, Trapezoids, and Kites	429
		Investigation 1: Area Formula for Triangles	429
		Investigation 2: Area Formula for Trapezoids	429
		Investigation 3: Area Formula for Kites	430
		Project: Maximizing Area	433
	8.3	Area Problems	434
		Investigation: Solving Problems with Area Formulas	434
A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	Usii	ng Your Algebra Skills 8: Products, Factors, and	
No.	7	Quadratic Equations	438
0	8.4	Areas of Regular Polygons	442
		Investigation: Area Formula for Regular Polygons	442
	Exp	oloration: Pick's Formula for Area	446
		Activity: Dinosaur Footprints and Other Shapes	447
I I I I	8.5	Areas of Circles	449
Sec. 1		Investigation: Area Formula for Circles	449
	8.6	Any Way You Slice It	453
	Exp	oloration: Geometric Probability II	458
		Activity: Where the Chips Fall	458
		Project: Different Dice	460
	8.7	Surface Area	461
		Investigation 1: Surface Area of a Regular Pyramid	464
		Investigation 2: Surface Area of a Cone	465
	Exp	oloration: Alternative Area Formulas	469
	_	Activity: Calculating Area in Ancient Egypt	469
	Cha	pter 8 Review	471
		Take Another Look	475
		Assessing What You've Learned	476
CHAPTER	The P	ythagorean Theorem	477
	0.1	The Theorem of Duthersons	479
	9.1	The Theorem of Pythagoras	478
		Investigation: The Three Sides of a Right Triangle	478 483
	0.2	Project: Creating a Geometry Flip Book	
	9.2	The Converse of the Pythagorean Theorem	484 484
	<b>T</b> T•	Investigation: Is the Converse True?	489
		ng Your Algebra Skills 9: Radical Expressions	489 491
	9.3	Two Special Right Triangles Investigation 1: Isosceles Right Triangles	491 491
*		Investigation 1: isosceles Right 1 riangles  Investigation 2: 30°-60°-90° Triangles	492
	10		
	Exp	oloration: A Pythagorean Fractal	496 407
	ο 4	Activity: The Right Triangle Fractal	497
	9.4	Story Problems	498

x © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

	9.5 Distance in Coordinate Geometry	502
	Investigation: The Distance Formula	502
	Exploration: Ladder Climb	507
	Activity: Climbing the Wall	507
	9.6 Circles and the Pythagorean Theorem	508
	Chapter 9 Review	512
	Mixed Review	515
	Take Another Look	517
	Assessing What You've Learned	518
CHAPTER	Volume	519
10	10.1 The Geometry of Solids	520
	Exploration: Euler's Formula for Polyhedrons	528
	Activity: Toothpick Polyhedrons	528
	10.2 Volume of Prisms and Cylinders	530
	Investigation: The Volume Formula for Prisms and Cylinders	531
	Project: The Soma Cube	537
	10.3 Volume of Pyramids and Cones	538
	Investigation: The Volume Formula for Pyramids and Cones	538
	Project: The World's Largest Pyramid	543
	Exploration: The Five Platonic Solids	544
The second second	Activity: Modeling the Platonic Solids	544
	10.4 Volume Problems	547
	10.5 Displacement and Density	551
Charles and	Project: Maximizing Volume	554
	Exploration: Orthographic Drawing	555
	Activity: Isometric and Orthographic Drawings	557
	10.6 Volume of a Sphere	558
	Investigation: The Formula for the Volume of a Sphere	558
	10.7 Surface Area of a Sphere	562
	Investigation: The Formula for the Surface Area of a Sphere	562
	Using Your Algebra Skills 10: Solving for Any Variable	567
	<b>Exploration: Sherlock Holmes and Forms of Valid Reasoning</b>	569
	Activity: It's Elementary!	570
	Chapter 10 Review	572
	Take Another Look	575
	Assessing What You've Learned	576



© 2008 Key Curriculum Press xi

CHAPTER	Similarity	577
	Using Your Algebra Skills 11: Proportion and Reasoning	578
	11.1 Similar Polygons	581
	Investigation 1: What Makes Polygons Similar?	582
	Investigation 2: Dilations on the Coordinate Plane	585
	Project: Making a Mural	588
	11.2 Similar Triangles	589
	Investigation 1: Is AA a Similarity Shortcut?	589
	Investigation 2: Is SSS a Similarity Shortcut?	590
	Investigation 3: Is SAS a Similarity Shortcut?	591
	Exploration: Constructing a Dilation Design	595
	Activity: Dilation Creations	595
	11.3 Indirect Measurement with Similar Triangles	598
	Investigation: Mirror, Mirror	598
	11.4 Corresponding Parts of Similar Triangles	603
	Investigation 1: Corresponding Parts	603
(A) No.	Investigation 2: Opposite Side Ratios	604
	11.5 Proportions with Area	608
	Investigation 1: Area Ratios	608
	Investigation 2: Surface Area Ratios	609
	Project: In Search of the Perfect Rectangle	613
	11.6 Proportions with Volume	614
	Investigation: Volume Ratios	615
	Exploration: Why Elephants Have Big Ears	620
	Activity: Convenient Sizes	620
	11.7 Proportional Segments Between Parallel Lines	623
	Investigation 1: Parallels and Proportionality	624
	Investigation 2: Extended Parallel/Proportionality	626
	Exploration: Two More Forms of Valid Reasoning	631
	Activity: Symbolic Proofs	633
	Chapter 11 Review	634
	Take Another Look	637
	Assessing What You've Learned	638
CHAPTER	Trigonometry	639
4.0	12.1 Trigonometric Ratios	640
	Investigation: Trigonometric Tables	642
	12.2 Problem Solving with Right Triangles	647
	Project: Light for All Seasons	651
	Exploration: Indirect Measurement	652
	Activity: Using a Clinometer	652
	12.3 The Law of Sines	654
3	Investigation 1: Area of a Triangle	654
Leegel!	Investigation 2: The Law of Sines	655
•		

xii © 2008 Key Curriculum Press



© 2008 Key Curriculum Press xiii

#### A Note to Students from the Author



Michael Serra

#### What Makes Discovering Geometry Different?

Discovering Geometry is designed so that you can be actively engaged as you learn geometry. In this book you "learn by doing." You will learn to use the tools of geometry and to perform geometry **investigations** with them. Many of the investigations are carried out in small **cooperative groups** in which you jointly plan and find solutions with other students. Your investigations will lead you to the discovery of geometry properties. In addition, you will gradually learn about proof, a form of reasoning that will help you explain why your discoveries are true, through **Developing Proof** group activities and exercises.

Discovering Geometry is designed so that both you and your teacher can have fun while you learn geometry. It has a lot of "extras." Each lesson begins with a quote that I hope you will find funny or thought provoking. I think you'll enjoy the extra challenges in the Improving Your...Skills puzzles at the end of most lessons. To solve each puzzle, you'll need clever visual thinking skills or sharp reasoning skills or both. I hope you will find some of the illustrated word problems humorous. In the explorations you will build geometric solids, find the height of your school building, and discover why elephants have big ears. In the projects you will draw the impossible, make kaleidoscopes, design a racetrack, and create a mural. The online Dynamic Geometry Explorations help you visualize important geometry concepts by putting them in motion, and there are graphing calculator projects, Fathom Dynamic Data<sup>TM</sup> projects, The Geometer's Sketchpad explorations, and web links that will allow you to practice and improve your skills.

#### **Suggestions for Success**

It is important to be organized. Keep a notebook with a section for definitions, a section for your geometry investigations, a section for discoveries, and a section for daily notes and exercises. Develop the habit of writing a summary page when you have completed each chapter. Study your notebook regularly.

You will need four tools for the investigations: a compass, a protractor, a straightedge, and a ruler. Some investigations use patty paper, small squares of waxed paper usually used between burger patties, that can be used as a unique geometry tool. Keep a calculator handy, too.

You will find hints for some exercises in the back of the book. Those exercises are marked with an . Try to solve the problems on your own first. Refer to the hints as a last resort if you can't solve a problem. Solutions are provided for chapter reviews so you can check your understanding and prepare for tests.

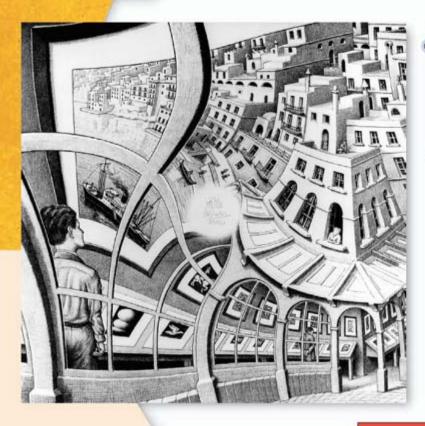
Discovering Geometry will ask you to work cooperatively with your classmates. When you are working cooperatively, always be willing to listen to each other, to actively participate, to ask each other questions, and to help each other when asked. You can accomplish much more cooperatively than you can individually. And, best of all, you'll experience less frustration and have much more fun.

Michael Serra

#### **CHAPTER**

# 0

# **Geometric Art**



A work by Dutch graphic artist M.C. Escher (1898–1972) opens each chapter in this book. Escher used geometry in creative ways to make his interesting and unusual works of art. As you come to each new chapter, see whether you can connect the Escher work to the content of the chapter.

My subjects are often
playful....It is, for example, a
pleasure to deliberately mix together
objects of two and of three dimensions,
surface and spatial relationships, and to
make fun of gravity.
M.C.ESCHER

Print Gallery, M.C. Escher, 1956 ©2002 Cordon Art B.V.–Baarn–Holland. All rights reserved.

#### **OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will

- see examples of geometry in nature
- study geometric art forms of cultures around the world
- study the symmetry in flowers, crystals, and animals
- see geometry as a way of thinking and of looking at the world
- practice using a compass and straightedge

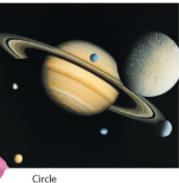


0.1

There is one art, no more no less, To do all things with artlessness. PIET HEIN

# **Geometry in Nature** and in Art

Nature displays a seemingly infinite variety of geometric shapes, from tiny atoms to great galaxies. Crystals, honeycombs, snowflakes, spiral shells, spiderwebs, and seed arrangements on sunflowers and pinecones are just a few of nature's geometric masterpieces.





Hexagon

Geometry includes the study of the properties of shapes such as circles, hexagons, and pentagons. Outlines of the sun, the moon, and the planets appear as circles. Snowflakes, honeycombs, and many crystals are hexagonal (6-sided). Many living things, such as flowers and starfish, are pentagonal (5-sided).

People observe geometric patterns in nature and use them in a variety of art forms. Basket weavers, woodworkers, and other artisans often use geometric designs to make their works more interesting and beautiful. You will learn some of their techniques in this chapter.



This Islamic design from Egypt uses 4-sided and 6-sided shapes, as well as 5-pointed and 12-pointed stars.

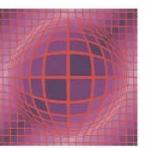
Pentagon

In the Celtic knot design above, the curves seem to weave together.

Artists rely on geometry to show perspective and proportion, and to produce certain optical effects. Using their understanding of lines, artists can give depth to their drawings. Or they can use lines and curves to create designs that seem to pop out of the page. You will create your own optical designs in Lesson 0.4.

Hungarian artist Victor Vasarely (1908-1997) had a strong interest in geometry, which was reflected in his work. In this series, he used curved lines to produce the illusion of three spheres.



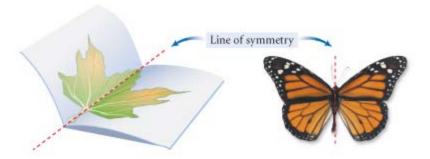




Tsigar (, II, III (1991), Victor Vasarely, courtesy of the artist.

**Symmetry** is a geometric characteristic of both nature and art. You may already know the two basic types of symmetry, reflectional symmetry and rotational symmetry. A design has **reflectional symmetry** if you can fold it along a **line** of symmetry so that all the points on one side of the line exactly coincide with (or match) all the points on the other side of the line.

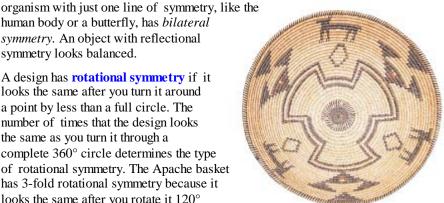
This leaf and butterfly both have one line of reflectional symmetry.



You can place a mirror on the line of symmetry so that half the figure and its mirror image re-create the original figure. So, reflectional symmetry is also called line symmetry or mirror symmetry. Biologists say an

human body or a butterfly, has bilateral symmetry. An object with reflectional symmetry looks balanced.

A design has **rotational symmetry** if it looks the same after you turn it around a point by less than a full circle. The number of times that the design looks the same as you turn it through a complete 360° circle determines the type of rotational symmetry. The Apache basket has 3-fold rotational symmetry because it looks the same after you rotate it 120° (a third of a circle), 240° (two-thirds of a circle), and 360° (one full circle).



This Apache basket has 3-fold rotational symmetry.

A starfish has 5-fold symmetry. It looks the same after you rotate it  $72^{\circ}$ ,  $144^{\circ}$ ,  $216^{\circ}$ ,  $288^{\circ}$ , or  $360^{\circ}$ .

The square fabric has 4-fold rotational symmetry and a starfish has 5-fold rotational symmetry. What type of rotational symmetry does a circular plate have?



Countries throughout the world use symmetry in their national flags. Notice that the Jamaican flag has rotational symmetry in addition to two lines of reflectional symmetry. You can rotate the flag 180° without changing its appearance. The origami boxes, however, have rotational symmetry, but not reflectional symmetry. (The Apache basket on page 3 *almost* has reflectional symmetry. Can you see why it doesn't?)



The Jamaican flag has two lines of reflectional symmetry.



If you ignore colors, the Japanese origami box on the left has 3-fold rotational symmetry. What type of symmetry does the other box have?

# CONNECTION

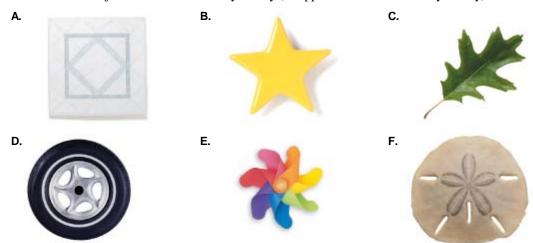
Many products have eye-catching labels, logos, and designs. Have you ever paid more attention to a product because the geometric design of its logo was familiar or attractive to you?



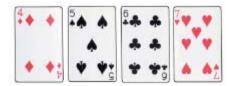
#### **EXERCISES**

- 1. Name two objects from nature whose shapes are hexagonal. Name two living organisms whose shapes have five-fold rotational symmetry.
- **2.** Describe some ways that artists use geometry.
- **3.** Name some objects with only one line of symmetry. What is the name for this type of symmetry?

**4.** Which of these objects have reflectional symmetry (or approximate reflectional symmetry)?

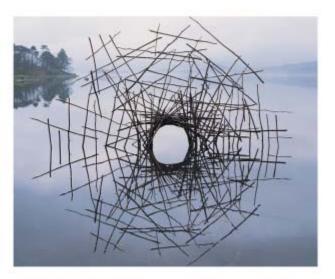


- 5. Which of the objects in Exercise 4 have rotational symmetry (or approximate rotational symmetry)?
- 6. Which of these playing cards have rotational symmetry? Which ones have reflectional symmetry?



7. British artist Andy Goldsworthy (b 1956) uses materials from nature to create beautiful outdoor sculptures. The artful arrangement of sticks below might appear to have rotational symmetry, but instead it has one line of reflectional symmetry. Can you find the line of symmetry? (h)

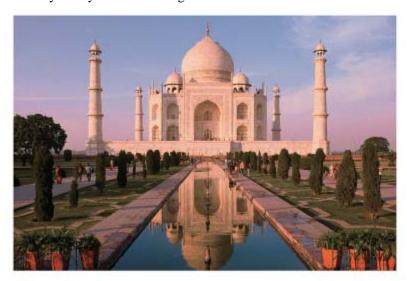
If an exercise has (h) an at the end, you can find a hint to help you in Hints for Selected Exercises at the back of the book.



For the title of this outdoor sculpture by Andy Goldsworthy, see the hint to Exercise 7 in the Hints section.

Courtesy of the artist and Galerie Lelong, New York.

8. Shah Jahan, Mughal emperor of India from 1628 to 1658, had the beautiful Taj Mahal built in memory of his wife, Mumtaz Mahal. Its architect, Ustad Ahmad Lahori, designed it with perfect symmetry. Describe two lines of symmetry in this photo. How does the design of the building's grounds give this view of the Taj Mahal even more symmetry than the building itself has?



The Taj Mahal in Agra, India, was described by the poet Rabindranath Tagore as "rising above the banks of the river like a solitary tear suspended on the cheek of time."

- **9.** Create a simple design that has two lines of reflectional symmetry. Does it have rotational symmetry? Next, try to create another design with two lines of reflectional symmetry, but without rotational symmetry. Any luck?
- **10.** Bring to class an object from nature that shows geometry. Describe the geometry that you find in the object as well as any symmetry the object has.
- **11.** Bring an object to school or wear something that displays a form of handmade or manufactured geometric art. Describe any symmetry the object has.

# IMPROVING YOUR VISUAL THINKING SKILLS Pickup Sticks Pickup sticks is a good game for developing motor skills, but you can turn it into a challenging visual puzzle. In what order should you pick up the sticks so that you are always removing the top stick?

CHAPTER 0 Geometric Art © 2008 Key Curriculum Press



LESSON

0.2

We especially need imagination in science. It is not all mathematics.nor all logic, but it is somewhat beauty and poetry. MARIA MITCHELL

# **Line Designs**

The symmetry and patterns in geometric designs make them very appealing. You can make many designs using the basic tools of geometry—compass and straightedge.

You'll use a straightedge to construct straight lines and a compass to construct circles and to mark off equal distances. A straightedge is like a ruler but it has no marks. You can use the edge of a ruler as a straightedge. The straightedge and the compass are the classical construction tools used by the ancient Greeks, who laid the foundations of the geometry that you are studying.



Japanese design is known for its simple, clean lines.





The complementary line designs on the arched ceiling and tile floor make this building lobby look grandiose.

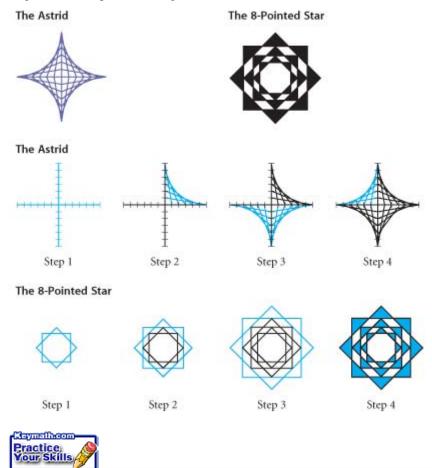


Notice how the patterns of these Guatemalan rugs are a non-uniform and dynamic arrangement of lines.



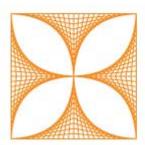
Some of the lines in this mosaic appear to be tied in knots!

You can create many types of designs using only straight lines. Here are two line designs and the steps for creating each one.



#### **EXERCISES**

- 1. What are the classical construction tools of geometry?
- 2. Create a line design from this lesson. Color your design.
- 3. Each of these line designs uses straight lines only. Select one design and re-create it on a sheet of paper.







**4.** Describe the symmetries of the three designs in Exercise 3. For the third design, does color matter?

5. Many quilt designers create beautiful geometric patterns with reflectional symmetry. One-fourth of a 4-by-4 quilt pattern and its reflection are shown at right. Copy the designs onto graph paper, and complete the 4-by-4 pattern so that it has two lines of reflectional symmetry. Color your quilt.





- **6.** Geometric patterns seem to be in motion in a quilt design with rotational symmetry. Copy the quilt piece shown in Exercise 5 onto graph paper, and complete the 4-by-4 quilt pattern so that it has 4-fold rotational symmetry. Color your quilt.
- 7. Organic molecules have geometric shapes. How many different lines of reflectional symmetry does this benzene molecule have? Does it have rotational symmetry? Sketch your answers.



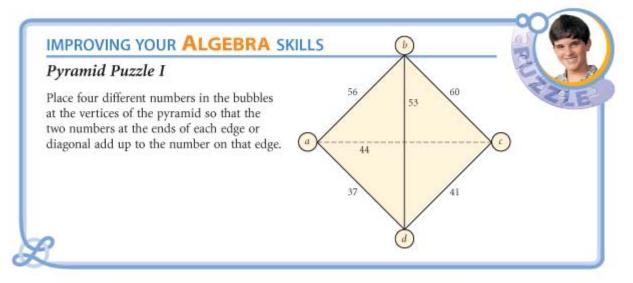
Benzene molecule

#### Architecture CONNECTION

Frank Lloyd Wright (1867-1959) is often called America's favorite architect. He built homes in 36 statessometimes in unusual settings. Fallingwater, located in Pennsylvania, is a building designed by Wright that displays his obvious love of geometry. Can you describe the geometry you see? Find more information on Frank Lloyd Wright at

www.keymath.com/DG





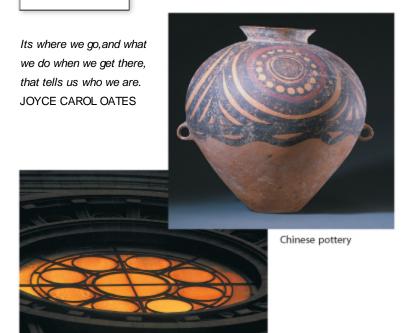


LESSON

0.3

# **Circle Designs**

People have always been fascinated by circles. Circles are used in the design of mosaics, baskets, and ceramics, as well as in the architectural design of buildings.



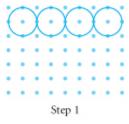


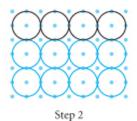
Palestinian doth

Circular window

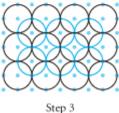
You can make circle designs with a compass as your primary tool. For example, here is a design you can make on a square dot grid.

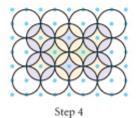
Begin with a 7-by-9 square dot grid. Construct three rows of four circles.





Construct two rows of three circles using the points between the first set of circles as centers. The result is a set of six circles overlapping the original 12 circles. Decorate your design.





51

Here is another design that you can make using only a compass. Start by constructing a circle, then select any point on it. Without changing your compass setting, swing an arc centered at the selected point. Swing an arc with each of the two new points as centers, and so on.



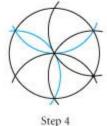
Dynamic Geometry Explorations at www.keymath.com/DG show geometric concepts visually using interactive sketches.







Step 2

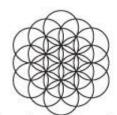








keymath.com/DG



Instead of stopping at the perimeter of the first circle, you can continue to swing full circles. Then you get a "field of daisies," as shown above.

See the Dynamic Geometry Exploration Daisy Designs at www.keymath.com/DG



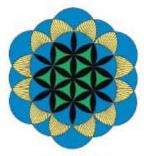
Notice the shape you get by connecting the six petal tips of the daisy. This is a regular hexagon, a 6-sided figure whose sides are the same length and whose angles are all the same size.



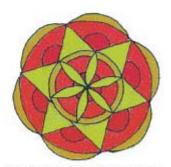
You can do many variations on a daisy design.



12-petal daisy



Field of daisies



Combination line and circle design (Can you see how it was made?) Schuyler Smith, geometry student

#### EXERCISES



For Exercises 1–5, use your construction tools.



- 1. Use square dot paper to create a 4-by-5 grid of 20 circles, and then make 12 circles overlapping them. Color or shade the design so that it has reflectional symmetry.
- 2. Use your compass to create a set of seven identical circles that touch but do not overlap. Draw a larger circle that encloses the seven circles. Color or shade your design so that it has rotational symmetry.
- **3.** Create a 6-petal daisy design and color or shade it so that it has rotational symmetry, but not reflectional symmetry.



This rose window at the National Cathedral in Washington, D.C., has a central design of seven circles enclosed in a larger circle.

- **4.** Make a 12-petal daisy by drawing a second 6-petal daisy between the petals of the first 6-petal daisy. Color or shade the design so that it has reflectional symmetry, but not rotational symmetry.
- 5. Using a 1-inch setting for your compass, construct a central regular hexagon and six regular hexagons that each share one side with the original hexagon. Your hexagon design should look similar to, but larger than, the figure at right. This design is called a tessellation, or tiling, of regular hexagons.



#### IMPROVING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS

#### Algebraic Magic Squares I

A magic square is an arrangement of numbers in a square grid. The numbers in every row, column, or diagonal add up to the same number. For example, in the magic square on the left, the sum of each row, column, and diagonal is 18.

Complete the 5-by-5 magic square on the right. Use only the numbers in this list: 6, 7, 9, 13, 17, 21, 23, 24, 27, and 28.

5	10	3
4	6	8
9	2	7

20			8	14
	19	25	26	
	12	18		30
29	10	11		
22			15	16



LESSON

0.4

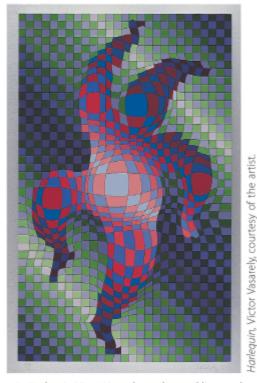
Everything is an illusion, including this notion.

STANISLAW J. LEC

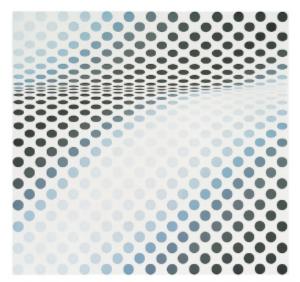
# **Op Art**

Op art, or optical art, is a form of abstract art that uses lines or geometric patterns to create a special visual effect. The contrasting dark and light regions sometimes appear to be in motion or to represent a change in surface, direction, and dimension. Victor Vasarely was one artist who transformed grids so that spheres seem to bulge from them. Recall the series *Tsiga I, II, III* that appears

in Lesson 0.1. *Harlequin*, shown at right, is a rare Vasarely work that includes a human form. Still, you can see Vasarely's trademark sphere in the clown's bulging belly.



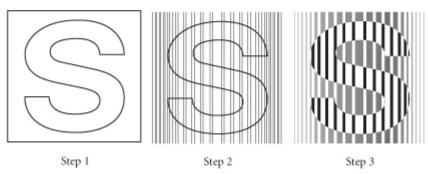
In Harlequin, Victor Vasarely used curved lines and shading to create the form of a clown in motion.



In Hesitate, by contemporary op artist Bridget Riley (b 1931), what effect do the changing dots produce?

Op art is fun and easy to create. To create one kind of op art design, first make a design in outline. Next, draw horizontal or vertical lines, gradually varying the space between the lines or each pair of lines, as shown below, to create an illusion of hills and valleys. Finally, color in or shade alternating spaces.

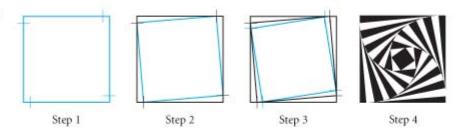
The Wavy Letter



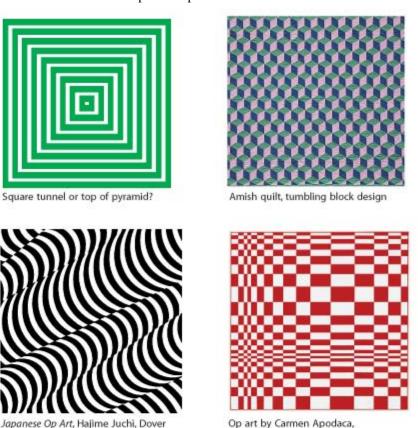
© 2008 Key Curriculum Press

To create the next design, first locate a point on each of the four sides of a square. Each point should be the same distance from a corner, as shown. Your compass is a good tool for measuring equal lengths. Connect these four points to create another square within the first. Repeat the process until the squares appear to converge on the center. Be careful that you don't fall in!

#### The Square Spiral



Here are some other examples of op art.



You can create any of the designs on this page using just a compass and straightedge (and doing some careful coloring). Can you figure out how each of these op art designs was created?

geometry student

Publications

#### EXFRCISES



- 1. What is the optical effect in each piece of art in this lesson?
- 2. Nature creates its own optical art. At first the black and white stripes of a zebra appear to work against it, standing out against the golden brown grasses of the African plain. However, the stripes do provide the zebras with very effective protection from predators. When and how?
- 3. Select one type of op art design from this lesson and create your own version
- **4.** Create an op art design that has reflectional symmetry, but not rotational symmetry.
- 5. Antoni Gaudí (1852–1926) designed the Bishop's Palace in Astorga, Spain. List as many geometric shapes as you can recognize on the palace (flat, two-dimensional shapes such as rectangles as well as solid, threedimensional shapes such as cylinders). What type of symmetry do you see on the palace?





Bishop's Palace, Astorga, Spain

#### IMPROVING YOUR REASONING SKILLS

#### Bagels

In the original computer game of bagels, a player determines a three-digit number (no digit repeated) by making educated guesses. After each guess, the computer gives a clue about the guess. Here are the clues.

bagels: no digit is correct

pica: one digit is correct but in the wrong position

fermi: one digit is correct and in the correct position

In each of the games below, a number of guesses have been made, with the clue for each guess shown to its right. From the given set of guesses and clues, determine the three-digit number. If there is more than one solution, find them all.

Game 1:	123	bagels	Game 2:	908	bagels
	456	pico		134	pico
	789	pico		387	pico fermi
	075	pico fermi		256	fermi
	087			237	pico pico
	???	·*************************************		333	



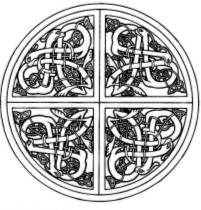


In the old days, a love-sick sailor might send his sweetheart a length of fishline loosely tied in a love knot. If the knot was returned pulled tight, it meant the passion was strong. But if the knot was returned untied—ah, matey, time to ship out. OLD SAILOR'S TALE



# **Knot Designs**

Knot designs are geometric designs that appear to weave or to interlace like a knot. Some of the earliest known designs are found in Celtic art from the northern regions of England and Scotland. In their carved stone designs, the artists imitated the rich geometric patterns of three-dimensional crafts such as weaving and basketry. The *Book of Kells* (8th and 9th centuries) is the most famous source of Celtic knot designs.



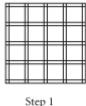


Celtic knot design

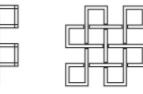
Today a very familiar knot design is the set of interconnected rings (shown at right) used as the logo for the Olympic Games.



Here are the steps for creating two examples of knot designs. Look them over before you begin the exercises.



Step 2

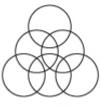


Step 3



Step 4

You can use a similar approach to create a knot design with rings.



Step 1



Step 2



Step 3

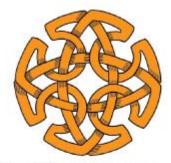


Step 4

#### Here are some more examples of knot designs.



Knot design by Scott Shanks, geometry student



Tiger Tail, Diane Cassell, parent of geometry student



Medieval Russian knot design



Japanese knot design

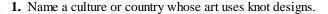
The last woodcut made by M. C. Escher is a knot design called *Snakes*. The rings and the snakes interlace, and the design has 3-fold rotational symmetry.

Snakes, M. C. Escher, 1969/ @2002 Cordon Art B. V.-Baarn-Holland, All rights reserved.



#### EXERCISES







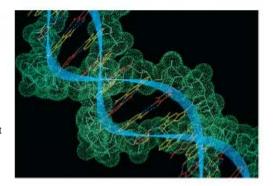
- 2. Create a knot design of your own, using only straight lines on graph paper.
- **3.** Create a knot design of your own with rotational symmetry, using a compass or a circle template.
- **4.** Sketch five rings linked together so that you could separate all five by cutting open one ring.
- **5.** The coat of arms of the Borromeo family, who lived during the Italian Renaissance (ca. 15th century), showed a very interesting knot design known as the Borromean Rings. In it, three rings are linked together so that if any one ring is removed the remaining two rings are no longer connected. Got that? Good. Sketch the Borromean Rings.
- **6.** The Chokwe storytellers of northeastern Angola are called *Akwa kuta sona* ("those who know how to draw"). When they sit down to draw and to tell their stories, they clear the ground and set up a grid of points in the sand with their fingertips, as shown below left. Then they begin to tell a story and, at the same time, trace a finger through the sand to create a *lusona* design with one smooth, continuous motion. Try your hand at creating *sona* (plural of *lusona*). Begin with the correct number of dots. Then, in one motion, re-create one of the *sona* below. The initial dot grid is shown for the rat.



7. In Greek mythology, the Gordian knot was such a complicated knot that no one could undo it. Oracles claimed that whoever could undo the knot would become the ruler of Gordium. When Alexander the Great (356–323 B.C.E.) came upon the knot, he simply cut it with his sword and claimed he had fulfilled the prophecy, so the throne was his. The expression "cutting the Gordian knot" is still used today. What do you think it means?

# Science CONNECTION

Mathematician DeWitt Sumners at Florida State University and biophysicist Sylvia Spenger at the University of California, Berkeley, have discovered that when a virus attacks DNA, it creates a knot on the DNA.



**8.** The square knot and granny knot are very similar but do very different things. Compare their symmetries. Use string to re-create the two knots and explain their differences.



9. Cut a long strip of paper from a sheet of lined paper or graph paper. Tie the strip of paper snugly, but without wrinkles, into a simple knot. What shape does the knot create? Sketch your knot.

#### **SYMBOLIC ART**

Japanese artist Kunito Nagaoka (b 1940) uses geometry in his work. Nagaoka was born in Nagano, Japan, and was raised near the active volcano Asama. In Japan, he experienced earthquakes and typhoons as well as the human tragedies of Hiroshima and Nagasaki. In 1966, he moved to Berlin, Germany, a city rebuilt in concrete from the ruins of World War II. These experiences clearly influenced his work.

You can find other examples of symbolic art at www.keymath.com/DG

Look at the etching shown here or another piece of symbolic art. Write a paragraph describing what you think might have happened in the scene or what you think it might represent. What types of geometric figures do you find?

Use geometric shapes in your own sketch or painting to evoke a feeling or to tell a story. Write a one- or two-page story related to your art.

Your project should include

- A paragraph describing the shapes found in the art shown here or in another piece of symbolic art. (If you use a different piece of art, include a copy of it.)
- ➤ Your own symbolic art that uses geometric figures.
- A one- or two-page story that relates to your art.



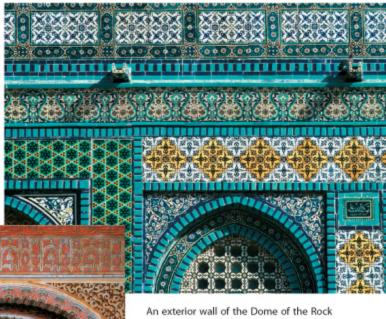
ISEKI/PY XVIII (1978), Kunito Nagaoka

# Student Web Links Keymath.com L E S S O N

Patience with small details makes perfect a large work, like the universe. JALALUDDIN RUMI

# **Islamic Tile Designs**

slamic art is rich in geometric forms. Early Islamic, or Muslim, artists became familiar with geometry through the works of Euclid, Pythagoras, and other mathematicians of antiquity, and they used geometric patterns extensively in their art and architecture.



An exterior wall of the Dome of the Rock (660–750 C.E.) mosque in Jerusalem

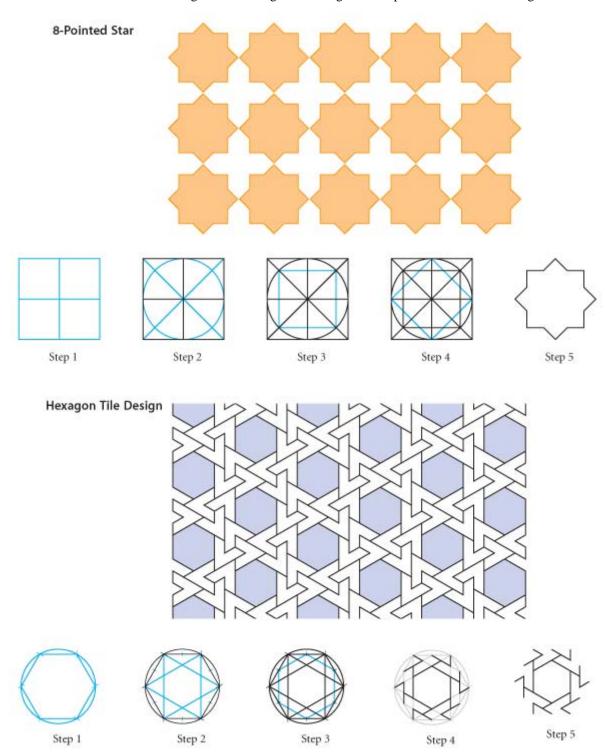
Islam forbids the representation of humans or animals in religious art. So, instead, the artists use intricate geometric patterns.

One striking example of Islamic architecture is the Alhambra, a Moorish palace in Granada, Spain. Built over 600 years ago by Moors and Spaniards, the Alhambra is filled from floor to ceiling with marvelous geometric patterns. The designs you see on this page are but a few of the hundreds of intricate geometric patterns found in the tile work and the inlaid wood ceilings of buildings like the Alhambra and the Dome of the Rock.

Carpets and hand-tooled bronze plates from the Islamic world also show geometric designs. The patterns often elaborate on basic grids of regular hexagons, equilateral triangles, or squares. These complex Islamic patterns were constructed with no more than a compass and a straightedge. Repeating patterns like these are called **tessellations**. You'll learn more about tessellations in Chapter 7.

Alcove in the Hall of Ambassadors, the Alhambra, in Granada, Spain

The two examples below show how to create one tile in a square-based and a hexagon-based design. The hexagon-based pattern is also a knot design.





**EXERCISES** 

You will need



- 1. Name two countries where you can find Islamic architecture.
- **2.** What is the name of the famous palace in Granada, Spain, where you can find beautiful examples of tile patterns?
- 3. Using tracing paper or transparency film, trace a few tiles from the 8-Pointed Star design. Notice that you can slide, or translate, the tracing in a straight line horizontally, vertically, and even diagonally to other positions so that the tracing will fit exactly onto the tiles again. What is the shortest translation distance you can find, in centimeters?
- 4. Notice that when you rotate your tracing from Exercise 3 about certain points in the tessellation, the tracing fits exactly onto the tiles again. Find two different points of rotation. (Put your pencil on the point and try rotating the tracing paper or transparency.) How many times in one rotation can you make the tiles match up again?



22 CHAPTER 0 Geometric Art © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

#### **Architecture**

# CONNECTION

After studying buildings in other Muslim countries, the architect of the Petronas Twin Towers, Cesar Pelli (b 1926), decided that geometric tiling patterns would be key to the design. For the floor plan, his team used a very traditional tile design, the 8-pointed star—two intersecting squares. To add space and connect the design to the traditional "arabesques," the design team added arcs of circles between the eight points.

- 5. Currently the tallest twin towers in the world are the Petronas Twin Towers in Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia. Notice that the floor plans of the towers have the shape of Islamic designs. Use your compass and straightedge to re-create the design of the base of the Petronas Twin Towers, shown at right.
- **6.** Use your protractor and ruler to draw a square tile. Use your compass, straightedge, and eraser to modify and decorate it. See the example in this lesson for ideas, but yours can be different. Be creative!
- 7. Construct a regular hexagon tile and modify and decorate it. See the example in this lesson for ideas, but yours can be different.
- 8. Create a tessellation with one of the designs you made in Exercises 6 and 7. Trace or photocopy several copies and paste them together in a tile pattern. (You can also create your tessellation using geometry software and print out a copy.) Add finishing touches to your tessellation by adding, erasing, or whiting out lines as desired. If you want, see if you can interweave a knot design within your tessellation. Color your tessellation.



#### PHOTO OR VIDEO SAFARI

In Lesson 0.1, you saw a few examples of geometry and symmetry in nature and art. Now go out with your group and document examples of geometry in nature and art. Use a camera or video camera to record as many examples of geometry in nature and art as you can. Look for many different types of symmetry. Consider visiting museums and art galleries, but make sure it's okay to take pictures when you visit. You might find examples in your home or in the homes of friends and neighbors.

Your project should include

- Photographs or a video.
- Captions or commentary describing the geometry and types of symmetry.



REVIEW

In this chapter, you described the geometric shapes and symmetries you see in nature, in everyday objects, in art, and in architecture. You learned that geometry appears in many types of art-ancient and modern, from every culture-and you learned specific ways in which some cultures use geometry in their art. You also used a compass and straightedge to create your own works of geometric art.



The end of a chapter is a good time to review and organize your work. Each chapter in this book will end with a review lesson.



# EXERCISES

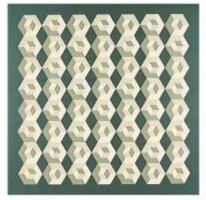


- 1. List three cultures that use geometry in their art.
- 2. What is the optical effect of the op art design at right?
- 3. Name the basic tools of geometry you used in this chapter and describe their uses.
- **4.** With a compass, draw a 12-petal daisy.
- **5.** Construction With a compass and straightedge, construct a regular hexagon.
- **6.** List three things in nature that have geometric shapes. Name their shapes.
- 7. Draw an original knot design.
- **8.** Which of the wheels below have reflectional symmetry? How many lines of symmetry does each have?



You will need

Construction tools for Exercises 4, 5, and 10



Hot Blocks (1966-67), Edna Andrade



Wheel A



Wheel B



Wheel C



Wheel D

9. Which of the wheels in Exercise 8 have only rotational symmetry? What kind of rotational symmetry does each of the four wheels have?

10. A mandala is a circular design arranged in rings that radiate from the center. (See the Cultural Connection below.) Use your compass and straightedge to create a mandala. Draw several circles using the same point as the center. Create a geometric design in the center circle, and decorate each ring with a symmetric geometric design. Color or decorate your mandala. Two examples are shown below.





The first mandala uses daisy designs. The second mandala is a combination knot and Islamic design by Scott Shanks, geometry student.

- 11. Create your own personal mandala. You might include your name, cultural symbols, photos of friends and relatives, and symbols that have personal meaning for you. Color it.
- **12.** Create one mandala that uses techniques from Islamic art, is a knot design, and also has optical effects.

#### Cultural



The word *mandala* comes from Sanskrit, the classical language of India, and means "circle" or "center." Hindus use mandala designs for meditation. The Indian rug at right is an example of a mandala, as is the Aztec calendar stone below left. Notice the symbols are arranged symmetrically within each circle. The rose windows in many gothic cathedrals, like the one below right from the Chartres Cathedral in France, are also mandalas. Notice all the circles within circles, each one filled with a design or picture.







© 2008 Key Curriculum Press CHAPTER 0 REVIEW 25

- 13. Before the Internet, "flags" was the most widely read topic of the World Book Encyclopedia. Research answers to these questions. More information about flags is available at <a href="https://www.keymath.com/DG">www.keymath.com/DG</a>.
  - a. Is the flag of Puerto Rico symmetric? Explain.
  - **b.** Does the flag of Kenya have rotational symmetry? Explain.
  - **c.** Name a country whose flag has both rotational and reflectional symmetry. Sketch the flag.

# Assessing What You've Learned

#### **KEEPING A PORTFOLIO**

This section suggests how you might review, organize, and communicate to others what you've learned. Whether you follow these suggestions or directions from your teacher, or use study strategies of your own, be sure to reflect on all you've learned.



An essential part of learning is being able to show yourself and others how much you know and what you can do. Assessment isn't limited to tests and quizzes. Assessment isn't even limited to what your teacher sees or what makes up your grade. Every piece of art you make and every project or exercise you complete gives you a chance to demonstrate to somebody—yourself, at least—what you're capable of.

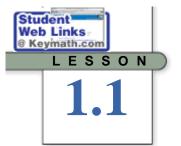
**BEGIN A PORTFOLIOThis** chapter is primarily about art, so you might organize your work the way a professional artist does—in a portfolio. A portfolio is different from a notebook, both for an artist and for a geometry student. An artist's notebook might contain everything from scratch work to practice sketches to random ideas jotted down. A portfolio is reserved for an artist's most significant or *best* work. It's his or her portfolio that an artist presents to the world to demonstrate what he or she is capable of doing. The portfolio can also show how an artist's work has changed over time.

Review all the work you've done so far and choose one or more examples of your best art projects to include in your portfolio. Write a paragraph or two about each piece, addressing these questions:

- ▶ What is the piece an example of?
- Does this piece represent your best work? Why else did you choose it?
- What mathematics did you learn or apply in this piece?
- How would you improve the piece if you redid or revised it?

Portfolios are an ongoing and ever-changing display of your work and growth. As you finish each chapter, update your portfolio by adding new work.

CHAPTER 0 Geometric Art © 2008 Key Curriculum Press



Nature's Great Book is written in mathematical symbols. GALILEO GALILEI

# **Building Blocks** of Geometry

Three building blocks of geometry are points, lines, and planes. A **point** is the most basic building block of geometry. It has no size. It has only location. You represent a point with a dot, and you name it with a capital letter. The point shown below is called *P*.

Ρ



A tiny seed is a physical model of a point. A point, however, is smaller than any seed that ever existed.

Mathematical model of a point

A **line** is a straight, continuous arrangement of infinitely many points. It has infinite length, but no thickness. It extends forever in two directions. You name a line by giving the letter names of any two points on the line and by placing the line symbol above the letters, for example,  $\overline{AB}$  or  $\overline{BA}$ .





A piece of spaghetti is a physical model of a line. A line, however, is longer, straighter, and thinner than any piece of spaghetti ever made.

Mathematical model of a line

A plane has length and width, but no thickness. It is like a flat surface that extends infinitely along its length and width. You represent a plane with a four-sided figure, like a tilted piece of paper, drawn in perspective. Of course, this actually illustrates only part of a plane. You name a plane with a script capital letter, such as  $\mathfrak{P}$ .

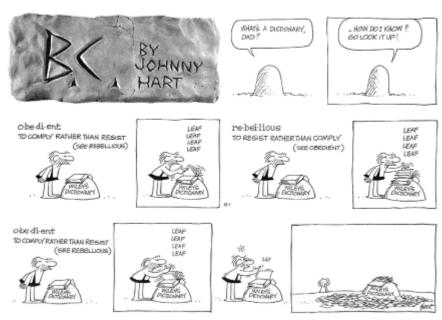




Mathematical model of a plane



A flat piece of rolledout dough is a physical model of a plane. A plane, however, is broader, wider, and thinner than any piece of dough you could ever roll. It can be difficult to explain what points, lines, and planes are even though you may recognize them. Early mathematicians tried to define these terms.



By permission of Johnny Hart and Creators Syndicate, Inc.

The ancient Greeks said, "A point is that which has no part. A line is breadthless length." The Mohist philosophers of ancient China said, "The line is divided into parts, and that part which has no remaining part is a point." Those definitions don't help much, do they?

A **definition** is a statement that clarifies or explains the meaning of a word or a phrase. However, it is impossible to define point, line, and plane without using words or phrases that themselves need definition. So these terms remain undefined. Yet, they are the basis for all of geometry.

Using the undefined terms *point*, *line*, and *plane*, you can define all other geometry terms and geometric figures. Many are defined in this book, and others will be defined by you and your classmates.

Here are your first definitions. Begin your list and draw sketches for all definitions.

**Collinear** means on the same line.

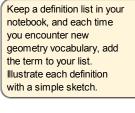


Points A, B, and C are collinear.

**Coplanar** means on the same plane.



Points D, E, and F are coplanar.

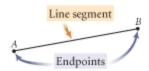




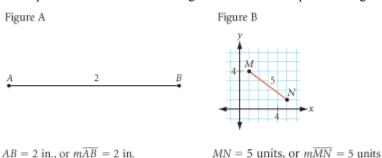
Ball A is in the pocket of the man. Ball C is on the woman's racquet. All other balls are on the tennis court. Name three balls that are collinear. Name three balls that are coplanar but not collinear. Name four balls that are not coplanar.



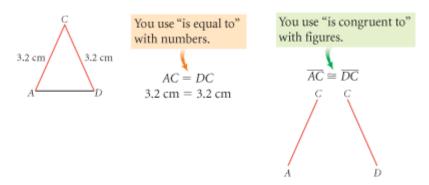
A line segment consists of two points called the endpoints of the segment and all the points between them that are collinear with the two points.



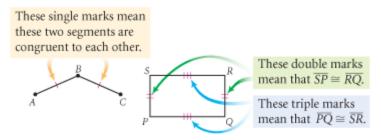
You can write line segment AB, using a segment symbol, as  $\overline{AB}$  or  $\overline{BA}$ . There are two ways to write the length of a segment. You can write AB = 2 in., meaning the distance from A to B is 2 inches. You can also use an m for "measure" in front of the segment name, and write the distance as mAB = 2 in. If no measurement units are used for the length of a segment, it is understood that the choice of units is not important or is based on the length of the smallest square in the grid.



Two segments are **congruent** if and only if they have equal measures, or lengths.



When drawing figures, you show congruent segments by making identical markings.

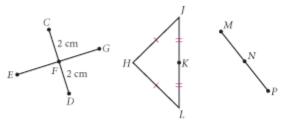


The **midpoint** of a segment is the point on the segment that is the same distance from both endpoints. The midpoint **bisects** the segment, or divides the segment into two congruent segments.

#### **EXAMPLE**

Study the diagrams below.

- **a.** Name each midpoint and the segment it bisects.
- **b.** Name all the congruent segments. Use the congruence symbol to write your answers.



## Solution

Look carefully at the markings and apply the midpoint definition.

**a.** CF = FD, so F is the midpoint of  $\overline{CD}$ ;  $\overline{JK} \cong \overline{KL}$ , so K is the midpoint of  $\overline{JL}$ .

**b.**  $\overline{CF} \cong \overline{FD}$ ,  $\overline{HJ} \cong \overline{HL}$ , and  $\overline{JK} \cong \overline{KL}$ .

Even though  $\overline{EF}$  and  $\overline{FG}$  appear to have the same length, you cannot assume they are congruent without the markings. The same is true for  $\overline{MN}$  and  $\overline{NP}$ .

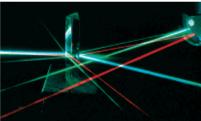
**Ray** AB is the part of  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  that contains point A and all the points on  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  that are on the same side of point A as point B. Imagine cutting off all the points to the left of point A.



In the figure above,  $\overrightarrow{AY}$  and  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  are two ways to name the same ray. Note that  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  is not the same as  $\overrightarrow{BA}$ !

A ray begins at a point and extends infinitely in one direction. You need two letters to name a ray. The first letter is the endpoint of the ray, and the second letter is any other point that the ray passes through.





Physical model of a ray: beams of light

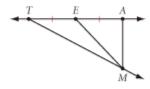


# Investigation

# **Mathematical Models**

In this lesson, you encountered many new geometry terms. In this investigation you will work as a group to identify models from the real world that represent these terms and to identify how they are represented in diagrams.

- Step 1
- Look around your classroom and identify examples of each of these terms: point, line, plane, line segment, congruent segments, midpoint of a segment, and ray.
- Step 2
- Identify examples of these terms in the photograph at right.



- Step 3
- Identify examples of these terms in the figure above.
- Step 4
- Explain in your own words what each of these terms means.

# EXERCISES

1. In the photos below identify the physical models that represent a point, segment, plane, collinear points, and coplanar points.

For Exercises 2–4, name each line in two different ways.







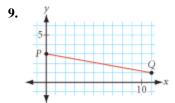


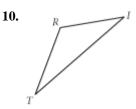
For Exercises 5–7, draw two points and label them. Then use a ruler to draw each line. Don't forget to use arrowheads to show that the line extends indefinitely.

**5.** 
$$\overrightarrow{AB}$$

7. 
$$\overrightarrow{DE}$$
 with  $D(-3, 0)$  and  $E(0, -3)$ 

For Exercises 8–10, name each line segment.





For Exercises 11 and 12, draw and label each line segment.

11. 
$$\overline{AB}$$

**12.** 
$$\overline{RS}$$
 with  $R(0, 3)$  and  $S(-2, 11)$ 

For Exercises 13 and 14, use your ruler to find the length of each line segment to the nearest tenth of a centimeter. Write your answer in the form mAB = 1.

13. <sup>A</sup>



For Exercises 15–17, use your ruler to draw each segment as accurately as you can. Label each segment.

**15.** 
$$AB = 4.5 \text{ cm}$$

**16.** 
$$CD = 3$$
 in.

**17.** 
$$EF = 24.8$$
 cm

18. Name each midpoint and the segment it bisects.



W X Y Z



- **19.** Draw two segments that have the same midpoint. Mark your drawing to show congruent segments.
- **20.** Draw and mark a figure in which *M* is the midpoint of  $\overline{ST}$ , SP = PT, and T is the midpoint of  $\overline{PQ}$ .

For Exercises 21–23, name the ray in two different ways.



For Exercises 24–26, draw and label each ray.

24. 
$$\overrightarrow{AB}$$

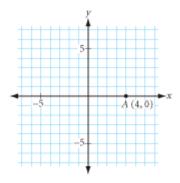
25.  $\overline{YX}$ 

26.  $\overrightarrow{MN}$ 

- **27.** Draw a plane containing four coplanar points *A*, *B*, *C*, and *D*, with exactly three collinear points *A*, *B*, and *D*.
- **28.** Given two points A and B, there is only one segment that you can name:  $A\overline{B}$ . With three collinear points A, B, and C, there are three different segments that you can name:  $\overline{AB}$ ,  $\overline{AC}$ , and  $\overline{BC}$ . With five collinear points A, B, C, D, and E, how many different segments can you name?

For Exercises 29–31, draw axes on graph paper and locate point A(4, 0) as shown.

- **29.** Draw  $\overline{AB}$  where point B has coordinates (2, -6).
- **30.** Draw  $\overrightarrow{OM}$  with endpoint (0, 0) that goes through point M(2, 2).
- **31.** Draw  $\overline{CD}$  through points C(-2, 1) and D(-2, -3).



## Career

# CONNECTION

Woodworkers use a tool called a plane to shave a rough wooden surface to create a perfectly smooth planar surface. The smooth board can then be made into a tabletop, a door, or a cabinet.

Woodworking is a very precise process. Producing high-quality pieces requires an understanding of lines, planes, and angles as well as careful measurements.



- 32. If the signs of the coordinates of collinear points P(-6, -2), Q(-5, 2), and R(-4, 6) are reversed, are the three new points still collinear? Draw a picture and explain why.
- **33.** Draw a segment with midpoint N(-3, 2). Label it  $\overline{PQ}$ .
- **34.** Copy triangle *TRY* shown at right. Use your ruler to find the midpoint A of side  $\overline{TR}$  and the midpoint G of side  $\overline{TY}$ . Draw  $\overline{AG}$ .



35. Use your ruler to draw a triangle with side lengths 8 cm and 11 cm. Explain your method. Can you draw a second triangle with these two side lengths that looks different from the first?

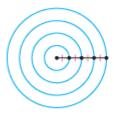


#### SPIRAL DESIGNS

The circle design shown below is used in a variety of cultures to create mosaic decorations. The spiral design may have been inspired by patterns in nature. Notice that the seeds on the sunflower also spiral out from the center.

Create and decorate your own spiral design. Here are the steps to make the spirals. The more circles and radii you draw, the more detailed your design will be.





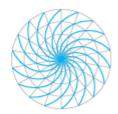




Step 2



Step 3



Step 4

- A completed spiral.
- ▶ Coloring or decorations that make the spiral stand out.

For help, see the **Dynamic Geometry Exploration** Spiral Designs at www.keymath.com/DG

# **Midpoint**

A midpoint is the point on a line segment that is the same distance from both endpoints.

You can think of a midpoint as being halfway between two locations. You know how to mark a midpoint. But when the position and location matter, such as in navigation and geography, you can use a coordinate grid and some algebra to find the exact location of the midpoint. You can calculate the coordinates of the midpoint of a segment on a coordinate grid using a formula.

### Coordinate Midpoint Property

If  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$  are the coordinates of the endpoints of a segment, then the coordinates of the midpoint are

$$\left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}\right)$$

#### **History** CONNECTION

Surveyors and mapmakers of ancient Egypt, China, Greece, and Rome used various coordinate systems to locate points. Egyptians made extensive use of square grids and used the first known rectangular coordinates at Saqqara around 2650 B.C.E. By the 17th century, the age of European exploration, the need for accurate maps and the development of easy-to-use algebraic symbols gave rise to modern coordinate geometry. Notice the lines of latitude and longitude in this 17th-century map.



#### **EXAMPLE**

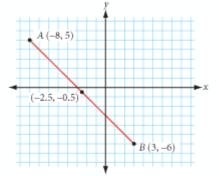
Segment AB has endpoints (-8, 5) and (3, -6). Find the coordinates of the midpoint of  $\overline{AB}$ .

#### Solution

The midpoint is not on a grid intersection point, so we can use the coordinate midpoint property.

$$= \frac{x_1 + x_2}{2} = \frac{-8 + 3}{2} = -2.5$$
$$= \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2} = \frac{5 + (-6)}{2} = -0.5$$

The midpoint of  $\overline{AB}$  is (-2.5, -0.5).



# **EXERCISES**



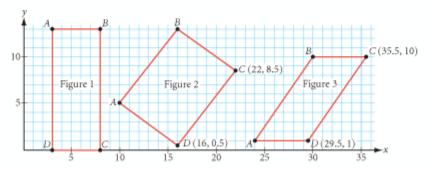
For Exercises 1–3, find the coordinates of the midpoint of the segment with each pair of endpoints.

1. 
$$(12, -7)$$
 and  $(-6, 15)$ 

**2.** 
$$(-17, -8)$$
 and  $(-1, 11)$ 

3. 
$$(14, -7)$$
 and  $(-3, 18)$ 

- **4.** One endpoint of a segment is (12, -8). The midpoint is (3, 18). Find the coordinates of the other endpoint.
- **5.** A classmate tells you, "Finding the coordinates of a midpoint is easy. You just find the averages." Is there any truth to it? Explain what you think your classmate means.
- **6.** Find the two points on  $\overline{AB}$  that divide the segment into three congruent parts. Point A has coordinates (0, 0) and point B has coordinates (9, 6). Explain your method.
- 7. Describe a way to find points that divide a segment into fourths.
- **8.** In each figure below, imagine drawing the diagonals  $\overline{AC}$  and  $\overline{BD}$ 
  - **a.** Find the midpoint of  $\overline{AC}$  and the midpoint of  $\overline{BD}$  in each figure.
  - **b.** What do you notice about the midpoints?





1.2

Inspiration is needed in geometry, just as much as in poetry.

ALEKSANDR PUSHKIN

# **Poolroom Math**

People use angles every day. Plumbers measure the angle between connecting pipes to make a good fitting. Woodworkers adjust their saw blades to cut wood at just the correct angle. Air traffic controllers use angles to direct planes. And good pool players must know their angles to plan their shots.



Is the angle between the two hands of the wristwatch smaller than the angle between the hands of the large clock?

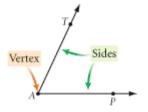
"Little Benji," the wristwatch



Big Ben at the Houses of Parliament in London, England

You can use the terms that you defined in Lesson 1.1 to write a precise definition of angle. An **angle** is formed by two rays that share a common endpoint, provided that the two rays are noncollinear. In other words, the rays cannot lie on the same line. The common endpoint of the two rays is the **vertex** of the angle. The two rays are the **sides** of the angle.

You can name the angle in the figure below angle TAP or angle PAT, or use the angle symbol and write  $\angle TAP$  or  $\angle PAT$ . Notice that the vertex must be the middle letter, and the first and last letters each name a point on a different ray. Since there are no other angles with vertex A, you can also simply call this  $\angle A$ 

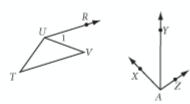


#### **EXAMPLE A**

Name all the angles in these drawings.

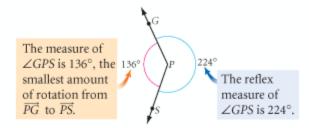
#### Solution

The angles are  $\angle T$ ,  $\angle V$ ,  $\angle TUV$ ,  $\angle 1$ ,  $\angle TUR$ ,  $\angle XAY$ ,  $\angle YAZ$ , and  $\angle XAZ$ . (Did you get them all?) Notice that  $\angle 1$  is a shorter way to name  $\angle RUV$ .



Which angles in Example A seem big to you? Which seem small?

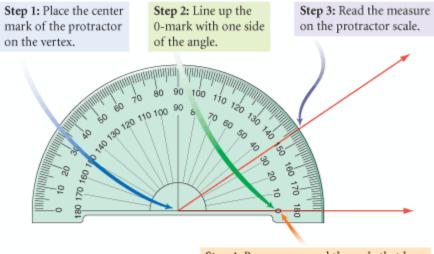
The **measure of an angle** is the smallest amount of rotation about the vertex from one ray to the other, measured in **degrees**. According to this definition, the measure of an angle can be any value between  $0^{\circ}$  and  $180^{\circ}$ . The largest amount of rotation less than  $360^{\circ}$  between the two rays is called the **reflex measure of an angle**.



The geometry tool you use to measure an angle is a **protractor.** Here's how you use it.



A television antenna is a physical model of an angle. Note that changing the length of the antenna doesn't change the angle.



**Step 4:** Be sure you read the scale that has the 0-mark you are using! The angle in the diagram measures 34° and not 146°.



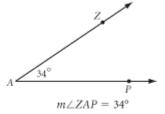
For a visual tutorial on how to use a protractor, see the **Dynamic Geometry Exploration** at Protractor <a href="www.keymath.com/DG">www.keymath.com/DG</a>

# Career CONNECTION

In sports medicine, specialists may examine the healing rate of an injured joint by its angle of recovery. For example, a physician may assess how much physical therapy a patient needs by measuring the degree to which a patient can bend his or her ankle from the floor.

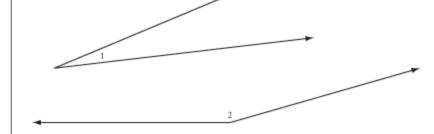


To show the measure of an angle, use an m before the angle symbol. For example,  $m \angle ZAP = 34^{\circ}$  means the measure of  $\angle ZAP$  is 34 degrees.



#### **EXAMPLE B**

Use your protractor to measure these angles as accurately as you can. Which ones measure more than 90°?

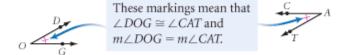


# Solution

Measuring to the nearest degree, you should get these approximate answers. (The symbol ≈ means "is approximately equal to.")

$$m \angle 1 \approx 16^{\circ}$$
  $m \angle 3 \approx 92^{\circ}$   
 $m \angle 2 \approx 164^{\circ}$   $\angle 2$  and  $\angle 3$  measure more than  $90^{\circ}$ .

Two angles are **congruent** if and only if they have equal measure. You use identical markings to show that two angles in a figure are congruent.



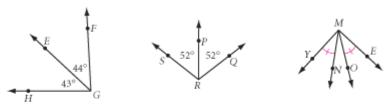
A ray is the **angle bisector** if it contains the vertex and divides the angle into two congruent angles. In the figure at right,  $\overrightarrow{CD}$  bisects  $\angle ACB$  so that  $\angle ACD \cong \angle BCD$ .



#### EXAMPLE C

Look for angle bisectors and congruent angles in the figures below.

- **a.** Name each angle bisector and the angle it bisects.
- **b.** Name all the congruent angles in the figure. Use the congruence symbol and name the angles so there is no confusion about which angle you mean.



#### Solution

- **a.** Use the angle bisector definition.  $\angle SRP \cong \angle PRQ$ , so  $\overrightarrow{RP}$  bisects  $\angle SRQ$ .
- **b.**  $\angle SRP \cong \angle PRQ$ ,  $\angle YMN \cong \angle OME$ , and  $\angle YMO \cong \angle EMN$ .



# Investigation Virtual Pool

Pocket billiards, or pool, is a game of angles. When a ball bounces off the pool table's cushion, its path forms two angles with the edge of the cushion. The **incoming angle** is formed by the cushion and the path of the ball approaching the cushion.

The **outgoing angle** is formed by the cushion and the path of the ball

leaving the cushion. As it turns out, the measure of the outgoing angle equals the measure of the incoming angle.

Computer scientist Nesli O'Hare is also a professional pool player.



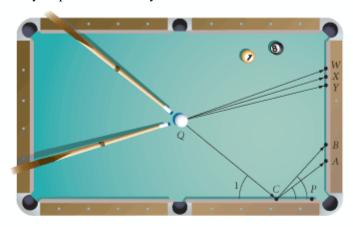
Outgoing angle

Cushion

Incoming

angle

Use your protractor to study these shots.

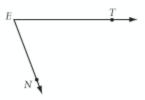


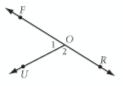
- Use your protractor to find the measure of ∠1. Which is the correct outgoing angle? Which point—A or B—will the ball hit?
   Which point on the cushion—W, X, or Y—should the white ball hit so that the ray of the outgoing angle passes through the center of the 8-ball?
   Compare your results with your group members' results. Does everyone agree?
   How would you hit the white ball against the cushion so that the ball passes over the same spot on the way back?
- Step 5 How would you hit the ball so that it bounces off three different points on the cushions without ever touching cushion  $\overrightarrow{CP}$ ?

# **EXERCISES**



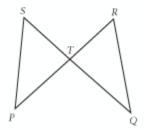
**1.** Name each angle in three different ways.



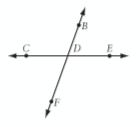


For Exercises 2–4, draw and label each angle.

- **2.** ∠*TAN*
- **5.** For each figure at right, list the angles that you can name using only the vertex letter.
- **3.** ∠*BIG*

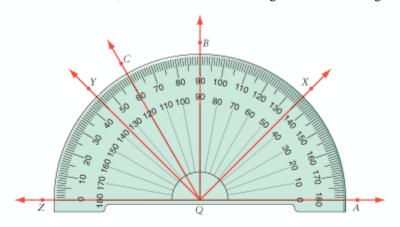


**4.** ∠*SML* 



6. Draw a figure that contains at least three angles and requires three letters to name each angle.

For Exercises 7–14, find the measure of each angle to the nearest degree.



If an exercise has an 🕠 at the end, you can find a hint to help you in Hints for Selected Exercises at the back of the book.

- m∠AQB ≈ \_?

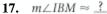
- 8.  $m \angle AQC \approx ?$  9.  $m \angle XQA \approx ?$  10.  $m \angle AQY \approx ?$

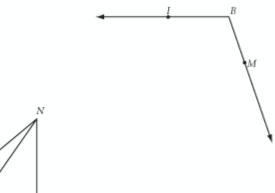
- 11.  $m \angle ZQY = ?$  12.  $m \angle ZQX = ?$  13.  $m \angle CQB = ?$  (h) 14.  $m \angle XQY = ?$
- **15.** Adjacent Angles  $\angle XQA$  and  $\angle XQY$  share a vertex and a side. Taken together they form the larger angle  $\angle AQY$ . Compare their measures. Does  $m\angle XQA + m\angle XQY = m\angle AQY$ ?

For Exercises 16–20, use your protractor to find the measure of the angle to the nearest degree.

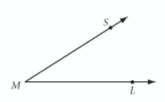
**16.** *m*∠*MAC* ≈ <u>?</u>

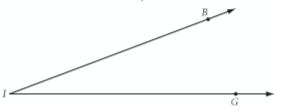






- **18.** *m*∠*S* ≈ ?
- 19. m∠SON ≈ ?
- m∠NOR ≈ ?
- **21.** Which angle below has the greater measure,  $\angle SML$  or  $\angle BIG$ ? Why?





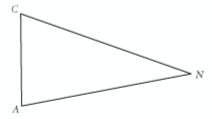
For Exercises 22–24, use your protractor to draw angles with these measures. Label them.

**22.** 
$$m \angle A = 44^{\circ}$$

**23.** 
$$m \angle B = 90^{\circ}$$

**24.** 
$$m \angle CDE = 135^{\circ}$$

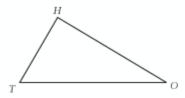
- **25.** Use your protractor to draw the angle bisector of  $\angle A$  in Exercise 22 and the angle bisector of  $\angle D$  in Exercise 24. Use markings to show that the two halves are congruent.
- **26.** Copy triangle CAN shown at right. Use your protractor to find the <u>angle</u> bisector of  $\angle A$ . Label the point where it crosses  $\overline{CN}$  point Y. Use your ruler to find the midpoint of  $\overline{CN}$  and label it D. Are D and Y the same point?



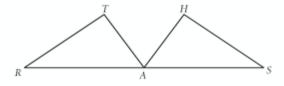
For Exercises 27–29, draw a clock face with hands to show these times.

**30.** Give an example of a time when the angle made by the hands of the clock will be greater than  $90^{\circ}$ .

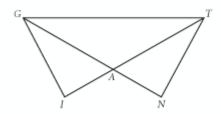
For Exercises 31–34, copy each figure and mark it with all the given information.



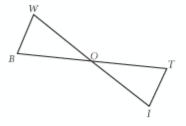
32. 
$$RA = SA$$
  
 $m \angle T = m \angle H$   
 $RT = SH$ 



33. 
$$AT = AG$$
  $\angle AGT \cong \angle ATG$   
 $AI = AN$   $GI = TN$ 

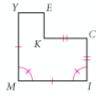


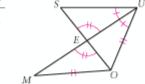
34. 
$$\overline{BW} \cong \overline{TI}$$
  $\angle WBT \cong \angle ITB$   
 $\overline{WO} \cong \overline{IO}$   $\angle BWO \cong \angle TIO$ 



For Exercises 35 and 36, write down what you know from the markings. Do not use your protractor or your ruler.

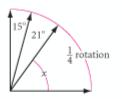
35. 
$$MI = ?$$
  
 $IC = ?$   
 $m \angle M = ?$ 



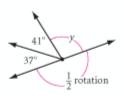


For Exercises 37–39, do not use a protractor. Recall from Chapter 0 that a complete rotation around a point is  $360^{\circ}$ . Find the angle measures represented by each letter.

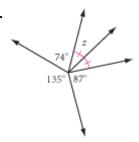
**37. (h)** 



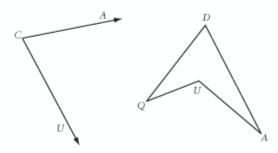
38.



39.



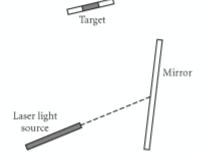
**40.** Use your protractor to determine the reflex measure of  $\angle ACU$ .



- **41.** Use your protractor to determine the reflex measure of  $\angle QUA$ .
- **42.** What is the relationship between the measure of an angle and the reflex measure of the angle?
- **43.** If the 4-ball is hit as shown, will it go into the corner pocket? Find the path of the ball using only your protractor and straightedge.



**44.** The principle you just learned for billiard balls is also true for sound or radio waves bouncing off a surface or for a ray of light reflecting from a mirror. If you hold a laser light angled at the mirror as shown, will the light from the laser hit the target object? Explain.



#### Review

**45.** If points A, B, and C are collinear and B is between A and C, then AB + BC = AC. This is called **segment addition**. Solve the following problem and explain how it represents segment addition.

Podunkville, Smallville, and Gotham City lie along a straight highway with Smallville between the other two towns. If Podunkville and Smallville are 70 km apart and Smallville and Gotham City are 110 km apart, how far apart are Podunkville and Gotham City?

- **46.** Use your ruler to draw a segment with length 12 cm. Then use your ruler to locate the midpoint. Label and mark the figure.
- **47.** The balancing point of an object is called its *center of gravity*. Where is the center of gravity of a thin, rodlike piece of wire or tubing? Copy the thin wire shown below onto your paper. Mark the balance point or center of gravity.



- 48. Explain the difference between MS = DG and MS ≅ DG.
- **49.** Use your ruler and protractor to draw a triangle with angle measures 40° and 70°. Explain your method. Can you draw a second triangle with these two angle measures that looks different from the first?



How is the center of gravity incorporated into the design of this structure?

# IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

## Coin Swap I

Arrange two dimes and two pennies on a grid of five squares, as shown. Your task is to switch the position of the two dimes and two pennies in exactly eight moves. A coin can slide into an empty square next to it, or it can jump over one coin into an empty space. Record your solution by drawing eight diagrams that show the moves.











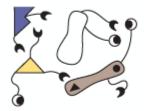
# What's a Widget?

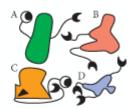
Good definitions are very important in geometry. In this lesson you will write your own geometry definitions.

Which creatures in the last group are Widgets?

"When I use a word," Humpty replied in a scornful tone, "it means just what I choose it to mean—neither more nor less." "The question is," said Alice, "whether you can make a word mean so many different things." LEWIS CARROLL





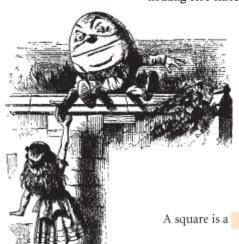


Widgets

Not Widgets

Which are Widgets?

You might have asked yourself, "What things do all the Widgets have in common, and what things do Widgets have that others do not have?" In other words, what characteristics make a Widget a Widget? They all have colorful bodies with nothing else inside; two tails—one like a crescent moon, the other like an eyeball.



By observing what a Widget is and what a Widget isn't, you identified the characteristics that distinguish a Widget from a non-Widget. Based on these characteristics, you should have selected A as the only Widget in the last group. This same process can help you write good definitions of geometric figures.

This statement defines a protractor: "A protractor is a geometry tool used to measure angles." First, you classify what it is (a geometry tool), then you say how it differs from other geometry tools (it is the one you use to measure angles). What should go in the blanks to define a square?

Classify it. What is it? How does it differ from others?

Once you've written a definition, you should test it. To do this, you look for a **counter example.** That is, try to create a figure that fits your definition but isn't what you're trying to define. If you can come up with a counterexample for your definition, you don't have a good definition.

#### **EXAMPLE A**

Everyone knows, "A square is a figure with four equal sides." What's wrong with this definition?

- **a.** Sketch a counterexample. (You can probably find more than one!)
- **b.** Write a better definition for a square.

#### Solution

You probably noticed that "figure" is not specific enough to classify a square, and that "four equal sides" does not specify how it differs from the first counterexample shown below.

**a.** Three counterexamples are shown here, and you may have found others too.







**b.** One better definition is "A square is a 4-sided figure that has all sides congruent and all angles measuring 90 degrees."

### **Beginning Steps to Creating a Good Definition**

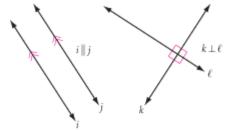
- **1. Classify** your term. What is it? ("A square is a 4-sided figure . . .")
- 2. Differentiate your term. How does it differ from others in that class? ("... that has four congruent sides and four right angles.")
- **3. Test** your definition by looking for a counterexample.



A restaurant counter example

Ready to write a couple of definitions? First, here are two more types of markings that are very important in geometry.

The same number of arrow marks indicates that lines are parallel. The symbol | means "is parallel to." A small square in the corner of an angle indicates that it measures 90°. The symbol  $\perp$  means "is perpendicular to."



#### EXAMPLE B

Define these terms:

- a. Parallel lines
- **b.** Perpendicular lines
- Solution

Following these steps, classify and differentiate each term.



Differentiate.



- **a.** Parallel lines are lines in the same plane that never meet.
- **b.** Perpendicular lines are lines that meet at 90° angles.

Why do you need to say "in the same plane" for parallel lines, but not for perpendicular lines? Sketch or demonstrate a counterexample to show the following definition is incomplete: "Parallel lines are lines that never meet." (Two lines that do not intersect and are noncoplanar are skew lines.)



# Investigation

# **Defining Angles**

Here are some examples and non-examples of special types of angles.

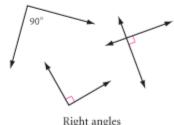
Step 1 Write a definition for each boldfaced term. Make sure your definitions highlight

important differences. Step 2 Trade definitions and test each other's definitions by looking for counterexamples.

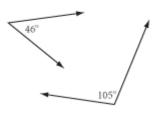
Step 3 If another group member finds a counterexample to one of your definitions, write a better definition. As a group, decide on the best definition for each term.

Step 4 As a class, agree on common definitions. Add these to your notebook. Draw and label a picture to illustrate each definition.

#### **Right Angle**



Right angles

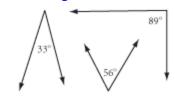


Not right angles

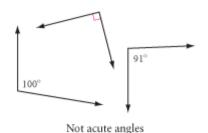


Notice the many congruent angles in this Navajo transitional Wedgeweave blanket. Are they right, acute, or obtuse angles?

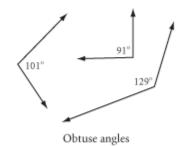
#### **Acute Angle**

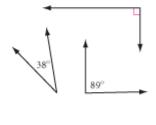


Acute angles



#### **Obtuse Angle**





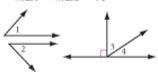
Not obtuse angles



► You can also view the **Dynamic Geometry Exploration** Three Types of Angles at www.keymath.com/DG , 4]

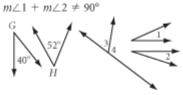
#### **Complementary Angles**

$$m \angle 1 + m \angle 2 = 90^{\circ}$$



Pairs of complementary angles:

$$\angle 1$$
 and  $\angle 2$ 

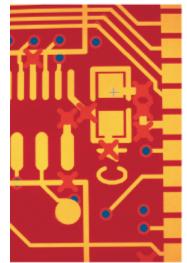


Not pairs of complementary angles:

 $\angle 1$  and  $\angle 2$ 

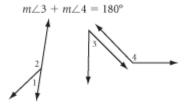
$$\angle G$$
 and  $\angle H$ 

$$\angle 3$$
 and  $\angle 4$ 



What types of angles or angle pairs do you see in this magnified view of a computer chip?

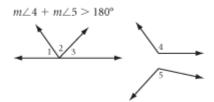
### **Supplementary Angles**



Pairs of supplementary angles:

$$\angle 1$$
 and  $\angle 2$ 

$$\angle 3$$
 and  $\angle 4$ 

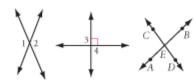


Not pairs of supplementary angles:

$$\angle 1$$
,  $\angle 2$ , and  $\angle 3$ 

$$\angle 4$$
 and  $\angle 5$ 

#### **Vertical Angles**



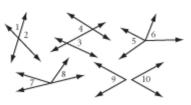
Pairs of vertical angles:

$$\angle 1$$
 and  $\angle 2$ 

$$\angle 3$$
 and  $\angle 4$ 

$$\angle AED$$
 and  $\angle BEC$ 

$$\angle AEC$$
 and  $\angle DEB$ 

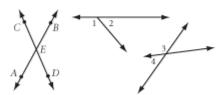


Not pairs of vertical angles:

$$\angle 1$$
 and  $\angle 2$ 

$$\angle 3$$
 and  $\angle 4$ 

## **Linear Pair of Angles**



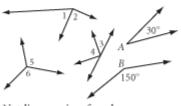
Linear pairs of angles:

$$\angle 1$$
 and  $\angle 2$ 

$$\angle 3$$
 and  $\angle 4$ 

$$\angle AED$$
 and  $\angle AEC$ 

$$\angle BED$$
 and  $\angle DEA$ 



Not linear pairs of angles:

$$\angle 1$$
 and  $\angle 2$ 

$$\angle 3$$
 and  $\angle 4$ 

$$\angle A$$
 and  $\angle B$ 

Often geometric definitions are easier to write if you refer to labeled figures. For example, you can define the midpoint of a line segment by saying: "Point *M* is the midpoint of segment *AB* if *M* is a point on segment *AB*, and *AM* is equal to *MB*."

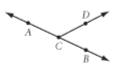


#### **EXAMPLE C**

Use a labeled figure to define a linear pair of angles.

#### Solution

 $\angle ACD$  and  $\angle BCD$  form a linear pair of angles if point C is on  $\overline{AB}$  and lies between points A and B.



Compare this definition with the one you wrote in the investigation. Can there be more than one correct definition?



The design of this African Kente cloth contains examples of parallel and perpendicular lines, obtuse and acute angles, and complementary and supplementary angle pairs. To learn about the significance of Kente cloth designs, visit www.keymath.com/DG

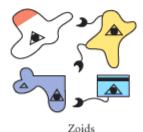


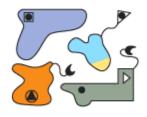
### **EXERCISES**

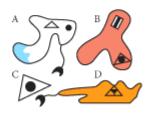
For Exercises 1–8, draw and carefully label the figures. Use the appropriate marks to indicate right angles, parallel lines, congruent segments, and congruent angles. Use a protractor and a ruler when you need to.

- **1.** Acute angle DOG with a measure of  $45^{\circ}$
- **3.** Obtuse angle BIG with angle bisector  $\overline{IE}$
- 5.  $\overrightarrow{PE} \perp \overrightarrow{AR}$
- 7. Complementary angles  $\angle A$  and  $\angle B$  with  $m\angle A = 40^{\circ}$

- 2. Right angle RTE
- **4.**  $\overrightarrow{DG} \parallel \overrightarrow{MS}$
- **6.** Vertical angles ABC and DBE
- **8.** Supplementary angles  $\angle C$  and  $\angle D$  with  $m\angle D = 40^{\circ}$
- 9. Which creatures in the last group below are Zoids? What makes a Zoid a Zoid?







Not Zoids

Which are Zoids?

- 10. What are the characteristics of a good definition?
- 11. What is the difference between complementary and supplementary angles?

- 12. If  $\angle X$  and  $\angle Y$  are supplementary angles, are they necessarily a linear pair? Why or why not?
- 13. Write these definitions using the classify and differentiate method to fill in the blanks:
  - **a.** An acute angle is \_\_\_\_\_ that \_\_\_\_
  - **b.** Complementary angles are that .
  - **c.** A midpoint is \_\_\_\_\_ that \_\_\_\_.
  - **d.** A protractor is that .
- **14.** There is something wrong with this definition for a pair of vertical angles: "If  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{CD}$  intersect at point P, then  $\angle APC$  and  $\angle BPD$  are a pair of vertical angles." Sketch a counterexample to show why it is not correct. Can you add a phrase to correct it?

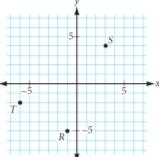
For Exercises 15-24, four of the statements are true. Make a sketch or demonstrate each true statement. For each false statement, draw a counterexample.

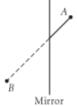
- **15.** For every line segment there is exactly one midpoint.
- **16.** For every angle there is exactly one angle bisector.
- 17. If two different lines intersect, then they intersect at one and only one point.
- **18.** If two different circles intersect, then they intersect at one and only one point.
- 19. Through a given point on a line, there is one and only one line perpendicular to the given line. 6
- **20.** In every triangle there is exactly one right angle.
- 21. Through a point not on a line, one and only one line can be constructed parallel to the given line.
- 22. If CA = AT, then A is the midpoint of CT.
- 23. If  $m \angle D = 40^{\circ}$  and  $m \angle C = 140^{\circ}$ , then angles C and D are a linear pair.
- **24.** If point A is not the midpoint of  $\overline{CT}$ , then  $CA \neq AT$ .

#### Review

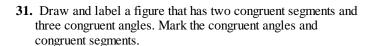
For Exercises 25 and 26, refer to the graph at right.

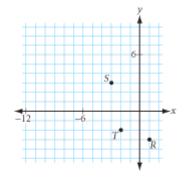
- **25.** Find possible coordinates of a point *P* so that points P, T, and S are collinear.
- **26.** Find possible coordinates of a point Q so that  $\overline{QR}$  //  $\overline{TS}$ .
- 27. A partial mirror reflects some light and lets the rest of the light pass through. In the figure at right, half the light from point A passes through the partial mirror to point B. Copy the figure, then draw the outgoing angle for the light reflected from the mirror. What do you notice about the ray of reflected light and the ray of light that passes through?





- **28.** Find possible coordinates of points A, B, and C on the graph at right so that  $\angle BAC$  is a right angle,  $\angle BAT$  is an acute angle,  $\angle ABS$  is an obtuse angle, and the points C, T, and R are collinear.
- **29.** If *D* is the midpoint of  $\overline{AC}$  and *C* is the midpoint of  $\overline{AB}$ , and AD = 3cm, what is the length of  $\overline{AB}$ ?
- **30.** If  $\overrightarrow{BD}$  is the angle bisector of  $\angle ABC$ ,  $\overrightarrow{BE}$  is the angle bisector of  $\angle ABD$ , and  $m\angle DBC = 24^{\circ}$ , what is  $m\angle EBC$ ?





- **32.** Show how three lines in a plane can have zero, exactly one, exactly two, or exactly three points of intersection.
- **33.** Show how it is possible for two triangles to intersect in one point, two points, three points, four points, five points, or six points, but not seven points. Show how they can intersect in infinitely many points.
- **34.** Each pizza is cut into slices from the center.
  - **a.** What fraction of the pizza is left?
- **b.** What fraction of the pizza is missing?
- **c.** If the pizza is cut into nine equal slices, how many degrees is each angle at the center of the pizza?







# IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

## **Polyominoes**

In 1953, United States mathematician Solomon Golomb introduced polyominoes at the Harvard Mathematics Club, and they have been played with and enjoyed throughout the world ever since. Polyominoes are shapes made by connecting congruent squares. The squares are joined together side to side. (A complete side must touch a complete side.) Some of the smaller polyominoes are shown below. There is only one monomino and only one domino, but there are two trominoes, as shown. There are five tetrominoes—one is shown. Sketch the other four.





# **Polygons**

A polygon is a closed figure in a plane, formed by connecting line segments endpoint to endpoint with each segment intersecting exactly two others. Each line segment is called a side of the polygon. Each endpoint where the sides meet is called a vertex of the polygon.

There are two kinds of people in this world: those who divide everything into two groups, and those who don't. KENNETH BOULDING

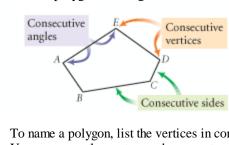




Polygons

Not Polygons

You classify a polygon by the number of sides it has. Familiar polygons have specific names, listed in this table. The ones without specific names are called *n*-sided polygons, or *n*-gons. For instance, you call a 25-sided polygon a 25-gon.



To name a polygon, list the vertices in consecutive order. You can name the pentagon above pentagon ABCDE. You can also call it DCBAE, but not BCAED. When the polygon is a triangle, you use the triangle symbol. For example,  $\triangle$  ABC means triangle ABC.



Pentagon ABCDE

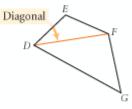


 $\triangle ABC$ 

Sides	Name
3	Triangle
4	Quadrilateral
5	Pentagon
6	Hexagon
7	Heptagon
8	Octagon
9	Nonagon
10	Decagon
11	Undecagon
12	Dodecagon
n	n-gon

A diagonal of a polygon is a line segment that connects two nonconsecutive vertices.

A polygon is **convex** if no diagonal is outside the polygon. A polygon is **concave** if at least one diagonal is outside the polygon.





Convex polygons: All diagonals are inside



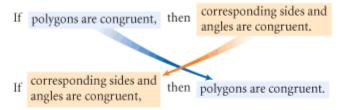


Concave polygons: One or more diagonals are outside

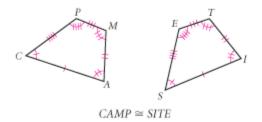
Recall that two segments or two angles are congruent if and only if they have the same measures. Two polygons are **congruent** if and only if they are exactly the same size and shape. "If and only if' means that the statements work both ways.



How does the shape of the framework of this Marc Chagall (1887–1985) stained glass window support the various shapes of the design?



For example, if quadrilateral *CAMP* is congruent to quadrilateral *SITE*, then their four pairs of corresponding angles and four pairs of corresponding sides are also congruent. When you write a statement of congruence, always write the letters of the corresponding vertices in an order that shows the correspondences.



#### **EXAMPLE**

Which polygon is congruent to *ABCDE*?  $ABCDE \cong ?$ 









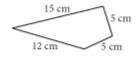
#### Solution

Polygons *JKFGH* and *ABCDE* have all corresponding angles congruent, but not all corresponding sides. Polygons *STUVW* and *ABCDE* have all corresponding sides congruent, but not all corresponding angles.

All corresponding sides and angles must be congruent, so  $ABCDE \cong NPQLM$ .

You could also say  $ABCDE \cong NMLQP$  because all the congruent parts would still match.

The **perimeter** of a polygon equals the sum of the lengths of its sides. Perimeter measures the length of the boundary of a two-dimensional figure.

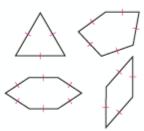


The quadrilateral at right has perimeter 37 cm.

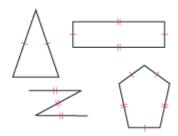


Write a good definition of each boldfaced term. Discuss your definitions with others in your group. Agree on a common set of definitions for your class and add them to your definitions list. In your notebook, draw and label a figure to illustrate each definition.

#### **Equilateral Polygon**



Equilateral polygons

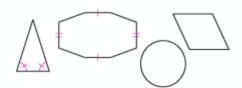


Not equilateral polygons

#### **Equiangular Polygon**

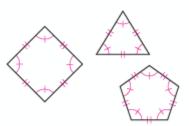


Equiangular polygons

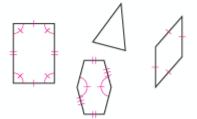


Not equiangular polygons

#### Regular Polygon



Regular polygons



Not regular polygons

# EXERCISES



For Exercises 1–3, draw an example of each polygon.

1. Quadrilateral

2. Dodecagon

3. Octagon

For Exercises 4–7, classify each polygon. Assume that all sides are straight.

4.



5.



6.

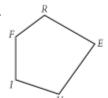


7.

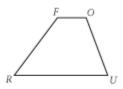


For Exercises 8–10, give one possible name for each polygon.

8.



9.



10.



11. Write these definitions using the classify and differentiate method to fill in the blanks:

**a.** An octagon is that .

**b.** A concave polygon is \_\_\_\_\_ that \_\_\_\_\_.

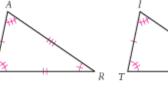
c. A 20-gon, also called an icosagon, is \_\_\_\_\_\_ that \_\_\_\_\_.

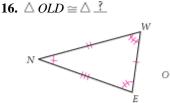
**d.** An equilateral polygon is \_\_\_\_\_ that \_\_\_\_.

- 12. Name a pair of consecutive angles and a pair of consecutive sides in the figure at right.
- 13. Draw a concave hexagon. How many diagonals does it have?
- **14.** Name the diagonals of pentagon *ABCDE*.

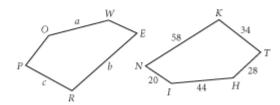
For Exercises 15 and 16, use the information given to name the triangle that is congruent to the first one.



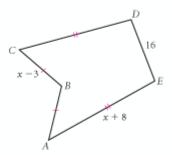




- 17. In the figure at right, THINK  $\cong$  POWER.
  - **a.** Find the measures a, b, and c.
  - **b.** If  $m \angle P = 87^{\circ}$  and  $m \angle W = 165^{\circ}$ , which angles in THINK do you know? Write their measures.

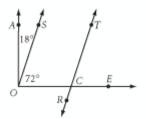


- **18.** If pentagon *FIVER* is congruent to pentagon *PANCH*, then which side in pentagon *FIVER* is congruent to side  $\overline{PA?}$  Which angle in pentagon *PANCH* is congruent to  $\angle IVE?$
- **19.** Use your geometry tools to draw a convex hexagon with two consecutive sides measuring 5 cm and three consecutive angles measuring 130°.
- **20.** Draw an equilateral concave pentagon. Then draw an equiangular convex pentagon.
- **21.** Each side of a regular dodecagon measures 7 in. Find the perimeter.
- **22.** The perimeter of an equilateral octagon is 42 cm. Find the length of each side.
- **23.** The perimeter of *ABCDE* is 94 m. Find the lengths of segments *AB* and *CD*.



#### Review

- **24.** Name a pair of complementary angles and a pair of vertical angles in the figure at right.
- **25.** Draw  $\overrightarrow{AB}$ ,  $\overrightarrow{CD}$ , and  $\overrightarrow{EF}$  with  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  //  $\overrightarrow{CD}$  and  $\overrightarrow{CD} \perp \overrightarrow{EF}$ .
- **26.** Draw a counterexample to show that this statement is false: "If a rectangle has perimeter 50 meters, then a pair of consecutive sides measures 10 meters and 15 meters."



**27.** Is it possible for four lines in a plane to have exactly zero points of intersection? One point? Two points? Three points? Four points? Five points? Six points? Draw a figure to support each of your answers.

# IMPROVING YOUR VISUAL THINKING SKILLS

## Coin Swap II

Arrange three dimes and three pennies on a grid of seven squares, as shown. Follow the same rules as in Coin Swap I on page 46 to switch the position of the three dimes and three pennies in exactly 15 moves. Record your solution by listing in order which coin is moved. For example, your list might begin PDP. . . .

















The difference between the right word and the almost right word is the difference between lightning and the lightning bug.

MARK TWAIN

# **Triangles**

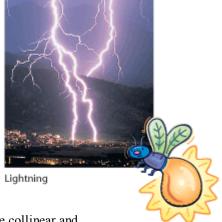
You have learned to be careful with geometry definitions. It turns out that you also have to be careful with diagrams.

When you look at a diagram, be careful not to assume too much from it. To **assume** something is to accept it as true without facts or proof.

#### Things you may assume:

You may assume that lines are straight, and if two lines intersect, they intersect at one point.

You may assume that points on a line are collinear and that all points shown in a diagram are coplanar unless planes are drawn to show that they are noncoplanar.



Not lightning

#### Things you may not assume:

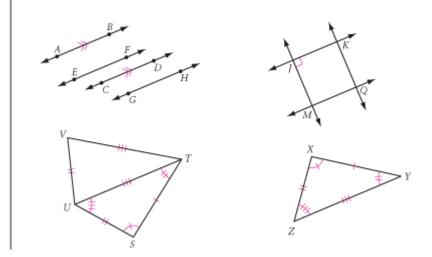
You may not assume that just because two lines or segments *look* parallel that they *are* parallel—they must be *marked* parallel!

You may not assume that two lines *are* perpendicular just because they *look* perpendicular—they must be *marked* perpendicular!

Pairs of angles, segments, or polygons are not necessarily congruent unless they are *marked* with information that tells you they must be congruent!

#### **EXAMPLE**

In the diagrams below, which pairs of lines are perpendicular? Which pairs of lines are parallel? Which pair of triangles is congruent?



## Solution

By studying the markings, you can tell that  $\overrightarrow{AB} \parallel \overrightarrow{CD}, \overrightarrow{JK} \perp \overrightarrow{JM}$ , and  $\triangle STU \cong \triangle XYZ$ .

In this lesson you will write definitions that classify different kinds of triangles based on relationships among their sides and angles.



# Investigation

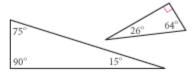
# Triangles

Write a good definition of each boldfaced term. Discuss your definitions with others in your group. Agree on a common set of definitions for your class and add them to your definition list. In your notebook, draw and label a figure to illustrate each definition.

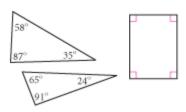
## **Right Triangle**



What shape is the basis for the design on this textile from Uzbekistan?

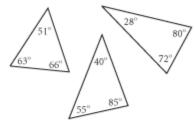


Right triangles

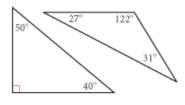


Not right triangles

#### **Acute Triangle**

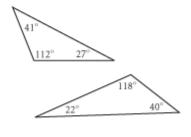


Acute triangles

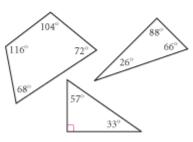


Not acute triangles

## **Obtuse Triangle**



Obtuse triangles



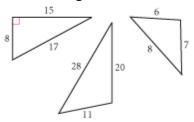
Not obtuse triangles

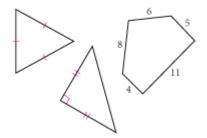
The Sol LeWitt (b 1928, United States) design inside this art museum uses triangles and quadrilaterals to create a painting the size of an entire room.

Sol LeWitt, Wall Drawing #652—On three walls, continuous forms with color ink washes superimposed, color in wash. Collection: Indianapolis Museum of Art, Indianapolis, IN. September, 1990. Courtesy of the artist.



#### Scalene Triangle

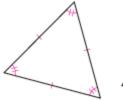




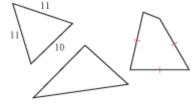
Scalene triangles

Not scalene triangles

### **Equilateral Triangle**



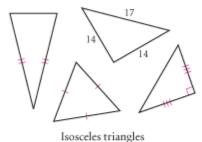


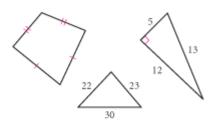


Equilateral triangles

Not equilateral triangles

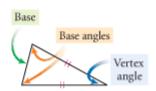
#### Isosceles Triangle





Not isosceles triangles

In an isosceles triangle, the angle between the two sides of equal length is called the **vertex angle**. The side opposite the vertex angle is called the **base** of the isoceles triangle. The two angles opposite the two sides of equal length are called the **base angles** of the isoceles triangle.



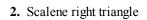
# **EXERCISES**

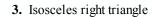


For Exercises 1–4, match the term on the left with its figure on the right.

D.

1. Equilateral triangle





4. Isosceles obtuse triangle



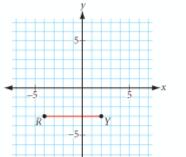


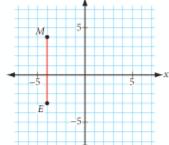


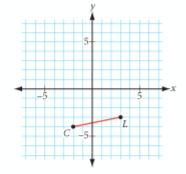
For Exercises 5–9, sketch and label the figure. Mark the figures.

- **5.** Isosceles acute triangle ACT with AC = CT
- **6.** Scalene triangle *SCL* with angle bisector  $\overline{CM}$
- 7. Isosceles right triangle CAR with  $m\angle CRA = 90^{\circ}$
- **8.** Two different isosceles triangles with perimeter 4a + b
- 9. Two noncongruent triangles, each with side 6 cm and an angle measuring  $40^{\circ}$
- **10.** Use your ruler and protractor to draw an isosceles acute triangle with base *AC* and vertex angle *B*.
- **11.** Use your ruler and protractor to draw an isosceles obtuse triangle *ZAP* with base angles *A* and *Z*.

For Exercises 12–14, use the graphs below. Can you find more than one answer?







- **12.** Locate a point *L* so that  $\triangle LRY$  is an isosceles triangle.
- **13.** Locate a point O so that  $\triangle MOE$  is an isosceles right triangle.
- **14.** Locate a point *R* so that  $\triangle CRL$  is an isosceles right triangle.

- **15.** Use your ruler and protractor to draw a triangle with one side 9 cm long and an adjacent angle measuring 45°. Explain your method. Can you draw a second triangle with the given measures that is not congruent to the first?
- **16.** Use your ruler and protractor to draw a triangle with one angle measuring 40° and an opposite side 10 cm long. Explain your method. Can you draw a second triangle with the given measures that is not congruent to the first?

## Review

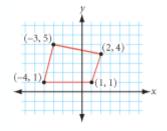
For Exercises 17–21, tell whether the statement is true or false. For each false statement, sketch a counterexample or explain why the statement is false.

- 17. An acute angle is an angle whose measure is less than 90°.
- **18.** If two lines intersect to form a right angle, then the lines are perpendicular.
- 19. A diagonal is a line segment that connects any two vertices of a polygon.
- **20.** A ray that divides the angle into two angles is the angle bisector.
- **21.** An obtuse triangle has exactly one angle whose measure is greater than 90°.
- **22.** Use the ordered pair rule  $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 1, y 3)$  to relocate the four vertices of the given quadrilateral. Connect the four new points to create a new quadrilateral. Do the two quadrilaterals appear congruent? Check your guess with tracing paper or patty paper.
- 23. Suppose a set of thin rods is glued together into a triangle as shown. How would you place the triangular arrangement of rods onto the edge of a ruler so that they balance? Explain why.

For Exercises 24–26, sketch and carefully label the figure. Mark the congruent parts.



- **25.** Hexagon *NGAXEH* with  $\angle HEX \cong \angle EXA$
- **26.** Equiangular quadrilateral QUAD with  $QU \neq QD$





# IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### Pentominoes I

In Polyominoes, you learned about shapes called polyominoes. Polyominoes with five squares are called pentominoes. Can you find all possible pentominoes? One is shown at right. Use graph paper or square dot paper to sketch them.





© 2008 Key Curriculum Press



If you don't live it, it won't come out of your horn. CHARLIE PARKER

# **Special Quadrilaterals**

f you attach two congruent triangles, you create many different quadrilaterals that have special properties. For example, the quadrilaterals in the photo at right can be formed by reflecting an isosceles triangle across its base, resulting in a quadrilateral with four equal sides. In this lesson you will define different types of special quadrilaterals based on relationships of their sides and angles.



How many shapes make up the overall triangular shapes of these pyramids at the Louvre in Paris?

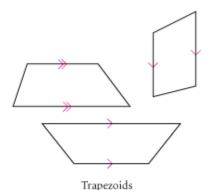


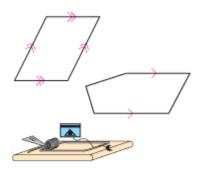
# Investigation

# **Special Quadrilaterals**

Write a good definition of each boldfaced term. Discuss your definitions with others in your group. Agree on a common set of definitions for your class and add them to your definitions list. In your notebook, draw and label a figure to illustrate each definition.

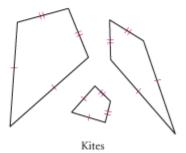
## **Trapezoid**



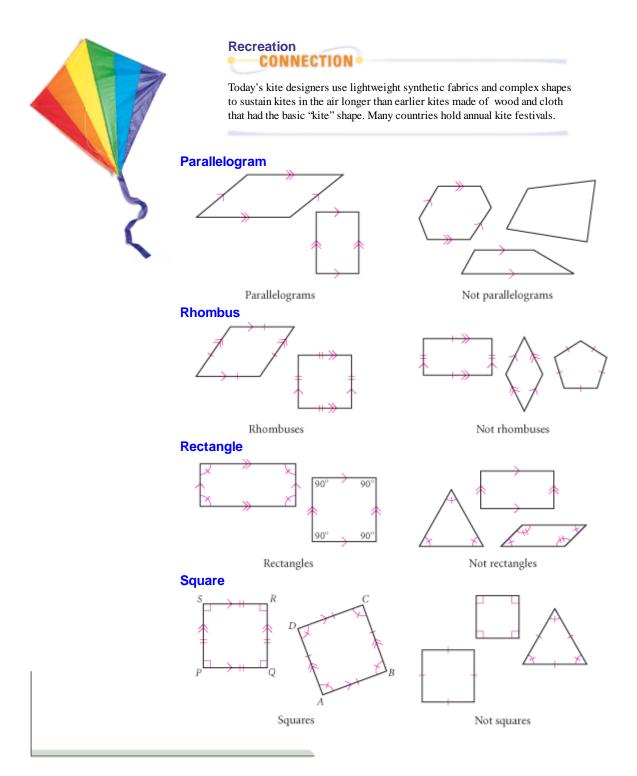


Not trapezoids





Not kites

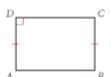


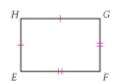
As you learned in the investigation, a figure that looks like a square is not a square unless it has the proper markings. Keep this in mind as you work on the exercises.

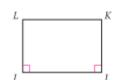
# **EXERCISES**

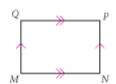


1. Based on the marks, what can you assume to be true in each figure?









For Exercises 2–6, match the term on the left with its figure on the right.

2. Trapezoid 3. Rhombus

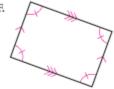




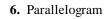


4. Rectangle





5. Kite



For Exercises 7–10, sketch and label the figure. Mark the figures.

- 7. Trapezoid ZOID with  $\overline{ZO} //\overline{ID}$
- **9.** Rhombus EQUL with diagonals  $E\overline{U}$  and  $Q\overline{L}$ intersecting at A
- 11. Draw a hexagon with exactly two outside diagonals.
- **8.** Kite BENF with BE = EN
- **10.** Rectangle *RGHT* with diagonals  $\overline{RH}$  and  $\overline{GT}$ intersecting at I
- 12. Draw a regular quadrilateral. What is another name for this shape?
- 13. Find the other two vertices of a square with one vertex (0, 0) and another vertex (4, 2). Can you find another answer?

# **Architecture**

# CONNECTION •

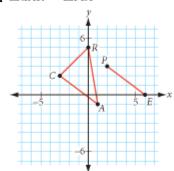
Quadrilaterals are used in the architecture of many cultures for both practical purposes and aesthetic appeal. The Acoma Pueblo Dwellings in New Mexico, the Chichén Itzá pyramid in Mexico, and the spiral staircase in an apartment house designed by Austrian architect and artist Friedensreich Hundertwasser (1928–2000) all use quadrilateral-based designs for constructing climbing structures and enhancing overall attractiveness.



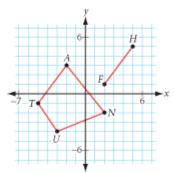
**14.** A rectangle with perimeter 198 cm is divided into five congruent rectangles, as shown in the diagram at right. What is the perimeter of one of the five congruent rectangles?

For Exercises 15–18, copy the given polygon and segment onto graph paper. Give the coordinates of the missing points.

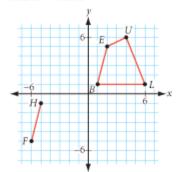
15.  $\triangle CAR \cong \triangle PET$ 



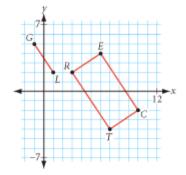
16. TUNA ≅ FISH



17. BLUE ≅ FISH



18. RECT ≅ ANGL



- **19.** Draw and cut out two congruent acute scalene triangles.
  - **a.** Arrange them into a kite. Sketch the result and mark all congruent sides.
  - **b.** Arrange them into a parallelogram. Sketch the result and mark all congruent sides.
- **20.** Draw and cut out two congruent obtuse isosceles triangles. Which special quadrilaterals can you create with these two congruent triangles? Explain.
- 21. Imagine using two congruent triangles to create a special quadrilateral, as you did in the last two exercises.
  - **a.** What type of triangles do you need to form a rectangle? Explain.
  - **b.** What type of triangles do you need to form a square? Explain.



The repeating pattern of squares and triangles creates a geometric tree in this quilt design by Diane Venters. What other polygons can you find in this quilt?

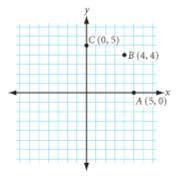
## Review

For Exercises 22–24, sketch and carefully label the figure. Mark the congruent parts.

**22.** A hexagon with exactly one line of reflectional symmetry



- 23. Two different equilateral pentagons with perimeter 25 cm
- **24.** Use your compass, protractor, and straightedge to draw a regular pentagon.
- **25.** Draw an equilateral octagon *ABCDEFGH* with A(5, 0), B(4, 4), and C(0, 5) as three of its vertices. Is it regular?



# project

#### DRAWING THE IMPOSSIBLE

Some optical illusions are tricks—they at first appear to be drawings of real objects, but actually they are impossible to make, except on paper.

For instance, see the photograph and drawings shown here, and the two pieces by

M. C. Escher on p. 421 and p. 477. Try drawing some impossible objects. First, copy these two impossible objects by drawing them on full sheets of paper. Then create one of your own, either in a drawing or photograph.

Your project should include

- ▶ The two impossible drawings below.
- Your own impossible drawing or photograph.







From WALTER WICK'S OPTICAL TRICKS. Published by Cartwheel Books, a division of Scholastic Inc. @1998 by Walter Wick Reprinted by permission.

To see more examples or to further explore optical illusions, visitwww.keymath.com/DG



LESSON

1.7

I can never remember things I didn't understand in the first place. AMY TAN

# **Circles**

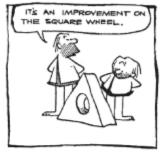
Unless you walked to school this morning, you arrived on a vehicle with circular wheels.

A **circle** is the set of all points in a plane at a given distance from a given point. The given distance is called the **radius** and the given point is called the **center**. You name a circle by its center. The circle on the bicycle wheel, with center *O*, is called circle *O*. When you see a dot at the center of a circle, you can assume that it represents the center point.

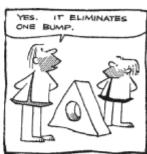
A segment from the center to a point on the edge of the circle is called a radius. Its length is also called the radius. A bicycle wheel is a physical model of a circle, and one spoke is a close physical model of a radius.











By permission of Johnny Hart and Creators Syndicate, Inc.

# Science CONNECTION

A pebble dropped in a pond sends out circular ripples. These waves radiate from the point where the pebble hits the water in all directions at the same speed, so every point is equally distant from the center. This unique property of circles appears in many other real-world contexts, such as radio waves sent from an antenna, seismic waves moving from the center of an earthquake, or sand draining out of a hole.





# **Defining Circle Terms**

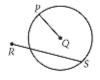
Step 1

Write a good definition of each boldfaced term. Discuss your definitions with others in your group. Agree on a common set of definitions as a class and add them to your definition list. In your notebook, draw and label a figure to illustrate each definition.

#### **Chord**



H





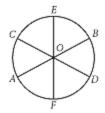
Chords:

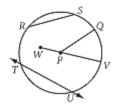
 $\overline{AB}$ ,  $\overline{CD}$ ,  $\overline{EF}$ ,  $\overline{GH}$ , and  $\overline{IJ}$ 

Not chords:

 $\overline{PQ}$ ,  $\overline{RS}$ ,  $\overline{TU}$ , and  $\overline{VW}$ 

#### **Diameter**





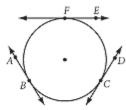
Diameters:

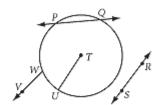
 $\overline{AB}$ ,  $\overline{CD}$ , and  $\overline{EF}$ 

Not diameters:

$$\overline{PQ}$$
,  $\overline{RS}$ ,  $\overline{TU}$ , and  $\overline{VW}$ 

### **Tangent**





Tangents:

 $\overrightarrow{AB}$ ,  $\overrightarrow{CD}$ , and  $\overrightarrow{EF}$ 

Not tangents:

$$\overline{PQ}$$
,  $\overline{RS}$ ,  $\overline{TU}$ , and  $\overline{VW}$ 

Note: You can say  $\overline{AB}$  is a tangent, or you can say  $\overline{AB}$  is tangent to circle O. The point where the tangent touches the circle is called the **point of tangency**.

Step 2

Can a chord of a circle also be a diameter of the circle? Can it be a tangent? Explain why or why not.

Step 3

Can two circles be tangent to the same line at the same point? Draw a sketch and explain.

If two or more circles have the same radius, they are **congruent circles.** If two or more coplanar circles share the same center, they are **concentric circles.** All the CDs represent congruent circles, but if you look closely at each CD, you can also see concentric circles.



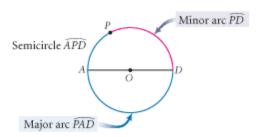


Congruent circles

Concentric circles

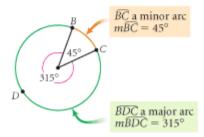
An **arc** of a circle is two points on the circle and a continuous (unbroken) part of the circle between the two points. The two points are called the **endpoints** of the arc.

You write arc AB as  $\overline{AB}$  or  $\overline{BA}$ . You classify arcs into three types: semicircles, minor arcs, and major arcs. A **semicircle** is an arc of a circle whose endpoints are the endpoints of a diameter. A **minor arc** is an arc of a circle that is smaller than a semicircle. A **major arc** is an arc of a circle that is larger than a semicircle. You can name minor arcs with the letters of the two endpoints. For semicircles and major arcs, you need three points to make clear which arc you mean—the first and last letters are the endpoints and the middle letter is any other point on the arc.



Try to name another minor arc and another major arc in this diagram. Why are three letters needed to name a major arc?

Arcs have a degree measure, just as angles do. A full circle has an arc measure of 360°, a semicircle has an arc measure of 180°, and so on. The **arc measure** of a minor arc is the same as the measure of the **central angle**, the angle with its vertex at the center of the circle, and sides passing through the endpoints of the arc. The measure of a major arc is the same as the reflex measure of the central angle.



# **EXERCISES**



1. In the photos below, identify the physical models that represent a circle, a radius, a chord, a tangent, and an arc of a circle.



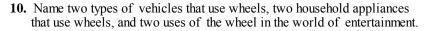
Circular irrigation on a farm



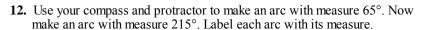
Japanese wood bridge

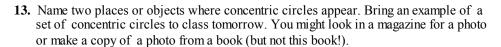
For Exercises 2–9, use the diagram at right. Points E, P, and C are collinear, and P is the center of the circle.

- 2. Name three chords.
- 3. Name one diameter.
- **4.** Name five radii.
- 5. Name five minor arcs.
- **6.** Name two semicircles.
- 7. Name two major arcs.
- 8. Name two tangents.
- 9. Name a point of tangency.

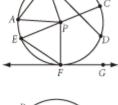


11. In the figure at right, what is  $m\overrightarrow{PQ}$ ?  $m\overrightarrow{PRQ}$ ?





- **14.** Sketch two circles that appear to be concentric. Then use your compass to construct a pair of concentric circles.
- **15.** Sketch circle *P*. Sketch a triangle inside circle *P* so that the three sides of the triangle are chords of the circle. This triangle is "inscribed" in the circle. Sketch another circle and label it *Q*. Sketch a triangle in the exterior of circle *Q* so that the three sides of the triangle are tangents of the circle. This triangle is "circumscribed" about the circle.

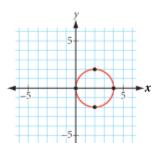




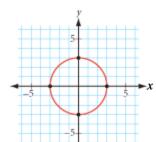
- **16.** Use your compass to construct two circles with the same radius intersecting at two points. Label the centers *P* and *Q*. Label the points of intersection of the two circles *A* and *B*. Construct quadrilateral *PAQB*. What type of quadrilateral is it?
- **17.** Do you remember the daisy construction from Chapter 0? Construct a circle with radius *s*. With the same compass setting, divide the circle into six congruent arcs. Construct the chords to form a regular hexagon inscribed in the circle. Construct radii to each of the six vertices. What type of triangle is formed? What is the ratio of the perimeter of the hexagon to the diameter of the circle?
- **18.** Sketch the path made by the midpoint of a radius of a circle if the radius is rotated about the center.

For Exercises 19–21, use the ordered pair rule shown to relocate the four points on the given circle. Can the four new points be connected to create a new circle? Does the new figure appear congruent to the original circle?

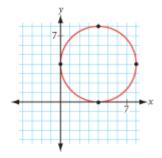
**19.**  $(x, y) \rightarrow (x-1, y+2)$ 



**20.**  $(x, y) \rightarrow (2x, 2y)$ 



**21.**  $(x, y) \rightarrow (2x, y)$ 



# Review

**22.** If point *D* is in the interior of  $\angle CAB$ , thenk  $m\angle CAD + m\angle DAB = m\angle CAB$ . called **angle addition.** Solve the following problem and explain how it is related to angle addition.

You have a slice of pizza with a central angle that measures 140° that you want to share with your friend. She cuts it through the vertex into two slices. You choose one slice that measures 60°. How many degrees are in the other slice?

For Exercises 23–26, draw each kind of triangle or write "not possible" and explain why. Use your geometry tools to make your drawings as accurate as possible.

23. Isosceles right triangle

24. Scalene isosceles triangle

25. Scalene obtuse triangle

**26.** Isosceles obtuse triangle

- **27.** Earth takes 365.25 days to travel one full revolution around the Sun. By approximately how many degrees does the Earth travel each day in its orbit around the Sun?
- **28.** Earth completes one full rotation each day, making the Sun appear to rise and set. If the Sun passes directly overhead, by how many degrees does its position in the sky change every hour?

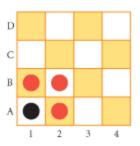
For Exercises 29–37, sketch, label, and mark the figure or write "not possible" and explain why.

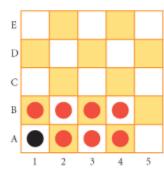
- **29.** Obtuse scalene triangle *FAT* with  $m \angle FAT = 100^{\circ}$
- **30.** Trapezoid TRAP with  $\overline{TR} \parallel \overline{AP}$  and  $\angle TRA$  a right angle
- 31. Two different (noncongruent) quadrilaterals with angles of 60°, 60°, 120°, and 120°
- **32.** Equilateral right triangle
- **33.** Right isosceles triangle RGT with RT = GT and  $m \angle RTG = 90^{\circ}$
- **34.** An equilateral triangle with perimeter 12a + 6b
- 35. Two triangles that are not congruent, each with angles measuring 50° and 70°
- **36.** Rhombus *EQUI* with perimeter 8p and  $m\angle IEQ = 55^{\circ}$
- 37. Kite KITE with TE = 2EK and  $m \angle TEK = 120^{\circ}$

# IMPROVING YOUR **REASONING** SKILLS

## Checkerboard Puzzle

- 1. Four checkers—three red and one black—are arranged on the corner of a checkerboard, as shown at right. Any checker can jump any other checker. The checker that was jumped over is then removed. With exactly three horizontal or vertical jumps, remove all three red checkers, leaving the single black checker. Record your solution.
- 2. Now, with exactly seven horizontal or vertical jumps, remove all seven red checkers, leaving the single black checker. Record your solution.









When curiosity turns to serious matters, it's called research

MARIE VON EBNER-ESCHENBACH

# **Space Geometry**

Lesson 1.1 introduced you to point, line, and plane. Throughout this chapter you have used these terms to define a wide range of other geometric figures, from rays to polygons. You did most of your work on a single flat surface, a single plane. Some problems, however, required you to step out of a single plane to visualize geometry in space. In this lesson you will learn more about space geometry, or solid geometry.

**Space** is the set of all points. Unlike one-dimensional lines and two-dimensional planes, space cannot be contained in a flat surface. Space is three-dimensional, or "3-D."





In an "edge view," you see the front edge of a building as a vertical line, and the other edges as diagonal lines. Isometric dot paper helps you draw these lines, as you can see in the steps below.



Let's practice the visual thinking skill of presenting three-dimensional (3-D) objects in two-dimensional (2-D) drawings.

The geometric solid you are probably most familiar with is a box, or rectangular prism. Below are steps for making a two-dimensional drawing of a rectangular prism. This type of drawing is called an **isometric drawing**. It shows three sides of an object in one view (an edge view). This method works best with isometric dot paper. After practicing, you will be able to draw the box without the aid of the dot grid.



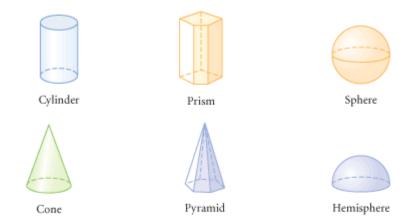




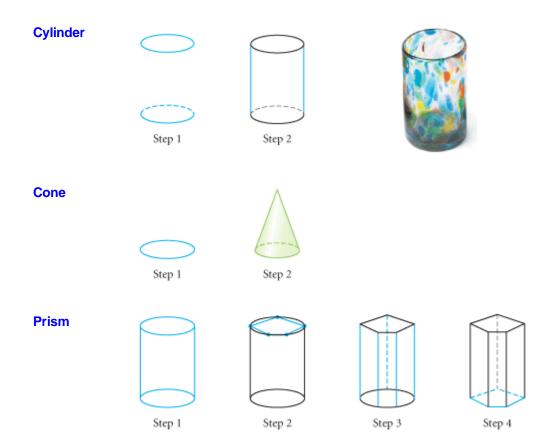


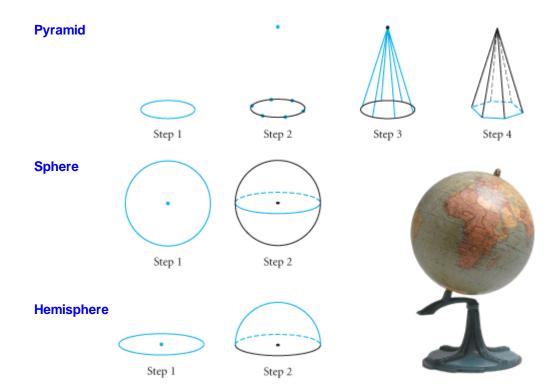
Use dashed lines for edges that you couldn't see if the object were solid.

The three-dimensional objects you will study include the six types of geometric solids shown below.



The shapes of these solids are probably already familiar to you even if you are not familiar with their proper names. The ability to draw these geometric solids is an important visual thinking skill. Here are some drawing tips. Remember to use dashes for the hidden lines.





Solid geometry also involves visualizing points and lines in space. In the following investigation, you will have to visualize relationships between geometric figures in a plane and in space.



# <u>Investigation</u>

# **Space Geometry**

Step 1

Make a sketch or use physical objects to demonstrate each statement in the list below.

Step 2

Work with your group to determine whether each statement is true or false. If the statement is false, draw a picture and explain why it is false.

- 1. For any two points, there is exactly one line that can be drawn through them.
- 2. For any line and a point not on the line, there is exactly one plane that can contain them.
- **3.** For any two lines, there is exactly one plane that contains them.
- **4.** If two coplanar lines are both perpendicular to a third line in the same plane, then the two lines are parallel.
- **5.** If two planes do not intersect, then they are parallel.
- **6.** If two lines do not intersect, then they are parallel.
- 7. If a line is perpendicular to two lines in a plane, and the line is not contained in the plane, then the line is perpendicular to the plane.

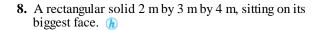
# **EXERCISES**

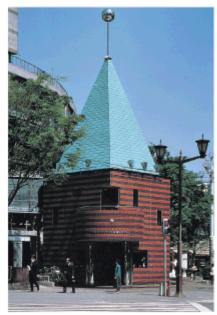


For Exercises 1–6, draw each figure. Study the drawing tips provided on the previous page before you start.

- 1. Cylinder
- 2. Cone
- 3. Prism with a hexagonal base
- 4. Sphere
- 5. Pyramid with a heptagonal base
- **6.** Hemisphere
- 7. The photo at right shows a prism-shaped building with a pyramid roof and a cylindrical porch. Draw a cylindrical building with a cone roof and a prism-shaped porch.

For Exercises 8 and 9, make a drawing to scale of each figure. Use isometric dot paper. Label each figure. (For example, in Exercise 8, draw the solid so that the dimensions measure 2 units by 3 units by 4 units, then label the figure with meters.)





A police station, or koban, in Tokyo, Japan

9. A rectangular solid 3 inches by 4 inches by 5 inches, resting on its smallest face. Draw lines on the three visible surfaces showing how you can divide the solid into cubic-inch boxes. How many such boxes will fit in the solid?

For Exercises 10–12, use isometric dot paper to draw the figure shown.

10.



11.



12.



A **net** is a two-dimensional pattern that you can cut and fold to form a three-dimensional figure. Another visual thinking skill you will need is the ability to visualize nets being folded into solid objects and geometric solids being unfolded into nets. The net below left can be folded into a cube and the net below right can be folded into a pyramid.

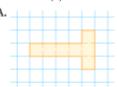


Net for a cube

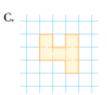


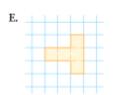
Net for a square-based pyramid

#### 13. Which net(s) will fold to make a cube?









For Exercises 14–17, match the net with its geometric solid.

14.



**15.** 



16.



**17.** 





В.





D.

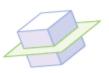


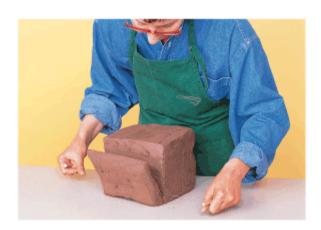
When a solid is cut by a plane, the resulting two-dimensional figure is called a section. For Exercises 18 and 19, sketch the section formed when each solid is sliced by the plane, as shown.

18.



19.





Slicing a block of clay reveals a section of the solid. Here, the section is a rectangle.

All of the statements in Exercises 20–27 are true except for two. Make a sketch to demonstrate each true statement. For each false statement, draw a sketch and explain why it is false.

- **20.** Only one plane can pass through three noncollinear points.
- **21.** If a line intersects a plane that does not contain the line, then the intersection is exactly one point.
- **22.** If two lines are perpendicular to the same line, then they are parallel. **(h)**
- **23.** If two different planes intersect, then their intersection is a line.

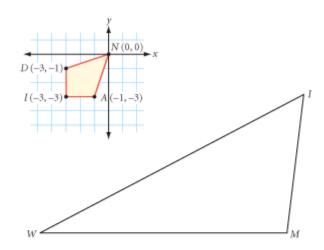


Physical models can help you visualize the intersections of lines and planes in space. Can you see examples of intersecting lines in this photo? Parallel lines? Planes? Points?

- 24. If a line and a plane have no points in common, then they are parallel.
- **25.** If a plane intersects two parallel planes, then the lines of intersection are parallel.
- **26.** If three planes intersect, then they divide space into six parts.
- 27. If two lines are perpendicular to the same plane, then they are parallel to each other.

#### Review

- **28.** If the kite *DIAN* were rotated 90° clockwise about the origin, to what location would point *A* be relocated?
- **29.** Use your ruler to measure the perimeter of  $\triangle WIM$  (in centimeters) and your protractor to measure the largest angle.
- **30.** Use your geometry tools to draw a triangle with two sides of length 8 cm and length 13 cm and the angle between them measuring 120°.



# IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

# **Equal Distances**

Here's a real challenge:

Show four points A, B, C, and D so that AB = BC = AC = AD = BD = CD.



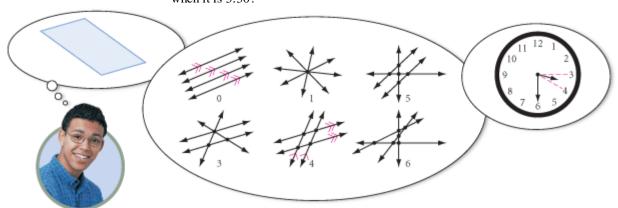


You can observe a lot just by watching. YOGI BERRA

# A Picture Is Worth a Thousand Words

A picture is worth a thousand words! That expression certainly applies to geometry. A drawing of an object often conveys information more quickly than a long written description. People in many occupations use drawings and sketches to communicate ideas. Architects create blueprints. Composers create musical scores. Choreographers visualize and map out sequences of dance steps. Basketball coaches design plays. Interior designers—well, you get the picture.

Visualization skills are extremely important in geometry. So far, you have visualized geometric situations in every lesson. To visualize a plane, you pictured a flat surface extending infinitely. In another lesson you visualized the number of different ways that four lines can intersect. Can you picture what the hands of a clock look like when it is 3:30?



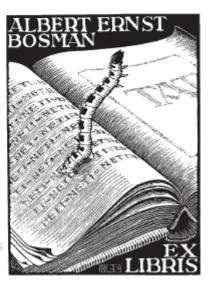
By drawing diagrams, you apply visual thinking to problem solving. Let's look at some examples that show how to use visual thinking to solve word problems.

#### EXAMPLE A

Volumes 1 and 2 of a two-volume set of math books sit next to each other on a shelf. They sit in their proper order: Volume 1 on the left and Volume 2 on the right. Each front and back cover is  $\frac{1}{8}$  -inch thick, and the pages portion of each book is 1-inch thick. If a bookworm starts at the first page of Volume 1 and burrows all the way through to the last page of Volume 2, how far will it travel?

Take a moment and try to solve the problem in your head.

Bookplate for Albert Ernst Bosman, M. C. Escher, 1946 @2002 Cordon Art B. V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.



#### Solution

Did you get  $2\frac{1}{4}$  inches? It seems reasonable, doesn't it?

However, that's not the answer. Let's reread the problem to identify what information is given and what we are asked to find.

We are given the thickness of each cover, the thickness of the pages portion, and the position of the books on the shelf. We are trying to find how far it is from the first page of Volume 1 to the last page of Volume 2. Draw a picture and locate the position of the pages referred to in the problem.

Now "look" how easy it is to solve the problem. The bookworm traveled only inch through

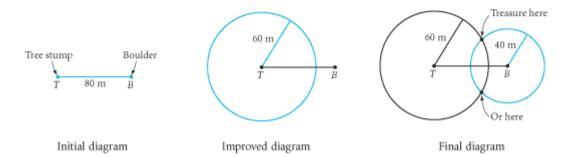


the two covers!

Harold, Dina, and Linda are standing on a flat, dry field reading their treasure map. Harold is standing at one of the features marked on the map, a gnarled tree stump, and Dina is standing atop a large black boulder. The map shows that the treasure is buried 60 meters from the tree stump and 40 meters from the large black boulder. Harold and Dina are standing 80 meters apart. What is the locus of points where the treasure might be buried?

#### Solution

Start by drawing a diagram based on the information given in the first two sentences, then add to the diagram as new information is added. Can you visualize all the points that are 60 meters from the tree stump? Mark them on your diagram. They should lie on a circle. The treasure is also 40 meters from the boulder. All the possible points lie in a circle around the boulder. The two possible spots where the treasure might be buried are the points where the two circles intersect.





As in the previous example, when there is more than one point or even many points that satisfy a set of conditions, the set of points is called a locus.

Fou can extend the scenario from Example B to explore different types of solutions for similar Is problems in the Dynamic Geometry Exploration Treasure Hunt at www.keymath.com/DG

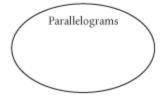
A diagram can also help organize information to help make sense of difficult concepts. A Venn diagram represents larger groups that contain smaller groups as circles within circles, or ovals within ovals. For example, a larger circle for "high school students" would contain a smaller circle for "sophomores." Overlapping circles show that it is possible to belong to two different groups at the same time, such as "sophomores" and "geometry students." Let's look at an example, using some of the quadrilateral definitions you wrote in Lesson 1.6.

#### EXAMPLE C

Create a Venn diagram to show the relationships among parallelograms, rhombuses, rectangles, and squares.

#### Solution

Start by deciding what is the most general group. What do parallelograms, rhombuses, rectangles, and squares have in common? They all have two pairs of parallel sides, so parallelograms is the largest oval.



Now consider the special characteristics of rhombuses, rectangles, and squares.

Rhombuses have four congruent sides, so they are equilateral.

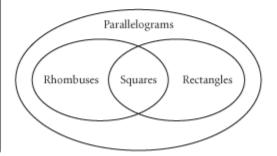
Rectangles have four congruent angles, so they are equiangular.





Squares are both equilateral and equiangular. They have the characteristics of rhombuses and rectangles, so they belong to both groups. This can be shown by using overlapping ovals.





# **EXERCISES**



Surgeons, engineers, carpenters, plumbers, electricians, and furniture
movers all rely on trained experience with visual thinking. Describe
how one of these tradespeople or someone in another occupation uses
visual thinking in his or her work.



Read each problem, determine what you are trying to find, draw a diagram, and solve the problem.

- 2. In the city of Rectangulus, all the streets running east—west are numbered and those streets running north—south are lettered. The even-numbered streets are one-way east and the odd-numbered streets are one-way west. All the vowel-lettered avenues are one-way north and the rest are two-way. Can a car traveling south on S Street make a legal left turn onto 14th Street?
- **3.** Midway through a 2000-meter race, a photo is taken of five runners. It shows Meg 20 meters behind Edith. Edith is 50 meters ahead of Wanda, who is 20 meters behind Olivia. Olivia is 40 meters behind Nadine. Who is ahead? In your diagram, use *M* for Meg, *E* for Edith, and so on.
- **4.** Mary Ann is building a fence around the outer edge of a rectangular garden plot that measures 25 feet by 45 feet. She will set the posts 5 feet apart. How many posts will she need?
- 5. Freddie the Frog is at the bottom of a 30-foot well. Each day he jumps up 3 feet, but then, during the night, he slides back down 2 feet. How many days will it take Freddie to get to the top and out?
- 6. Here is an exercise taken from Marilyn vos Savant's Ask Marilyn® column in *Parade* magazine. It is a good example of a difficult-sounding problem becoming clear once a diagram has been made. Try it.

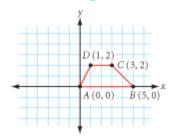
  A 30-foot cable is suspended between the tops of two 20-foot poles on level ground. The lowest point of the cable is 5 feet above the ground. What is the distance between the two poles?
- 7. Points A and B lie in a plane. Sketch the locus of points in *the plane* that are equally distant from points A and B. Sketch the locus of points in *space* that are equally distant from points A and B.
- **8.** Draw an angle. Label it  $\angle A$ . Sketch the locus of points in the plane of angle A that are the same distance from the two sides of angle A.
- **9.** Line AB lies in plane  $\mathcal{P}$ . Sketch the locus of points in plane  $\mathcal{P}$  that are 3 cm from  $\overline{AB}$ . Sketch the locus of points in space that are 3 cm from  $\overline{AB}$ .
- **10.** Create a Venn diagram showing the relationships among triangles, trapezoids, polygons, obtuse triangles, quadrilaterals, and isosceles triangles.



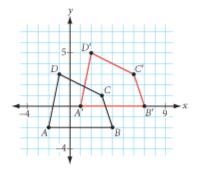
11. Beth Mack and her dog Trouble are exploring in the woods east of Birnam Woods Road, which runs north-south. They begin walking in a zigzag pattern: 1 km south, 1 km west, 1 km south, 2 km west, 1 km south, 3 km west, and so on. They walk at the rate of 4 km/h. If they started 15 km east of Birnam Woods Road at 3:00 P.M., and the sun sets at 7:30 P.M., will they reach Birnam Woods Road before sunset?

In geometry you will use visual thinking all the time. In Exercises 12 and 13 you will be asked to locate and recognize congruent geometric figures even if they are in different positions due to translations (slides), rotations (turns), or reflections (flips).

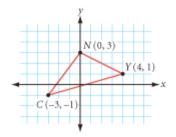
12. If trapezoid ABCD were rotated  $90^{\circ}$ counterclockwise about (0, 0), to what (x, y)location would points A, B, C, and D be relocated? (h)



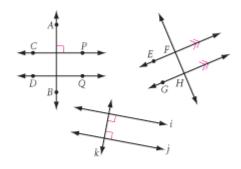
**14.** What was the ordered pair rule used to relocate the four vertices of ABCD to A'B'C'D'?



**13.** If  $\triangle CYN$  were reflected across the y-axis, to what location would points C, N, and Y be relocated?



**15.** Which lines are perpendicular? Which lines are parallel?



16. Sketch the next two figures in the pattern below. If this pattern were to continue, what would be the perimeter of the eighth figure in the pattern? (Assume the length of each segment is 1 cm.) (h)



17. A tabletop represents a plane. Examine the combination of points and lines that hold each tabletop in place. Removing one point or line would cause the tabletop to wobble or fall. In geometry, we say that these combinations of points and lines determine a plane. For each photo, use geometric terms to describe what determines the plane represented by the tabletop.

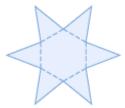




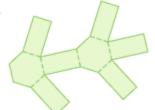


For Exercises 18–20, sketch the three-dimensional figure formed by folding each net into a solid. Name the solid.

18.



19.

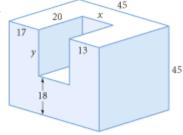


20.

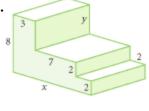


For Exercises 21 and 22, find the lengths *x* and *y*. (Every angle on each block is a right angle.)

21.



22.



In Exercises 23 and 24, each figure represents a two-dimensional figure with a wire attached. The three-dimensional solid formed by spinning the figure on the wire between your fingers is called a **solid of revolution.** Sketch the solid of revolution formed by each two-dimensional figure.

23. **(h)** 



24.





A real-life example of a "solid of revolution" is a clay pot on a potter's wheel.

#### Review

For Exercises 25–34, write the words or the symbols that make the statement true.

- **25.** The three undefined terms of geometry are 1, 1, and 1.
- **26.** "Line AB" may be written using a symbol as  $\mathcal{I}$ .
- 27. "Arc AB" may be written using a symbol as  $\frac{1}{2}$ .
- **28.** The point where the two sides of an angle meet is the <u>?</u> of the angle.
- **29.** "Ray *AB*" may be written using a symbol as <u>1</u>.
- **30.** "Line *AB* is parallel to segment *CD*" is written in symboli form as ?...
- **31.** The geometry tool you use to measure an angle is a  $\frac{1}{2}$ .
- **32.** "Angle ABC" is written in symbolic form as  $\mathcal{L}$ .
- **33.** The sentence "Segment *AB* is perpendicular to line *CD*" is written in symbolic form as  $\mathcal{I}$ .
- **34.** The angle formed by a light ray coming into a mirror is <u>1</u> the angle formed by a light ray leaving the mirror.
- **35.** Use your compass and straightedge to draw two congruent circles intersecting in exactly one point. How does the distance between the two centers compare with the radius?
- **36.** Use your compass and straightedge to construct two congruent circles so that each circle passes through the center of the other circle. Label the centers *P* and *Q*. Construct *PQ* connecting the centers. Label the points of intersection of the two circles *A* and *B*. Construct chord *AB*. What is the relationship between *AB* and *PQ*?



William Thomas Williams, DO YOU THINK A IS B, acrylic on canvas, 1975–77, Fisk University Galleries, Nashville, Tennessee.

# IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### Hexominoes

Polyominoes with six squares are called hexominoes. There are 35 different hexominoes. There is 1 with a longest string of six squares; there are 3 with a longest string of five squares, and 1 with a longest string of two squares. The rest have a longest string of either four squares or three squares. Use graph paper to sketch all

35 hexominoes. Which ones are nets for cubes? Here is one hexomino that does fold into a cube.





# Exploration

# **Geometric Probability I**

You probably know what probability means. The probability, or likelihood, of a particular outcome is the ratio of the number of successful outcomes to the number of possible outcomes. So the probability of rolling a 4 on a 6-sided die is  $\frac{1}{6}$ . Or you can name an event that involves more than one outcome, like getting the total 4 on two 6-sided dice. Because each die can come up in six different ways, there are  $6 \times 6$ , or 36, combinations (count 'em!). You can get the total 4 with a 1 and a 3, a 3 and a 1, or a 2 and a 2. So the probability of getting the total 4 is  $\frac{3}{36}$ , or  $\frac{1}{12}$ . Anyway, that's the theory.







# Chances Are

## You will need a protractor

- a ruler

In this activity you'll see that you can apply probability theory to geometric figures.

#### The Spinner

After you've finished your homework and have eaten dinner, you play a game of chance using the spinner at right. Where the spinner lands determines how you'll spend the evening.

**Sector A:** Playing with your younger brother the whole evening

**Sector B:** Half the evening playing with your younger brother and half the evening watching TV

**Sector C:** Cleaning the birdcage, the hamster cage, and the aquarium the whole evening

**Sector D:** Playing in a band in a friend's garage the whole evening

Step 1 What is the probability of landing in each sector?

Step 2 What is the probability that you'll spend at least half the evening with your younger brother? What is the probability that you won't spend any time with him?

#### The Bridge

A computer programmer who is trying to win money on a TV survival program builds a 120-ft rope bridge across a piranha-infested river 90 ft below.

Step 3 If the rope breaks where he is standing (a random point), but he is able to cling to one end of it, what is the probability that he'll avoid getting wet (or worse)?



Suppose the probability that the rope breaks at all is 1. Also suppose that, as long Step 4 as he doesn't fall more than 30 ft, the probability that he can climb back up is 3. What is the probability that he won't fall at all? What is the probability that if he does, he'll be able to climb back up?

#### The Bus Stop

Noriko arrives at the bus stop at a random time between 3:00 and 4:30 P.M. each day. Her bus stops there every 20 minutes, including at 3:00 P.M.

Step 5	Draw a number line to show stopping times. (Don't worry about the length of time that the bus is actually stopped. Assume it is 0 minutes.)
Step 6	What is the probability that she will have to wait 5 minutes or more? 10 minutes or more? Hint: What line lengths represent possible waiting time?
Step 7	If the bus stops for exactly 3 minutes, how do your answers to Step 6 change?

Step 8	List the geometric properties you needed in each of the three scenarios above and tell how your answers depended on them.
Step 9	How is geometric probability like the probability you've studied before? How is it different?
Step 10	Create your own geometric probability problem.



It may seem that there's a lot to memorize in this chapter. But having defined terms yourself, you're more likely to remember and understand them. The key is to practice using these new terms and to be organized. Do the following exercises, then read Assessing What You've Learned for tips on staying organized.



Whether you've been keeping a good list or not, go back now through each lesson in the chapter and double-check that you've completed each definition and that you understand it. For example, if someone mentions a geometry term to you, can you sketch it? If you are shown a geometric figure, can you name it? Compare your list of geometry terms with the lists of your group members.



# EXERCISES

Answers to all exercises in every Chapter Review are provided in the back of the book.

For Exercises 1–16, identify the statement as true or false. For each false statement, explain why it is false or sketch a counterexample.

1. The three basic building blocks of geometry are point, line, and plane.

Reymathicom Practice Your Skills

- 2. "The ray through point P from point Q" is written in symbolic form as  $\overline{PQ}$ .
- **3.** "The length of segment PQ" can be written as PQ.
- **4.** The vertex of angle *PDQ* is point *P*.
- **5.** The symbol for *perpendicular* is  $\perp$ .
- **6.** A scalene triangle is a triangle with no two sides the same length.
- 7. An acute angle is an angle whose measure is more than 90°.
- **8.** If  $\overline{AB}$  intersects  $\overline{CD}$  at point P, then  $\angle APD$  and  $\angle APC$  are a pair of vertical angles.
- **9.** A diagonal is a line segment in a polygon connecting any two nonconsecutive vertices.
- 10. If two lines lie in the same plane and are perpendicular to the same line, then they are parallel.
- 11. If the sum of the measures of two angles is 180°, then the two angles are complementary.
- **12.** A trapezoid is a quadrilateral having exactly one pair of parallel sides.
- **13.** A polygon with ten sides is a decagon.



A knowledge of parallel lines, planes, arcs, circles, and symmetry is necessary to build durable guitars that sound pleasing.

- **14.** A square is a rectangle with all the sides equal in length.
- **15.** A pentagon has five sides and six diagonals.
- **16.** The largest chord of a circle is a diameter of the circle.

For Exercises 17–25, match each term with its figure below, or write "no match."

17. Octagon

- **18.** Isosceles right triangle
- 19. Rhombus

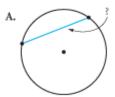
20. Trapezoid

**21.** Pyramid

22. Cylinder

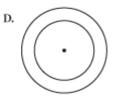
- 23. Concave polygon
- 24. Chord

25. Minor arc











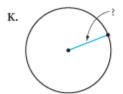


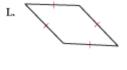












M.





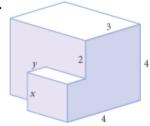
For Exercises 26–33, sketch, label, and mark each figure.

- **26.** Kite *KYTE* with  $\overline{KY} \cong \overline{YT}$
- 27. Scalene triangle PTS with PS = 3, ST = 5, PT = 7, and angle bisector  $\overline{SO}$
- **28.** Hexagon *REGINA* with diagonal  $\overline{AG}$  parallel to sides  $\overline{RE}$  and  $\overline{NI}$
- **29.** Trapezoid TRAP with  $\overline{AR}$  and  $\overline{PT}$  the nonparallel sides. Let E be the midpoint of  $\overline{PT}$ and let Y be the midpoint of  $\overline{AR}$  Draw  $\overline{EY}$ .
- **30.** A triangle with exactly one line of reflectional symmetry
- **31.** A circle with center at P, radii  $\overline{PA}$  and  $\overline{PT}$ , and chord  $\overline{TA}$  creating a minor arc  $\overline{TA}$

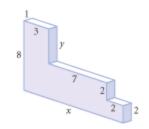
- **32.** A pair of concentric circles with the diameter  $\overline{AB}$  of the inner circle perpendicular at B to a chord  $\overline{CD}$  of the larger circle
- 33. A pyramid with a pentagonal base
- **34.** Draw a rectangular prism 2 inches by 3 inches by 5 inches, resting on its largest face. Draw lines on the three visible faces, showing how the solid can be divided into 30 smaller cubes.
- **35.** Use your protractor to draw a 125° angle.
- **36.** Use your protractor, ruler, and compass to draw an isosceles triangle with a vertex angle having a measure of  $40^{\circ}$ .
- **37.** Use your geometry tools to draw a regular octagon.
- **38.** What is the measure of  $\angle A$ ? Use your protractor.

For Exercises 39–42, find the lengths x and y. (Every angle on each block is a right angle.)

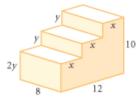
39.



40.



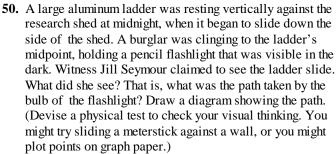
41.

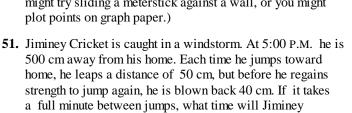


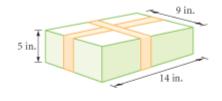
- 42. | 18 | 20 | 20 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 1
- **43.** If *D* is the midpoint of  $\overline{AC}$ , is the midpoint of  $\overline{AB}$ , and BD = 12 cm, what is the length of  $\overline{AB}$ ?
- **44.** If  $\overline{BD}$  is the angle bisector of  $\angle ABC$  and  $\overline{BE}$  is the angle bisector of  $\angle DBC$ , find  $m\angle EBA$  if  $m\angle DBE = 32^{\circ}$ .
- **45.** What is the measure of the angle formed by the hands of the clock at 2:30?
- **46.** If the pizza is cut into 12 congruent pieces, how many degrees are in each central angle?
- **47.** Make a Venn diagram to show the relationships among these shapes: quadrilaterals, rhombus, rectangle, square, trapezoid.



- **48.** The box at right is wrapped with two strips of ribbon, as shown. What is the minimum length of ribbon needed to decorate the box?
- 49. At one point in a race, Rico was 15 ft behind Paul and 18 ft ahead of Joe. Joe was trailing George by 30 ft. Paul was ahead of George by how many ft?

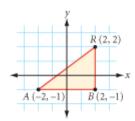








**52.** If the right triangle *BAR* were rotated  $90^{\circ}$ clockwise about point B, to what location would point A be relocated?



get home?

**54.** Sketch the solid of revolution formed when you spin the two-dimensional figure about the line.



53. Sketch the three-dimensional figure formed by folding the net below into a solid.



**55.** Sketch the section formed when the solid is sliced by the plane, as shown.



**56.** Use an isometric dot grid to sketch the figure shown below.



**57.** Sketch the figure shown with the red edge vertical and facing the viewer.



# Assessing What You've Learned

#### ORGANIZE YOUR NOTEBOOK



Is this textbook filling up with folded-up papers stuffed between pages? If so, that's a bad sign! But it's not too late to get organized. Keeping a well-organized notebook is one of the best habits you can develop to improve and assess your learning. You should have sections for your classwork, definition list, and homework exercises. There should be room to make corrections, to summarize what you learned, and to write down questions you still have.

Many books include a definition list (sometimes called a glossary) in the back. This book makes you responsible for your own glossary, so it's essential that, in addition to taking good notes, you keep a complete definition list that you can refer to. You started a definition list in Lesson 1.1. Get help from classmates or your teacher on any definition you don't understand.

As you progress through the course, your notebook will become more and more important. A good way to review a chapter is to read through the chapter and your notes and write a one-page summary of the chapter. If you create a one-page summary for each chapter, the summaries will be very helpful to you when it comes time for midterms and final exams. You'll find no better learning and study aid than a summary page for each chapter, and your definition list, kept in an organized notebook.



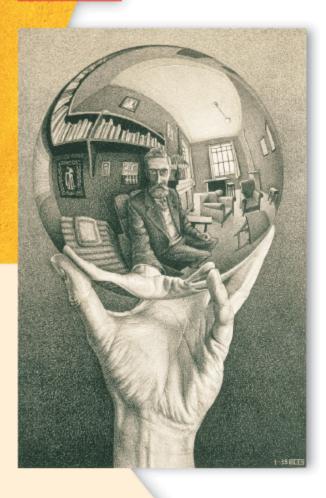
#### UPDATE YOUR PORTFOLIO

- If you did the project in this chapter, document your work and add it to your portfolio.
- ► Choose one homework assignment that demonstrates your best work in terms of completeness, correctness, and neatness. Add it (or a copy of it) to your portfolio.

# **CHAPTER**

# 2

# Reasoning in Geometry



That which an artist makes is a mirror image of what he sees around him.

M. C. ESCHER

Hand with Reflecting Sphere (Self-Portrait in Spherical Mirror), M. C. Escher ©2002 Cordon Art B.V.–Baarn–Holland. All rights reserved.

#### **OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will

- perform geometry investigations and make many discoveries by observing common features or patterns
- use your discoveries to solve problems through a process called inductive reasoning
- use inductive reasoning to discover patterns
- learn to use deductive reasoning
- learn about vertical angles and linear pairs
- make conjectures



We have to reinvent the wheel every once in a while, not because we need a lot of wheels; but because we need a lot of inventors.

BRUCE JOYCE

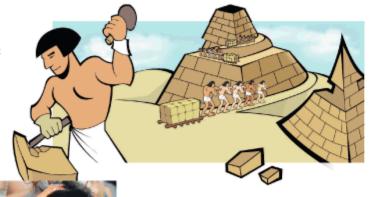
# Language CONNECTION

The word "geometry" means "measure of the earth" and was originally inspired by the ancient Egyptians. The ancient Egyptians devised a complex system of land surveying in order to reestablish land boundaries that were erased each spring by the annual flooding of the Nile River.

# **Inductive Reasoning**

As a child, you learned by experimenting with the natural world around you. You learned how to walk, to talk, and to ride your first bicycle, all by trial and error. From experience you learned to turn a water faucet on with a counterclockwise motion and to turn it off with a clockwise motion. You achieved most of your learning by a process called inductive reasoning. It is the process of observing data, recognizing patterns, and making generalizations about those patterns.

Geometry is rooted in inductive reasoning. In ancient Egypt and Babylonia, geometry began when people developed procedures for measurement after much experience and observation. Assessors and surveyors used these procedures to calculate land areas and to reestablish the boundaries of agricultural fields after floods. Engineers used the procedures to build canals, reservoirs, and the Great Pyramids. Throughout this course you will use inductive reasoning. You will perform investigations, observe similarities and patterns, and make many discoveries that you can use to solve problems.



Inductive reasoning guides scientists, investors, and business managers. All of these professionals use past experience to assess what is likely to happen in the future.

When you use inductive reasoning to make a generalization, the generalization is called a **conjecture**. Consider the following example from science.

### EXAMPLE A

A scientist dips a platinum wire into a solution containing salt (sodium chloride), passes the wire over a flame, and observes that it produces an orange-yellow flame.

She does this with many other solutions that contain salt, finding that they all produce an orange-vellow flame. Make a conjecture based on her findings.

### Solution

The scientist tested many other solutions containing salt and found no counterexamples. You should conjecture: "If a solution contains sodium chloride, then in a flame test it produces an orange-yellow flame."



Platinum wire flame test

Like scientists, mathematicians often use inductive reasoning to make discoveries. For example, a mathematician might use inductive reasoning to find patterns in a number sequence. Once he knows the pattern, he can find the next term.

**EXAMPLE B** | Consider the sequence

2, 4, 7, 11, . . .

Make a conjecture about the rule for generating the sequence. Then find the next three terms.

Solution

Look at the numbers you add to get each term. The 1st term in the sequence is 2. You add 2 to find the 2nd term. Then you add 3 to find the 3rd term, and so on.

You can conjecture that if the pattern continues, you always add the next counting number to get the next term. The next three terms in the sequence will be 16, 22, and 29.



In the following investigation you will use inductive reasoning to recognize a pattern in a series of drawings and use it to find a term much farther out in a sequence.



# **Shape Shifters**

Look at the sequence of shapes below. Pay close attention to the patterns that occur in every other shape.



Step 1 What patterns do you notice in the 1st, 3rd, and 5th shapes? Step 2 What patterns do you notice in the 2nd, 4th, and 6th shapes? Step 3 Draw the next two shapes in the sequence. Step 4 Use the patterns you discovered to draw the 25th shape. Step 5 Describe the 30th shape in the sequence. You do not have to draw it!

> Sometimes a conjecture is difficult to find because the data collected are unorganized or the observer is mistaking coincidence with cause and effect. Good use of inductive reasoning depends on the quantity and quality of data. Sometimes not enough information or data have been collected to make a proper conjecture. For example, if you are asked to find the next term in the pattern 3, 5, 7, you might conjecture that the next term is 9—the next odd number. Someone else might notice that the pattern is the consecutive odd primes and say that the next term is 11. If the pattern were 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, what would you be more likely to conjecture?

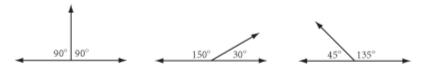


## EXERCISES

1. On his way to the local Hunting and Gathering Convention, caveperson Stony Grok picks up a rock, drops it into a lake, and notices that it sinks. He picks up a second rock, drops it into the lake, and notices that it also sinks. He does this five more times. Each time, the rock sinks straight to the bottom of the lake. Stony conjectures: "Ura nok seblu," which translates to 1. What counterexample would Stony Grok need to find to disprove, or at least to refine, his conjecture? (h)



2. Sean draws these geometric figures on paper. His sister Courtney measures each angle with a protractor. They add the measures of each pair of angles to form a conjecture. Write their conjecture.



For Exercises 3–10, use inductive reasoning to find the next two terms in each sequence.

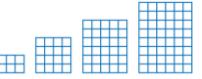
**4.** 
$$\frac{1}{6}$$
,  $\frac{1}{3}$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{2}{3}$ ,  $\frac{?}{?}$ ,  $\frac{?}{?}$ 

For Exercises 11–16, use inductive reasoning to draw the next shape in each picture pattern.

11.



12.



**13.** 



14.



15.



16.







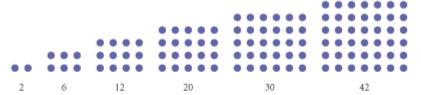
Use the rule provided to generate the first five terms of the sequence in Exercise 17 and the next five terms of the sequence in Exercise 18.

**17.** 
$$3n-2$$

**18.** 1, 3, 6, 10, ... 
$$\frac{n(n+1)}{2}$$
, ...

- 19. Now it's your turn. Generate the first five terms of a sequence. Give the sequence to a member of your family or to a friend and ask him or her to find the next two terms in the sequence. Can he or she find your pattern?
- **20.** Write the first five terms of two different sequences in which 12 is the 3rd term.
- 21. Think of a situation in which you have used inductive reasoning. Write a paragraph describing what happened and explaining why you think you used inductive reasoning. (h)

22. The sequence 2, 6, 12, 20, 30, 42, . . . is called a rectangular number pattern because the terms can be visualized as rectangular arrangements of dots. What would be the 7th term in this sequence? What would be the 10th term? The 25th term?



**23.** Look at the pattern in these pairs of equations. Decide if the conjecture is true. If it is not true, find a counterexample.

$$12^2 = 144$$
 and  $21^2 = 441$   
 $13^2 = 169$  and  $31^2 = 961$   
 $103^2 = 10609$  and  $301^2 = 90601$   
 $112^2 = 12544$  and  $211^2 = 44521$ 

**Conjecture:** If two numbers have the same digits in reverse order, then the squares of those numbers will have identical digits, but in reverse order.

**24.** Study the pattern and make a conjecture by completing the fifth line. What would be the conjecture for the sixth line? What about for the tenth line?

$$1 \cdot 1 = 1$$
 $11 \cdot 11 = 121$ 
 $111 \cdot 111 = 12,321$ 
 $1,111 \cdot 1,111 = 1,234,321$ 
 $11,111 \cdot 11,111 = ?$ 

### Review

For Exercises 25–27, sketch the section formed when the cone is sliced by the plane, as shown.

25.



26.



27.



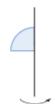
**28.** Sketch the three-dimensional figure formed by folding the net below into a solid. **(h)** 



29. Sketch the figure shown below, but with the red edge vertical and facing you.



**30.** Sketch the solid of revolution formed when the two-dimensional figure is rotated about the line.



For Exercises 31–40, write the word that makes the statement true.

- **31.** Points are 1 if they lie on the same line.
- **32.** A triangle with two congruent sides is <u>1</u>.
- **33.** A polygon with 12 sides is called a(n)
- **34.** A trapezoid has exactly one pair of ? sides.
- 35. The geometry tool used to measure the size of an angle in degrees is called a(n)
- **36.** A(n) of a circle connects its center to a point on the circle.
- 37. A segment connecting any two non-adjacent vertices in a polygon is called a(n)
- **38.** A(n) polygon is both equiangular and equilateral.
- **39.** If angles are complementary, then their measures add to 2.
- **40.** If two lines intersect to form a right angle, then they are <u>1</u>.

For Exercises 41–44, sketch and label the figure.

- **41.** Pentagon GIANT with diagonal AG parallel to side VT
- **42.** A quadrilateral that has reflectional symmetry, but not rotational symmetry
- **43.** A prism with a hexagonal base
- **44.** A counterexample to show that the following statement is false: The diagonals of a kite bisect the angles. **(h)**
- **45.** Use your ruler and protractor to draw a triangle with angles measuring 40° and 60° and a side between them with length 9 cm. Explain your method. Can you draw a second triangle using the same instructions that is not congruent to the first?

# IMPROVING YOUR **REASONING** SKILLS

### Puzzling Patterns

These patterns are "different." Your task is to find the next term.

- **1.** 18, 46, 94, 63, 52, 61,
- 2. O, T, T, F, F, S, S, E, N,
- **3.** 1, 4, 3, 16, 5, 36, 7,
- **4.** 4, 8, 61, 221, 244, 884,
- **5.** 6, 8, 5, 10, 3, 14, 1,
- **6.** B, 0, C, 2, D, 0, E, 3, F, 3, G,
- **7.** 2, 3, 6, 1, 8, 6, 8, 4, 8, 4, 8, 3, 2, 3, 2, 3,
- 8. AEFHIKLMNTVW BCDGJOPQRSU Where do the X, Y, and Z go?





If you do something once, people call it an accident. If vou do it twice, they call it a coincidence. But do it a third time and you've just proven a natural law.

GRACE MURRAY HOPPER

# Finding the *n*th Term

What would you do to get the next term in the sequence 20, 27, 34, 41, 48, 55, . . . ? A good strategy would be to find a pattern, using inductive reasoning. Then you would look at the differences between consecutive terms and predict what comes next. In this case there is a constant difference of +7. That is, you add 7 each time.

The next term is 55 + 7, or 62. What if you needed to know the value of the 200th term of the sequence? You certainly don't want to generate the next 193 terms just to get one answer. If you knew a rule for calculating any term in a sequence, without having to know the previous term, you could apply it to directly calculate the 200th term. The rule that gives the nth term for a sequence is called the function rule.

Let's see how the constant difference can help you find the function rule for some sequences.









DRABBLE reprinted by permission of United Feature Syndicate, Inc.



# Investigation

# Finding the Rule

Step 1

Copy and complete each table. Find the differences between consecutive values.

a.	n	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	n - 5	-4	-3	-2					

b.	n	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	4n - 3	1	5	9					

c.	n	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	-2n + 5	3	1	-1					

d.	n	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	3n - 2	1	4	7					

e.	n	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	-5n + 7	2	-3	-8					

### Step 2

Did you spot the pattern? If a sequence has constant difference 4, then then then the number in front of the n (the coefficient of n) is  $\frac{1}{2}$ . In general, if the difference between the values of consecutive terms of a sequence is always the same, say m (a constant), then the coefficient of n in the formula is

Let's return to the sequence at the beginning of the lesson.

Term	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		n
Value	20	27	34	41	48	55	62		
+7 +7									

The constant difference is 7, so you know part of the rule is 7n. How do you find the rest of the rule?

Step 3

The first term (n = 1) of the sequence is 20, but if you apply the part of the rule you have so far, using n = 1, you get 7n = 7(1) = 7, not 20. So how should you fix the rule? How can you get from 7 to 20? What is the rule for this sequence?

Step 4

Check your rule by trying the rule with other terms in the sequence.

Let's look at an example of how to find a function rule for the *n*th term.

### **EXAMPLE A**

Find the rule for the sequence  $7, 2, -3, -8, -13, -18, \ldots$ 

### Solution

Placing the terms and values in a table we get

Term	1	2	3	4	5	6	 n
Value	7	2	-3	-8	-13	-18	

The difference between the terms is always -5. So the rule is

$$-5n + something$$

Let's use c to stand for the unknown "something." So the rule is

$$-5n + c$$

To find c, replace the n in the rule with a term number. Try n = 1 and set the expression equal to 7.

$$-5(1) + c = 7$$
  
 $c = 12$ 

The rule is -5n + 12.

Rules for sequences can be expressed using function notation.

$$f(n) = -5n + 12$$

In this case, function f takes an input value n, multiplies it by -5, and adds 12 to produce an output value.

You can find the value of any term in the sequence by substituting the term number for n into the function. To find the 20th term of this sequence, for instance, substitute 20 for n.

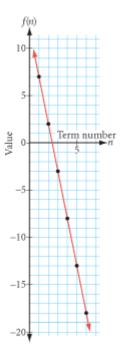
$$f(20) = -5(20) + 12$$

$$f(20) = -88$$

For functions in general, the input values for n can be any number; but for sequences, the input values can only be positive integers.

Rules that generate a sequence with a constant difference are linear functions. To see why they're called linear, graph the term number and the value for the sequence as ordered pairs of the form (term number, value) on the coordinate plane. The values from Example A, shown in the table below, appear as points on the graph at right. Notice that the line y = -5x + 12 passes through these points.

Term number n	1	2	3	4	5	6	 n
Value $f(n)$	7	2	-3	-8	-13	-18	 -5n + 12



Let's look at an example of how to find the 200th term in a geometric pattern.

#### EXAMPLE B

If you place 200 points on a line, into how many non-overlapping rays and segments does it divide the line?

### Solution

You need to find a rule that relates the number of points placed on a line to the number of parts created by those points. Then you can use your rule to answer the problem. Start by creating a table like the one shown below.

Sketch one point dividing a line. One point gives you just two rays. Enter that into the table.

Next, sketch two points dividing a line. This gives one segment and the two end rays. Enter these values into vour table.

Next, sketch three points dividing a line, then four, then five, and so on. The table completed for one to three points is



Points dividing the line	1	2	3	4	5	6	 n	 200
Non-overlapping rays	2	2	2					
Non-overlapping segments	0	1	2					
Total	2	3	4					

Once you have values through 6 points, find the rule for each sequence. There are always two non-overlapping rays. The rule, or nth term, for the number of non-overlapping segments is n-1. For 200 points there will be 199 segments. The *n*th term for the total number of distinct rays and segments is n + 1. For 200 points there will be 201 distinct parts of the line.

# **EXERCISES**



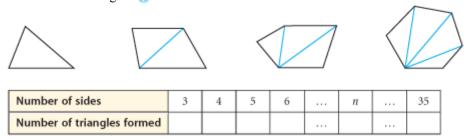
For Exercises 1–3, find the function rule f(n) for each sequence. Then find the 20th term in the sequence.

1. n 1 2 3 4 5 6 ... n ... 20 h
f(n) 3 9 15 21 27 33 ... ...

2. n1 2 3 4 5 6 20  $\eta$ f(n)-2-5 -11-14-8

3. n 1 2 3 4 5 6 ... n ... 20 f(n) -4 4 12 20 28 36 ... ... ...

**4.** How many triangles are formed when you draw all the possible diagonals from just one vertex of a 35-gon? (h)



For Exercises 5–7, find the rule for the *n*th figure. Then find the number of colored tiles or matchsticks in the 200th figure.

**5. (***b***)** 

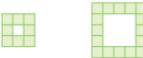






 Figure number
 1
 2
 3
 4
 5
 6
 ...
 n
 ...
 200

 Number of tiles
 8
 ...
 ...
 ...
 ...
 ...

6.





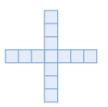


Figure number	1	2	3	4	5	6	 n	 200
Number of tiles		5						

7.



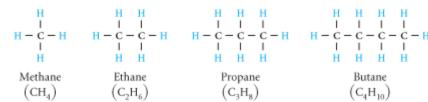




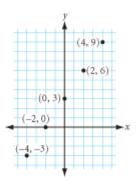
Figure number	1	2	3	4	5	6	 n	 200
Number of matchsticks	5	9						
Number of matchsticks in perimeter of figure	5	8						

- **8.** Graph the values in your tables from Exercises 5–7. Which set of points lies on a steeper line? What number in the rule gives a measure of steepness?
- **9.** *Application* Hydrocarbons are molecules that consist of carbon (C) and hydrogen (H). Hydrocarbons in which all the bonds between the carbon atoms are single bonds are called *alkanes*. The first four alkanes are modeled below.

Sketch the alkane with eight carbons in the chain. What is the general rule for alkanes  $(C_nH_?)$ ? In other words, if there are n carbon atoms (C), how many hydrogen atoms (H) are in the alkane?



**10.** Find the rule for the set of points in the graph shown at right. Place the *x*-coordinate of each ordered pair in the top row of your table and the corresponding *y*-coordinate in the second row. What is the value of *y* in terms of *x*?



### Review

For Exercises 11–14, sketch and carefully label the figure.

- 11. Equilateral triangle EQL with  $\overline{QT}$  where T lies on  $\overline{EL}$  and  $\overline{QT} \perp \overline{EL}$
- 12. Isosceles obtuse triangle OLY with  $\overline{OL} = \overline{YL}$  and angle bisector  $\overline{LM}$
- **13.** A cube with a plane passing through it; the cross section is rectangle *RECT*
- 14. A net for a rectangular solid with the dimensions 1 by 2 by 3 cm
- **15.** Márisol's younger brother José was drawing triangles when he noticed that every triangle he drew turned out to have two sides congruent. José conjectured: "Look, Márisol, all triangles are isosceles." How should Márisol have responded?
- **16.** Use your ruler and protractor to draw a triangle with side lengths 8 cm and 9 cm and an angle between them measuring 45°. Explain your method. Can you draw a second triangle using the same instructions that is not congruent to the first?

- 17. Tanya's favorite lunch is peanut butter and jelly on wheat bread with a glass of milk. Lately, she has been getting an allergic reaction after eating this lunch. She is wondering if she might be developing an allergy to peanut butter, wheat, or milk. What experiment could she do to find out which food it might be? What type of reasoning would she be using?
- **18.** The sequence 3, 8, 15, 24, . . . is another rectangular number pattern. How many squares are there in the 50th rectangular array?











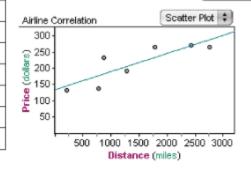


The following table and graph show the mileage and lowest priced round-trip airfare between New York City and each destination city on March 11, 2006. Is there a relationship between the money you spend and how far you can travel?



With Fathom Dynamic Statistics<sup>111</sup> software, you can plot your data points and find the linear equation that best fits your data.

Destination City	Distance (miles)	Price (\$)
Boston	215	\$133
Chicago	784	\$139
Atlanta	865	\$232
Miami	1286	\$192
Denver	1791	\$267
Phoenix	2431	\$272
Los Angeles	2763	\$267



Source: http://www.Expedia.com

Even though the data are not linear, you can find a linear equation that approximately fits the data. The graph of this equation is called a line of best fit. How would you use a line of best fit to predict the cost of a round-trip ticket to Seattle (2814 miles)? How would you use it to determine how far you could travel (in miles) with \$250? How accurate do you think the answer would be?

Choose a topic and a relationship to explore. You can use data from the census (such as age and income), or data you collect yourself (such as number of ice cubes in a glass and melting time). For more sources and ideas, go to www.keymath.com/DG

Your project should include

- A collection of data points with the topic, relationship, and source clearly presented.
- An accurate graph showing a line of best fit.
- At least two predictions using your line, and a summary of your results including how accurate you think your predictions are.



It's amazing what one can do when one doesn't know what one can't do. GARFIELD THE CAT

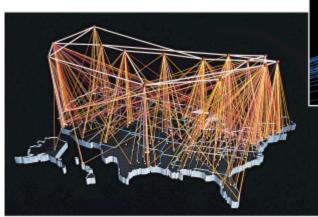
# **Mathematical Modeling**

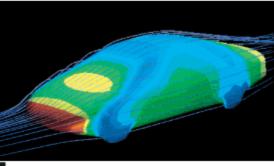
Physical models have many of the same features as the original object or activity they represent, but are often more convenient to study. For example, building a new airplane and testing it is difficult and expensive. But you can analyze a new airplane design by building a model and testing it in a wind tunnel.

In Chapter 1 you learned that geometry ideas such as points, lines, planes, triangles, polygons, and diagonals are mathematical models of physical objects.

When you draw graphs or pictures of situations or when you write equations that describe a problem, you are creating mathematical models. A physical model of a complicated telecommunications network, for example, might not be practical, but you can draw a mathematical model of the network using points and lines.

This computer model tests the effectiveness of the car's design for minimizing wind resistance.





This computer-generated model uses points and line segments to show the volume of data traveling to different locations on the National Science Foundation Network.

In this investigation you will attempt to solve a problem first by acting it out, then by creating a mathematical model.



# **Investigation**

# Party Handshakes

Each of the 30 people at a party shook hands with everyone else. How many handshakes were there altogether?

Step 1

Act out this problem with members of your group. Collect data for "parties" of one, two, three, and four people, and record your results in a table.

People	1	2	3	4	 30
Handshakes	0	1			



Acting out a problem is a powerful problem-solving strategy that can give you important insight into a solution. Were you able to make a generalization from just four terms? If so, how confident are you of your generalization? To collect more data, you can ask more classmates to join your group. You can see, however, that acting out a problem sometimes has its practical limitations. That's when you can use mathematical models.

Step 3 Model the problem by using points to represent people and line segments connecting the points to represent handshakes.



Record your results in a table like this one:

Number of points (people)	1	2	3	4	5	6	 n	 30
Number of segments (handshakes)	0	1						

Notice that the pattern does not have a constant difference. That is, the rule is not a linear function. So we need to look for a different kind of rule.



3 points 2 segments per vertex



4 points 3 segments per vertex



5 points
3 segments per
vertex



6 points

regments per
vertex

Step 4 Refer to the table you made for Step 3. The pattern of differences is increasing by one: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7. Read the dialogue between Erin and Stephanie as they attempt to use logical reasoning to find the rule.



Step 5 In the diagram with 5 vertices, how many segments are there from each vertex? So the total number of segments 

Complete the table below by expressing the total number of segments in Step 6 factored form.

Number of points (people)	1	2	3	4	5	6	 n
Number of segments (handshakes)	(1)(0)	(2)(1)	(3)(2)	(4)(3) 2	(5)(?)	(6)(?)	 <u>(?)(?)</u>

Step 7 The larger of the two factors in the numerator represents the number of points. What does the smaller of the two numbers in the numerator represent? Why do we divide by 2? Step 8 Write a function rule. How many handshakes were there at the party?



Fifteen pool balls can be arranged in a triangle, so 15 is a triangular number.

The numbers in the pattern in the previous investigation are called the **triangular numbers** because you can arrange them into a triangular pattern of dots.



The triangular numbers appear in many geometric situations, as you will see in the exercises. They are related to this sequence of rectangular numbers:

Rectangular numbers can be visualized as rectangular arrangements of objects, in which the length and width are factors of the numbers.



In this sequence, the width is equal to the term number and the length is one more than the term number. The rectangle representing the 3rd term, for instance, has width 3 and length 3 + 1, or 4, so the total number of squares is equal to  $3 \cdot 4$ , or 12. You can apply this pattern to find any term in the sequence. The 25th rectangle, for example, would have width 25, length 26, and a total number of squares equal to 25 • 26, or 650.

In general, the *n*th rectangle in this sequence has a width equal to the term number, n, and a length equal to one more than the term number, or n + 1. So the *n*th rectangular number is n(n + 1).

Here is a visual approach to arrive at the rule for the party handshakes problem. If we arrange the triangular numbers in stacks,



you can see that each is half of a rectangular number.



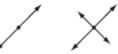
So the triangular array has  $\frac{n(n+1)}{2}$  dots.

### **EXERCISES**



For Exercises 1–6, draw the next figure. Complete a table and find the function rule. Then find the 35th term.

**1.** Lines passing through the same point are **concurrent.** Into how many regions do 35 concurrent lines divide the plane?





Lines	1	2	3	4	5	 n	 35
Regions	2						

**2.** Into how many regions do 35 parallel lines in a plane divide that plane?





**3.** How many diagonals can you draw from one vertex in a polygon with 35 sides?







**4.** What's the total number of diagonals in a 35-sided polygon?







5. If you place 35 points on a piece of paper so that no three points are in a line, how many line segments are necessary to connect each point to all the others?







**6.** If you draw 35 lines on a piece of paper so that no two lines are parallel to each other and no three lines are concurrent, how many times will they intersect?







7. Look at the formulas you found in Exercises 4–6. Describe how the formulas are related. Then explain how the three problems are related geometrically.

For Exercises 8–10, draw a diagram, find the appropriate geometric model, and solve.

**8.** If 40 houses in a community all need direct lines to one another in order to have telephone service, how many lines are necessary? Is that practical? Sketch and describe two models: first, model the situation in which direct lines connect every house to every other house and, second, model a more practical alternative.

- 9. If each team in a ten-team league plays each of the other teams four times in a season, how many league games are played during one season? What geometric figures can you use to model teams and games played?
- 10. Each person at a party shook hands with everyone else exactly once. There were 66 handshakes. How many people were at the party?

### Review

For Exercises 11–19, identify the statement as true or false. For each false statement, explain why it is false or sketch a counterexample.

- 11. The largest chord of a circle is a diameter of the circle.
- **12.** The vertex of  $\angle TOP$  is point O.
- 13. An isosceles right triangle is a triangle with an angle measuring 90° and no two sides congruent.
- 14. If  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  intersects  $\overrightarrow{CD}$  in point E, then  $\angle AED$  and  $\angle BED$  form a linear pair of angles  $\widehat{h}$
- **15.** If two lines lie in the same plane and are perpendicular to the same line, they are perpendicular.
- **16.** The opposite sides of a kite are never parallel.
- 17. A rectangle is a parallelogram with all sides congruent.
- **18.** A line segment that connects any two vertices in a polygon is called a diagonal.
- 19. To show that two lines are parallel, you mark them with the same number of arrowheads.
- 20. The sequence 2, 9, 20, 35, . . . is another example of a rectangular number pattern, as illustrated in the art below. What is the 50th term of this sequence? (h)



# IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### Pentominoes II

In Pentominoes I, you found the 12 pentominoes. Which of the 12 pentominoes can you cut along the edges and fold into a box without a lid? Here is an example.







That's the way things come clear. All of a sudden. And then you realize how obvious they've been all along.

MADELEINE L'ENGLE

The success of an attorney's case depends on the jury accepting the evidence as true and following the steps in her deductive reasoning.

# **Deductive Reasoning**

Have you ever noticed that the days are longer in the summer? Or that mosquitoes appear after a summer rain? Over the years you have made conjectures, using inductive reasoning, based on patterns you have observed. When you make a conjecture, the process of discovery may not always help explain *why* the conjecture works. You need another kind of reasoning to help answer this question.

**Deductive reasoning** is the process of showing that certain statements follow logically from agreed-upon assumptions and proven facts. When you use deductive reasoning, you try to reason in an orderly way to convince yourself or someone else that your conclusion is valid. If your initial statements are true and you give a logical argument, then you have shown that your conclusion is true. For example, in a trial, lawyers use deductive arguments to show how the evidence that they present proves their case. A lawyer might make a very good argument. But first, the court must believe the evidence and accept it as true.



You use deductive reasoning in algebra. When you provide a reason for each step in the process of solving an equation, you are using deductive reasoning. Here is an example.

### **EXAMPLE A**

Solve the equation for x. Give a reason for each step in the process.

$$3(2x+1) + 2(2x+1) + 7 = 42 - 5x$$

Solution

$$3(2x+1) + 2(2x+1) + 7 = 42 - 5x$$

$$6x + 3 + 4x + 2 + 7 = 42 - 5x$$

$$10x + 12 = 42 - 5x$$

$$10x = 30 - 5x$$

$$15x = 30$$

$$x = 2$$

The original equation.

Distribute.

Combine like terms.

Subtract 12 from both sides.

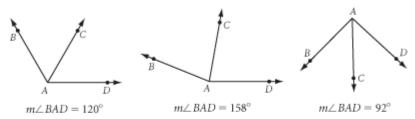
Add 5x to both sides.

Divide both sides by 15.

The next example shows how to use both kinds of reasoning: inductive reasoning to discover the property and deductive reasoning to explain why it works.

### **EXAMPLE B**

In each diagram,  $\overrightarrow{AC}$  bisects obtuse angle *BAD*. Classify  $\angle BAD$ ,  $\angle DAC$ , and  $\angle CAB$  as acute, right, or obtuse. Then complete the conjecture.



**Conjecture:** If an obtuse angle is bisected, then the two newly formed congruent angles are

Justify your conjecture with a deductive argument.

### ► Solution

In each diagram,  $\angle BAD$  is obtuse because  $m\angle BAD$  is greater than 90°. In each diagram, the angles formed by the bisector are acute because their measures— $60^{\circ}$ , 79°, and  $46^{\circ}$ —are less than 90°. So one possible conjecture is

**Conjecture:** If an obtuse angle is bisected, then the two newly formed congruent angles are acute.

To explain why this is true, a useful reasoning strategy is to represent the situation algebraically. Let's use m to represent any angle measure.

#### **Deductive Argument**

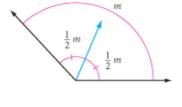
By our definition, an angle measure is less than 180°.

$$m < 180^{\circ}$$

When you bisect an angle, the newly formed angles each measure half the original angle.

$$\frac{1}{2}m < \frac{1}{2}(180^\circ)$$
  
 $\frac{1}{2}m < 90^\circ$ 

The new angles measure less than 90°, so they are acute.



Inductive reasoning allows you to discover new ideas based on observed patterns. Deductive reasoning can help explain why your conjectures are true.

Good use of deductive reasoning depends on the quality of the argument. Just like the saying "A chain is only as strong as its weakest link," a deductive argument is only as good (or as true) as the statements used in the argument. A conclusion in a deductive argument is true only if *all* the statements in the argument are true and the statements in your argument clearly follow from each other.

Inductive and deductive reasoning work very well together. In this investigation you will use inductive reasoning to form a conjecture. Then in your groups, you will use deductive reasoning to explain why it's true.



# **Overlapping Segments**

In each segment,  $\overline{AB} \cong \overline{CD}$ .

- Step 1 From the markings on each diagram, determine the lengths of AC and BD. What do you discover about these segments?
- Step 2 Draw a new segment. Label it  $\overline{AD}$ . Place your own points B and C on  $\overline{AD}$  so that  $\overline{AB} \cong \overline{CD}$ .

- Step 3 Measure  $\overline{AC}$  and  $\overline{BD}$ . How do these lengths compare?
- Complete the conclusion of this conjecture: If  $\overline{AD}$  has points A, B, C, and D in that order with  $\overline{AB} \cong \overline{CD}$ , then  $\stackrel{?}{\underline{}}$ . (Overlapping Segments Conjecture)



Step 4

**Developing Proof** In your groups, discuss how you can use logical reasoning to show that your conjecture from Step 4 will always be true. Remember, a useful reasoning strategy is to represent the situation algebraically. Then write down your ideas as a deductive argument.

When you see this icon you will work with your group to develop a deductive argument or proof.

In the investigation you used inductive reasoning to discover the Overlapping Segments Conjecture. In your group discussion you then used deductive reasoning to explain why this conjecture is always true. You will use a similar process to discover and prove the Overlapping Angles Conjecture in Exercises 10 and 11.

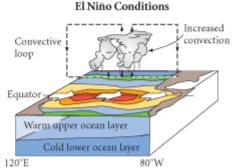
#### **Science**

### CONNECTION

Here is an example of inductive reasoning, supported by deductive reasoning. El Niño is the warming of water in the tropical Pacific Ocean, which produces unusual weather conditions and storms worldwide. For centuries, farmers living in the Andes Mountains of South America observed that if the stars in the Pleiades

constellation look dim in June, an El Niño year was coming. What is the connection? Scientists recently found that in an El Niño year, increased evaporation from the ocean produces high-altitude clouds that are invisible to the eye but create a haze that makes stars more difficult to see. The pattern that Andean farmers knew about for centuries is now supported by a scientific explanation. To find out more about this story, go to www.kevmath.com/DG





# Exercises



- 1. When you use \_\_\_\_ reasoning, you are generalizing (making a conjecture) from careful observation that something is probably true. When you use \_\_\_\_\_ reasoning, you are establishing that if a set of properties is accepted as true, something else must be true.
- **2.**  $\angle A$  and  $\angle B$  are complementary  $\angle A = 25^{\circ}$ . What its  $\angle B$ ? What type of reasoning do you use, inductive or deductive, when solving this problem?
- **3.** If the pattern continues, what are the next two terms? What type of reasoning do you use, inductive or deductive, when solving this problem?





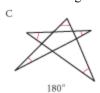


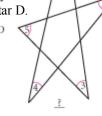


- **4.**  $\triangle DGT$  is isosceles with TD = DG. If the perimeter of  $\triangle DGT$  is 756 cm and GT = 240 cm, then DG = ?. What type of reasoning do you use, inductive or deductive, when solving this problem?
- **5.** *Mini-Investigation* The sum of the measures of the five marked angles in stars A through C is shown below each star. Use your protractor to carefully measure the five marked angles in star D.











If this pattern continues, without measuring, make a conjecture. What would be the sum of the measures of the marked angles in star E? What type of reasoning do you use, inductive or deductive, when solving this problem?

- **6.** The definition of a parallelogram says, "If both pairs of opposite sides of a quadrilateral are parallel, then the quadrilateral is a parallelogram." Quadrilateral *LNDA* has both pairs of opposite sides parallel. What conclusion can you make? What type of reasoning did you use?
- **7. Developing Proof** Using the ideas and algebra you discussed with your group, write a deductive argument for the Overlapping Segments Conjecture.
- **8.** Use the Overlapping Segments Conjecture to complete each statement.



**a.** If 
$$AB = 3$$
, then  $CD = 1$ .

**b.** If 
$$AC = 10$$
, then  $BD = \frac{1}{2}$ .

**c.** If 
$$BC = 4$$
 and  $CD = 3$ , then  $AC = 1$ .

**9.** Developing Proof In Example B of this lesson you conjectured through inductive reasoning that if an obtuse angle is bisected, then the two newly formed congruent angles are acute. You then used deductive reasoning to explain why they were acute. Go back to the example and look at the sizes of the acute angles formed. What is the smallest possible size for the two congruent acute angles formed by the bisector of an obtuse angle? Use deductive reasoning to explain why.

**10.** *Mini-Investigation* Do the geometry investigation and make a conjecture.

Given  $\angle APB$  with points C and D in its interior and  $m \angle APC = m \angle DPB$ ,

If 
$$m\angle APD = 48^\circ$$
, then  $m\angle CPB = \frac{2}{3}$ 

If 
$$m\angle CPB = 17^\circ$$
, then  $m\angle APD \stackrel{?}{=} 17^\circ$ . If  $m\angle APD = 62^\circ$ , then  $m\angle CPB \stackrel{?}{=} 17^\circ$ .

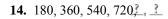
**Conjecture:** If points C and D lie in the interior of  $\angle APB$ , and  $m\angle APC = m\angle DPB$ , then  $m \angle APD = ?$  (Overlapping Angles Conjecture)

- 11. Developing Proof Using reasoning similar to that in Exercise 7, write a deductive argument to explain why the Overlapping Angles Conjecture is true.
- 12. Think of a situation you observed outside of school in which deductive reasoning was used correctly. Write a paragraph or two describing what happened and explaining why you think it called for deductive reasoning.

### Review

13. Mark Twain once observed that the lower Mississippi River is very crooked and that over the years, as the bends and the turns straighten out, the river gets shorter and shorter. Using numerical data about the length of the lower part of the river, he noticed that in the year 1700, the river was more than 1200 miles long, yet by the year 1875, it was only 973 miles long. Twain concluded that any person "can see that 742 years from now the lower Mississippi will be only a mile and three-quarters long." What is wrong with this inductive reasoning?

For Exercises 14–16, use inductive reasoning to find the next two terms of the sequence.



**16.** 
$$\frac{1}{2}$$
, 9,  $\frac{2}{3}$ , 10,  $\frac{3}{4}$ , 11,  $\frac{?}{.}$ ,  $\frac{?}{.}$ 



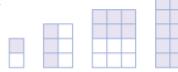
Aerial photo of the Mississippi River

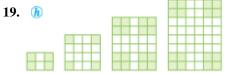
For Exercises 17–20, draw the next shape in each picture pattern.

17.



18.





20.







**21.** Think of a situation you have observed in which inductive reasoning was used incorrectly. Write a paragraph or two describing what happened and explaining why you think it was an incorrect use of inductive reasoning.

Match each term in Exercises 22–31 with one of the figures A–O.

**22.** Kite

24. Trapezoid

26. Pair of complementary angles

28. Pair of vertical angles

30. Acute angle

23. Consecutive angles in a polygon

25. Diagonal in a polygon

27. Radius

**29.** Chord

31. Angle bisector in a triangle































For Exercises 32–35, sketch and carefully label the figure.

**32.** Pentagon WILDE with  $\angle ILD \cong \angle LDE$  and  $\overline{LD} \cong \overline{DE}$ 

33. Isosceles obtuse triangle *OBG* with  $m \angle BGO=140^{\circ}$ 

**34.** Circle *O* with a chord*OD* perpendicular to radius *OT* 

**35.** Circle K with acute angle DKN where D and N are points on circle K

# IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

## Rotating Gears

In what direction will gear E rotate if gear A rotates in a counterclockwise direction?





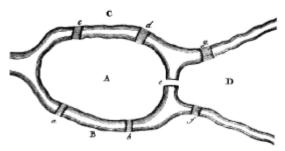
# Exploration

# The Seven Bridges of Königsberg

The River Pregel (now Pregolya) runs through the university town of Königsberg (now Kaliningrad in Russia). In the middle of the river are two islands



Leonhard Euler



The seven bridges of Königsberg

connected to each other and

to the rest of the city by seven

bridges. Many years ago, a tradition developed among the townspeople of Königsberg. They challenged one another to make a round trip over all seven bridges. walking over each bridge once and only once before returning to the starting point.

For a long time no one was able to do it, and yet no one was able to show that it couldn't be done. In 1735, they finally wrote to Leonhard Euler (1707–1783), a Swiss

mathematician, asking for his help on the problem. Euler (pronounced "oyler") reduced the problem to a network of paths connecting the two sides of the rivers

C and B, and the two islands A and D, as shown in the network above. Then Euler demonstrated that the task is impossible.

In this activity you will work with a variety of networks to see if you can come up with a rule to find out whether a network can or cannot be "traveled."

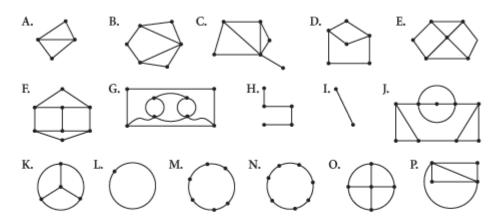
# **Activity**

# **Traveling Networks**

A collection of points connected by paths is called a **network**. When we say a network can be traveled, we mean that the network can be drawn with a pencil without lifting the pencil off the paper and without retracing any paths. (Points can be passed over more than once.)

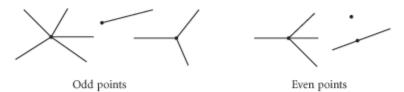


Step 1 Try these networks and see which ones can be traveled and which are impossible to travel.



Which networks were impossible to travel? Are they impossible or just difficult? How can you be sure? As you do the next few steps, see whether you can find the reason why some networks are impossible to travel.

- Step 2 Draw the River Pregel and the two islands shown on the first page of this exploration. Draw an eighth bridge so that you can travel over all the bridges exactly once if you start at point *C* and end at point *B*.
- Step 3 Draw the River Pregel and the two islands. Can you draw an eighth bridge so that you can travel over all the bridges exactly once, starting and finishing at the same point? How many solutions can you find?
- Step 4 Euler realized that it is the points of intersection that determine whether a network can be traveled. Each point of intersection is either "odd" or "even."



Did you find any networks that have only one odd point? Can you draw one? Try it. How about three odd points? Or five odd points? Can you create a network that has an odd number of odd points? Explain why or why not.

Step 5 How does the number of even points and odd points affect whether a network can be traveled?

### Conjecture

A network can be traveled if \(\frac{1}{2}\).



2.5

Discovery consists of looking at the same thing as everyone else and thinking something different.

ALBERT SZENT-GYÖRGYI

# **Angle Relationships**

Now that you've had experience with inductive reasoning, let's use it to start discovering geometric relationships. This investigation is the first of many investigations you will do using your geometry tools.

> Create an investigation section in your notebook. Include a title and illustration for each investigation and write a statement summarizing the results of each one.





# Investigation 1

# The Linear Pair Conjecture

#### You will need

a protractor



Step 1

On a sheet of paper, draw  $\overline{PO}$  and place a point R between P and Q. Choose another point S not on  $\overline{PO}$  and draw  $\overline{RS}$ . You have just created a linear pair of angles. Place the "zero edge" of your protractor along  $\overline{\it pq}$  . What do you notice about the sum of the measures of the linear pair of angles?

Step 2

Compare your results with those of your group. Does everyone make the same observation? Complete the statement.

## Linear Pair Conjecture

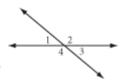
If two angles form a linear pair, then ?

C-1

The important conjectures have been given a name and a number. Start a list of them in your notebook. The Linear Pair Conjecture (C-1) and the Vertical Angles Conjecture (C-2) should be the first entries on your list. Make a sketch for each conjecture.



In the previous investigation you discovered the relationship between a linear pair of angles, such as  $\angle 1$  and  $\angle 2$  in the diagram at right. You will discover the relationship between vertical angles, such as  $\angle 1$  and  $\angle 3$ , in the next investigation.



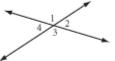


# **Investigation 2**

# **Vertical Angles Conjecture**

#### You will need

- a straightedge
- patty paper



Step 1

Draw two intersecting lines onto patty paper or tracing paper. Label the angles as shown. Which angles are vertical angles?

Step 2

Fold the paper so that the vertical angles lie over each other. What do you notice about their measures?

Step 3

Fold the paper so that the other pair of vertical angles lie over each other. What do you notice about their measures?

Step 4

Compare your results with the results of others. Complete the statement.

### **Vertical Angles Conjecture**

If two angles are vertical angles, then <u>1</u>



C-2

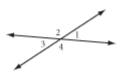


**Developing Proof** You used inductive reasoning to discover both the Linear Pair Conjecture and the Vertical Angles Conjecture. Are they related? If you accept the Linear Pair Conjecture as true, can you use deductive reasoning to show that the Vertical Angles Conjecture must be true?

Read the example below. Without turning the page, write a deductive argument with your group. Remember the reasoning strategy of representing a situation algebraically. Another strategy is to apply previous conjectures and definitions to a new situation. Then compare your solution to the one on the next page.

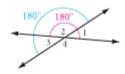
#### **EXAMPLE**

Use the Linear Pair Conjecture and the diagram at right to write a deductive argument explaining why  $\angle 1$  must be congruent to  $\angle 3$ .



### Solution

You can see from the diagram that the sum of the measures of angles 1 and 2 is equal to the sum of the measures of angles 2 and 3 because they are both linear pairs. Because angle 2 is the same in both sums, angle 1 must equal angle 3. To write a deductive argument, go through this logic one step at a time.



### **Deductive Argument**

For any linear pair of angles, their measures add up to 180°.

$$m \angle 1 + m \angle 2 = 180^{\circ}$$

$$m \angle 2 + m \angle 3 = 180^{\circ}$$

Since both expressions on the left equal 180°, they equal each other.

$$m \angle 1 + m \angle 2 = m \angle 2 + m \angle 3$$

Subtract  $m \angle 2$  from both sides of the equation.

$$m \angle 1 = m \angle 3$$

Vertical angles 1 and 3 have equal measures, so they are congruent.

You discovered the Vertical Angles Conjecture: If two angles are vertical angles, then they are congruent. Does that also mean that all congruent angles are vertical angles? The **converse** of an "if-then" statement switches the "if" and "then" parts. The converse of the Vertical Angles Conjecture may be stated: If two angles are congruent, then they are vertical angles. Is this converse statement true? Remember that if you can find even one counterexample, like the diagram below, then the statement is false.

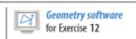


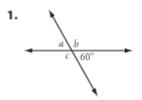
Therefore, the converse of the Vertical Angles Conjecture is false.

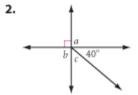


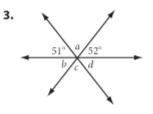
### **EXERCISES**

Without using a protractor, but with the aid of your two new conjectures, find the measure of each lettered angle in Exercises 1–5. Copy the diagrams so that you can write on them. List your answers in alphabetical order.



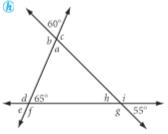




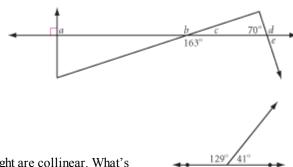


You will need

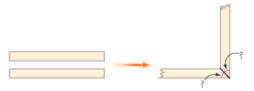
4. (



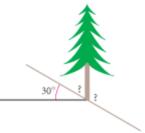
5.



- **6. Developing Proof** Points *A*, *B*, and *C* at right are collinear. What's wrong with this picture?
- 7. Yoshi is building a cold frame for his plants. He wants to cut two wood strips so that they'll fit together to make a right-angled corner. At what angle should he cut ends of the strips?



**8.** A tree on a 30° slope grows straight up. What are the measures of the greatest and smallest angles the tree makes with the hill? Explain.



- **9.** You discovered that if a pair of angles is a linear pair, then the angles are supplementary. Does that mean that all supplementary angles form a linear pair of angles? Is the converse true? If not, sketch a counterexample.
- 10. If two congruent angles are supplementary, what must be true of the two angles? Make a sketch, then complete the following conjecture: If two angles are both congruent and supplementary, then
- **11.** *Developing Proof* Using algebra, write a paragraph proof that explains why the conjecture from Exercise 10 is true.
- **12.** *Technology* Use geometry software to construct two intersecting lines. Measure a pair of vertical angles. Use the software to calculate the ratio of their measures. What is the ratio? Drag one of the lines. Does the ratio ever change? Does this demonstration convince you that the Vertical Angles Conjecture is true? Does it explain why it is true?

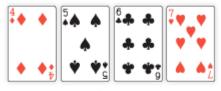
# R

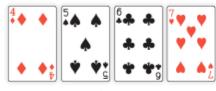
#### Review

For Exercises 13–17, sketch, label, and mark the figure.

- 13. Scalene obtuse triangle PAT with PA = 3 cm, AT = 5 cm, and  $\angle A$  an obtuse angle
- $\textbf{14.} \ \ A \ quadrilateral \ that \ has \ rotational \ symmetry, \ but \ not \ reflectional \ symmetry$
- **15.** A circle with center at O and radii $\overline{OA}$  and  $\overline{OT}$  creating a minor arc  $\overline{AT}$

- **16.** A pyramid with an octagonal base
- 17. A 3-by-4-by-6-inch rectangular solid rests on its smallest face. Draw lines on the three visible faces to show how you can divide it into 72 identical smaller cubes.
- 18. Miriam the Magnificent placed four cards face up (the first four cards shown below). Blindfolded, she asked someone from her audience to come up to the stage and turn one card 180°.





Before turn After turn

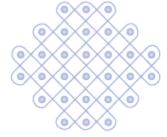
Miriam removed her blindfold and claimed she was able to determine which card was turned 180°. What is her trick? Can you figure out which card was turned? Explain.

- 19. If a pizza is cut into 16 congruent pieces, how many degrees are in each angle at the center of the pizza?
- **20.** Paulus Gerdes, a mathematician from Mozambique, uses traditional *lusona* patterns from Angola to practice inductive thinking. Shown below are three sona designs. Sketch the fourth sona design, assuming the pattern continues.









21. Hydrocarbon molecules in which all the bonds between the carbon atoms are single bonds except one double bond are called alkenes. The first three alkenes are modeled below.

$$H - H = H$$

$$H - C - C = C$$

$$H - H = H$$

$$H - H$$

$$C - C = C$$

$$C + H_{\epsilon}$$

(C,H,)

Sketch the alkene with eight carbons in the chain. What is the general rule for alkenes  $(C_nH_n)$ ? In other words, if there are *n* carbon atoms (C), how many hydrogen atoms (H) are in the alkene?

CONNECTION •

Organic chemistry is the study of carbon compounds and their reactions. Drugs, vitamins, synthetic fibers, and food all contain organic molecules. To learn about new advances in organic chemistry,

go to www.keymath.com/DG

**22.** If the pattern of rectangles continues, what is the rule for the perimeter of the *n*th rectangle, and what is the perimeter of the 200th rectangle? What is the rule for the number of 1-by-1 squares in the *n*th rectangle, and how many 1-by-1 squares are in the 200th rectangle?



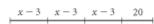
Rectangle	1	2	3	4	5	6	 n	 200
Perimeter of rectangle	10	14	18					
Number of squares	6	12	20					

- 23. The twelfth-grade class of 80 students is assembled in a large circle on the football field at halftime. Each student is connected by a string to each of the other class members. How many pieces of string are necessary to connect each student to all the others?
- 24. If you draw 80 lines on a piece of paper so that no 2 lines are parallel to each other and no 3 lines pass through the same point, how many intersections will there be?
- 25. If there are 20 couples at a party, how many different handshakes can there be between pairs of people? Assume that the two people in each couple do not shake hands with each other.
- **26.** If a polygon has 24 sides, how many diagonals are there from each vertex? How many diagonals are there in all?
- 27. If a polygon has a total of 560 diagonals, how many vertices does it have? 100
- **28.** A midpoint divides a segment into two congruent segments. Point M divides segment  $\overline{AY}$  into two congruent segments  $\overline{AM}$  and  $\overline{MY}$ . What conclusion can you make? What type of reasoning did you use?

# IMPROVING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS

### Number Line Diagrams

**1.** The two segments at right have the same length. Translate the number line diagram into an equation, then solve for the variable *x*.





 $\textbf{2.} \ \ Translate \ this \ equation \ into \ a \ number \ line \ diagram.$ 

$$2(x+3) + 14 = 3(x-4) + 11$$



The greatest mistake you can make in life is to be continually fearing that you will make one. **ELLEN HUBBARD** 

# **Special Angles** on Parallel Lines

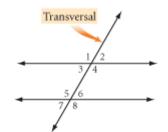
A line intersecting two or more other lines in the plane is called a **transversal**. A transversal creates different types of angle pairs. Three types are listed below.

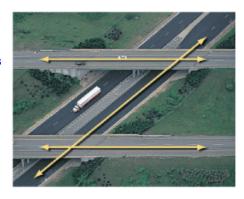
One pair of corresponding angles is  $\angle 1$  and  $\angle 5$ . Can you find three more pairs of corresponding angles?

One pair of alternate interior angles is  $\angle 3$  and  $\angle 6$ . Do you see another pair of alternate interior angles?

One pair of alternate exterior angles is  $\angle 2$  and  $\angle 7$ . Do you see the other pair of alternate exterior angles?

When parallel lines are cut by a transversal, there is a special relationship among the angles. Let's investigate.







You will need

a straightedge

a protractor (optional)

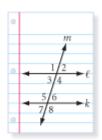
lined paper

patty paper

# Investigation 1

# Which Angles Are Congruent?

Using the lines on your paper as a guide, draw a pair of parallel lines. Or use both edges of your ruler or straightedge to create parallel lines. Label them k and  $\ell$ Now draw a transversal that intersects the parallel lines. Label the transversal m, and label the angles with numbers, as shown at right.

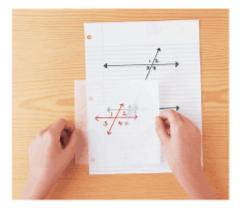


Step 1

Place a piece of patty paper over the set of angles 1, 2, 3, and 4. Copy the two intersecting lines m and  $\ell$  and the four angles onto the patty paper.

Step 2

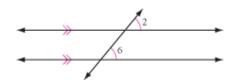
Slide the patty paper down to the intersection of lines m and k, and compare angles 1 through 4 with each of the corresponding angles 5 through 8. What is the relationship between corresponding angles? Alternate interior angles? Alternate exterior angles?



Compare your results with the results of others in your group and complete the three conjectures below.

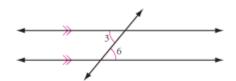
### Corresponding Angles Conjecture, or CA Conjecture

If two parallel lines are cut by a transversal, then corresponding angles are ?\_\_\_



### Alternate Interior Angles Conjecture, or AIA Conjecture

If two parallel lines are cut by a transversal, then alternate interior angles are ?.



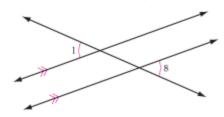
# Alternate Exterior Angles Conjecture, or AEA Conjecture

C-3c

C-3a

C-3b

If two parallel lines are cut by a transversal, then alternate exterior angles are ?



The three conjectures you wrote can all be combined to create a Parallel Lines Conjecture, which is really three conjectures in one.

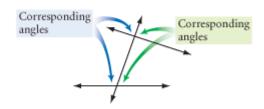
# Parallel Lines Conjecture

C-3

If two parallel lines are cut by a transversal, then corresponding angles are <u>?</u>, alternate interior angles are <u>?</u>, and alternate exterior angles are <u>?</u>.

Step 3

What happens if the lines you start with are not parallel? Check whether your conjectures will work with nonparallel lines.



What about the converse of each of your conjectures? Suppose you know that a pair of corresponding angles, or alternate interior angles, is congruent. Will the lines be parallel? Is it possible for the angles to be congruent but for the lines not to be parallel?



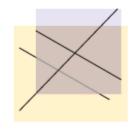


# Investigation 2

# Is the Converse True?

#### You will need

- a straightedge
- patty paper
- a protractor (optional)





Step 1

Draw two intersecting lines on your paper. Copy these lines onto a piece of patty paper. Because you copied the angles, the two sets of angles are congruent.

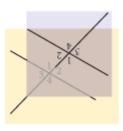
Slide the top copy so that the transversal stays lined up.

Trace the lines and the angles from the bottom original onto the patty paper again. When you do this, you are constructing sets of congruent corresponding angles. Mark the congruent angles.

Are the two lines parallel? You can test to see if the distance between the two lines remains the same, which guarantees that they will never meet.

Step 2

Repeat Step 1, but this time rotate your patty paper 180° so that the transversal lines up again. What kinds of congruent angles have you created? Trace the lines and angles and mark the congruent angles. Are the lines parallel? Check them.



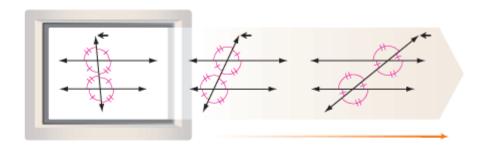
Step 3

Compare your results with those of your group. If your results do not agree, discuss them until you have convinced each other. Complete the conjecture below and add it to your conjecture list.

## Converse of the Parallel Lines Conjecture

C-4

If two lines are cut by a transversal to form pairs of congruent corresponding angles, congruent alternate interior angles, or congruent alternate exterior angles, then the lines are  $\perp$ .





For an interactive version of both investigations, see the Dynamic Geometry Exploration Special Angles on Parallel Lines at www.keymath.com/DG

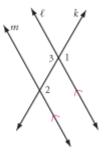


**Developing Proof** You used inductive reasoning to discover all three parts of the Parallel Lines Conjecture. However, if you accept any one of them as true, you can use deductive reasoning to show that the others are true.

Read the example below. Before you read the solution, write a deductive argument with your group. Remember the reasoning strategy of applying previous conjectures and definitions. Then compare your solution to the one presented.

### **EXAMPLE**

Write a deductive argument explaining why the Alternate Interior Angles Conjecture is true. Assume that the Vertical Angles Conjecture and Corresponding Angles Conjecture are both true.



### Solution

### **Deductive Argument**

In the diagram, lines  $\ell$  and m are parallel and intersected by transversal k. If the Corresponding Angles Conjecture is true, the corresponding angles are congruent.

$$\angle 1 \cong \angle 2$$

If the Vertical Angles Conjecture is true, the vertical angles are congruent.

$$\angle 1 \cong \angle 3$$

Because both  $\angle 2$  and  $\angle 3$  are congruent to  $\angle 1$ , they're congruent to each other.

$$\angle 2 \cong \angle 3$$

3eymath.com

Alternate interior angles 2 and 3 are congruent. Therefore, if the corresponding angles are congruent, then the alternate interior angles are congruent.

## EXERCISES

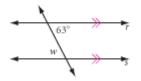


It helps to visualize each

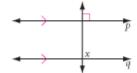
statement and to mark all

congruences you know on

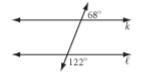
your paper.



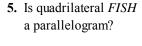
2. 
$$x = ?$$



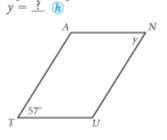
#### **3.** Is line k parallel to line $\ell$ ?

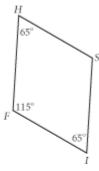


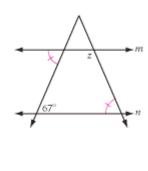
**4.** Quadrilateral *TUNA* is a parallelogram.



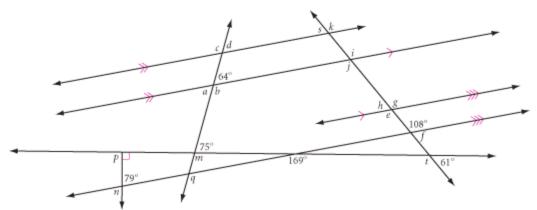
6.  $m \parallel n$  z = ? (h)







7. **Developing Proof** Trace the diagram below. Calculate each lettered angle measure. Explain how you determined measures n, p, and q.

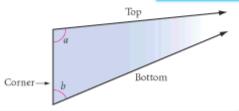


**8. Developing Proof** Write a deductive argument explaining why the Alternate Exterior Angles Conjecture is true. Assume that the Vertical Angles Conjecture and Corresponding Angles Conjecture are both true.

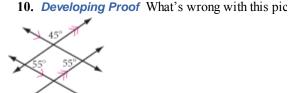
# Cultural CONNECTION

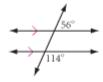


Sculptor Maya Lin designed the Vietnam Veterans Memorial Wall in Washington, D.C. Engraved in the granite wall are the names of United States armed forces service members who died in the Vietnam War or remain missing in action. Do the top and bottom of the wall meet in the distance, or are they parallel? How could you know from angle measures a and b in the diagram below? To learn more about the Memorial Wall and Lin's other projects, visit www.keymath.com/DG

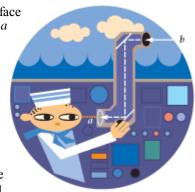


**9. Developing Proof** What's wrong with this picture?





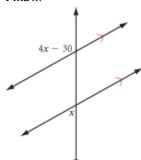
11. A periscope permits a sailor on a submarine to see above the surface of the ocean. This periscope is designed so that the line of sight a is parallel to the light ray b. The middle tube is perpendicular to the top and bottom tubes. What are the measures of the incoming and outgoing angles formed by the light rays and the mirrors in this periscope? Are the surfaces of the mirrors parallel? How do you know? (h)



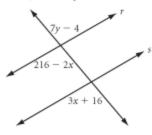
12. Draw a line on your paper and label it line AB. Place a point P about one to two inches from the line. Draw another line (a transversal) that passes through point P and line AB. Use your straightedge and protractor to draw line PQ that is parallel to line AB. Explain your method and why you know the lines are parallel.

13. Is the following statement true? "If yesterday was part of the weekend, then tomorrow is a school day." Write the converse of the statement. Is the converse true?

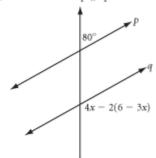
**14.** Find *x*.



15. If  $r \parallel s$ , find y.

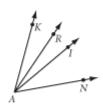


**16.** If  $x = 12^{\circ}$ , is  $p \parallel q$ ?



## Review

- 17. What type (or types) of triangle has one or more lines of symmetry?
- **18.** What type (or types) of quadrilateral has only rotational symmetry? **(h)**
- 19. If D is the midpoint of  $\overline{AC}$  and C is the midpoint of  $\overline{BD}$ , what is the length of  $\overline{AB}$  if BD = 12 cm?

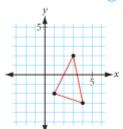


- 20. If  $\overline{AI}$  is the angle bisector of  $\angle KAN$  and  $\overline{AR}$  is the angle bisector of  $\angle KAI$ , what is  $m \angle RAN$  if  $mRAK = 13^{\circ}$ ?
- 21. If everyone in the town of Skunk's Crossing (population 84) has a telephone, how many different lines are needed to connect all the phones to each other?
- 22. How many squares of all sizes are in a 4-by-4 grid of squares? (There are more than 16!) (h)

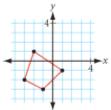


For Exercises 23–25, draw each polygon on graph paper. Relocate the vertices according to the rule. Connect the new points to form a new polygon. Describe what happened to the figure. Is the new polygon congruent to the original?

**23. Rule:** Subtract 1 from each *x*-coordinate.



**24. Rule:** Reverse the sign of each *x*- and *y*-coordinate.



**25. Rule:** Switch the *x*- and *y*-coordinates.

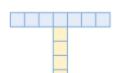
Pentagon *LEMON* with vertices:

$$L(-4, 2)$$
  
 $E(-4, -3)$   
 $M(0, -5)$   
 $O(3, 1)$   
 $N(-1, 4)$ 

**26.** Assume the pattern of blue and yellow shaded **T**'s continues. Copy and complete the table for blue and yellow squares and for the total number of squares.







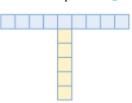


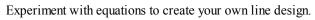
Figure number	1	2	3	4	5	6	 n	 35
Number of yellow squares	2							
Number of blue squares	3							
Total number of squares	5							



### LINE DESIGNS

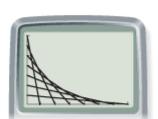
Can you use your graphing calculator to make the line design shown at right? You'll need to recall some algebra. Here are some hints.

- 1. The design consists of the graphs of seven lines.
- 2. The equation for one of the lines is  $y = -\frac{1}{7}x + 1$ .
- **3.** The x- and y-ranges are set to minimums of 0 and maximums of 7.
- **4.** There's a simple pattern in the slopes and *y*-intercepts of the lines.



Your project should include

- ▶ A set of equations for the design shown here.
- ▶ Your own line design and a set of equations for it.



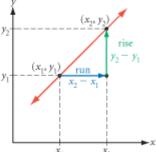
# Slope

The slope of a line is a measure of its steepness. Measuring slope tells us the steepness of a hill, the pitch of a roof, or the incline of a ramp. On a graph, slope can tell us the rate of change, or speed.

To calculate slope, you find the ratio of the vertical distance to the horizontal distance traveled, sometimes referred to as "rise over run."

slope 
$$=\frac{\text{vertical change}}{\text{horizontal change}}$$

One way to find slope is to use a slope triangle. Then use the coordinates of its vertices in the formula.



### Slope Formula

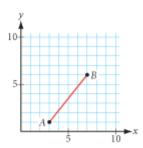
The slope m of a line (or segment) through two points with coordinates

$$(x_1, y_1)$$
 and  $(x_2, y_2)$  is

$$m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$$

## **EXAMPLE**

Draw the slope triangle and find the slope for  $\overline{AB}$ .



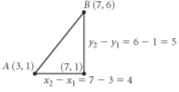
### Solution

Draw the horizontal and vertical sides of the slope triangle below the line. Use them to calculate the side lengths.

$$m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} = \frac{6 - 1}{7 - 3} = \frac{5}{4}$$

Note that if the slope triangle is *above* the line, you subtract the numbers in reverse order, but still get the same result.

$$m = \frac{1-6}{3-7} = \frac{-5}{-4} = \frac{5}{4}$$



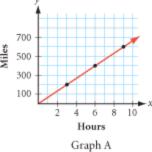
The slope is positive when the line goes up from left to right. The slope is negative when the line goes down from left to right. When is the slope 0? What is the slope of a vertical line?

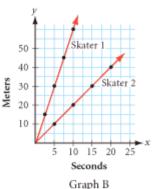


### **EXERCISES**

In Exercises 1–3, find the slope of the line through the given points.

- **1.** (16, 0) and (12, 8)
- **2.** (-3, -4) and (-16, 8) **3.** (5.3, 8.2) and (0.7, -1.5)
- **4.** A line through points (-5, 2) and (2, y) has slope 3. Find y.
- 5. A line through points (x, 2) and (7, 9) has slope  $\frac{7}{3}$ . Find x.
- **6.** Find the coordinates of three more points that lie on the line passing through the points (0, 0) and (3, -4). Explain your method.
- 7. What is the speed, in miles per hour, represented by Graph A?
- **8.** From Graph B, which in-line skater is faster? How much faster?
- 9. The grade of a road is its slope, 100 given as a percent. For example, a road with a 6% grade has slope  $\frac{1}{100}$ . It rises 6 feet for every 100 feet of horizontal run. Describe a 100% grade. Do you think you could drive up it? Could you walk up it? Is it possible for a grade to be greater than 100%?





- 10. What's the slope of the roof on the adobe house? Why might a roof in Connecticut be steeper than a roof in the desert?



Adobe house, New Mexico



Pitched-roof house, Connecticut



# Exploration

**Patterns in Fractals** 

n Lesson 2.1, you discovered patterns and used them to continue number sequences. In most cases, you found each term by applying a rule to the term before it. Such rules are called recursive rules. Some picture patterns are also generated

by recursive rules. You find the next picture in the sequence by looking at the picture before it

and comparing that to the picture before it, and so on.

The Geometer's Sketchpad® can repeat a recursive rule on a figure using a command called Iterate. Using Iterate, you can create the initial stages of fascinating geometric figures called **fractals**. Fractals are **self-similar**, meaning that if you zoom in on a part of the figure, it looks like the whole. A true fractal would need infinitely many applications of the recursive rule. In this exploration, you'll use Iterate to create the first few stages of a fractal called the

Sierpiński triangle.

In this procedure you will construct a triangle, its interior, and midpoints on its sides. Then you will use **Iterate** to repeat the process on three outer triangles formed by connecting the midpoints and vertices of the original triangle.



This fern frond illustrates self-similarity. Notice how each curled leaf resembles the shape of the entire curled frond.

# Activity

# The Sierpiński Triangle

### Procedure Note

Sierpiński Triangle Iteration

- 1. Use the **Segment** tool to draw triangle *ABC*.
- 2. Select the vertices and construct the triangle interior.
- 3. Select  $\overline{AB}$ ,  $\overline{BC}$ , and  $\overline{CA}$ , in that order, and construct the midpoints D, E, and F.
- **4.** Select the vertices again and choose **Iterate** from the Transform menu. An Iterate dialog box will open. Select points *A*, *D*, and *F*. This maps triangle *ABC* onto the smaller triangle *ADF*.
- In the Iterate dialog box, choose Add A New Map from the Structure pop-up menu. Map triangle ABC onto triangle BED.
- **6.** Repeat Step 5 to map triangle *ABC* onto triangle *CFE*.
- **7.** In the Iterate dialog box, choose **Final Iteration Only** from the Display pop-up menu.
- **8.** In the Iterate dialog box, click Iterate to complete your construction.
- **9.** Click in the center of triangle *ABC* and hide the interior to see your fractal at Stage 3.
- **10.** Use Shift+plus or Shift+minus to increase or decrease the stage of your fractal.

#### Step 1

Follow the Procedure Note to create the Stage 3 Sierpiński triangle. The original triangle *ABC* is a Stage 0 Sierpiński triangle. Practice the last step of the Procedure Note to see how the fractal grows in successive stages. Write a sentence or two explaining what the Sierpiński triangle shows you about self-similarity.

Notice that the fractal's property of self-similarity does not change as you drag the vertices.





For an interactive version of this sketch, see the Dynamic Geometry Exploration The Sierpiński Triangle at <a href="https://www.keymath.com/DG">www.keymath.com/DG</a>

Step 2

What happens to the number of shaded triangles in successive stages of the Sierpiński triangle? Decrease your construction to Stage 1 and investigate. How many triangles would be shaded in a Stage n Sierpiński triangle? Use your construction and look for patterns to complete this table.

Stage number	0	1	2	3	 n	 50
Number of shaded triangles	1	3				

What stage is the Sierpiński triangle shown on page 137?

Step 3

Suppose you start with a Stage 0 triangle (just a plain old triangle) with an area of 1 unit. What would be the shaded area at Stage 1? What happens to the shaded area in successive stages of the Sierpin'ski triangle? Use your construction and look for patterns to complete this table.

Stage number	0	1	2	3	 n	 50
Shaded area	1	$\frac{3}{4}$				

What would happen to the shaded area if you could infinitely increase the stage number?

Step 4

Suppose you start with a Stage 0 triangle with a perimeter of 6 units. At Stage 1 the perimeter would be 9 units (the sum of the perimeters of the three triangles, each half the size of the original triangle). What happens to the perimeter in successive stages of the Sierpin'ski triangle? Complete this table.

Stage number	0	1	2	3	 n	 50
Perimeter	6	9				

What would happen to the perimeter if you could infinitely increase the stage number?

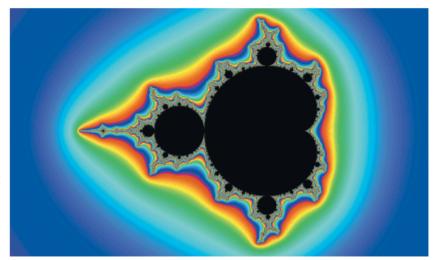
Step 5

Increase your fractal to Stage 3 or 4. If you print three copies of your sketch, you can put the copies together to create a larger triangle one stage greater than your original. How many copies would you need to print in order to create a triangle two stages greater than your original? Print the copies you need and combine them into a poster or a bulletin board display.

Step 6

Sketchpad comes with a sample file of interesting fractals. Explore these fractals and see if you can use **Iterate** to create them yourself. You can save any of your fractal constructions by selecting the entire construction and then choosing **Create New Tool** from the Custom Tools menu. When you use your custom tool in the future, the fractal will be created without having to use **Iterate**.

The word fractal was coined by Benoit Mandelbrot (b 1924), a pioneering researcher in this new field of mathematics. He was the first to use high-speed computers to create this figure, called the Mandelbrot set. Only the black area is part of the set itself. The rainbow colors represent properties of points near the Mandelbrot set. To learn more about different kinds of fractals, visit www.keymath.com/DG



© 2008 Key Curriculum Press EXPLORATION Patterns in Fractals 139



This chapter introduced you to inductive and deductive reasoning. You used inductive reasoning to observe patterns and make conjectures. You learned how to predict number sequences with rules and how to use these rules to model application problems. You learned to disprove a conjecture with a counterexample and to explain why a conjecture is true with deductive reasoning. Then you discovered special relationships about angle pairs and made your first geometry conjectures. Finally you explored the properties of angles formed by a transversal across parallel lines. As you review the chapter, be sure you understand all the important terms. Go back to the lesson to review any terms you're unsure of.





## EXERCISES

- 1. "My dad is in the navy, and he says that food is great on submarines," said Diana. "My mom is a pilot," added Jill, "and she says that airline food is notoriously bad." "My mom is an astronaut trainee," said Julio, "and she says that astronauts' food is the worst imaginable." Diana concludes "I bet no life exists beyond Earth! As you move farther from the surface of Earth, food tastes worse. At extreme altitudes, food must taste so bad that no creature could stand to eat. Therefore, no life exists out there." What do you think of Diana's reasoning? Is it inductive or deductive?
- 2. Think of a situation you observed outside of school in which inductive reasoning was used incorrectly. Write a paragraph or two describing what happened and explaining why you think inductive reasoning was used poorly.
- 3. Think of a situation you observed outside of school in which deductive reasoning was used incorrectly. Write a paragraph or two describing what happened and explaining why you think deductive reasoning was used poorly.

For Exercises 4 and 5, find the next two terms in the sequence.

Practice Your Skills

For Exercises 6 and 7, generate the first six terms in the sequence for each function rule.

**6.** 
$$f(n) = n^2 + 1$$

7. 
$$f(n) = 2^{n-1}$$

For Exercises 8 and 9, draw the next shape in the pattern.

















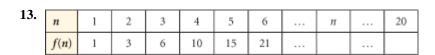


For Exercises 10 and 11, look for a pattern and complete the conjecture.

- **10. Conjecture:** The sum of the first 30 odd whole numbers is <u>1</u>.
- 11. Conjecture: The sum of the first 30 even whole numbers is  $\perp$ .

For Exercises 12 and 13, find the *n*th term and the 20th term in the sequence.

12.	n	1	2	3	4	5	6	 n	 20	
	f(n)	2	-1	-4	-7	-10	-13			



**14.** Viktoriya is a store window designer for Savant Toys. She plans to build a stack of blocks similar to the ones shown below, but 30 blocks high. Make a conjecture for the value of the *n*th term and for the value of the 30th term. How many blocks will she need?



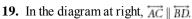




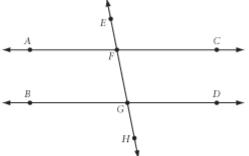




- **15.** The stack of bricks at right is four bricks high. Find the total number of bricks for a stack that is 100 bricks high.
- **16.** If at a party there are a total of 741 handshakes and each person shakes hands with everyone else at the party exactly once, how many people are at the party?
- **17.** If a whole bunch of lines (no two parallel, no three concurrent) intersect in a plane 2926 times, how many lines are in the bunch?
- **18.** If in a 54-sided polygon all possible diagonals are drawn from one vertex, they divide the interior of the polygon into how many regions?

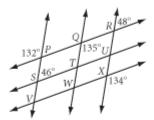


- **a.** Name a pair of vertical angles.
- **b.** Name a linear pair of angles.
- c. Name a pair of corresponding angles.
- **d.** Name a pair of alternate interior angles.
- **20. Developing Proof** In Exercise 19, name three angles congruent to ∠AFE and the conjectures that support your answers.



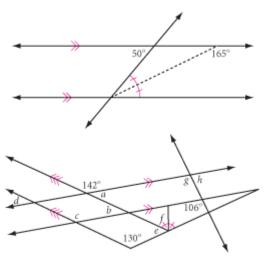
- **21.** Consider this statement: "If two polygons are congruent, then they have the same number of sides." Is this statement true? Now write the converse of the statement. Is the converse true? If it is true, explain why; if it is not true, draw a counterexample.
- **22.** Using a ruler and a protractor, draw a parallelogram with one interior angle measuring 56° and sides with lengths 4.5 cm and 7 cm.

**23. Developing Proof** Which pairs of lines are parallel? Explain how you know.



**25. Developing Proof** Trace the diagram at right. Calculate each lettered angle measure. Explain, how you determined the measures *e*, *f*, and *g*.

**24. Developing Proof** What's wrong with this picture?



# Assessing What You've Learned

### WRITE IN YOUR JOURNAL



Many students find it useful to reflect on the mathematics they're learning by keeping a journal. Like a diary or a travel journal, a mathematics journal is a chance for you to reflect on what happens each day and your feelings about it. Unlike a diary, though, your mathematics journal isn't private—your teacher may ask to read it too and may respond to you in writing. Reflecting on your learning experiences will help you assess your strengths and weaknesses, your preferences, and your learning style. Reading through your journal may help you see what obstacles you have overcome. Or it may help you realize when you need help.

- ➤ So far, you have written definitions, looked for patterns, and made conjectures. How does this way of doing mathematics compare to the way you have learned mathematics in the past?
- What are some of the most significant concepts or skills you've learned so far? Why are they significant to you?
- What are you looking forward to in your study of geometry? What are your goals for this class? What specific steps can you take to achieve your goals?
- ▶ What are you uncomfortable or concerned about? What are some things you or your teacher can do to help you overcome these obstacles?



**KEEPING A NOTEBOOK** You should now have four parts to your notebook: a section for homework and notes, an investigation section, a definition list, and now a conjecture list. Make sure these are up-to-date.

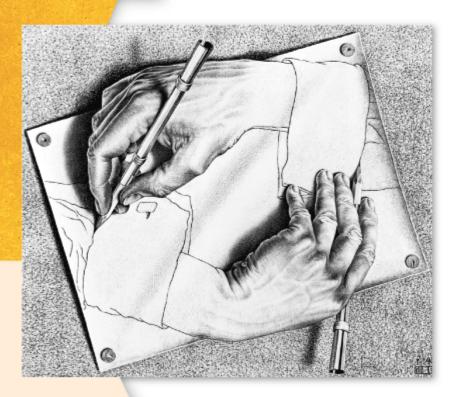


**UPDATE YOUR PORTFOLIO** Choose one or more pieces of your most significant work in this chapter to add to your portfolio. These could include an investigation, a project, or a complex homework exercise. Make sure your work is complete. Describe why you chose the piece and what you learned from it.

**CHAPTER** 

3

# **Using Tools** of **Geometry**



There is indeed great satisfaction in acquiring skill, in coming to thoroughly understand the qualities of the material at hand and in learning to use the instruments we have—in the first place, our hands!—in an effective and controlled way.

Drawing Hands, M. C. Escher, 1948 ©2002 Cordon Art B. V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.

### **OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will

- learn about the history of geometric constructions
- develop skills using a compass, a straightedge, patty paper, and geometry software
- see how to create complex figures using only a compass, a straightedge, and patty paper
- explore points of concurrency in triangles

M. C. ESCHER



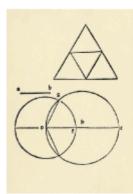
It is only the first step that is difficult.

MARIE DE VICHY-CHAMROD

# **Duplicating Segments** and Angles

The compass, like the straightedge, has been a useful geometry tool for thousands of years. The ancient Egyptians used the compass to mark off distances. During the Golden Age of Greece, Greek mathematicians made a game of geometric constructions. In his work *Elements*, Euclid (325–265 B.C.E.) established the basic rules for constructions using only a compass and a straightedge. In this course you will learn how to construct geometric figures using these tools as well as patty paper.

Constructions with patty paper are a variation on the ancient Greek game of geometric constructions. Almost all the figures that can be constructed with a





I gara intra figuram bicitur ficribi quando ea que inferibitur eius in qua inferibitur la ea que intensima en un qua vintensima; tera uno quea; focum angulorum ab inte riore parte contingir. Cif. iromiferibi vero figura figure perbibetur que octio e a quidé figura cina cui cirefferibitur finis lateribus omnibus omnes angulos contingir.

Apropolitio ...

Plara batum circulum bate linee recte que biamento mi/
nime maior cerifiar e quam receam lineam coapeare.
(Este inea bata, a.b. circularis penna, c.d. e.m.) biament e.d. qua
o è maiori nea, a.b. velo ima bati creali caspinare linei eçife, a.b.
que il forti capallo viametro dibat profini. It ati misorey etime
tro firma d.d.f.bi cibo e fup purosi. d. fra quistane linee. d.f. ecforise capata
e.g. ferme o summ circulum in puncio, g. e.c. da dictura que poem occure linea
a punco, d. vt. d.e. vd.d.g. crite; vraficet enum capatholinea a. b. co q viriag
erni ch qualia line. d.f. per offinizionem arcati: quane babenase propoligi.

compass and a straightedge can also be constructed using a straightedge and patty paper, waxed paper, or tracing paper. If you have access to a computer with a geometry software program, you can do constructions electronically.

In the previous chapters, you drew and sketched many figures. In this chapter, however, you'll construct geometric figures. The words sketch, draw, and construct have specific meanings in geometry.

### **Mathematics** CONNECTION •

Euclidean geometry is the study of geometry based on the assumptions of Euclid (325-265 B.C.E.). Euclid established the basic rules for constructions using only a compass and a straightedge. In his work Elements, Euclid proposed definitions and constructions about points, lines, angles, surfaces, and solids. He also explained why the constructions were correct with deductive reasoning.

A page from a book on Euclid, above, shows some of his constructions and a translation of his explanations from Greek into Latin.



When you *sketch* an equilateral triangle, you may make a freehand sketch of a triangle that looks equilateral. You don't need to use any geometry tools.



When you draw an equilateral triangle, you should draw it carefully and accurately, using your geometry tools. You may use a protractor to measure angles and a ruler to measure the sides to make sure they are equal in measure.



When you *construct* an equilateral triangle with a compass and straightedge, you don't rely on measurements from a protractor or ruler. You must use only a compass and a straightedge. This method of construction guarantees that your triangle is equilateral.



When you *construct* an equilateral triangle with patty paper and straightedge, you fold the paper and trace equal segments. You may use a straightedge to draw a segment, but you may not use a compass or any measuring tools.

When you sketch or draw, use the special marks that indicate right angles, parallel segments, and congruent segments and angles.

By tradition, neither a ruler nor a protractor is ever used to perform geometric constructions, because no matter how precise we try to be, measurement always involves some amount of inaccuracy. Rulers and protractors are measuring tools, not construction tools. You may use a ruler as a straightedge in constructions, provided you do not use its marks for measuring. In the next two investigations you will discover how to duplicate a line segment and an angle using only your compass and straightedge, or using only patty paper and a straightedge. By **duplicate**, we mean to copy using construction tools.



# Investigation 1

# **Duplicating a Segment**

### You will need

- a compass
- a straightedge
- 。a ruler
- patty paper

Step 1

The complete construction for copying a segment,  $A\overline{B}$ , is shown above. Describe each stage of the process.

Step 2

Step 3

Use a ruler to measure  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{CD}$ . How do the two segments compare?

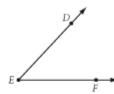
Describe how to duplicate a segment using patty paper instead of a compass.

Using only a compass and a straightedge, how would you duplicate an angle? In other words, how would you construct an angle that is congruent to a given angle? You may not use your protractor, because a protractor is a measuring tool, not a construction tool.



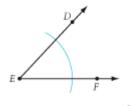
### You will need

- a compass
- a straightedge

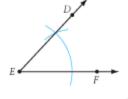


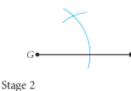
Step 1

The first two stages for copying  $\angle DEF$  are shown below. Describe each stage of the process.









Stage 1

Step 2

- What will be the final stage of the construction?
- Step 3 Use a protractor to measure  $\angle DEF$  and  $\angle G$ . What can you state about these angles?
- Step 4 Describe how to duplicate an angle using patty paper instead of a compass.



You've just discovered how to duplicate segments and angles using a straightedge and compass or patty paper. These are the basic constructions. You will use combinations of these to do many other constructions. You may be surprised that you can construct figures more precisely without using a ruler or protractor!

Called vintas, these canoes with brightly patterned sails are used for fishing in Zamboanga, Philippines. What angles and segments are duplicated in this photo?

### **EXERCISES**



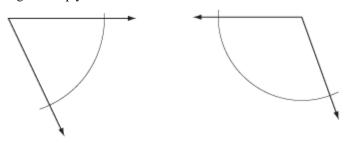
**Construction** Now that you can duplicate line segments and angles using construction tools, do the constructions in Exercises 1–10. You will duplicate polygons in Exercises 7 and 10.



1. Using only a compass and a straightedge, duplicate the three line segments shown below. Label them as they're labeled in the figures.



- **2.** Use the segments from Exercise 1 to construct a line segment with length AB + CD.
- **3.** Use the segments from Exercise 1 to construct a line segment with length 2AB + 2EF CD.
- **4.** Use a compass and a straightedge to duplicate each angle. There's an arc in each angle to help you.



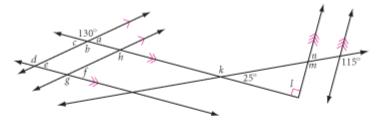
- **5.** Draw an obtuse angle. Label it *LGE*, then duplicate it.
- **6.** Draw two acute angles on your paper. Construct a third angle with a measure equal to the sum of the measures of the first two angles. Remember, you cannot use a protractor—use a compass and a straightedge only.
- **7.** Draw a large acute triangle on the top half of your paper. Duplicate it on the bottom half, using your compass and straightedge. Do not erase your construction marks, so others can see your method.
- **8.** Construct an equilateral triangle. Each side should be the length of this segment.



- **9.** Repeat Exercises 7 and 8 using constructions with patty paper.
- **10.** Draw quadrilateral *QUAD*. Duplicate it, using your compass and straightedge. Label the construction *COPY* so that  $QUAD \cong COPY$ .
- **11.** *Technology* Use geometry software to construct an equilateral triangle. Drag each vertex to make sure it remains equilateral.

### Review

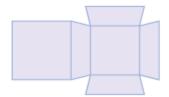
**12.** Copy the diagram at right. Use the Vertical Angles Conjecture and the Parallel Lines Conjecture to calculate the measure of each angle.



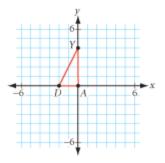
**13.** Hyacinth is standing on the curb waiting to cross 24th Street. A half block to her left is Avenue J, and Avenue K is a half block to her right. Numbered streets run parallel to one another and are all perpendicular to lettered avenues. If Avenue P is the northernmost avenue, which direction (north, south, east, or west) is she facing?

**14.** Write a new definition for an isosceles triangle, based on the triangle's reflectional symmetry. Does your definition apply to equilateral triangles? Explain. (h)

**15.** Sketch the three-dimensional figure formed by folding this net into a solid.



**16.** Draw  $\triangle DAY$  after it is rotated 90° clockwise about the origin. Label the coordinates of the vertices.

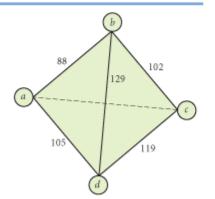


17. Use your ruler to draw a triangle with side lengths 8 cm, 10 cm, and 11 cm. Explain your method. Can you draw a second triangle with the same three side lengths that is not congruent to the first?

# IMPROVING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS

# Pyramid Puzzle II

Place four different numbers in the bubbles at the vertices of each pyramid so that the two numbers at the ends of each edge add to the number on that edge.





To be successful, the first thing to do is to fall in love with your work.

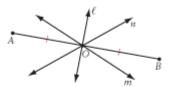
SISTER MARY LAURETTA

# **Constructing Perpendicular Bisectors**

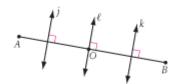
Each segment has exactly one midpoint. A **segment bisector** is a line, ray, or segment that passes through the midpoint of a segment.

A segment has many perpendiculars and many bisectors, but in a plane each segment has only one bisector that is also perpendicular to the segment. This line is its perpendicular bisector.

The construction of the perpendicular bisector of a segment creates a line of symmetry. You use this property when you hang a picture frame. If you want to center a picture above your desk, you need to place a nail in the wall somewhere along the perpendicular bisector of the segment that forms the top edge of your desk closest to the wall.



Lines  $\ell$ , m, and n bisect  $\overline{AB}$ .



Lines j, k, and  $\ell$  are perpendicular to  $\overline{AB}$ .



Line  $\ell$  is the perpendicular bisector of  $\overline{AB}$ .



# Investigation 1

# Finding the Right Bisector

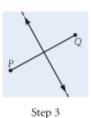
#### You will need

- patty paper
- a straightedge

In this investigation you will discover how to construct the perpendicular bisector of a segment.



Step 2



Step 1

Draw a segment on patty paper. Label it  $\overline{PO}$ .

Step 2

Fold your patty paper so that endpoints P and Q land exactly on top of each other, that is, they **coincide**. Crease your paper along the fold.

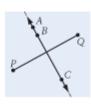
Step 3

Unfold your paper. Draw a line in the crease. What is the relationship of this line to  $\overline{PQ}$ ? Check with others in your group. Use your ruler and protractor to verify your observations.

How would you describe the relationship of the points on the perpendicular bisector to the endpoints of the bisected segment? There's one more step in your investigation.

Step 4

Place three points on your perpendicular bisector. Label them A, B, and C. With your compass, compare the distances PA and QA. Compare the distances PB and QB. Compare the distances PC and QC. What do you notice about the two distances from each point on the perpendicular bisector to the endpoints of the segment? Compare your results with the results of others. Then copy and complete the conjecture.



Remember to add each conjecture to your conjecture list and draw a figure for it.

### Perpendicular Bisector Conjecture

If a point is on the perpendicular bisector of a segment, then it is? from the endpoints.

You've just completed the Perpendicular Bisector Conjecture. What about the converse of this statement?



# Investigation 2

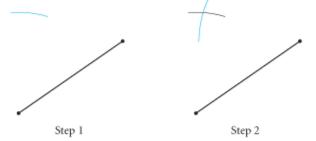
# Constructing the Perpendicular Bisector

You will need

a compass

a straightedge

If a point is equidistant, or the same distance, from two endpoints of a line segment in a plane, will it be on the segment's perpendicular bisector? If so, then locating two such points can help you construct the perpendicular bisector.



Step 1

Draw a line segment. Set your compass to more than half the distance between the endpoints. Using one endpoint as center, swing an arc on one side of the segment.

Step 2

Using the same compass setting, but using the other endpoint as center, swing a second arc intersecting the first.

Step 3

The point where the two arcs intersect is equidistant from the endpoints of your segment. Just as you did on one side of the segment, use your compass to find another such point. Use these points to construct a line. Is this line the perpendicular bisector of the segment? Use the paper-folding technique of Investigation 1 to check.

Complete the conjecture below, and write a summary of what you did in this investigation.

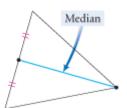
### **Converse of the Perpendicular Bisector Conjecture**

C-6

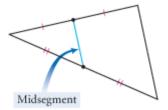
If a point is equidistant from the endpoints of a segment, then it is on the of the segment.

Notice that constructing the perpendicular bisector also locates the midpoint of a segment. Now that you know how to construct the perpendicular bisector and the midpoint, you can construct rectangles, squares, and right triangles. You can also construct two special segments in any triangle: medians and midsegments.

The segment connecting the vertex of a triangle to the midpoint of its opposite side is a **median**. There are three midpoints and three vertices in every triangle, so every triangle has three medians.



The segment that connects the midpoints of two sides of a triangle is a **midsegment**. A triangle has three sides, each with its own midpoint, so there are three midsegments in every triangle.







You will need

**Construction** For Exercises 1–5, construct the figures using only a compass and a straightedge.



Geometry software

for Exercise 13

- **1.** Draw and label  $\overline{AB}$  Construct the perpendicular bisector of  $\overline{AB}$
- **2.** Draw and label  $\overline{QD}$  Construct perpendicular bisectors to divide  $\overline{QD}$  into four congruent segments.
- **3.** Draw a line segment so close to the edge of your paper that you can swing arcs on only one side of the segment. Then construct the perpendicular bisector of the segment. (h)
- **4.** Using  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{CD}$ , construct a segment with length  $2AB \frac{1}{2}CD$ .
- **5.** Construct  $\overline{MN}$  with length equal to the average length of  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{CD}$  above.

**6.** Construction Do Exercises 1–5 using patty paper.

**Construction** For Exercises 7–10, you have your choice of construction tools. Use either a compass and a straightedge, or patty paper and a straightedge. Do not use patty paper and compass together.

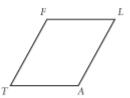
- 7. Construct \( \triangle ALI. \) Construct the perpendicular bisector of each side. What do you notice about the three bisectors?
- **8.** Construct  $\triangle ABC$ . Construct medians AM, BN, and  $\overline{CL}$ . Notice anything special?
- **9.** Construct  $\triangle DEF$ . Construct midsegment  $G\overline{H}$  where G is the midpoint of  $\overline{DF}$  and His the midpoint of  $\overline{DE}$ . What do you notice about the relationship between  $\overline{EF}$ and  $\overline{GH}$ ?
- 10. Copy rectangle *DSOE* onto your paper. Construct the midpoint of each side. Label the midpoint of  $\overline{DS}$  point I, the midpoint of  $\overline{SO}$  point C, the midpoint of  $\overline{OE}$  point V, and the midpoint of  $\overline{ED}$  point R. Construct quadrilateral RICV. Describe RICV.



11. The island shown at right has two post offices. The postal service wants to divide the island into two zones so that anyone within each zone is always closer to their own post office than to the other one. Copy the island and the locations of the post offices and locate the dividing line between the two zones. Explain how you know this dividing line solves the problem. Or pick several points in each zone and make sure they are closer to that zone's post office than they are to the other one.



- 12. Copy parallelogram FLAT onto your paper. Construct the perpendicular bisector of each side. What do you notice about the quadrilateral formed by the four lines?
- 13. Technology Use geometry software to construct a triangle. Construct a median. Are the two triangles created by the median congruent? Use an area measuring tool in your software program to find the areas of the two triangles. How do they compare? If you made the original triangle from heavy cardboard, and you wanted to balance that cardboard triangle on the edge of a ruler, what would you do?



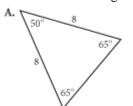
14. Construction Construct a very large triangle on a piece of cardboard or mat board and construct its median. Cut out the triangle and see if you can balance it on the edge of a ruler. Sketch how you placed the triangle on the ruler. Cut the triangle into two pieces along the median and weigh the two pieces. Are they the same weight?

### Review

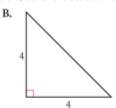
In Exercises 15–20, match the term with its figure below.

- **15.** Scalene acute triangle
- **16.** Isosceles obtuse triangle
- 17. Isosceles right triangle

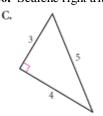
**18.** Isosceles acute triangle

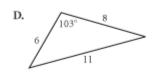


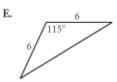
19. Scalene obtuse triangle

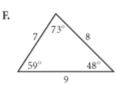


**20.** Scalene right triangle









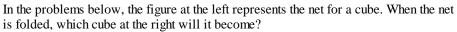
21. List the letters from the alphabet below that have a horizontal line of symmetry.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z

22. Use your ruler and protractor to draw a triangle with angle measures 40° and 70° and a side opposite the 70° angle with length 10 cm. Explain your method. Can you draw a second triangle using the same instructions that is not congruent to the first?

# IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS









.



ъ



C.



2.



A.



В.



C.



3.



A. (



3.

C.



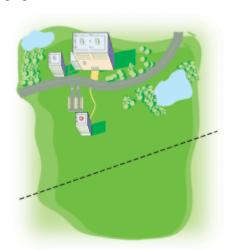


Intelligence plus character that is the goal of true education. MARTIN LUTHER KING. JR.

# Constructing Perpendiculars to a Line

f you are in a room, look over at one of the walls. What is the distance from where you are to that wall? How would you measure that distance? There are a lot of distances from where you are to the wall, but in geometry when we speak of a distance from a point to a line we mean the perpendicular distance.

The construction of a perpendicular from a point to a line (with the point not on the line) is another of Euclid's constructions, and it has practical applications in many fields, including agriculture and engineering. For example, think of a high-speed Internet cable as a line and a building as a point not on the line. Suppose you wanted to connect the building to the Internet cable using the shortest possible length of connecting wire. How can you find out how much wire you need, so you don't buy too much?





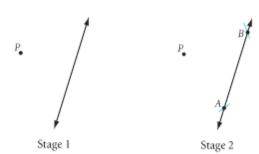
# **Investigation 1**

# Finding the Right Line

You already know how to construct perpendicular bisectors of segments. You can use that knowledge to construct a perpendicular from a point to a line.

### You will need

- a compass
- a straightedge

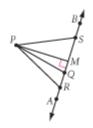


- Step 1
- Draw a line and a point labeled P not on the line, as shown above.
- Step 2
- Describe the construction steps you take at Stage 2.
- Step 3
- How is PA related to PB? What does this answer tell you about where point P lies? Hint: See the Converse of the Perpendicular Bisector Conjecture.
- Step 4
- Construct the perpendicular bisector of  $\overline{AB}$ . Label the midpoint M.

You have now constructed a perpendicular through a point not on the line. This is useful for finding the distance to a line.

Step 5

Label three randomly placed points on  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  as Q, R, and S. Measure PQ, PR, PS, and PM. Which distance is shortest? Compare results with those of others in your group.



You are now ready to state your observations by completing the conjecture.

### Shortest Distance Conjecture

**C-7** 

The shortest distance from a point to a line is measured along the \_? from the point to the line.

Let's take another look. How could you use patty paper to do this construction?



# Investigation 2

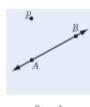
# **Patty-Paper Perpendiculars**

You will need

- patty paper
- a straightedge

In Investigation 1, you constructed a perpendicular from a point to a line. Now let's do the same construction using patty paper.

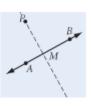
On a piece of patty paper, perform the steps below.



Step 1



Step 2



Step 3

- Step 1 Draw and label  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  and a point P not on  $\overrightarrow{AB}$ .
- Step 2 Fold the line onto itself, and slide the layers of paper so that point *P* appears to be on the crease. Is the crease perpendicular to the line? Check it with the corner of a piece of patty paper.
- Step 3 Label the point of intersection M. Are  $\angle AMP$  and  $\angle BMP$  congruent? Supplementary? Why or why not?

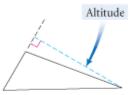
In Investigation 2, is M the midpoint of  $\overline{AB}$ ? Do you think it needs to be? Think about the techniques used in the two investigations. How do the techniques differ?

The construction of a perpendicular from a point to a line lets you find the shortest distance from a point to a line. The geometry definition of distance from a point to a line is based on this construction, and it reads, "The distance from a point to a line is the length of the perpendicular segment from the point to the line."

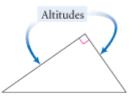
You can also use this construction to find an altitude of a triangle. An altitude of a triangle is a perpendicular segment from a vertex to the opposite side or to a line containing the opposite side.



An altitude can be inside the triangle.



An altitude can be outside the triangle.



An altitude can be one of the sides of the triangle.

The length of the altitude is the height of the triangle. A triangle has three different altitudes, so it has three different heights.

### EXERCISES



#### You will need



Construction Use your compass and straightedge and the definition of distance to do Exercises 1–5.

- **1.** Draw an obtuse angle BIG. Place a point P inside the angle. Now construct perpendiculars from the point to both sides of the angle. Which side is closer to point *P*?
- **2.** Draw an acute triangle. Label it *ABC*. Construct altitude  $\overline{CD}$  with point D on  $\overline{AB}$ . (We didn't forget about point D. It's at the foot of the perpendicular. Your job is to locate it.)
- **3.** Draw obtuse triangle *OBT* with obtuse angle *O*. Construct altitude  $B\overline{U}$ . In an obtuse triangle, an altitude can fall outside the triangle. To construct an altitude from point B of your triangle, extend side  $\overline{OT}$ . In an obtuse triangle, how many altitudes fall outside the triangle and how many fall inside the triangle?



In this futuristic painting, American artist Ralston Crawford (1906-1978) has constructed a set of converging lines and vertical lines to produce an illusion of distance.

- **4.** How can you construct a perpendicular to a line through a point that is on the line? Draw a line. Mark a point on your line. Now experiment. Devise a method to construct a perpendicular to your line at the point.
- **5.** Draw a line. Mark two points on the line and label them Q and R. Now construct a square SQRE with  $\overline{QR}$  as a side.  $\bigcirc$

**Construction** For Exercises 6–9, use patty paper and a straightedge. (Attach your patty-paper work to your problems.)

**6.** Draw a line across your patty paper with a straightedge. Place a point *P* not on the line, and fold the perpendicular to the line through the point *P*. How would you fold to construct a perpendicular through a point on a line? Place a point *Q* on the line. Fold a perpendicular to the line through point *Q*. What do you notice about the two folds?

- 7. Draw a very large acute triangle on your patty paper. Place a point inside the triangle. Now construct perpendiculars from the point to all three sides of the triangle by folding. Mark your figure. How can you use your construction to decide which side of the triangle your point is closest to?
- **8.** Construct an isosceles right triangle. Label its vertices  $\underline{A}$ ,  $\underline{B}$ , and C, with point C the right angle. Fold to construct the altitude  $C\overline{D}$ . What do you notice about this line?
- **9.** Draw obtuse triangle *OBT* with angle *O* obtuse. Fold to construct the altitude  $\overline{BU}$ . (Don't forget, you must extend the side  $\overline{OT}$ .)

**Construction** For Exercises 10–12, you may use either patty paper or a compass and a straightedge.

**10.** Construct a square ABLE given  $\overline{AL}$  as a diagonal.



- **11.** Construct a rectangle whose width is half its length.
- **12.** Construct the complement of  $\angle A$ .



## Review

**13.** Copy and complete the table. Make a conjecture for the value of the nth term and for the value of the 35th term.  $\bigcirc$ 

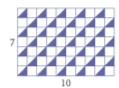
Rectangular pattern with triangles

Rectangle	1	2	3	4	5	6		n		35		
Number of shaded triangles	2	9										









**14.** Sketch the solid of revolution formed when the two-dimensional figure at right is revolved about the line.

For Exercises 15–20, label the vertices with the appropriate letters. When you sketch or draw, use the special marks that indicate right angles, parallel segments, and congruent segments and angles.

- **15.** Sketch obtuse triangle FIT with  $m \angle I > 90^{\circ}$  and median  $I\overline{Y}$ .
- **16.** Sketch  $\overline{AB} \perp \overline{CD}$  and  $\overline{EF} \perp \overline{CD}$ .
- 17. Use your protractor to draw a regular pentagon. Draw all the diagonals. Use your compass to *construct* a regular hexagon. Draw three diagonals connecting alternating vertices. Do the same for the other three vertices.
- 18. Draw a triangle with a 6 cm side and an 8 cm side and the angle between them measuring 40°. Draw a second triangle with a 6 cm side and an 8 cm side and exactly one 40° angle that is not between the two given sides. Are the two triangles congruent?
- 19. Sketch and label a polygon that has exactly three sides of equal length and exactly two angles of equal measure.
- 20. Sketch two triangles. Each should have one side measuring 5 cm and one side measuring 9 cm, but they should not be congruent.



### CONSTRUCTING A TILE DESIGN

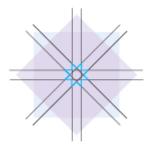
This Islamic design is based on two intersecting squares that form an 8-pointed star. Many designs of this kind can be constructed using only patty paper or a compass and

a straightedge. Try it. Use construction tools to re-create this design or to create a design of your own based on an 8-pointed star.

Your project should include

- Your design based on an 8-pointed star, in color.
- A diagram showing your construction technique, with a written explanation of how you created it.

Here is a diagram to get you started.







Challenges make you discover things about yourself that you never really knew.

CICELY TYSON

# **Constructing Angle Bisectors**

On a softball field, the pitcher's mound is the same distance from each foul line, so it lies on the angle bisector of the angle formed by the foul lines. As with a perpendicular bisector of a segment, an angle bisector forms a line of symmetry. While the definition in Chapter 1 defined an angle bisector as a ray, you may also refer to a segment as an angle bisector if it lies on the ray and passes through the vertex.





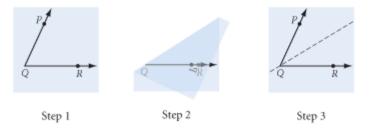
# **Investigation 1**

# **Angle Bisecting by Folding**

You will need

- patty paper
- a straightedge

Each person should draw his or her own acute angle for this investigation.



- Step 1
- On patty paper, draw a large-scale angle. Label it *PQR*.
- Step 2
- Fold your patty paper so that  $\overrightarrow{OP}$  and  $\overrightarrow{OR}$  coincide. Crease the fold.
- Step 3
- Unfold your patty paper. Draw a ray with endpoint Q along the crease. Does the ray bisect  $\angle PQR$ ? How can you tell?
- Step 4
- Repeat Steps 1–3 with an obtuse angle. Do you use different methods for finding the bisectors of different kinds of angles?

Step 5

Place a point on your angle bisector. Label it *A*. Compare the distances from *A* to each of the two sides. Remember that "distance" means *shortest* distance! Try it with other points on the angle bisector. Compare your results with those of others. Copy and complete the conjecture.

## **Angle Bisector Conjecture**

C-8

If a point is on the bisector of an angle, then it is  $\frac{?}{}$  from the sides of the angle.

You've found the bisector of an angle by folding patty paper. Now let's see how you can construct the angle bisector with a compass and a straightedge.



# Investigation 2

# **Angle Bisecting with Compass**

### You will need

- a compass
- a straightedge

In this investigation, you will find a method for bisecting an angle using a compass and straightedge. Each person in your group should investigate a different angle.

- Step 1
- Draw an angle.
- Step 2

Find a method for constructing the bisector of the angle. Experiment!

Hint: Start by drawing an arc centered at the vertex.

Step 3

Once you think you have constructed the angle bisector, fold your paper to see if the ray you constructed is actually the bisector. Share your

method with other students in your group. Agree on a best method.

Step 4

Write a summary of what you did in this investigation.

In earlier lessons, you learned to construct a 90° angle. Now you know how to bisect an angle. What angles can you construct by combining these two skills?



# EXERCISES

**Construction** For Exercises 1–5, match each geometric construction with its diagram.

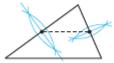
- **1.** Construction of an angle bisector
- **2.** Construction of a median
- 3. Construction of a midsegment
- **4.** Construction of a perpendicular bisector
- **5.** Construction of an altitude

Construction tools for Exercises 1-12

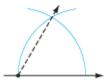
Geometry software for Exercise 22

You will need









C.

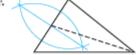




E.







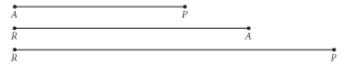
**Construction** For Exercises 6–12, construct a figure with the given specifications.

6. Given:



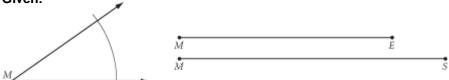
**Construct:** An isosceles right triangle with z as the length of each of the two congruent sides

7. Given:



**Construct:**  $\triangle RAP$  with median PM and angle bisector  $\overline{RB}$ 

8. Given:



**Construct:**  $\triangle MSE$  with  $\overline{OU}$ , where O is the midpoint of  $\overline{MS}$  and U is the midpoint of  $\overline{SE}$ 

9. Construct an angle with each given measure and label it. Remember, you may use only your compass and straightedge. No protractor!

**a.** 90°

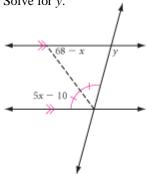
**b.** 45°

- **c.** 135°
- 10. Draw a large acute triangle. Bisect the angle at one vertex with a compass and a straightedge. Construct an altitude from the second vertex and a median from the third vertex.
- 11. Repeat Exercise 10 with patty paper. Which set of construction tools do you prefer? Why?
- 12. Use your straightedge to construct a linear pair of angles. Use your compass to bisect each angle of the linear pair. What do you notice about the two angle bisectors? Can you make a conjecture? Can you explain why it is true?
- 13. In this lesson you discovered the Angle Bisector Conjecture. Write the converse of the Angle Bisector Conjecture. Do you think it's true? Why or why not?

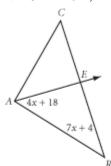
Notice how this mosaic floor at Church of Pomposa in Italy (ca. 850 c.E.) uses many duplicated shapes. What constructions do you see in the square pattern? Are all the triangles in the isosceles triangle pattern identical? How can you tell?



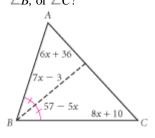
**14.** Solve for y.



**15.** If  $\overrightarrow{AE}$  bisects  $\angle CAR$  and  $m \angle CAR = 84^{\circ}$ , find  $m \angle R$ .



**16.** Which angle is largest,  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$ , or  $\angle C$ ?



### Review

Draw or construct each figure in Exercises 17–21. Label the vertices with the appropriate letters. If you're unclear on the difference between "draw" and "construct," refer back to pages 144 and 145.

**17.** Draw a regular octagon. What traffic sign comes to mind? **(h)** 

**18.** Construct regular octagon *ALTOSIGN*. (h)

**19.** Draw  $\triangle ABC$  so that AC = 3.5 cm, AB = 5.6 cm, and  $M \angle BAC = 130^{\circ}$ .

**20.** Draw isosceles right  $\triangle ABC$  so that BC = 6.5 cm and  $m \angle B = 90^{\circ}$ .

**21.** Draw a triangle with a  $40^{\circ}$  angle, a  $60^{\circ}$  angle, and a side between the given angles measuring 8 cm. Draw a second triangle with a  $40^{\circ}$  angle and a  $60^{\circ}$  angle but with a side measuring 8 cm *opposite* the  $60^{\circ}$  angle. Are the triangles congruent?

**22.** <u>Technology</u> Use geometry software to construct  $A\overline{B}$  and  $\overline{CD}$ , with point C on  $A\overline{B}$  and point D not on  $A\overline{B}$ . Construct the perpendicular bisector of  $\overline{CD}$ .

**a.** Trace this perpendicular bisector as you drag point C along  $\overline{AB}$ . Describe the shape formed by this locus of lines.

**b.** Erase the tracings from part a. Now trace the midpoint of  $\overline{CD}$  as you drag C. Describe the locus of points.

# IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

### Coin Swap III

Arrange four dimes and four pennies in a row of nine squares, as shown. Switch the position of the four dimes and four pennies in exactly 24 moves. A coin can slide into an empty square next to it or can jump over one coin into an empty space. Record your solution by listing, in order, which type of coin is moved. For example, your list might begin PDPDPDDD . . . . .





Constructing Parallel Lines

Parallel lines are lines that lie in the same plane and do not intersect.



When you stop to think, don't forget to start up again.

ANONYMOUS

The lines in the first pair shown above intersect. They are clearly not parallel. The lines in the second pair do not meet as drawn. However, if they were extended, they would intersect. Therefore, they are not parallel. The lines in the third pair appear to be parallel, but if you extend them far enough in both directions, can you be sure they won't meet? There are many ways to be sure that the lines are parallel.



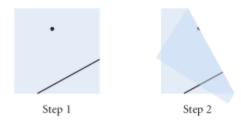
# Investigation

# **Constructing Parallel Lines by Folding**

You will need

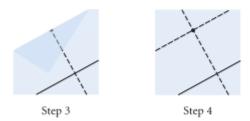
- patty paper
- a straightedge

How would you check whether two lines are parallel? One way is to draw a transversal and compare corresponding angles. You can also use this idea to *construct* a pair of parallel lines.



- Step 1
- Draw a line and a point on patty paper as shown.
- Step 2

Fold the paper to construct a perpendicular so that the crease runs through the point as shown. Describe the four newly formed angles.



- Step 3
- Through the point, make another fold that is perpendicular to the first crease.
- Step 4

Compare the pairs of corresponding angles created by the folds. Are they all congruent? Why? What conclusion can you make about the lines?

There are many ways to construct parallel lines. You can construct parallel lines much more quickly with patty paper than with compass and straightedge. You can also use properties you discovered in the Parallel Lines Conjecture to construct parallel lines by duplicating corresponding angles, alternate interior angles, or alternate exterior angles. Or you can construct two perpendiculars to the same line. In the exercises you will practice all of these methods.



### EXERCISES

#### You will need



**Construction** In Exercises 1–9, use the specified construction tools to do each construction. If no tools are specified, you may choose either patty paper or compass and straightedge.

- 1. Use compass and straightedge. Draw a line and a point not on the line. Construct a second line through the point that is parallel to the first line, by duplicating alternate interior angles.
- **2.** Use compass and straightedge. Draw a line and a point not on the line. Construct a second line through the point that is parallel to the first line, by duplicating corresponding angles.
- **3.** Construct a square with perimeter z. **(h)**



**4.** Construct a rhombus with x as the length of each side and  $\angle A$  as one of the acute angles.



**5.** Construct trapezoid TRAP with  $\overline{TR}$  and  $\overline{AP}$  as the two parallel sides and with AP as the distance between them. (There are many solutions!)

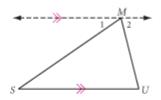


**6.** Using patty paper and straightedge, or a compass and straightedge, construct parallelogram GRAM with  $\overline{RG}$  and  $\overline{RA}$  as two consecutive sides and ML as the distance between  $\overline{RG}$  and  $\overline{AM}$ . (How many solutions can you find?)

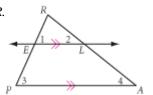


You may choose to do the mini-investigations in Exercises 7, 9, and 11 using geometry software.

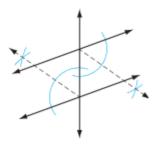
**7.** *Mini-Investigation* Draw a large scalene acute triangle and label it  $\triangle SUM$ . Through vertex M construct a line parallel to side  $\overline{SU}$  as shown in the diagram. Use your protractor or a piece of patty paper to compare  $\angle 1$ and  $\angle 2$  with the other two angles of the triangle ( $\angle S$  and  $\angle U$ ). Notice anything special? Write down what you observe.



- 8. Developing Proof Use deductive reasoning to explain why your observation in Exercise 7 is true for any triangle.
- **9.** *Mini-Investigation* Draw a large scalene acute triangle and label it  $\triangle PAR$ . Place point E anywhere on side PR, and construct a line  $\overline{EL}$  parallel to side  $\overline{PA}$  as shown in the diagram. Use your ruler to measure the lengths of the four segments  $A\overline{L}$ ,  $\overline{LR}$ ,  $\overline{RE}$ , and  $\overline{EP}$ , and compare ratios  $\frac{RL}{LA}$  and  $\frac{RE}{EP}$ . Notice anything special? Write down what you observe.

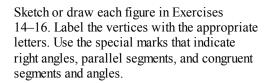


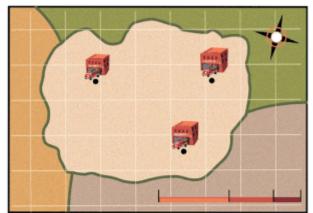
- 10. Developing Proof Measure the four labeled angles in Exercise 9. Notice anything special? Use deductive reasoning to explain why your observation is true for any triangle.
- 11. Mini-Investigation Draw a pair of parallel lines by tracing along both edges of your ruler. Draw a transversal. Use your compass to bisect each angle of a pair of alternate interior angles. What shape is formed?
- 12. Developing Proof Use deductive reasoning to explain why the resulting shape is formed in Exercise 11.



### Review

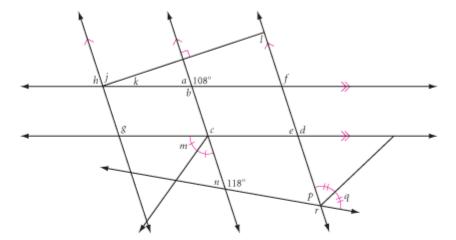
13. There are three fire stations in the small county of Dry Lake. County planners need to divide the county into three zones so that fire alarms alert the closest station. Trace the county and the three fire stations onto patty paper, and locate the boundaries of the three zones. Explain how these boundaries solve the problem. (h)





- **14.** Sketch trapezoid ZOID with  $\overline{ZO} // \overline{ID}$ , point T the midpoint of  $\overline{OI}$ , and R the midpoint of  $\overline{ZD}$ . Sketch segment TR.
- **15.** Draw rhombus *ROMB* with  $m \angle R = 60^{\circ}$  and diagonal  $\overline{OB}$ .
- **16.** Draw rectangle *RECK* with diagonals  $\overline{RC}$  and  $\overline{EK}$  both 8 cm long and intersecting at point W.

17. Developing Proof Copy the diagram below. Use your conjectures to calculate the measure of each lettered angle. Explain how you determined measures m, p, and r.



# IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

### Visual Analogies

Which of the designs at right complete the statements at left? Explain.











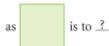




















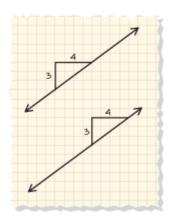


# Slopes of Parallel and Perpendicular Lines

f two lines are parallel, how do their slopes compare? If two lines are perpendicular, how do *their* slopes compare? In this lesson you will review properties of the slopes of parallel and perpendicular lines.

If the slopes of two or more distinct lines are equal, are the lines parallel? To find out, try drawing on graph paper two lines that have the same slope triangle.

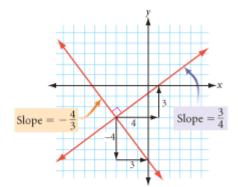
Yes, the lines are parallel. In fact, in coordinate geometry, this is the definition of parallel lines. The converse of this is true as well: If two lines are parallel, their slopes must be equal.



### **Parallel Slope Property**

In a coordinate plane, two distinct lines are parallel if and only if their slopes are equal, or they are both vertical lines.

If two lines are perpendicular, their slope triangles have a different relationship. Study the slopes of the two perpendicular lines at right.



## Perpendicular Slope Property

In a coordinate plane, two nonvertical lines are perpendicular if and only if their slopes are opposite reciprocals of each other.

Can you explain why the slopes of perpendicular lines would have opposite signs? Can you explain why they would be reciprocals? Why do the lines need to be nonvertical?

#### **EXAMPLE A**

Consider A(-15,-6), B(6, 8), C(4,-2) and D(-4, 10). Are AB and CD parallel, perpendicular, or neither?

#### Solution

Calculate the slope of each line.

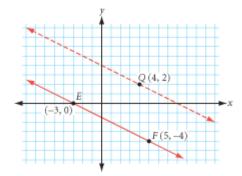
slope of 
$$\overrightarrow{AB} = \frac{8 - (-6)}{6 - (-15)} = \frac{2}{3}$$

slope of 
$$\overrightarrow{AB} = \frac{8 - (-6)}{6 - (-15)} = \frac{2}{3}$$
 slope of  $\overrightarrow{CD} = \frac{10 - (-2)}{-4 - 4} = -\frac{3}{2}$ 

The slopes,  $\frac{2}{3}$  and  $-\frac{3}{2}$ , are opposite reciprocals of each other, so  $\overrightarrow{AB} \perp \overrightarrow{CD}$ .

#### EXAMPLE B

Given points E(-3, 0), F(5,-4), and Q(4, 2), find the coordinates of a point P such that  $\overline{PQ}$  is parallel to  $\overline{EF}$ .



#### Solution

We know that if  $\overrightarrow{PQ} / \overrightarrow{EF}$ , then the slope of  $\overrightarrow{PQ}$  equals the slope of  $\overrightarrow{EF}$ . First find the slope of  $\overrightarrow{EF}$ 

slope of 
$$\overrightarrow{EF} = \frac{-4-0}{5-(-3)} = \frac{-4}{8} = -\frac{1}{2}$$

There are many possible ordered pairs (x, y) for P. Use (x, y) as the coordinates of P, and the given coordinates of Q, in the slope formula to get

$$\frac{2-y}{4-x} = -\frac{1}{2}$$

Now you can treat the denominators and numerators as separate equations.

$$4 - x = 2$$

$$-x = -2$$

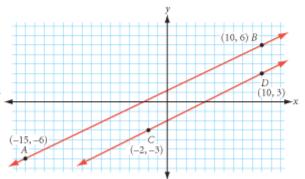
$$x = 2$$

$$-y = -1$$
$$-y = -3$$
$$y = 3$$

#### Language CONNECTION •

Coordinate geometry is sometimes called "analytic geometry." This term implies that you can use algebra to further analyze what you see. For example, consider  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{CD}$ . They look parallel, but looks can be deceiving. Only by calculating the slopes will you see that the lines are not truly parallel.

Thus one possibility is P(2, 3). How could you find another ordered pair for P? Here's a hint: How many different ways can you express  $-\frac{1}{2}$ ?





#### **EXERCISES**

For Exercises 1–4, determine whether each pair of lines through the points given below is parallel, perpendicular, or neither.

$$A(1,2)$$
  $B(3,4)$   $C(5,2)$   $D(8,3)$   $E(3,8)$   $F(-6,5)$ 

1.  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  and  $\overrightarrow{BC}$ 

3. 
$$\overrightarrow{AB}$$
 and  $\overrightarrow{DE}$ 

**4.** 
$$\overrightarrow{CD}$$
 and  $\overrightarrow{EF}$ 

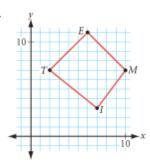
**5.** Given A(0, -3), B(5, 3), and Q(-3, -1), find two possible locations for a point P such that  $P\overline{Q}$  is parallel to  $\overline{AB}$ .

2.  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  and  $\overrightarrow{CD}$ 

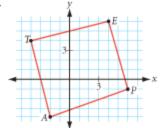
**6.** Given C(-2, -1), D(5, -4), and Q(4, 2), find two possible locations for a point Psuch that  $\overrightarrow{PQ}$  is perpendicular to  $\overrightarrow{CD}$ .

For Exercises 7–9, find the slope of each side, and then determine whether each figure is a trapezoid, a parallelogram, a rectangle, or just an ordinary quadrilateral. Explain how you know.

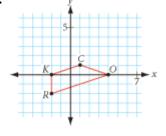
7.



8.



9.



- **10.** Quadrilateral *HAND* has vertices H(-5, -1), A(7, 1), N(6, 7), and D(-6, 5).
  - **a.** Is quadrilateral *HAND* a parallelogram? A rectangle? Neither? Explain how you know.
  - **b.** Find the midpoint of each diagonal. What can you conjecture?
- 11. Quadrilateral OVER has vertices O(-4, 2), V(1, 1), E(0, 6), and R(-5, 7).
  - **a.** Are the diagonals perpendicular? Explain how you know.
  - **b.** Find the midpoint of each diagonal. What can you conjecture?
  - **c.** What type of quadrilateral does *OVER* appear to be? Explain how you know.
- **12.** Consider the points A(-5, -2), B(1, 1), C(-1, 0), and D(3, 2).
  - **a.** Find the slopes of  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{CD}$ .
  - **b.** Despite their slopes, AB and  $\overline{CD}$  are not parallel. Why not?
  - c. What word in the Parallel Slope Property addresses the problem in 12b?
- 13. Given A(-3, 2), B(1, 5), and C(7, -3), find point D such that quadrilateral ABCD is a rectangle.



People who are only good with hammers see every problem as a nail. ABRAHAM MASLOW

# **Construction Problems**

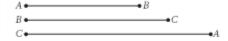
Once you know the basic constructions, you can create more complex geometric figures.

You know how to duplicate segments and angles with a compass and straightedge. Given a triangle, you can use these two constructions to duplicate the triangle by copying each segment and angle. Can you construct a triangle if you are given the parts separately? Would you need all six parts—three segments and three angles to construct a triangle?

Let's first consider a case in which only three segments are given.

#### EXAMPLE A

Construct  $\triangle ABC$  using the three segments AB, BC, and CA shown below. How many different-size triangles can be drawn?



#### Solution

You can begin by duplicating one segment, for example  $\overline{AC}$ . Then adjust your compass to match the length of another segment. Using this length as a radius, draw an arc centered at one endpoint of the first segment. Now use the third segment length as the radius for another arc, this one centered at the other endpoint. Where the arcs intersect is the location of the third vertex of the triangle.

In the construction above, the segment lengths determine where the arcs intersect. Once the triangle "closes" at the intersection of the arcs, the angles are determined too. So the lengths of the segments affect the size of the angles.

There are other ways to construct  $\triangle ABC$ . For example, you could draw the arcs below  $\overline{AC}$  and point B would be below  $\overline{AC}$ . Or you could start by duplicating  $\overline{BC}$ instead of  $\overline{AC}$ . But if you try these constructions, you will find that they all produce congruent triangles. There is only one size of triangle that can be drawn with the segments given, so the segments determine the triangle. Does having three angles also determine a triangle?

#### EXAMPLE B

Construct  $\triangle ABC$  with patty paper by duplicating the three angles  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$ , and  $\angle C$  shown at right. How many different size triangles can be drawn?



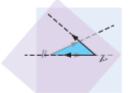
#### Solution

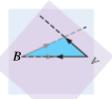
In this patty-paper construction the angles do not determine the segment length. You can locate the endpoint of a segment anywhere along an angle's side without affecting the angle measures. As shown in the illustration at the top of the next page, the patty paper with  $\angle A$  can slide horizontally over the patty paper with  $\angle B$  to

create triangles of different sizes. (The third angle in both cases is equal to  $\angle C$ .) By sliding  $\angle A$ , infinitely many different triangles can be drawn with the angles given. Therefore, three angles do not determine a triangle.







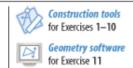


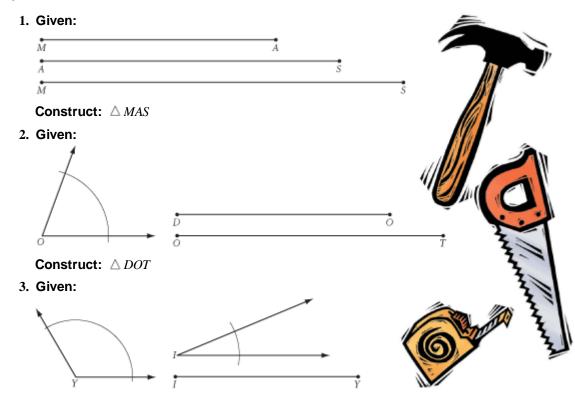
Because a triangle has a total of six parts, there are several combinations of segments and angles that may or may not determine a triangle. Having one or two parts given is not enough to determine a triangle. Is having three parts enough? That answer depends on the combination. In the exercises you will construct triangles and quadrilaterals with various combinations of parts given.



#### **EXERCISES**

**Construction** In Exercises 1–10, first sketch and label the figure you are going to construct. Second, construct the figure, using either a compass and straightedge, or patty paper and straightedge. Third, describe the steps in your construction in a few sentences.





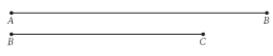
Construct:  $\triangle IGY$ 

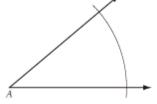
**4.** Given the triangle shown at right, construct another triangle with angles congruent to the given angles but with sides not congruent to the given sides. Is there more than one noncongruent triangle with the same three angles?



5. The two segments and the angle below do not determine a triangle.

#### Given:



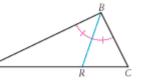


**Construct:** Two different (noncongruent) triangles named ABC that have the three given parts (h)

6. Given:

**Construct:** Isosceles triangle CAT with perimeter y and length of the base equal to  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ 

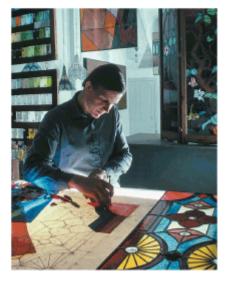
- 7. Construct a kite.
- **8.** Construct a quadrilateral with two pairs of opposite sides of equal length.
- **9.** Construct a quadrilateral with exactly three sides of equal length.
- **10.** Construct a quadrilateral with all four sides of equal length.
- 11. Technology Using geometry software, draw a large scalene obtuse triangle ABC with  $\angle B$  the obtuse angle. Construct the angle bisector  $B\overline{R}$ , the median  $\overline{BM}$ , and the altitude  $\overline{BS}$ . What is the order of the points on  $A\overline{C}$ Drag B. Is the order of points always the same? Write a conjecture.



#### Art

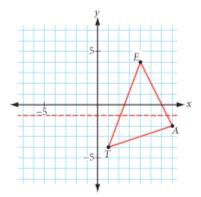
#### CONNECTION

The designer of stained glass arranges pieces of painted glass to form the elaborate mosaics that you might see in Gothic cathedrals or on Tiffany lampshades. He first organizes the glass pieces by shape and color according to the design. He mounts these pieces into a metal framework that will hold the design. With precision, the designer cuts every glass piece so that it fits against the next one with a strip of cast lead. The result is a pleasing combination of colors and shapes that form a luminous design when viewed against light.



#### **Review**

**12.** Draw the new position of △ *TEA* if it is reflected over the dotted line. Label the coordinates of the vertices.



**13.** Draw each figure and decide how many reflectional and rotational symmetries it has. Copy and complete the table below.

Figure	Reflectional symmetries	Rotational symmetries
Trapezoid		
Kite		
Parallelogram		
Rhombus		
Rectangle		

- 14. Sketch the three-dimensional figure formed by folding the net at right into a solid.
- **15.** If a polygon has 500 diagonals from each vertex, how many sides does it have?
- **16.** Use your geometry tools to draw parallelogram *CARE* so that CA = 5.5 cm, CE = 3.2 cm, and  $m \angle A = 110^{\circ}$   $\therefore$



#### IMPROVING YOUR REASONING SKILLS

#### Spelling Card Trick

This card trick uses one complete suit (hearts, clubs, spades, or diamonds) from a deck of playing cards. How must you arrange the cards so that you can successfully complete the trick? Here is what your audience should see and hear as you perform.

- 1. As you take the top card off the pile and place it back underneath of the pile, say "A."
- 2. Then take the second card, place it at the bottom of the pile, and say "C."
- **3.** Take the third card, place it at the bottom, and say "E."
- **4.** You've just spelled *ace*. Now take the fourth card and turn it faceup on the table, not back in the pile. The card should be an ace.



- **5.** Continue in this fashion, saying "T," "W," and "O" for the next three cards. Then turn the next card faceup. It should be a 2.
- **6.** Continue spelling *three*, *four*, . . . , *jack*, *queen*, *king*. Each time you spell a card, the next card turned faceup should be that card.

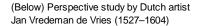
# Exploration

# **Perspective Drawing**

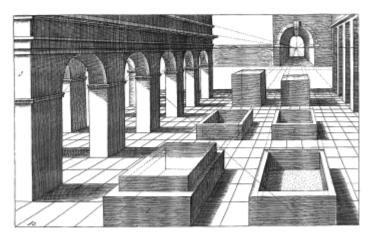
You know from experience that when you look down a long straight road, the parallel edges and the center line seem to meet at a point on the horizon. To show this effect in a drawing, artists use perspective, the technique of portraying solid objects and spatial relationships on a flat surface. Renaissance artists and architects in the 15th century developed perspective, turning to geometry to make art appear true-to-life.



In a perspective drawing, receding parallel lines (lines that run directly away from the viewer) converge at a vanishing point on the horizon line. Locate the horizon line, the vanishing point, and converging lines in the perspective study below by Jan Vredeman de Vries.







#### **Activity**

#### **Boxes in Space**

#### You will need

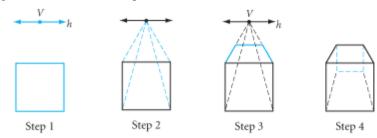
a ruler

In this activity you'll learn to draw a box in perspective.



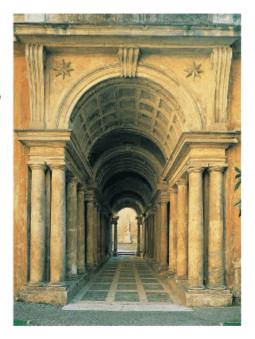
Perspective drawing is based on the relationships between many parallel and perpendicular lines. The lines that recede to the horizon make you visually think of parallel lines even though they actually intersect at a vanishing point.

First, you'll draw a rectangular solid, or box, in **one-point perspective.** Look at the diagrams below for each step.



- Step 1 Draw a horizon line h and a vanishing point V. Draw the front face of the box with its horizontal edges parallel to h.
- Step 2 Connect the corners of the box face to V with dashed lines.
- Step 3 Draw the upper rear box edge parallel to h. Its endpoints determine the vertical edges of the back face.
- Step 4 Draw the hidden back vertical and horizontal edges with dashed lines. Erase unnecessary lines and dashed segments.
- Step 5 Repeat Steps 1–4 several more times, each time placing the first box face in a different position with respect to h and V—above, below, or overlapping h; to the left or right of V or centered on V.
- Share your drawings in your group. Tell which faces of the box recede and which are parallel to the imaginary window or picture plane that you see through. What is the shape of a receding box face? Think of each drawing as a scene. Where do you seem to be standing to view each box? That is, how is the viewing position affected by placing *V* to the left or right of the box? Above or below the box?

You can also use perspective to play visual tricks. The Italian architect Francesco Borromini (1599-1667) designed and built a very clever colonnade in the Palazzo Spada. The colonnade is only 12 meters long, but he made it look much longer by designing the sides to get closer and closer to each other and the height of the columns to gradually shrink.





If the front surface of a box is not parallel to the picture plane, then you need two vanishing points to show the two front faces receding from view. This is called two-point perspective. Let's look at a rectangular solid with one edge viewed straight on.

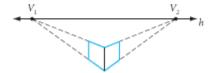
Step 7 Draw a horizon line h and select two vanishing points on it,  $V_1$  and  $V_2$ . Draw a vertical segment for the nearest box edge.



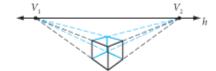
Step 8 Connect each endpoint of the box edge to  $V_1$  and  $V_2$  with dashed lines.



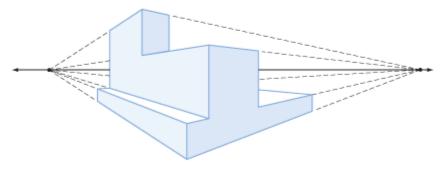
Step 9 Draw two vertical segments within the dashed lines as shown. Connect their endpoints to the endpoints of the front edge along the dashed lines. Now you have determined the position of the hidden back edges that recede from view.



Step 10 Draw the remaining edges along vanishing lines, using dashed lines for hidden edges. Erase unnecessary dashed segments.



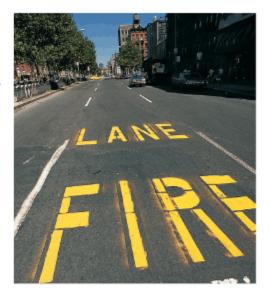
Step 11 Repeat Steps 7–10 several times, each time placing the nearest box edge in a different position with respect to h,  $V_1$ , and  $V_2$ , and varying the distance between  $V_1$ , and  $V_2$ . You can also experiment with different-shaped boxes.



Step 12 Share your drawings in your group. Are any faces of the box parallel to the picture plane? Does each box face have a pair of parallel sides?

Explain how the viewing position is affected by the distance between  $V_1$  and  $V_2$  relative to the size of the box. Must the box be between  $V_1$  and  $V_2$ ?

Using perspective helps in designing the lettering painted on streets. From above, letters appear tall, but from a low angle, they appear normal. Tilt the page up to your face. How do the letters look?

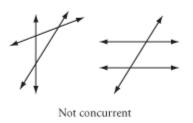


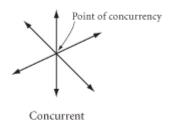


Nothing in life is to be feared, it is only to be understood. MARIE CURIE

# **Constructing Points** of Concurrency

You now can perform a number of constructions in triangles, including angle bisectors, perpendicular bisectors of the sides, medians, and altitudes. In this lesson and the next lesson you will discover special properties of these lines and segments. When three or more lines have a point in common, they are **concurrent**. Segments, rays, and even planes are concurrent if they intersect in a single point.





The point of intersection is the **point of concurrency**.



#### Investigation 1

#### Concurrence

#### You will need

- patty paper
- geometry software (optional)

In this investigation you will discover that some special lines in a triangle have points of concurrency.

As a group, you should investigate each set of lines on an acute triangle, an obtuse triangle, and a right triangle to be sure that your conjectures apply to all triangles.



- Step 1
- Draw a large triangle on patty paper. Make sure you have at least one acute triangle, one obtuse triangle, and one right triangle in your group.
- Step 2
- Construct the three angle bisectors for each triangle. Are they concurrent?

Compare your results with the results of others. State your observations as a conjecture.

#### **Angle Bisector Concurrency Conjecture**

**C-9** 

The three angle bisectors of a triangle ?...

- Step 3
- Draw a large triangle on a new piece of patty paper. Make sure you have at least one acute triangle, one obtuse triangle, and one right triangle in your group.
- Step 4
- Construct the perpendicular bisector for each side of the triangle and complete the conjecture.

#### Perpendicular Bisector Concurrency Conjecture

The three perpendicular bisectors of a triangle ?...

Step 5 Draw a large triangle on a new piece of patty paper. Make sure you have at least one acute triangle, one obtuse triangle, and one right triangle in your group.

Step 6 Construct the lines containing the altitudes of your triangle and complete the conjecture.

#### **Altitude Concurrency Conjecture**

C-11

C-10

The three altitudes (or the lines containing the altitudes) of a triangle \_\_?\_.

Step 7 | For what kind of triangle will the points of concurrency be the same point?

The point of concurrency for the three angle bisectors is the **incenter**. The point of concurrency for the perpendicular bisectors is the **circumcenter**. The point of concurrency for the three altitudes is called the **orthocenter**. Use these definitions to label each patty paper from the previous investigation with the correct name for each point of concurrency. You will investigate a triangle's medians in the next lesson.

#### **Investigation 2**

#### Circumcenter

#### You will need

construction tools

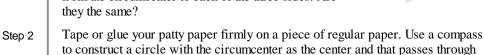
 geometry software (optional)

Step 1

In this investigation you will discover special properties of the circumcenter.

Using your patty paper from Steps 3 and 4 of the previous investigation, measure and compare the distances from the circumcenter to each of the three vertices. Are they the same? Compare the distances from the circumcenter to each of the three sides. Are they the same?

any one of the triangle's vertices. What do you notice?



Step 3 Use your observations to state your next conjecture.

#### Circumcenter Conjecture

C-12

The circumcenter of a triangle  $\frac{?}{}$ .





#### Investigation 3

#### Incenter

#### You will need

- construction tools
- geometry software (optional)

Step 1

Step 3

In this investigation you will discover special properties of the incenter.

Using the patty paper from the first two steps of Investigation 1, measure and compare the distances from the incenter to each of the three sides. (Remember to use the perpendicular distance.) Are they the same?



C-13

Step 2 Construct the perpendicular from the incenter to any one of the sides of the triangle. Mark the point of intersection between the perpendicular line and the side of the triangle.

> Tape or glue your patty paper firmly on a piece of regular paper. Use a compass to construct a circle with the incenter as the center and that passes through the point of intersection in Step 2. What do you notice?

Step 4 Use your observations to state your next conjecture.

#### **Incenter Conjecture**

The incenter of a triangle?

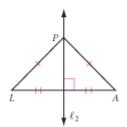
You just discovered a very useful property of the circumcenter and a very useful property of the incenter. You will see some applications of these properties in the exercises. With earlier conjectures and logical reasoning, you can explain why your conjectures are true.

#### **Deductive Argument for the Circumcenter Conjecture**

Because the circumcenter is constructed from perpendicular bisectors, the diagram of  $\triangle LYA$  at left shows two (of the three) perpendicular bisectors,  $\ell$ , and  $\ell$ . We want to show that the circumcenter, point P, is equidistant from all three vertices. In other words, we want to show that

$$\overline{PL} \cong \overline{PA} \cong \overline{PY}$$

A useful reasoning strategy is to break the problem into parts. In this case, we might first think about explaining why  $\overline{PL} \cong \overline{PA}$ . To do that, let's simplify the diagram by looking at just the bottom triangle formed by points P, L, and A.

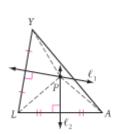


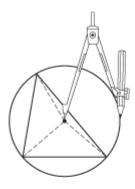
If a point is on the perpendicular bisector of a segment, it is equidistant from the endpoints.

Point P lies on the perpendicular bisector of  $\overline{LA}$ 

$$PA = PL$$

As part of the strategy of concentrating on just part of the problem, think about explaining why  $\overline{PA} \cong \overline{PY}$ . Focus on the triangle on the left side of  $\triangle LYA$  formed by points P, L, and Y.





Point P also lies on the perpendicular bisector of  $\overline{LY}$ 

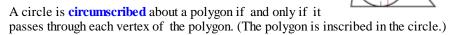
$$PL = PY$$

Therefore P is equidistant from all three vertices.

$$PA = PL = PY$$

As you discovered in Investigation 2, the circumcenter is the center of a circle that passes through the three vertices of a triangle.

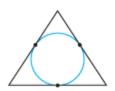
As you found in Investigation 3, the incenter is the center of a circle that touches each side of the triangle. Here are a few vocabulary terms that help describe these geometric situations.



A circle is **inscribed** in a polygon if and only if it touches each side of the polygon at exactly one point. (The polygon is circumscribed about the circle.)



Circumscribed circle (inscribed triangle)



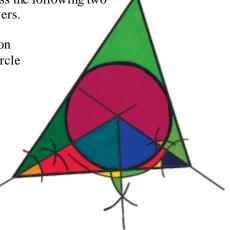
Inscribed circle (circumscribed triangle)



**Developing Proof** In your groups discuss the following two questions and then write down your answers.

- 1. Why does the circumcenter construction guarantee that it is the center of the circle that circumscribes the triangle?
- 2. Why does the incenter construction guarantee that it is the center of the circle that is inscribed in the triangle?

This geometric art by geometry student Ryan Garvin shows the construction of the incenter, its perpendicular distance to one side of the triangle, and the inscribed circle.



#### EXERCISES



For Exercises 1–4, make a sketch and explain how to find the answer.

1. The first-aid center of Mt. Thermopolis State Park needs to be at a point that is equidistant from three bike paths that intersect to form a triangle. Locate this point so that in an emergency, medical personnel will be able to get to any one of the paths by the shortest route possible. Which point of concurrency is it?



You will need

Construction tools for Exercises 6, 7, 12-15,



Geometry software for Exercises 10, 11, and 18

# Art

Artist Andres Amador (American, b 1971) creates complex large-scale geometric designs in the sand in San Francisco, California, using construction tools. Can you replicate this design, called Balance, using only a compass? For more information about Amador's art, see the links at www.keymath.com/DG



- 2. An artist wishes to circumscribe a circle about a triangle in his latest abstract design. Which point of concurrency does he need to locate?
- 3. Rosita wants to install a circular sink in her new triangular countertop. She wants to choose the largest sink that will fit. Which point of concurrency must she locate? Explain.
- 4. Julian Chive wishes to center a butcher-block table at a location equidistant from the refrigerator, stove, and sink. Which point of concurrency does Julian need to locate?
- 5. One event at this year's Battle of the Classes will be a pie-eating contest between the sophomores, juniors, and seniors. Five members of each class will be positioned on the football field at the points indicated at right. At the whistle, one student from each class will run to the pie table, eat exactly one pie, and run back to his or her group. The next student will then repeat the process. The



first class to eat five pies and return to home base will be the winner of the pie-eating contest. Where should the pie table be located so that it will be a fair contest? Describe how the contest planners should find that point.

- **6.** Construction Draw a large triangle. Construct a circle inscribed in the triangle.
- 7. Construction Draw a triangle. Construct a circle circumscribed about the triangle. (h)
- 8. Is the inscribed circle the greatest circle to fit within a given triangle? Explain. If you think not, give a counterexample.
- 9. Does the circumscribed circle create the smallest circular region that contains a given triangle? Explain. If you think not, give a counterexample.

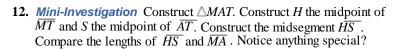
For Exercises 10 and 11, you can use the Dynamic Geometry Exploration Triangle Centers at www.keymath.com/DG

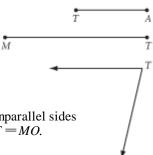


- 10. Use geometry software to construct the circumcenter of a triangle. Drag a vertex to observe how the location of the circumcenter changes as the triangle changes from acute to obtuse. What do you notice? Where is the circumcenter located for a right triangle?
- 11. Use geometry software to construct the orthocenter of a triangle. Drag a vertex to observe how the location of the orthocenter changes as the triangle changes from acute to obtuse. What do you notice? Where is the orthocenter located for a right triangle?

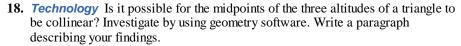
#### Review

**Construction** Use the segments and angle at right to construct each figure in Exercises 12-15.





- 13. Mini-Investigation An isosceles trapezoid is a trapezoid with the nonparallel sides congruent. Construct isosceles trapezoid *MOAT* with  $\overline{MT} \parallel \overline{OA}$  and  $\overline{AT} = MO$ . Use patty paper to compare  $\angle T$  and  $\angle M$ . Notice anything special?
- **14.** *Mini-Investigation* Construct a circle with diameter MT. Construct chord  $\overline{TA}$ Construct chord  $\overline{MA}$  to form  $\triangle MTA$ . What is the measure of  $\angle A$ ? Notice anything special?
- **15.** *Mini-Investigation* Construct a rhombus with TA as the length of a side and  $\angle T$  as one of the acute angles. Construct the two diagonals. Notice anything special?
- 16. Sketch the locus of points on the coordinate plane in which the sum of the x-coordinate and the y-coordinate is 9. (h)
- 17. Construction Bisect the missing angle of this triangle. How can you do it without re-creating the third angle? (h)





- **20.** Use your geometry tools to draw rhombus RHOM so that HO = 6.0 cm and  $m \angle R = 120^{\circ}$ .
- **21.** Use your geometry tools to draw kite KYTE so that KY = YT = 4.8 cm, diagonal YE = 6.4 cm, and  $m \angle Y = 80^{\circ}$ .



For Exercises 22-26, complete each geometric construction and name it.

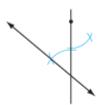
22.



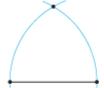
23.



24.



25.



26.



#### IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### The Puzzle Lock

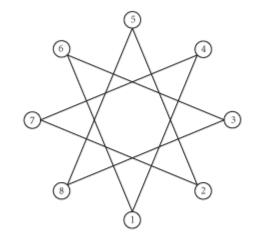
This mysterious pattern is a lock that must be solved like a puzzle. Here are the rules:

- You must make eight moves in the proper sequence.
- ➤ To make each move (except the last), you place a gold coin onto an empty circle, then slide it along a diagonal to another empty circle.
- ▶ You must place the first coin onto circle 1, then slide it to either circle 4 or circle 6.
- You must place the last coin onto circle 5.
- You do not slide the last coin.

Solve the puzzle. Copy and complete the table to show your solution.

Coin movements

Coin	Placed on		Slid to
First	1	$\rightarrow$	
Second		$\rightarrow$	
Third		$\rightarrow$	
Fourth		$\rightarrow$	
Fifth		$\rightarrow$	
Sixth		$\rightarrow$	
Seventh		$\rightarrow$	
Eighth	5		





The universe may be as great as they say, but it wouldn't be missed if it didn't exist.

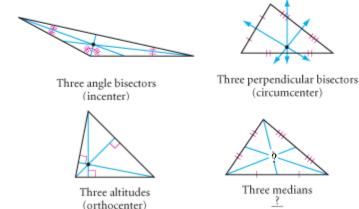
PIET HEIN

### The Centroid

In the previous lesson you discovered that the three angle bisectors are concurrent, the three perpendicular bisectors of the sides are concurrent, and the three altitudes in a triangle are concurrent. You also discovered the properties of the incenter and the circumcenter. In this lesson you will investigate the medians of a triangle.

You may choose to do the first investigation using the **Dynamic Geometry** Exploration The Centroid at www.keymath.com/DG .4

keymath.com/DG





Step 3

#### **Investigation 1**

#### **Are Medians Concurrent?**

#### You will need

- construction tools
- geometry software (optional) Step 1

Each person in your group should draw a different triangle for this investigation. Make sure you have at least one acute triangle, one obtuse triangle, and one right triangle in your group.

On a sheet of patty paper, draw as large a scalene triangle as possible and label it CNR, as shown at right. Locate the midpoints of the three sides. Construct the medians and complete the conjecture.



#### **Median Concurrency Conjecture**

The three medians of a triangle ?.

The point of concurrency of the three medians is the centroid.

Label the three medians  $\overline{CT}$ ,  $\overline{NO}$ , and  $\overline{RE}$ . Label the centroid D. Step 2

> Use your compass or another sheet of patty paper to investigate whether there is anything special about the centroid. Is the centroid equidistant from the three vertices? From the three sides? Is the centroid the midpoint of each median?

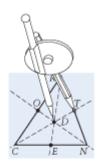


C-14

Step 4 The centroid divides a median into two segments. Focus on one median. Use your patty paper or compass to compare the length of the longer segment to the length of the shorter segment and find the ratio.

Step 5 Find the ratios of the lengths of the segment parts for the other

two medians. Do you get the same ratio for each median? Compare your results with the results of others. State your discovery as a conjecture, and add it to your conjecture list.



#### **Centroid Conjecture**

C-15

The centroid of a triangle divides each median into two parts so that the distance from the centroid to the vertex is \_? the distance from the centroid to the midpoint of the opposite side.

In earlier lessons you discovered that the midpoint of a segment is the balance point or center of gravity. You also saw that when a set of segments is arranged into a triangle, the line through each midpoint of a side and the opposite vertex can act as a line of balance for the triangle. Can you then balance a triangle on a median? Let's take a look.





#### **Investigation 2 Balancing Act**

#### You will need

cardboard

a straightedge Step 1

geometry software, print out your triangle with medians. Place your patty paper or printout from the previous investigation on a piece of mat board or cardboard. With a sharp pencil tip or compass tip, mark the three

Use your patty paper from Investigation 1 for this investigation. If you used

Step 2 Draw the triangle and medians on the cardboard. Cut out the cardboard triangle.

vertices, the three midpoints, and the centroid on the board.

Step 3 Try balancing the triangle on one of the three medians by placing the median on the edge of a ruler. If you are successful, what does that imply about the areas of the two triangles formed by one median? Try balancing the triangle on another median. Will it balance on each of the three medians?

Step 4 Is there a single point where you can balance the triangle? If you have found the balancing point for the triangle, you have found its **center of gravity.** State your discovery as a conjecture, and add it to your conjecture list.

#### **Center of Gravity Conjecture**

C-16

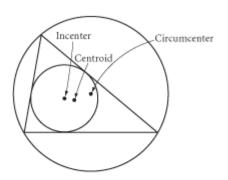
The ? of a triangle is the center of gravity of the triangular region.

The triangle balances on each median and the centroid is on each median, so the triangle balances on the centroid. As long as the weight of the cardboard is distributed evenly throughout the triangle, you can balance any triangle at its centroid. For this reason, the centroid is a very useful point of concurrency, especially in physics.



You have discovered special properties of three of the four points of concurrency—the incenter, the circumcenter, and the centroid. The incenter is the center of an inscribed circle, the circumcenter is the center of a circumscribed circle, and the centroid is the center of gravity.

You can learn more about the orthocenter in the project Is There More to the Orthocenter?



# Science CONNECTION

In physics, the center of gravity of an object is an imaginary point where the total weight is concentrated. The center of gravity of a tennis ball, for example, would be in the hollow part, not in the actual material of the ball. The idea is useful in designing structures as complicated as bridges or as simple as furniture. Where is the center of gravity of the human body?



#### **EXERCISES**



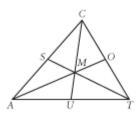
You will need



1. Birdy McFly is designing a large triangular hang glider. She needs to locate the center of gravity for her glider. Which point does she need to locate? Birdy wishes to decorate her glider with the largest possible circle within her large triangular hang glider. Which point of concurrency does she need to locate?

In Exercises 2–4, use your new conjectures to find each length.

2. Point *M* is the centroid.



$$CM = 16$$

$$MO = 10$$

$$TS = 21$$

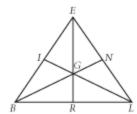
$$AM = ?$$

$$SM = ?$$

$$TM = ?$$

UM = ?

**3.** Point *G* is the centroid.



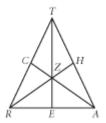
$$GI = GR = GN$$

$$ER = 36$$

$$BG = ?$$

$$IG = \underline{?}$$

**4.** Point *Z* is the centroid.



$$CZ = 14$$

$$TZ = 30$$

$$RZ = AZ$$

$$RH = ?$$

$$TE = \underline{?}$$

- **5.** *Construction* Construct an equilateral triangle, then construct angle bisectors from two vertices, medians from two vertices, and altitudes from two vertices. What can you conclude?
- **6.** Construction On patty paper, draw a large isosceles triangle with an acute vertex angle that measures less than 40°. Copy it onto three other pieces of patty paper. Construct the centroid on one patty paper, the incenter on a second, the circumcenter on a third, and the orthocenter on a fourth. Record the results of all four pieces of patty paper on one piece of patty paper. What do you notice about the four points of concurrency? What is the order of the four points of concurrency from the vertex to the opposite side in an acute isosceles triangle?
- 7. **Technology** Use geometry software to construct a large isosceles acute triangle. Construct the four points of concurrency. Hide all constructions except for the points of concurrency. Label them. Drag until it has an obtuse vertex angle. Now what is the order of the four points of concurrency from the vertex angle to the opposite side? When did the order change? Do the four points ever become one?

**8.** *Mini-Investigation* Where do you think the center of gravity is located on a square? A rectangle? A rhombus? In each case the center of gravity is not that difficult to find, but what about an ordinary quadrilateral? Experiment to discover a method for finding the center of gravity for a quadrilateral by geometric construction. Test your method on a large cardboard quadrilateral. (h)

#### Review

**9.** Sally Solar is the director of Lunar Planning for Galileo Station on the moon. She has been asked to locate the new food production facility so that it is equidistant from the three main lunar housing developments. Which point of concurrency does she need to locate?



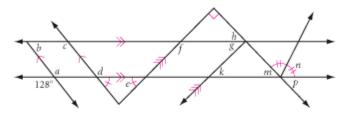
- **10.** Construct circle *O*. Place an arbitrary point *P* within the circle. Construct the longest chord passing through *P*. Construct the shortest chord passing through *P*. How are they related?
- **11.** A billiard ball is hit so that it travels a distance equal to *AB* but bounces off the cushion at point *C*. Copy the figure, and sketch where the ball will rest.
- **12.** *Application* In alkyne molecules all the bonds are single bonds except one triple bond between two carbon atoms. The first three alkynes are modeled below. The dash (−) between letters represents single bonds. The triple dash (≡) between letters represents a triple bond.

Sketch the alkyne with eight carbons in the chain. What is the general rule for alkynes  $(C_nH_2)$ ? In other words, if there are n carbon atoms (C), how many hydrogen atoms (H) are in the alkyne?

13. When plane figure A is rotated about the line, it produces the solid figure B. What is the plane figure that produces the solid figure D?



14. Copy the diagram below. Use your Vertical Angles Conjecture and Parallel Lines Conjecture to calculate each lettered angle measure.



**15.** A brother and a sister have inherited a large triangular plot of land. The will states that the property is to be divided along the altitude from the northernmost point of the property. However, the property is covered with quicks and at the northern vertex. The will states that the heir who figures out how to draw the altitude without using the northern vertex point gets to choose his or her parcel first. How can the heirs construct the altitude? Is this a fair way to divide the land? Why or why not? (h)



16. At the college dorm open house, each of the 20 dorm members invites two guests. How many greetings are possible if you do not count dorm members greeting each other?

#### IMPROVING YOUR REASONING SKILLS

#### The Dealer's Dilemma

In the game of bridge, the dealer deals 52 cards in a clockwise direction among four players. You are playing a game in which you are the dealer. You deal the cards, starting with the player on your left. However, in the middle of dealing, you stop to answer the phone. When you return, no one can remember where the last card was dealt. (And, of course, no cards have been touched.) Without counting the number of cards in anyone's hand or the number of cards yet to be dealt, how can you rapidly finish dealing, giving each player exactly the same cards she or he would have received if you hadn't been interrupted?

# Exploration

n the previous lessons you discovered the four points of concurrency: circumcenter, incenter, orthocenter, and centroid.

In this activity you will discover how these points relate to a special line, the **Euler line**.

The Euler line is named after the Swiss mathematician Leonhard Euler (1707–1783), who proved that three points of concurrency are collinear.

You may choose to do this activity using the **Dynamic Geometry Exploration** The Euler Line at www.keymath.com/DG





#### **Three Out of Four**

#### You will need

- patty paper
- geometry software (optional)
   Step 1

Step 2

Step 3

You are going to look for a relationship among the points of concurrency.

Draw a scalene triangle and have each person in your group trace the same triangle on a separate piece of patty paper.

Have each group member construct with patty paper a different point of the four points of concurrency for the triangle.

Record the group's results by tracing and labeling all four points of concurrency on one of the four pieces of patty paper. What do you notice? Compare your group results with the results of other groups near you. State your discovery as a conjecture.

#### **Euler Line Conjecture**

The  $\underline{?}$ ,  $\underline{?}$ , and  $\underline{?}$  are the three points of concurrency that always lie on a line.

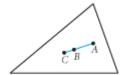
The three special points that lie on the Euler line determine a segment called the Euler **segment.** The point of concurrency between the two endpoints of the Euler segment divides the segment into two smaller segments whose lengths have an exact ratio.

Step 4 With a compass or patty paper, compare the lengths of the two parts of the Euler segment. What is the ratio? Compare your group's results with the results of other groups and state your conjecture.

#### **Euler Segment Conjecture**

The ? divides the Euler segment into two parts so that the smaller part is ? the larger part.

Step 5 Use your conjectures to solve this problem.  $\overline{AC}$  is an Euler segment containing three points of concurrency, A, B, C, so that AB > BC.  $AC = 24 \text{ m. } AB = \frac{?}{}$ .  $BC = \frac{?}{}$ .





#### IS THERE MORE TO THE ORTHOCENTER?

At this point you may still wonder what's special about the orthocenter. It does lie on the Euler line. Is there anything else surprising or special about it?

Use geometry software to investigate the orthocenter. Construct a triangle ABC and its orthocenter O, Drag a vertex of the triangle around. Where does the orthocenter lie in an acute triangle? An obtuse triangle? A right triangle?

Hide the altitudes. Draw segments from each vertex to the orthocenter shown. Now find the orthocenter of each of the three new triangles formed. What happens?

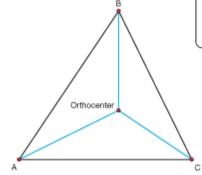
Experiment dragging the different points, and observe the relationships among the four orthocenters.

Write a paragraph about your findings, concluding with a conjecture about the orthocenter. Your project should include

- ▶ Your observations about the orthocenter, with drawings.
- ► Answers to all the questions above.
- ► A conjecture stating what's special about the orthocenter.



The Geometer's Sketchpad was used to create this diagram and to hide the unnecessary lines. Using Sketchpad, you can quickly construct triangles and their points of concurrency. Once you make a conjecture, you can drag to change the shape of the triangle to see whether your conjecture is true.



**CHAPTER** 

V • CHAPTER 3 REVIEW • CHAPTER 3 REVIEW • CHAPTER 3 REVIEW • (

3

REVIEW

In Chapter 1, you defined many terms that help establish the building blocks of geometry. In Chapter 2, you learned and practiced inductive reasoning skills. With the construction skills you learned in this chapter, you performed investigations that lay the foundation for geometry.



The investigation section of your notebook should be a detailed report of the mathematics you've already done. Beginning in Chapter 1 and continuing in this chapter, you summarized your work in the definition list and the conjecture list. Before you begin the review exercises, make sure your conjecture list is complete. Do you understand each conjecture? Can you draw a clear diagram that demonstrates your understanding of each definition and conjecture? Can you explain them to others? Can you use them to solve geometry problems?





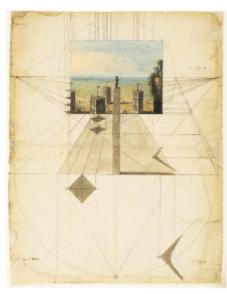
You will need



#### **EXERCISES**

For Exercises 1–10, identify the statement as true or false. For each false statement, explain why it is false or sketch a counterexample.

- 1. In a geometric construction, you use a protractor and a ruler.
- 2. A diagonal is a line segment in a polygon that connects any two vertices.
- A trapezoid is a quadrilateral with exactly one pair of parallel sides.
- **4.** A square is a rhombus with all angles congruent.
- **5.** If a point is equidistant from the endpoints of a segment, then it must be the midpoint of the segment.
- **6.** The set of all the points in the plane that are a given distance from a line segment is a pair of lines parallel to the given segment.
- It is not possible for a trapezoid to have three congruent sides.
- **8.** The incenter of a triangle is the point of intersection of the three angle bisectors.
- **9.** The orthocenter of a triangle is the point of intersection of the three altitudes.
- **10.** The incenter, the centroid, and the orthocenter are always inside the triangle.

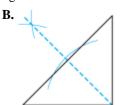


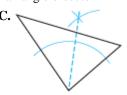
The Principles of Perspective, Italian, ca. 1780. Victoria and Albert Museum, London, Great Britain.

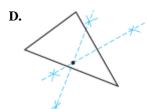
For Exercises 11–18, match each geometric construction with one of the figures below.

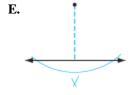
- 11. Construction of a midsegment
- 13. Construction of a centroid in a triangle
- 15. Construction of an orthocenter in a triangle
- 17. Construction of an equilateral triangle
- 12. Construction of an altitude
- 14. Construction of an incenter
- **16.** Construction of a circumcenter
- 18. Construction of an angle bisector

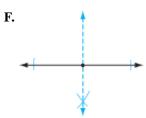
A. \*

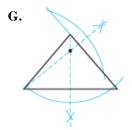


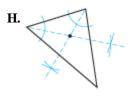


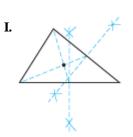


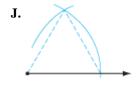


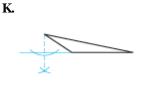


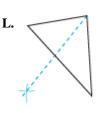












**Construction** For Exercises 19–24, perform a construction with compass and straightedge or with patty paper. Choose the method for each problem, but do not mix the tools in any one problem. In other words, play each construction game fairly.

- 19. Draw an angle and construct a duplicate of it.
- **20.** Draw a line segment and construct its perpendicular bisector.

- **21.** Draw a line and a point not on the line. Construct a perpendicular to the line through the point.
- 22. Draw an angle and bisect it.
- 23. Construct an angle that measures 22.5°.
- **24.** Draw a line and a point not on the line. Construct a second line so that it passes through the point and is parallel to the first line.
- **25.** Brad and Janet are building a home for their pet hamsters, Riff and Raff, in the shape of a triangular prism. Which point of concurrency in the triangular base do they need to locate in order to construct the largest possible circular entrance?
- 26. Adventurer Dakota Davis has a map that once showed the location of a large bag of gold. Unfortunately, the part of the map that showed the precise location of the gold has burned away. Dakota visits the area shown on the map anyway, hoping to find clues. To his surprise, he finds three headstones with geometric symbols on them.

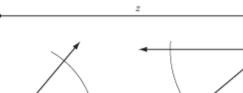
The clues lead him to think that the treasure is buried at a point equidistant from the three stones. If Dakota's theory is correct, how should he go about locating the point where the bag of gold might be buried?

**Construction** For Exercises 27–32, use the given segments and angles to construct each figure. The lowercase letter above each segment represents the length of the segment.

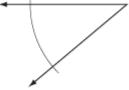


- **28.** A segment with length  $2y + x \frac{1}{2}z$
- **29.**  $\triangle PQR$  with PQ = 3x, QR = 4x, and PR = 5x
- **30.** Isosceles triangle *ABD* given  $\angle A$ , and AB = BD = 2y









- **31.** Quadrilateral *ABFD* with  $m \angle A = m \angle B$ , AD = BE = y, and AB = 4x
- **32.** Right triangle  $\overline{TRI}$  with hypotenuse  $\overline{TI}$ ,  $\overline{TR} = x$ , and  $\overline{RI} = y$ , and a square on  $\overline{TI}$ , with  $\overline{TI}$  as one side

## MIXED REVIEW

Tell whether each symbol in Exercises 33–36 has reflectional symmetry, rotational symmetry, neither, or both. (The symbols are used in meteorology to show weather conditions.)

33.





35.

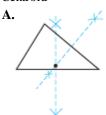


36.

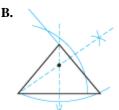


For Exercises 37–40, match the term with its construction.

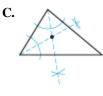
37. Centroid



38. Circumcenter

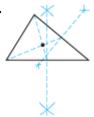


39. Incenter



40. Orthocenter

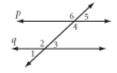
D.



For Exercises 41–54, identify the statement as true or false. For each false statement, explain why it is false or sketch a counterexample.

- **41.** An isosceles right triangle is a triangle with an angle measuring 90° and no two sides congruent.
- **42.** If two parallel lines are cut by a transversal, then the alternate interior angles are congruent.
- **43.** An altitude of a triangle must be inside the triangle.
- **44.** The orthocenter of a triangle is the point of intersection of the three perpendicular bisectors of the sides.
- **45.** If two lines are parallel to the same line, then they are parallel to each other.
- **46.** If the sum of the measure of two angles is 180°, then the two angles are vertical angles.
- **47.** Any two consecutive sides of a kite are congruent.
- **48.** If a polygon has two pairs of parallel sides, then it is a parallelogram.
- **49.** The measure of an arc is equal to one half the measure of its central angle.
- **50.** If  $\overline{TR}$  is a median of  $\triangle$  TIE and point D is the centroid, then TD = 3DR.
- **51.** The shortest chord of a circle is the radius of a circle.
- **52.** An obtuse triangle is a triangle that has one angle with measure greater than 90°.

- 53. Inductive reasoning is the process of showing that certain statements follow logically from accepted truths.
- **54.** There are exactly three true statements in Exercises 41–54.
- **55.** In the diagram,  $p \parallel q$ .
  - **a.** Name a pair of corresponding angles.
  - **b.** Name a pair of alternate exterior angles.
  - **c.** If  $m \angle 3 = 42^{\circ}$ , what is  $m \angle 6$ ?



In Exercises 56 and 57, use inductive reasoning to find the next number or shape in the pattern.

**56.** 100, 97, 91, 82, 70



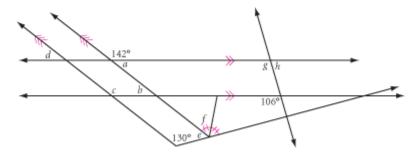


- **58.** Consider the statement "If the month is October, then the month has 31 days."
  - **a.** Is the statement true?
  - **b.** Write the converse of this statement.
  - **c.** Is the converse true?
- **59.** Find the point on the cushion at which a pool player should aim so that the white ball will hit the cushion and pass over point O.

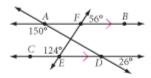
For Exercises 60 and 61, find the function rule for the sequence. Then find the 20th term.

60.		,	- 2	2		-			20
00.	n	1	2	3	4	5	0	 n	 20
	f(n)	-1	2	5	8	11	14		

- 61. 2 3 5 20 6 77 3 15 35 24 f(n)
- 62. Developing Proof Calculate each lettered angle measure. Explain how you determined the measures c and f.



- **63.** Draw a scalene triangle *ABC*. Use a straightedge and compass to construct the incenter of  $\triangle ABC$ .
- **64.** Developing Proof What's wrong with this picture?



**65.** What is the minimum number of regions that are formed by 100 distinct lines in a plane? What is the maximum number of regions formed by 100 lines in the plane?

#### Assessing What You've Learned

#### PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENT



The subject of this chapter was the tools of geometry, so assessing what you've learned really means assessing what you can do with those tools. Can you do all the constructions you learned in this chapter? Can you show how you arrived at each conjecture? Demonstrating that you can do tasks like these is sometimes called performance assessment.

Look over the constructions in the Chapter Review. Practice doing any of the constructions that you're not absolutely sure of. Can you do each construction using either compass and straightedge or patty paper? Look over your conjecture list. Can you perform all the investigations that led to these conjectures?

Let a friend, classmate, teacher, or family member choose one construction and one investigation for you to demonstrate. Do every step from start to finish, and explain what you're doing.



#### ORGANIZE YOUR NOTEBOOK

- Your notebook should have an investigation section, a definition list, and a conjecture list. Review the contents of these sections. Make sure they are complete, correct, and well organized.
- ▶ Write a one-page chapter summary from your notes.



WRITE IN YOUR JOURNAL How does the way you are learning geometry—doing constructions, looking for patterns, and making conjectures—compare to the way you've learned math in the past?



**UPDATE YOUR PORTFOLIO** Choose a construction problem from this chapter that you found particularly interesting and/or challenging. Describe each step, including how you figured out how to move on to the next step. Add this to your portfolio.

**CHAPTER** 

4

# Discovering and Proving Triangle Properties



Is it possible to make a representation of recognizable figures that has no background?

M. C. ESCHER

Symmetry Drawing E103, M. C. Escher, 1959 ©2002 Cordon Art B. V.–Baarn–Holland. All rights reserved.

#### **OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will

- learn why triangles are so useful in structures
- discover relationships between the sides and angles of triangles
- learn about the conditions that guarantee that two triangles are congruent





Teaching is the art of assisting discovery. ALBERT VAN DOREN



# **Triangle Sum Conjecture**

riangles have certain properties that make them useful in all kinds of structures, from bridges to high-rise buildings. One such property of triangles is their rigidity. If you build shelves like the first set shown at right, they will sway. But if you nail another board at the diagonal as in the second set, creating a triangle, you will have rigid shelves.



Another application of triangles is a procedure used in surveying called

**triangulation.** This procedure allows surveyors to locate points or positions on a map by measuring angles and distances and creating a network of triangles. Triangulation is based on an important property of plane geometry that you will discover in this lesson.



#### **Investigation**

## The Triangle Sum

#### You will need

- a protractor
- a straightedge
- scissors
- patty paper

There are an endless variety of triangles that you can draw, with different shapes and angle measures. Do their angle measures have anything in common? Start by drawing different kinds of triangles. Make sure your group has at least one acute and one obtuse triangle.



Step 2

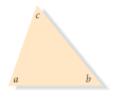
Measure the three angles of each triangle as accurately as possible with your protractor.

Find the sum of the measures of the three angles in each triangle. Compare results with others in your group. Does everyone get about

the same result? What is it?

Step 3

Check the sum another way. Write the letters a, b, and c in the interiors of the three angles of one of the triangles, and carefully cut out the triangle.

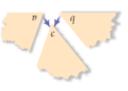






Step 4 Tear off the three angles. Arrange them so that their vertices meet at a point. How does this arrangement show the sum of the angle measures?





Step 5 Compare results with others in your group. State your observations as a conjecture.

#### **Triangle Sum Conjecture**

C-17

The sum of the measures of the angles in every triangle is  $\perp$ .

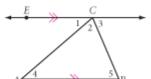


**Developing Proof** The investigation may have convinced you that the Triangle Sum Conjecture is true, but can you explain *why* it is true for every triangle?

As a group, explain why the Triangle Sum Conjecture is true by writing a **paragraph proof**, a deductive argument that uses written sentences to support its claims with reasons.

Another reasoning strategy you might use is to add an **auxiliary line**, an extra line or segment that helps with a proof. Your group may have formed an auxiliary line by rearranging the angles in the investigation. If you rotated  $\angle A$  and  $\angle B$  and left  $\angle C$  pointing up, then how is the resulting line related to the original triangle? Draw any  $\triangle ABC$  and draw in that auxiliary line.

The figure at right includes  $\overline{EC}$ , an auxiliary line parallel to side  $\overline{AB}$ . Use this diagram to discuss these questions with your group.



- What are you trying to prove?
- What is the relationship among ∠1, ∠2, and ∠3?
- Why was the auxiliary line drawn to be parallel to one of the sides?
- What other congruencies can you determine from the diagram?

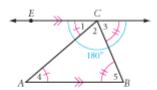
Use your responses to these questions to mark your diagram. Discuss how you can use the information you have to prove that the Triangle Sum Conjecture is true for every triangle. As a group, write a paragraph proof. When you are satisfied with your group's proof, compare it to the one presented on the next page.

#### Paragraph Proof: The Triangle Sum Conjecture

Consider  $\angle 1$  and  $\angle 2$  together as a single angle that forms a linear pair with  $\angle 3$ . By the Linear Pair Conjecture, their measures must add up to 180°.

$$m \angle 1 + m \angle 2 + m \angle 3 = 180^{\circ}$$

 $\overline{AC}$  and  $\overline{BC}$  form transversals between parallel lines  $\overrightarrow{EC}$  and  $\overrightarrow{AB}$ . By the Alternate Interior Angles Conjecture, 1 and 4 are congruent and 3 and 5 are congruent, so their measures are equal.



$$m \angle 1 = m \angle 4$$

$$m \angle 3 = m \angle 5$$

Substitute  $m \angle 4$  for  $m \angle 1$ , and  $m \angle 5$  for  $m \angle 3$  in the first equation above.

$$m \angle 4 + m \angle 2 + m \angle 5 = 180^{\circ}$$

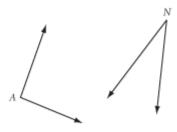
Therefore, the measures of the angles in a triangle add up to 180°.

So far, you have been writing deductive arguments to explain why conjectures are true. The paragraph proof format puts a little more emphasis on justifying your reasons. You will also learn about another proof format later in this chapter.

If you have two angles of a triangle, you can use the Triangle Sum Conjecture to construct the third angle. This example shows one way to do this.

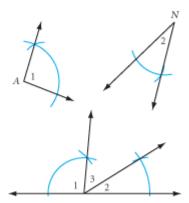
#### **EXAMPLE**

Given  $\angle A$  and  $\angle N$ , construct  $\angle D$ , the third angle of  $\triangle AND$ .



#### Solution

Label  $\angle A$  and  $\angle N$  as  $\angle 1$  and  $\angle 2$ respectively. Draw a line. Duplicate  $\angle 1$ opening to the left on this line. Duplicate  $\angle 2$  opening to the right at the same vertex on this line. Because the measures of the three angles add to 180°, the measure of  $\angle 3$  is equal to that of  $\angle D$ .



#### **EXERCISES**

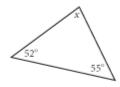


1. Technology Using geometry software, construct a triangle. Use the software to measure the three angles and calculate their sum. Drag the vertices and describe your observations.



Use the Triangle Sum Conjecture to determine each lettered angle measure in Exercises 2-5. You might find it helpful to copy the diagrams so you can write on them.

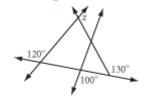
**2.** x = 1



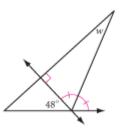
3. v = 1



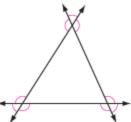
**4.** z = 1



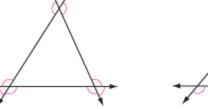
5. w = 1



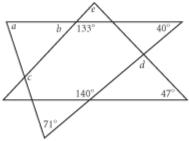
**6.** Find the sum of the measures of the marked angles. (h)



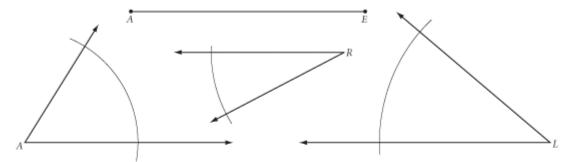
7. Find the sum of the measures of the marked angles. (h)



**8.** a = 1 **h** b = ?c = ?d = ? $e = \underline{?}$ 

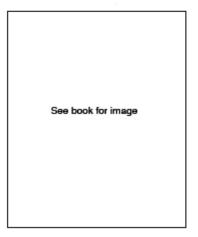


**9.** m = 1n = ?p = ? $q = \frac{?}{}$  $r = \underline{?}$  $s = \underline{?}$  $t = \underline{?}$ u = ?112 In Exercises 10–12, use what you know to construct each figure. Use only a compass and a straightedge.

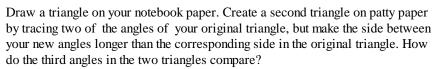


- **10.** Construction Given  $\angle A$  and  $\angle R$  of  $\triangle ARM$ , construct  $\angle M$ .
- 11. Construction In  $\triangle LEG$ ,  $m \angle E = m \angle G$ . Given  $\angle L$ , construct  $\angle G$ .
- **12. Construction** Given  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle R$ , and side  $\overline{AE}$  construct  $\triangle EAR$ .
- **13.** *Construction* Repeat Exercises 10–12 with patty-paper constructions.
- **14.** Developing Proof In △MAS below, ∠M is a right angle. Let's call the two acute angles, ∠A and ∠S, "wrong angles." Write a paragraph proof or use algebra to show that "two wrongs make a right," at least for angles in a right triangle.





- **15. Developing Proof** In your own words, prove the Triangle Sum Conjecture. What conjectures must we accept as true in order to prove it?
- **16.** Use your ruler and protractor to draw  $\triangle PDQ$  if  $m \angle P = 40^{\circ}$ ,  $m \angle Q = 55^{\circ}$ , and PD = 7 cm. How can the Triangle Sum Conjecture make this easier to do?
- **17.** *Mini-Investigation* Suppose two angles of one triangle have the same measures as two angles of another triangle. What can you conclude about the third pair of angles?

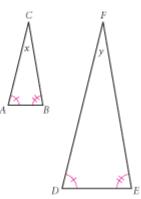


**Conjecture:** If two angles of one triangle are equal in measure to two angles of another triangle, then the third angles of the triangles ?. (Third Angle Conjecture)





- **18.** Developing Proof Use the Triangle Sum Conjecture and the figures at right to write a paragraph proof explaining why the Third Angle Conjecture is true. (h)
- **19.** Developing Proof Write a paragraph proof, or use algebra, to explain why each angle of an equiangular triangle measures 60°.



#### Review

In Exercises 20–24, tell whether the statement is true or false. For each false statement, explain why it is false or sketch a counterexample.

- **20.** If two sides in one triangle are congruent to two sides in another triangle, then the two triangles are congruent.
- 21. If two angles in one triangle are congruent to two angles in another triangle, then the two triangles are congruent.
- 22. If a side and an angle in one triangle are congruent to a side and an angle in another triangle, then the two triangles are congruent.
- 23. If three angles in one triangle are congruent to three angles in another triangle, then the two triangles are congruent.
- **24.** If three sides in one triangle are congruent to three sides in another triangle, then the two triangles are congruent.
- 25. What is the number of stories in the tallest house you can build with two 52-card decks? How many cards would it take?







Three stories (15 cards)

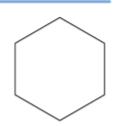
### IMPROVING YOUR VISUAL THINKING SKILLS

One story (2 cards)

### Dissecting a Hexagon I

Trace this regular hexagon twice.

- 1. Divide one hexagon into four congruent trapezoids.
- 2. Divide the other hexagon into eight congruent parts. What shape is each part?





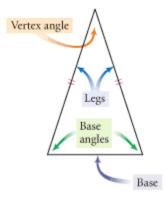


Imagination is built upon knowledge.

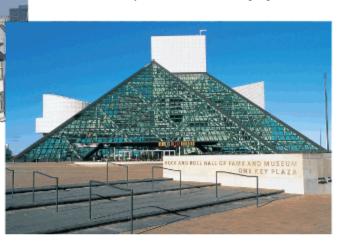
ELIZABETH STUART PHELPS

# **Properties of Isosceles Triangles**

Recall from Chapter 1 that an isosceles triangle is a triangle with at least two congruent sides. In an isosceles triangle, the angle between the two congruent sides is called the vertex angle, and the other two angles are called the base angles. The side between the two base angles is called the base of the isosceles triangle. The other two sides are called the legs.



In this lesson you'll discover some properties of isosceles triangles.



The Rock and Roll Hall of Fame and Museum structure is a pyramid containing many triangles that are isosceles and equilateral.

The famous Transamerica Building in San Francisco contains many isosceles triangles.

### **Architecture**

CONNECTION

The Rock and Roll Hall of Fame and Museum in Cleveland, Ohio, is a dynamic structure. Its design reflects the innovative music that it honors. The front part of the museum is a large glass pyramid, divided into small triangular windows. The pyramid structure rests on a rectangular tower and a circular theater that looks like a performance drum. Architect I. M. Pei (b 1917) used geometric shapes to capture the resonance of rock and roll musical chords.

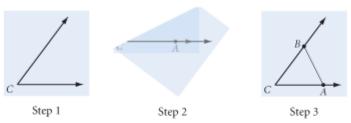


### Base Angles in an Isosceles Triangle

#### You will need

- patty paper
- a straightedge
- a protractor

Let's examine the angles of an isosceles triangle. Each person in your group should draw a different angle for this investigation. Your group should have at least one acute angle and one obtuse angle.



- Step 1 Draw an angle on patty paper. Label it  $\angle C$ . This angle will be the vertex angle of vour isosceles triangle.
- Step 2 Place a point A on one ray. Fold your patty paper so that the two rays match up. Trace point A onto the other ray.
- Step 3 Label the point on the other ray point B. Draw  $\overline{AB}$ . You have constructed an isosceles triangle. Explain how you know it is isosceles. Name the base and the base angles.
- Step 4 Use your protractor to compare the measures of the base angles. What relationship do you notice? How can you fold the paper to confirm your conclusion?
- Step 5 Compare results in your group. Was the relationship you noticed the same for each isosceles triangle? State your observations as your next conjecture.

### Isosceles Triangle Conjecture

C-18

If a triangle is isosceles, then <u>1</u>.

Equilateral triangles have at least two congruent sides, so they fit the definition of isosceles triangles. That means any properties you discover for isosceles triangles will also apply to equilateral triangles. How does the Isosceles Triangle Conjecture apply to equilateral triangles?



You can switch the "if" and "then" parts of the Isosceles Triangle Conjecture to obtain the converse of the conjecture. Is the converse of the Isosceles Triangle Conjecture true? Let's investigate.



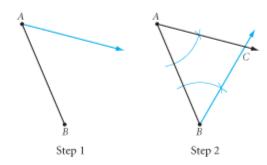
### **Investigation 2**

### Is the Converse True?

#### You will need

- a compass
- a straightedge

Suppose a triangle has two congruent angles. Must the triangle be isosceles?



- Step 1
- Draw a segment and label it  $\overline{AB}$ . Draw an acute angle at point A. This angle will be a base angle. (Why can't you draw an obtuse angle as a base angle?)
- Step 2
- Copy  $\angle A$  at point B on the same side of  $\overline{AB}$  Label the intersection of the two rays point C.
- Step 3
- Use your compass to compare the lengths of sides AC and BC. What relationship do you notice? How can you use patty paper to confirm your conclusion?
- Step 4
- Compare results in your group. State your observation as your next conjecture.



C-19

### Converse of the Isosceles Triangle Conjecture

If a triangle has two congruent angles, then 1...



### **EXERCISES**

For Exercises 1–6, use your new conjectures to find the missing measures.



You will need

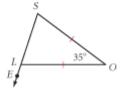




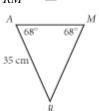
**2.** 
$$m \angle G = ?$$



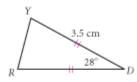
3. 
$$m \angle OLE = ?$$



**4.**  $m \angle R = \frac{?}{?}$   $RM = \frac{?}{?}$ 



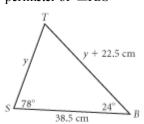
**5.**  $m \angle Y = ?$  RD = ?



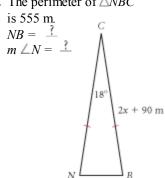
**6.** The perimeter of  $\triangle MUD$ 

is 36.6 cm.  $m \angle D = \frac{?}{}$  $m \angle U = \frac{?}{}$  $MD = \frac{?}{}$ 

**7.**  $m \angle T = \frac{?}{}$ perimeter of  $\triangle TBS$ 

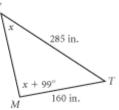


**8.** The perimeter of  $\triangle NBC$ 



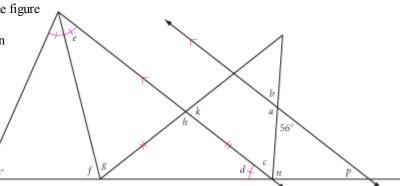
**9.** The perimeter of  $\triangle MTV$ is 605 in.

 $MV = \frac{?}{}$  $m \angle M = \frac{?}{}$ 

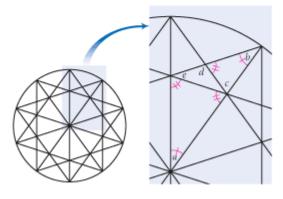


10. **Developing Proof** Copy the figure

at right. Calculate the measure of each lettered angle. Explain how you determined the measures d and h.

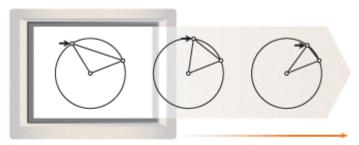


11. The Islamic design below right is based on the star decagon construction shown below left. The ten angles surrounding the center are all congruent. Find the lettered angle measures. How many triangles are not isosceles?





- 12. Study the triangles in the software constructions below. Each triangle has one vertex at the center of the circle, and two vertices on the circle.
  - a. Are the triangles all isosceles? Write a paragraph proof explaining why or why not.
  - **b.** If the vertex at the center of the first circle has an angle measure of 60°, find the measures of the other two angles in that triangle.



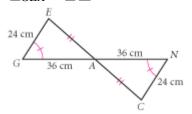


For an interactive version of this sketch, see the **Dynamic Geometry** Exploration Triangles in a Circle at www.keymath.com/DG

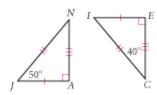
### Review

In Exercises 13 and 14, complete the statement of congruence from the information given. Remember to write the statement so that corresponding parts are in order.

13.  $\triangle GEA \cong \triangle ?$ 

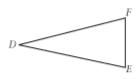


**14.** △*JAN* ≅ △ ?

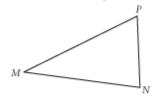


In Exercises 15 and 16, use a compass or patty paper, and a straightedge, to construct a triangle that is not congruent to the given triangle, but has the given parts congruent. The symbol means "not congruent to."

**15.** Construction Construct  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$ with  $\angle A \cong \angle D$ ,  $\angle B \cong \angle E$ , and  $\angle C \cong \angle F$ . (h)



**16.** Construction Construct  $\triangle GHK \cong \triangle MNP$ with  $\overline{HK} \cong \overline{NP}$ ,  $\overline{GH} \cong \overline{MN}$ , and



 $\angle G \cong \angle M$ .

17. Construction With a straightedge and patty paper, construct an angle that measures 105°.

In Exercises 18–21, determine whether each pair of lines through the points below is parallel, perpendicular, or neither.

A(1,3) B(6,0) C(4,3) D(1,-2) E(-3,8) F(-4,1) G(-1,6) H(4,-4)

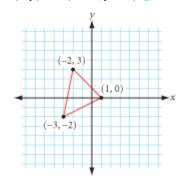
**18.**  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  and  $\overrightarrow{CD}$  **19.**  $\overrightarrow{FG}$  and  $\overrightarrow{CD}$  **20.**  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  and  $\overrightarrow{CH}$  **21.**  $\overrightarrow{DE}$  and  $\overrightarrow{GH}$ 

- 22. Using the preceding coordinate points, is FGCD a trapezoid, a parallelogram, or neither?
- 23. Picture the isosceles triangle below toppling side over side to the right along the line. Copy the triangle and line onto your paper, then construct the path of point P through two cycles. Where on the number line will the vertex point land?

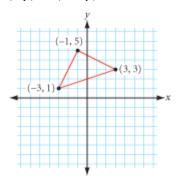


For Exercises 24 and 25, use the ordered pair rule shown to relocate each of the vertices of the given triangle. Connect the three new points to create a new triangle. Is the new triangle congruent to the original one? Describe how the new triangle has changed position from the original.

**24.** 
$$(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 5, y - 3)$$



**25.** 
$$(x, y) \rightarrow (x, -y)$$



### IMPROVING YOUR REASONING SKILLS

### Hundreds Puzzle

Fill in the blanks of each equation below. All nine digits—1 through 9—must be used, in order! You may use any combination of signs for the four basic operations  $(+, -, \cdot, \div)$ , parentheses, decimal points, exponents, factorial signs, and square root symbols, and you may place the digits next to each other to create two-digit or three-digit numbers.

Example: 1 + 2(3 + 4.5) + 67 + 8 + 9 = 100

1. 
$$1+2+3-4+5+6+\frac{1}{2}+9=100$$

**2.** 
$$1+2+3+4+5+\frac{?}{}=100$$

3. 
$$1+2+3 \cdot 4 \cdot 5 / 6 + \frac{1}{2} = 100$$

**4.** 
$$(-1 - \frac{?}{1}) / 5 + 6 + 7 + 89 = 100$$

**5.** 
$$1 + 23 - 4 + \frac{?}{2} + 9 = 100$$

# **Solving Equations**



In this chapter you may have already been solving some problems by setting up and solving an equation. An equation is a statement that two expressions are equal. The solution to an equation is the value (or values) of the variable that makes the equation true. The solution to the equation 2x + 3 = 11 is x = 4. You can check this by substituting 4 for x to see that 2(4) + 3 = 11 is a true equation.

While there are many properties of real numbers and properties of equality, here are some of the main properties that help you solve equations.

### **Distributive Property**

$$a(b+c) = a \cdot b + a \cdot c$$

This property allows you to simplify equations by separating the terms within parentheses.

$$3(5x-7)=15x-21$$

### Combining like terms

$$ax + bx = (a + b)x$$

This process, based on the distributive property, allows you to simplify one side of an equation by adding the coefficients of expressions with the same variable.

$$-4y + 9y = (-4 + 9)y = 5y$$

### **Properties of Equality**

Given a = b, for any number c,

Addition property

a + c = b + c

Subtraction property

a-c=b-c

Multiplication property

ac = bc

**Division property** 

$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{c}$$
 (provided  $c \neq 0$ )

These properties allow you to perform the same operation on both sides of an equation.

### Substitution property

If a = b, then a can be replaced with b in any equation.

This property allows you to check your solution to an equation by replacing each variable with its value. Substitution is also used to solve some equations and in writing proofs.

### **EXAMPLE A**

Solve 
$$4x + 8 = -4(2x - 7) + 4$$
.

### Solution

$$4x + 8 = -4(2x - 7) + 2x$$
 The original equation.  
 $4x + 8 = -8x + 28 + 2x$  Distribute.  
 $4x + 8 = -6x + 28$  Combine like terms.  
 $10x + 8 = 28$  Add  $6x$  to both sides.  
 $10x = 20$  Subtract 8 from both sides.

Divide both sides by 10.

The solution is x = 2.

х

Check that the solution makes the original equation true.

2

$$4(2) + 8 \stackrel{?}{=} -4[2(2) - 7] + 2(2)$$
 Substitute 2 for x.  
 $4(2) + 8 \stackrel{?}{=} -4[-3] + 4$  Simplify following the order of operations.  
 $8 + 8 \stackrel{?}{=} 12 + 4$  The solution checks.

When an equation contains fractions or rational expressions, it is sometimes easiest to "clear" them by multiplying both sides of the equation by a common denominator.

**EXAMPLE B** Solve 
$$\frac{x}{2} = \frac{3x}{5} - \frac{1}{4}$$
.

### Solution

The denominators are 2, 5, and 4. The least common denominator is 20.

$$\frac{x}{2} = \frac{3x}{5} - \frac{1}{4}$$
 The original equation.
$$20\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) = 20\left(\frac{3x}{5} - \frac{1}{4}\right)$$
 Multiply both sides by 20.
$$\frac{20x}{2} = \frac{60x}{5} - \frac{20}{4}$$
 Distribute.
$$10x = 12x - 5$$
 Reduce the fractions. Now solve as you did in Example A.
$$2x = -5$$
 Subtract 12x from both sides.
$$x = 2.5$$
 Divide both sides by -2.

Check the solution.

$$\frac{2.5}{2} \stackrel{?}{=} \frac{3(2.5)}{5} - \frac{1}{4}$$
 Substitute 2.5 for x.  

$$1.25 \stackrel{?}{=} 1.5 - 0.25$$
 Simplify following the order of operations.  

$$1.25 = 1.25$$

### EXERCISES



In Exercises 1–2, state whether each equation is true or false.

1. 
$$2(4+5) = 13$$

**2.** 
$$2 + [3(-4) - 4] = 2(-4 - 3)$$

In Exercises 3–5, determine whether the value given for the variable is a solution to the equation.

**3.** 
$$x - 8 = 2$$
;  $x = 6$ 

**4.** 
$$4(3y - 1) = -40$$
;  $y = -3$  **5.**  $\frac{3}{4}n - \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{8}$ ;  $n = \frac{1}{4}$ 

**5.** 
$$\frac{3}{4}n - \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{8}$$
;  $n = \frac{1}{4}$ 

In Exercises 6–13, solve the equation and check your solution.

**6.** 
$$6x - 3 = 39$$

7. 
$$3y - 7 = 5y + 1$$

8. 
$$6x - 4(3x + 8) = 16$$

**9.** 
$$7 - 3(2x - 5) = 1 - x$$

**9.** 
$$7 - 3(2x - 5) = 1 - x$$
 **10.**  $5(n - 2) - 14n = -3n - (5 - 4n)$ 

**11.** 
$$\frac{1}{6} = \frac{3}{10} - \frac{1}{15}x$$

12. 
$$\frac{4}{t} - \frac{1}{6} = \frac{1}{t}$$

**12.** 
$$\frac{4}{t} - \frac{1}{6} = \frac{1}{t}$$
 **13.**  $\frac{3n}{4} - \frac{1}{3} = \frac{2n-1}{6}$ 

- **14.** A proportion is a statement of equality between two ratios. For example,  $\frac{3}{4} = \frac{x}{3}$  is a proportion.
  - a. Solve the proportion above by clearing the fractions, as in Example B.
  - **b.** You may have previously learned that you can solve a proportion by "cross multiplying." If so, use this method to solve the proportion above, and compare this method to the one you used in part a.
- **15.** Try solving 2(3x + 1) = 6x + 3. Explain what happens. What is the solution?
- **16.** Below is Camella's work solving an equation. Camella says, "The solution is zero." Is she correct? Explain.

$$2x + 2(x - 1) = 4(x - 3) + 10$$

Original equation.

$$2x + 2x - 2 = 4x - 12 + 10$$

Distribute.

$$4x - 2 = 4x - 2$$

Combine like terms.

$$4x = 4x$$

Add 2 to both sides.

$$0 = 0$$

Subtract 4x from both sides.

17. A golden triangle is an isosceles triangle with many special properties. One of them is the measure of either of its base angles is twice the measure of its vertex angle. Sketch a golden triangle with variables representing the angles. Apply previous conjectures to write an equation. Then solve it to determine the measure of each angle.











The diagonals of a regular pentagon form many different golden triangles.



Readers are plentiful, thinkers are rare. HARRIET MARTINEAU

Drawbridges over the Chicago River in Chicago, Illinois

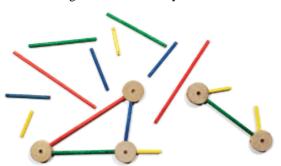
# **Triangle Inequalities**

How long must each side of this drawbridge be so that the bridge spans the river when both sides come down?



The sum of the lengths of the two parts of the drawbridge must be equal to or greater than the distance across the waterway. Triangles have similar requirements.

You can build a triangle using one blue rod, one green rod, and one red rod. Could you still build a triangle if you used a yellow rod instead of the green rod? Why or why not? Could you form a triangle with two yellow rods and one green rod? What if you used two green rods and one yellow rod?



How can you determine which sets of three rods can be arranged into triangles and which can't? How do the measures of the angles in the triangle relate to the lengths of the rods? How is measure of the exterior angle formed by the yellow and blue rods in the triangle above related to the measures of the angles inside the triangle? In this lesson you will investigate these questions.



### Investigation 1

### What Is the Shortest Path from A to B?

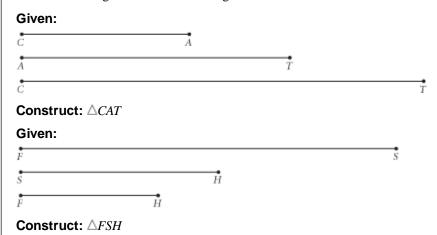
You will need

a compass a straightedge

Each person in your group should do each construction. Compare results when you finish.

Step 1

Construct a triangle with each set of segments as sides.



Step 2

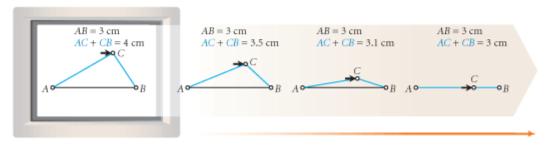
You should have been able to construct  $\triangle CAT$ , but not  $\triangle FSH$ . Why? Discuss your results with others. State your observations as your next conjecture.

### **Triangle Inequality Conjecture**

C-20

The sum of the lengths of any two sides of a triangle is \(\frac{1}{2}\) the length of the third side.

The Triangle Inequality Conjecture relates the lengths of the three sides of a triangle. You can also think of it in another way: The shortest path between two points is along the segment connecting them. In other words, the path from A to C to B can't be shorter than the path from A to B.





For an interactive version of this sketch, see the Dynamic Geometry Exploration The Triangle Inequality at www.keymath.com/DG



Step 2

### Investigation 2

### Where Are the Largest and Smallest Angles?

#### You will need

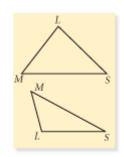
- a ruler
- a protractor

Each person should draw a different scalene triangle for this investigation. Some group members should draw acute triangles, and some should draw obtuse triangles.

Step 1 Measure the angles in your triangle. Label the angle with greatest measure  $\angle L$ , the angle with second greatest measure  $\angle M$ , and the smallest angle  $\angle S$ .

> Measure the three sides. Label the longest side *l*, the second longest side m, and the shortest side s.

Step 3 Which side is opposite  $\angle L$ ?  $\angle M$ ?  $\angle S$ ?

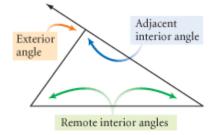


Discuss your results with others. Write a conjecture that states where the largest and smallest angles are in a triangle, in relation to the longest and shortest sides.

### Side-Angle Inequality Conjecture

C-21

In a triangle, if one side is longer than another side, then the angle opposite the longer side is  $\perp$ .



So far in this chapter, you have studied interior angles of triangles. Triangles also have exterior angles. If you extend one side of a triangle beyond its vertex, then you have constructed an exterior angle at that vertex.

Each exterior angle of a triangle has an adjacent interior angle and a pair of **remote interior angles**. The remote interior angles are the two angles in the triangle that do not share a vertex with the exterior angle.

### Investigation 3

### **Exterior Angles of a Triangle**

#### You will need

- a straightedge
- patty paper

Step 1

Each person should draw a different scalene triangle for this investigation. Some group members should draw acute triangles, and some should draw obtuse triangles.

On your paper, draw a scalene triangle,  $\triangle ABC$ . Extend  $\overline{AB}$  beyond point B and label a point D outside the triangle on  $\overline{AB}$ . Label the angles as shown.



Step 2	Copy the two remote interior angles, $\angle A$ and $\angle C$ , onto
	patty paper to show their sum.

How does the sum of a and c compare with x? Use your Step 3 patty paper from Step 2 to compare.



Step 4 Discuss your results with your group. State your observations as a conjecture.

### **Triangle Exterior Angle Conjecture**

C-22

The measure of an exterior angle of a triangle  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

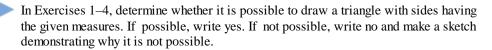


**Developing Proof** The investigation may have convinced you that the Triangle Exterior Angle Conjecture is true, but can you explain why it is true for every triangle?

As a group, discuss how to prove the Triangle Exterior Angle Conjecture. Use reasoning strategies such as draw a labeled diagram, represent a situation algebraically, and apply previous conjectures. Start by making a diagram and listing the relationships you already know among the angles in the diagram, then plan out the logic of your proof.

You will write the paragraph proof of the Triangle Exterior Angle Conjecture in Exercise 17. Keymalh.com

### **EXERCISES**



Practice Your Skil

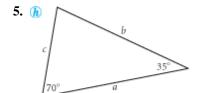
1. 3 cm, 4 cm, 5 cm

2. 4 m, 5 m, 9 m

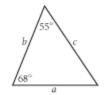
3. 5 ft, 6 ft, 12 ft

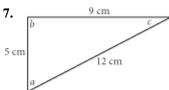
**4.** 3.5 cm, 4.5 cm, 7 cm

In Exercises 5–10, use your new conjectures to arrange the unknown measures in order from greatest to least.

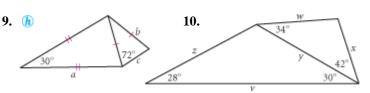


6.



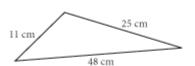


15 in.

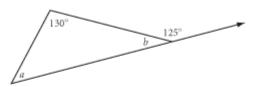


11. If 54 and 48 are the lengths of two sides of a triangle, what is the range of possible values for the length of the third side?

**12. Developing Proof** What's wrong with this picture? Explain.



13. Developing Proof What's wrong with this picture? Explain.

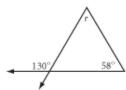


In Exercises 14–16, use one of your new conjectures to find the missing measures.

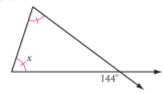
**14.**  $t + p = \frac{?}{}$ 



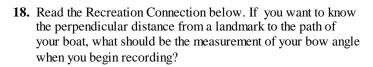
15.  $r = \frac{?}{}$ 

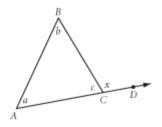


**16.**  $x = \frac{?}{}$ 



17. Developing Proof Use the Triangle Sum Conjecture to explain why the Triangle Exterior Angle Conjecture is true. Use the figure at right.

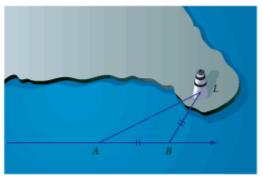




Recreation CONNECTION

Geometry is used quite often in sailing. For example, to find the distance between the boat and a landmark on shore, sailors use a rule called *doubling* the angle on the bow. The rule says, measure the angle on the bow (the angle formed by your path and your line of sight to the landmark, also called your bearing) at point A. Check your bearing until, at point B, the bearing is double the reading at point A. The distance traveled from A to B is also the distance from the landmark to your new position.

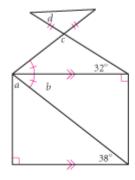


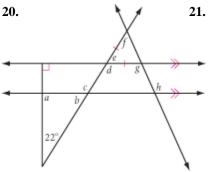


### Review

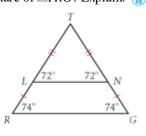
In Exercises 19 and 20, calculate each lettered angle measure.

19.





**21.** What's wrong with this picture of  $\triangle TRG$ ? Explain. (6)



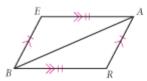
In Exercises 22–24, complete the statement of congruence.

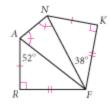
22. 
$$\triangle BAR \cong \triangle ?$$



24.  $\overline{HG} \cong \overline{HJ}$ 











### RANDOM TRIANGLES

Imagine you cut a 20cm straw in two randomly selected places anywhere along its length. What is the probability that the three pieces will form a triangle? How do the locations of the cuts affect whether or not the pieces will form a triangle? Explore this situation by cutting a straw in different ways, or use geometry software to model different possibilities. Based on your informal exploration, predict the probability of the pieces forming a triangle.

Now generate a large number of randomly chosen lengths to simulate the cutting of the straw. Analyze the results and calculate the probability based on your data. How close was your prediction?

Your project should include

- Your prediction and an explanation of how you arrived at it.
- Your randomly generated data.
- An analysis of the results and your calculated probability.
- An explanation of how the location of the cuts affects the chances of a triangle being formed.



You can use Fathom to generate many sets of random numbers quickly. You can also set up tables to view your data, and enter formulas to calculate quantities based on your data.

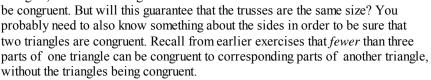


The person who knows how will always have a job; the person who knows why will always be that person's boss. ANONYMOUS

**Are There Congruence Shortcuts?** 

A building contractor has just assembled two massive triangular trusses to support the roof of a recreation hall. Before the crane hoists them into place, the contractor needs to verify that the two triangular trusses are identical. Must the contractor measure and compare all six parts of both triangles?

You learned from the Third Angle Conjecture that if there is a pair of angles congruent in each of two triangles, then the third angles must



So let's begin looking for congruence shortcuts by comparing three parts of each triangle. There are six different ways that the three corresponding parts of two triangles may be congruent. They are diagrammed below. Some of these will be congruence shortcuts, and some will not.

#### Side-Side (SSS)



Three pairs of congruent sides

### Side-Angle-Side (SAS)



Two pairs of congruent sides and one pair of congruent angles (angles between the pairs of sides)

### Side-Side-Angle (SSA)



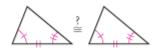
Side-Angle-Angle (SAA)

Two pairs of congruent angles and one pair of congruent sides (sides not between the pairs of angles)

# ?

Two pairs of congruent sides and one pair of congruent angles (angles not between the pairs of sides)

### Angle-Side-Angle (ASA)



Two pairs of congruent angles and one pair of congruent sides (sides between the pairs of angles)

### Angle-Angle (AAA)



Three pairs of congruent angles

You will investigate three of these cases in this lesson and the other three in the next lesson to discover which of these six possible cases turn out to be congruence shortcuts and which do not.



### **Investigation 1**

### Is SSS a Congruence Shortcut?

#### You will need

- a compass or patty paper
- a straightedge

First you will investigate the Side-Side-Side (SSS) case. If the three sides of one triangle are congruent to the









three sides of another, must the two triangles be congruent?

Step 1

Construct a triangle from the three parts shown. Be sure you match up the endpoints labeled with the same letter. If you need help with this construction, see page 170, Example A.



Step 2

Compare your triangle with the triangles made by others in your group. (One way to compare them is to place the triangles on top of each other and see if they coincide.) Is it possible to construct different triangles from the same three parts, or will all the triangles be congruent?

Step 3

You are now ready to complete the conjecture for the SSS case.

### **SSS Congruence Conjecture**

C-23

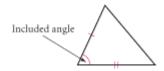
If the three sides of one triangle are congruent to the three sides of another triangle, then 1.

### Career CONNECTION

Congruence is very important in design and manufacturing. Modern assembly-line production relies on identical, or congruent, parts that are interchangeable. In the assembly of an automobile, for example, the same part needs to fit into each car coming down the assembly line.



An angle that is included between two sides of a triangle is called an **included angle**, as shown in the diagram at right. You will investigate this case next.





### Investigation 2

### Is SAS a Congruence Shortcut?

#### You will need

- a compass or patty paper
- a straightedge

Next you will consider the Side-Angle-Side (SAS) case. If two sides and the included angle of one triangle are





congruent to two sides and the included angle of another, must the triangles be congruent?

Step 1

Construct a triangle from the three parts shown. Be sure you match up the endpoints labeled with the same letter. If you need help with this construction, see page 171, Exercise 2.



Step 2

Compare your triangle with the triangles made by others in your group. Is it possible to construct different triangles from the same three parts, or will all the triangles be congruent?



Step 3

You are now ready to complete the conjecture for the SAS case.

### SAS Congruence Conjecture

C-24

If two sides and the included angle of one triangle are congruent to two sides and the included angle of another triangle, then 1.



### Investigation 3

### Is SSA a Congruence Shortcut?

#### You will need

- a compass or patty paper
- a straightedge

Finally you will consider the Side-Side-Angle (SSA) case. If two sides and a non-included angle of one

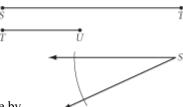




triangle are congruent to the corresponding two sides and non-included angle of another, must the triangles be congruent?

Step 1

Construct a triangle from the three parts shown. Be sure you match up the endpoints labeled with the same letter. If you need help with this construction, see page 172, Exercise 5.



Step 2

Compare your triangle with the triangles made by others in your group. Is it possible to construct different triangles from the same three parts, or will all the triangles be congruent?

Step 3

If two sides and a non-included angle of one triangle are congruent to the corresponding two sides and non-included angle of another triangle, do the two triangles have to be congruent? Explain why or show a counterexample.

### EXERCISES



1. The picture statement below represents the SSS Triangle Congruence Conjecture. Explain what the picture statement means.



#### If you know this:



#### then you also know this:

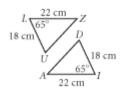


**2.** Create a picture statement to represent the SAS Triangle Congruence Conjecture. Explain what the picture statement means.

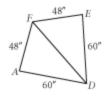
3. In the third investigation you discovered that the SSA case is not a triangle congruence shortcut. Sketch a counterexample to show why.

For Exercises 4–9, decide whether the triangles are congruent, and name the congruence shortcut you used. If the triangles cannot be shown to be congruent as labeled, write "cannot be determined."

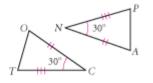
**4.** Which conjecture tells you  $\triangle LUZ \cong \triangle IDA?$ 



**5.** Which conjecture tells you  $\triangle AFD \cong \triangle EFD?$ 



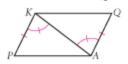
**6.** Which conjecture tells you  $\triangle COT \cong \triangle NPA?$ 



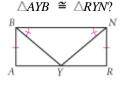
7. Which conjecture tells you  $\triangle CAV \cong \triangle CEV$ ?



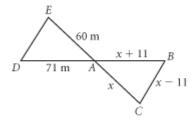
**8.** Which conjecture tells you  $\triangle KAP \cong \triangle AKO$ ?



**9.** *Y* is a midpoint. Which conjecture tells you



10. The perimeter of  $\triangle ABC$  is 180 m. Is  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle ADE$ ? Which conjecture supports your conclusion?



11. Explain why the boards that are nailed diagonally in the corners of this wooden gate make the gate stronger and prevent it from changing its shape under stress.

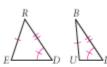


**Developing Proof** In Exercises 12–17, if possible, name a triangle congruent to the given triangle and state the congruence conjecture. If you cannot show any triangles to be congruent from the information given, write "cannot be determined" and explain why.

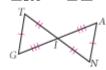
12.  $\triangle ANT \cong \triangle \stackrel{?}{\perp}$ 



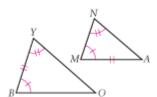
13.  $\triangle RED \cong \triangle \stackrel{?}{\perp}$ 



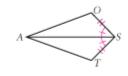
14.  $\triangle GIT \cong \triangle ?$ 



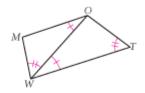
15.  $\triangle MAN \cong \triangle \stackrel{?}{\perp}$ 



16.  $\triangle SAT \cong \triangle \stackrel{?}{=}$ 

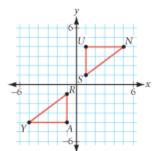


17.  $\triangle WOM \cong \triangle \stackrel{?}{\perp}$ 

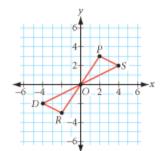


In Exercises 18 and 19, determine whether the segments or triangles in the coordinate plane are congruent and explain your reasoning.

18.  $\triangle SUN \cong \triangle \stackrel{?}{\perp}$ 



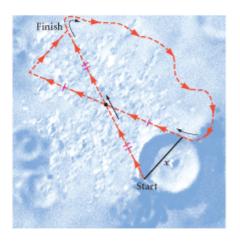
**19.** △*DRO* ≅ △ !



20. NASA scientists using a lunar exploration vehicle (LEV) wish to determine the distance across the deep crater shown at right. They have mapped out a path for the LEV as shown. What do the scientists need to measure to find the approximate distance across the crater? Explain why.

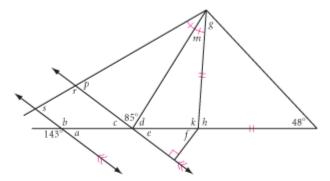
In Exercises 21 and 22, use a compass and straightedge, or patty paper, to perform these constructions.

- **21.** Construction Draw a triangle. Use the SSS Congruence Conjecture to construct a second triangle congruent to the first.
- **22. Construction** Draw a triangle. Use the SAS Congruence Conjecture to construct a second triangle congruent to the first.

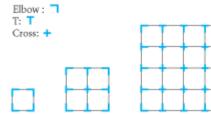


### Review

**23. Developing Proof** Copy the figure. Calculate the measure of each lettered angle. Explain how you determined measures h and s.



- 24. If two sides of a triangle measure 8 cm and 11 cm, what is the range of values for the length of the third side?
- 25. How many "elbow," "T," and "cross" pieces do you need to build a 20-by-20 grid? Start with the smaller grids shown below. Copy and complete the table.



Side length	1	2	3	4	5	 n	 20
Elbows	4	4					
T's	0	4					
Crosses	0	1					

**26.** Solve each equation for v.

**a.** 
$$2y - 5(8 - y) = 2$$

**b.** 
$$\frac{y}{2} - \frac{1}{3} = \frac{y+3}{4}$$

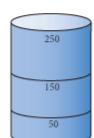
**c.** 
$$3x + 4y = 8$$

27. Isosceles right triangle ABC has vertices with coordinates A(-8, 2), B(-5, -3), and C(0, 0). Find the coordinates of the orthocenter.

### IMPROVING YOUR REASONING SKILLS

### Container Problem I

You have a small cylindrical measuring glass with a maximum capacity of 250 mL. All the marks have worn off except the 150 mL and 50 mL marks. You also have a large unmarked container. It is possible to fill the large container with exactly 350 mL. How? What is the fewest number of steps required to obtain 350 mL?





There is no more a math mind, than there is a history or an English mind. GLORIA STEINEM

# **Are There Other Congruence Shortcuts?**

In the last lesson, you discovered that there are six ways that three parts of two triangles can be the same. You found that SSS and SAS both lead to the congruence of the two triangles, but that SSA does not. In this lesson you will investigate the other three cases.

A side that is included between two angles of a triangle is called an **included side**, as shown in the diagram at right. You will investigate this case next.





### Investigation 1

### Is ASA a Congruence Shortcut?

You will need

- a compass or patty paper
- a straightedge

First you will consider the Angle-Side-Angle (ASA) case. If two angles and the included side of one triangle are



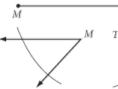
then



congruent to two angles and the included side of another, must the triangles be congruent?

Step 1

Construct a triangle from the three parts shown. Be sure you match up the angles with the endpoints labeled with the same letter. If you need help with this construction, see page 171, Exercise 3.





Step 2

Compare your triangle with the triangles made by others in your group. Is it possible to construct different triangles from the sa

possible to construct different triangles from the same three parts, or will all the triangles be congruent?

Step 3

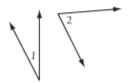
You are now ready to complete the conjecture for the ASA case.

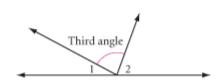
### **ASA Congruence Conjecture**

C-25

If two angles and the included side of one triangle are congruent to two angles and the included side of another triangle, then  $\frac{2}{3}$ .

In Lesson 4.1, you learned that if you are given two angles of a triangle, you can construct the third angle using the Triangle Sum Conjecture.







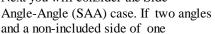
### **Investigation 2**

### Is SAA a Congruence Shortcut?

#### You will need

- a compass or patty paper
- a straightedge

Next you will consider the Side-







triangle are congruent to the corresponding two angles and non-included side of another, must the triangles be congruent?

Step 1 Construct a triangle from the three parts shown. Be sure you match up the angles with the endpoints labeled with the same letter. If you need help with this construction, see page 204,

Exercise 12.



Step 2 Compare your triangle with the triangles made by others in your

group. Is it possible to construct different triangles from the same three parts, or will all the triangles be congruent?

Step 3 You are now ready to complete the conjecture for the SAA case.

### **SAA Congruence Conjecture**

C-26

If two angles and a non-included side of one triangle are congruent to the corresponding two angles and non-included side of another triangle, then  $\perp$ .

Step 2

### Investigation 3

### Is AAA a Congruence Shortcut?

#### You will need

- a compass or patty paper
- a straightedge

Finally you will investigate the Angle-Angle-Angle (AAA) case. If the three angles of one triangle are congruent



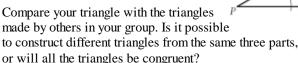


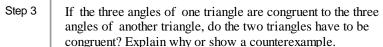
to the three angles of another, must the triangles be congruent?

Step 1 Construct a triangle from the three parts shown. If you need help with this

construction, see page 170, Example B. Compare your triangle with the triangles







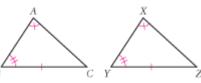




In Investigation 2 you found the SAA Congruence Conjecture inductively. You can also derive it deductively from the ASA Congruence Conjecture.

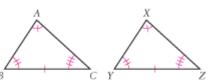
### **EXAMPLE**

In triangles ABC and XYZ,  $\angle A \cong \angle X$ ,  $\angle B \cong \angle Y$ , and  $BC \cong YZ$ . Is  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle XYZ$ ? Explain your answer in a paragraph.



### Solution

Two angles in one triangle are congruent to two angles in another. The Third Angle Conjecture says that  $C \cong Z$ . So you now have



two angles and the *included* side of one triangle congruent to two angles and the included side of another. By the ASA Congruence Conjecture,  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle XYZ$ .



#### You will need

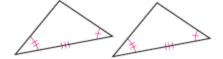
**1.** The picture statement below represents the ASA Triangle Congruence Conjecture. Explain what the picture statement means.

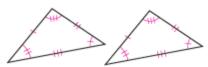
Practice Your Skills



### If you know this:



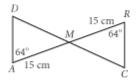




- **2.** Create a picture statement to represent the SAA Triangle Congruence Conjecture. Explain what the picture statement means.
- **3.** In the third investigation you discovered that the AAA case is not a triangle congruence shortcut. Sketch a counterexample to show why.

For Exercises 4–9, determine whether the triangles are congruent, and name the congruence shortcut. If the triangles cannot be shown to be congruent, write "cannot be determined."

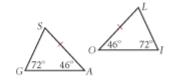
**4.**  $\triangle AMD \cong \triangle RMC$ 



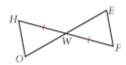
**5.** △*FSH* ≅ △*FSI* 



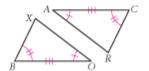
**6.**  $\triangle GAS \cong \triangle IOL$ 



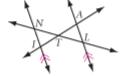
7.  $\triangle HOW \cong \triangle FEW$ 



8.  $\triangle BOX \cong \triangle CAR$ 



**9.** △*ALT* ≅ △*INT* 



**Developing Proof** In Exercises 10–17, if possible, name a triangle congruent to the triangle given and state the congruence conjecture. If you cannot show any triangles to be congruent from the information given, write "cannot be determined" and explain why.

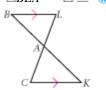
10.  $\triangle FAD \cong \triangle \stackrel{?}{\perp}$ 

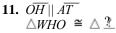


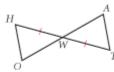
**13.** PO = PR $\triangle POE \cong \triangle ?$  $\triangle SON \cong \triangle ?$ 



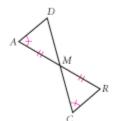
16.  $\triangle BLA \cong \triangle \stackrel{?}{\perp}$  (h)



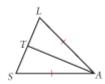




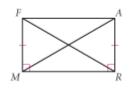
14. △ ? ≅ △ ?



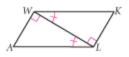
12.  $\overline{AT}$  is an angle bisector.  $\triangle LAT \cong \triangle ?$ 



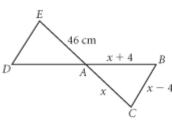
15.  $\triangle RMF \cong \triangle \stackrel{?}{\perp}$ 



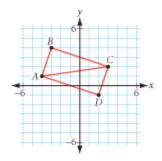
**17.** △*LAW* ≅ △ ≟



**18.** The perimeter of  $\triangle ABC$  is 138 cm and  $\overline{BC} \mid \overline{DE}$ . Is  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle ADE$ ? Which conjecture supports your conclusion?



19. Use slope properties to show  $\overline{AB} \perp \overline{BC}$ ,  $\overline{CD} \perp \overline{DA}$ , and  $\overline{BC} \parallel \overline{DA}$ .  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle \stackrel{?}{\_}$ . Why?



In Exercises 20–22, use a compass or patty paper, and a straightedge, to perform each construction.

- **20.** Construction Draw a triangle. Use the ASA Congruence Conjecture to construct a second triangle congruent to the first. Write a paragraph to justify your steps.
- 21. Construction Draw a triangle. Use the SAA Congruence Conjecture to construct a second triangle congruent to the first. Write a paragraph to justify your method.
- **22.** Construction Construct two triangles that are not congruent, even though the three angles of one triangle are congruent to the three angles of the other.

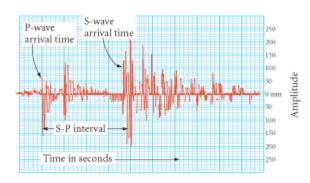
### Review

- **23.** *Construction* Using only a compass and a straightedge, construct an isosceles triangle with a vertex angle that measures 135°.
- **24.** If *n* concurrent lines divide the plane into 250 parts then n = 1.
- **25.** "If the two diagonals of a quadrilateral are perpendicular, then the quadrilateral is a rhombus." Explain why this statement is true or sketch a counterexample.
- **26.** Construction Construct an isosceles right triangle with  $\overline{KM}$  as one of the legs. How many noncongruent triangles can you construct? Why?



- **27.** Sketch five lines in a plane that intersect in exactly five points. Now do this in a different way.
- **28.** *Application* Scientists use seismograms and triangulation to pinpoint the epicenter of an earthquake.
  - a. Data recorded for one quake show that the epicenter is 480 km from Eureka, California; 720 km from Elko, Nevada; and 640 km from Las Vegas, Nevada. Trace the locations of these three towns and use the scale and your construction tools to find the location of the epicenter.
  - **b.** Is it necessary to have seismogram information from three towns? Would two towns suffice? Explain.





### IMPROVING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS

### Algebraic Sequences I

Find the next two terms of each algebraic sequence.

$$x + 3y$$
,  $2x + y$ ,  $3x + 4y$ ,  $5x + 5y$ ,  $8x + 9y$ ,  $13x + 14y$ ,

$$x + 7y$$
,  $2x + 2y$ ,  $4x - 3y$ ,  $8x - 8y$ ,  $16x - 13y$ ,  $32x - 18y$ ?

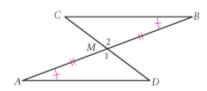




The job of the younger generation is to find solutions to the solutions found by the older generation. **ANONYMOUS** 

# **Corresponding Parts of Congruent Triangles**

In Lessons 4.4 and 4.5, you discovered four shortcuts for showing that two triangles are congruent—SSS, SAS, ASA, and SAA. The definition of congruent triangles states that if two triangles are congruent, then the corresponding parts of those congruent triangles are congruent. We'll use the letters CPCTC to refer to the definition. Let's see how you can use congruent triangles and CPCTC.



#### EXAMPLE A

Is  $\overline{AD} \cong \overline{BC}$  in the figure above? Use a deductive argument to explain why they must be congruent.

#### Solution

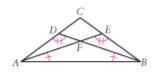
Here is one possible explanation:  $\angle 1 \cong \angle 2$  because they are vertical angles. And it is given that  $A\overline{M} \cong B\overline{M}$  and  $\angle A \cong \angle B$ . So, by ASA,  $\triangle AMD \cong \triangle BMC$ . Because the triangles are congruent,  $A\overline{D} \cong B\overline{C}$  by CPCTC.

If you use a congruence shortcut to show that two triangles are congruent, then you can use CPCTC to show that any of their corresponding parts are congruent.

When you are trying to prove that triangles are congruent, it can be hard to keep track of what you know. Mark all the information on the figure. If the triangles are hard to see, you can use different colors or redraw them separately.

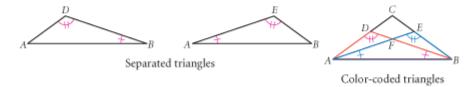
#### **EXAMPLE B**

Is  $\overline{AE} \cong \overline{BD}$ ? Write a paragraph proof explaining why.



#### Solution

The triangles you can use to show congruence are  $\triangle ABD$  and  $\triangle BAE$ . You can separate or color them to see them more clearly.



You can see that the two triangles have two pairs of congruent angles and they share a side.

Paragraph Proof: Show that  $A\overline{E} \cong \overline{BD}$ .

In  $\triangle ABD$  and  $\triangle BAE$ ,  $\angle D \cong \angle E$  and  $\angle B \cong \angle A$ . Also,  $\overline{AB} \cong \overline{BA}$  because they are the same segment. So  $\triangle ABD \cong \triangle BAE$  by SAA. By CPCTC,  $\overline{AE} \cong \overline{BD}$ .



### **EXERCISES**

You will need

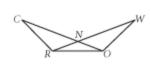
Construction tools for Exercises 16 and 17 mber

**Developing Proof** For Exercises 1–9, copy the figures onto your paper and mark them with the given information. Answer the question about segment or angle congruence. If your answer is yes, write a paragraph proof explaining why. Remember to use your reasoning strategies, especially apply previous conjectures and add an auxiliary line. If there is not enough information to prove congruence, write "cannot be determined," otherwise state which congruence shortcut you used.

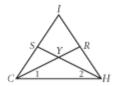
1.  $\angle A \cong \angle C$ ,  $\angle ABD \cong \angle CBD$ Is  $\overline{AB} \cong \overline{CB}$ ? (h)



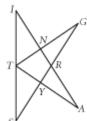
2.  $\overline{CN} \cong \overline{WN}, \angle C \cong \angle W$ Is  $\overline{RN} \cong \overline{ON}$ ?



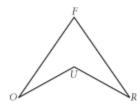
3.  $\overline{CS} \cong \overline{HR}, \angle 1 \cong \angle 2$ Is  $\overline{CR} \cong \overline{HS}$ ?



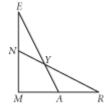
4.  $\angle S \cong \angle I$ ,  $\angle G \cong \angle A$  T is the midpoint of  $\overline{SI}$ . Is  $\overline{SG} \cong \overline{IA}$ ?



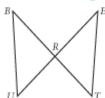
5.  $\overline{FO} \cong \overline{FR}$ ,  $\overline{UO} \cong \overline{UR}$ Is  $\angle O \cong \angle R$ ?



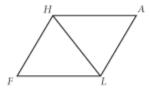
**6.**  $\overline{MN} \cong \overline{MA}$ ,  $\overline{ME} \cong \overline{MR}$ Is  $\angle E \cong \angle R$ ?



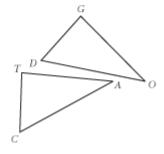
7.  $\overline{BT} \cong \overline{EU}, \overline{BU} \cong \overline{ET}$ Is  $\angle B \cong \angle E$ ?



8. HALF is a parallelogram. Is  $\overline{HA} \cong \overline{HF}$ ?

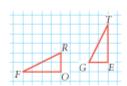


9.  $\angle D \cong \angle C$ ,  $\angle O \cong \angle A$ ,  $\angle G \cong \angle T$ . Is  $\overline{TA} \cong \overline{GO}$ ?

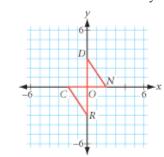


For Exercises 10 and 11, you can use the right angles and the lengths of horizontal and vertical segments shown on the grid. Answer the question about segment or angle congruence. If your answer is ves, explain why.

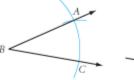
**10.** Is  $\overline{FR} \cong \overline{GT}$ ? Why?

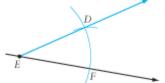


11. Is  $\angle OND \cong \angle OCR$ ? Why?



12. In Chapter 3, you used inductive reasoning to discover how to duplicate an angle using a compass and straightedge. Now you have the skills to explain why the construction works using deductive reasoning. The construction is shown at right. Write a paragraph proof explaining why it works.

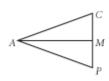




### Review

In Exercises 13–15, complete each statement. If the figure does not give you enough information to show that the triangles are congruent, write "cannot be determined."

13.  $\overline{AM}$  is a median.  $\triangle CAM \cong \triangle \stackrel{?}{\_}$ 



**14.** △*HEI* ≅ △ <u>?</u> Why?



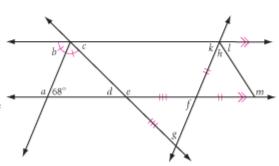
**15.** *U* is the midpoint of both FE and  $\overline{LT}$ .  $\triangle ULF \cong \triangle$ ?



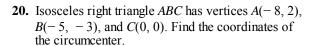
**16.** Construction Draw a triangle. Use the SAS Congruence Conjecture to construct a second triangle congruent to the first.

17. Construction Construct two triangles that are not congruent, even though two sides and a non-included angle of one triangle are congruent to two sides and a corresponding non-included angle of the other triangle.

**18. Developing Proof** Copy the figure. Calculate the measure of each lettered angle. Explain how you determined the measures f and m.



19. According to math legend, the Greek mathematician Thales (ca. 625–547 B.C.E.) could tell how far out to sea a ship was by using congruent triangles. First, he marked off a long segment in the sand. Then, from each endpoint of the segment, he drew the angle to the ship. He then remeasured the two angles on the other side of the segment away from the shore. The point where the rays of these two angles crossed located the ship. What congruence conjecture was Thales using? Explain.



21. The SSS Congruence Conjecture explains why triangles are rigid structures though other polygons are not. By adding one "strut" (diagonal) to a quadrilateral you create a quadrilateral that consists

quadrilateral you create a quadrilateral that consists of two triangles, and that makes it rigid. What is the minimum number of struts needed to make a pentagon rigid? A hexagon? A dodecagon? What is the minimum number of struts needed to make other polygons rigid? Complete the table and make your conjecture.





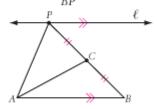






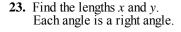
Number of sides	3	4	5	6	7	 12	 n
Number of struts needed to make polygon rigid							

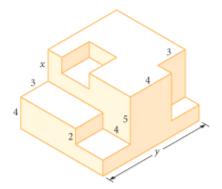
- **22.** Line  $\ell$  is parallel to  $\overline{AB}$  If P moves to the right along  $\ell$ , which of the following always decreases?
  - **A.** The distance *PC*
  - **B.** The distance from C to  $\overline{AB}$
  - C. The ratio  $\frac{AB}{AP}$
  - **D.** The ratio  $\frac{BC}{DD}$



For an interactive version of this diagram, see the **Dynamic Geometry Exploration** Changing Triangle

at www.keymath.com/DG . 4







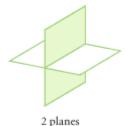


#### **POLYA'S PROBLEM**

George Polya (1887–1985) was a mathematician who specialized in problem-solving methods. He taught mathematics and problem solving at Stanford University for many years, and wrote the book *How to Solve It.* 

He posed this problem to his students: Into how many parts will five random planes divide space?



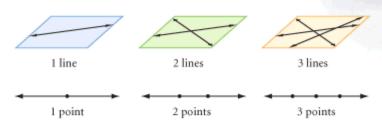




3 planes

Your project is to solve this problem. Here are some of Polya's problem-solving strategies to help you.

- 1. Understand the problem. Draw a figure or build a model. Can you restate the problem in your own words?
- **2.** Break down the problem. Have you done any simpler problems that are like this one?



**3.** Check your answer. Can you find the answer in a different way to show that it is correct? (The answer, by the way, is not 32!)

Your project should include

- ▶ All drawings and models you made or used.
- A description of the strategies you tried and how well each one worked.
- ▶ Your answer, and why you think it's correct.

For more information on Polya's Problem, go to www.keymath.com/DG:



If you can only find it, there is a reason for everything.

TRADITIONAL SAYING

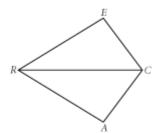
# **Flowchart Thinking**

You have been making many discoveries about triangles. As you try to explain why the new conjectures are true, you build upon definitions and conjectures you made before.

So far, you have written your explanations as deductive arguments or paragraph proofs. First, we'll look at a diagram and explain why two angles must be congruent, by writing a paragraph proof, in Example A. Then we'll look at a different tool for writing proofs, and use that tool to write the same proof, in Example B.

### EXAMPLE A

In the figure at right,  $\overline{EC} \cong A\overline{C}$  and  $\overline{ER} \cong \overline{AR}$ . Is  $\angle A \cong \angle E$ ? If so, give a logical argument to explain why they are congruent.

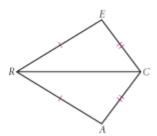


#### Solution

First, mark the given information on the figure. Then consider whether  $\angle A$  is congruent to  $\angle E$ . It looks as if there are two congruent triangles, so use the reasoning strategy of applying previous conjectures to explain why.

**Paragraph Proof:** Show that  $\angle A \cong \angle E$ .

 $\overline{EC} \cong \overline{AC}$  and  $\overline{ER} \cong \overline{AR}$  because that information is given.  $\overline{RC} \cong \overline{RC}$  because it is the same segment, and any segment is congruent to itself. So,  $\triangle CRE \cong \triangle CRA$  by the SSS Congruence Conjecture. If  $\triangle CRE \cong \triangle CRA$ , then  $\triangle A \cong \triangle E$  by CPCTC.







Computer programmers use programming language and detailed plans to design computer software. They often use flowcharts to plan the logic in programs. Were you able to follow the logical steps in Example A? Sometimes a logical argument or a proof is long and complex, and a paragraph might not be the clearest way to present all the steps. A **flowchart** is a visual way to organize all the steps in a complicated procedure in proper order. Arrows connect the boxes to show how facts lead to conclusions.

Flowcharts make your logic visible so that others can follow your reasoning. To present your reasoning in flowchart form, create a **flowchart proof.** Place each statement in a box. Write the logical reason for each statement beneath its box. For example, you would write " $\overline{RC} \cong \overline{RC}$ , because it is the same segment," as

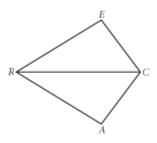
$$\overline{RC} \cong \overline{RC}$$

Same segment

Here is the same logical argument that you created in Example A in flowchart proof format.

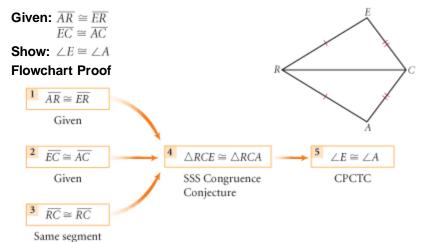
#### **EXAMPLE B**

In the figure below,  $\overline{EC} \cong \overline{AC}$  and  $\overline{ER} \cong \overline{AR}$ . Is  $\angle E \cong \angle A$ ? If so, write a flowchart proof to explain why.



### Solution

First, restate the given information clearly. It helps to mark the given information on the figure. Then state what you are trying to show.





In a flowchart proof, the arrows show how the logical argument flows from the information that is given to the conclusion that you are trying to prove. Drawing an arrow is like saying "therefore." You can draw flowcharts top to bottom or left to right.

Compare the paragraph proof in Example A with the flowchart proof in Example B. What similarities and differences are there? What are the advantages of each format?

Is this contraption like a flowchart proof?



**Developing Proof** In Chapter 3, you learned how to construct the bisector of an angle using a compass and straightedge. Now you have the skills to explain *why* the

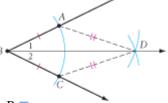
construction works, using deductive reasoning. As a group, create a flowchart proof that explains why the construction method works.

**Given:**  $\angle ABC$  with  $\overline{BA} \cong \overline{BC}$  and  $\overline{CD} \cong \overline{AD}$ 

**Show:**  $\overline{BD}$  is the angle bisector of  $\angle ABC$ 

When you are satisfied with your group's proof,

discuss how it is similar and different from Example B.





Keymalh.com

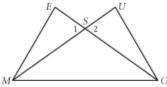
Practice Your Skill

**1. Developing Proof** Copy the flowchart. Provide each missing reason or statement in the proof.

Given:  $\overline{SE} \cong \overline{SU}$ 

 $\angle E \cong \angle U$ 

Show:  $\overline{MS} \cong \overline{OS}$ 



**Flowchart Proof** 





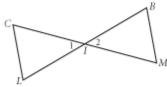
3 ∠1 ≃ ∠2 ?

**2.** *Developing Proof* Copy the flowchart. Provide each missing reason or statement in the proof.

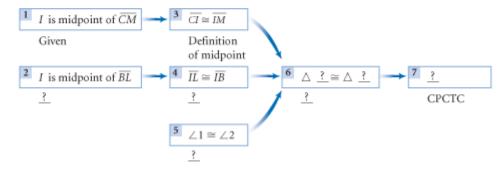
**Given:** *I* is the midpoint of  $\overline{CM}$ 

I is the midpoint of  $\overline{BL}$ 

Show:  $\overline{CL} \cong \overline{MB}$ 

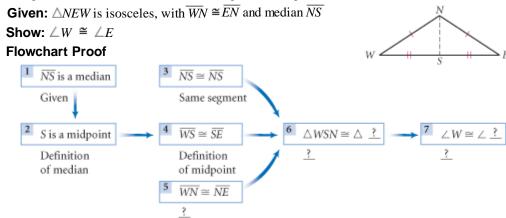


#### **Flowchart Proof**

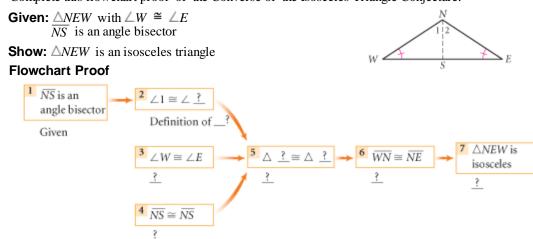


#### **Developing Proof** In Exercises 3–5, an auxiliary line segment has been added to the figure.

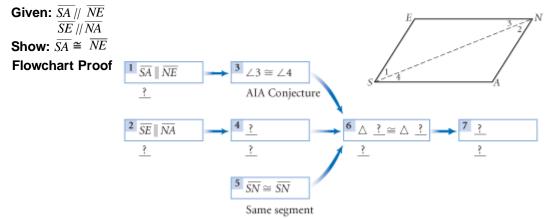
3. Complete this flowchart proof of the Isosceles Triangle Conjecture. Given that the triangle is isosceles, show that the base angles are congruent.



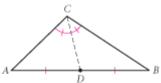
**4.** Complete this flowchart proof of the Converse of the Isosceles Triangle Conjecture.



**5.** Complete the flowchart proof. What does this proof tell you about parallelograms?

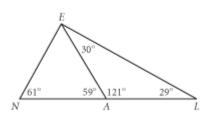


- **6. Developing Proof** Recreate your flowchart proof from the developing proof activity on page 239 and write a paragraph proof explaining why the angle bisector construction works.
- 7. Suppose you saw this step in a proof: Construct angle bisector CD to the midpoint of side AB in  $\triangle ABC$ . What's wrong with that step? Explain.

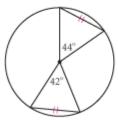


Review

**8. Developing Proof** Which segment is the shortest? Explain. (h)



**9. Developing Proof** What's wrong with this picture? Explain.

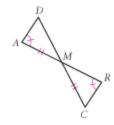


**Developing Proof** For Exercises 10–12, name the congruent triangles and explain why the triangles are congruent. If you cannot show that they are congruent, write "cannot be determined."

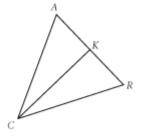
10.  $\overline{PO} \cong \overline{PR}$  $\triangle POE \cong \triangle ?$ 



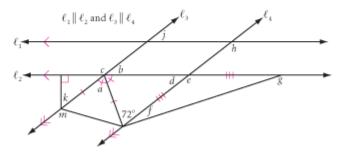
11. △ ? ≅ △ ? (1)



12.  $\overline{AC} \cong \overline{CR}$ ,  $\overline{CK}$  is a median of  $\triangle ARC$ .  $\triangle RCK \cong \triangle$ 



**13.** Copy the figure below. Calculate the measure of each lettered angle.



**14. Developing Proof** Which point of concurrency is equidistant from all three vertices? Explain why. Which point of concurrency is equidistant from all three sides? Explain why. **(h)** 

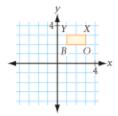
**15.** Samantha is standing at the bank of a stream, wondering how wide the stream is. Remembering her geometry conjectures, she kneels down and holds her fishing pole perpendicular to the ground in front of her. She adjusts her hand on the pole so that she can see the opposite bank of the stream along her line of sight through her hand. She then turns, keeping a firm grip on the pole, and uses the same line of sight to spot a boulder on her side of the stream. She measures the distance to the boulder and concludes that this equals the distance across the stream. What triangle congruence shortcut is Samantha using? Explain.



- 16. What is the probability of randomly selecting one of the shortest diagonals from all the diagonals in a regular decagon?
- 17. Sketch the solid shown with the red and green cubes removed. (h)



**18.** Sketch the new location of rectangle *BOXY* after it has been rotated 90°clockwise about the origin.



#### IMPROVING YOUR REASONING SKILLS

#### Pick a Card

Nine cards are arranged in a 3-by-3 array. Every jack borders on a king and on a queen. Every king borders on an ace. Every queen borders on a king and on an ace. (The cards border each other edge-to-edge, but not corner-to-corner.) There are at least two aces, two kings, two queens, and two jacks. Which card is in the center position of the 3-by-3 array?





The right angle from which to approach any problem is the try angle.

**ANONYMOUS** 

# **Proving Special Triangle** Conjectures

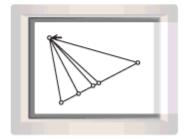
This boathouse is a remarkably symmetric structure with its isosceles triangle roof and the identical doors on each side. The rhombus-shaped attic window is centered on the line of symmetry of this face of the building. What might this building reveal about the special properties of the line of symmetry in an isosceles triangle?

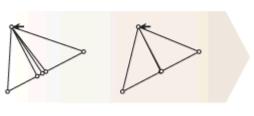


In this lesson you will investigate a special segment in isosceles triangles.

In the exercises, you will prove your conjectures.

First, consider a scalene triangle. In  $\triangle ARC$ ,  $\overline{CD}$  is the altitude to the base  $\overline{AR}$ ,  $\overline{CE}$  is the angle bisector of  $\angle ACR$ , and  $\overline{CF}$  is the median to the base  $\overline{AR}$ . From this example it is clear that the angle bisector, the altitude, and the median can all be different line segments. Is this true for all triangles? Can two of these ever be the same segment? Can they all be the same segment? Let's investigate.







For an interactive version of this sketch, see the **Dynamic Geometry Exploration** The Symmetry Line in an Isosceles Triangle atwww.keymath.com/DG [4]



#### Investigation

# The Symmetry Line in an Isosceles Triangle

#### You will need

- a compass
- a straightedge

Each person in your group should draw a different isosceles triangle for this investigation.

- Step 1 | Construct a large isosceles triangle on a sheet of paper. Label it *ARK*, with *K* the vertex angle.
- Step 2 Construct angle bisector  $\overline{KD}$  with point D on  $\overline{AR}$ . Do  $\triangle ADK$  and  $\triangle RDK$  look congruent? If they are congruent, then  $\overline{KD}$  is a line of symmetry.
- Step 3 With your compass, compare  $\overline{AD}$  and  $\overline{RD}$ . Is D the midpoint of  $\overline{AR}$ ? If D is the midpoint, then what type of special segment is  $\overline{KD}$ ?
- Step 4 Compare  $\angle ADK$  and  $\angle RDK$ . Do they have equal measures? Are they supplementary? What conclusion can you make?
- Step 5 Compare your conjectures with the results of other students. Now combine the two conjectures from Steps 3 and 4 into one.

#### **Vertex Angle Bisector Conjecture**

In an isosceles triangle, the bisector of the vertex angle is also  $\mathcal{L}$  and  $\mathcal{L}$ 



**Developing Proof** In the investigation you discovered that the symmetry of an isosceles triangle yields a number of special properties. Can you explain *why* this is true for all isosceles triangles?

As a group, discuss how you would prove the Vertex Angle Bisector Conjecture. Use the reasoning strategy of drawing a labeled diagram and marking what you know.

You will finish proving this conjecture in Exercises 4–6.

The properties you just discovered for isosceles triangles also apply to equilateral triangles. Equilateral triangles are also isosceles, although isosceles triangles are not necessarily equilateral.

You have probably noticed the following property of equilateral triangles: When you construct an equilateral triangle, each angle measures 60°. If each angle measures 60°, then all three angles are congruent. So, if a triangle is equilateral, then it is equiangular. This is called the Equilateral Triangle Conjecture.

If we agree that the Isosceles Triangle Conjecture is true, we can write the paragraph proof on the next page.



C-27

#### Paragraph Proof: The Equilateral Triangle Conjecture

We need to show that if AB = AC = BC, then  $\triangle ABC$  is equiangular. By the Isosceles Triangle Conjecture,

If AB = AC, then  $m \angle B = m \angle C$ .

If 
$$_{A}\overset{C}{\triangle}_{B}$$
, then  $_{A}\overset{C}{\triangle}_{B}$ 

If AB = BC, then  $m \angle A = m \angle C$ .

If 
$${}_{A}\overset{C}{\bigtriangleup}_{B}$$
, then  ${}_{A}\overset{C}{\bigtriangleup}_{B}$ .

If  $m \angle A = m \angle C$  and  $m \angle B = m \angle C$ , then  $m \angle A = m \angle B = m \angle C$ . &nbspSo.  $\triangle ABC$ is equiangular.

If 
$$_{A}\overset{C}{\triangle}_{B}$$
 and  $_{A}\overset{C}{\triangle}_{B}$ , then  $_{A}\overset{C}{\triangle}_{B}$ .

The converse of the Equilateral Triangle Conjecture is called the Equiangular Triangle Conjecture, and it states: If a triangle is equiangular, then it is equilateral. Is this true? Yes, and the proof is almost identical to the proof above, except that you use the converse of the Isosceles Triangle Conjecture. So, if the Equilateral Triangle Conjecture and the Equiangular Triangle Conjecture are both true, then we can combine them. Complete the conjecture below and add it to your conjecture list.

#### Equilateral/Equiangular Triangle Conjecture

C-28

Every equilateral triangle is 1, and, conversely, every equiangular triangle is 🕺.

The Equilateral/Equiangular Triangle Conjecture is a **biconditional** conjecture: Both the statement and its converse are true. A triangle is equilateral if and only if it is equiangular. One condition cannot be true unless the other is also true.



#### **EXERCISES**



#### Construction tools for Exercise 11

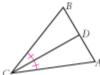
You will need

In Exercises 1–3,  $\triangle ABC$  is isosceles with  $\overline{AC} \cong \overline{BC}$ 

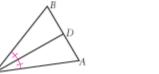
**1.** Perimeter  $\triangle ABC = 48$ AC = 18



**2.**  $m \angle ABC = 72^{\circ}$  $m\angle ADC = ?$  $m \angle ACD = ?$ 



**3.**  $m \angle CAB = 45^{\circ}$  $m \angle ACD = ?$ 





**Developing Proof** In Exercises 4–6, copy the flowchart. Supply the missing statement and reasons in the proofs of Conjectures A, B, and C shown below. These three conjectures are all part of the Vertex Angle Bisector Conjecture.

**4.** Complete the flowchart proof for Conjecture A.

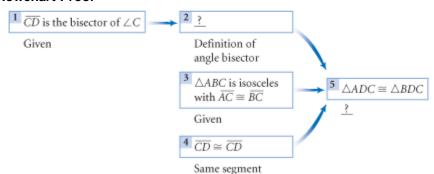
**Conjecture A:** The bisector of the vertex angle in an isosceles triangle divides the isosceles triangle into two congruent triangles.

**Given:**  $\triangle$  *ABC* is isosceles

 $\overline{AC} \cong \overline{BC}$ , and  $\overline{CD}$  is the bisector of  $\angle C$ 

**Show:**  $\triangle ADC \cong \triangle BDC$ 

#### Flowchart Proof



**5.** Complete the flowchart proof for Conjecture B.

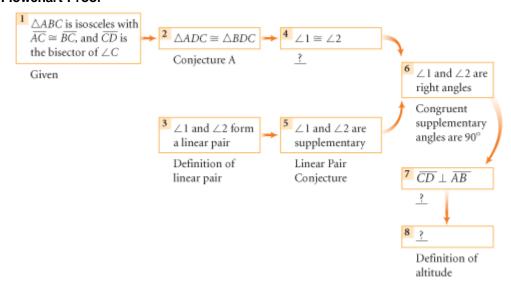
**Conjecture B:** The bisector of the vertex angle in an isosceles triangle is also the altitude to the base.

**Given:**  $\triangle ABC$  is isosceles

 $\overline{AC} \cong \overline{BC}$  and  $\overline{CD}$  bisects  $\angle C$ 

**Show:**  $\overline{CD}$  is an altitude

#### **Flowchart Proof**

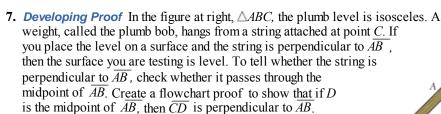


**6.** Create a flowchart proof for Conjecture C.

**Conjecture C:** The bisector of the vertex angle in an isosceles triangle is also the median to the base.

**Given:**  $\triangle ABC$  is isosceles with  $\overline{AC} \cong \overline{BC}$   $\overline{CD}$  is the bisector of  $\angle C$ 

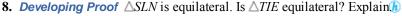
**Show:**  $\overline{CD}$  is a median

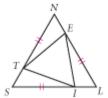


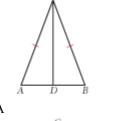
**Given:**  $\triangle ABC$  is isosceles with  $\overline{AC} \cong \overline{BC}$ 

D is the midpoint of  $\overline{AB}$ 

**Show:**  $\overline{CD} \perp \overline{AB}$ 







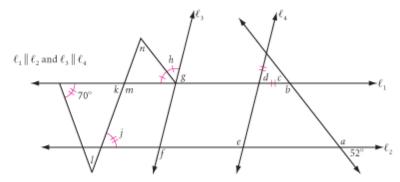


Builders in ancient Egypt used a tool called a *plumb level* in building the great pyramids. With a plumb level, you can use the basic properties of isosceles triangles to determine whether a surface is level.

- **9.** Developing Proof Write a paragraph proof of the Isosceles Triangle Conjecture.
- **10.** *Developing Proof* Write a paragraph proof of the Equiangular Triangle Conjecture.
- **11.** Construction Use compass and straightedge to construct a 30° angle.

#### Review

12. Trace the figure below. Calculate the measure of each lettered angle.



13. How many minutes after 3:00 will the hands of a clock overlap? (h)

- **14.** Find the equation of the line through point C that is parallel to side AB in  $\triangle ABC$ . The vertices are A(1, 3), B(4, -2), and C(6, 6). Write your answer in slope-intercept form, y = mx + b.
- 15. Sixty concurrent lines in a plane divide the plane into how many regions?
- **16.** If two vertices of a triangle have coordinates A(1, 3) and B(7, 3), find the coordinates of point C so that  $\triangle ABC$  is a right triangle. Can you find any other points that would create a right triangle?
- **17.** Application Hugo hears the sound of fireworks three seconds after he sees the flash. Duane hears the sound five seconds after he sees the flash. Hugo and Duane are 1.5 km apart. They know the flash was somewhere to the north. They also know that a flash can be seen almost instantly, but sound travels 340 m/s. Do Hugo and Duane have enough information to locate the site of the fireworks? Make a sketch and label all the distances that they know or can calculate.



**18.** Application In an earlier exercise, you found the rule for the family of hydrocarbons called alkanes, or paraffins. These contain a straight chain of carbons. Alkanes can also form rings of carbon atoms. These molecules are called cycloparaffins. The first three cycloparaffins are shown below. Sketch the molecule cycloheptane. Write the general rule for cycloparaffins  $(C_nH_2)$ .



#### IMPROVING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS

#### Number Tricks

Try this number trick.

Double the number of the month you were born. Subtract 16 from your answer. Multiply your result by 5, then add 100 to your answer. Subtract 20 from your result, then multiply by 10. Finally, add the day of the month you were born to your answer. The number you end up with shows the month and day you were born! For example, if you were born March 15th, your answer will be 315. If you were born December 7th, your answer will be 1207.

Number tricks almost always involve algebra. Use algebra to explain why the trick works.



# Exploration

# Napoleon's Theorem

n this exploration you'll learn about a discovery attributed to French Emperor Napoleon Bonaparte (1769–1821). Napoleon was extremely interested in mathematics. This discovery, called Napoleon's Theorem, uses equilateral triangles constructed on the sides of any triangle.



Portrait of Napoleon by the French painter Anne-Louis Girodet (1767–1824)

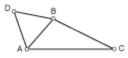
#### Activity

#### **Napoleon Triangles**

Step 1 | Open a new Sketchpad sketch. Draw  $\triangle ABC$ .



Step 2 Follow the Procedure Note to create a custom tool that constructs an equilateral triangle and its centroid given the endpoints of any segment.



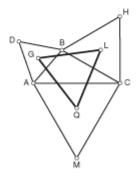
Step 3 Use your custom tool on  $\overline{BC}$  and  $\overline{CA}$ . If an equilateral triangle falls inside your triangle, undo and try again, selecting the two endpoints in reverse order.

Connect the centroids of the equilateral triangles. Triangle GQL is called the *outer Napoleon triangle* of  $\triangle ABC$ .

Drag the vertices and the sides of  $\triangle ABC$  and observe what happens.

#### Procedure Note

- **1.** Construct an equilateral triangle on  $\overline{AB}$ .
- **2.** Construct the centroid of the equilateral triangle.
- Hide any medians or midpoints that you constructed for the centroid.
- Select all three vertices, all three sides, and the centroid of the equilateral triangle.
- Turn your new construction into a custom tool by choosing Create New Tool from the Custom Tools menu.



Step 4

Here are some extensions to this theorem for you to explore.

Step 6

Construct segments connecting each vertex of your original triangle with the vertex of the equilateral triangle on the opposite side. What do you notice about these three segments? (This discovery was made by M. C. Escher.)

Step 7

Construct the *inner Napoleon triangle* by reflecting each centroid across its corresponding side in the original triangle. Measure the areas of the original triangle and of the outer and inner Napoleon triangles. How do these areas compare?



#### ES AND ISOSCELES TRIANGLES

In this example, the lines y = 3x + 3 and y = -3x + 3 contain the sides of an isosceles triangle whose base is on the x-axis and whose line of symmetry is the y-axis. The window shown is  $\{-4.7, 4.7, 1, -3.1, 3.1, 1\}.$ 



- 1. Find other pairs of lines that form isosceles triangles whose bases are on the x-axis and whose lines of symmetry are the y-axis.
- 2. Find pairs of lines that form isosceles triangles whose bases are on the y-axis and whose lines of symmetry are the x-axis.
- 3. A line y = mx + b contains one side of an isosceles triangle whose base is on the x-axis and whose line of symmetry is the y-axis. What is the equation of the line containing the other side? Now suppose the line v = mx + b contains one side of an isosceles triangle whose base is on the y-axis and whose line of symmetry is the x-axis. What is the equation of the line containing the other side?
- **4.** Graph the lines y = 2x 2,  $y = \frac{1}{2}x + 1$ , y = x, and y = -x. Describe the figure that the lines form. Find other sets of lines that form figures like this one.

Explore the questions above and summarize your findings. Your project should include

- ▶ Your answers to the questions above.
- ▶ A description of the patterns you found.
- Equations and graphs that are clearly labeled.

#### **CHAPTER**

#### V • CHAPTER 4 REVIEW • CHAPTER 4 REVIEW • CHAPTER 4 REVIEW •



REVIEW

In this chapter you made many conjectures about triangles. You discovered some basic properties of isosceles and equilateral triangles. You learned different ways to show that two triangles are congruent. Do you remember them all? Triangle congruence shortcuts are an important idea in geometry. You can use them to explain why your constructions work. In later chapters, you will use your triangle conjectures to investigate properties of other polygons.



You also practiced reading and writing flowchart proofs. Can you sketch a diagram illustrating each conjecture you made in this chapter? Check your conjecture list to make sure it is up to date. Make sure you have a clear diagram illustrating each conjecture.

#### **EXERCISES**

#### You will need



- 1. Why are triangles so useful in structures, such as the church described in the Architecture Connection below?
- **2.** The first conjecture of this chapter is probably the most important so far. What is it? Why do you think it is so important?
- **3.** What special properties do isosceles triangles have?

Claymethrom Practice Your Skills

- **4.** What does the statement "The shortest distance between two points is the straight line between them" have to do with the Triangle Inequality Conjecture?
- **5.** What information do you need in order to determine that two triangles are congruent? That is, what are the four congruence shortcuts?
- **6.** Explain why SSA is not a congruence shortcut.

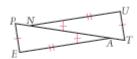
# Architecture CONNECTION

American architect
Julia Morgan (1872–1957)
designed many noteworthy
buildings, including Hearst
Castle in central California.
She often used triangular
trusses made of redwood and
exposed beams for strength
and openness, as in this
church in Berkeley, California,
which is now the Julia Morgan
Center for the Arts. Which
congruence shortcut ensures
that the triangular trusses are
rigid?



**Developing Proof** For Exercises 7–24, if possible, name the congruent triangles. State the conjecture or definition that supports the congruence statement. If you cannot show the triangles to be congruent from the information given, write "cannot be determined."





8. 
$$\triangle TOP \cong \triangle$$
 ?



**9.** 
$$\triangle MSE \cong \triangle$$
 ?



10. 
$$\triangle TIM \cong \triangle$$
 ?

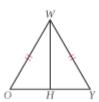




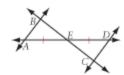
12. 
$$\triangle CGH \cong \triangle ?$$



13. 
$$\triangle \stackrel{?}{:} \cong \triangle \stackrel{?}{:}$$
Is  $\overline{WH}$  a median?



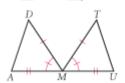
14. 
$$\overrightarrow{AB} \parallel \overrightarrow{CD}$$
  
 $\triangle ABE \cong \triangle ?$ 

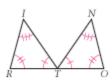


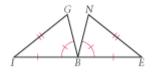
**15.** Polygon *CARBON* is a regular hexagon. 
$$\triangle ACN \cong \triangle ?$$



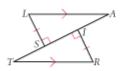
16. 
$$\triangle$$
 ?  $\cong$   $\triangle$  ?,  $\overline{AD}$   $\cong$  ?



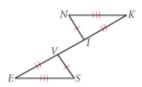




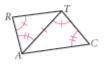
19. 
$$\triangle$$
 ?  $\cong$   $\triangle$  ?,  $\overline{TR}$   $\cong$  ?



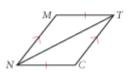
**20.** 
$$\triangle$$
 ?  $\cong$   $\triangle$  ?,  $\overline{EI}$   $\cong$  ?



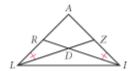
21. 
$$\triangle CAT \cong \triangle$$
 ?



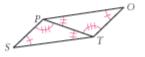
22. 
$$\triangle ? \cong \triangle ?$$
  
Is *NCTM* a parallelogram?



23.  $\overline{IA} \cong \overline{LA}$  $\triangle ? \cong \triangle ?$ 



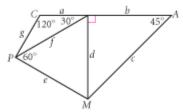
24. △ ๋ ≅ △ ๋ Is STOP a parallelogram?



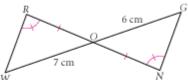
25. Developing Proof What's wrong with this picture? 26. Developing Proof What's wrong with this picture



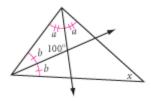
**27.** Quadrilateral *CAMP* has been divided into three triangles. Use the angle measures provided to determine the longest and shortest segments.



**26.** Developing Proof what s wrong with this pro-

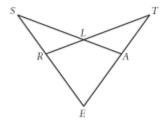


**28.** The measure of an angle formed by the bisectors of two angles in a triangle, as shown below, is 100°. What is angle measure *x*?

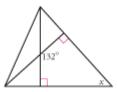


**Developing Proof** In Exercises 29 and 30, decide whether there is enough information to prove congruence. If there is, write a proof. If not, explain what is missing.

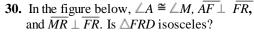
**29.** In the figure below,  $\overline{RE} \cong \overline{AE}$ ,  $\angle S \cong \angle T$ , and  $\angle ERL \cong \angle EAL$ . Is  $\overline{SA} \cong \overline{TR}$ ?

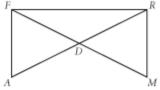


**31.** The measure of an angle formed by altitudes from two vertices of a triangle, as shown below, is  $132^{\circ}$ . What is angle measure x?



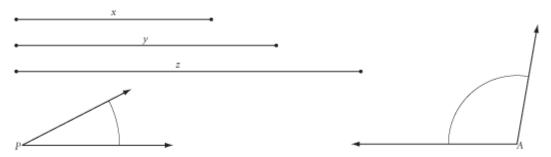
**32.** Connecting the legs of the chair at their midpoints, as shown, guarantees that the seat is parallel to the floor. Explain why.







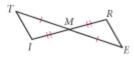
For Exercises 33 and 34, use the segments and the angles below. Use either patty paper or a compass and a straightedge. The lowercase letter above each segment represents the length of the segment.

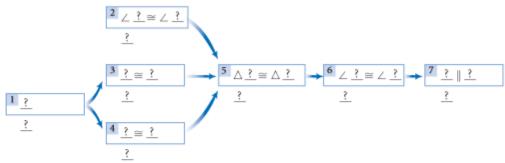


- **33.** Construction Construct  $\triangle PAL$  given  $\angle P$ ,  $\angle A$ , and AL = y.
- **34.** Construction Construct two triangles  $\triangle PBS$  that are not congruent to each other given  $\angle P$ , PB = z, and SB = x.
- **35.** Developing Proof In the figure at right, is  $\overline{TI} / | \overline{RE}$ ? Complete the flowchart proof or explain why they are not parallel.

**Given:** M is the midpoint of both  $\overline{TE}$  and  $\overline{IR}$ 

Show:  $\overline{TI} // \overline{RE}$ **Flowchart Proof** 

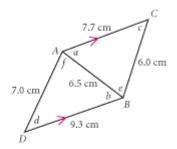




- 36. At the beginning of the chapter, you learned that triangles make structures more stable. Let's revisit the shelves from Lesson 4.1. Explain how the SSS congruence shortcut guarantees that the shelves on the right will retain their shape, and why the shelves on the left wobble.
- **37.** Construction Use patty paper or compass and straightedge to construct a 75° angle. Explain your method.



**38.** If  $m\angle CAD > m\angle CBD$ , arrange the six unknown angle measures in order from least to greatest.



#### TAKE ANOTHER LOOK

1. Explore the Triangle Sum Conjecture on a sphere or a globe. Can you draw a triangle that has two or more obtuse angles? Three right angles? Write an illustrated report of your findings. The section that follows, Take Another Look, gives you a chance to extend, communicate, and assess your understanding of the work you did in the investigations in this chapter. Sometimes it will lead to new, related discoveries.

- Investigate the Isosceles Triangle Conjecture and the Equilateral/Equiangular Triangle Conjecture on a sphere. Write an illustrated report of your findings.
- 3. A friend claims that if the measure of one acute angle of a triangle is half the measure of another acute angle of the triangle, then the triangle can be divided into two isosceles triangles. Try this with a computer or other tools. Describe your method and explain why it works.
- 4. A friend claims that if one exterior angle has twice the measure of one of the remote interior angles, then the triangle is isosceles. Use a geometry software program or other tools to investigate this claim. Describe your findings.



- **5.** Is there a conjecture (similar to the Triangle Exterior Angle Conjecture) that you can make about exterior and remote interior angles of a convex quadrilateral? Experiment. Write about your findings.
- **6.** Is there a conjecture you can make about inequalities among the sums of; the lengths of sides and/or diagonals of a quadrilateral? Experiment. Write about your findings.
- 7. Developing Proof In Chapter 3, you discovered how to construct the perpendicular bisector of a segment. Perform this construction. Now use what you've learned about congruence shortcuts to explain why this construction method works.

© 2008 Key Curriculum Press CHAPTER 4 REVIEW 255

- **8.** Developing Proof In Chapter 3, you discovered how to construct a perpendicular through a point on a line. Perform this construction. Use a congruence shortcut to explain why the construction works.
- 9. Is there a conjecture similar to the SSS Congruence Conjecture that you can make about congruence between quadrilaterals? For example, is SSSS a shortcut for quadrilateral congruence? Or, if three sides and a diagonal of one quadrilateral are congruent to the corresponding three sides and diagonal of another quadrilateral, must the two quadrilaterals be congruent (SSSD)? Investigate. Write a paragraph explaining how your conjectures follow from the triangle congruence conjectures you've learned.

#### Assessing What You've Learned

#### WRITE TEST ITEMS



It's one thing to be able to do a math problem. It's another to be able to make one up. If you were writing a test for this chapter, what would it include?

Start by having a group discussion to identify the key ideas in each lesson of the chapter. Then divide the lessons among group members, and have each group member write a problem for each lesson assigned to them. Try to create a mix of problems in your group, from simple one-step exercises that require you to recall facts to more complex, multistep problems that require more thinking. An example of a simple problem might be finding a missing angle measure in a triangle. A more complex problem could be a flowchart for a logical argument, or a word problem that requires using geometry to model a real-world situation.

Share your problems with your group members and try out one another's problems. Then discuss the problems in your group: Were they representative of the content of the chapter? Were some too hard or too easy? Writing your own problems is an excellent way to assess and review what you've learned. Maybe you can even persuade your teacher to use one of your items on a real test!



ORGANIZE YOUR NOTEBOOK Review your notebook to be sure it is complete and well organized. Write a one-page chapter summary based on your notes.



WRITE IN YOUR JOURNALWrite a paragraph or two about something you did in this class that gave you a great sense of accomplishment. What did you learn from it? What about the work makes you proud?



**UPDATE YOUR PORTFOLIO** Choose a piece of work from this chapter to add to your portfolio. Document the work, explaining what it is and why you chose it.

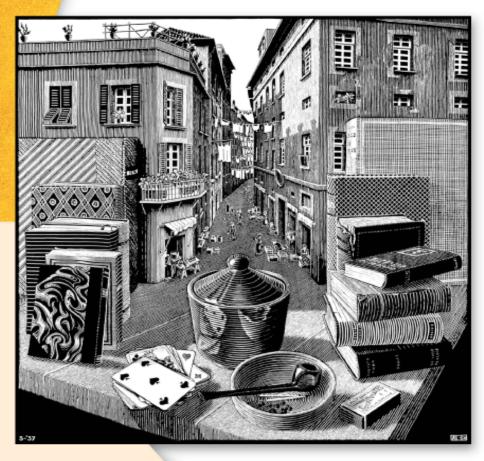


PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENTWhile a classmate, a friend, a family member, or your teacher observes, perform an investigation from this chapter. Explain each step, including how you arrived at the conjecture.

**CHAPTER** 

5

# Discovering and Proving Polygon Properties



The mathematicians may well nod their heads in a friendly and interested manner—I still am a tinkerer to them. And the "artistic" ones are primarily irritated. Still, maybe I'm on the right track if I experience more joy from my own little images than from the most beautiful camera in the world . . ."

Still Life and Street, M. C. Escher, 1967–1968 ©2002 Cordon Art B. V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.

#### **OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will

- study properties of convex polygons
- discover relationships among their angles, sides, and diagonals
- learn about real-world applications of special polygons





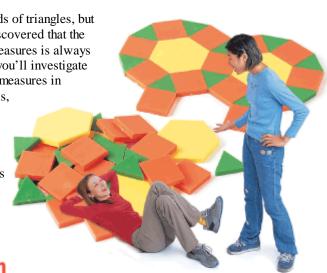
5.1

I find that the harder I work, the more luck I seem to have.

THOMAS JEFFERSON

# **Polygon Sum Conjecture**

here are many kinds of triangles, but in Chapter 4, you discovered that the sum of their angle measures is always 180°. In this lesson you'll investigate the sum of the angle measures in convex quadrilaterals, pentagons, and other polygons. Then you'll look for a pattern in the sum of the angle measures in any polygon.





### **Investigation**

#### Is There a Polygon Sum Formula?

You will need

protractor

For this investigation each person in your group should draw a different version of the same polygon. For example, if your group is investigating hexagons, try to think of different ways you could draw a hexagon.







Step 1

Step 2

Draw the polygon. Carefully measure all the interior angles, then find the sum.

Share your results with your group. If you measured carefully, you should all have the same sum! If your answers aren't exactly the same, find the average.

Step 3

Copy the table below. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 with different polygons, or share results with other groups. Complete the table.

Number of sides of polygon	3	4	5	6	7	8	 n
Sum of measures of angles	180°						

You can now make some conjectures.

#### **Quadrilateral Sum Conjecture**

C-29

The sum of the measures of the four interior angles of any quadrilateral is  $\perp$ .

#### Pentagon Sum Conjecture

C-30

The sum of the measures of the five interior angles of any pentagon is  $\perp$ .

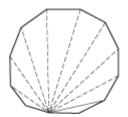
If a polygon has n sides, it is called an n-gon.

Step 4

Look for a pattern in the completed table. Write a general formula for the sum of the angle measures of a polygon in terms of the number of sides, n.

Step 5

Draw all the diagonals from one vertex of your polygon. How many triangles do the diagonals create? How many triangles do the diagonals create in the dodecagon at right? Try some other polygons. How do the number of triangles relate to n?



State your observations as a conjecture.

#### Polygon Sum Conjecture

C-31

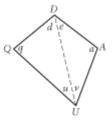
The sum of the measures of the *n* interior angles of an *n*-gon is  $\mathcal{L}$ 

Practice Your Skills



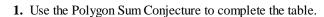
**Developing Proof** As a group, write a proof of the Quadrilateral Sum Conjecture using the diagram at right.

Does the Polygon Sum Conjecture apply to concave polygons? This question is left for you to explore as a Take Another Look activity. Reymallhoom



You will need

#### EXERCISES





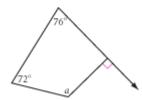
Number of sides of polygon	7	8	9	10	11	20	55	100
Sum of measures of angles								

2. What is the measure of each angle of an equiangular pentagon? An equiangular hexagon? Complete the table. **(h)** 

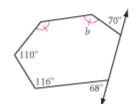
Number of sides of equiangular polygon	5	6	7	8	9	10	12	16	100
Measure of each angle of equiangular polygon									

In Exercises 3–8, use your conjectures to calculate the measure of each lettered angle.

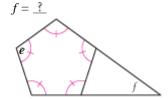
**3.** 
$$a = 1$$



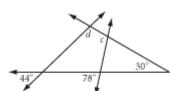
**4.** 
$$b = ?$$



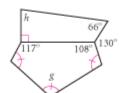
5. 
$$e = 1$$



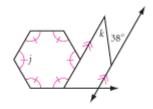
**6.**  $c = \frac{?}{}$ d = 1



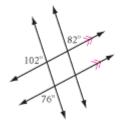
7.  $g = \frac{?}{h}$ h = ?

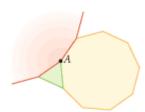


**8.**  $j = \frac{?}{}$ k = ?

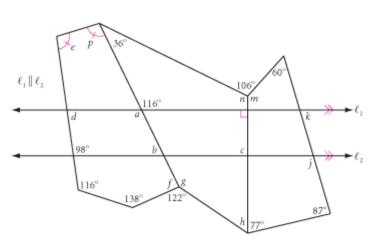


- 9. Developing Proof What's wrong 10. Developing Proof What's 11. Three regular polygons meet with this picture?
  - wrong with this picture?
- at point A. How many sides does the largest polygon have?





- 12. Developing Proof Trace the figure at right. Calculate each lettered angle measure. Explain how you determined the measures of angles d, e, and f.
- 13. How many sides does a polygon have if the sum of its angle measures is 2700°? (h)
- 14. How many sides does an equiangular polygon have if each interior angle measures 156°? (h)



15. Archaeologist Ertha Diggs has uncovered a piece of a ceramic plate. She measures it and finds that each side has the same length and each angle has the same measure.

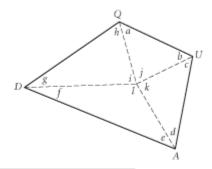
She conjectures that the original plate was the shape of a regular polygon. She knows that if the original plate was a regular 16-gon, it was probably a ceremonial dish from the third century. If it was a regular 18-gon, it was probably a palace dinner plate from the twelfth century.

If each angle measures 160°, from what century did the plate likely originate?



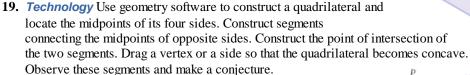
- **16.** *Application* You need to build a window frame for an octagonal window like this one. To make the frame, you'll cut identical trapezoidal pieces. What are the measures of the angles of the trapezoids? Explain how you found these measures.
- **17. Developing Proof** Restate your proof of the Quadrilateral Sum Conjecture from the developing proof activity on page 259. Then use this diagram to show another way to prove the same conjecture.

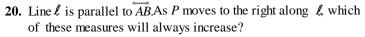






**18.** This figure is a detail of one vertex of the tiling at the beginning of this lesson. Find the missing angle measure x.





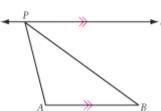
**A.** The distance *PA* 

**B.** The perimeter of  $\triangle ABP$ 

**C.** The measure of  $\angle APB$ 

**D.** The measure of  $\angle ABP$ 

**21.** Draw a counterexample to show that this statement is false: If a triangle is isosceles, then its base angles are not complementary.

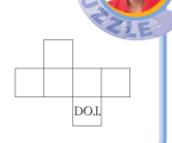


#### IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### Net Puzzle

The clear cube shown has the letters *DOT* printed on one face. When a light is shined on that face, the image of *DOT* appears on the opposite face. The image of *DOT* on the opposite face is then painted. Copy the net of the cube and sketch the painted image of the word, *DOT*, on the correct square and in the correct position.





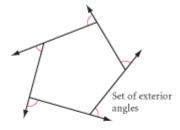


If someone had told me I would be Pope someday, I would have studied harder. POPE JOHN PAUL I

Best known for her participation in the Dada Movement, German artist Hannah Hoch (1889-1978) painted Emerging Order in the Cubist style. Do you see any examples of exterior angles in the painting?

# **Exterior Angles of** a Polygon

n Lesson 5.1, you discovered a formula for the sum of the measures of the interior angles of any convex polygon. In this lesson you will discover a formula for the sum of the measures of the exterior angles of a convex polygon.







#### Investigation

#### Is There an Exterior Angle Sum?

#### You will need

- a straightedge
- a protractor

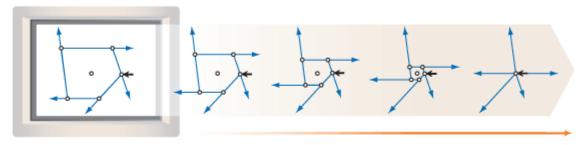
Let's use some inductive and deductive reasoning to find the exterior angle measures in a polygon.

Each person in your group should draw the same kind of polygon for Steps 1–5.

- Step 1 Draw a large polygon. Extend its sides to form a set of exterior angles.
- Step 2 Measure all the *interior* angles of the polygon except one. Use the Polygon Sum Conjecture to calculate the measure of the remaining interior angle. Check your answer using your protractor.
- Step 3 Use the Linear Pair Conjecture to calculate the measure of each exterior angle.
- Step 4 Calculate the sum of the measures of the exterior angles. Share your results with your group members.
- Step 5 Repeat Steps 1–4 with different kinds of polygons, or share results with other groups. Make a table to keep track of the number of sides and the sum of the exterior angle measures for each kind of polygon. Find a formula for the sum of the measures of a polygon's exterior angles.

#### **Exterior Angle Sum Conjecture**

For any polygon, the sum of the measures of a set of exterior angles is  $\underline{1}$ .





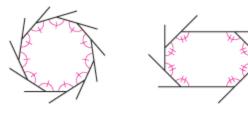
Step 8

For an interactive version of this sketch, see the **Dynamic Geometry Exploration**The Exterior Angle Sum of a Polygon at <a href="https://www.keymath.com/DG">www.keymath.com/DG</a>.

Step 6 Study the software construction above. Explain how it demonstrates the Exterior Angle Sum Conjecture.

Step 7 Using the Polygon Sum Conjecture, write a formula for the measure of each interior angle in an equiangular polygon.

Using the Exterior Angle Sum Conjecture, write the formula for the measure of each exterior angle in an equiangular polygon.





Using your results from Step 8, you can write the formula for an interior angle of an equiangular polygon a different way. How do you find the measure of an interior angle if you know the measure of its exterior angle? Complete the next conjecture.

#### **Equiangular Polygon Conjecture**

C-33

You can find the measure of each interior angle of an equiangular n-gon by using either of these formulas:  $\underline{?}$  or  $\underline{?}$ .

#### **EXERCISES**

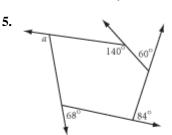


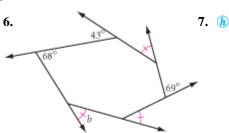


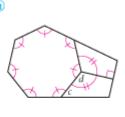
- 1. What is the sum of the measures of the exterior angles of a decagon?
- **2.** What is the measure of an exterior angle of an equiangular pentagon? An equiangular hexagon?

- 3. How many sides does a regular polygon have if each exterior angle measures 24°? (h)
- **4.** How many sides does a polygon have if the sum of its interior angle measures is 7380°?

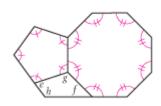
In Exercises 5–10, use your new conjectures to calculate the measure of each lettered angle.



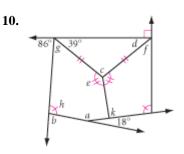




8.

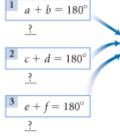


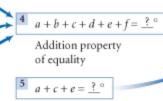
9.

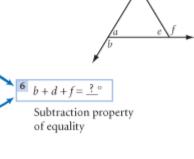


11. Developing Proof Complete this flowchart proof of the Exterior Angle Sum Conjecture for a triangle.

#### **Flowchart Proof**



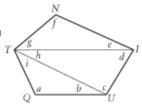




**12.** Is there a maximum number of obtuse exterior angles that any polygon can have? If so, what is the maximum? If not, why not? Is there a minimum number of acute interior angles that any polygon must have? If so, what is the minimum? If not, why not? (h)

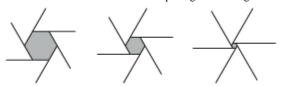
#### **Review**

13. **Developing Proof** Prove the Pentagon Sum Conjecture using either method discussed in the last lesson. Use whichever diagram at right corresponds with your method. If you need help, see page 261, Exercise 17.



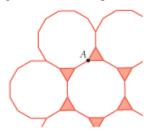
## Technology CONNECTION

The aperture of a camera is an opening shaped like a regular polygon surrounded by thin sheets that form a set of exterior angles. These sheets move together or apart to close or open the aperture, limiting the amount of light passing through the camera's lens. How does the sequence of closing apertures shown below demonstrate the Exterior Angle Sum Conjecture? Does the number of sides make a difference in the opening and closing of the aperture?

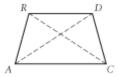




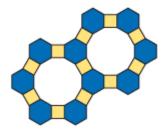
**14.** Name the regular polygons that appear in the tiling below. Find the measures of the angles that surround point *A* in the tiling.



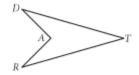
**16.** Developing Proof  $\angle RAC \cong \angle DCA$ ,  $\overline{CD} \cong \overline{AR}$ ,  $\overline{AC} / / \overline{DR}$ . Is  $\overline{AD} \cong \overline{CR}$ ? Why?



**15.** Name the regular polygons that appear in the tiling below. Find the measures of the angles that surround any vertex point in the tiling.



17. Developing Proof  $\overline{DT} \cong \overline{RT}$ ,  $\overline{DA} \cong \overline{RA}$ . Is  $\angle D \cong \angle R$ ? Why?



#### IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### Dissecting a Hexagon II

Make six copies of the hexagon at right by tracing it onto your paper. Find six different ways to divide a hexagon into twelve identical parts.



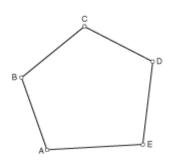


# Exploration

# **Star Polygons**

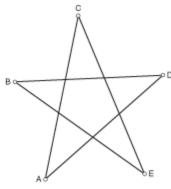
If you arrange a set of points roughly around a circle or an oval, and then you connect each point to the next with segments, you should get a convex polygon like the one at right. What do you get if you connect every second point with segments? You get a star polygon like the ones shown in the activity below.

In this activity you'll investigate the angle measure sums of star polygons.

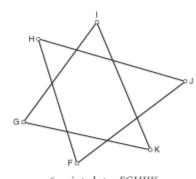


#### **Activity**

#### **Exploring Star Polygons**



5-pointed star ABCDE



6-pointed star FGHIJK

- Step 1 Draw five points A through E in a circular path, clockwise.
- Step 2 Connect every second point, to get  $A\overline{C}$ ,  $\overline{CE}$ ,  $\overline{EB}$ ,  $\overline{BD}$ , and  $\overline{DA}$ .
- Step 3 Measure the five angles A through E at the star points. Use the calculator to find the sum of the angle measures.
- Step 4 Drag each vertex of the star and observe what happens to the angle measures and the calculated sum. Does the sum change? What is the sum?
- Step 5 Copy the table on the next page. Use the Polygon Sum Conjecture to complete the first column. Then enter the angle sum for the 5-pointed star.

- Step 6 Repeat Steps 1–5 for a 6-pointed star. Enter the angle sum in the table. Complete the column for each *n*-pointed star with every second point connected.
- Step 7 What happens if you connect every third point to form a star? What would be the sum of the angle measures in this star? Complete the table column for every third point.
- Step 8 Use what you have learned to complete the table. What patterns do you notice? Write the rules for *n*-pointed stars.

	Angle mea	Angle measure sums by how the star points are connected											
Number of star points	Every point	Every 2nd point	Every 3rd point	Every 4th point	Every 5th point								
5	540°	$\Rightarrow$											
6	720°												
7													

- Step 9 Let's explore Step 4 a little further. Can you drag the vertices of each star polygon to make it convex? Describe the steps for turning each one into a convex polygon, and then back into a star polygon again, in the fewest steps possible.
- Step 10 In Step 9, how did the sum of the angle measure change when a polygon became convex? When did it change?

This blanket by Teresa Archuleta-Sagel is titled My Blue Vallero Heaven. Are these star polygons? Why?





Imagination is the highest kite we fly. LAUREN BACALL

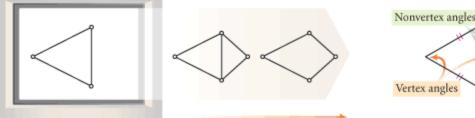
# Kite and Trapezoid **Properties**

Recall that a kite is a quadrilateral with exactly two distinct pairs of congruent consecutive sides.

If you construct two different isosceles triangles on opposite sides of a common base and then remove the base, you have constructed a kite. In an isosceles triangle, the vertex angle is the angle between the two congruent sides. Therefore, let's call the two angles between each pair of congruent sides of a kite the vertex angles of the kite. Let's call the other pair the nonvertex angles.







For an interactive version of this sketch, see the **Dynamic Geometry Exploration** Properties of Kites at www.keymath.com/DG | 4|



A kite also has one line of reflectional symmetry, just like an isosceles triangle. You can use this property to discover other properties of kites. Let's investigate.



#### Investigation 1

#### What Are Some Properties of Kites?

#### You will need

patty paper

a straightedge Step 1 In this investigation you will look at angles and diagonals in a kite to see what special properties they have.

On patty paper, draw two connected segments of different lengths, as shown. Fold through the endpoints and trace the two segments on the back of the patty paper.

Step 2

Compare the size of each pair of opposite angles in your kite by folding an angle onto the opposite angle. Are the vertex angles congruent? Are the nonvertex angles congruent? Share your observations with others near you and complete the conjecture.





Step 2

#### **Kite Angles Conjecture**

The  $\underline{1}$  angles of a kite are  $\underline{1}$ .

Step 3 | Draw

Draw the diagonals. How are the diagonals related? Share your observations with others in your group and complete the conjecture.



C-34

#### Kite Diagonals Conjecture

The diagonals of a kite are  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

What else seems to be true about the diagonals of kites?

Step 4

Compare the lengths of the segments on both diagonals. Does either diagonal bisect the other? Share your observations with others near you. Copy and complete the conjecture.

#### Kite Diagonal Bisector Conjecture

C-36

C-37

C-35

The diagonal connecting the vertex angles of a kite is the  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the other diagonal.

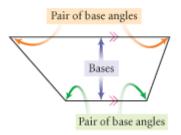
Step 5

Fold along both diagonals. Does either diagonal bisect any angles? Share your observations with others and complete the conjecture.



#### Kite Angle Bisector Conjecture

The  $\mathcal{L}$  angles of a kite are  $\mathcal{L}$  by a  $\mathcal{L}$ .



You will prove the Kite Diagonal Bisector Conjecture and the Kite Angle Bisector Conjecture as exercises after this lesson.

Let's move on to trapezoids. Recall that a **trapezoid** is a quadrilateral with exactly one pair of parallel sides.

In a trapezoid the parallel sides are called **bases**. A pair of angles that share a base as a common side are called **base angles**.

In the next investigation you will discover some properties of trapezoids.

# **Science**

A trapezium is a quadrilateral with no two sides parallel. The words trapezoid and trapezium come from the Greek

word trapeza, meaning table. There are bones in your wrists that anatomists call trapezoid and trapezium because of their geometric shapes.







#### Investigation 2

#### What Are Some Properties of Trapezoids?

#### You will need

- a double-edged straightedge
- a protractor
- a compass



This is a view inside a deflating hot-air balloon. Notice the trapezoidal panels that make up the balloon.

- Use the two edges of your straightedge to draw parallel segments of unequal Step 1 length. Draw two nonparallel sides connecting them to make a trapezoid.
- Step 2 Use your protractor to find the sum of the measures of each pair of consecutive angles between the parallel bases. What do you notice about this sum? Share your observations with your group.



Step 3 Copy and complete the conjecture.

#### **Trapezoid Consecutive Angles Conjecture**

C-38

The consecutive angles between the bases of a trapezoid are 1.

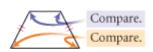
Recall from Chapter 3 that a trapezoid whose two nonparallel sides are the same length is called an isosceles trapezoid. Next, you will discover a few properties of isosceles trapezoids.



Like kites, isosceles trapezoids have one line of reflectional symmetry. Through what points does the line of symmetry pass?

Step 4 Use both edges of your straightedge to draw parallel lines. Using your compass, construct two congruent, nonparallel segments. Connect the four segments to make an isosceles trapezoid.

Step 5 Measure each pair of base angles. What do you notice about the pair of base angles in each trapezoid? Compare your observations with others near you.



Step 6 Copy and complete the conjecture.

#### Isosceles Trapezoid Conjecture

C-39

The base angles of an isosceles trapezoid are  $\perp$ .

What other parts of an isosceles trapezoid are congruent? Let's continue.

Step 7 Draw both diagonals. Compare their lengths. Share your observations with others near you.



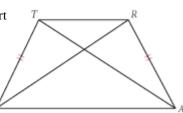
Step 8 Copy and complete the conjecture.

#### Isosceles Trapezoid Diagonals Conjecture

The diagonals of an isosceles trapezoid are 1.



**Developing Proof** As a group, write a flowchart proof that shows how the Isosceles Trapezoid Diagonals Conjecture follows logically from the Isosceles Trapezoid Conjecture. Use the diagram at right and a method for making the triangles easier to see. If you need help, see page 232, Example B.



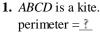


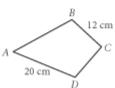
#### You will need EXERCISES



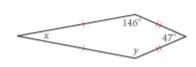
Use your new conjectures to find the missing measures.



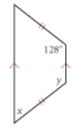




**2.** 
$$x = \frac{?}{?}$$
  $y = \frac{?}{?}$ 

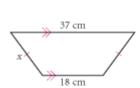


3. 
$$x = \frac{?}{?}$$

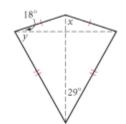


**4.** x = ?

perimeter = 85cm

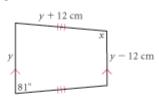


**5.**  $x = \frac{?}{?}$   $y = \frac{?}{?}$ 



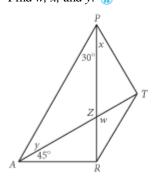
**6.**  $x = \frac{?}{?}$   $y = \frac{?}{?}$ 

perimeter = 164 cm

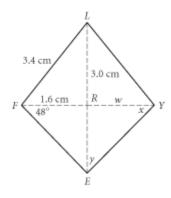


7. ARTP is an isosceles trapezoid with RA = PT.

Find w, x, and y.



**8.** FLYE is a kite with FL = LY. Find w, x, and y.

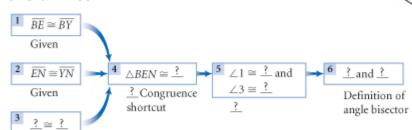


**9.** Copy and complete the flowchart to show how the Kite Angle Bisector Conjecture follows logically from one of the triangle congruence conjectures.

**Given:** Kite BENY with  $\overline{BE} \cong \overline{BY}$ ,  $\overline{EN} \cong \overline{YN}$ 

Show:  $\overline{BN}$  bisects  $\angle B$   $\overline{BN}$  bisects  $\angle N$ 

Flowchart Proof



Same segment

- 10. Write a paragraph proof or flowchart proof of the Kite Diagonal Bisector Conjecture. Either show how it follows logically from the Kite Angle Bisector Conjecture that you just proved, or how it follows logically from the Converse of the Perpendicular Bisector Conjecture.
- **11.** Sketch and label kite *KITE* with vertex angles  $\angle K$  and  $\angle T$  and KI > TE. Which angles are congruent?

- 12. Sketch and label trapezoid QUIZ with one base  $\overline{QU}$ . What is the other base? Name the two pairs of base angles.
- **13.** Sketch and label isosceles trapezoid SHOW with one base  $\overline{SH}$ . What is the other base? Name the two pairs of base angles. Name the two sides of equal length.

In Exercises 14–16, use the properties of kites and trapezoids to construct each figure. You may use either patty paper or a compass and a straightedge.

**14.** *Construction* Construct kite *BENF* given sides  $\overline{BE}$  and  $\overline{EN}$  and diagonal  $\overline{BN}$ . How many different kites are possible?



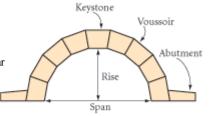
15. Construction Given  $\angle W$ ,  $\angle I$ , base  $\overline{WI}$ , and nonparallel side  $\overline{IS}$ , construct trapezoid  $\overline{WISH}$ .

**16.** Construction Construct a trapezoid *BONE* with  $\overline{BO}$  //  $\overline{NE}$ . How many different trapezoids can you construct?



# Architecture CONNECTION

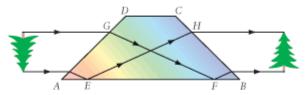
The Romans used the classical arch design in bridges, aqueducts, and buildings in the early centuries of the Common Era. The classical semicircular arch is really half of a regular polygon built with wedge-shaped blocks whose faces are isosceles trapezoids. Each block supports the blocks surrounding it.



**17.** *Application* The inner edge of the arch in the diagram above right is half of a regular 18-gon. Calculate the measures of all the angles in the nine isosceles trapezoids making up the arch. Then use your geometry tools to accurately draw a ninestone arch like the one shown.



This carton is shaped like an isosceles trapezoid block, like the voussoirs used in the arch above. **18.** The figure below shows the path of light through a trapezoidal prism and how an image is inverted. For the prism to work as shown, the trapezoid must be isosceles,  $\angle AGF$  must be congruent to  $\angle BHE$ , and  $G\overline{F}$  must be congruent to  $E\overline{H}$ . Show that if these conditions are met, then  $A\overline{G}$  will be congruent to  $\overline{BH}$ .

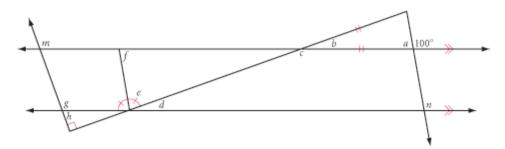




The magnifying lenses of binoculars invert the objects you view through them, so trapezoidal prisms are used to flip the inverted images right-side-up again.

#### Review

**19.** *Developing Proof* Trace the figure below. Calculate the measure of each lettered angle. Explain how you determined measures e and g.



#### IMPROVING YOUR REASONING SKILLS

#### How Did the Farmer Get to the Other Side?

A farmer was taking her pet rabbit, a basket of prize-winning baby carrots, and her small—but hungry—rabbit-chasing dog to town. She came to a river and realized she had a problem. The little boat she found tied to the pier was big enough to carry only herself and one of the three possessions. She couldn't leave her dog on the bank with the little rabbit (the dog would frighten the poor rabbit), and she couldn't leave the rabbit alone with the carrots (the rabbit would eat all the carrots). But she still had to figure out how to cross the river safely with one possession at a time. How could she move back and forth across the river to get the three possessions safely to the other side?



Research is formalized curiosity. It is poking and prying with a purpose. ZORA NEALE HURSTON

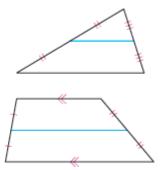
You will need

patty paper

# **Properties** of Midsegments

As you learned in Chapter 3, the segment connecting the midpoints of two sides of a triangle is a midsegment of the triangle. The segment connecting the midpoints of the two nonparallel sides of a trapezoid is also called the midsegment of the trapezoid.

In this lesson you will discover special properties of midsegments.





#### Investigation 1

#### **Triangle Midsegment Properties**

In this investigation you will discover two properties of triangle midsegments. Each person in your group can investigate a different triangle.







Step 1





Step 3

Step 1

Draw a triangle on a piece of patty paper. Pinch the patty paper to locate midpoints of the sides. Draw the midsegments. You should now have four small triangles.

Step 2 Step 3 Place a second piece of patty paper over the first and copy one of the four triangles.

Compare all four triangles by sliding the copy of one small triangle over the other three triangles. Compare your results with the results of your group. Copy and complete the conjecture.

#### Three Midsegments Conjecture

C-41

The three midsegments of a triangle divide it into 1.

Step 4

Mark all the congruent angles on the original patty paper. If you find it too cluttered, redraw the original triangle Third side on regular paper with just one midsegment, as in the diagram at right, and then mark all the congruent angles. Using the Corresponding Angles Midsegment Conjecture or its converse, what conclusions can you make about a midsegment and the large triangle's third side?

Compare the length of the midsegment to the large triangle's third side. How do Step 5 they relate? Copy and complete the conjecture.

### **Triangle Midsegment Conjecture**

C-42

A midsegment of a triangle is  $\frac{1}{2}$  to the third side and  $\frac{1}{2}$  the length of  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

In the next investigation you will discover two properties of the midsegment of a trapezoid.



# Investigation 2

# **Trapezoid Midsegment Properties**

You will need

- patty paper
- a straightedge

Each person in your group can investigate a different trapezoid. Make sure you draw the two bases perfectly parallel.







Step 1

Step 2

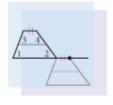
Step 3

- Draw a small trapezoid on the left side of a piece of patty paper. Pinch the paper Step 1 to locate the midpoints of the nonparallel sides. Draw the midsegment.
- Label the angles as shown. Place a second piece of patty paper over the first and Step 2 copy the trapezoid and its midsegment.
- Compare the trapezoid's base angles with the corresponding angles at the Step 3 midsegment by sliding the copy up over the original.
- Are the corresponding angles congruent? What can you conclude about the Step 4 midsegment and the bases? Compare your results with the results of other students.

The midsegment of a triangle is half the length of the third side. How does the length of the midsegment of a trapezoid compare to the lengths of the two bases? Let's investigate.

- On the original trapezoid, extend the longer base to the right by at least the Step 5 length of the shorter base.
- Slide the second patty paper under the first. Show the sum of the lengths of the Step 6 two bases by marking a point on the extension of the longer base.







Step 5

Step 6

Step 7

Step 7

How many times does the midsegment fit onto the segment representing the sum of the lengths of the two bases? What do you notice about the length of the midsegment and the sum of the lengths of the two bases?

Step 8

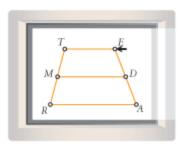
Combine your conclusions from Steps 4 and 7 and complete this conjecture.

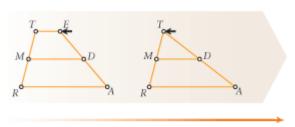
### **Trapezoid Midsegment Conjecture**

C-43

The midsegment of a trapezoid is  $\mathcal{L}$  to the bases and is equal in length to  $\mathcal{L}$ .

What happens if one base of the trapezoid shrinks to a point? Then the trapezoid collapses into a triangle, the midsegment of the trapezoid becomes a midsegment of the triangle, and the Trapezoid Midsegment Conjecture becomes the Triangle Midsegment Conjecture. Do both of your midsegment conjectures work for the last figure?







For an interactive version of this sketch, see the **Dynamic Geometry Exploration** Properties of the Midsegment of a Trapezoid at <a href="https://www.keymath.com/DG">www.keymath.com/DG</a>, <a href="https://www.keymath.com/DG">| <a href="https://www.ke



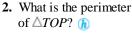
### **EXERCISES**

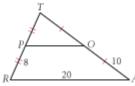
### You will need



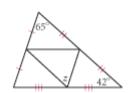
- 1. How many midsegments does a triangle have? A trapezoid have?
- for Exercises

  4.  $z = \frac{?}{h}$

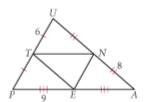




3. 
$$x = \frac{?}{y}$$
 $y = \frac{?}{?}$ 

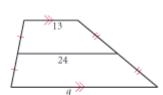


**5.** What is the perimeter of  $\triangle TEN$ ?



**6.** m = ?n = ?p = ?36 cm

48 cm



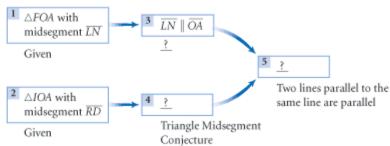
7. q = ?

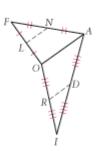
**8.** Developing Proof Copy and complete the flowchart to show that  $\overline{LN} // R\overline{D}$ .

**Given:** Midsegment  $\overline{LN}$  in  $\triangle FOA$ 

Midsegment  $\overline{RD}$  in  $\triangle IOA$ 

Show:  $\overline{LN} / / \overline{RD}$ **Flowchart Proof** 





- **9.** Construction When you connected the midpoints of the three sides of a triangle in Investigation 1, you created four congruent triangles. Draw a quadrilateral on patty paper and pinch the paper to locate the midpoints of the four sides. Connect the midpoints to form a quadrilateral. What special type of quadrilateral do you get when you connect the midpoints? Use the Triangle Midsegment Conjecture to explain your answer. **(h)**
- 10. Deep in a tropical rain forest, archaeologist Ertha Diggs and her assistant researchers have uncovered a square-based truncated pyramid (a square pyramid with the top part removed). The four lateral faces are isosceles trapezoids. A line of darker mortar runs along the midsegment of each lateral face. Ertha and her co-workers make some measurements and find that one of these midsegments measures 41 meters, and each bottom base measures 52 meters. Now that they have this information. Ertha and her team can calculate the length of the top base without having to climb up and measure it. Can you? What is the length of the top edge? How do you know?



11. Ladie and Casey pride themselves on their estimation skills and take turns estimating distances. Casey claims that two large redwood trees visible from where they are sitting are 180 feet apart, and Ladie says they are 275 feet apart.



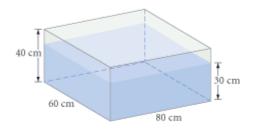
The problem is, they can't measure the distance to see whose estimate is better, because their cabin is located

between the trees. All of a sudden, Ladie recalls her geometry: "Oh yeah, the Triangle Midsegment Conjecture!" She collects a tape measure, a hammer, and some wooden stakes. What is she going to do?

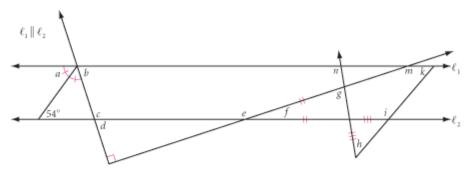


### Review

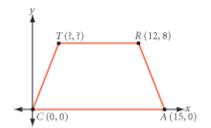
12. The 40-by-60-by-80 cm sealed rectangular container shown at right is resting on its largest face. It is filled with a liquid to a height of 30 cm. Sketch the container resting on its smallest face. Show the height of the liquid in this new position. Explain your method.



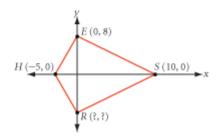
- 13. Developing Proof Write the converse of this statement: If exactly one diagonal bisects a pair of opposite angles of a quadrilateral, then the quadrilateral is a kite. Is the converse true? Is the original statement true? If either conjecture is not true, sketch a counterexample.
- **14.** *Developing Proof* Trace the figure below. Calculate the measure of each lettered angle. Explain how you determined the measures h and k.



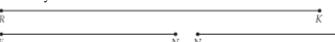
**15.** *CART* is an isosceles trapezoid. What are the coordinates of point T?

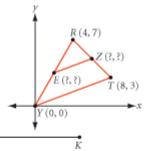


**16.** HRSE is a kite. What are the coordinates of point R?



- 17. Find the coordinates of midpoints E and Z. Show that the slope of the line containing midsegment  $\overline{EZ}$  is equal to the slope of the line containing  $\overline{YT}$ .
- **18.** *Construction* Use the kite properties you discovered in Lesson 5.3 to construct kite FRNK given diagonals  $\overline{RK}$  and  $\overline{FN}$  and side  $\overline{NK}$ . Is there only one solution?





# project

### **BUILDING AN ARCH**

In this project you'll design and build your own Roman arch.









Arches can have a simple semicircular shape, or a pointed "broken arch" shape.

Horseshoe Arch

Basket Arch

Tudor Arch

Lancet Arch

In arch construction, a wooden support holds the voussoirs in place until the keystone is placed (see arch diagram on page 273). It's said that when the Romans made an arch, they would make the architect stand under it while the wooden support was removed. That was one way to be sure architects carefully designed arches that wouldn't fall!

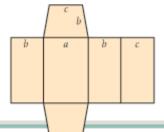
What size arch would you like to build? Decide the dimensions of the opening, the thickness of the arch, and the number of voussoirs. Decide on the materials you will use. You should have your trapezoid and your materials approved by your group or your teacher before you begin construction.

Your project should include

- ► A scale diagram that shows the exact size and angle of the voussoirs and the keystone.
- ► A template for your voussoirs.
- Your arch.



The arches in this Roman aqueduct, above the Gard River in France, are typical of arches you can find throughout regions that were once part of the Roman Empire. An arch can carry a lot of weight, yet it also provides an opening. The abutments on the sides of the arch keep the arch from spreading out and falling down.





If there is an opinion, facts will be found to support it.
JUDY SPROLES

# Properties of Parallelograms

In this lesson you will discover some special properties of parallelograms. A parallelogram is a quadrilateral whose opposite sides are parallel.

Rhombuses, rectangles, and squares all fit this definition as well. Therefore, any properties you discover for parallelograms will also apply to these other shapes. However, to be sure that your conjectures will apply to *any* parallelogram, you should investigate parallelograms that don't have any other special properties such as right angles, all congruent angles, or all congruent sides.

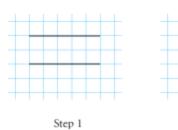
# Investigation

# **Four Parallelogram Properties**

You will need

- graph paper
- patty paper or a compass
- a double-edged straightedge
- a protractor

First you'll create a parallelogram.



Step 1

Using the lines on a piece of graph paper as a guide, draw a pair of parallel lines that are at least 6 cm apart. Using the parallel edges of your double-edged straightedge, make a parallelogram. Label your parallelogram *LOVE*.

Step 2

Step 2

Let's look at the opposite angles. Measure the angles of parallelogram *LOVE*. Compare a pair of opposite angles using patty paper or your protractor.

Compare results with your group. Copy and complete the conjecture.

### Parallelogram Opposite Angles Conjecture

C-44

The opposite angles of a parallelogram are ?.

Two angles that share a common side in a polygon are consecutive angles. In parallelogram LOVE,  $\angle LOV$  and  $\angle EVO$  are a pair of consecutive angles. The consecutive angles of a parallelogram are also related.

Step 3 Find the sum of the measures of each pair of consecutive angles in parallelogram *LOVE*.

Share your observations with your group. Copy and complete the conjecture.

### **Parallelogram Consecutive Angles Conjecture**

C-45

The consecutive angles of a parallelogram are \_?

Step 4 Describe how to use the two conjectures you just made to find all the angles of a parallelogram with only one angle measure given.

Step 5 Next let's look at the opposite sides of a parallelogram. With your compass or patty paper, compare the lengths of the opposite sides of the parallelogram you made.

Share your results with your group. Copy and complete the conjecture.

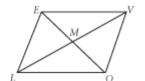
### Parallelogram Opposite Sides Conjecture

C-46

The opposite sides of a parallelogram are \_\_? \_ .

Step 6 Finally, let's consider the diagonals of a parallelogram. Construct the diagonals  $\overline{LV}$  and  $\overline{EO}$ , as shown below. Label the point where the two diagonals intersect point M.

Step 7 Measure LM and VM. What can you conclude about point M? Is this conclusion also true for diagonal *EO*? How do the diagonals relate?



Share your results with your group. Copy and complete the conjecture.

### **Parallelogram Diagonals Conjecture**

C-47

The diagonals of a parallelogram?.

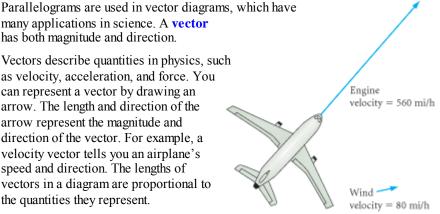


For an interactive version of this investigation, see the Dynamic Geometry Exploration Properties of Parallelograms at www.keymath.com/DG

has both magnitude and direction. Vectors describe quantities in physics, such as velocity, acceleration, and force. You can represent a vector by drawing an arrow. The length and direction of the arrow represent the magnitude and

many applications in science. A vector

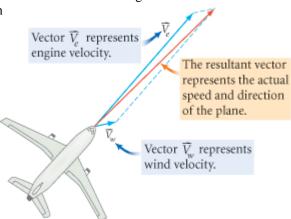
direction of the vector. For example, a velocity vector tells you an airplane's speed and direction. The lengths of vectors in a diagram are proportional to the quantities they represent.



In many physics problems, you combine vector quantities acting on the same object. For example, the wind current and engine thrust vectors determine the velocity of an airplane. The **resultant vector** of these vectors is a single vector

that has the same effect. It can also be called a vector sum. To find a resultant vector, make a parallelogram with the vectors as sides. The resultant vector is the diagonal of the parallelogram from the two vectors' tails to the opposite vertex.

In the diagram at right, the resultant vector shows that the wind will speed up the plane, and will also blow it slightly off course.





For an interactive version of this diagram, see the Dynamic Geometry Exploration Resultant Vector at www.keymath.com/DG laymath.com

# Practice Your Skills

### You will need

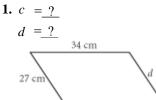
3. g = ?

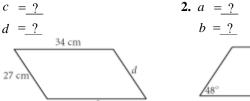
**6.** e = ?





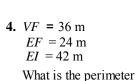
Use your new conjectures in the following exercises. In Exercises 1–6, each figure is a parallelogram.

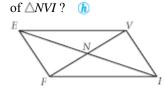






7. Construction Given side  $\overline{LA}$ , side  $\overline{AS}$ , and  $\angle L$ , construct

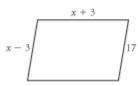


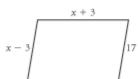


parallelogram LAST.



**5.** What is the perimeter?

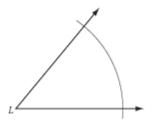












16 in.

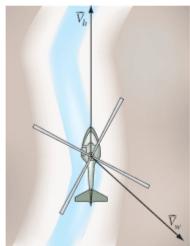
14 in.

**8.** Construction Given side  $\overline{DR}$  and diagonals  $\overline{DO}$  and  $\overline{PR}$ , construct parallelogram DROP.

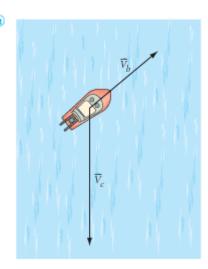


In Exercises 9 and 10, copy the vector diagram and draw the resultant vector.

9.



10. 🕧

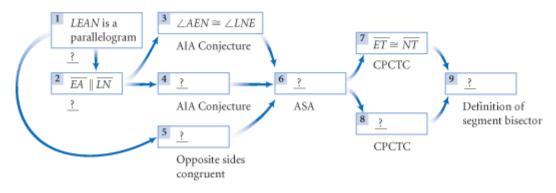


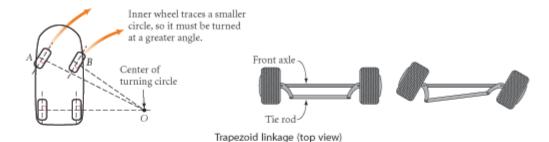
- **11.** Find the coordinates of point M in parallelogram PRAM.
- **12.** Draw a quadrilateral. Make a copy of it. Draw a diagonal in the first quadrilateral. Draw the *other* diagonal in the duplicate quadrilateral. Cut each quadrilateral into two triangles along the diagonals. Arrange the four triangles into a parallelogram. Make a sketch showing how you did it.
- M(?,?) A(b,c) R(a,0)
- **13. Developing Proof** Copy and complete the flowchart to show how the Parallelogram Diagonals Conjecture follows logically from other conjectures.

**Given:** *LEAN* is a parallelogram **Show:**  $\overline{EN}$  and  $\overline{LA}$  bisect each other



Flowchart Proof







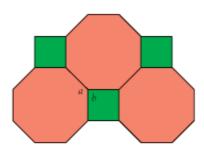
Quadrilateral linkages are used in mechanical design, robotics, the automotive industry, and toy making. In cars, they are used to turn each front wheel the right amount for a smooth turn.

14. Study the sewing box pictured here. Sketch the box as viewed from the side, and explain why a parallelogram linkage is used.

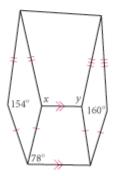


### Review

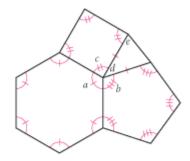
**15.** Find the measures of the lettered angles in this tiling of regular polygons.



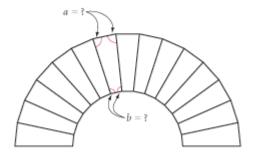
**17.** Find x and y. Explain.



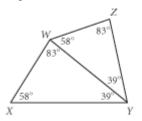
**16.** Trace the figure below. Calculate the measure of each lettered angle.



18. What is the measure of each angle in the isosceles trapezoid face of a voussoir in this 15-stone arch?



**19.** Developing Proof Is  $\triangle XYW \cong \triangle WYZ$ ? Explain.



**20.** Sketch the section formed when this pyramid is sliced by the plane.



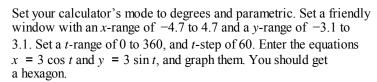
- **21.** *Developing Proof* Construct two segments that bisect each other. Connect their endpoints. What type of quadrilateral is this? Draw a diagram and explain why.
- **22. Developing Proof** Construct two intersecting circles. Connect the two centers and the two points of intersection to form a quadrilateral. What type of quadrilateral is this? Draw a diagram and explain why.

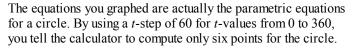


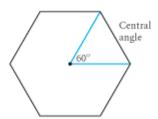
### **DRAWING REGULAR POLYGONS**

 $\mathbf{Y}$  ou can draw a regular polygon's central angle by extending segments from the center of &the polygon to its consecutive vertices. For example, the measure of each central angle of a hexagon is  $60^{\circ}$ .

Using central angles, you can draw regular polygons on a graphing calculator. This is done with parametric equations, which give the *x*- and *y*-coordinates of a point in terms of a third variable, or parameter, *t*.









- **1.** Choose different *t*-steps to draw different regular polygons. Find the measure of each central angle for at least three different *n*-gons.
- 2. What happens to the measure of each central angle as you draw polygons with more and more sides?
- **3.** Experiment with rotating your polygons by choosing different *t*-min and *t*-max values. For example, set a *t*-range of –45 to 315, and then draw a square.
- **4.** Explain how to draw star polygons on your calculator (see p. 266).

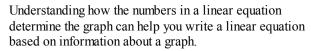
Your project should include

- ▶ Your answers to at least three of the questions above.
- A summary of your findings.

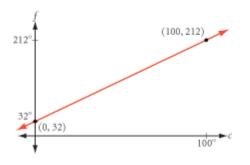
# **Writing Linear Equations**

A linear equation is an equation whose graph is a straight line. Linear equations are useful in science, business, and many other areas. For example, the linear equation  $f = 32 + \frac{9}{5}c$  gives the rule for converting a temperature from degrees

Celsius, c, to degrees Fahrenheit, f. The numbers 32 and  $\frac{9}{5}$  determine the graph of the equation.



The *y*-coordinate at which a graph crosses the *y*-axis is called the *y*-intercept. The measure of steepness is called the slope. Below are the graphs of four equations. The table gives the equation, slope, and *y*-intercept for each graph. How do the numbers in each equation relate to the slope and *y*-intercept?



$\pm$			9				
	y = -	3x + 4		1	1	y =	2x - 1
			-\	$\sqrt{}$		/	
	y = 2	+ 3x	-/	X		/	<u> </u>
			//		y	= -5	$+\frac{3}{2}x$
		*/	1		\		
		¥	×		4		

Equation	Slope	y-intercept		
y = 2 + 3x	3	2		
y = 2x - 1	2	-1		
y = -3x + 4	-3	4		
$y = -5 + \frac{3}{2}x$	3/2	-5		

In each case, the slope of the line is the coefficient of x in the equation. The y-intercept is the constant that is added to the x term.

In your algebra class, you may have learned about one of these forms of a linear equation in slope-intercept form:

y = mx + b, where m is the slope and b is the y-intercept

y = a + bx, where a is the y-intercept and b is the slope

### ALGEBRA SKILLS 5 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 5 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 5 • USING

The only difference between these two forms is the order of the x term and the constant term. For example, the equation of a line with slope -3 and y-intercept 1 can be written as y = -3x + 1 or y = 1 - 3x.

Let's look at a few examples that show how you can apply what you have learned about the relationship between a linear equation and its graph.

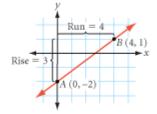
### EXAMPLE A

Find the equation of  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  from its graph.

### Solution

 $\overline{AB}$  has y-intercept –2 and slope  $\frac{3}{4}$ , so the equation is

$$y = \frac{3}{4}x - 2$$



### **EXAMPLE B**

Given points C(4, 6) and D(-2, 3), find the equation of  $\overline{CD}$ .

### Solution

Calculate the slope.

slope of 
$$\overrightarrow{CD} = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} = \frac{3 - 6}{-2 - 4} = \frac{-3}{-6} = \frac{1}{2}$$

Substitute the slope into the slope-intercept form of the line, y = mx + b.

$$y = \frac{1}{2}x + b$$

Use either given point, say (4, 6), to form an equation with one variable and solve.

$$6 = \frac{1}{2}(4) + b$$

$$6 = 2 + b$$

$$4 = b$$

Thus, the equation for  $\overline{CD}$  is  $y = \frac{1}{2}x + 4$ .

### **EXAMPLE C**

Find the equation of the perpendicular bisector of the segment with endpoints (2, 9) and (-4, -3).

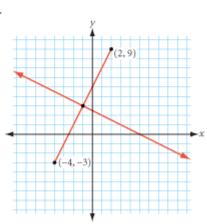


The perpendicular bisector passes through the midpoint of the segment.

$$x = \frac{2 + (-4)}{2} = \frac{-2}{2} = -1$$

$$y = \frac{9 + (-3)}{2} = \frac{6}{2} = 3$$

midpoint is (-1, 3)



### **NEGEBRA SKILLS 5 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 5 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 5 • USING**

Calculate the slope of the segment.

slope of segment = 
$$\frac{-3-9}{-4-2} = \frac{-12}{-6} = 2$$

The slope of the perpendicular bisector is the opposite reciprocal of the slope of the segment.

slope of perpendicular bisector =  $-\frac{1}{2}$ 

To find the y-intercept of the perpendicular bisector, either use the method in Example B or the slope formula. The slope between any point (x, y) on the perpendicular bisector and the calculated midpoint (-1, 3) must be  $-\frac{1}{2}$ .

$$\frac{y-3}{x-(-1)}=-\frac{1}{2}$$

Solve this equation for y to find the equation of the perpendicular bisector.

$$\frac{y-3}{x+1} = \frac{-1}{2}$$

$$(x+1)\left(\frac{y-3}{x+1}\right) = (x+1)\left(\frac{-1}{2}\right)$$

$$y-3 = \frac{-x-1}{2}$$

$$2(y-3) = 2\left(\frac{-x-1}{2}\right)$$

$$2y-6 = -x-1$$

$$2y = -x+5$$

$$y = -\frac{1}{2}x+2\frac{1}{2}$$

# **EXERCISES**

In Exercises 1–3, graph each linear equation.

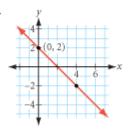
1. 
$$y = 1 - 2x$$

**2.** 
$$y = \frac{4}{3}x + 4$$

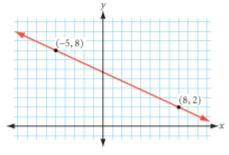
3. 
$$2y - 3x = 12$$

Write an equation for each line in Exercises 4 and 5.

4.



5.



In Exercises 6–8, write an equation for the line through each pair of points.

- 9. The math club is ordering printed T-shirts to sell for a fundraiser. The T-shirt company charges \$80 for the set-up fee and \$4 for each printed T-shirt. Using x for the number of shirts the club orders, write an equation for the total cost of the T-shirts.
- 10. Write an equation for the line with slope -3 that passes through the midpoint of the segment with endpoints (3, 4) and (11, 6).
- 11. Write an equation for the line that is perpendicular to the line y = 4x + 5 and that passes through the point (0, -3).

For Exercises 12–14, the coordinates of the vertices of  $\triangle WHY$  are W(0, 0), H(8, 3), and Y(2, 9).

- **12.** Find the equation of the line containing median  $\overline{WO}$ .
- 13. Find the equation of the perpendicular bisector of side  $\overline{HY}$
- **14.** Find the equation of the line containing altitude  $\overline{HT}$ .

### IMPROVING YOUR REASONING SKILLS

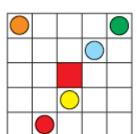
### Lunar Lockout

The goal of this puzzle is to move the red piece into the center square. All of the pieces move according to these two rules:

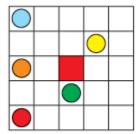
- A piece can move only horizontally or vertically, not diagonally.
- A piece continues to move until its path is blocked by another piece.

A piece can't move in a direction where there is no other piece to block its path. In the board at right, for example, you can move the blue piece up until it is stopped by the red piece, but you can't move it in any other direction. One possible solution to this puzzle is this sequence of moves: green right, green up, red down, red left.

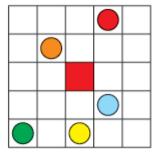
Try the puzzles below.

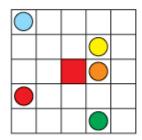


Beginner Puzzle



Intermediate Puzzle





Advanced Puzzle

Find links to online versions of Lunar Lockout and other games and puzzles by ThinkFun<sup>TM</sup> at www.keymath.com/DG.



You must know a great deal about a subject to know how little is known about it. LEO ROSTEN

# **Properties of Special Parallelograms**

The legs of the lifting platforms shown at right form rhombuses. Can you visualize how this lift would work differently if the legs formed parallelograms that weren't rhombuses?

In this lesson you will discover some properties of rhombuses, rectangles, and squares. What you discover about the diagonals of these special parallelograms will help you understand why these lifts work the way they do.



Step 2

Step 3

# Investigation 1

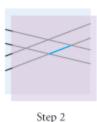
# What Can You Draw with the Double-Edged Straightedge?

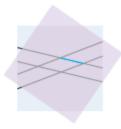
In this investigation you will discover the special parallelogram that you can draw using just the parallel edges of a straightedge.

### You will need

patty paper a double-edged straightedge







Step 3

On a piece of patty paper, use a double-edged straightedge to draw two pairs of Step 1 parallel lines that intersect each other.

> Assuming that the two edges of your straightedge are parallel, you have drawn a parallelogram. Place a second patty paper over the first and copy one of the sides of the parallelogram.

Compare the length of the side on the second patty paper with the lengths of the other three sides of the parallelogram. How do they compare? Share your results with your group. Copy and complete the conjecture.

### **Double-Edged Straightedge Conjecture**

If two parallel lines are intersected by a second pair of parallel lines that are the same distance apart as the first pair, then the parallelogram formed is a  $\perp$ . Recall that a **rhombus** is a parallelogram with four congruent sides, or an equilateral parallelogram. In Chapter 3, you learned how to construct a rhombus using a compass and straightedge, or using patty paper. Now you know a quicker and easier way, using a double-edged straightedge. To construct a parallelogram that is *not* a rhombus, you need two double-edged staightedges of different widths.



Now let's investigate some properties of rhombuses.

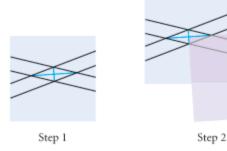


# Investigation 2

# Do Rhombus Diagonals Have Special **Properties?**

### You will need

- patty paper
- a straightedge
- a protractor (optional)



Step 1

Draw in both diagonals of the rhombus you created in Investigation 1.

Step 2

Use the corner of a patty paper or a protractor to measure the angles formed by the intersection of the two diagonals. Are the diagonals perpendicular?

Compare your results with your group. Also, recall that a rhombus is a parallelogram and that the diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other. Combine these two ideas into your next conjecture.

### **Rhombus Diagonals Conjecture**

C - 49

The diagonals of a rhombus are 1, and they 1.

Step 3

The diagonals and the sides of the rhombus form two angles at each vertex. Fold your patty paper to compare each pair of angles. What do you observe? Compare your results with your group. Copy and complete the conjecture.

### **Rhombus Angles Conjecture**

C-50

The  $\perp$  of a rhombus  $\perp$  the angles of the rhombus.

So far you've made conjectures about a quadrilateral with four congruent sides. Now let's look at quadrilaterals with four congruent angles. What special properties do they have?

Recall that a **rectangle** is a parallelogram with four congruent angles, or an equiangular parallelogram.

Here is a thought experiment. Why is each angle of a rectangle a right angle? The Quadrilateral Sum Conjecture says all four angles add up to 360°. The definition of a rectangle says they're congruent. So each angle must be 90°, or a right angle.





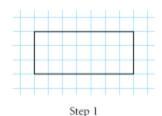
You will need graph paper

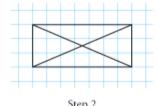
a compass

# Investigation 3

# Do Rectangle Diagonals Have Special **Properties?**

Now let's look at the diagonals of rectangles.





Step 1

Draw a large rectangle using the lines on a piece of graph paper as a guide.

Step 2

Draw in both diagonals. With your compass, compare the lengths of the two diagonals.

Compare results with your group. In addition, recall that a rectangle is also a parallelogram. So its diagonals also have the properties of a parallelogram's diagonals. Combine these ideas to complete the conjecture.

### Rectangle Diagonals Conjecture





# Career

A tailor uses a button spacer to mark the locations of the buttons. The tool opens and closes, but the tips always remain equally spaced. What quadrilateral properties make this tool work correctly?

What happens if you combine the properties of a rectangle and a rhombus? We call the shape a square, and you can think of it as a regular quadrilateral. So you can define it in two different ways.

A square is an equiangular rhombus.

Or

A **square** is an equilateral rectangle.

A square is a parallelogram, as well as both a rectangle and a rhombus. Use what you know about the properties of these three quadrilaterals to copy and complete this conjecture.



C-52

### **Square Diagonals Conjecture**

The diagonals of a square are  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}$ , and  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

For an interactive version of all the investigations in this lesson, see the

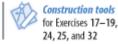
**Dynamic Geometry Exploration** Properties of Special Parallelogram at <a href="https://www.keymath.com/DG">www.keymath.com/DG</a>.



### **EXERCISES**

**Developing Proof** For Exercises 1–10, state whether each statement is always true, sometimes true, or never true. Use sketches or explanations to support your answers.

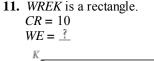


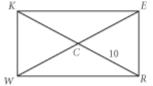


1. The diagonals of a parallelogram are congruent. (h)

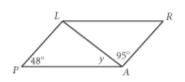
Practice Your Skill:

- **2.** The consecutive angles of a rectangle are congruent and supplementary.
- **3.** The diagonals of a rectangle bisect each other.
- **4.** The diagonals of a rectangle bisect the angles.
- **5.** The diagonals of a square are perpendicular bisectors of each other.
- **6.** A rhombus is a square.
- **7.** A square is a rectangle.
- **8.** A diagonal divides a square into two isosceles right triangles.
- 9. Opposite angles in a parallelogram are congruent.
- **10.** Consecutive angles in a parallelogram are congruent.











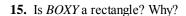
$$x = \frac{?}{?}$$

$$y = \frac{?}{?}$$

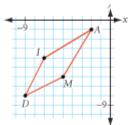


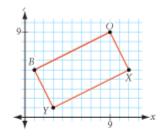
**Developing Proof** For Exercises 14–16, use deductive reasoning to explain your answers.

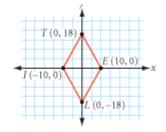
**14.** Is *DIAM* a rhombus? Why?



**16.** Is *TILE* a parallelogram? Why?



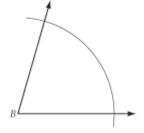




17. Construction Given the diagonal  $\overline{LV}$ , construct square LOVE.

Ž.

**18.** Construction Given diagonal  $\overline{BK}$  and  $\angle B$ , construct rhombus BAKE.

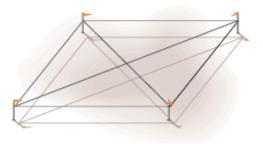




**19.** Construction Given side  $\overline{PS}$  and diagonal  $\overline{PE}$ , construct rectangle *PIES*.



- **20.** Developing Proof Write the converse of the Rectangle Diagonals Conjecture. Is it true? Prove it or show a counterexample.
- **21.** To make sure that a room is rectangular, builders check the two diagonals of the room. Explain what they check about the diagonals, and why this works.



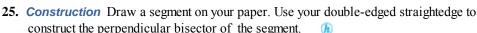


22. The platforms shown at the beginning of this lesson lift objects straight up. The platform also stays parallel to the floor. You can clearly see rhombuses in the picture, but you can also visualize the frame as the diagonals of three rectangles. Explain why the diagonals of a rectangle guarantee this vertical movement.

23. At the street intersection shown at right, one of the streets is wider than the other. Do the crosswalks form a rhombus or a parallelogram? Explain. What would have to be true about the streets if the crosswalks formed a rectangle? A square?

In Exercises 24 and 25, use only the two parallel edges of your double-edged straightedge. You may not fold the paper or use any marks on the straightedge.

**24.** Construction Draw an angle on your paper. Use your double-edged straightedge to construct the bisector of the angle.



26. Developing Proof Complete the flowchart proof below to demonstrate

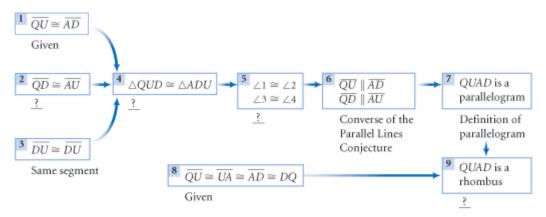
logically that if a quadrilateral has four congruent sides then it is a

rhombus. One possible proof for this argument has been started for you. **Given:** Quadrilateral QUAD has  $\overline{QU} \cong \overline{UA} \cong \overline{AD} \cong \overline{DQ}$ with diagonal  $\overline{DU}$ 

**Show:** *QUAD* is a rhombus



### **Flowchart Proof**



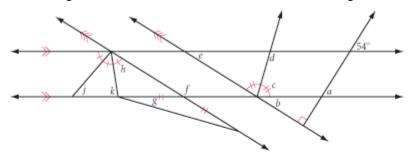
27. Developing Proof In the last exercise, you proved that if the four sides of a quadrilateral are congruent, then the quadrilateral is a rhombus. So, when we defined rhombus, we did not need the added condition of it being a parallelogram. We only needed to say that it is a quadrilateral with all four sides congruent. Is this true for rectangles? Your conjecture would be, "If a quadrilateral has all four angles congruent, it must be a rectangle." Can you find a counterexample that proves it false?

If not, prove this conjecture by showing that *ABCD* in the diagram at right is a parallelogram. Note the auxilliary line. **(h)** 



### Review

28. Trace the figure below. Calculate the measure of each lettered angle.



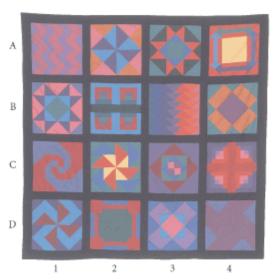
- **29.** Find the coordinates of three more points that lie on the line passing through the points (2, -1) and (-3, 4).
- **30.** Write the equation of the perpendicular bisector of the segment with endpoints (-12, 15) and (4, -3).
- **31.** ABC has vertices A(0, 0), B(-4, -2), and C(8, -8). What is the equation of the median to side  $\overline{AB}$ ?
- **32.** Construction Oran Boatwright is rowing at a 60° angle from the upstream direction as shown. Use a ruler and a protractor to draw the vector diagram. Draw the resultant vector and measure it to find his actual velocity and direction.



### IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

### A Puzzle Quilt

Fourth-grade students at Public School 95, the Bronx, New York, made the puzzle quilt at right with the help of artist Paula Nadelstern. Each square has a twin made of exactly the same shaped pieces. Only the colors, chosen from traditional Amish colors, are different. For example, square A1 is the twin of square B3. Match each square with its twin.





"For instance" is not a "proof." JEWISH SAYING

# **Proving Quadrilateral Properties**

Most of the paragraph proofs and flowchart proofs you have done so far have been set up for you to complete. Creating your own proofs requires good reasoning strategies and planning. One excellent reasoning strategy is "thinking backward." If you know where you are headed but are unsure where to start, start at the end of the problem and work your way back to the beginning one step at a time.

The firefighter below asks another firefighter to turn on one of the water hydrants. But which one? A mistake could mean disaster—a nozzle flying around loose under all that pressure. Which hydrant should the firefighter turn on?



Did you "think backward" to solve the puzzle? Thinking backward is a useful reasoning strategy to use when you write proofs which you may have already been using.

To help plan a proof and visualize the flow of reasoning, you can make a flowchart. As you think backward through a proof, you draw a flowchart backward to show the steps in your thinking.

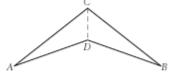
Work with a partner when you first try planning your geometry proof. Think backward to make your plan: Start with the conclusion and reason back to the given. Let's look at an example.

A concave kite is sometimes called a dart.

**EXAMPLE** 

**Given:** Dart ADBC with  $\overline{AC} \cong \overline{BC}$ ,  $\overline{AD} \cong \overline{BD}$ 

**Show:**  $\overline{CD}$  bisects  $\angle ACB$ 



Solution

**Plan:** Begin by drawing a diagram and marking the given information on it. Next, construct your proof by reasoning backward and using other reasoning strategies. Then convert this reasoning into a flowchart. Your flowchart should start with boxes containing the given information and end with what you are trying to demonstrate. The arrows indicate the flow of your logical argument. Your thinking might go something like this:

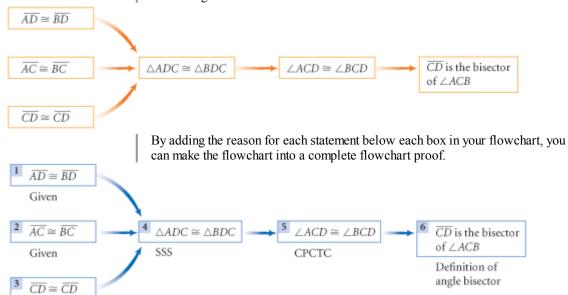
"I can show  $\overline{CD}$  is the bisector of  $\angle ACB$  if I can show  $\angle ACD \cong \angle BCD$ ."



"I can show  $\angle ACD \cong \angle BCD$  if they are corresponding angles in congruent triangles."



"Can I show  $\triangle ADC \cong \triangle BDC$ ? Yes, I can, by SSS, because it is given that  $\overline{AC} \cong \overline{BC}$  and  $\overline{AD} \cong \overline{BD}$ , and  $\overline{CD} \cong \overline{CD}$  because it is the same segment in both triangles."



Some students prefer to write their proofs in a flowchart format, and others prefer to write out the proof as an explanation in paragraph form. By reversing the reasoning in your plan, you can make the plan into a complete paragraph proof.

"It is given that  $\overline{AC} \cong \overline{BC}$  and  $\overline{AD} \cong \overline{BD}$ .  $\overline{CD} \cong \overline{CD}$  because it is the same segment in both triangles. So,  $\triangle ADC \cong \triangle BDC$  by the SSS Congruence Conjecture, and  $\triangle ACD \cong \triangle BCD$  by the definition of congruent triangles (CPCTC). Therefore, by the definition of angle bisectors,  $\overline{CD}$  is the bisector of  $\triangle ACB$ . Q.E.D."

# Language CONNECTION •

The abbreviation Q.E.D. at the end of a proof stands for the Latin phrase *quod erat demonstrandum*, meaning "which was to be demonstrated." This is a translation of the Greek phrase that Euclid used at the end of each of his proofs in the *Elements*.

Same segment



# **Investigation**

# **Finding the Square Route**

Here is a puzzle for you to solve that has nothing to do with square roots. In the puzzle grid at right, the goal is to find a route—a path—that starts at 1 in the upper left and ends at 100 in the lower right.

You can move to an adjacent square horizontally, vertically, or diagonally. In order to move, you must be able to add, subtract, multiply, or divide the number in the square you occupy by 2 or 5 to get the number in the new square. For example, if you happen to be in square 11, you could move to square 9 by subtracting 2, or to square 55 by multiplying by 5.

1	5	110	20	30
2	3	22	6	28
F4	27	8	14	19
20	17		55	95
18	12/	50	57	100

Step 1 Using this puzzle's rule for moving, explain why there are three possible first

Solve the puzzle—which route will take you from 1 to 100? Show it with arrows. Step 2

Think about any problem-solving strategies that were particularly helpful for solving this puzzle. How can these strategies help you in developing proofs?



### **EXERCISES**

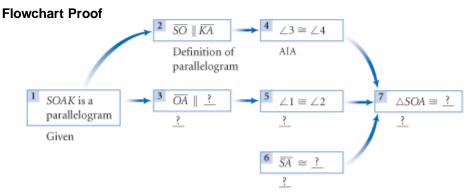
Developing Proof In Exercises 1–3, each conjecture has also been stated as a "given" and a "show." Any necessary auxiliary lines have been included. Complete a flowchart proof or write a paragraph proof.

1. Prove the conjecture: The diagonal of a parallelogram divides the parallelogram into two congruent triangles. **Given:** Parallelogram SOAK with diagonal  $\overline{SA}$ 

**Show:**  $\triangle SOA \cong \triangle AKS$ 

Step 3



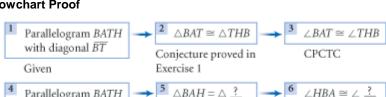


2. Prove the conjecture: The opposite angles of a parallelogram are congruent.

**Given:** Parallelogram *BATH* with diagonals  $\overline{BT}$  and  $\overline{HA}$ 

**Show:**  $\angle HBA \cong \angle ATH$  and  $\angle BAT \cong \angle THB$ 

### **Flowchart Proof**



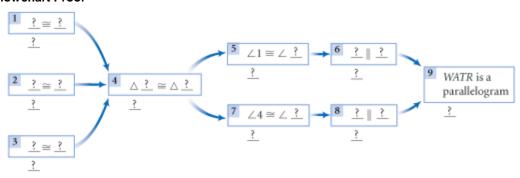
 $\triangle BAH = \triangle ?$ Parallelogram BATH with diagonal HA ?

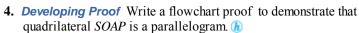
3. Prove the conjecture: If the opposite sides of a quadrilateral are  $\mathbb{R}$ congruent, then the quadrilateral is a parallelogram.

**Given:** Quadrilateral WATR, with  $\overline{WA} \cong \overline{RT}$  and  $\overline{WR} \cong \overline{AT}$ , and diagonal  $\overline{WT}$ 

**Show:** WATR is a parallelogram

### **Flowchart Proof**

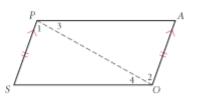




**Given:** Quadrilateral SOAP with  $\overline{SP} / \overline{OA}$  and  $\overline{SP} \cong \overline{OA}$ 

**Show:** *SOAP* is a parallelogram

5. The results of the proof in Exercise 4 can now be stated as a proved conjecture. Complete this statement beneath your proof: "If one pair of opposite sides of a quadrilateral are both parallel and congruent, then the quadrilateral is a 1."

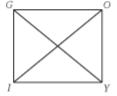


### **Developing Proof** For Exercises 6–9, prove the conjecture.

**6.** Conjecture: The diagonals of a rectangle are congruent.

**Given:** Rectangle *YOGI* with diagonals  $\overline{YG}$  and  $\overline{OI}$ 

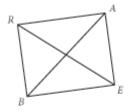
Show:  $\overline{YG} \cong \overline{OI}$ 



7. Conjecture: If the diagonals of a parallelogram are congruent, then the parallelogram is a rectangle. **(h)** 

**Given:** Parallelogram *BEAR*, with diagonals  $\overline{BA} \cong \overline{ER}$ 

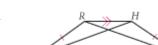
**Show:** *BEAR* is a rectangle



**8.** Isosceles Trapezoid Conjecture: The base angles of an isosceles trapezoid are congruent.

**Given:** Isosceles trapezoid *PART* with  $\overline{PA} // \overline{TR}$ .  $\overline{PT} \cong \overline{AR}$ , and  $\overline{TZ}$  constructed parallel to  $\overline{RA}$ 

Show:  $\angle TPA \cong \angle RAP$ 

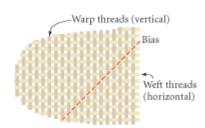


9. Isosceles Trapezoid Diagonals Conjecture: The diagonals of an isosceles trapezoid are congruent.

**Given:** Isosceles trapezoid *GTHR* with  $\overline{GR} \cong \overline{TH}$  and diagonals  $\overline{GH}$  and  $\overline{TR}$ 

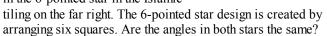
Show:  $\overline{GH} \cong \overline{TR}$ 

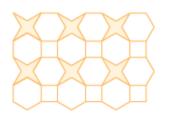
10. You have discovered that triangles are rigid, but parallelograms are not. This property shows up in the making of fabric, which has warp threads and weft threads. Fabric is constructed by weaving thread at right angles, creating a grid of rectangles. What happens when you pull the fabric along the warp or weft? What happens when you pull the fabric along a diagonal (the bias)?



### Review

11. Find the measure of the acute angles in the 4-pointed star in the Islamic tiling shown at right. The polygons are squares and regular hexagons. Find the measure of the acute angles in the 6-pointed star in the Islamic







**12.** A contractor tacked one end of a string to each vertical edge of a window. He then handed a protractor to his apprentice and said, "Here, find out if the vertical edges are parallel." What should the apprentice do? Help him.



- 13. Find the equations of the lines containing the diagonals of rhombus EQSI with vertices E(-3, 3), Q(2, 3), S(-1, -1), and I(-6, -1).
- **14.** Find the point of intersection of the lines  $y = \frac{2}{3}x 1$  and 3x 4y = 8.

- 15. The last bus stops at the school some time between 4:45 and 5:00. What is the probability that you will miss the bus if you arrive at the bus stop at 4:50?
- 16. The 3-by-9-by-12-inch clear plastic sealed container shown is resting on its smallest face. It is partially filled with a liquid to a height of 8 inches. Sketch the container resting on its middle-sized face. What will be the height of the liquid in the container in this position?

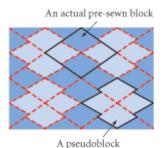


# project

### JAPANESE PUZZLE QUILTS

When experienced quilters first see Japanese puzzle quilts, they are often amazed (or puzzled?) because the straight rows of blocks so common to block quilts do not seem to exist. The sewing lines between apparent blocks seem jagged. At first glance, Japanese puzzle quilts look like American crazy quilts that must be handsewn and that take forever to make!

However, Japanese puzzle quilts do contain straight sewing lines. Study the Japanese puzzle quilt at right. Can you find the basic quilt block? What shape is it?



The puzzle quilt shown above is made of blocks of four different-color kites sewn into rhombuses.



Mabry Benson designed this puzzle quilt, Red and Blue Puzzle (1994). Can you find any rhombic blocks that are the same? How many different types of fabric were used?

The rhombic blocks are sewn together with straight sewing lines as shown in the diagram at left.

Now for your project: You will need copies of the Japanese puzzle quilt grid, color pencils or markers, and color paper or fabrics. Plan, design, and create a Japanese puzzle quilt out of paper or fabric.

- 1. To produce the zigzag effect of a Japanese puzzle quilt, you need to avoid pseudoblocks of the same color sharing an edge. How many different colors or fabrics do you need in order to make a puzzle quilt?
- **2.** How many different types of pre-sewn rhombic blocks do you need for a four-color Japanese puzzle quilt? What if you want no two pseudoblocks of the same color to touch at either an edge or a vertex?
- **3.** Can you create a four-color Japanese puzzle quilt that requires more than four different color combinations in the rhombic blocks?

Your project should include

- ▶ Your answers to at least two of the questions above.
- ► Your Japanese puzzle quilt made of paper or fabric.



In this chapter you extended your knowledge of triangles to other polygons. You discovered the interior and exterior angle sums for all polygons. You investigated the midsegments of triangles and trapezoids and the properties of parallelograms. You learned what distinguishes various quadrilaterals and what properties apply to each class of quadrilaterals.



Along the way you practiced proving conjectures with flowcharts and paragraph proofs. Be sure you've added the new conjectures to your list. Include diagrams for clarity.



How has your knowledge of triangles helped you make discoveries about other polygons?

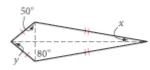


### **EXERCISES**

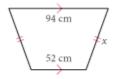
### You will need



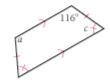
- 1. How do you find the measure of one exterior angle of a regular polygon?
- 2. How can you find the number of sides of an equiangular polygon by measuring one of its interior angles? By measuring one of its exterior angles?
- 3. How do you construct a rhombus by using only a ruler or double-edged straightedge?
- **4.** How do you bisect an angle by using only a ruler or double-edged straightedge?
- 5. How can you use the converse of the Rectangle Diagonals Conjecture to determine if the corners of a room are right angles?
- **6.** How can you use the Triangle Midsegment Conjecture to find a distance between two points that you can't measure directly?
- **7.** Find *x* and *y*.



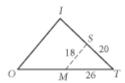
**8.** The perimeter is 266 cm. Find x.



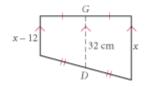
**9.** Find *a* and *c*.



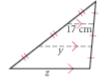
**10.**  $\overline{MS}$  is a midsegment. Find the perimeter of MOIS.



**11.** Find *x*.



**12.** Find y and z.

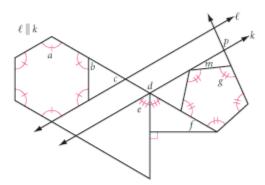


**13.** Copy and complete the table below by placing a yes (to mean always) or a no (to mean not always) in each empty space. Use what you know about special quadrilaterals.

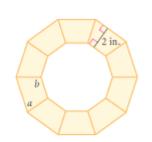
	Kite	Isosceles trapezoid	Parallelogram	Rhombus	Rectangle	Square
Opposite sides are parallel						
Opposite sides are congruent						
Opposite angles are congruent						
Diagonals bisect each other						
Diagonals are perpendicular						
Diagonals are congruent				No		
Exactly one line of symmetry	Yes					
Exactly two lines of symmetry						

**14.** *Application* A 2-inch-wide frame is to be built around the regular decagonal window shown. At what angles *a* and *b* should the corners of each piece be cut?

**15. Developing Proof** Find the measure of each lettered angle. Explain how you determined measures *e*, *f*, and *g*.



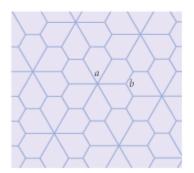
**16.** Archaeologist Ertha Diggs has uncovered one stone that appears to be a voussoir from a semicircular stone arch. On each isosceles trapezoidal face, the obtuse angles measure 96°. Assuming all the stones were identical, how many stones were in the original arch?

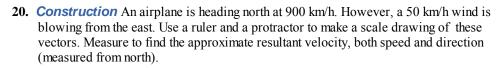




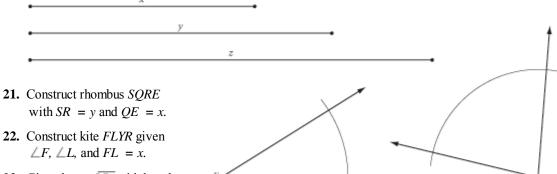
- **17.** Kite ABCD has vertices A(-3, -2), B(2, -2), C(3, 1), and D(0, 2). Find the coordinates of the point of intersection of the diagonals.
- 18. When you swing left to right on a swing, the seat stays parallel to the ground. Explain why.

**19.** Construction The tiling of congruent pentagons shown below is created from a honeycomb grid (tiling of regular hexagons). What is the measure of each lettered angle? Re-create the design with compass and straightedge.





**Construction** In Exercises 21–24, use the given segments and angles to construct each figure. Use either patty paper or a compass and a straightedge. The small letter above each segment represents the length of the segment.

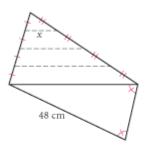


- 23. Given bases  $\overline{LP}$  with length z and  $\overline{EN}$  with length v, nonparallel side  $\overline{LN}$  with length x, and  $\angle L$ , construct trapezoid PENL.
- **24.** Given  $\angle F$ , FR = x, and YD = z, construct two trapezoids FRYD that are not congruent to each other.

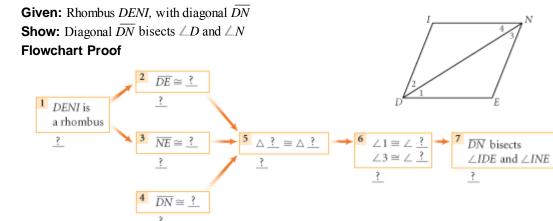
**25.** Three regular polygons meet at point *B*. Only four sides of the third polygon are visible. How many sides does this polygon have?



**26.** Find *x*.



**27.** *Developing Proof* Prove the conjecture: The diagonals of a rhombus bisect the angles.



**28.** *Developing Proof* Use a labeled diagram to prove the Parallelogram Opposite Sides Conjecture: The opposite sides of a parallelogram are congruent.

# TAKE ANOTHER LOOK

- 1. Developing Proof Draw several polygons that have four or more sides. In each, draw all the diagonals from one vertex. Explain how the Polygon Sum Conjecture follows logically from the Triangle Sum Conjecture. Does the Polygon Sum Conjecture apply to concave polygons?
- 2. A triangle on a sphere can have three right angles. Can you find a "rectangle" with four right angles on a sphere? Investigate the Polygon Sum Conjecture on a sphere. Explain how it is related to the Triangle Sum Conjecture on a sphere. Be sure to test your conjecture on polygons with the smallest and largest possible angle measures.



The small, precise polygons in the painting, Boy With Birds (1953, oil on canvas), by American artist David C. Driskell (b 1931), give it a look of stained glass.

- 3. Developing Proof Draw a polygon and one set of its exterior angles. Label the exterior angles. Cut out the exterior angles and arrange them all about a point. Explain how this activity demonstrates the Exterior Angle Sum Conjecture.
- **4.** Is the Exterior Angle Sum Conjecture also true for concave polygons? Are the kite conjectures also true for darts (concave kites)? Choose your tools and investigate.
- 5. Investigate exterior angle sums for polygons on a sphere. Be sure to test polygons with the smallest and largest angle measures.

# Assessing What You've Learned

### GIVING A PRESENTATION



Giving a presentation is a powerful way to demonstrate your understanding of a topic. Presentation skills are also among the most useful skills you can develop in preparation for almost any career. The more practice you can get in school, the better.

Choose a topic to present to your class. There are a number of things you can do to make your presentation go smoothly.

- ► Work with a group. Make sure your group presentation involves all group members so that it's clear everyone contributed equally.
- ► Choose a topic that will be interesting to your audience.
- ▶ Prepare thoroughly. Make an outline of important points you plan to cover. Prepare visual aids—like posters, models, handouts, and overhead transparencies—ahead of time. Rehearse your presentation.
- Communicate clearly. Speak up loud and clear, and show your enthusiasm about your topic.



**ORGANIZE YOUR NOTEBOOK** Your conjecture list should be growing fast! Review your notebook to be sure it's complete and well organized. Write a one-page chapter summary.



WRITE IN YOUR JOURNAL Write an imaginary dialogue between your teacher and a parent or guardian about your performance and progress in geometry.



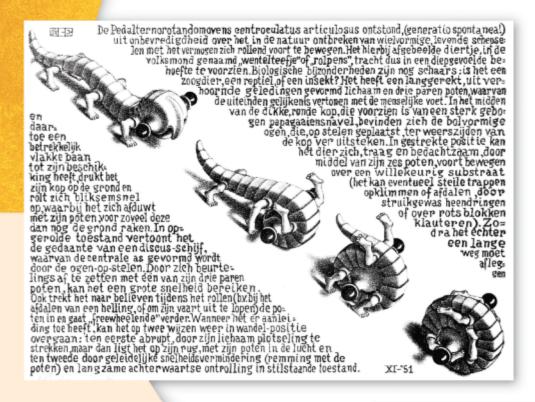
**UPDATE YOUR PORTFOLIO** Choose a piece that represents your best work from this chapter to add to your portfolio. Explain what it is and why you chose it.



**PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENT** While a classmate, a friend, a family member, or a teacher observes, carry out one of the investigations from this chapter. Explain what you're doing at each step, including how you arrived at the conjecture.

6

# Discovering and Proving Circle Properties



I am the only one who can judge how far I constantly remain below the quality I would like to attain. M.C.ESCHER

Curl-Up, M.C.Escher, 1951 ©2002 Cordon Art B.V.–Baarn–Holland. All rights reserved.

### **OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will

- discover properties of tangent lines
- learn relationships among chords, arcs, and angles
- learn how to calculate the length of an arc
- prove circle conjectures



6.1

# **Tangent Properties**

Let's review some basic terms from Chapter 1 before you begin discovering the properties of circles. You should be able to identify the terms below.

Match the figures at the right with the terms at the left.

We are, all of us, alone Though not uncommon In our singularity.

Touching,

We become tangent to

Circles of common experience,

Co-incident.

Defining in collective tangency

Reciprocal in their subtle

Redefinition of us.

In tangency

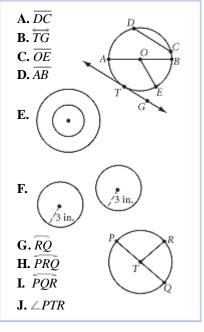
We are never less alone,

But no longer

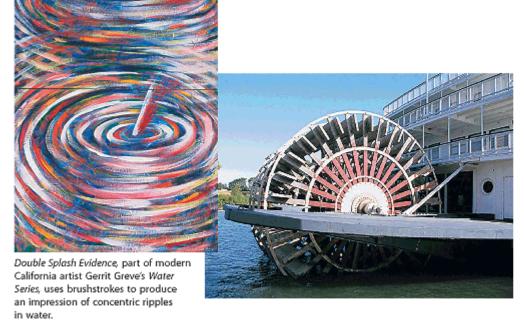
Only.

GENE MATTINGLY

- 1. Congruent circles
- 2. Concentric circles
- 3. Radius
- 4. Chord
- 5. Diameter
- 6. Tangent
- 7. Central angle
- 8. Minor arc
- 9. Major arc
- 10. Semicircle



Check your answers: (H'01 'T'6 '9'8 'f'2 '9'9' 'Q'5 'V'# '9'8' '9'1 '9'1)



Can you find parts of the water wheel that match the circle terms above?

In this lesson you will investigate the relationship between a tangent line to a circle and the radius of the circle, and between two tangent segments to a common point outside the circle.

Rails act as tangent lines to the wheels of a train. Each wheel of a train theoretically touches only one point on the rail. The point where the rail and the wheel meet is a point of tangency. Why can't a train wheel touch more than one point at a time on

the rail? How is the radius of the wheel to the point of tangency related to the rail?





# **Investigation 1**

# Going Off on a Tangent

### You will need

- a compass
- a straightedge

In this investigation you will discover the relationship between a tangent line and the radius drawn to the point of tangency.



Construct a large circle. Label the center O.

Step 2

Using your straightedge, draw a line that appears to touch the circle at only one point. Label the point T. Construct  $\overline{OT}$ .

Step 3

Use your protractor to measure the angles at T. What can you conclude about the radius  $\overline{OT}$  and the tangent line at T?

Step 4

Share your results with your group. Then copy and complete the conjecture.

### **Tangent Conjecture**

C-53

A tangent to a circle ? the radius drawn to the point of tangency.



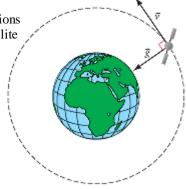
#### **Technology** CONNECTION

At right is the Mir space station and the space shuttle Atlantis in orbit in 1995. According to the United States Space Command, there are over 8,000 objects larger than a softball circling Earth at speeds of over 18,000 miles per hour! If gravity were suddenly "turned off" somehow, these objects would travel off into space on a straight line tangent to their orbits, and not continue in a curved path.



You can also show that the converse of the Tangent Conjecture is true. If you construct a line perpendicular to a radius at the point where it touches the circle, the line will be tangent to the circle.

The Tangent Conjecture has important applications related to circular motion. For example, a satellite maintains its velocity in a direction tangent to its circular orbit. This velocity vector is perpendicular to the force of gravity, which keeps the satellite in orbit.





# Investigation 2

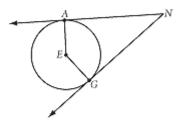
# **Tangent Segments**

You will need

- a compass
- a straightedge

In this investigation you will discover something about the lengths of segments tangent to a circle from a point outside the circle.

- Step 1 Construct a circle. Label the center *E*.
- Step 2 Choose a point outside the circle and label it *N*.
- Step 3 Draw two lines through point N tangent to the circle. Mark the points where these lines appear to touch the circle and label them A and G.
- Step 4 Use your compass to compare segments NA and NG. Segments such as these are called tangent segments.
- Step 5 Share your results with your group. Copy and complete the conjecture.



# **Tangent Segments Conjecture**

Tangent segments to a circle from a point outside the circle are ?

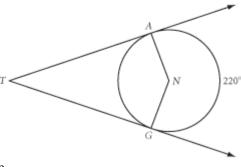
In the figure at right, the central angle,  $\angle BOA$ , determines the minor arc,  $\overline{AB}$ .  $\angle BOA$  is said to **intercept**  $\overline{AB}$  because the arc is within the angle. The measure of a minor arc is defined as the measure of its central angle, so  $\overline{mAB} = 40^{\circ}$ . The measure of a major arc is the reflex measure of  $\angle BOA$ , or  $360^{\circ}$  minus the measure of the minor arc, so  $\overline{mBCA} = 320^{\circ}$ .

A 40° Intercepted arc

Let's look at an example involving arc measures and tangent segments.

#### **EXAMPLE**

In the figure at right,  $\overline{TA}$  and  $\overline{TG}$  are both tangent to circle N. If the major arc formed by the two tangents measures 220°, find the measure of  $\angle T$ .

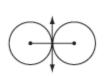


#### Solution

The minor arc intercepted by  $\angle N$  measures  $360^{\circ} - 220^{\circ}$ , or  $140^{\circ}$ . Thus,  $m \angle N = 140^{\circ}$ . By the Tangent Conjecture, both  $\angle A$  and  $\angle G$  must be right angles, and by the Quadrilateral Sum Conjecture, the sum of the angles in TANG is  $360^{\circ}$ .

So,  $m \angle T + 90^{\circ} + 140^{\circ} + 90^{\circ} = 360^{\circ}$ , which means that  $m \angle T = 40^{\circ}$ .

**Tangent circles** are two circles that are tangent to the same line at the same point. They can be **internally tangent** or **externally tangent**, as shown.



Externally tangent circles

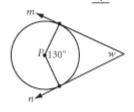


Internally tangent circles

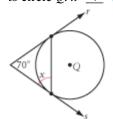


# **EXERCISES**

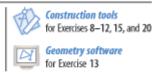
**1.** Rays m and n are tangent to circle P. w = ?



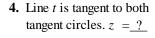
**2.** Rays r and s are tangent to circle Q.  $x = \frac{?}{h}$ 



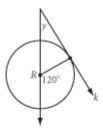
#### You will need

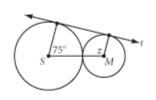


3. Ray k is tangent to circle R. y = ?

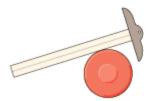


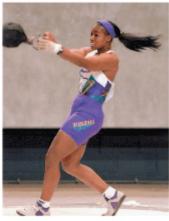
Quadrilateral *POST* is circumscribed about circle *Y*.
 OR = 13 in. and ST = 12 in. Find the perimeter of *POST*.





- P A O
- **6.** Pam participates in the hammer-throw event. She swings a 16-lb ball at arm's length, about eye-level. Then she releases the ball at the precise moment when the ball will travel in a straight line toward the target area. Draw an overhead view that shows the ball's circular path, her arms at the moment she releases it, and the ball's straight path toward the target area.
- Explain how you could use only a T-square, like the one shown, to find the center of a Frisbee.





Pam Dukes competes in the hammer-throw event.

**Construction** For Exercises 8–12, first make a sketch of what you are trying to construct and label it. Then use the segments below, with lengths r, s, and t.



- **8.** Construct a circle with radius r. Mark a point on the circle. Construct a tangent through this point.
- **9.** Construct a circle with radius *t*. Choose three points on the circle that divide it into three minor arcs and label points *X*, *Y*, and *Z*. Construct a triangle that is circumscribed about the circle and tangent at points *X*, *Y*, and *Z*.
- **10.** Construct two congruent, externally tangent circles with radius *s*. Then construct a third circle that is both congruent and externally tangent to the two circles.
- 11. Construct two internally tangent circles with radii r and t.
- **12.** Construct a third circle with radius *s* that is externally tangent to both the circles you constructed in Exercise 11.
- **13.** *Technology* Use geometry software to construct a circle. Label three points on the circle and construct tangents through them. Drag the three points and write your observations about where the tangent lines intersect and the figures they form. What happens if two of the three points are on opposite ends of a diameter? What happens if the three points are on the same semicircle?

**14.** Find real-world examples (different from the examples shown below) of two internally tangent circles and of two externally tangent circles. Either sketch the examples or make photocopies from a book or a magazine for your notebook.

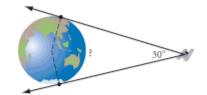


The teeth in the gears shown extend from circles that are externally tangent.



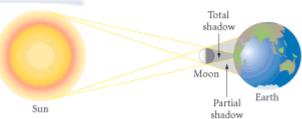
This astronomical clock in Prague, Czech Republic, has one pair of internally tangent circles. What other circle relationships can you find in the clock photo?

- **15.** *Construction* In Taoist philosophy, all things are governed by one of two natural principles, yin and yang. Yin represents the earth, characterized by darkness, cold, or wetness. Yang represents the heavens, characterized by light, heat, or dryness. The two principles, when balanced, combine to produce the harmony of nature. The symbol for the balance of yin and yang is shown at right. Construct the yin-and-yang symbol. Start with one large circle. Then construct two circles with half the diameter that are internally tangent to the large circle and externally tangent to each other. Finally, construct small circles that are concentric to the two inside circles. Shade or color your construction.
- **16.** A satellite in geostationary orbit remains above the same point on Earth's surface even as Earth turns. If such a satellite has a 30° view of the equator, what percentage of the equator is observable from the satellite?

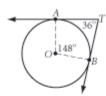


# Astronomy CONNECTION

Tangent lines can help you locate where a solar eclipse will occur on the surface of Earth. The diagram at right shows how rays tangent to both the sun and moon will determine the boundaries of regions that experience total shadow, called the umbra, and partial shadow, called the penumbra. This diagram is not drawn to scale. The diameter of the sun is roughly 400 times larger than that of the moon, but the sun is also about 400 times farther away from Earth than the moon, making them appear roughly the same size in the sky.

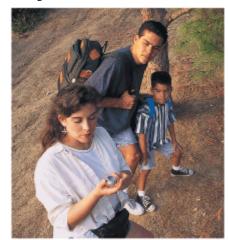


**17. Developing Proof**  $\overline{TA}$  and  $\overline{TB}$  are tangent to circle O. What's wrong with this picture?

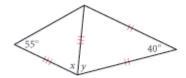


## Review

- 18. Identify each quadrilateral from the given characteristics.
  - a. Diagonals are perpendicular and bisect each other.
  - **b.** Diagonals are congruent and bisect each other, but it is not a square.
  - **c.** Only one diagonal is the perpendicular bisector of the other diagonal.
  - **d.** Diagonals bisect each other.
- **19.** A family hikes from their camp on a bearing of 15°. (A **bearing** is an angle measured clockwise from the north, so a bearing of 15° is 15° east of north.) They hike 6 km and then stop for a swim in a lake. Then they continue their hike on a new bearing of 117°. After another 9 km, they meet their friends. What is the measure of the angle between the path they took to arrive at the lake and the path they took to leave the lake?
- **20.** *Construction* Use a protractor and a centimeter ruler to make a careful drawing of the route the family in Exercise 20 traveled to meet their friends. Let 1 cm represent 1 km. To the nearest tenth of a kilometer, how far are they from their first camp?



**21.** Explain why x equals y.



**22.** What is the probability of randomly selecting three points from the 3-by-3 grid below that form the vertices of a right triangle?

# IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### Colored Cubes

Sketch the solid shown, but with the red cubes removed and the blue cube moved to cover the starred face of the green cube.





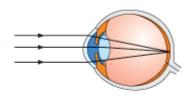


You will do foolish things, but do them with enthusiasm. SIDONIE GABRIELLA COLETTE

# **Chord Properties**

In the last lesson you discovered some properties of a tangent, a line that intersects the circle only once. In this lesson you will investigate properties of a chord, a line segment whose endpoints lie on the circle.

In a person with correct vision, light rays from distant objects are focused to a point on the retina. If the eye represents a circle, then the path of the light from the lens to the retina represents a chord. The angle formed by two of these chords to the same point on the retina represents an inscribed angle.



First you will define two types of angles in a circle.



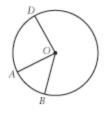
# Investigation 1

# **Defining Angles in a Circle**

Write a good definition of each boldfaced term. Discuss your definitions with others in your group. Agree on a common set of definitions as a class and add them to your definition list. In your notebook, draw and label a figure to illustrate each term.

Step 1

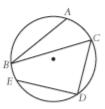
#### **Central Angle**



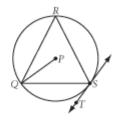
 $\angle AOB$ ,  $\angle DOA$ , and  $\angle DOB$  are central angles of circle O.

Step 2

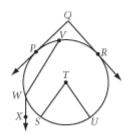
#### Inscribed Angle



 $\angle ABC$ ,  $\angle BCD$ , and  $\angle CDE$  are inscribed angles.



 $\angle PQR$ ,  $\angle PQS$ ,  $\angle RST$ ,  $\angle QST$ , and  $\angle QSR$  are not central angles of circle



 $\angle PQR$ ,  $\angle STU$ , and  $\angle VWX$  are not inscribed angles.



Step 1

Step 2

Step 4

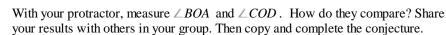
# **Chords and Their Central Angles**

#### You will need

- a compass
- a straightedge
- a protractor
- patty paper (optional)

Next you will discover some properties of chords and central angles. You will also see a relationship between chords and arcs.

Construct a large circle. Label the center O. Construct two congruent chords in your circle. Label the chords  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{CD}$ , then construct radii  $\overline{OA}$ ,  $\overline{OB}$ ,  $\overline{OC}$ , and  $\overline{OD}$ .



## **Chord Central Angles Conjecture**

If two chords in a circle are congruent, then they determine two central angles that are ?

Step 3 How can you fold your circle construction to check the conjecture?

> Recall that the measure of an arc is defined as the measure of its central angle. If two central angles are congruent, their intercepted arcs must be congruent. Combine this fact with the Chord Central Angles Conjecture to complete the next conjecture.

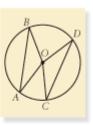


## **Chord Arcs Conjecture**

If two chords in a circle are congruent, then their \_? are congruent.

"Pull the cord?! Don't I need to construct it first?"





C-55



# Investigation 3

# **Chords and the Center** of the Circle

#### You will need

- a compass
- a straightedge
- patty paper (optional)

Step 1

Step 2

In this investigation you will discover relationships about a chord and the center of its circle.

Construct a large circle and mark the center. Construct two nonparallel congruent chords. Then construct the perpendiculars from the center to each chord.

How does the perpendicular from the center of a circle to a chord divide the chord? Copy and complete the conjecture.

# Perpendicular to a Chord Conjecture

The perpendicular from the center of a circle to a chord is the ? of the chord.

Let's continue this investigation to discover a relationship between the length of congruent chords and their distances from the center of the circle.

Step 3 Compare the distances (measured along the perpendicular) from the center to the chords. Are the results the same if you change the size of the circle and the length of the chords? State your observations as your next conjecture.

## Chord Distance to Center Conjecture

Two congruent chords in a circle are \_?\_ from the center of the circle.

# Investigation 4

# Perpendicular Bisector of a Chord

#### You will need

- a compass
- a straightedge
- patty paper (optional)

Step 1

Next, you will discover a property of perpendicular bisectors of chords.

Construct a large circle and mark the center. Construct two nonparallel chords that are not diameters. Then construct the perpendicular bisector of each chord and extend the bisectors until they intersect.



C-57

## Perpendicular Bisector of a Chord Conjecture

C-59

The perpendicular bisector of a chord ?.



For interactive versions of these investigations, see the Dynamic Geometry Exploration Chord Properties at www.keymath.com/DG . 4

With the perpendicular bisector of a chord, you can find the center of any circle, and therefore the vertex of the central angle to any arc. All you have to do is construct the perpendicular bisectors of nonparallel chords.

# EXERCISES

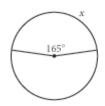


#### You will need

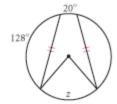


Solve Exercises 1–10. State which conjectures or definitions you used.

1. 
$$x = ?$$



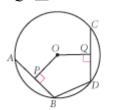
**2.** z = 1



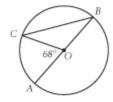
3. w = ?



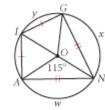
4. AB = CDPO = 8 cmOQ = ?



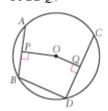
**5.** *AB* is a diameter. Find  $m\overline{AC}$  and  $m\angle B$ .



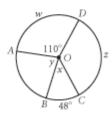
**6.** GIAN is a kite. Find w, x, and y.



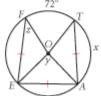
7. AB = 6 cm OP = 4 cmCD = 8 cm OQ = 3 cmBD = 6 cmWhat is the perimeter of OPBDQ?



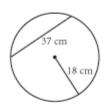
**8.**  $m\overline{AC} = 130^{\circ}$ Find w, x, y, and z.



9. x = ?y = 1 $z = \frac{?}{}$ 



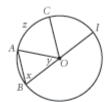
**10.**  $\overline{AB} \parallel \overline{CO}$ ,  $m\overline{CI} = 66^{\circ}$ Find x, y, and z.



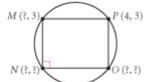
with this picture?

11. Developing Proof What's wrong

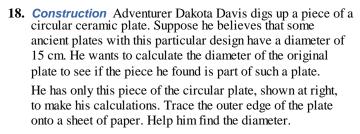
12. Developing Proof What's wrong with this picture?

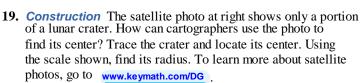


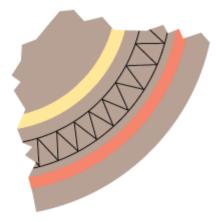
- 13. Draw a circle and two chords of unequal length. Which is closer to the center of the circle, the longer chord or the shorter chord? Explain.
- 14. Draw two circles with different radii. In each circle, draw a chord so that the chords have the same length. Draw the central angle determined by each chord. Which central angle is larger? Explain.
- **15.** Polygon *MNOP* is a rectangle inscribed in a circle centered at the origin. Find the coordinates of points M, N, and O.

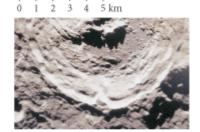


- **16.** Construction Construct a triangle. Using the sides of the triangle as chords, construct a circle passing through all three vertices. Explain. Why does this seem familiar?
- **17.** Construction Trace a circle onto a blank sheet of paper without using your compass. Locate the center of the circle using a compass and straightedge. Trace another circle onto patty paper and find the center by folding.







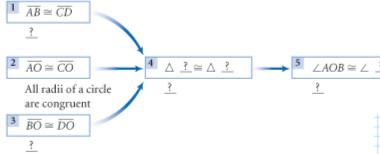


**20. Developing Proof** Complete the flowchart proof shown, which proves that if two chords of a circle are congruent, then they determine two congruent central angles.

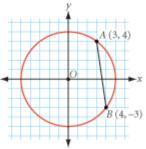
**Given:** Circle *O* with chords  $\overline{AB} \cong \overline{CD}$ 

**Show:**  $\angle AOB \cong \angle COD$ 

#### **Flowchart Proof**

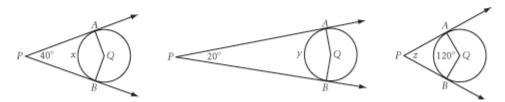


**21.** Circle *O* has center (0, 0) and passes through points A(3, 4) and B(4, -3). Find an equation to show that the perpendicular bisector of  $\overline{AB}$  passes through the center of the circle. Explain your reasoning.



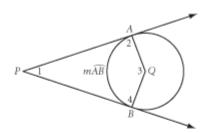
## **Review**

- **22. Developing Proof** Identify each of these statements as true or false. If the statement is true, explain why. If it is false, give a counterexample.
  - **a.** If the diagonals of a quadrilateral are congruent, but only one is the perpendicular bisector of the other, then the quadrilateral is a kite.
  - **b.** If the quadrilateral has exactly one line of reflectional symmetry, then the quadrilateral is a kite.
  - **c.** If the diagonals of a quadrilateral are congruent and bisect each other, then it is a square.
- **23.** *Mini-Investigation* Use what you learned in the last lesson about the angle formed by a tangent and a radius to find the missing arc measure or angle measure in each diagram. Examine these cases to find a relationship between the measure of the angle formed by two tangents to a circle, ∠P, and the measure of the intercepted arc, AB. Then copy and complete the conjecture below.

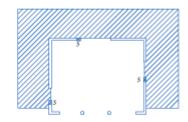


**Conjecture:** The measure of the angle formed by two intersecting tangents to a circle is 1 (Intersecting Tangents Conjecture).

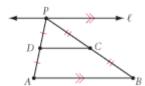
**24.** Developing Proof Given that  $\overline{PA}$  and  $\overline{PB}$  are both tangent to circle Q in the diagram at right, prove the conjecture you made in the last exercise.



25. Rachel and Yulia are building an art studio above their back bedroom. There will be doors on three sides leading to a small deck that surrounds the studio. They need to place an electrical junction box in the ceiling of the studio so that it is equidistant from the three light switches shown by the doors. Copy the diagram of the room and find the location of the junction box.



- **26.** What will the units digit be when you evaluate  $3^{23}$ ?
- 27. A small light-wing aircraft has made an emergency landing in a remote portion of a wildlife refuge and is sending out radio signals for help. Ranger Station Alpha receives the signal on a bearing of 38° and Station Beta receives the signal on a bearing of 312°. (Recall that a bearing is an angle measured clockwise from the north.) Stations Alpha and Beta are 8.2 miles apart, and Station Beta is on a bearing of 72° from Station Alpha. Which station is closer to the downed aircraft? Explain your reasoning.
- **28.** Consider the figure at right with line  $\ell \parallel \overline{AB}$ . As P moves from left to right along line  $\ell$ , which of these values does not remain constant?



- **A.** The length of  $\overline{DC}$
- **B.** The distance from D to AB
- **C.** The ratio DC:AB
- **D.** The perimeter of  $\triangle ABP$
- **E.** None of the above

# IMPROVING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS



# Algebraic Sequences II

Find the next two terms of each algebraic pattern.

**1.** 
$$x^6$$
,  $6x^5y$ ,  $15x^4y^2$ ,  $20x^3y^3$ ,  $15x^2y^4$ ,  $1$ 

**2.** 
$$x^7$$
,  $7x^6y$ ,  $21x^5y^2$ ,  $35x^4y^3$ ,  $35x^3y^4$ ,  $21x^2y^5$ ,  $1$ 

**3.** 
$$x^8$$
,  $8x^7y$ ,  $28x^6y^2$ ,  $56x^5y^3$ ,  $70x^4y^4$ ,  $56x^3y^5$ ,  $28x^2y^6$ ,



Learning by experience is good, but in the case of mushrooms and toadstools. hearsay evidence is better. **ANONYMOUS** 

# Arcs and Angles

Many arches that you see in structures are semicircular, but Chinese builders long ago discovered that arches don't have to have this shape. The Zhaozhou bridge, shown below, was completed in 605 C.E. It is the world's first stone arched bridge in the shape of a minor arc, predating other minor-arc arches by about 800 years.

In this lesson you'll discover properties of arcs and the angles associated with them.





# Investigation 1

# **Inscribed Angle Properties**

#### You will need

- a compass
- a straightedge
- a protractor

In this investigation you will compare an inscribed angle and a central angle, both inscribed in the same arc. Refer to the diagram of circle O, with central angle COR and inscribed angle CAR.

Step 1

Measure  $\angle COR$  with your protractor to find mCR, the intercepted arc. Measure  $\angle CAR$ . How does  $m\angle CAR$ compare with  $m\overline{CR}$ ?

Step 2

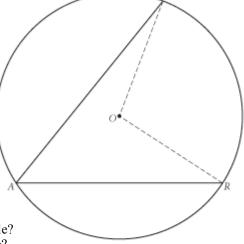
Construct a circle of your own with an inscribed angle. Draw and measure the central angle that intercepts the same arc. What is the measure of the inscribed angle? How do the two measures compare?

Step 3

Share your results with others near you. Copy and complete the conjecture.

# **Inscribed Angle Conjecture**

The measure of an angle inscribed in a circle 1.





Step 1

# Investigation 2

# **Inscribed Angles Intercepting the Same Arc**

#### You will need

- a compass
- a straightedge
- a protractor

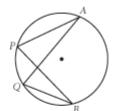
Next, let's consider two inscribed angles that intercept the same arc. In the figure at right,  $\angle AQB$  and  $\angle APB$ both intercept  $\overline{AB}$ . Angles  $\overline{AQB}$  and  $\overline{APB}$  are both inscribed in  $\overline{APB}$ .

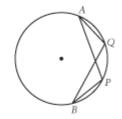
Construct a large circle. Select two points on the circle. Label them A and B. Select a point P on the major arc and construct inscribed angle APB. With your protractor, measure  $\angle APB$ .

Step 2 Select another point O on APB and construct inscribed angle AOB. Measure  $\angle AOB$ .

Step 3 How does  $m \angle AQB$  compare with  $m \angle APB$ ?

Step 4 Repeat Steps 1-3 with points P and Q selected on minor arc AB. Compare results with your group. Then copy and complete the conjecture.





C-61

## Inscribed Angles Intercepting Arcs Conjecture

Inscribed angles that intercept the same arc 1.



Step 2

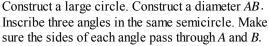
# Investigation 3

# Angles Inscribed in a Semicircle

#### You will need

- a compass
- a straightedge
- a protractor Step 1

Next, you will investigate a property of angles inscribed in semicircles. This will lead you to a third important conjecture about inscribed angles.



Measure each angle with your protractor. What do you notice? Compare your



# Angles Inscribed in a Semicircle Conjecture

results with the results of others and make a conjecture.

Angles inscribed in a semicircle ?

Now you will discover a property of the angles of a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle.



# Investigation 4

#### You will need

- a compass
- a straightedge
- a protractor

You will need

patty paper a compass

a double-edged

straightedge

# Cyclic Quadrilaterals A quadrilateral inscribed in a circle is called a

cyclic quadrilateral. Each of its angles is inscribed in the circle, and each of its sides is a chord of the circle.



Construct a large circle. Construct a cyclic quadrilateral by connecting four points anywhere on the circle.

Step 2



C-63

Measure each of the four inscribed angles. Write the measure in each angle. Look carefully at the sums of various angles. Share your observations with students near you. Then copy and complete the conjecture.

## Cyclic Quadrilateral Conjecture

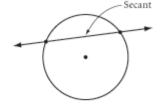
The <u>1</u> angles of a cyclic quadrilateral are <u>1</u>.

# Investigation 5

# **Arcs by Parallel Lines**

Next, you will investigate arcs formed by parallel lines that intersect a circle.

A line that intersects a circle in two points is called a **secant**. A secant contains a chord of the circle. and passes through the interior of a circle, while a tangent line does not. Note that a secant is a line while a chord is a segment.



- On a piece of patty paper, construct a large circle. Lay your straightedge across Step 1 the circle so that its parallel edges pass through the circle. Draw secants  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{DC}$  along both edges of the straightedge.
- Fold your patty paper to compare AD and BC. What Step 2 can you say about  $\overrightarrow{AD}$  and  $\overrightarrow{BC}$ ?
- Repeat Steps 1 and 2, using either lined paper or Step 3 another object with parallel edges to construct different parallel secants. Share your results with other students. Then copy and complete the conjecture.



# Parallel Lines Intercepted Arcs Conjecture

Parallel lines intercept 1 arcs on a circle.



Review these conjectures and ask yourself which quadrilaterals can be inscribed in a circle. Can any parallelogram be a cyclic quadrilateral? If two sides of a cyclic quadrilateral are parallel, then what kind of quadrilateral will it be?



# **EXERCISES**

Use your new conjectures to solve Exercises 1–17.

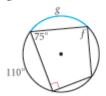




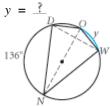
3. 
$$c = \frac{?}{.}$$



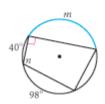
6. 
$$f = \frac{?}{}$$
 $g = \frac{?}{}$ 



**9.** *DOWN* is a kite.



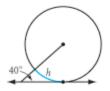
12. 
$$m = \frac{?}{?}$$



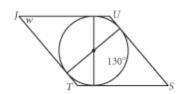
2. 
$$b = ?$$



4. 
$$h = \frac{?}{h}$$



7. JUST is a rhombus.  $W = \frac{1}{2}$ 



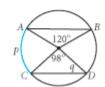
10.  $k = \frac{?}{}$ 



13. 
$$\overline{AB} \parallel \overline{CD}$$

$$P = \frac{?}{?}$$

$$Q = \frac{?}{?}$$

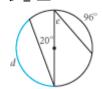


#### You will need

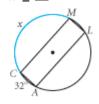




5. 
$$d = \frac{?}{?}$$
 $e = \frac{?}{?}$ 



**8.** CALM is a rectangle. x = 1



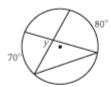
11.  $r = \frac{?}{?}$ 



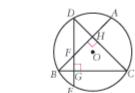
**14.** What is the sum of a, b, c, d, and e?



15. y = 1

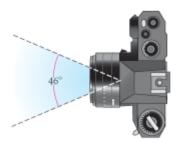


**16.** Developing Proof What's wrong 17. Developing Proof Explain why with this picture?



 $\overrightarrow{AC} \cong \overrightarrow{CE}$ .

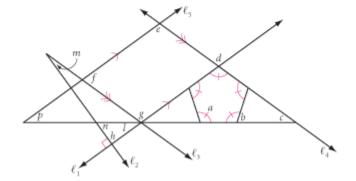
- **18.** How can you find the center of a circle, using only the corner of a piece of paper?
- 19. Technology Chris Chisholm, a high school student in Whitmore, California, used the Angles Inscribed in a Semicircle Conjecture to discover a simpler way to find the orthocenter in a triangle. Chris constructs a circle using one of the sides of the triangle as the diameter, then immediately finds an altitude to each of the triangle's other two sides. Use geometry software and Chris's method to find the orthocenter of a triangle. Does this method work on all kinds of triangles?
- **20.** Application The width of a view that can be captured in a photo depends on the camera's picture angle. Suppose a photographer takes a photo of your class standing in one straight row with a camera that has a 46° picture angle. Draw a line segment to represent the row. Draw a 46° angle on a piece of patty paper. Locate at least eight different points on your paper where a camera could be positioned to include all the students, filling as much of the picture as possible. What is the locus of all such camera positions? What conjecture does this activity illustrate?



21. Technology Construct a circle and a diameter. Construct a point on one of the semicircles, and construct two chords from it to the endpoints of the diameter to create a right triangle. Locate the midpoint of each of the two chords. Predict, then sketch the locus of the two midpoints as the vertex of the right angle is moved around the circle. Finally, use your computer to animate the point on the circle and trace the locus of the two midpoints. What do you get?

# Review

**22.** Find the measure of each lettered angle.

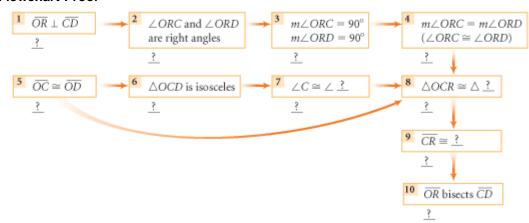


- **23.** Circle U passes through points (3, 11), (11, -1), and (-14, 4). Find the coordinates of its center. Explain your method.
- **24. Developing Proof** Complete the flowchart proof or write a paragraph proof of the Perpendicular to a Chord Conjecture: The perpendicular from the center of a circle to a chord is the bisector of the chord.

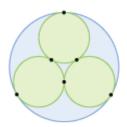
**Given:** Circle *O* with chord  $\overline{CD}$ , radii  $\overline{OC}$  and  $\overline{OD}$ , and  $\overline{OR} \perp \overline{CD}$ 

**Show:**  $\overline{OR}$  bisects  $\overline{CD}$ 

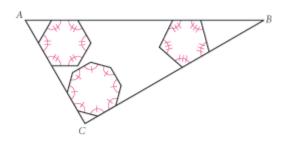
#### **Flowchart Proof**



**25.** Construction Use your construction tools to re-create this design of three congruent circles, all tangent to each other and internally tangent to a larger circle.



**26. Developing Proof** What's wrong with this picture?



# IMPROVING YOUR **REASONING** SKILLS

#### Think Dinosaur

If the letter in the word *dinosaur* that is three letters after the word's second vowel is also found before the sixteenth letter of the alphabet, then print the word *dinosaur* horizontally. Otherwise, print the word *dinosaur* vertically and cross out the second letter after the first yowel.





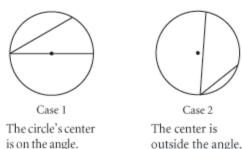
Mistakes are a fact of life. It's the response to the error that counts.

NIKKI GIOVANNI

# **Proving Circle Conjectures**

In the previous lesson you first discovered the Inscribed Angle Conjecture: The measure of an angle inscribed in a circle equals half the measure of its intercepted arc. You then discovered four other conjectures related to inscribed angles. In this lesson you will prove that all four of these conjectures are logical consequences of the Inscribed Angle Conjecture.

First we must prove the Inscribed Angle Conjecture itself, but how? Let's use our reasoning strategies to make a plan. By thinking backward, we see that a central angle gives us something to compare an inscribed angle with. If one side of the inscribed angle is a diameter, then we can form a central angle by adding an auxiliary line. But what if the circle's center is not on the inscribed angle? There are three possible cases.





Case 3 The center is inside the angle.

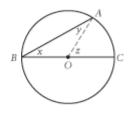
Let's break the problem into parts and consider one case at a time. We'll start with the easiest case first.

#### Case 1: The circle's center is on the inscribed angle.

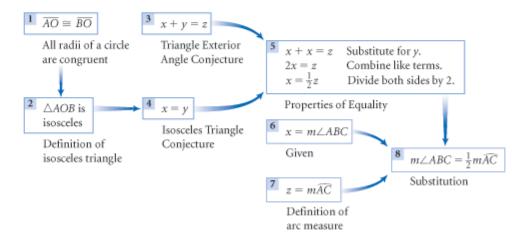
This proof uses the variables x, y, and z to represent the measures of the angles as shown in the diagram at right.

**Given:** Circle O with inscribed angle ABC on diameter  $\overline{BC}$ 

**Show:**  $m\angle ABC = \frac{1}{2} m\widehat{AC}$ 



#### Flowchart Proof of Case 1





**Developing Proof** As a group, go through the flowchart proof of Case 1, one box at a time. What does each statement mean? How does it relate to the given diagram? How does the reason below the box support the statement? How do the arrows connect the flow of ideas? Discuss until all members of your group understand the logic of the proof.

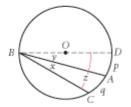
The proof of Case 1 allows us now to prove the other two cases. By adding an auxiliary line, we can use the proof of Case 1 to show that the measures of the inscribed angles that do contain the diameter are half those of their intercepted arcs. The proof of Case 2 also requires us to accept angle addition and arc addition, or that the measures of adjacent angles and arcs on the same circle can be added.

#### Case 2: The circle's center is outside the inscribed angle.

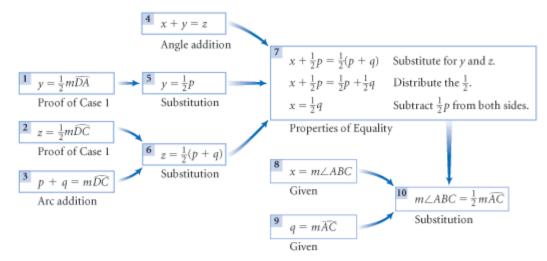
This proof uses x, y, and z to represent the measures of the angles, and p and q to represent the measures of the arcs, as shown in the diagram at right.

**Given:** Circle *O* with inscribed angle *ABC* on one side of diameter BD

**Show:**  $m\angle ABC = \frac{1}{2}m\overrightarrow{AC}$ 



#### Flowchart Proof of Case 2





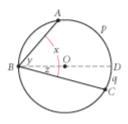
**Developing Proof** As a group, go through the flowchart proof of Case 2, as you did with Case 1, until all members of your group understand the logic of the proof. Then work together to create a flowchart proof for Case 3, similar to the proof of Case 2.

#### **Case 3:** The circle's center is inside the inscribed angle.

This proof uses x, y, and z to represent the measures of the angles, and p and q to represent the measures of the arcs, as shown in the diagram at right.

**Given:** Circle O with inscribed angle ABC whose sides lie on either side of diameter  $\overline{BD}$ 

**Show:**  $m\angle ABC = \frac{1}{2} m\overline{AC}$ 

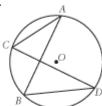


Having proved all three cases, we have now proved the Inscribed Angle Conjecture. You can now accept it as true to write proofs of other conjectures in the exercises.



# **EXERCISES**

**Developing Proof** In Exercises 1–4, the four conjectures are consequences of the Inscribed Angle Conjecture. Prove each conjecture by writing a paragraph proof or a flowchart proof. Use reasoning strategies, such as think backwards, apply previous conjectures and definitions, and break a problem into parts to develop your proofs.



1. Inscribed angles that intercept the same arc are congruent.

**Given:** Circle *O* with  $\angle ACD$  and  $\angle ABD$  inscribed in  $\overrightarrow{ACD}$ 

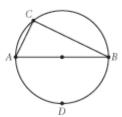
Show:  $\angle ACD \cong \angle ABD$ 

2. Angles inscribed in a semicircle are right angles. (h)

**Given:** Circle O with diameter  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\angle ACB$  inscribed in

semicircle ACB

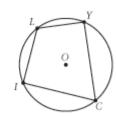
**Show:**  $\angle ACB$  is a right angle



**3.** The opposite angles of a cyclic quadrilateral are supplementary.

**Given:** Circle *O* with inscribed quadrilateral *LICY* 

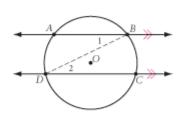
**Show:**  $\angle L$  and  $\angle C$  are supplementary



**4.** Parallel lines intercept congruent arcs on a circle. **(h)** 

**Given:** Circle *O* with chord  $\overline{BD}$  and  $\overline{AB}$  //  $\overline{CD}$ 

Show:  $\widehat{BC} \cong \widehat{DA}$ 

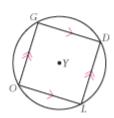


**Developing Proof** For Exercises 5–7, determine whether each conjecture is true or false. If the conjecture is false, draw a counterexample. If the conjecture is true, prove it by writing either a paragraph or flowchart proof.

**5.** If a parallelogram is inscribed within a circle, then the parallelogram is a rectangle. **(h)** 

**Given:** Circle Y with inscribed parallelogram GOLD

**Show:** *GOLD* is a rectangle



**6.** If a kite is inscribed in a circle, then one of the diagonals of the kite is a diameter of the circle.

**Given:** BRDG is a kite inscribed in a circle with BR = RD, BG = DG.

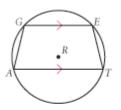
**Show:**  $\overline{RG}$  is a diameter.

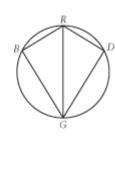
7. If a trapezoid is inscribed within a circle, then the trapezoid is isosceles. **(h)** 

**Given:** Circle R with inscribed trapezoid

**GATE** 

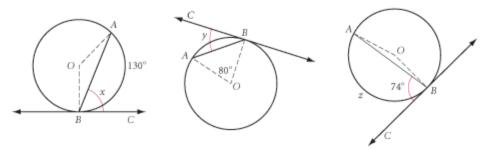
**Show:** GATE is an isosceles trapezoid





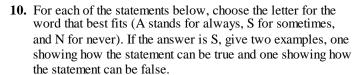
## Review

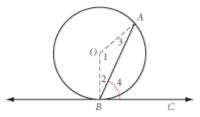
8. Mini-Investigation Use what you know about isosceles triangles and the angle formed by a tangent and a radius to find the missing arc measure or angle measure in each diagram. Examine these cases to find a relationship between the measure of the angle formed by a tangent and chord at the point of tangency,  $\angle ABC$ , and the measure of the intercepted arc, AB. Then copy and complete the conjecture below.



**Conjecture**: The measure of the angle formed by the intersection of 1. (Tangent-Chord Conjecture) a tangent and chord at the point of tangency is

**9.** Developing Proof Given circle O with chord AB and tangent BC in the diagram at right, prove the conjecture you made in the last exercise. (h)





- **a.** An equilateral polygon is (A/S/N) equiangular.
- **b.** If a triangle is a right triangle, then the acute angles are (A/S/N) complementary.
- **c.** The diagonals of a kite are (A/S/N) perpendicular bisectors of each other.
- **d.** A regular polygon (A/S/N) has both reflectional symmetry and rotational symmetry.
- e. If a polygon has rotational symmetry, then it (A/S/N) has more than one line of reflectional symmetry.

Match each term in Exercises 11–19 with one of the figures A–N.

- 11. Minor arc
- A.  $\overline{OC}$
- **B.**  $\overline{AB}$

- 12. Major arc
- C.  $\overline{OF}$
- **D.** ∠*COD*

- 13. Semicircle
- **E.**  $\angle DAC$
- **F.** ∠*ACF*

- **14.** Central angle
- $G. \overrightarrow{CF}$
- H.  $\overrightarrow{AC}$

- **15.** Inscribed angle
- I.  $\overrightarrow{GB}$
- J.  $\widehat{BAD}$

- **16.** Chord
- $\mathbf{K}. \ \widehat{ABD}$
- L.  $\overrightarrow{CD}$

- 17. Secant
- **M.** △*OCD*
- N.  $\triangle ACD$

- **18.** Tangent
- 19. Inscribed triangle
- **20.** *Developing Proof* Explain why *a* and *b* are complementary.
  - b b a

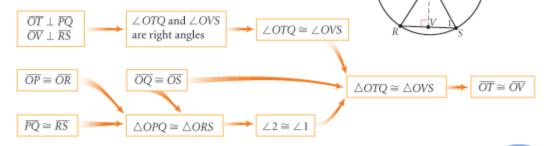
21. What is the probability of randomly selecting three collinear points from the points in the 3-by-3 grid below?



**22. Developing Proof** Use the diagram at right and the flowchart below to write a paragraph proof explaining why two congruent chords in a circle are equidistant from the center of the circle.

**Given:** Circle O with  $\overline{PQ} \cong \overline{R}$  and  $\overline{OT} \perp \overline{PQ}$  and  $\overline{OV} \perp \overline{RS}$ 

Show:  $\overline{OT} \cong \overline{OV}$ 



# IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

# Rolling Quarters

One of two quarters remains motionless while the other rotates around it, never slipping and always tangent to it. When the rotating quarter has completed a turn around the stationary quarter, how many turns has it made

around its own center point? Try it!







ESSON

No human investigations can ever be called true science without going through mathematical tests.

LEONARDO DA VINCI

# The Circumference/ **Diameter Ratio**

he distance around a polygon is called the perimeter. The distance around a circle is called the **circumference**. Here is a nice visual puzzle. Which is greater, the height of a tennis-ball can or the circumference of the can? The height is approximately three tennis-ball diameters tall. The diameter of the can is approximately one tennis-ball diameter. If you have a tennis-ball can handy, try it. Wrap a string around the can to measure its circumference, then compare this measurement with the height of the can. Surprised?



If you actually compared the measurements, you discovered that the circumference of the can is greater than three diameters of the can. In this lesson you are going to discover (or perhaps rediscover) the relationship between the diameter and the circumference of every circle. Once you know this relationship, you can measure a circle's diameter and calculate its circumference.

If you measure the circumference and diameter of a circle and divide the circumference by the diameter, you get a number slightly larger than 3. The more accurate your measurements, the closer your ratio will come to a special number called  $\pi$  (pi), pronounced "pie," like the dessert.



In 1897, the Indiana state assembly tried to legislate the value of \( \pi \). The vague language of the state's House Bill No. 246, which became known as the "Indiana Pi Bill," implies several different incorrect values for #-3.2, 3.232, 3.236, 3.24, and 4. With a unanimous vote of 67-0, the House passed the bill to the state senate, where it was postponed indefinitely.

# Investigation

# A Taste of Pi

#### You will need

- several round objects(cans, mugs, bike wheel, plates)
- a meterstick or metric measuring tape
- sewing thread or thin string

In this investigation you will find an approximate value of  $\pi$  by measuring circular objects and calculating the ratio of the circumference to the diameter. Let's see how close you come to the actual value of  $\pi$ .



- Step 1 Measure the circumference of each round object by wrapping the measuring tape, or string, around its perimeter. Then measure the diameter of each object with the meterstick or tape. Record each measurement to the nearest millimeter (tenth of a centimeter).
- Step 2 Make a table like the one below and record the circumference (C) and diameter (d) measurements for each round object.

Object	Circumference (C)	Diameter (d)	Ratio <u>C</u>
can			
Mug			
Wheel			

- Calculate the ratio  $\frac{C}{d}$  for each object. Record the answers in your table. Step 3
- Step 4 Calculate the average of your ratios of  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

Compare your average with the averages of other groups. Are the  $\frac{C}{d}$  ratios close? You should now be convinced that the ratio  $\frac{C}{d}$  is very close to 3 for every circle. We define  $\pi$  as the ratio  $\frac{C}{d}$ . If you solve this formula for C, you get a formula for the circumference of a circle in terms of the diameter, d. The diameter is twice the radius (d = 2r), so you can also get a formula for the circumference in terms of the radius, r.

Step 5 Copy and complete the conjecture.

# **Circumference Conjecture**

C-65

If C is the circumference and d is the diameter of a circle, then there is a number such that C = 1. If d = 2r where r is the radius, then C = 1.

#### **Mathematics**

The number  $\pi$  is an irrational number—its decimal form never ends and the pattern of digits does not repeat. The symbol # is a letter of the Greek alphabet. Perhaps no other number has more fascinated mathematicians throughout history. Mathematicians in ancient Egypt used (4) as their approximation of circumference to diameter. Early Chinese and Hindu mathematicians used √10. By 408 C.E., Chinese mathematicians were using 355. Today, computers have calculated approximations of  $\pi$  to billions of decimal places, and there are websites devoted to #! See www.keymath.com/DG

Accurate approximations of  $\pi$  have been of more interest intellectually than practically. Still, what would a carpenter say if you asked her to cut a board  $3\pi$  feet long? Most calculators have a  $\pi$  button that gives  $\pi$  to eight or ten decimal places. You can use this value for most calculations, then round your answer to a specified decimal place. If your calculator doesn't have a # button, or if you don't have access to a calculator, use the value 3.14 for  $\pi$ . If you're asked for an exact answer instead of an approximation, state your answer in terms of  $\pi$ .

How do you use the Circumference Conjecture? Let's look at two examples.

#### EXAMPLE A

If a circle has diameter 3.0 meters, what is the circumference? Use a calculator and state your answer to the nearest 0.1 meter.

## Solution

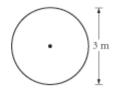
$$C = \pi d$$

Original formula.

$$C = \pi(3.0)$$

Substitute the value of d.

In terms of  $\pi$ , the answer is  $3\pi$ . The circumference is about 9.4 meters.



#### EXAMPLE B

If a circle has circumference  $12\pi$  meters, what is the radius?

# Solution

$$C = 2\pi r$$

Original formula.

$$12\pi = 2\pi r$$

Substitute the value of C.

Solve.



The radius is 6 meters.



# EXERCISES

#### You will need

Use the Circumference Conjecture to solve Exercises 1–12. In Exercises 1–6, leave your answer in terms of  $\pi$ .



- **1.** If  $C = 5\pi$  cm, find d.
- 2. If r = 5 cm, find C.
- **3.** If C = 24 m, find r.

- **4.** If d = 5.5 m, find C.
- **5.** If a circle has a diameter of 12 cm, what is its circumference?
- 6. If a circle has a circumference of 46 mm. what is its diameter?

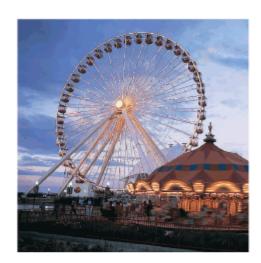
In Exercises 7–10, use a calculator. Round your answer to the nearest 0.1 unit. Use the symbol ≈ to show that your answer is an approximation.

- 7. If d = 5 cm, find C.
- **8.** If r = 4 cm. find *C*.
- **9.** If C = 44 m, find r.
- **10.** What's the circumference of a bicycle wheel with a 27-inch diameter?



- 11. If the distance from the center of a Ferris wheel to one of the seats is approximately 90 feet, what is the distance traveled by a seated person, to the nearest foot, in one revolution?
- **12.** If a circle is inscribed in a square with a perimeter of 24 cm, what is the circumference of the circle? (h)
- 13. If a circle with a circumference of  $16\pi$ circumscribed about a square, what is the length of a diagonal of the square?
- 14. Each year a growing tree adds a new ring to its cross section. Some years the ring is thicker than others. Why do you suppose this happens?

Suppose the average thickness of growth rings in the Flintstones National Forest is 0.5 cm. About how old is "Old Fred," a famous tree in the forest, if its circumference measures 766 cm?



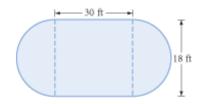
## **Science**

## CONNECTION

Trees can live hundreds to thousands of years, and we can determine the age of one tree by counting its growth rings. A pair of rings—a light ring formed in the spring and summer and a dark one formed in the fall and early winter—represent the growth for one year. We can learn a lot about the climate of a region over a period of years by studying tree growth rings. This study is called dendroclimatology.

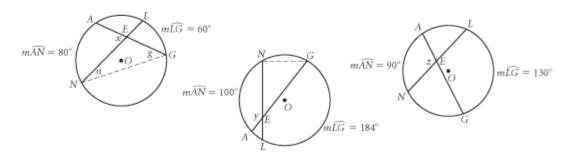


**15.** Pool contractor Peter Tileson needs to determine the number of 1-inch tiles to put around the edge of a pool. The pool is a rectangle with two semicircular ends as shown. How many tiles will he need?



## Review

**16.** *Mini-Investigation* Use what you know about inscribed angles and exterior angles of a triangle to find the missing angle measures in each diagram. Examine these cases to find a relationship between the measure of *AEN* and the measures of the two intercepted arcs,  $\overline{AN}$  and  $\overline{LG}$ . Then copy and complete the conjecture below.



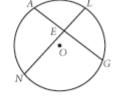
**Conjecture:** The measure of an angle formed by two intersecting chords is 1. (Intersecting Chords Conjecture)

For an interactive version of this mini-investigation, see the **Dynamic Geometry Exploration** Intersecting Chords at www.Keymath.com/DG



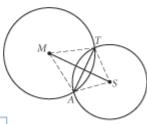
keymath.com/DG

- 17. Developing Proof Given circle O with chords  $\overline{AG}$  and  $\overline{LN}$  in the diagram at right, prove the conjecture you made in the last exercise. Start by drawing the auxiliary line  $\overline{NG}$
- 18. Developing Proof Prove the conjecture: If two circles intersect at two points, then the segment connecting the centers is the perpendicular bisector of the common chord, the segment connecting the points of intersection.



**Given:** Circle M and circle S intersect at points A and T with radii  $\overline{MA} \cong \overline{MT}$ and  $\overline{SA} \cong \overline{ST}$ 

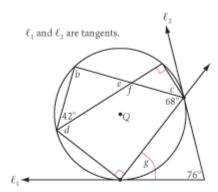
**Show:**  $\overline{MS}$  is the perpendicular bisector of  $\overline{AT}$ 



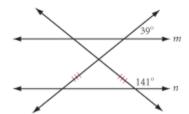
#### Flowchart Proof



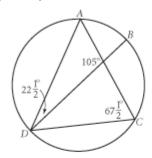
19. Trace the figure below. Calculate the measure of each lettered angle.



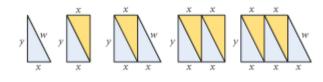
**21.** Developing Proof Explain why m is parallel to n.



**20.** What is the probability that a flea strolling along the circle shown below will stop randomly on either  $\overline{AB}$  or  $\overline{CD}$ ? (Because you're probably not an expert in flea behavior, assume the flea will stop exactly once.)



22. Assume the pattern below will continue. Write an expression for the perimeter of the tenth shape in this picture pattern.





#### **NEEDLE TOSS**

If you randomly toss a needle on lined paper, what is the probability that the needle will land on one or more lines? What is the probability it will not land on any lines? The length of the needle and the distance between the lines will affect these probabilities.

Start with a toothpick of any length L as your "needle" and construct parallel lines a distance L apart. Write your predictions, then experiment. Using N as the number of times you dropped the needle, and C as the number of times the needle crossed the line, enter your results into the expression 2N/C. As you drop the needle more and more times, the value of this expression seems to be getting close to what number?

Your project should include

- Your predictions and data.
- ▶ The calculated probabilities and your prediction of the theoretical probability.
- ▶ Any other interesting observations or conclusions.



Using Fathom, you can simulate many experiments. See the demonstration Buffon's Needle that comes with the software package.



LESSON

6.6

Love is like  $\pi$  —natural, irrational, and very important.

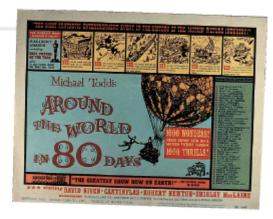
LISA HOFFMAN

# **Around the World**

Many application problems are related to  $\pi$ . Satellite orbits, the wheels of a vehicle, tree trunks, and round pizzas are just a few of the real-world examples that involve the circumference of circles. Here is a famous example from literature.

# Literature CONNECTION

In the novel Around the World in Eighty Days (1873), Jules Verne (1828–1905) recounts the adventures of brave Phileas Fogg and his servant Passerpartout. They begin their journey when Phileas bets his friends that he can make a trip around the world in 80 days. Phileas's precise behavior, such as monitoring the temperature of his shaving water or calculating the exact time and location of his points of travel, reflects Verne's interest in the technology boom of the



late nineteenth century. His studies in geology, engineering, and astronomy aid the imaginative themes in this and his other novels, including *A Journey to the Center of the Earth* (1864) and *Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea* (1870).

#### **EXAMPLE**

If the diameter of Earth is 8000 miles, find the average speed in miles per hour Phileas Fogg needs to circumnavigate Earth about the equator in 80 days.

#### Solution

To find the speed, you need to know the distance and the time. The distance around the equator is equal to the circumference C of a circle with a diameter of 8,000 miles.

$$C = \pi d$$
 The equation for circumference.  
 $= \pi(8,000)$  Substitute 8,000 for  $d$ .  
 $\approx 25,133$  Round to nearest mile.

So, Phileas must travel 25,133 miles in 80 days. To find the speed v in mi/h, you need to divide distance by time and convert days into hours.

$$v = \frac{\text{distance}}{\text{time}}$$
 The formula for speed, or velocity.  
 $\approx \frac{25,133 \text{ mi}}{80 \text{ days}} \cdot \frac{1 \text{ day}}{24 \text{ h}}$  Substitute values and convert units of time.  
 $\approx 13 \text{ mi/h}$  Evaluate and round to the nearest mile per hour.

If Earth's diameter were exactly 8,000 miles, you could evaluate  $\frac{8,000\pi}{80 \cdot 24}$  and get an exact answer of  $\frac{25\pi}{6}$  in terms of  $\pi$ .

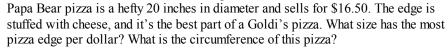
# EXERCISES

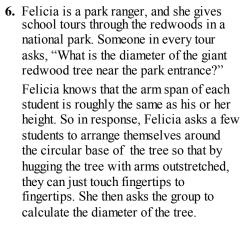


In Exercises 1-6, round answers to the nearest unit. You may use 3.14 as an approximate value of  $\pi$ . If you have a  $\pi$  button on your calculator, use that value and then round your final answer.



- 1. A satellite in a nearly circular orbit is 2000 km above Earth's surface. The radius of Earth is approximately 6400 km. If the satellite completes its orbit in 12 hours, calculate the speed of the satellite in kilometers per hour.
- 2. Wilbur Wrong is flying his remote-control plane in a circle with a radius of 28 meters. His brother, Orville Wrong, clocks the plane at 16 seconds per revolution. What is the speed of the plane? Express your answer in meters per second. The brothers may be wrong, but you could be right!
- 3. Here is a tiring problem. The diameter of a car tire is approximately 60 cm (0.6 m). The warranty is good for 70,000 km. About how many revolutions will the tire make before the warranty is up? More than a million? A billion? (1 km = 1000 m)
- 4. If the front tire of this motorcycle has a diameter of 50 cm (0.5 m), how many revolutions will it make if it is pushed 1 km to the nearest gas station? In other words, how many circumferences of the circle are there in 1000 meters?
- 5. Goldi's Pizza Palace is known throughout the city. The small Baby Bear pizza has a 6-inch radius and sells for \$9.75. The savory medium Mama Bear pizza sells for \$12.00 and has an 8-inch radius. The large







In one group, four students with heights of 138 cm, 136 cm, 128 cm, and 126 cm were able to ring the tree. What is the approximate diameter of the redwood?



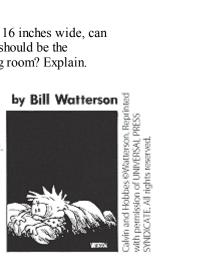
7. Application Zach wants a circular table so that 12 chairs, each 16 inches wide, can be placed around it with at least 8 inches between chairs. What should be the diameter of the table? Will the table fit in a 12-by-14-foot dining room? Explain.

# Calvin and Hobbes





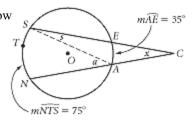


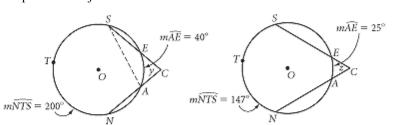


**8.** A 45 rpm record has a 7-inch diameter and spins at 45 revolutions per minute. A 33 rpm record has a 12-inch diameter and spins at 33 revolutions per minute. Find the difference in speeds of a point on the edge of a 33 rpm record to that of a point on the edge of a 45 rpm record, in ft/s. (h)

#### Review

**9.** *Mini-Investigation* Use what you know about inscribed angles and exterior angles of a triangle to find the missing angle measures in each diagram. Examine these cases to find a relationship between the measure of the angle formed by two intersecting secants,  $\angle ECA$ , and the measures of the two intercepted arcs,  $\overline{NTS}$  and  $\overline{AE}$ . Then copy and complete the conjecture below.





# Recreation CONNECTION •

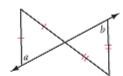
Using tinfoil records, Thomas Edison (1847–1931) invented the phonograph, the first machine to play back recorded sound, in 1877. Commonly called record players, they weren't widely reproduced until high-fidelity amplification (hi-fi) and advanced speaker systems came along in the 1930s. In 1948, records could be played at slower speeds to allow more material on the disc, creating longer-playing records (LPs). When compact discs became popular in the early 1990s, most record companies stopped making LPs. Some disc jockeys still use records instead of CDs.

**Conjecture:** The measure of an angle formed by two secants that intersect outside a circle is <u>1</u>.(Intersecting Secants Conjecture)

For an interactive version of this mini-investigation, see the **Dynamic Geometry Exploration** Intersecting Secants at www.keymath.com/DG

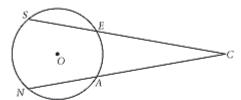


**10.** Developing Proof Given circle O with secants  $\overline{SE}$  and  $\overline{NA}$  in the diagram below, prove the conjecture you made in the last exercise. Start by drawing auxiliary line  $\overline{SA}$ .

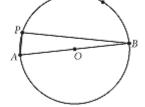


a equals b.

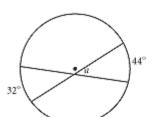
11. Developing Proof Explain why



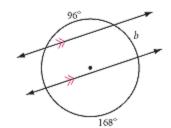
- **12.** As P moves from A to B along the semicircle  $\widehat{ATB}$ , which of these measures constantly increases?
  - **A.** The perimeter of  $\triangle ABP$
  - **B.** The distance from P to  $\overline{AB}$
  - C.  $m \angle ABP$
  - **D.**  $m \angle APB$



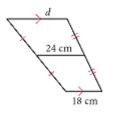
**13.** 
$$a = 7$$



**14.** 
$$b = ?$$



**15.** 
$$d = ?$$



- **16.** A helicopter has three blades each measuring about 26 feet. What is the speed in feet per second at the tips of the blades when they are moving at 400 rpm?
- **17.** Two sides of a triangle are 24 cm and 36 cm. Write an inequality that represents the range of values for the third side. Explain your reasoning.



# IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

# Picture Patterns I

Draw the next picture in each pattern. Then write the rule for the total number of squares in the *n*th picture of the pattern.

















# Solving Systems of **Linear Equations**

A system of equations is a set of two or more equations with the same variables. The solution of a system is the set of values that makes all the equations in the system true. For example, the system of equations below has solution (2, -3). Verify this by substituting 2 for x and -3 for y in both equations.

$$\begin{cases} y = 2x - 7 \\ y = -3x + 3 \end{cases}$$

Graphically, the solution of a system is the point of intersection of the graphs of the equations.

You can estimate the solution of a system by graphing the equations. However, the point of intersection may not have convenient integer coordinates. To find the exact solution, you can use algebra. Examples A and B review how to use the substitution and elimination methods for solving systems of equations.



## EXAMPLE A

Solve the system 
$$\begin{cases} 3y = 12x - 21 \\ 12x + 2y = 1 \end{cases}$$

#### Solution

You could use either method to solve this system of equations, but substitution may be the most direct. If you solve the first equation for y, then you can substitute the resulting expression for y into the second equation. Start by solving the first equation for y to get y = 4x - 7. Now, substitute the expression 4x - 7from the resulting equation for y in the second original equation.

$$12x + 2y = 1$$
 Second original equation.  
 $12x + 2(4x - 7) = 1$  Substitute  $4x - 7$  for  $y$ .  
 $x = \frac{3}{4}$  Solve for  $x$ .

To find y, substitute  $\frac{3}{4}$  for x in either original equation.

$$3y = 12\left(\frac{3}{4}\right) - 21$$
 Substitute  $\frac{3}{4}$  for  $x$  in the first original equation.  
 $y = -4$  Solve for  $y$ .

The solution of the system is  $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{3}{4}, -4 \end{pmatrix}$ . Verify by substituting these values for x and y in each of the original equations.

EXAMPLE B

Solve the system 
$$\begin{cases} 140a + 60b = 40 \\ 200a + 30b = 85 \end{cases}$$

#### ALGEBRA SKILLS 6 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 6 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 6 • USING

#### Solution

The way these equations are arranged, the variables line up. So elimination is probably the most direct method for solving this system. More importantly, it would be difficult to solve either equation for either variable. Using substitution would involve many fractions.

Solving a system by elimination involves adding or subtracting multiples of the equations to eliminate one of the variables. To solve this system, first multiply both sides of the second equation by 2 so that you have the same quantities of variable b.

$$\begin{cases} 140a + 60b = 40 \\ 200a + 30b = 85 \end{cases} \rightarrow \begin{cases} 140a + 60b = 40 \\ 400a + 60b = 170 \end{cases}$$

Now subtract the second equation from the first to eliminate b. Then solve for a.

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
140a + 60b &=& 40 \\
-(& 400a + 60b &=& 170) \\
\hline
-260a &=& -130 \\
a &=& \frac{1}{2}
\end{array}$$

To find the value of b, substitute  $\frac{1}{2}$  for a in either original equation.

$$140\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) + 60b = 40$$
 Substitute  $\frac{1}{2}$  for  $a$  in the first equation. 
$$b = -\frac{1}{2}$$
 Solve for  $b$ .

The solution is  $a = \frac{1}{2}$  and  $b = -\frac{1}{2}$ .

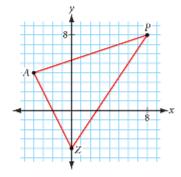
You have constructed points of concurrency, which are intersections of lines in a triangle. You can also find these on a coordinate plane. Suppose you know the coordinates of the vertices of a triangle. How can you find the coordinates of the circumcenter? You can graph the triangle, construct the perpendicular bisectors of the sides, and then *estimate* the coordinates of the point of concurrency. However, to find the exact coordinates, you need to use algebra. Let's look at an example.

## **EXAMPLE C**

Find the coordinates of the circumcenter of  $\triangle ZAP$  with Z(0, -4), A(-4, 4), and P(8, 8).

#### Solution

To find the coordinates of the circumcenter, you need to write equations for the perpendicular bisectors of two of the sides of the triangle and then find the point where the bisectors intersect.



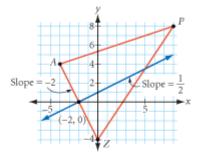
#### LGEBRA SKILLS 6 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 6 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 6 • USING

To review midpoint see pages 36–37. To review slope see pages 135–136.

To review slopes of perpendicular lines see pages 167–168. To review the slope-intercept form see pages 287–289. To find the equation for the perpendicular bisector of  $\overline{ZA}$ , first find the midpoint of  $\overline{ZA}$ , then find its slope.

Midpoint of 
$$\overline{ZA} = \left(\frac{0 + (-4)}{2}, \frac{-4 + 4}{2}\right)$$
  
=  $(-2, 0)$ 

Slope of 
$$\overline{ZA} = \frac{4 - (-4)}{-4 - 0} = \frac{8}{-4} = -2$$



The slope of the perpendicular bisector of  $\overline{ZA}$  is the opposite reciprocal of -2, or  $\frac{1}{2}$ , and it passes through point (-2, 0). Substituting these values into the slope-intercept form of a line and solving for the *y*-intercept gives the equation of the perpendicular bisector.

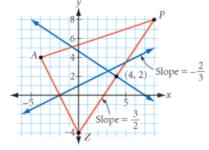
$$y = mx + b$$

$$0 = \frac{1}{2}(-2) + b$$

$$1 = b$$

$$y = \frac{1}{2}x + 1$$

You can use the same technique to find the equation of the perpendicular bisector of  $\overline{ZP}$ . The midpoint of ZP is

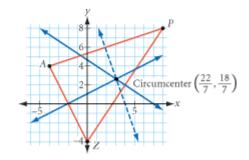


(4, 2), and the slope is  $\frac{3}{2}$ . So the slope of the perpendicular bisector of  $\overline{ZP}$  is  $-\frac{2}{3}$  and it passes through the point (4, 2). The equation of the perpendicular bisector is  $y = -\frac{2}{3}x + \frac{14}{3}$ .

Since all the perpendicular bisectors intersect at the same point, you can solve these two equations to find that point.

$$\begin{cases} y = \frac{1}{2}x + 1 & \text{Perpendicular bisector of } \overline{ZA}. \\ y = -\frac{2}{3}x + \frac{14}{3} & \text{Perpendicular bisector of } \overline{ZP}. \end{cases}$$

The circumcenter is  $(\frac{22}{7}, \frac{18}{7})$ . The steps of the solution are left as an exercise. You can verify this result by finding the equation of the perpendicular bisector of  $\overline{AP}$  and making sure that these values satisfy it.



# **EXERCISES**



Solve each system of equations algebraically.

1. 
$$\begin{cases} y = -2x + 2 \\ 6x + 2y = 3 \end{cases}$$

**2.** 
$$\begin{cases} -4x + 3y = 3 \\ 7x - 9y = 6 \end{cases}$$
 **3.** 
$$\begin{cases} 5x - y = -1 \\ 15x = 2y \end{cases}$$

$$3. \begin{cases} 5x - y = -1 \\ 15x = 2y \end{cases}$$

**4.** 
$$\begin{cases} x + 2y = 3 \\ 2x - y = 16 \end{cases}$$

**4.** 
$$\begin{cases} x + 2y = 3 \\ 2x - y = 16 \end{cases}$$
 **5.** 
$$\begin{cases} x + 3y = 6 \\ \frac{1}{3}x + y = 2 \end{cases}$$
 **6.** 
$$\begin{cases} 2x + y = 9 \\ y = -2x - 1 \end{cases}$$

**6.** 
$$\begin{cases} 2x + y = 9 \\ y = -2x - 1 \end{cases}$$

- 7. For Exercises 4, 5, and 6, graph the system of equations and explain how the solution relates to the graph.
- **8.** Solve the system of equations in Example C to show that the answer given is correct. Explain why you need to use only two perpendicular bisectors, not three.
- **9.** A snowboard rental company offers two different rental plans. Plan A offers \$4/h for the rental and a \$20 lift ticket. Plan B offers \$7/h for the rental and a free lift ticket.
  - **a.** Write the two equations that represent the costs for the two plans, using x for the number of hours. Solve for x and y.
  - **b.** Graph the two equations. What does the point of intersection represent?
  - **c.** Which is the better plan if you intend to snowboard for 5 hours? What is the most number of hours of snowboarding you can get for \$50?



- 10. The lines  $y = 3 + \frac{2}{3}x$ ,  $y = -\frac{1}{3}x$ , and  $y = -\frac{4}{3}x + 3$  intersect to form a triangle. Find the vertices of the triangle.
- 11. The vertices of parallelogram ABCD are A(2, 3), B(8, 4), C(10, 9), and D(4, 8).
  - **a.** Write the system of linear equations created by the diagonals of ABCD.
  - **b.** Solve the system to find the point of intersection of the diagonals.
  - **c.** Calculate the midpoint of each diagonal.
  - **d.** Explain how your results to parts b and c confirm the Parallelogram Diagonals Conjecture.
- 12. Triangle RES has vertices R(0, 0), E(4, -6), and S(8, 4). Find the equation of the perpendicular bisector of  $\overline{RE}$

In Exercises 13–15, find the coordinates of the circumcenter of each triangle.

- **13.** Triangle TRM with vertices T(-2, 1), R(4, 3), and M(-4, -1)
- **14.** Triangle FGH with vertices F(0, -6), G(3, 6), and H(12, 0)
- **15.** Right triangle MNO with vertices M(-4, 0), N(0, 5), and O(10, -3)
- **16.** For a right triangle, there is a shorter method for finding the circumcenter. What is it? Explain. (*Hint*: Graphing your work may help you recognize the method.)

Some people transform the sun into a yellow spot, others transform a vellow spot into the sun. PABLO PICASSO

# Arc Length

You have learned that the *measure* of a minor arc is equal to the measure of its central angle. On a clock, the measure of the arc from 12:00 to 4:00 is equal to the measure of the angle formed by the hour and minute hands. A circular clock is divided into 12 equal arcs, so the measure of each hour is  $\frac{360^{\circ}}{12}$ , or  $30^{\circ}$ . The measure of the arc from 12:00 to 4:00 is four times 30°, or 120°.

Notice that because the minute hand is longer, the tip of the minute hand must travel farther than the tip of the hour hand even though they both move 120° from 12:00 to 4:00. So the arc *length* is different even though the arc *measure* is the same!

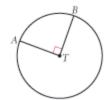


Let's take another look at the arc measure.

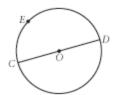
#### EXAMPLE A

What fraction of its circle is each arc?

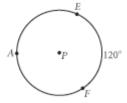
**a.**  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  is what fraction of circle T?



**b.**  $\overrightarrow{CED}$  is what fraction **c.**  $\overrightarrow{EF}$  is what fraction of circle O?



of circle P?



### Solution

In part a, you probably "just knew" that the arc is one-fourth of the circle because you have seen one-fourth of a circle so many times. Why is it

one-fourth? The arc measure is 90°, a full circle measures  $360^{\circ}$ , and  $\frac{90^{\circ}}{360^{\circ}} = \frac{1}{4}$ . The arc in part b is half of the circle because  $\frac{180^{\circ}}{360^{\circ}} = \frac{1}{2}$ . In part c, you may or may not have recognized right away that the arc is one-third of the circle. The arc is one-third of the circle because  $\frac{120^{\circ}}{360^{\circ}} = \frac{1}{3}$ .



# Cultural

This modern mosaic shows the plan of an ancient Mayan observatory. On certain days of the year light would shine through openings, indicating the seasons. This sculpture includes blocks of marble carved into arcs of concentric circles.

What do these fractions have to do with arc length? If you traveled halfway around a circle, you'd cover  $\frac{1}{2}$  of its perimeter, or circumference. If you went a quarter of the way around, you'd travel  $\frac{1}{4}$  of its circumference. The arc length is some fraction of the circumference of its circle.

The measure of an arc is calculated in units of degrees, but arc length is calculated in units of distance.



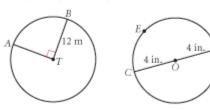
# **Investigation**

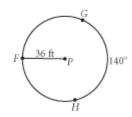
# **Finding the Arcs**

In this investigation you will find a method for calculating the arc length.

Step 1

For  $\overline{AB}$ ,  $\overline{CED}$ , and  $\overline{GH}$ , find what fraction of the circle each arc is.





- Step 2
- Find the circumference of each circle.
- Step 3
- Combine the results of Steps 1 and 2 to find the length of each arc.
- Step 4
- Share your ideas for finding the length of an arc. Generalize this method for finding the length of any arc, and state it as a conjecture.

### Arc Length Conjecture

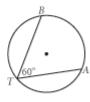
C-66

The length of an arc equals the 1.

How do you use this new conjecture? Let's look at a few examples.

### **EXAMPLE B**

If the radius of the circle is 24 cm and  $m \angle BTA = 60^{\circ}$ , what is the length of  $A\overline{B}$ ?



Solution

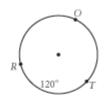
 $m\angle BTA = 60^{\circ}$ , so  $m\overline{AB} = 120^{\circ}$  by the Inscribed Angle Conjecture. Then  $\frac{120}{360} = \frac{1}{3}$ , so the arc length is  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the circumference, by the Arc Length Conjecture.

arc length = 
$$\frac{1}{3}C$$
  
=  $\frac{1}{3}(48\pi)$  Substitute  $2\pi r$  for  $C$ , where  $r=24$ .  
=  $16\pi$  Simplify.

The arc length is  $16\pi$  cm, or approximately 50.3 cm.

#### EXAMPLE C

If the length of  $\widehat{ROT}$  is  $116\pi$  meters, what is the radius of the circle?



#### ► Solution

$$\overline{mROT} = 240^{\circ}$$
, so  $\overline{ROT}$  is  $\frac{240}{360^{\circ}}$  or  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the circumference.

$$116\pi = \frac{2}{3}C$$

$$= \frac{1}{3} C$$
 Apply the Arc Length Conjecture.

$$116\pi = \frac{2}{3} (2\pi r)$$

Substitute 
$$2\pi r$$
 for  $C$ .

$$348\pi = 4\pi r$$

$$87 = r$$

Divide both sides by  $4\pi$ .

The radius is 87 m.



# **EXERCISES**

You will need



A calculator for Exercises 9–14

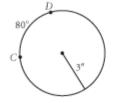


Construction tools for Exercise 18

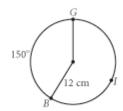


Geometry software for Exercises 18 and 24

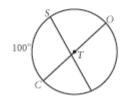
- For Exercises 1-8, state your answers in terms of
  - **1.** Length of  $\overline{CD}$  is  $\frac{1}{2}$ .



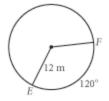
3. Length of  $\overline{BIG}$  is  $\frac{1}{2}$ .



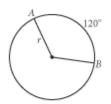
**6.** The radius is 9 m. Length of  $\overline{SO}$  is  $\frac{1}{2}$ .



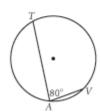
**2.** Length of  $\overline{EF}$  is  $\frac{1}{2}$ .



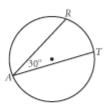
**4.** Length of  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  is  $6\pi$  m. The radius is  $\frac{?}{}$ .



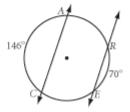
7. Length of  $\widehat{TV}$  is  $12\pi$  in. The diameter is  $\frac{?}{}$ .



5. The radius is 18 ft. Length of  $\widehat{RT}$  is  $\frac{1}{2}$ .



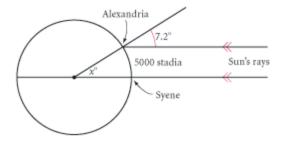
8. Length of  $\widehat{AR}$  is  $40\pi$  cm.  $\widehat{CA} \parallel \widehat{RE}$ . The radius is  $\widehat{A}$ .



- 9. A go-cart racetrack has 100-meter straightaways and semicircular ends with diameters of 40 meters. Calculate the average speed in meters per minute of a go-cart if it completes 4 laps in 6 minutes. Round your answer to the nearest m/min. (h)
- 10. Astronaut Polly Hedra circles Earth every 90 minutes in a path above the equator. If the diameter of Earth is approximately 8000 miles, what distance along the equator will she pass directly over while eating a quick 15-minute lunch?
- **11.** *Application* The Library of Congress reading room has desks along arcs of concentric circles. If an arc on the outermost circle with eight desks is about 12 meters long and makes up  $\frac{1}{9}$  of the circle, how far are these desks from the center of the circle? How many desks would fit along an arc with the same central angle, but that is half as far from the center? Explain. (h)
- 12. A Greek mathematician who lived in the 3rd century B.C.E., Eratosthenes, devised a clever method to calculate the circumference of Earth. He knew that the distance between Aswan (then called Syene) and Alexandria was 5000 Greek stadia (a stadium was a unit of distance at that time), or about 500 miles. At noon of the summer solstice, the Sun cast no shadow on a vertical pole in Syene, but at the same time in Alexandria a vertical pole did cast a shadow. Eratosthenes found that the angle between the vertical pole and the ray from the tip of the pole to the end of the shadow was 7.2°. From this he was able to calculate the ratio of the distance between



The Library of Congress, Washington, D.C.



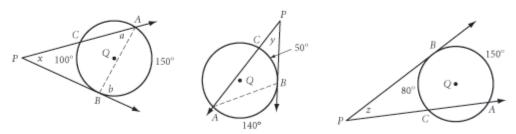
the two cities to the circumference of Earth. Use this diagram to explain Eratosthenes' method, then use it to calculate the circumference of Earth in miles.

#### Review

13. Angular velocity is a measure of the rate at which an object revolves around an axis, and can be expressed in degrees per second. Suppose a carousel horse completes a revolution in 20 seconds. What is its angular velocity? Would another horse on the carousel have a different angular velocity? Why or why not?

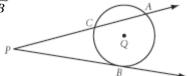


- **14.** Tangential velocity is a measure of the distance an object travels along a circular path in a given amount of time. Like speed, it can be expressed in meters per second. Suppose two carousel horses complete a revolution in 20 seconds. The horses are 8 m and 6 m from the center of the carousel, respectively. What are the tangential velocities of the two horses? Round your answers to the nearest 0.1 m/s. Explain why the horses have equal angular velocities but different tangential velocities.
- **15.** *Mini-Investigation* Use what you learned about the angle formed by a tangent and a chord in Lesson 6.4, Exercise 8, as well as what you know about inscribed angles and exterior angles of a triangle to find the missing angle measures in each diagram. Examine these cases to find a relationship between the measure of the angle formed by a tangent and a secant to a circle,  $\angle BPA$ , and the measures of the two intercepted arcs,  $\widehat{AB}$  and  $\widehat{BC}$ . Then copy and complete the conjecture below.

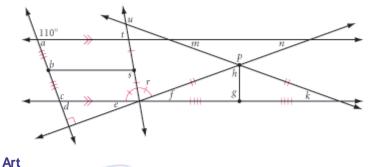


**Conjecture:** The measure of the angle formed by an intersecting tangent and secant to a circle is <u>1</u>. (Tangent-Secant Conjecture)

**16.** Developing Proof Given circle Q with secant PA and tangent PB in the diagram at right, prove the conjecture you made in the last exercise. Start by drawing auxiliary line  $\overline{AB}$ 



17. Calculate the measure of each lettered angle.



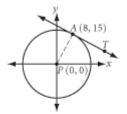


The traceries surrounding rose windows in Gothic cathedrals were constructed with only arcs and straight lines. The photo at right shows a rose window from Reims cathedral, which was built in the 13th century in Reims, a city in

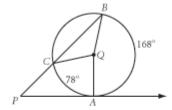
northeastern France. The overlaid diagram shows its constructions.

**18.** *Construction* Read the Art Connection above. Reproduce the constructions shown with your compass and straightedge or with geometry software.

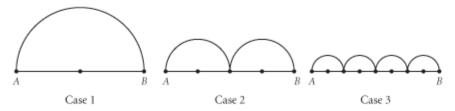
- 19. Find the measure of the angle formed by a clock's hands at 10:20.
- **20.** Circle P is centered at the origin.  $\overrightarrow{AT}$  is tangent to circle P at A(8, 15). Find the equation of  $A\overline{T}$ .



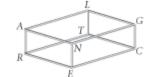
**21.**  $\overline{PA}$  is tangent to circle O. The line containing chord  $\overline{CB}$  passes through P. Find  $m \angle P$ .



22. If AB = 16 cm, find the sum of the lengths of the semicircular bumps for each case. If the pattern continues, what would be the sum of the lengths of the bumps for Case 10?



23. How many different 3-edge routes are possible from R to G along the wire frame shown? (h)



**24. Technology** Use geometry software to pick any three points. Construct an arc through all three points. (Can it be done?) How do you find the center of the circle that passes through all three points?



#### RACETRACK GEOMETRY

If you had to start and finish at the same line of a racetrack, which lane would you choose? The inside lane has an obvious advantage. For a race to be fair, runners in the outside lanes must be given head starts, as shown in the photo.

Design a four-lane oval track with straightaways and semicircular ends. Show start and finish lines so that an 800-meter race can be run fairly in all four lanes. The semicircular ends must have inner diameters of 50 meters. The distance of one lap in the inner lane must be 800 meters.

Your project should contain

- A detailed drawing with labeled lengths.
- ▶ An explanation of the part that radius, lane width, and straightaway length plays in the design.







# Intersecting Lines Through a Circle

This chapter had five mini-investigations that explored the relationships between the angles and arcs formed by intersecting lines through a circle. Each mini-investigation resulted in a conjecture.

Lesson 6.2, Exercise 23, investigated the angle formed by intersecting tangents.

Lesson 6.4, Exercise 8, investigated the angle formed by the intersection of a tangent and a chord.

Lesson 6.5, Exercise 16, investigated the angle formed by intersecting chords.

Lesson 6.6, Exercise 9, investigated the angle formed by intersecting secants.

Lesson 6.7, Exercise 15, investigated the angle formed by the intersection of a secant and a tangent.

You will use Sketchpad to investigate these conjectures and how they are related.

# **Activity 1**

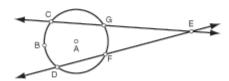
# **Exploring Secants and Chords**

You will use Sketchpad to investigate intersecting secants and chords. Is there one unifying relationship that can explain both of these cases?

Step 1 Construct a circle with center *A* and radius point *B*. Move point *B* to the left of point *A*.

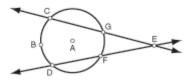
Step 2 Construct points C and D on the circle, and point E outside the circle. Move point C to the upper-left portion of the circle and point D to the lower-left portion of the circle. Move point E to the right of the circle.

Step 3 Construct the lines  $\overrightarrow{CE}$  and  $\overrightarrow{DE}$ . Construct point F where  $\overrightarrow{DE}$  intersects the circle and point G where  $\overrightarrow{CE}$  intersects the circle. Your sketch should now look similar to the diagram below.



- Step 4 Measure ∠*CED*, the angle formed by the intersecting lines. You will observe this angle throughout the rest of this activity.
- Step 5 Measure *CBD*, the larger arc formed by the intersecting lines, by selecting points *C*, *B*, *D*, and circle *A*, in order, and choosing **Arc Angle** from the Measure menu.
- Step 6 Measure  $\overline{FG}$ , the smaller arc formed by the intersecting lines, by selecting points F, G, and circle A, in order, and choosing **Arc Angle** again.
- Step 7 Investigate what happens as you move point *E* about the screen. Do you notice any patterns in the three measured values?
- Step 8 What happens if you drag point *E* to the edge of the circle? What happens if you drag it to the center of the circle? Which conjectures or definitions do these two cases illustrate?
- Step 9 Drag point E outside the circle again and to the right. Choose **Calculate** from the Measure menu to find the difference between the measures of the arcs,  $m\bar{C}B\bar{D} m\bar{F}\bar{G}$ .
- Step 10 Drag points E, C, and D and look for patterns. What is the relationship between  $m\angle CED$  and  $m\overline{CBD} m\overline{FG}$ ? Edit the calculation so that it gives the value of  $m\angle CED$  and complete the conjecture.





#### **Intersecting Secants Conjecture**

The measure of an angle formed by two secants that intersect outside a circle is  $\frac{2}{3}$ .

Step 11 Drag point E inside the circle. Consider the two intersecting chords,  $\overline{CG}$  and  $\overline{DF}$ . Is the conjecture for intersecting secants also true for intersecting chords? Create a new calculation that gives the value of  $m\angle CED$  and complete the conjecture.

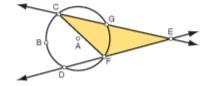
### **Intersecting Chords Conjecture**

The measure of an angle formed by two intersecting chords is  $\underline{1}$ .

Step 12 Drag point E outside and to the right of the circle. Construct  $\overline{CF}$ , and then construct  $\triangle CEF$  by selecting the three vertices and choosing

**Triangle Interior** from the Construct menu. How are  $\angle CFD$  and  $\angle FCG$  related to the intercepted arcs? How are they related to  $\angle CED$ ? Use these relationships to explain why the Intersecting Secants Conjecture is true.

m∠CED = 27.79° m GBD on ⊕ AB = 117.77° m FG on ⊕ AB = 62.18°



Step 13 Drag point E inside the circle and observe what happens to the triangle. How is  $\angle CED$  related to  $\triangle CEF$  when point E is inside the circle? Explain why the Intersecting Chords Conjecture is different from the Intersecting Secants Conjecture.

To find a universal calculation for both intersecting secants and intersecting chords, choose **Preferences** from the Edit menu and change the Units for Angle to **directed degrees.** Directed degrees are defined as positive for counterclockwise angle or arc measures and negative for clockwise measures. Drag point *E* in and out of the circle to see if the calculation for intersecting secants now works for intersecting chords. Can you explain why?



These circles in the sand were created by the wind blowing blades of grass.

# **Activity 2**

Step 14

Step 2

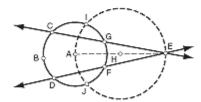
# **Exploring Tangents**

If you move a secant so that it intersects the circle at only one point, it becomes a tangent. You will continue to use the sketch from the previous activity to investigate what happens when the secants become tangents.

Step 1 Hide  $\overline{CF}$  and the triangle interior from Activity 1. Choose **Preferences** and change the Units for Angle back to **degrees**.

Drag point E outside and to the right of the circle. Construct  $A\overline{E}$  with midpoint E. Construct circle E with radius point E. Label the two points of intersection of the circles E and E, and then hide circle E, and midpoint E.

 $m\angle CED = 23.05^{\circ}$   $m \ \widehat{CBD} \ on @ AB = 92.71^{\circ}$  $m \ \widehat{FG} \ on @ AB = 46.60^{\circ}$ 



Step 3 Select points C and I in order. Choose **Action Buttons** from the Edit menu, click on **Movement** in the submenu, and press OK in the dialog box. Press the new  $Move\ C \rightarrow I$  button. Does the calculation for intersecting secants still work? Complete the conjecture.

#### **Tangent-Secant Conjecture**

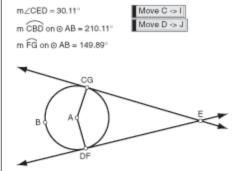
The measure of an angle formed by an intersecting tangent and secant to a circle is  $\frac{2}{3}$ .

Step 4 Repeat the process in the last step to create a  $Move D \rightarrow J$  button and press it to get two tangents. Check that the calculation for intersecting secants still works, and then look for a new relationship. How is  $m\angle CED$  related to mFG? Use this relationship to complete the conjecture.

#### Intersecting Tangents Conjecture

The measure of an angle formed by intersecting tangents to a circle is  $\underline{1}$ .

Step 5 Construct the radii from *A* to the two points of tangency. Use the Quadrilateral Sum Conjecture and the Tangent Conjecture to explain why the Intersecting Tangents Conjecture is true. Then use your algebra skills to show why this relationship is equivalent to the calculation for intersecting secants.



Step 6 Delete the radii. Select point E and circle A, and choose Merge Point To Circle from the Edit menu. What happens to the measure of the smaller arc? Superimposing points D and E forms one tangent and one chord. Drag point D toward point E while observing the measures of  $\overline{CBD}$  and  $\angle CED$  and complete the conjecture.

#### **Tangent-Chord Conjecture**

The measure of an angle formed by the intersection of a tangent and chord at the point of tangency is  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

Step 7 As an extension, explain why the construction in Step 2 determines the points of tangency from point *E* to circle *A*.



In this chapter you learned some new circle vocabulary and solved real-world application problems involving circles. You discovered the relationship between a radius and a tangent line. You discovered special relationships between angles and their intercepted arcs. And you learned about the special ratio  $\pi$  and how to use it to calculate the circumference of a circle and the length of an arc.



You should be able to sketch these terms from memory: *chord*, *tangent*, *central angle*, *inscribed angle*, and *intercepted arc*. And you should be able to explain the difference between arc measure and arc length.



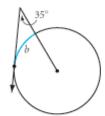
## **EXERCISES**



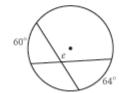
- 1. What do you think is the most important or useful circle property you learned in this chapter? Why?
- 2. How can you find the center of a circle with a compass and a straightedge? With patty paper? With the right-angled corner of a carpenter's square?
- **3.** What does the path of a satellite have to do with the Tangent Conjecture?
- **4.** Explain the difference between the degree measure of an arc and its arc length.

Solve Exercises 5–19. If the exercise uses the "=" sign, answer in terms of  $\pi$ . If the exercise uses the " $\equiv$ " sign, give your answer accurate to one decimal place.

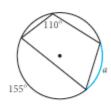
**5.** 
$$b = 1$$



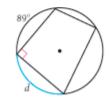
**8.** 
$$e = ?$$



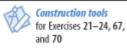
**6.** 
$$a = 1$$



**9.** 
$$d = ?$$

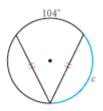


#### You will need

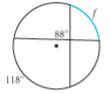




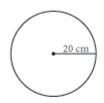
7. c = 1



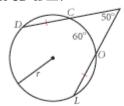
**10.** 
$$f = 1$$



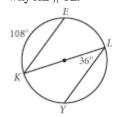
**11.** circumference ⇒ ?



**14.** r = 36 ft. The length of  $\widehat{CD}$  is  $\stackrel{?}{\perp}$ .

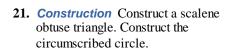


17. Developing Proof Explain why  $\overline{KE}$  //  $\overline{YL}$ .



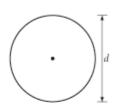
the column?

20. On her latest archaeological dig, Ertha Diggs has unearthed a portion of a cylindrical column. All she has with her is a pad of paper. How can she use it to locate the diameter of

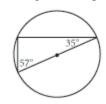


- 22. Construction Construct a scalene acute triangle. Construct the inscribed
- circle. 23. Construction Construct a rectangle. Is it possible to construct the circumscribed circle,

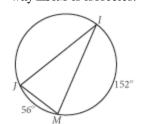
**12.** circumference = 132 cmd = 1



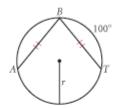
**15.** Developing Proof What's wrong with this picture?



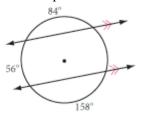
18. Developing Proof Explain why  $\triangle JIM$  is isosceles.



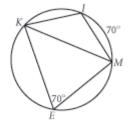
13. r = 27 cm. The length of  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  is  $\overrightarrow{\bot}$ .



**16.** Developing Proof What's wrong with this picture?



19. Developing Proof Explain why  $\triangle KIM$  is isosceles.



the inscribed circle, neither, or both?

**24.** *Construction* Construct a rhombus. Is it possible to construct the circumscribed circle, the inscribed circle, neither, or both?

**25.** Find the equation of the line tangent to circle *S* centered at (1, 1) if the point of tangency is (5, 4).

**26.** Find the center of the circle passing through the points (-7, 5), (0, 6), and (1, -1).

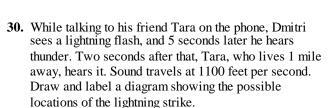
**27.** Rashid is an apprentice on a road crew for a civil engineer. He needs to find a trundle wheel similar to but larger than the one shown at right. If each rotation is to be 1 m, what should be the diameter of the trundle wheel?

**28.** Melanie rides the merry-go-round on her favorite horse on the outer edge, 8 meters from the center of the merry-go-round. Her sister, Melody, sits in the inner ring of horses, 3 meters in from Melanie. In 10 minutes, they go around 30 times. What is the average speed of each sister?

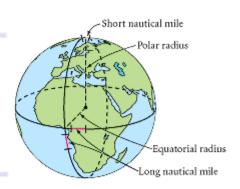
**29.** Read the Geography Connection below. Given that the polar radius of Earth is 6357 kilometers and that the equatorial radius of Earth is 6378 kilometers, use the original definition to calculate one nautical mile near a pole and one nautical mile near the equator. Show that the international nautical mile is between both values.



One nautical mile was originally defined to be the length of one minute of arc of a great circle of Earth. (A great circle is the intersection of the sphere and a plane that cuts through its center. There are 60 minutes of arc in each degree.) But Earth is not a perfect sphere. It is wider at the great circle of the equator than it is at the great circle through the poles. So defined as one minute of arc, one nautical mile could take on a range of values. To remedy this, an international nautical mile was defined as 1.852 kilometers (about 1.15 miles).



31. King Arthur wishes to seat all his knights at a round table. He instructs Merlin to design and create an oak table large enough to seat 100 people. Each knight is to have 2 ft along the edge of the table. Help Merlin calculate the diameter of the table.





- **32.** If the circular moat should have been a circle of radius 10 meters instead of radius 6 meters, how much greater should the larger moat's circumference have been?
- 33. The part of a circle enclosed by a central angle and the arc it intercepts is called a **sector**. The sector of a circle shown below can be curled into a cone by bringing the two straight 45-cm edges together. What will be the diameter of the base of the cone?



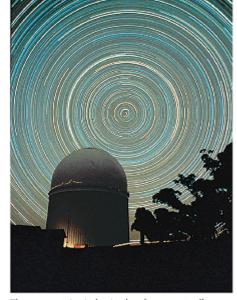
See book for image

# MIXED REVIEW

In Exercises 34–56, identify the statement as true or false. For each false statement, explain why it is false or sketch a counterexample.

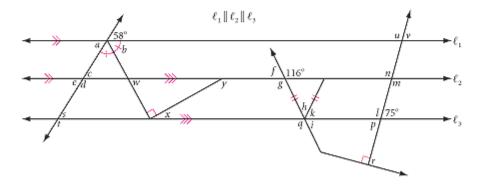
- **34.** If a triangle has two angles of equal measure, then the third angle is acute.
- 35. If two sides of a triangle measure 45 cm and 36 cm, then the third side must be greater than 9 cm and less than 81 cm.
- **36.** The diagonals of a parallelogram are congruent.
- **37.** The measure of each angle of a regular dodecagon is 150°.
- 38. The perpendicular bisector of a chord of a circle passes through the center of the circle.
- **39.** If  $\overline{CD}$  is the midsegment of trapezoid PLYR with  $\overline{PL}$  one of the bases, then  $CD = \frac{1}{2}(PL + YR).$
- **40.** In  $\triangle BOY$ , BO = 36 cm,  $m \angle B = 42^\circ$ , and  $m \angle O = 28^\circ$ . In  $\triangle GRL$ , GR = 36 cm,  $m\angle R = 28^{\circ}$ , and  $m\angle L = 110^{\circ}$ . Therefore,  $\triangle BOY \cong \triangle GRL$ .
- **41.** If the sum of the measures of the interior angles of a polygon is less than 1000°, then the polygon has fewer than seven sides.
- **42.** The sum of the measures of the three angles of an obtuse triangle is greater than the sum of the measures of the three angles of an acute triangle.
- **43.** The sum of the measures of one set of exterior angles of a polygon is always less than the sum of the measures of interior angles.

- **44.** Both pairs of base angles of an isosceles trapezoid are supplementary.
- **45.** If the base angles of an isosceles triangle each measure 48°, then the vertex angle has a measure of 132°.
- **46.** Inscribed angles that intercept the same arc are supplementary.
- **47.** The measure of an inscribed angle in a circle is equal to the measure of the arc it intercepts.
- **48.** The diagonals of a rhombus bisect the angles of the rhombus.
- **49.** The diagonals of a rectangle are perpendicular bisectors of each other.
- **50.** If a triangle has two angles of equal measure, then the triangle is equilateral.
- **51.** If a quadrilateral has three congruent angles, then it is a rectangle.
- **52.** In two different circles, arcs with the same measure are congruent.
- **53.** The ratio of the diameter to the circumference of a circle is  $\pi$ .
- **54.** If the sum of the lengths of two consecutive sides of a kite is 48 cm, then the perimeter of the kite is 96 cm.
- 55. If the vertex angles of a kite measure  $48^{\circ}$  and  $36^{\circ}$ , then the nonvertex angles each measure  $138^{\circ}$ .



The concentric circles in the sky are actually a time exposure photograph of the movement of the stars in a night.

- **56.** All but seven statements in Exercises 34–56 are false.
- **57.** Find the measure of each lettered angle in the diagram below.

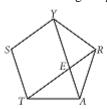


© 2008 Key Curriculum Press

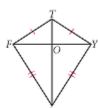
CHAPTER 6 REVIEW363

Developing Proof In Exercises 58-60, from the information given, determine which triangles, if any, are congruent. State the congruence conjecture that supports your congruence statement.

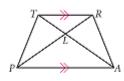
**58.** *STARY* is a regular pentagon.



**59.** *FLYT* is a kite.



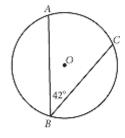
**60.** *PART* is an isosceles trapezoid.



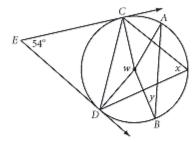
**61.** Adventurer Dakota Davis has uncovered a piece of triangular tile from a mosaic. A corner is broken off. Wishing to repair the mosaic, he lays the broken tile piece down on paper and traces the straight edges. With a ruler he then extends the unbroken sides until they meet. What triangle congruence shortcut guarantees that the tracing reveals the original shape?



**62.** Circle *O* has a radius of 24 inches. Find the measure and the length of AC.



**63.** Developing Proof  $\overrightarrow{EC}$  and  $\overrightarrow{ED}$  are tangent to the circle, and AB = CD. Find the measure of each lettered angle. Explain.



- 64. Use your protractor to draw and label a pair of supplementary angles that is not a linear pair.
- **65.** Find the function rule f(n) of this sequence and find the 20th term.

n	1	2	3	4	5	6	 n	 20
f(n)	5	1	-3	-7	-11	-15		

- **66.** The design at right shows three hares joined by three ears, although each hare appears to have two ears of its own.
  - **a.** Does the design have rotational symmetry?
  - **b.** Does the design have reflectional symmetry?
- **67.** *Construction* Construct a rectangle whose length is twice its width.
- **68.** If AB = 15 cm, C is the midpoint of  $\overline{AB}$ , D is the midpoint of  $\overline{AC}$ , and E is the midpoint of  $\overline{DC}$ , what is the length of  $\overline{EB?}$
- **69.** Draw the next shape in this pattern.



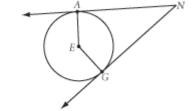


Private Collection, Berkeley, California Ceramist, Diana Hall

**70.** Construction Construct any triangle. Then construct its centroid.

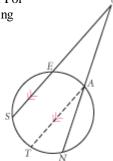
# TAKE ANOTHER LOOK

- **1. Developing Proof** Show how the Tangent Segments Conjecture follows logically from the Tangent Conjecture and the converse of the Angle Bisector Conjecture.
- 2. Developing Proof Investigate the quadrilateral formed by two tangent segments to a circle and the two radii to the points of tangency. State a conjecture. Explain why your conjecture is true, based on the properties of radii and tangents.



- **3. Developing Proof** State the Cyclic Quadrilateral Conjecture in "if-then" form. Then state the converse of the conjecture in "if-then" form. Is the converse also true?
- **4. Developing Proof** A quadrilateral that *can* be inscribed in a circle is also called a cyclic quadrilateral. Which of these quadrilaterals are always cyclic: parallelograms, kites, isosceles trapezoids, rhombuses, rectangles, or squares? Which ones are never cyclic? Explain why each is or is not always cyclic.
- 5. Use graph paper or a graphing calculator to graph the data collected from the investigation in Lesson 6.5. Graph the diameter on the *x*-axis and the circumference on the *y*-axis. What is the slope of the best-fit line through the data points? Does this confirm the Circumference Conjecture? Explain.

- **6.** Construction Construct a tangent to a circle from a point external to the circle. For this to be a construction, you need to determine the precise point of tangency using your construction tools, not just by placing your ruler on the point and circle so that it appears to be tangent. (*Hint*: Look at the diagram on page 357.)
- 7. Developing Proof In Lesson 6.6, Exercise 10, you proved the Intersecting Secants Conjecture using auxiliary line  $\overline{SA}$  and the Triangle Exterior Angle Conjecture. Another proof uses an auxiliary line parallel to secant SE through point A and the Parallel Lines Intercepted Arcs Conjecture. Write this proof.



# Assessing What You've Learned

With the different assessment methods you've used so far, you should be getting the idea that assessment means more than a teacher giving you a grade. All the methods presented so far could be described as self-assessment techniques. Many are also good study habits. Being aware of your own learning and progress is the best way to stay on top of what you're doing and to achieve the best results.



#### WRITE IN YOUR JOURNAL

- You may be at or near the end of your school year's first semester. Look back over the first semester and write about your strengths and needs. What grade would you have given yourself for the semester? How would you justify that grade?
- Set new goals for the new semester or for the remainder of the year. Write them in your journal and compare them to goals you set at the beginning of the year. How have your goals changed? Why?



**ORGANIZE YOUR NOTEBOOK**Review your notebook and conjectures list to be sure they are complete and well organized. Write a one-page chapter summary.



**UPDATE YOUR PORTFOLIO** Choose a piece of work from this chapter to add to your portfolio. Document the work according to your teacher's instructions.



**PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENT** While a classmate, a friend, a family member, or a teacher observes, carry out one of the investigations or Take Another Look activities from this chapter. Explain what you're doing at each step, including how you arrived at the conjecture.



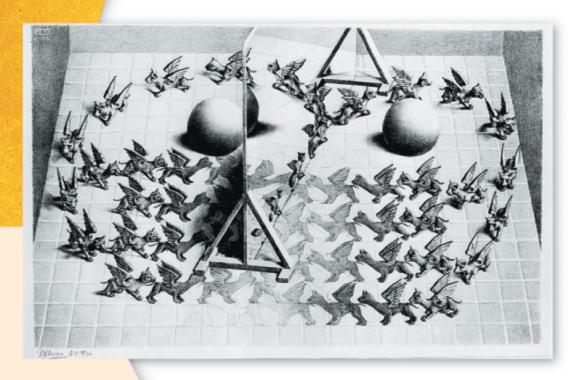
WRITE TEST ITEMS Divide the lessons from this chapter among group members and write at least one test item per lesson. Try out the test questions written by your classmates and discuss them.



GIVE A PRESENTATION Give a presentation on an investigation, exploration, Take Another Look project, or puzzle. Work with your group, or try giving a presentation on your own.

7

# **Transformations and Tessellations**



I believe that producing pictures, as I do, is almost solely a question of wanting so very much to do it well.

M. C. ESCHER

Magic Mirror, M. C. Escher, 1946 ©2002 Cordon Art B. V.–Baarn–Holland. All rights reserved.

#### **OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will

- discover some basic properties of transformations and symmetry
- learn more about symmetry in art and nature
- create tessellations



Symmetry is one idea by which man through the ages has tried to comprehend and create order, beauty, and perfection.

HERMANN WEYL



Each light bulb is an image of every other light bulb.

# Transformations and **Symmetry**

By moving all the points of a geometric figure according to certain rules, you can create an image of the original figure. This process is called **transformation**. Each point on the original figure corresponds to a point on its image. The image of point A after a transformation of any type is called point A' (read "A prime"), as shown in the transformation of  $\triangle ABC$  to  $\triangle A'B'C'$  on the facing page.

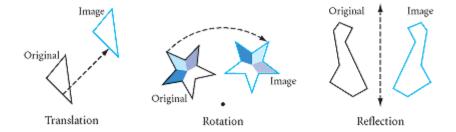


Frieze of bowmen from the Palace of Artaxerxes II in Susa, Iran

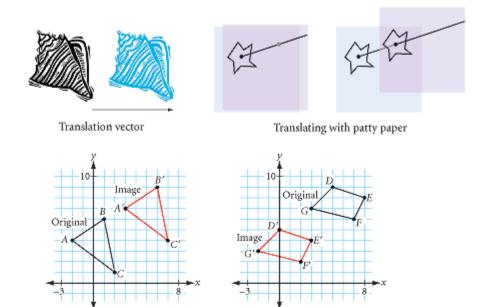
If the image is congruent to the original figure, the process is called rigid

transformation, or isometry. A transformation that does not preserve the size and shape is called or **nonrigid transformation**. For example, if an image is reduced or enlarged, or if the shape changes, its transformation is nonrigid.

Three types of rigid transformation are translation, rotation, and reflection. You have been doing translations, rotations, and reflections in your patty-paper investigations and in exercises on the coordinate plane, using (x, y) rules.

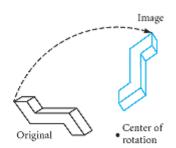


**Translation** is the simplest type of isometry. You can model a translation by tracing a figure onto patty paper, then sliding it along a straight path without turning it. Notice that when you slide the figure, all points move the same distance along parallel paths to form its image. That is, each point in the image is equidistant from the point that corresponds to it in the original figure. This distance, because it is the same for all points, is called the distance of the translation. A translation also has a particular direction. So you can use a translation vector to describe the translation.



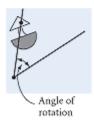
Translations on a coordinate grid

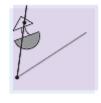
Rotation is another type of isometry. In a rotation is another type of isometry, in a rotation, all the points in the original figure rotation, all the points from the number of degrees about a fixed center point, the number of about a fixed center its fixed center point, the number of about a fixed center is a fixed center in a fixed center in a fixed center is a fixed center in a fixed

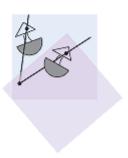


You can model a rotation by tracing over a figure, then putting your pencil point on a point on the patty paper and rotating the patty paper about the point.



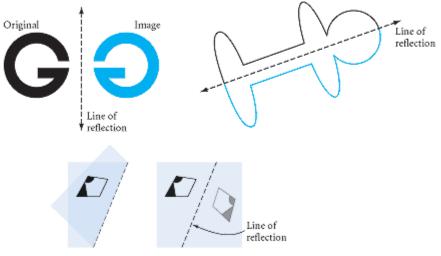






Rotating with patty paper

Reflection is a type of isometry that produces a figure's "mirror image." If you draw a figure onto a piece of paper, place the edge of a mirror perpendicular to your paper, and look at the figure in the mirror, you will see the reflected image of the figure. The line where the mirror is placed is called the line of reflection.



Reflecting with patty paper



Leonardo da Vinci (1452-1519, Italy) wrote his scientific discoveries backward so that others couldn't read them and punish him for his research and ideas. His knowledge and authority in almost every subject is astonishing even today. Scholars marvel at his many notebooks containing research into anatomy, mathematics, architecture, geology, meteorology, machinery, and botany, as well as his art masterpieces, like the Mona Lisa. Notice his plans for a helicopter in the manuscript at right!





# Investigation

# The Basic Property of a Reflection

#### You will need

- patty paper
- a straightedge

Step 1

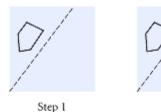
Step 2

important property of reflections. Draw a polygon and a line of reflection next to it on a piece of patty paper.

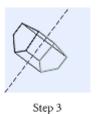
In this investigation you'll model reflection with patty paper and discover an

Fold your patty paper along the line of reflection and create the reflected image of your polygon by tracing it.

Step 3 Draw segments connecting each vertex with its image point. What do you notice?







Step 4

Compare your results with those of your group members. Copy and complete the following conjecture.

#### **Reflection Line Conjecture**

C-67

The line of reflection is the <u>?</u> of every segment joining a point in the original figure with its image.

If a figure can be reflected over a line in such a way that the resulting image coincides with the original, then the figure has **reflectional symmetry**. The reflection line is called the **line of symmetry**. The Navajo rug shown below has two lines of symmetry.

The letter T has reflectional symmetry. You can test a figure for reflectional symmetry by using a mirror or by folding it.







Navajo rug (two lines of symmetry)

The letter Z has 2-fold rotational symmetry. When it is rotated 180° and 360° about a center of rotation, the image coincides with the original figure.

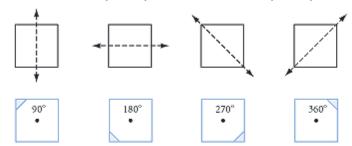


If a figure can be rotated about a point in such a way that its rotated image coincides with the original figure before turning a full 360°, then the figure has **rotational symmetry.** Of course, every image is identical to the original figure after a rotation of any multiple of 360°. However, we don't call a figure symmetric if this is the only kind of symmetry it has. You can trace a figure to test it for rotational symmetry. Place the copy exactly over the original, put your pen or pencil point on the center to hold it down, and rotate the copy. Count the number of times the copy and the original coincide until the copy is back in its original position. Two-fold rotational symmetry is also called **point symmetry.** 



This tile pattern has both 5-fold rotational symmetry and 5-fold reflectional symmetry.

Some polygons have no symmetry or only one kind of symmetry. Regular polygons, however, are symmetric in many ways. A square, for example, has 4-fold reflectional symmetry and 4-fold rotational symmetry.



#### Art CONNECTION

Reflecting and rotating a letter can produce an unexpected and beautiful design. With the aid of graphics software, a designer can do this quickly and inexpensively. For more information, go to www.keymath.com/DG. This design was created by geometry student Michelle Cotter.



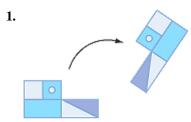
# Practice Your Skill **EXERCISES**

You will need



In Exercises 1–3, say whether the transformations are rigid or nonrigid. Explain how you know.

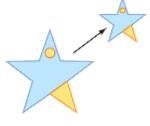
Jaymallhoom



2.

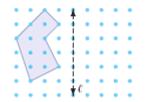


3.



In Exercises 4–6, copy the figure onto graph or square dot paper and perform each transformation.

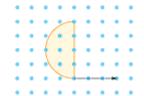
4. Reflect the figure across the line of reflection, line 2.



**5.** Rotate the figure 180° about the center of rotation, point P.



**6.** Translate the figure by the translation vector.

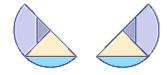


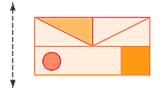
- An ice skater gliding in one direction creates several translation transformations. Give another real-world example of translation.
- **8.** An ice skater twirling about a point creates several rotation transformations. Give another real-world example of rotation.

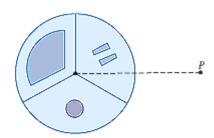
In Exercises 9–11, perform each transformation. Attach your patty paper to your homework.

- **9. Construction** Use the semicircular figure and its reflected image.
  - a. Copy the figure and its reflected image onto a piece of patty paper. Locate the line of reflection. Explain your method.
  - **b.** Copy the figure and its reflected image onto a sheet of paper. Locate the line of reflection using a compass and straightedge. Explain your method.
- **10.** *Construction* Use the rectangular figure and the reflection line next to it.
  - **a.** Copy the figure and the line of reflection onto a sheet of paper. Use a compass and straightedge to construct the reflected image. Explain your method.
  - **b.** Copy the figure and the line of reflection onto a piece of patty paper. Fold the paper and trace the figure to construct the reflected image.
- 11. Trace the circular figure and the center of rotation, P. Rotate the design  $90^{\circ}$  clockwise about point P. Draw the image of the figure, as well as the dotted line.









In Exercises 12–14, identify the type (or types) of symmetry in each design.



Butterfly



Hmong textile, Laos



The Temple Beth Israel, San Diego's first synagogue, built in 1889

15. All of the woven baskets from Botswana shown below have rotational symmetry and most have reflectional symmetry. Find one that has 7-fold symmetry. Find one with 9-fold symmetry. Which basket has rotational symmetry but not reflectional symmetry? What type of rotational symmetry does it have?



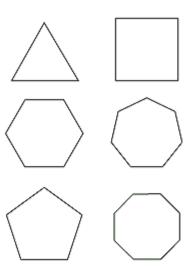
Cultural CONNECTION

For centuries, women in Botswana, a country in southern Africa, have been weaving baskets like the ones you see at left, to carry and store food. Each generation passes on the tradition of weaving choice shoots from the mokola palm and decorating them in beautiful geometric patterns with natural dyes. In the past 40 years, international demand for the baskets by retailers and tourists has given economic stability to hundreds of women and their families.

**16.** *Mini-Investigation* Copy and complete the table below. If necessary, use a mirror to locate the lines of symmetry for each of the regular polygons. To find the number of rotational symmetries, you may wish to trace each regular polygon onto patty paper and rotate it. Then copy and complete the conjecture.

Number of sides of regular polygon	3	4	5	6	7	8	 n
Number of reflectional symmetries		4					
Number of rotational symmetries (≤ 360°)		4					

A regular polygon of n sides has  $\frac{1}{n}$  reflectional symmetries and 1 rotational symmetries.



#### Review

In Exercises 17 and 18, sketch the next two figures.

17. CO. DO. EE, FFI, GO. : . :







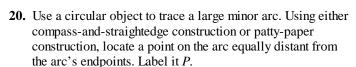


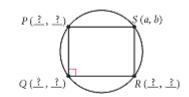






**19.** Polygon *PQRS* is a rectangle inscribed in a circle centered at the origin. The slope of  $\overline{PS}$  is 0. Find the coordinates of points P, Q, and R in terms of a and b.

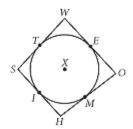




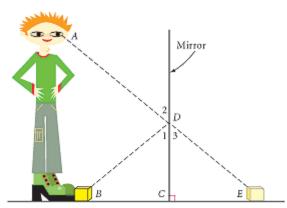
21. If the circle pattern continues, how many total circles (shaded and unshaded) will there be in the 50th figure? How many will there be in the *n*th figure?



22. Quadrilateral SHOW is circumscribed about circle X. WO = 14, HM = 4, SW = 11, and ST = 5. What is the perimeter of SHOW?



23. Developing Proof What you see in a mirror is actually light from an object bouncing off the mirror and traveling to your eye. The object's image seen in the mirror appears as if it were reflected behind the mirror, as far behind the mirror as the object is in front of the mirror. In the diagram at right, assume that the mirror is perpendicular to the ground. Use the fact that the light's incoming angle,  $\angle 1$ , is congruent to its outgoing angle,  $\angle 2$ , to explain why BC = CE.



## IMPROVING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS

# The Difference of Squares

$$17^2 - 16^2 = 33$$

$$17^2 - 16^2 = 33$$
  $25.5^2 - 24.5^2 = 50$   $34^2 - 33^2 = 67$   $58^2 - 57^2 = 115$   $62.1^2 - 61.1^2 = 123.2$   $76^2 - 75^2 = 151$ 

$$34^2 - 33^2 = 67$$

$$58^2 - 57^2 = 115$$

$$62.1^2 - 61.1^2 = 123.2$$

$$76^2 - 75^2 = 151$$

Can you use algebra to explain why you can just add the two base numbers to get the answer ? (For example, 17 + 16 = 33.)





7.2

"Why it's a looking-glass book, of course! And, if I hold it up to the glass. the words will all go the right way again."

ALICE IN THROUGH THE LOOKING-GLASS BY LEWIS CARROLL

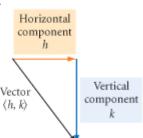
# **Properties of Isometries**

n many earlier exercises, you used **ordered pair rules** to transform polygons on a coordinate plane by relocating their vertices. For any point on a figure, the

ordered pair rule  $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + h, y + k)$  results in

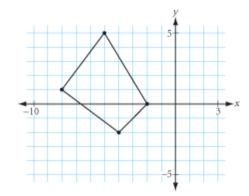
a horizontal move of h units and a vertical move of k units for any numbers h and k. That is, if (x, y) is a point on the original figure, (x + h, y + k) is its corresponding point on the image.

An ordered pair rule can also be written as a vector. As shown at right, a vector is named by its horizontal and vertical components.



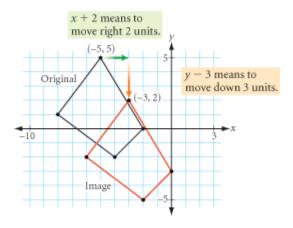
#### EXAMPLE A

Transform the polygon at right using the rule  $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 2, y - 3).$ Describe the type and direction of the transformation, and write it as a vector.



#### Solution

Apply the rule to each ordered pair. Every point of the polygon moves right 2 units and down 3 units. This is a translation by the vector (2, -3).



So the ordered pair rule  $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + h, y + k)$  results in a translation by the vector h, k, where h is the horizontal component of the vector and k is the vertical component of the vector.



Investigation 1

# Transformations on a Coordinate Plane

#### You will need

- graph paper
- patty paper

In this investigation you will discover (or rediscover) how four ordered pair rules transform a polygon. Each person in your group can choose a different polygon for this investigation.

Step 1

On graph paper, create and label four sets of coordinate axes. Draw the same polygon in the same position in a quadrant of each of the four graphs. Write one of these four ordered pair rules below each graph.

$$\mathbf{a.} \ (x,y) \to (-x,y)$$

**b.** 
$$(x, y) \to (x, -y)$$

**c.** 
$$(x, y) \to (-x, -y)$$

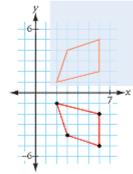
$$\mathbf{d.} \ (x,y) \to \ (y,x)$$

Step 2

Use the ordered pair rule you assigned to each graph to relocate the vertices of your polygon and create its image.

Step 3

Use patty paper to see if your transformation is a reflection, translation, or rotation. Compare your results with those of your group members. Complete the conjecture. Be specific.



C-68

## **Coordinate Transformations Conjecture**

The ordered pair rule  $(x, y) \rightarrow (-x, y)$  is a...

The ordered pair rule  $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, -y)$  is a...

The ordered pair rule  $(x, y) \rightarrow (-x, -y)$  is  $a^2$ .

The ordered pair rule  $(x, y) \rightarrow (y, x)$  is a?

Let's revisit "poolroom geometry." When a ball rolls without spin into a cushion, the outgoing angle is congruent to the incoming angle. This is true because the outgoing and incoming angles are reflections of each other.



# **Investigation 2**

# **Finding a Minimal Path**

#### You will need

- patty paper
- a protractor

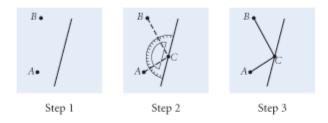
In Chapter 1, you used a protractor to find the path of the ball. In this investigation, you'll discover some other properties of reflections that have many applications in science and engineering. They may even help your pool game!



Draw a segment, representing a pool table cushion, near the center of a piece of Step 1 patty paper. Draw two points, A and B, on one side of the segment.

Imagine you want to hit a ball at point A so that it bounces off the cushion and Step 2 hits another ball at point B. Use your protractor and trial and error to find the point C on the cushion that you should aim for.

Draw  $\overline{AC}$  and  $\overline{CB}$  to represent the ball's path. Step 3



Fold your patty paper to draw the reflection of point *B* across the line segment. Step 4 Label the image point B'.

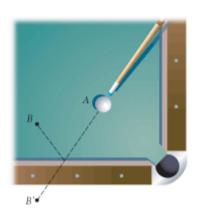
Step 5 Unfold the paper and draw a segment from point A to point B'. What do you notice? Does point C lie on segment  $\overline{AB'}$ ? How does the path from A to B'compare to the two-part path from A to C to B? Step 4

Step 6 Can you draw any other path from point A to the cushion to point B that is shorter than AC + CB? Why or why not? The shortest path from point A to the cushion to point B is called the **minimal path.** Copy and complete the conjecture.

### Minimal Path Conjecture

If points A and B are on one side of line  $\ell$ , then the minimal path from point A to line  $\mathcal{L}$  to point B is found by

How can this discovery help your pool game? Suppose you need to hit a ball at point A into the cushion so that it will bounce off the cushion and pass through point B. To what point on the cushion should you aim? Visualize point B reflected across the cushion. Then aim directly at the reflected image.



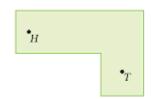
Step 5

C-69

Let's look at a miniature-golf example.

#### EXAMPLE B

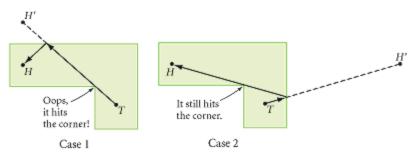
How can you hit the ball at T around the corner and into the hole at *H* in one shot?



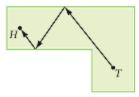


#### Solution

First, try to get a hole-in-one with a direct shot or with just one bounce off a wall. For one bounce, decide which wall the ball should hit. Visualize the image of the hole across that wall and aim for the reflected hole. There are two possibilities.

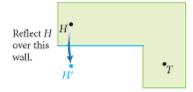


In both cases the path is blocked. It looks like you need to try two bounces. Visualize a path from the tee hitting two walls and into the hole.



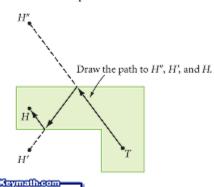
Visualize the path.

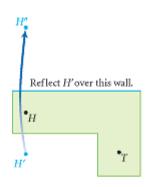
Now you can work backward. Which wall will the ball hit last? Reflect the hole across that wall creating image H'.



Which wall will the ball hit before it approaches the second wall? Reflect the image of the hole H' across that wall creating image H" (read "H double prime").

Draw the path from the tee to H'', H', and H. Can you visualize other possible paths with two bounces? Three bounces? What do you suppose is the minimal path from T to H?



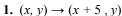


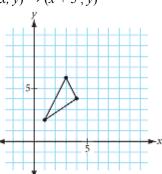
## **EXERCISES**

In Exercises 1–5, copy the figure and draw the image according to the rule. Identify the type of transformation.

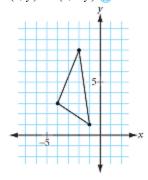




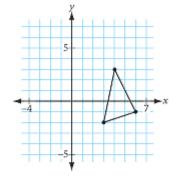




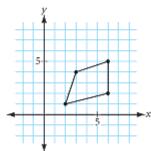
**2.** 
$$(x, y) \to (x, -y)$$



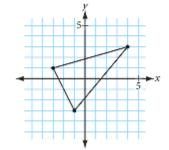
**3.** 
$$(x, y) \to (y, x)$$



#### **4.** $(x, y) \rightarrow (8 - x, y)$



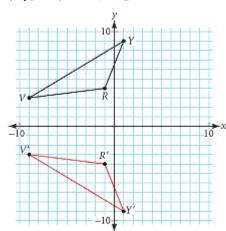
5. 
$$(x, y) \to (-x, -y)$$



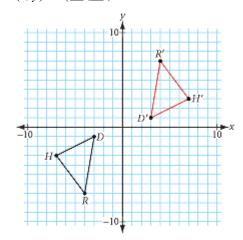
**6.** Look at the rules in Exercises 1–5 that produced reflections. What do these rules have in common? How about the ones that produce rotations? Translations? For those rules that produce translations, give the translation vector.

In Exercises 7 and 8, complete the ordered pair rule that transforms the black triangle to its image, the red triangle.

7.  $(x, y) \rightarrow (\underline{?}, \underline{?})$ 

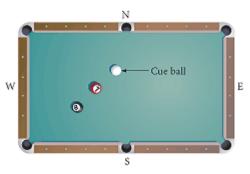


**8.**  $(x, y) \to (1, 1, 1)$ 

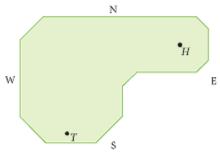


In Exercises 9–11, copy the position of each ball and hole onto patty paper and draw the path of the ball.

9. What point on the W cushion can a player aim for so that the cue ball bounces and strikes the 8-ball? What point can a player aim for on the S cushion?

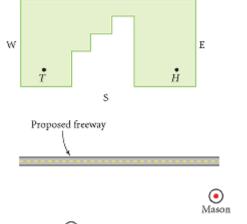


**10.** Starting from the tee (point *T*), what point on a wall should a player aim for so that the golf ball bounces off the wall and goes into the hole at *H*?



**11.** Starting from the tee (point *T*), plan a shot so that the golf ball goes into the hole at *H*. Show all your work.

N



12. A new freeway is being built near the two towns of Perry and Mason. The two towns want to build roads to one junction point on the freeway. (One of the roads will be named Della Street.) Locate the junction point and draw the minimal path from Perry to the freeway to Mason. How do you know this is the shortest path?

Perry

#### Review

In Exercises 13 and 14, sketch the next two figures.

13. H. S2, 83, 44, 65, ; ;











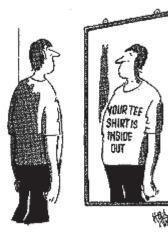
15. The word DECODE remains unchanged when it is reflected across its horizontal line of symmetry. Find another such word with at least five letters.

→--DECODE---

- **16.** How many reflectional symmetries does an isosceles triangle have?
- 17. How many reflectional symmetries does a rhombus have?
- **18.** Write what is actually on the T-shirt shown at right.
- **19.** Construction Construct a kite circumscribed about a circle.
- 20. Construction Construct a rhombus circumscribed about a circle.

In Exercises 21 and 22, identify each statement as true or false. If true, explain why. If false, give a counterexample.

- 21. If two angles of a quadrilateral are right angles, then it is a rectangle.
- 22. If the diagonals of a quadrilateral are congruent, then it is a rectangle.



By Holland, ©1976, Punch Cartoon Library.

### IMPROVING YOUR REASONING SKILLS

### Chew on This for a While

If the third letter before the second consonant after the third vowel in the alphabet is in the twenty-seventh word of this paragraph, then print the fifteenth word of this paragraph and then print the twenty-second letter of the alphabet after this word. Otherwise, list three uses for chewing gum.



There are things which nobody would see unless I photographed them.
DIANE ARBUS

# **Compositions of Transformations**

In Lesson 7.2, you reflected a point, then reflected it again to find the path of a ball. When you apply one transformation to a figure and then apply another transformation to its image, the resulting transformation is called a **composition** of transformations. Let's look at an example of a composition of two translations.

# **EXAMPLE** | Triangle ABC v

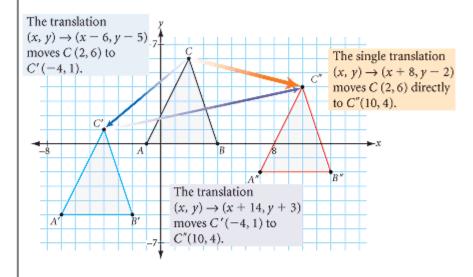
Triangle *ABC* with vertices A(-1, 0), B(4, 0), and C(2, 6) is first translated by the rule  $(x, y) \rightarrow (x - 6, y - 5)$ , and then its image,  $\triangle A'B'C'$ , is translated by the rule  $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 14, y + 3)$ .



- a. What single translation is equivalent to the composition of these two translations?
- **b.** What single translation brings the second image,  $\triangle A'' B'' C''$ , back to the position of the original triangle,  $\triangle ABC$ ?

#### Solution

Draw  $\triangle ABC$  on a set of axes and relocate its vertices using the first rule to get  $\triangle A'B'C'$ . Then relocate the vertices of  $\triangle A'B'C'$  using the second rule to get  $\triangle A''B''C''$ .



**a.** Each vertex is moved left 6 then right 14, and down 5 then up 3. So the equivalent single translation would be  $(x, y) \rightarrow (x - 6 + 14, y - 5 + 3)$  or  $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 8, y - 2)$ . You can also write this as a translation by (8, -2).

**b.** Reversing the steps, the translation by (-8, 2) brings the second image,  $\triangle A'' B'' C''$ , back to  $\triangle ABC$ .

In the investigations you will see what happens when you compose reflections.



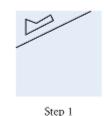
#### Investigation 1

#### **Reflections across Two Parallel Lines**

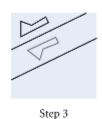
You will need

patty paper

First, consider the case of parallel lines of reflection.







On a piece of patty paper, draw a figure and a line of reflection that does not Step 1 intersect it.

Fold to reflect your figure across the line of reflection and trace the image. Step 2

On your patty paper, draw a second reflection line parallel to the first so that the Step 3 image is between the two parallel reflection lines.

Step 4 Fold to reflect the image across the second line of reflection. Turn the patty paper over and trace the second image.

How does the second image compare to the original Step 5 figure? Name the single transformation that transforms the original to the second image.

Use a compass or patty paper to measure the distance Step 6 between a point in the original figure and its second image point. Compare this distance with the distance between the parallel lines. How do they compare?

Compare your findings with those of others in your Step 7 group and state your conjecture.



Step 4



Step 5

#### Reflections across Parallel Lines Conjecture

C-70

A composition of two reflections across two parallel lines is equivalent to a single 1. In addition, the distance from any point to its second image under the two reflections is 1 the distance between the parallel lines.

Is a composition of reflections always equivalent to a single reflection? If you reverse the reflections in a different order, do you still get the original figure back? Can you express a rotation as a set of reflections?



#### Investigation 2

#### **Reflections across Two Intersecting Lines**

#### You will need

- patty paper
- a protractor

Next, you will explore the case of intersecting lines of reflection.









Step 2

Step 3

- Step 1 On a piece of patty paper, draw a figure and a reflection line that does not intersect it.
- Step 2 Fold to reflect your figure across the line and trace the image.
- Step 3 On your patty paper, draw a second reflection line intersecting the first so that the image is in an acute angle between the two intersecting reflection lines.



Step 4 Fold to reflect the first image across the second line and trace the second image.









Step 6



Step 7

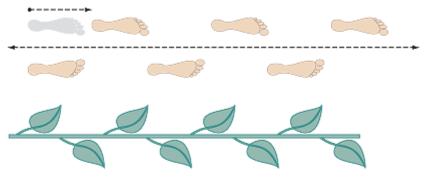
- Draw two rays that start at the point of intersection of the two intersecting Step 5 lines and that pass through corresponding points on the original figure and its second image.
- Step 6 How does the second image compare to the original figure? Name the single transformation from the original to the second image.
- Step 7 With a protractor or patty paper, compare the angle created in Step 5 with the acute angle formed by the intersecting reflection lines. How do the angles compare?
- Step 8 Compare findings in your group and state your next conjecture.

#### Reflections across Intersecting Lines Conjecture



A composition of two reflections across a pair of intersecting lines is equivalent to a single 1. The angle of 1 is 1 the acute angle between the pair of intersecting reflection lines.

There are many other ways to combine transformations. Combining a translation with a reflection gives a special two-step transformation called a glide reflection. A sequence of footsteps is a common example of a glide reflection. You will explore a few other examples of glide reflection in the exercises and later in this chapter.

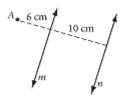


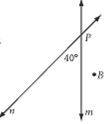
Glide-reflectional symmetry

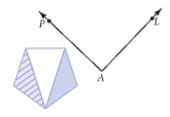


#### EXERCISES

- 1. Name the single translation vector that can replace the composition of these three translation vectors:  $\langle 2, 3 \rangle$ , then  $\langle -5, 7 \rangle$ , then  $\langle 13, 0 \rangle$ .
- 2. Name the single rotation that can replace the composition of these three rotations about the same center of rotation: 45°, then 50°, then 85°. What if the centers of rotation differ? Draw a figure and try it.
- 3. Lines m and n are parallel and 10 cm apart.
  - **a.** Point A is 6 cm from line m and 16 cm from line n. Point A is reflected across line m, and then its image, A', is reflected across line n to create a second image, point A''. How far is point Afrom point A''?
  - **b.** What if A is reflected across n, and then its image is reflected across m? Find the new image and distance from A.
- **4.** Two lines m and n intersect at point P, forming a  $40^{\circ}$  angle.
  - **a.** You reflect point B across line m, then reflect the image of B across line n. What angle of rotation about point P rotates the second image of point B back to its original position?
  - **b.** What if you reflect B first across n, and then reflect the image of Bacross m? Find the angle of rotation that rotates the second image back to the original position.
- **5.** Copy the figure and  $\angle PAL$  onto patty paper. Reflect the figure across  $\overline{AP}$ . Reflect the image across  $\overline{AL}$ . What is the equivalent rotation?

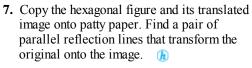


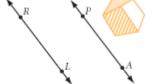




**6.** Copy the figure and the pair of parallel lines onto patty paper. Reflect the figure across  $\overline{PA}$ . Reflect the image across  $\overline{RL}$ . What is the length of the equivalent translation vector?





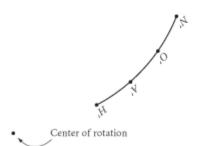




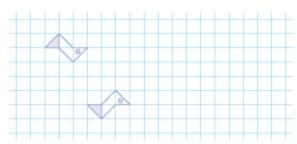


8. Copy the original figure and its rotated image onto patty paper. Find a pair of intersecting reflection lines that transform the original onto the image.





9. Copy the two figures below onto graph paper. Each figure is the glide-reflected image of the other. Continue the pattern with two more glide-reflected figures.



10. Have you noticed that some letters have both horizontal and vertical symmetries? Have you also noticed that all the letters that have both horizontal and vertical symmetries also have point symmetry? Is this a coincidence? Use what you have learned about transformations to explain why.



11. What combination of transformations changed the figure into the image as shown below?



#### Review

In Exercises 12 and 13, sketch the next two figures.

12.























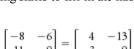
14. If you draw a figure on an uninflated balloon and then blow up the balloon, the figure will undergo a nonrigid transformation. Give another example of a nonrigid transformation.

15. List two objects in your home that have rotational symmetry, but not reflectional symmetry. List two objects in your classroom that have reflectional symmetry, but not rotational symmetry.

**16.** Is it possible for a triangle to have exactly one line of symmetry? Exactly two? Exactly three? Support your answers with sketches.

17. Draw two points onto a piece of paper and connect them with a curve that is point symmetric.

18. Study these two examples of matrix addition, and then use your inductive reasoning skills to fill in the missing entries in a and b.



$$\begin{bmatrix} 12 & -7 \\ -14 & 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -8 & -6 \\ 11 & 9 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -13 \\ -3 & 9 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 7 & 6 & 5 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 5 & -7 \\ -2 & 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 8 & -3 \\ 5 & 9 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

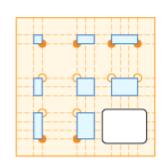
$$\mathbf{a.} \begin{bmatrix} -5 & 11 \\ -12 & 20 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \frac{?}{?} & \frac{?}{?} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -14 & 11 \\ 0 & 13 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{a.} \begin{bmatrix} -5 & 11 \\ -12 & 20 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \frac{?}{?} & \frac{?}{?} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -14 & 11 \\ 0 & 13 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \mathbf{b.} \begin{bmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} a & 2b & 3c \\ -d & d-e & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{?}{?} & \frac{?}{?} & \frac{?}{?} \end{bmatrix}$$

#### IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### 3-by-3 Inductive Reasoning Puzzle I

Sketch the figure missing in the lower-right corner of this 3-by-3 pattern.







ESSON

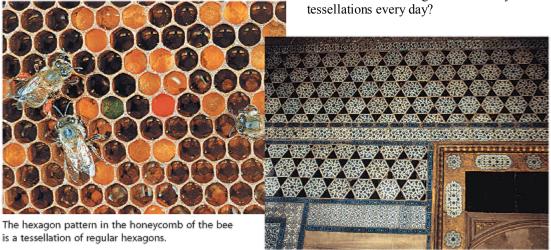
I see a certain order in the universe and math is one way of making it visible. MAY SARTON

#### Tessellations with **Regular Polygons**

Honeycombs are remarkably geometric structures. The hexagonal cells that bees make are ideal because they fit together perfectly without any gaps. The regular hexagon is one of many shapes that can completely cover a plane without gaps or overlaps. Mathematicians call such an arrangement of shapes a tessellation or a tiling. A tiling that uses only one shape is called a monohedral tessellation.

You can find tessellations in every home. Decorative floor tiles have tessellating patterns of squares. Brick walls, fireplaces, and wooden decks often display creative

tessellations of rectangles. Where do you see



Regular hexagons and equilateral triangles combine in this tiling from the 17th-century Topkapi Palace in Istanbul, Turkey.





You already know that squares and regular hexagons create monohedral tessellations. Because each regular hexagon can be divided into six equilateral triangles, we can logically conclude that equilateral triangles also create monohedral tessellations. Will other regular polygons tessellate? Let's look at this question logically.

For shapes to fill the plane without gaps or overlaps, their angles, when arranged around a point, must have measures that add up to exactly 360°. If the sum is less than 360°, there will be a gap. If the sum is greater, the shapes will overlap. Six 60° angles from six equilateral triangles add up to 360°, as do four 90° angles from four squares or three 120° angles from three regular hexagons. What about regular pentagons? Each angle in a regular pentagon measures 108°, and 360 is not divisible by 108. So regular pentagons cannot be arranged around a point without overlapping or leaving a gap. What about regular heptagons?



Triangles

Squares



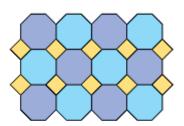
Pentagons

Hexagons

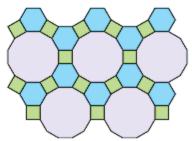
Heptagons

In any regular polygon with more than six sides, each angle has a measure greater than 120°, so no more than two angles can fit about a point without overlapping. So the only regular polygons that create monohedral tessellations are equilateral triangles, squares, and regular hexagons. A monohedral tessellation of congruent regular polygons is called a regular tessellation.

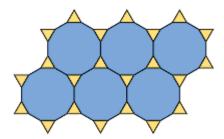
Tessellations can have more than one type of shape. You may have seen the octagon-square combination at right. In this tessellation, two regular octagons and a square meet at each vertex. Notice that you can put your pencil on any vertex and that the point is surrounded by one square and two octagons. So you can call this a 4.8.8 or a 4.8<sup>2</sup> tiling. The sequence of numbers gives the vertex arrangement, or numerical name for the tiling.



When the same combination of regular polygons (of two or more kinds) meet in the same order at each vertex of a tessellation, it is called a semiregular **tessellation.** Below are two more examples of semiregular tessellations.



The same polygons appear in the same order at each vertex: square, hexagon, dodecagon.



The same polygons appear in the same order at each vertex: triangle, dodecagon, dodecagon.

There are eight different semiregular tessellations. Three of them are shown above. In this investigation, you will look for the other five. Fortunately, the remaining five use only combinations of triangles, squares, and hexagons.

Find or create a set of regular triangles, squares, and hexagons for this investigation.

Then work with your group to find the remaining five of the eight semiregular

tessellations. Remember, the same combination of regular polygons must meet in

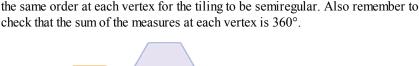


#### Investigation

#### The Semiregular Tessellations

#### You will need

- a set of triangles, squares, and hexagons with equal side lengths
- pattern blocks (optional)
- geometry software (optional)









- Step 1 Investigate which combinations of two kinds of regular polygons you can use to create a semiregular tessellation.
- Step 2 Next, investigate which combinations of three kinds of regular polygons you can use to create a semiregular tessellation.
- Step 3 Summarize your findings by sketching all eight semiregular tessellations and writing their vertex arrangements (numerical names).

The three regular tessellations and the eight semiregular tessellations you just found are called the **Archimedean tilings**. They are also called 1-uniform tilings because all the vertices in a tiling are identical.

#### Mathematics

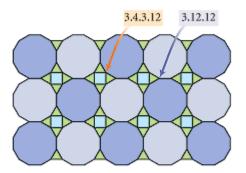
CONNECTION

Greek mathematician and inventor Archimedes (ca. 287–212 B.C.E.) studied the relationship between mathematics and art with tilings. He described 11 plane tilings made up of regular polygons, with each vertex being the same type. Plutarch (ca. 46–127 C.E.) wrote of Archimedes' love of geometry, "...he neglected to eat and drink and

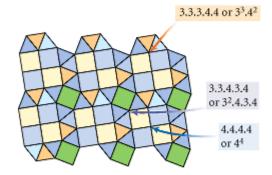


took no care of his person that he was often carried by force to the baths, and when there he would trace geometrical figures in the ashes of the fire."

Often, different vertices in a tiling do not have the same vertex arrangement. If there are two different types of vertices, the tiling is called 2-uniform. If there are three different types of vertices, the tiling is called 3-uniform. Two examples are shown below.



A 2-uniform tessellation: 3.4.3.12/3.122



A 3-uniform tessellation: 33.42/32.4.3.4/44

There are 20 different 2-uniform tessellations of regular polygons, and 61 different 3-uniform tilings. The number of 4-uniform tessellations of regular polygons is still an unsolved problem.

#### EXERCISES



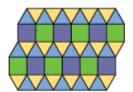
1. Sketch two objects or designs you see every day that are monohedral tessellations.



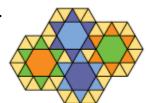
**2.** List two objects or designs outside your classroom that are semiregular tessellations.

In Exercises 3–5, write the vertex arrangement for each semiregular tessellation in numbers.

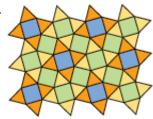
3.



4.

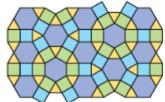


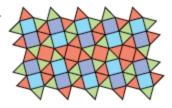
5.



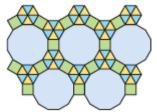
In Exercises 6–8, write the vertex arrangement for each 2-uniform tessellation in numbers.

6.

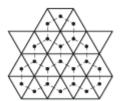




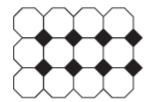
8.



**9.** When you connect the center of each triangle across the common sides of the tessellating equilateral triangles at right, you get another tessellation. This new tessellation is called the dual of the original tessellation. Notice the dual of the equilateral triangle tessellation is the regular hexagon tessellation. Every regular tessellation of regular polygons has a dual.



- **a.** Draw a regular square tessellation and make its dual. What is the dual?
- **b.** Draw a hexagon tessellation and make the dual of it. What is the dual?
- **c.** What do you notice about the duals?
- 10. You can make dual tessellations of semiregular tessellations, but they may not be tessellations of regular polygons. Try it. Sketch the dual of the 4.8.8 tessellation, shown at right. Describe the dual.



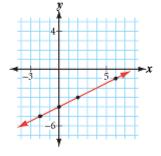
**Technology** In Exercises 11–14, use geometry software, templates of regular polygons, or pattern blocks.

- 11. Sketch and color the 3.6.3.6 tessellation. Continue it to fill an entire sheet of paper.
- 12. Sketch the 4.6.12 tessellation. Color it so it has reflectional symmetry but not rotational symmetry.

- **13.** Show that two regular pentagons and a regular decagon fit about a point, but that 5.5.10 does not create a semiregular tessellation.
- **14.** Create the tessellation 3.12.12/3.4.3.12. Draw your design onto a full sheet of paper. Color your design to highlight its symmetries.

#### Review

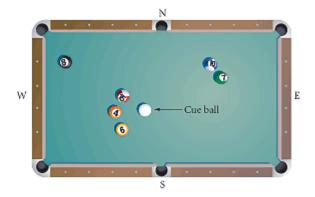
- **15.** Design a logo with rotational symmetry for Happy Time Ice-Cream Company. Or design a logo for your group or for a made-up company.
- **16.** Reflect  $y = \frac{1}{2}x 4$  across the *x*-axis and find the equation of the image line.
- **17.** Words like MOM, WOW, TOOT, and OTTO all have a vertical line of symmetry when you write them in capital letters. Find another word that has a vertical line of symmetry.





The design at left comes from *Inversions*, a book by Scott Kim. Not only does the design spell the word *mirror*, it does so with mirror symmetry!

18. Frisco Fats needs to sink the 8-ball into the NW corner pocket, but he seems trapped. Can he hit the cue ball to a point on the N cushion so that it bounces out, strikes the S cushion, and taps the 8-ball into the corner pocket? Copy the table and construct the path of the ball.



#### IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### Painted Faces I

Suppose some unit cubes are assembled into a large cube, then some of the faces of this large cube are painted. After the paint dries, the large cube is disassembled into the unit cubes, and you discover that 32 of these have no paint on any of their faces. How many faces of the large cube were painted?





The most uniquely personal of all that he knows is that which he has discovered for himself. JEROME BRUNER

#### **Tessellations with Nonregular Polygons**

In Lesson 7.4, you tessellated with regular polygons. You drew both regular and semiregular tessellations with them. What about tessellations of nonregular polygons? For example, will a scalene triangle tessellate? Let's investigate.



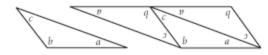


#### Investigation 1

#### Do All Triangles Tessellate?

Step 1

Make 12 congruent scalene triangles and use them to try to create a tessellation.



Step 2

Look at the angles about each vertex point. What do you notice?

Step 3

What is the sum of the measures of the three angles of a triangle? What is the sum of the measures of the angles that fit around each point? Compare your results with the results of others and state your next conjecture.

#### Procedure Note

#### **Making Congruent Triangles**

- 1. Stack three pieces of paper and fold them in half.
- 2. Draw a scalene triangle on the top half-sheet and cut it out, cutting through all six layers to get six congruent scalene triangles.
- 3. Use one triangle as a template and repeat. You now have 12 congruent triangles.
- 4. Label the corresponding angles of each triangle a, b, and *c*, as shown.

#### **Tessellating Triangles Conjecture**

🕺 triangle will create a monohedral tessellation.

C-72

You have seen that squares and rectangles tile the plane. Can you visualize tiling with parallelograms? Will any quadrilateral tessellate? Let's investigate.





#### **Investigation 2**

#### Do All Quadrilaterals Tessellate?

You want to find out if *any* quadrilateral can tessellate, so you should *not* choose a special quadrilateral for this investigation.

Step 1 Cut out 12 congruent quadrilaterals. Label the corresponding angles in each quadrilateral *a*, *b*, *c*, and *d*.

Step 2 Using your 12 congruent quadrilaterals, try to create a tessellation.

Step 3 Notice the angles about each vertex point. How many times does each angle of your quadrilateral fit at each point? What is the sum of the measures of the angles of a quadrilateral? Compare your results with others. State a conjecture.

#### **Tessellating Quadrilaterals Conjecture**

C-73

1 quadrilateral will create a monohedral tessellation.

A regular pentagon does not tessellate, but are there *any* pentagons that tessellate? How many?

#### Mathematics CONNECTION

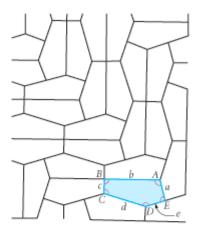
In 1975, when Martin Gardner wrote about pentagonal tessellations in *Scientific American*, experts thought that only eight kinds of pentagons would tessellate. Soon another type was found by Richard James III. After reading about this new discovery, Marjorie Rice began her own investigations.

With no formal training in mathematics beyond high school, Marjorie Rice investigated the tessellating problem and discovered four more types of pentagons that tessellate. Mathematics professor Doris Schattschneider of Moravian College verified Rice's research and brought it to the attention of the mathematics community. Rice had indeed discovered what professional mathematicians had been unable to uncover!

In 1985, Rolf Stein, a German graduate student, discovered a fourteenth type of tessellating pentagon. Are *all* the types of convex pentagons that tessellate now known? The problem remains unsolved.

Shown at right are Marjorie Rice (left) and Dr. Doris Schattschneider.





Type 13, discovered in December 1977  $B = E = 90^{\circ}$ ,  $2A + D = 360^{\circ}$   $2C + D = 360^{\circ}$ a = e, a + e = d

One of the pentagonal tessellations discovered by Marjorie Rice. Capital letters represent angle measures in the shaded pentagon. Lowercase letters represent lengths of sides.

You will experiment with some pentagon tessellations in the exercises.

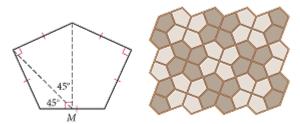
Construction tools

for Exercise 1

#### EXERCISES



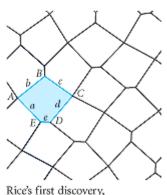
1. Construction The beautiful Cairo street tiling shown below uses equilateral pentagons. One pentagon is shown below left. Use a ruler and a protractor to draw the equilateral pentagon on poster board or heavy cardboard. (For an added challenge, you can try to *construct* the pentagon, as Egyptian artisans likely would have done.) Cut out the pentagon and tessellate with it. Color your design.



Point M is the midpoint of the base.

- 2. At right is Marjorie Rice's first pentagonal tiling discovery. Another way to produce a pentagonal tessellation is to make the dual of the tessellation shown in Lesson 7.4, Exercise 5. Try it. (h)
- **3.** A tessellation of regular hexagons can be used to create a pentagonal tessellation by dividing each hexagon as shown. Create this tessellation and color it.





February 1976  $2E + B = 2D + C = 360^{\circ}$ a = b = c = d

#### Cultural CONNECTION

Mats called *tatami* are used as a floor covering in traditional Japanese homes. *Tatami* is made from rush, a flowering plant with soft fibers, and has health benefits, such as removing carbon dioxide and regulating humidity and temperature. When arranging tatami, you want the seams to form T-shapes.

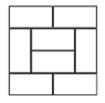
You avoid arranging four at one vertex forming a cross because it is difficult to get a good fit within a room this way. You also want to avoid fault lines—straight seams passing all the way through a rectangular arrangement—because they make it easier for the tatami to slip. Room sizes are often given in tatami numbers (for example, a 6-mat room or an 8-mat room).



4.5-mat room



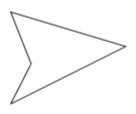
6-mat room



8-mat room



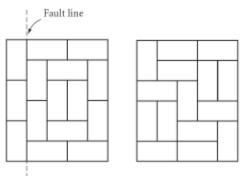
- **4.** Can a concave quadrilateral like the one at right tile the plane? Try it. Create your own concave quadrilateral and try to create a tessellation with it. Decorate your drawing.
- **5.** Write a paragraph proof explaining why you can use any triangle to create a monohedral tiling.



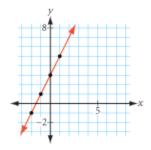
#### Review

Refer to the Cultural Connection on page 396 for Exercises 6 and 7.

- **6.** Use graph paper to design an arrangement of *tatami* for a 10-mat room. In how many different ways can you arrange the mats so that there are no places where four mats meet at a point (no cross patterns)? Assume that the mats measure 3-by-6 feet and that each room must be at least 9 feet wide. Show all your solutions.
- 7. There are at least two ways to arrange a 15-mat rectangle with no fault lines. One is shown. Can you find the other?



**8.** Reflect y = 2x + 3 across the y-axis and find the equation of the image line.



# IMPROVING YOUR VISUAL THINKING SKILLS Picture Patterns II Draw what comes next in each picture pattern. 2.



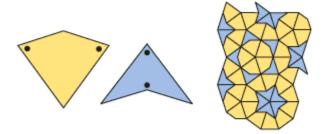
#### **PENROSE TILINGS**

When British scientist Sir Roger Penrose of the University of Oxford is not at work on quantum mechanics or relativity theory, he's inventing mathematical games. Penrose came up with a special tiling that uses two shapes, a kite and a dart. The tiles must be placed so that each vertex with a dot always touches only other vertices with dots. By adding this extra requirement, Penrose's tiles make a nonperiodic tiling. That is, as you tessellate, the pattern does not repeat by translations.



Penrose tiling at the Center for Mathematics and Computing, Carleton College, Northfield, Minnesota

Try it. Copy the two tiles shown below—the kite and the dart with their dots—onto patty paper. Use the patty-paper tracing to make two cardboard tiles. Create your own unique Penrose tiling and color it. Or, use geometry software to create and color your design. Then answer the questions below.



- 1. What are the measures of each angle in the kite and the dart?
- 2. Choose at least three vertices in your design and give the vertex arrangement in terms of kites and darts. How many different combinations of kites and darts can surround a vertex point?
- **3.** Explore how the dots affect the tiling. Why are the dots important?

Your project should include

- Your colored tessellation.
- ► Your answers to the questions above.



ESSON

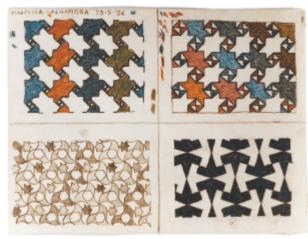
**7.6** 

There are three kinds of people in this world: those who make things happen, those who watch things happen, and those who wonder what happened. **ANONYMOUS** 

#### Tessellations Using **Only Translations**

In 1936, M. C. Escher traveled to Spain and became fascinated with the tile patterns of the Alhambra. He spent days sketching the tessellations that Islamic

masters had used to decorate the walls and ceilings. Some of his sketches are shown at right. Escher wrote that the tessellations were "the richest source of inspiration" he had ever tapped.



Brickwork, Alhambra, M. C. Escher

©2002 Cordon Art B. V.-Baam-Holland. All rights reserved.

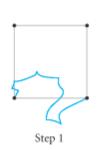
Escher spent many years learning how to use translations, rotations, and glide reflections on grids of equilateral triangles and parallelograms. But he did not limit himself to pure geometric tessellations.

The four steps below show how Escher may have created his Pegasus tessellation, shown at left. Notice how a partial outline of the Pegasus is translated from one side of a square to another to complete a single tile that fits with other tiles like itself.



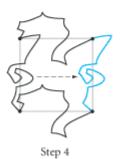
Symmetry Drawing E105, M. C. Escher, 1960 @2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland, All rights reserved.

You can use steps like this to create your own unique tessellation. Start with a tessellation of squares, rectangles, or parallelograms, and try translating curves on opposite sides of the tile. It may take a few tries to get a shape that looks like a person, animal, or plant. Use your imagination!

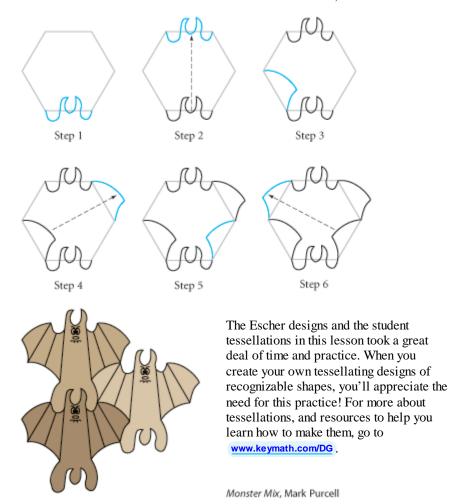








You can also use the translation technique with regular hexagons. The only difference is that there are three sets of opposite sides on a hexagon. So you'll need to draw three sets of curves and translate them to opposite sides. The six steps below show how student Mark Purcell created his tessellation, Monster Mix.



#### **EXERCISES**

In Exercises 1–3, copy each tessellating shape and fill it in so that it becomes a recognizable figure.

Practice Your Skills

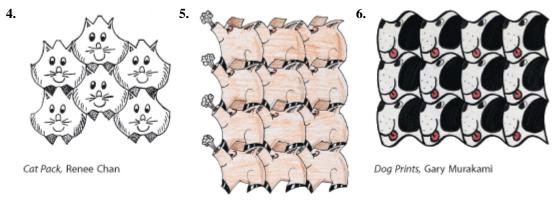


2.



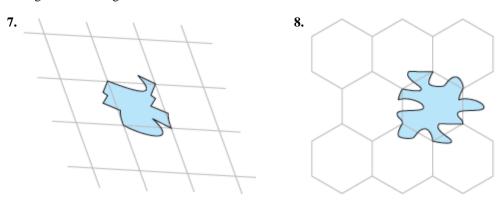


In Exercises 4–6, identify the basic tessellation grid (squares, parallelograms, or regular hexagons) that each geometry student used to create each translation tessellation.



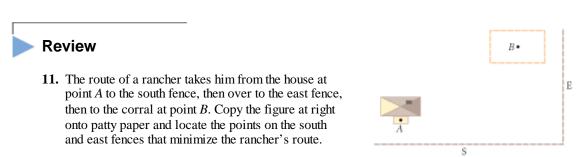
Snorty the Pig, Jonathan Benton

In Exercises 7 and 8, copy the figure and the grid onto patty paper. Create a tessellation on the grid with the figure.



Now it's your turn. In Exercises 9 and 10, create a tessellation of recognizable shapes using the translation method you learned in this lesson. At first, you will probably end up with shapes that look like amoebas or spilled milk, but with practice and imagination, you will get recognizable images. Decorate and title your designs.

- **9.** Use squares as the basic structure.
- **10.** Use regular hexagons as the basic structure.



- 12. Reflect  $y = \frac{2}{3}x + 3$  across the y-axis. Write an equation for the image. How does it compare with the original equation?
- **13.** Give the vertex arrangement for the tessellation at right.
- **14.** A helicopter has four blades. Each blade measures about 28 feet from the center of rotation to the tip. What is the speed in feet per second at the tips of the blades when they are moving at 440 rpm?
- 15. Developing Proof Identify each of the following statements as true or false. If true, explain why. If false, give a counterexample explaining why it is false.
  - a. If the two diagonals of a quadrilateral are congruent, but only one is the perpendicular bisector of the other, then the quadrilateral is a kite.
  - **b.** If the quadrilateral has exactly one line of reflectional symmetry, then the quadrilateral is a kite.
  - c. If the diagonals of a quadrilateral are congruent and bisect each other, then it is a square.
  - **d.** If a trapezoid is cyclic, then it is isosceles.



#### KALEIDOSCOPES

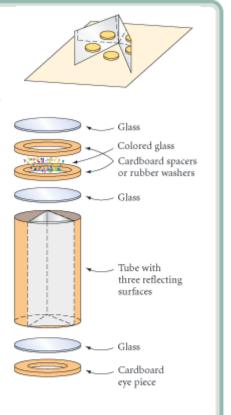
You have probably looked through kaleidoscopes and enjoyed their beautiful designs, but do you know how they work? For a simple kaleidoscope, hinge two mirrors with tape, place a small object or photo between the mirrors, and adjust them until you see four objects (the original and three images). What is the angle between the mirrors? At what angle should you hold the mirrors to see six objects? Eight objects?

The British physicist Sir David Brewster invented the tube kaleidoscope in 1816. Some tube kaleidoscopes have colored glass or plastic pieces that tumble around in their end chambers. Some have colored liquid. Others have only a lens in the chamber—the design you see depends on where you aim it.

Design and build your own kaleidoscope using a plastic or cardboard cylinder and glass or plastic as reflecting surfaces. Try various items in the end chamber.

Your project should include

- ► Your kaleidoscope (pass it around!).
- ► A report with diagrams that show the geometry properties you used, a list of the materials and tools you used, and a description of problems you had and how you solved them.





LESSON

7.7

Einstein was once asked, "What is your phone number? "He answered,"I don't know, but I know where to find it if I need it." ALBERT EINSTEIN

## **Tessellations That Use Rotations**

In Lesson 7.6, you created recognizable shapes by translating curves from opposite sides of a regular hexagon or square. In tessellations using only translations, all the figures face in the same direction. In this lesson you will use rotations of curves on a grid of parallelograms, equilateral triangles, or regular hexagons. The resulting

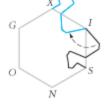
tiles will fit together when you rotate them, and the designs will have rotational symmetry about points in the tiling. For example, in this Escher print, each reptile is made by rotating three different curves about three alternating vertices of a regular hexagon.



Symmetry Drawing E25, M. C. Escher, 1939 ©2002 Cordon Art B. V.–Baarn–Holland. All rights reserved.



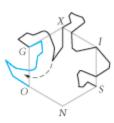
Step 1



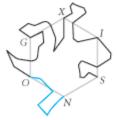
Step 2



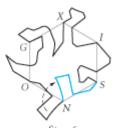
Step 3



Step 4



Step 5



Step 6

- Step 1 | Connect points S and I with a curve.
- Step 2 Rotate curve SI about point I so that point S rotates to coincide with point X.
- Step 3 Connect points *G* and *X* with a curve.
- Step 4 Rotate curve GX about point G so that point X rotates to coincide with point G.
- Step 5 Create curve *NO*.
- Step 6 Rotate curve NO about point N so that point O rotates to coincide with point S.

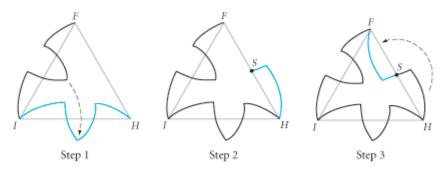
Escher worked long and hard to adjust each curve until he got what he recognized as a reptile. When you are working on your own design, keep in mind that you may have to redraw your curves a few times until something you recognize appears.



Escher used his reptile drawing in this famous lithograph. Look closely at the reptiles in the drawing. Escher loved to play with our perceptions of reality! Reptiles, M. C. Escher, 1943 ©2002 Cordon Art B. V.-Baarn-Holland.

All rights reserved.

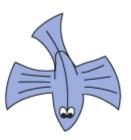
Another method used by Escher utilizes rotations on an equilateral triangle grid. Two sides of each equilateral triangle have the same curve, rotated about their common point. The third side is a curve with point symmetry. The following steps demonstrate how you might create a tessellating flying fish like that created by Escher.



- Connect points F and I with a curve. Then rotate the curve  $60^{\circ}$  clockwise about Step 1 point *I* so that it becomes curve *IH*.
- Step 2 Find the midpoint S of  $\overline{FH}$  and draw curve SH.
- Step 3 Rotate curve SH 180° about S to produce curve FS. Together curve FS and curve SH become the point-symmetric curve FH.



Symmetry Drawing E99, M. C. Escher, 1954 ©2002 Cordon Art B.V.–Baarn– Holland, All rights reserved.



Or, with just a slight variation in the curves, the resulting shape will appear more like a bird than a flying fish.



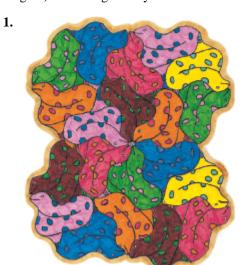
#### Exercises



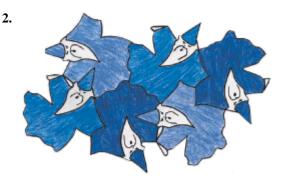
#### You will need

Geometry software for Exercise 13

In Exercises 1 and 2, identify the basic grid (equilateral triangles or regular hexagons) that each geometry student used to create the tessellation.



Snakes, Jack Chow



Merlin, Aimee Plourdes

In Exercises 3 and 4, copy the figure and the grid onto patty paper. Show how you can use other pieces of patty paper to tessellate the figure on the grid.

3.



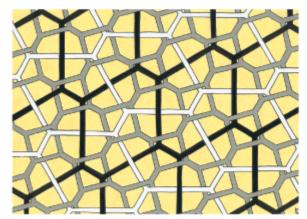


In Exercises 5 and 6, create tessellation designs by using rotations. You will need patty paper, tracing paper, or clear plastic, and grid paper or isometric dot paper.

- 5. Create a tessellating design of recognizable shapes by using a grid of regular hexagons. Decorate and color your art.
- **6.** Create a tessellating design of recognizable shapes by using a grid of equilateral or isosceles triangles. Decorate and color your art.

#### Review

7. Study these knot designs by Rinus Roelofs. Now try creating one of your own. Select a tessellation. Make a copy and thicken the lines. Make two copies of this thick-lined tessellation. Lay one of them on top of the other and shift it slightly. Trace the one underneath onto the top copy. Erase where they overlap. Then create a knot design using what you learned in Lesson 0.5.



Dutch artist Rinus Roelofs (b 1954) experiments with the lines between the shapes rather than looking at the plane-filling figures. In these paintings, he has made the lines thicker and created intricate knot designs.



(Above) Impossible Structures-III, structure 24 (At left) Interwoven Patterns-V, structure 17 Rinus Roelofs/Courtesy of the artist & ©2002 Artist Rights Society (ARS), New York/Beeldrecht, Amsterdam.

For Exercises 8–11, identify the statement as true or false. For each false statement, explain why it is false or sketch a counterexample.

- **8.** If the diagonals of a quadrilateral are congruent, the quadrilateral is a parallelogram.
- 9. If the diagonals of a quadrilateral are congruent and bisect each other, the quadrilateral is a rectangle.
- 10. If the diagonals of a quadrilateral are perpendicular and bisect each other, the quadrilateral is a rhombus.
- 11. If the diagonals of a quadrilateral are congruent and perpendicular, the quadrilateral is a square.
- 12. Earth's radius is about 4000 miles. Imagine that you travel from the equator to the South Pole by a direct route along the surface. Draw a sketch of your path. How far will you travel? How long will the trip take if you travel at an average speed of 50 miles per hour?
- 13. **Technology** Use geometry software to construct a line and two points A and B not on the line. Reflect A and B over the line and connect the four points to form a trapezoid.
  - **a.** Explain why it is a trapezoid.
  - **b.** Is it an isosceles trapezoid? Explain.
  - **c.** Choose a random point C inside the trapezoid and connect it to the four vertices with segments. Calculate the sum of the distances from C to the four vertices. Drag point C around. Where is the sum of the distances the greatest? The least?
- 14. Study these two examples of matrix multiplication, and then use your inductive reasoning skills to fill in the missing entries in a and b.

$$\begin{bmatrix} 5 & 3 \\ 8 & 7 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & -3 \\ 14 & -7 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 5 & 3 \\ 8 & 7 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & -3 \\ 14 & -7 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 20 & 2 \\ 7 & 30 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 10 & 0 \\ 0 & -5 \\ 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 46 & -100 \\ 73 & -150 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{a.} \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 5 & -6 \\ 1 & 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 8 & 7 \\ 6 & 0 \\ -9 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{?}{?} & \frac{?}{?} \end{bmatrix} \qquad \mathbf{b.} \begin{bmatrix} 8 & 3 \\ 12 & -5 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \frac{2}{?} & \frac{?}{?} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 13 & 30 \\ \frac{?}{?} & -50 \end{bmatrix}$$

**b.** 
$$\begin{bmatrix} 8 & 3 \\ 12 & -5 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \frac{2}{?} & \frac{?}{?} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 13 & 30 \\ \frac{?}{?} & -50 \end{bmatrix}$$

#### IMPROVING YOUR REASONING SKILLS

#### Logical Liars

Five students have just completed a logic contest. To confuse the school's reporter, Lois Lang, each student agreed to make one true and one false statement to her when she interviewed them. Lois was clever enough to figure out the winner. Are you? Here are the students' statements.

Frances: Kai was second. I was fourth. Leyton: I was third. Charles was last. Denise: Kai won, I was second.

Kai: Leyton had the best score. I came in last.

Charles: I came in second. Kai was third.



# Exploration

#### Tessellating with the **Conway Criterion**

You've discovered that you can tessellate with any triangle, any quadrilateral, some nonregular pentagons, and regular hexagons. The Conway criterion, named for English mathematician John Horton Conway (b 1937), describes rules for tiles that will always tessellate. The sides of a tile satisfying the Conway criterion need not be straight, but they must have certain characteristics that you'll discover in this activity. You'll use Sketchpad to tessellate with a Conway-criterion hexagon, and then you'll experiment with special cases.

#### Activity

#### **Conway Hexagons**

Construct segment AB and point C not on  $\overline{AB}$ . Step 1

Step 2 Select point A and point C in order, and choose Mark Vector from the Transform menu.

Step 3 Select AB and then point B, and choose Translate from the Transform menu. You now have a pair of parallel, congruent sides.

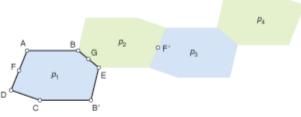
Construct points D and E not on  $A\overline{B}$  or  $\overline{CB}$ , and then construct Step 4  $\overline{AD}$ ,  $\overline{DC}$ ,  $\overline{BE}$ , and  $\overline{EB'}$ . Do you think this hexagon will tessellate?

Step 5 Construct midpoint F of  $\overline{AD}$  and midpoint G of  $\overline{BE}$ .

Step 6 Select the vertices of the hexagon in consecutive order, and choose Hexagon **Interior** from the Construct menu.

Step 7 Double-click point G to mark it as a center. Select the polygon interior and point F, and choose Rotate from the Transform menu. Rotate the objects 180°. Give the image polygon a different color.

Step 8 Mark vector FF'. Select the two polygon interiors and translate them by the marked vector. You should now have a row of polygons. Drag any of the points. How do the polygons fit together?

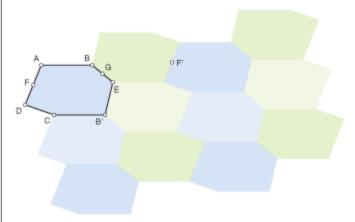


Step 9

Call the polygons from left to right  $p_1$ ,  $p_2$ ,  $p_3$ , and  $p_4$ . Polygon  $p_3$  is the translation of polygon  $p_1$  by the vector FF'. How is polygon  $p_3$  related to polygon  $p_2$ ? How is polygon  $p_2$  related to polygon  $p_1$ ? What transformation is equivalent to the composition of two 180° rotations about two different centers?

Step 10

Mark vector *AC*. Select the row of polygon interiors and translate by this marked vector. Translate again one or two more times. Color the polygons so that you can tell them apart.



Step 11

Not all hexagons tessellate, but a conjecture was made that those with one pair of opposite sides congruent and parallel do tessellate. Drag any of the vertices. What do you think of this conjecture? The conjecture is called the Conway criterion for hexagons.

Step 12

Drag point *B* on top of point *A*. Now what kind of tessellating shape do you have? What is it about the angles of this shape that guarantee it will tessellate? Is the Conway criterion needed to guarantee that these figures tessellate?

Step 13

With point *B* still on top of point *A*, drag point *E* on top of points *B* and *A*. Now what shape do you have? What is it about the angles of this shape that guarantee it will tessellate?

Step 14

Undo so that you have a hexagon again. Make the hexagon into a pentagon that will tessellate. Explain what you did.

Step 15

Undo so that you have a hexagon again. In any tessellation the angle measures at each vertex must sum to  $360^{\circ}$ . Does the Conway criterion guarantee that the sum of the angle measures equals  $360^{\circ}$ ? Explain. (*Hint:* Construct  $\overline{AC}$  and  $\overline{BB'}$ , and construct an auxiliary line parallel to  $\overline{BB'}$  through point E.)

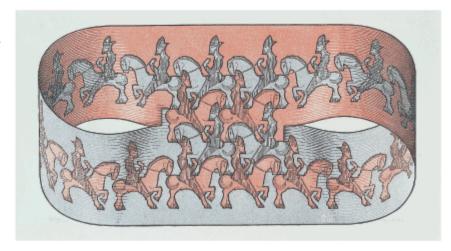
# Student Web Links © Keymath.com L E S S O N 7.8

The young do not know enough to be prudent, and therefore they attempt the impossible, and achieve it, generation after generation. PEARL S. BUCK

#### Horseman, M. C. Escher, 1946 ©2002 Cordon Art B. V.–Baarn– Holland. All rights reserved.

### **Tessellations That Use Glide Reflections**

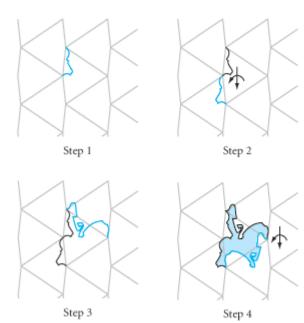
In this lesson you will use glide reflections to create tessellations. In Lesson 7.6, you saw Escher's translation tessellation of the winged horse Pegasus. All the horses are facing in the same direction. In the drawings below and below left, Escher used glide reflections on a grid of glide-reflected kites to get his horsemen facing in opposite directions.



The steps below show how you can make a tessellating design similar to Escher's Horseman. (The symbol indicates a glide reflection.)

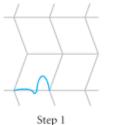


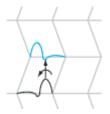




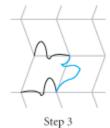
In the tessellation of birds below left, you can see that Escher used a grid of squares. You can use the same procedure on a grid of any type of glide-reflected parallelograms. The steps below show how you might create a tessellation of birds or fishes on a parallelogram grid.







Step 2





Symmetry Drawing E108, M. C. Escher, 1967 ©2002 Cordon Art B. V.–Baarn–Holland. All rights reserved.



#### **EXERCISES**

#### You will need



In Exercises 1 and 2, identify the basic tessellation grid (kites or parallelograms) that the geometry student used to create the tessellation.





Glide Reflection, Alice Chan

In Exercises 3 and 4, copy the figure and the grid onto patty paper. Show how you can use other patty paper to tessellate the figure on the grid.

3.



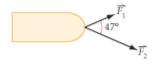
4.



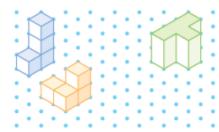
- **5.** Create a glide-reflection tiling design of recognizable shapes by using a grid of kites. Decorate and color your art. (h)
- **6.** Create a glide-reflection tiling design of recognizable shapes by using a grid of parallelograms. Decorate and color your art.

#### Review

- 7. Find the coordinates of the circumcenter and orthocenter of  $\triangle FAN$  with F(6, 0), A(7, 7), and N(3, 9).
- **8.** Construction Construct a circle and a chord of the circle. With compass and straightedge, construct a second chord parallel and congruent to the first chord.
- **9.** Remy's friends are pulling him on a sled. One of his friends is stronger and exerts more force. The vectors in this diagram represent the forces his two friends exert on him. Copy the vectors, complete the vector parallelogram, and draw the resultant vector force on his sled.



**10.** The green prism below right was built from the two solids below left. Copy the figure on the right onto isometric dot paper and shade in one of the two pieces to show how the complete figure was created.



#### **IMPROVING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS**

#### Fantasy Functions

If 
$$a \circ b = a^b$$
 then  $3 \circ 2 = 3^2 = 9$ ,  
and if  $a \Delta b = a^2 + b^2$  then  $5 \Delta 2 = 5^2 + 2^2 = 29$ .  
If  $8 \Delta x = 17 \circ 2$ , find  $x$ .



# Finding Points of Concurrency

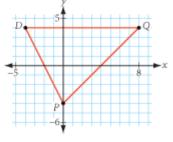
Suppose you know the coordinates of the vertices of a triangle. In the previous chapter, you saw that you can find the coordinates of the circumcenter by writing equations for the perpendicular bisectors of two of the sides and solving the system. Similarly, you can find the coordinates of the orthocenter by finding equations for two lines containing altitudes ofthe triangle and solving the system.

#### **EXAMPLE A**

Find the coordinates of the orthocenter of  $\triangle PDQ$  with P(0, -4), D(-4, 4), and Q(8, 4).

Solution

The orthocenter is the intersection of two altitudes of the triangle. An altitude passes through a vertex and is perpendicular to the opposite side. Because  $\overline{DQ}$  is horizontal, the altitude from P to  $\overline{DQ}$  must be a vertical line.



The line that is vertical and passes through P is the line x = 0.

Next, find the equation of the line containing one of the other altitudes. You can find the equation of the line containing the altitude from Q to  $\overline{DP}$  by finding the line that is perpendicular to  $\overline{DP}$  and that passes through Q.

The slope of  $\overline{DP}$  is  $\frac{-4-4}{0-(-4)}$ , or -2. The altitude is perpendicular to  $\overline{DP}$ , so the slope of the altitude is  $\frac{1}{2}$ , the opposite reciprocal of -2. Using the definition of slope and the coordinates of Q, the equation of the dashed line is  $\frac{y-4}{x-8} = \frac{1}{2}$ . Solving for y gives  $y = \frac{1}{2}x$  as the equation of the line containing the altitude.

To find the point where the altitudes intersect, solve the system of equations. You already know x = 0. If you substitute 0 for x into  $y = \frac{1}{2}x$ , you get y = 0. So, the orthocenter is (0, 0).

D (-4, 4)

Orthocenter at (0, 0)

P

-6

You can verify this result by writing the equation of the line containing the third altitude and making sure (0, 0) satisfies it.

there is a more efficient method.

For a review of this technique of using the definition of slope to write an equation, see Example C on pages 288–289.

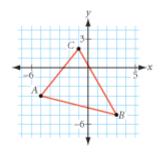
You can also find the coordinates of the centroid of a triangle by solving a system of two lines containing medians. However, as you will see in the next example.

#### ALGEBRA SKILLS 7 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 7 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 7 • USING

#### **EXAMPLE B**

Consider  $\triangle ABC$  with A(-5, -3), B(3, -5), and C(-1, 2).

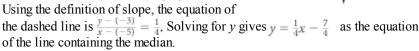
- a. Find the coordinates of the centroid of  $\triangle ABC$  by writing equations for two lines containing medians and finding their point of intersection.
- **b.** Find the mean of the x-coordinates and the mean of the y-coordinates of the triangle's vertices. What do you notice?



#### Solution

The centroid is the intersection of two medians of the triangle. A median joins a vertex with the midpoint of the opposite side.

**a.** The midpoint of  $\overline{AB}$  is  $\left(\frac{-5+3}{2}, \frac{-3+(-5)}{2}\right)$  or (-1, -4). The coordinates of C are (-1, 2), so the line that goes through both of these points is the vertical line x = -1. Next, find the equation of the line containing the median from A to  $\overline{BC}$ . The midpoint of From A to this midpoint is  $\frac{-3}{2} = (-3)$ , or  $(1, -\frac{3}{2})$ . The slope from A to this midpoint is  $\frac{-\frac{3}{2} - (-3)}{1 - (-5)}$ , or  $\frac{1}{4}$ .



Finally, use substitution to solve this system.

$$\begin{cases} y = \frac{1}{4}x - \frac{7}{4} \\ x = -1 \end{cases}$$

Equation of the line containing the median from A to  $B\overline{C}$ .

Equation of the line containing the median from C to  $A\overline{B}$ .

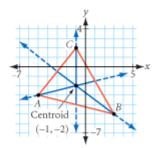
$$y = \frac{1}{4}(-1) - \frac{7}{4}$$

Substitute -1 for x in the first equation.

$$y = -2$$

Simplify.

The centroid is (-1, -2). You can verify this result by writing the equation for the third median and making sure (-1, -2) satisfies it.



$$\frac{-5+3+(-1)}{3} = \frac{-3}{3} = -1.$$

The mean of the y-coordinates is

$$\frac{-3 + (-5) + 2}{3} = \frac{-6}{3} = -2.$$

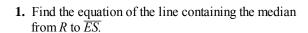
Notice that these means give you the coordinates of the centroid: (-1, -2).

You can generalize the findings from Example B to all triangles. The easiest way to find the coordinates of the centroid is to find the mean of the vertex coordinates.



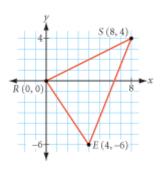
#### **EXERCISES**

In Exercises 1 and 2, use  $\triangle RES$  with vertices R(0, 0), E(4, -6), and S(8, 4).

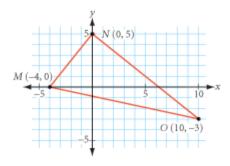


2. Find the equation of the line containing the altitude from E to  $\overline{RS}$ .

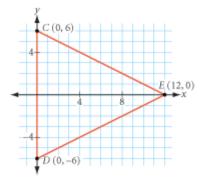
In Exercises 3 and 4, use algebra to find the coordinates of the centroid and the orthocenter for each triangle.



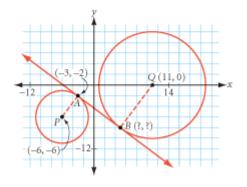
3. Right triangle MNO



**4.** Isosceles triangle *CDE* 



- 5. Find the coordinates of the centroid of the triangle formed by the x-axis, the y-axis, and the line 12x + 9y = 36.
- **6.** The three lines 8x + 3y = 12, 6y 7x = 24, and x + 9y + 33 = 0 intersect to form a triangle. Find the coordinates of its centroid.
- 7. Circle P with center at (-6, -6) and circle Q with center at (11, 0) have a common internal tangent  $\overline{AB}$ . Find the coordinates of B if A has coordinates (-3, -2).





How is your memory? In this chapter you learned about rigid transformations in the plane—called isometries—and you revisited the principles of symmetry that you first learned in Chapter 0. You applied these concepts to create tessellations. Can you name the three rigid transformations? Can you describe how to compose transformations to make other transformations? How can you use reflections to improve your miniature-golf game? What types of symmetry do regular polygons have? What types of polygons will tile the plane? Review this chapter to be sure you can answer these questions.





#### **EXERCISES**

For Exercises 1–12, identify each statement as true or false. For each false statement, sketch a counterexample or explain why it is false.

- 1. The two transformations in which the orientation (the order of points as you move clockwise) does not change are translation and rotation.
- 2. The two transformations in which the image has the opposite orientation from the original are reflection and glide reflection.
- **3.** A translation by  $\langle 5, 12 \rangle$  followed by a translation by  $\langle -8, -6 \rangle$  is equivalent to a single translation by  $\langle -3, 6 \rangle$ .

**4.** A rotation of 140° followed by a rotation of 260° about the same point is equivalent to a single rotation of 40° about that point.

- **5.** A reflection across a line followed by a second reflection across a parallel line that is 12 cm from the first is equivalent to a translation of 24 cm.
- **6.** A regular *n*-gon has *n* reflectional symmetries and *n* rotational symmetries.
- **7.** The only three regular polygons that create monohedral tessellations are equilateral triangles, squares, and regular pentagons.
- **8.** Any triangle can create a monohedral tessellation.
- **9.** Any quadrilateral can create a monohedral tessellation.
- **10.** No pentagon can create a monohedral tessellation.
- 11. No hexagon can create a monohedral tessellation.
- **12.** There are at least three times as many true statements as false statements in Exercises 1–12.



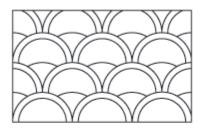
King by Minnie Evans (1892-1987)

In Exercises 13–15, identify the type or types of symmetry, including the number of symmetries, in each design. For Exercise 15, describe how you can move candles on the menorah to make the colors symmetrical, too.

13.



14.

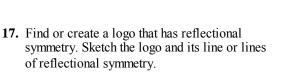


15.



Mandala, Gary Chen, geometry student

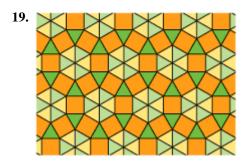
**16.** The façade of Chartres Cathedral in France does not have reflectional symmetry. Why not? Sketch the portion of the façade that does have bilateral symmetry.

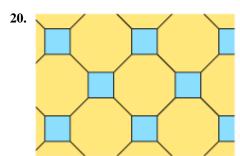


**18.** Find or create a logo that has rotational symmetry, but not reflectional symmetry. Sketch it.



In Exercises 19 and 20, classify the tessellation and give the vertex arrangement.

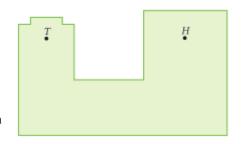




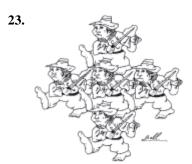
**21.** Experiment with a mirror to find the smallest vertical portion (y) in which you can still see your full height (x). How does y compare to x? Can you explain, with the help of a diagram and what you know about reflections, why a "full-length mirror need not be as tall as you?



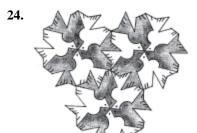
22. Miniature-golf pro Sandy Trapp wishes to impress her fans with a hole in one on the very first try. How should she hit the ball at *T* to achieve this feat? Explain.



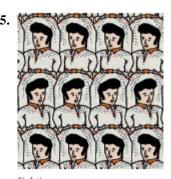
In Exercises 23–25, identify the shape of the tessellation grid and a possible method that the student used to create each tessellation.



Perian Warriors, Robert Bell



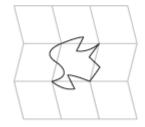
Doves, Serene Tam



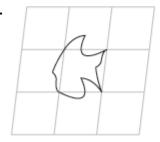
Peter Chua and Monica Grant

In Exercises 26 and 27, copy the figure and grid onto patty paper. Determine whether or not you can use the figure to create a tessellation on the grid. Explain your reasoning.

26.

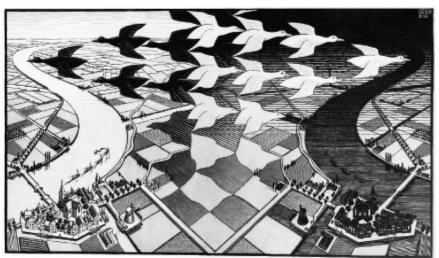


27.



**28.** In his woodcut *Day and Night*, Escher gradually changes the shape of the patches of farmland into black and white birds. The birds are flying in opposite directions, so they appear to be glide reflections of each other. But notice that the tails of the white birds curve down, while the tails of the black birds curve up. So, on closer inspection, it's clear that this is not a glide-reflection tiling at all!

When two birds are taken together as one tile (a 2-motif tile), they create a translation tessellation. Use patty paper to find the 2-motif tile.

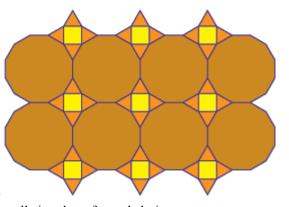


Day and Night, M. C. Escher, 1938

©2002 Cordon Art B. V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.

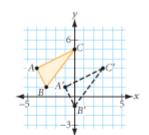
#### **T**AKE ANOTHER LOOK

- 1. Assuming there are no other balls on a pool table, where should a player aim so that a randomly placed cue ball bounces off exactly three different cushions before returning to its original spot? How many different solutions can you find?
- 2. There are 20 different 2-uniform tilings. Seven of them are shown in this chapter: on page 391, Exercises 6–8 on page 392, Exercise 13 on page 402, Exercise 19 on page 417, and the one shown here. Use pattern blocks or geometry software to find at least five more 2-uniform tilings.
- 3. There are many books and websites devoted to the tessellation art of M. C. Escher. Make copies of three different Escher tessellation designs not found in this textbook. One should be a translation-type tessellation, one a rotation-type tessellation, and one a glide reflection-type tessellation. Label them with their tessellation type and use patty paper to locate the unit tessellation.



tessellation type and use patty paper to locate the unit tessellation shape for each design.

**4.** Matrices can be used to translate polygons on the coordinate plane. For example, to translate  $\triangle ABC$  by the vector (3, -2), you can add a translation matrix to a matrix of the triangle's vertices. The result is an image matrix that gives the coordinates of the image's vertices.

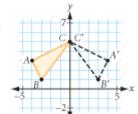


[triangle matrix] + [translation matrix] = [image matrix]

$$\begin{bmatrix} -4 & -3 & 0 \\ 3 & 1 & 5 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 3 & 3 \\ -2 & -2 & -2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 & 3 \\ 1 & -1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Pentagon ANGIE has vertices A(0, 0), N(6, 0), G(7, 3), I(2, 7), E(0, 5). Translate ANGIE by the vector  $\langle -5, -3 \rangle$ . Show the matrix addition that results in the image matrix for pentagon A' N' G' I' E', and verify your results by graphing the original pentagon and its image, either on paper or a graphing calculator.

5. Matrices can also be used to reflect or rotate polygons on the coordinate plane. For example, to reflect  $\triangle ABC$  from Exercise 4 across the y-axis, you can multiply the triangle matrix by the transformation matrix



$$\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -4 & -3 & 0 \\ 3 & 1 & 5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 3 & 0 \\ 3 & 1 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Multiply the triangle matrix for  $\triangle ABC$  by each of these transformation matrices. You can use a graphing calculator. Graph  $\triangle ABC$  and its image,  $\triangle A' B' C'$ , on the same coordinate system and describe the resulting transformation.

a. 
$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{a.} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \mathbf{b.} \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \mathbf{c.} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \mathbf{d.} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \mathbf{e.} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{c.} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

**d.** 
$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

## Assessing What You've Learned



**UPDATE YOUR PORTFOLIO** Choose one of the tessellations you did in this chapter and add it to your portfolio. Describe why you chose it and explain the transformations you used and the types of symmetry it has.



ORGANIZE YOUR NOTEBOOK Review your notebook to be sure it's complete and well organized. Are all the types of transformation and symmetry included in your definition list or conjecture list? Write a one-page chapter summary.



WRITE IN YOUR JOURNAL This chapter emphasizes applying geometry to create art. Write about connections you see between geometry and art. Does creating geometric art give you a greater appreciation for either art or geometry? Explain.



**PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENT** While a classmate, a friend, a family member, or a teacher observes, carry out one of the investigations from this chapter. Explain what you're doing at each step, including how you arrive at the conjecture.

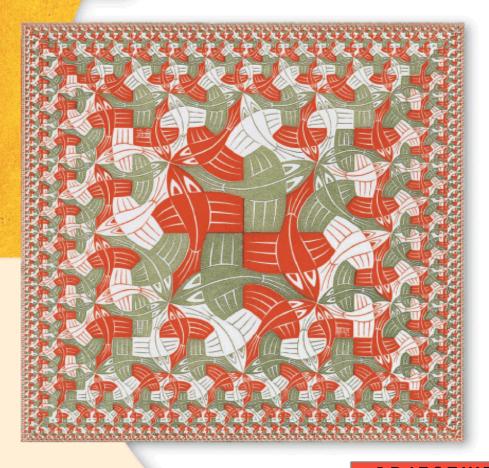


**GIVE A PRESENTATION** Give a presentation about one of the investigations or projects you did or about one of the tessellations you created.

### **CHAPTER**

# 8

# **Area**



I could fill an entire second life with working on my prints.

M. C. ESCHER

Square Limit, M. C. Escher, 1964 ©2002 Cordon Art B. V.–Baarn–Holland. All rights reserved.

#### **OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will

- discover area formulas for rectangles, parallelograms, triangles, trapezoids, kites, regular polygons, circles, and other shapes
- use area formulas to solve problems
- learn how to find the surface areas of prisms, pyramids, cylinders, and cones



A little learning is a dangerous thing—almost as dangerous as a lot of ignorance.

ANONYMOUS

# Areas of Rectangles and Parallelograms

People work with areas in many occupations. Carpenters calculate the areas of walls, floors, and roofs before they purchase materials for construction. Painters calculate surface areas so that they know how much paint to buy for a job. Decorators calculate the areas of floors and windows to know how much carpeting and drapery they will need. In this chapter you will discover formulas for finding the areas of the regions within triangles, parallelograms, trapezoids, kites, regular polygons, and circles.



Tile layers need to find floor area to determine how many tiles to buy.

The **area** of a plane figure is the measure of the region enclosed by the figure. You measure the area of a figure by counting the number of square units that you can arrange to fill the figure completely.



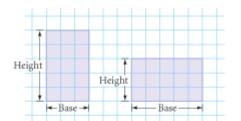
You probably already know many area formulas. Think of the investigations in this chapter as physical demonstrations of the formulas that will help you understand and remember them.

It's easy to find the area of a rectangle.



To find the area of the first rectangle, you can simply count squares. To find the areas of the other rectangles, you could draw in the lines and count the squares, but there's an easier method.

Any side of a rectangle can be called a **base**. A rectangle's **height** is the length of the side that is perpendicular to the base. For each pair of parallel bases, there is a corresponding height.



If we call the bottom side of each rectangle in the figure the base,

then the length of the base is the number of squares in each row and the height is the number of rows. So you can use these terms to state a formula for the area. Add this conjecture to your list.

#### **Rectangle Area Conjecture**

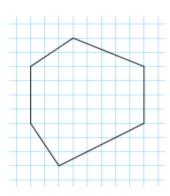
C-74

The area of a rectangle is given by the formula  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$ , where A is the area, b is the length of the base, and h is the height of the rectangle.

The area formula for rectangles can help you find the areas of many other shapes.

#### **EXAMPLE A**

Find the area of this shape.



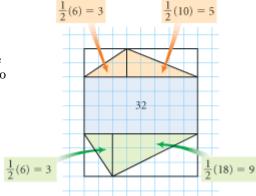
#### Solution

The middle section is a rectangle with an area of 4 · 8, or 32 square units.

You can divide the remaining pieces into right triangles, so each piece is actually half a rectangle.

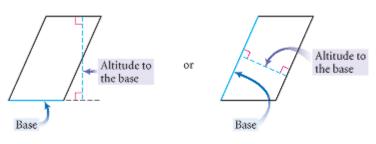
The area of the figure is 32 + 3 + 5 + 9 + 3 = 52 square units.

There are other ways to find the area of this figure. One way is to find the area of an 8-by-9 rectangle and subtract the areas of four right triangles.

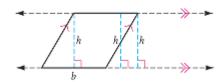


You can also use the area formula for a rectangle to find the area formula for a parallelogram.

Just as with a rectangle, any side of a parallelogram can be called a base. But the height of a parallelogram is not necessarily the length of a side. An altitude is any segment from one side of a parallelogram perpendicular to a line through the opposite side. The length of the altitude is the height.



The altitude can be inside or outside the parallelogram. No matter where you draw the altitude to a base, its height should be the same, because the opposite sides are parallel.





## <u>Investigation</u>

## **Area Formula for Parallelograms**

You will need

heavy paper or cardboard

- a straightedge
- a compass

Step 1

Step 2

Step 3

Using heavy paper, investigate the area of a parallelogram. Can the area be rearranged into a more familiar shape? Different members of your group should investigate different parallelograms so you can be sure your formula works for all parallelograms. b

Construct a parallelogram on a piece of heavy paper or cardboard. From the vertex of the obtuse angle adjacent to the base, draw an altitude to the side opposite the base. Label

h the parallelogram as shown. Cut out the parallelogram and then cut along the altitude. You will have two

pieces—a triangle and a trapezoid. Try arranging the two pieces into other shapes without overlapping them. Is the area of each of these new shapes the same as the area of the original parallelogram? Why?

Is one of your new shapes a rectangle? Calculate the area of this rectangle. What is the area of the original parallelogram? State your next conjecture.

#### Parallelogram Area Conjecture

C-75

The area of a parallelogram is given by the formula 1, where A is the area, b is the length of the base, and h is the height of the parallelogram.

© 2008 Key Curriculum Press 424 CHAPTER 8 Area



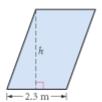
 $hilde{\mbox{$\mid$}}$  To view dynamically how the area of a parallelogram is related to the area of a rectangle, see the

Dynamic Geometry Exploration Area Formula for Parallelograms at www.keymath.com/DG . 4

If the dimensions of a figure are measured in inches, feet, or yards, the area is measured in in<sup>2</sup> (square inches), ft<sup>2</sup> (square feet), or yd<sup>2</sup> (square yards). If the dimensions are measured in centimeters or meters, the area is measured in cm<sup>2</sup> (square centimeters) or m<sup>2</sup> (square meters). Let's look at an example.

#### EXAMPLE B

Find the height of a parallelogram that has area  $7.13 \text{ m}^2$  and base length 2.3 m.



#### Solution

$$A = bh$$

$$7.13 = (2.3)h$$

$$\frac{7.13}{2.3} = h$$

$$h = 3.1$$

Write the formula.

Substitute the known values.

Solve for the height.

Divide.

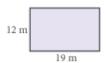
The height measures 3.1 m.



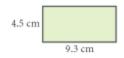
#### **EXERCISES**

In Exercises 1–6, each quadrilateral is a rectangle. A represents area and P represents perimeter. Use the appropriate unit in each answer.

1. 
$$A = \frac{?}{}$$



**2.** 
$$A = 1$$



3. 
$$A = 96 \text{ yd}^2$$
  
 $b = 1$ 



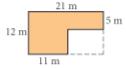
**4.** 
$$A = 273 \text{ cm}^2$$
  
 $h = 1$ 



**5.** 
$$P = 40$$
 ft  $A = \frac{1}{40}$ 

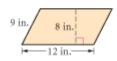


**6.** Shaded area = 
$$\frac{1}{2}$$

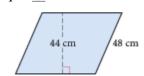


In Exercises 7–9, each quadrilateral is a parallelogram.

7. 
$$A = \frac{?}{}$$



**8.** 
$$A = 2508 \text{ cm}^2$$
  
 $P = 1$ 





**10.** Sketch and label two different rectangles, each with area 48 cm<sup>2</sup>.

In Exercises 11–13, find the shaded area and explain your method.

11.



12.



13.



- **14.** Sketch and label two different parallelograms, each with area 64 cm<sup>2</sup>.
- **15.** Draw and label a figure with area 64 cm<sup>2</sup> and perimeter 64 cm.
- **16.** The photo shows a Japanese police *koban*. An arch forms part of the roof and one wall. The arch is made from rectangular panels that each measure 1 m by 0.7 m. The arch is 11 panels high and 3 panels wide. What's the total area of the arch?



*Koban* is Japanese for "mini-station," a small police station. These stations are located in several parts of a city, and officers who work in them know the surrounding neighborhoods and people well. The presence of *kobans* in Japan helps reduce crime and provides communities with a sense of security.



- **17.** What is the total area of the four walls of a rectangular room 4 meters long by 5.5 meters wide by 3 meters high? Ignore all doors and windows.
- **18.** *Application* Ernesto plans to build a pen for his pet iguana. What is the area of the largest rectangular pen that he can make with 100 meters of fencing?

19. The big event at George Washington High School's May Festival each year is the Cow Drop Contest. A farmer brings his well-fed bovine to wander the football field until—well, you get the picture. Before the contest, the football field, which

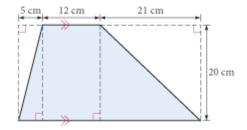
measures 53 yards wide by 100 yards long, is divided into square yards. School clubs and classes may purchase square yards. If one of their squares is where the first dropping lands, they win a pizza party. If the math club purchases 10 squares, what is the probability that the club will win?

20. Application Sarah is tiling a wall in her bathroom. It is rectangular and measures 4 feet by 7 feet. The tiles are square and measure 6 inches on each side. How many tiles does Sarah need?



For Exercises 21–23, you may choose to use grid pages.

- **21.** Find the area of quadrilateral *ABCD* with vertices *A*(0, 0), *B*(6, 0), *C*(14, 16), and *D*(8, 16).
- **22.** Find the area of quadrilateral *EFGH* with vertices E(0, 0), F(6, -4), G(8, 0), and H(6, 4).
- **23.** Find the area of the trapezoid at right.



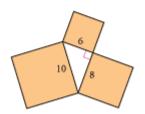
- **24.** *Mini-Investigation* Suppose you measure the sides of a rectangle to calculate its area. Using your ruler, you find that the base of the rectangle is between 15.6 cm and 15.7 cm, and the height is between 12.3 cm and 12.4 cm.
  - **a.** Find the smallest possible area and the largest possible area.
  - **b.** What do you think is a reasonable value for the actual area of the rectangle?
  - **c.** If you use 15.65 cm for the base and 12.35 cm for the height, the calculated area is 193.2775 cm<sup>2</sup>. From your answers to part a, explain why the last four digits in this calculation are not considered significant.

# Art CONNECTION

The design at right is a quilt design called the Ohio Star. Traditional quilt block designs range from a simple nine-patch, based on 9 squares, to more complicated designs like Jacob's Ladder or Underground Railroad, which are based on 16, 25, or even 36 squares. Quiltmakers need to calculate the total area of each different type of material before they make a complete quilt.

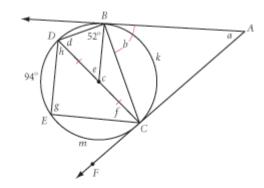


- **25.** *Application* The Ohio Star is a 16-square quilt design. Each block measures 12 inches by 12 inches. One block is shown above. Assume you will need an additional 20% of each fabric to allow for seams and errors.
  - **a.** Calculate the sum of the areas of all the red patches, the sum of the areas of all the blue patches, and the area of the yellow patch in a single block.
  - **b.** How many Ohio Star blocks will you need to cover an area that measures 72 inches by 84 inches, the top surface area of a king-size mattress?
  - **c.** How much fabric of each color will you need? How much fabric will you need for a 15-inch border to extend beyond the edges of the top surface of the mattress?
- **26.** A right triangle with sides measuring 6 cm, 8 cm, and 10 cm has a square constructed on each of its three sides, as shown. Compare the area of the square on the longest side to the sum of the areas of the two squares on the two shorter sides.



#### **Review**

**27. Developing Proof** Copy the figure at right. Find the lettered angle measures and arc measures.  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{AC}$  are tangents.  $\overline{CD}$  is a diameter. Explain how you determined the measures a and b.



**28.** Given *AM* as the length of the altitude of an equilateral triangle, construct the triangle.

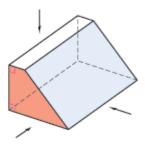


**29.** Sketch what the figure at right looks like when viewed from each of these directions.

a. Above the figure, looking straight down

**b.** In front of the figure, that is, looking straight at the red-shaded side

**c.** The side, looking at the blue-shaded side



# project

#### **RANDOM RECTANGLES**

What does a typical rectangle look like? A randomly generated rectangle could be long and narrow, or square-like. It could have a large perimeter, but a small area. Or it could have a large area, but a small perimeter. In this project you will randomly generate rectangles and study their characteristics using scatter plots and histograms.

Your project should include

- ► A description of how you created your random rectangles, including any constraints you used.
- ➤ A scatter plot of base versus height, a perimeter histogram, an area histogram, and a scatter plot of area versus perimeter.
- ▶ Any other studies or graphs you think might be interesting.
- ▶ Your predictions about the data before you made each graph.
- An explanation of why each graph looks the way it does.

You can also use a graphing calculator to do this project.



You can use Fathom to generate random base and height values from 0 to 10. Then you can sort them by various characteristics and make a wide range of interesting graphs.

428 CHAPTER 8 Area © 2008 Key Curriculum Press



8.2

When you add to the truth, you subtract from it. THE TALMUD

# **Areas of Triangles, Trapezoids, and Kites**

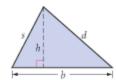
In Lesson 8.1, you learned the area formula for rectangles, and you used it to discover an area formula for parallelograms. In this lesson you will use those formulas to discover or demonstrate the formulas for the areas of triangles, trapezoids, and kites.

## Investigation 1

## **Area Formula for Triangles**

#### You will need

 heavy paper or cardboard



Step 1

Step 2

Cut out a triangle and label its parts as shown. Make and label a copy.

Arrange the triangles to form a figure for which you already have an area formula. Calculate the area of the figure.

Step 3

What is the area of one of the triangles? Make a conjecture. Write a brief description in your notebook of how you arrived at the formula. Include an illustration.

#### Triangle Area Conjecture

C-76

The area of a triangle is given by the formula  $\underline{?}$ , where A is the area, b is the length of the base, and h is the height of the triangle.

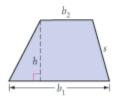


## **Investigation 2**

## Area Formula for Trapezoids

#### You will need

 heavy paper or cardboard



Step 1

Construct any trapezoid and an altitude perpendicular to its bases. Label the trapezoid as shown.

Step 2

Cut out the trapezoid. Make and label a copy.

Arrange the two trapezoids to form a figure for which you already have an area formula. What type of polygon is this? What is its area? What is the area of one trapezoid? State a conjecture.

#### **Trapezoid Area Conjecture**

C-77

The area of a trapezoid is given by the formula  $\underline{\mathcal{L}}$ , where *A* is the area,  $b_1$  and  $b_2$  are the lengths of the two bases, and *h* is the height of the trapezoid.

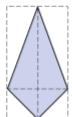


## **Investigation 3**

#### **Area Formula for Kites**

Can you rearrange a kite into shapes for which you already have the area formula? Do you recall some of the properties of a kite?

Create and carry out your own investigation to discover a formula for the area of a kite. Discuss your results with your group. State a conjecture.



#### Kite Area Conjecture

C-78

The area of a kite is given by the formula <u>1</u>.



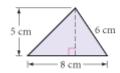
To view interactive versions of these investigations, see the **Dynamic Geometry Exploration**Areas of Triangles, Trapezoids, and Kites at <a href="https://www.keymath.com/DG">www.keymath.com/DG</a>.



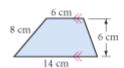
## **EXERCISES**

In Exercises 1–12, use your new area conjectures to solve for the unknown measures.

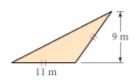




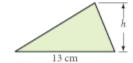
**4.** 
$$A = ?$$



**2.** 
$$A = 1$$



**5.** 
$$A = 39 \text{ cm}^2$$
  $h = \frac{1}{2}$ 

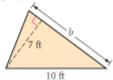


3. 
$$A = 1$$

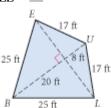


**6.** 
$$A = 31.5 \text{ ft}^2$$

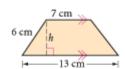
$$b = \underline{?}$$



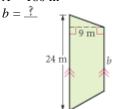
**7.**  $A = 420 \text{ ft}^2$  $LE = \frac{1}{2}$ 



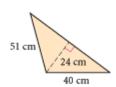
**8.**  $A = 50 \text{ cm}^2$  **1.**  $h = \frac{1}{2}$ 



**9.**  $A = 180 \text{ m}^2$ 

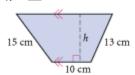


**10.**  $A = 924 \text{ cm}^2$ 

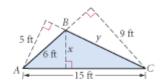


11.  $A = 204 \text{ cm}^2$ 

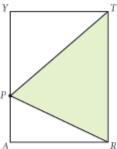
$$P = 62$$
 cm  $h = 1$ 



**12.**  $x = \frac{?}{?}$  **(b)**  $y = \frac{?}{?}$ 



- 13. Sketch and label two different triangles, each with area 54 cm<sup>2</sup>.
- **14.** Sketch and label two different trapezoids, each with area 56 cm<sup>2</sup>.
- 15. Sketch and label two different kites, each with area 1092 cm<sup>2</sup>.
- **16.** Sketch and label a triangle and a trapezoid with equal areas and equal heights. How does the base of the triangle compare with the two bases of the trapezoid?
- **17.** *P* is a random point on side  $\overline{AY}$  of rectangle *ARTY*. The shaded area is what fraction of the area of the rectangle? Why?

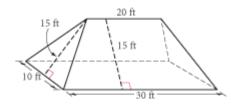


**18.** One playing card is placed over another, as shown. Is the top card covering half, less than half, or more than half of the bottom card? Explain.

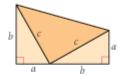


- **19.** *Application* Eduardo has designed this kite for a contest. He plans to cut the kite from a sheet of Mylar plastic and use balsa wood for the diagonals. He will connect all the vertices with string, and fold and glue flaps over the string.
  - **a.** How much balsa wood and Mylar will he need?
  - **b.** Mylar is sold in rolls 36 inches wide. What length of Mylar does Eduardo need for this kite?
- 20 in. 36 in.
  25 in. 15 in. 39 in. 35 in.

**20.** Application The roof on Crystal's house is formed by two congruent trapezoids and two congruent isosceles triangles, as shown. She wants to put new wood shingles on her roof. Each shingle will cover 0.25 square foot of area. (The shingles are 1 foot by 1 foot, but they overlap by 0.75 square foot.) How many shingles should Crystal buy?



21. A trapezoid has been created by combining two congruent right triangles and an isosceles triangle, as shown. Is the isosceles triangle a right triangle? How do you know? Find the area of the trapezoid two ways: first by using the trapezoid area formula, and then by finding the sum of the areas of the three triangles.



22. Divide a trapezoid into two triangles. Use algebra to derive the formula for the area of the trapezoid by expressing the area of each triangle algebraically and finding their algebraic sum. (h)

## Review

**23.** A = 1

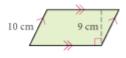


**24.** A = 1

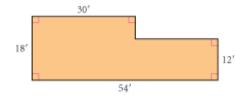


25. 
$$A = 264 \text{ m}^2$$
  
 $P = \frac{4}{3}$ 

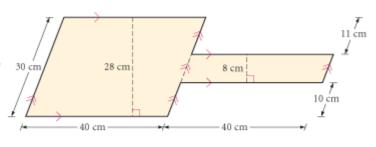
**26.** 
$$P = 52 \text{ cm}$$
  $A = 1$ 



**27.** 
$$A = \frac{?}{?}$$



**28.**  $A = \frac{?}{?}$   $P = \frac{?}{?}$ 

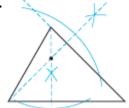


**29.** Identify the point of concurrency from the construction marks.

a.

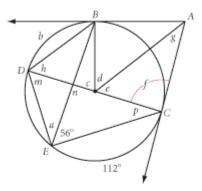


b.

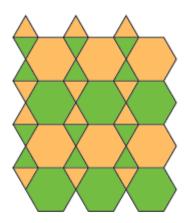


c.

**30. Developing Proof** Trace the figure below. Find the lettered angle measures and arc measures.  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  and  $\overrightarrow{AC}$  are tangents.  $\overrightarrow{CD}$  is a diameter. Explain how you determined the measures d and n.



**31.** Give the vertex arrangement for this 2-uniform tessellation.





#### **MAXIMIZING AREA**

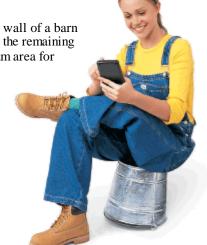
 $\bf A$  farmer wants to fence in a rectangular pen using the wall of a barn for one side of the pen and the 10 meters of fencing for the remaining three sides. What dimensions will give her the maximum area for the pen?

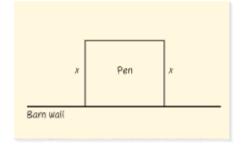
You can use the trace feature on your calculator to find the value of *x* that gives the maximum area. Use your graphing calculator to investigate this problem and find the best arrangement.



Your project should include

- ► An expression for the third side length, in terms of the variable *x* in the diagram.
- ▶ An equation and graph for the area of the pen.
- ► The dimensions of the best rectangular shape for the farmer's pen.



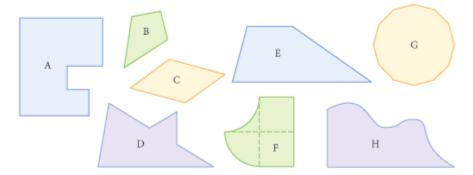




Optimists look for solutions, pessimists look for excuses.
SUE SWENSON

## **Area Problems**

By now, you know formulas for finding the areas of rectangles, parallelograms, triangles, trapezoids, and kites. Now let's see if you can use these area formulas to approximate the areas of irregularly shaped figures.





## Investigation

## **Solving Problems with Area Formulas**

#### You will need

- figures A–H
- centimeter rulers or meterstick

Find the area of each geometric figure your teacher provides. Before you begin to measure, discuss with your group the best strategy for each step. Discuss what units you should use. Different group members might get different results. However, your results should be close. You may average your results to arrive at one group answer. For each figure, write a sentence or two explaining how you measured the area and how accurate you think it is.

Now that you have practiced measuring and calculating area, you're ready to try some application problems. Many everyday projects require you to find the areas of flat surfaces on three-dimensional objects. You'll learn more about surface area in Lesson 8.7.

## Career CONNECTION

Professional housepainters have a unique combination of skills: For large-scale jobs, they begin by measuring the surfaces that they will paint and use measurements to estimate the quantity of materials they will need. They remove old coating, clean the surface, apply sealer, mix color, apply paint, and add finishes. Painters become experienced and specialize their craft through the on-the-job training they receive during their apprenticeships.



In the exercises you will learn how to use area in buying rolls of wallpaper, gallons of paint, bundles of shingles, square yards of carpet, and square feet of tile. Keep in mind that you can't buy  $12\frac{11}{16}$  gallons of paint! You must buy 13 gallons. If your calculations tell you that you need 5.25 bundles of shingles, you have to buy 6 bundles. In this type of rounding, you must always round upward.



#### **EXERCISES**

- 1. *Application* Tammy is estimating how much she should charge for painting 148 rooms in a new motel with one coat of base paint and one coat of finishing paint. The four walls and the ceiling of each room must be painted. Each room measures 14 ft by 16 ft by 10 ft high.
  - **a.** Calculate the total area of all the surfaces to be painted with each coat. Ignore doors and windows.
  - **b.** One gallon of base paint covers 500 square feet. One gallon of finishing paint covers 250 square feet. How many gallons of each will Tammy need for the job?
- 2. Application Rashad wants to wallpaper the four walls of his bedroom. The room is rectangular and measures 11 feet by 13 feet. The ceiling is 10 feet high. A roll of wallpaper at the store is 2.5 feet wide and 50 feet long. How many rolls should he buy? (Wallpaper is hung from ceiling to floor. Ignore doors and windows.)
- 3. Application It takes 65,000 solar cells, each 1.25 in. by 2.75 in., to power the Helios Prototype, shown below. How much surface area, in square feet, must be covered with the cells? The cells on Helios are 18% efficient. Suppose they were only 12% efficient, like solar cells used in homes. How much more surface area would need to be covered to deliver the same amount of power?

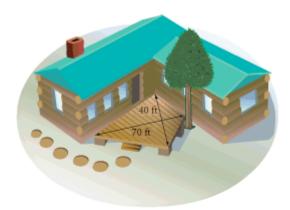


# Technology CONNECTION

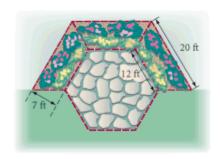
In August 2001, the Helios Prototype, a remotely controlled, nonpolluting solar-powered aircraft, reached 96,500 feet—a record for nonrocket aircraft. Soon, the Helios will likely sustain flight long enough to enable weather monitoring and other satellite functions. For news and updates, go to <a href="https://www.keymath.com/DG">www.keymath.com/DG</a>.



4. Application Harold works at a state park. He needs to seal the redwood deck at the information center to protect the wood. He measures the deck and finds that it is a kite with diagonals 40 feet and 70 feet. Each gallon of sealant covers 400 square feet, and the sealant needs to be applied every six months. How many gallon containers should he buy to protect the deck for the next three years?



**5.** *Application* A landscape architect is designing three trapezoidal flowerbeds to wrap around three sides of a hexagonal flagstone patio, as shown. What is the area of the entire flowerbed? The landscape architect's fee is \$100 plus \$5 per square foot. What will the flowerbed cost?



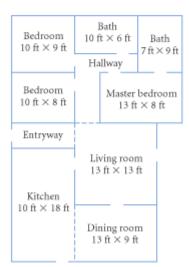
# Career CONNECTION

Landscape architects have a keen eye for natural beauty. They study the grade and direction of land slopes, stability of the soil, drainage patterns, and existing structures and vegetation. They look at the various social, economic, and artistic concerns of the client. They also use science and engineering to plan environments that harmonize land features with structures, reducing the impact of urban development upon nature.



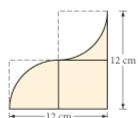
For Exercises 6 and 7, refer to the floor plan at right.

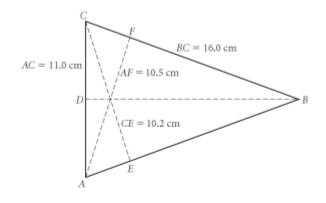
- **6.** Application Dareen's family is ready to have wall-to-wall carpeting installed. The carpeting they chose costs \$14 per square yard, the padding \$3 per square yard, and the installation \$3 per square yard. What will it cost them to carpet the three bedrooms and the hallway shown?
- 7. Application Dareen's family now wants to install 1-foot-square terra-cotta tiles in the entryway and kitchen, and 4-inch-square blue tiles on each bathroom floor. The terra-cotta tiles cost \$5 each, and the bathroom tiles cost 45¢ each. How many of each kind will they need? What will all the tiles cost?



436 CHAPTER 8 Area © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

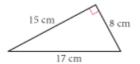
- **8.** Find the area of the shaded region. Assume all the squares are congruent.
- **9.**  $\overline{CE}$ ,  $\overline{BD}$ , and  $\overline{AF}$  are altitudes. Find AB and BD.



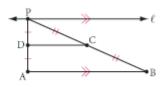


#### Review

10. A first-century Greek mathematician named Hero is credited with the following formula for the area of a triangle:  $A = \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$ , where A is the area of the triangle, a, b, and c are the lengths of the three sides of the triangle, and s is the semiperimeter (half of the perimeter). Use Hero's formula to find the area of this triangle. Use the formula  $A = \frac{1}{2}bh$  to check your answer.



- 11. **Developing Proof** Explain why x must be 69° in the diagram at right.
- **12.** As P moves from left to right along  $\ell$ , which of the following values changes?
  - **A.** The area of  $\triangle ABP$ **B.** The area of  $\triangle PDC$
  - C. The area of trapezoid ABCD
  - **D.**  $m \angle A + m \angle PCD + m \angle CPD$
  - E. None of these



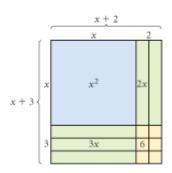
#### IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### Four-Way Split

How would you divide a triangle into four regions with equal areas? There are at least six different ways it can be done! Make six copies of a triangle and try it.

# Products, Factors, and **Quadratic Equations**

The area of a rectangle is the *product* of two dimensions, the base and height: A = bh. So, you can model the product of any two numbers or expressions as the area of a rectangle. For example, the rectangle at right has base x + 2and height x + 3. The area of the rectangle is made of four smaller rectangular regions. Multiplying the base and height of each region gives areas of  $x^2$ , 3x, 2x, and 6. Combining the areas gives the product:



$$(x+2)(x+3) = x^2 + 5x + 6$$

if an expression is the product of two other expressions, you can try to arrange the "pieces" into a rectangle and find the factors that were multiplied.

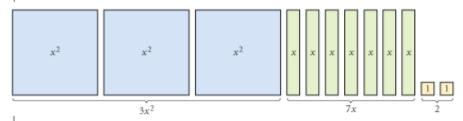
#### EXAMPLE A

**LGEBRA** 

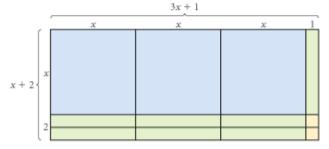
Sketch and label a rectangle to factor  $3x^2 + 7x + 2$ .

Solution

You may want to first sketch the pieces that make up the area.



Visualize ways to arrange all of the pieces into a rectangle. if you have algebra tiles or if you cut the pieces out of paper, you can physically experiment with different arrangements. Here is one way to make a rectangle:



The base and height give the factors:

$$3x^2 + 7x + 2 = (3x + 1)(x + 2)$$

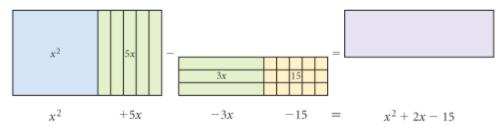
438 CHAPTER 8 Area © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

#### **ALGEBRA SKILLS 8 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 8 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 8 • USING**

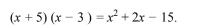
Negative values can be represented by subtraction from a side of a rectangle. For example, the shaded rectangle at right has base x + 5 and height x - 3, so its area can be expressed as the product (x + 5) (x - 3).

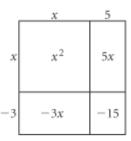
x + 5

The picture equation below shows why  $(x + 5) (x - 3) = x^2 + 2x - 15$ . The overall rectangle has combined area  $x^2 + 5x$ . If you subtract a rectangular region with combined area 3x + 15, you are left with the shaded rectangle.



When an expression includes large numbers or negative numbers, it is easier to use an abstracted rectangle diagram to represent groups of pieces instead of drawing each individual piece. The rectangle at right shows the product (x + 5) (x - 3). Add the areas of the pieces to write the area as a sum:



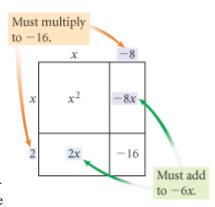


#### **EXAMPLE B** Ske

Sketch and label a rectangle diagram to factor  $x^2 - 6x - 16$ .

#### Solution

Draw a rectangle diagram with  $x^2$  in the upper-left region and -16 in the lower-right region. The  $x^2$ -region must have dimensions x by x. The remaining two values must multiply to -16. They must also add to -6 because they are equal to the number of x-pieces, which add to -6x. Through some logic and a little trial and error, you can find the combination of numbers that works. In this case, one of the numbers must be negative because the product is negative, and the only factor pairs for 16 are  $1 \cdot 16$ ,  $2 \cdot 8$ , and  $4 \cdot 4$ . The rectangle diagram at right shows that that the solution is (x - 8) (x + 2).



$$x^2 - 6x - 16 = (x - 8)(x + 2)$$

#### ALGEBRA SKILLS 8 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 8 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 8 • USING

Problems involving area can result in an equation with an  $x^2$  term, called a quadratic equation. A quadratic equation can be written in the form  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ , where a, b, and c represent constants. One method for solving a quadratic equation is to first factor  $ax^2 + bx + c$ . The **zero-product property** says that if the product of two (or more) factors is zero, then at least one of the factors is zero: if  $a \cdot b = 0$ , then a = 0 or b = 0. This gives you a way to solve a factored quadratic equation.

#### EXAMPLE C

Solve 
$$x^2 - 2x = 24$$
.

#### Solution

$$x^2-2x=24$$

The original equation.

$$x^2 - 2x - 24 = 0$$

Subtract 24 from both sides to set the equation equal to zero.

$$(x+4)(x-6)=0$$

Factor the left side. Use a rectangle diagram

$$x + 4 = 0$$
 or  $x - 6 = 0$ 

The zero-product property says at least one factor is zero.

$$x = -4$$
 or  $x = 6$ 

Solve each equation for x.

Check both solutions:

$$(-4)^2 - 2(-4) \stackrel{?}{=} 24$$

$$(6)^2 - 2(6) \stackrel{?}{=} 24$$
 Substitute -4 for x, then substitute 6 for x.

$$16 + 8 \stackrel{?}{=} 24$$

$$36 - 12 \stackrel{?}{=} 24$$

24 = 24

 $36-12 \stackrel{?}{=} 24$  Simplify following the order of operations.

Both solutions check.

$$24 = 24$$



## EXERCISES

In Exercises 1–6, sketch and label a rectangle to find the product or to factor the expression. As in Example A, show the individual pieces.

1. 
$$(x+5)(x+1)$$

**2.** 
$$(x)(2x+7)$$

3. 
$$(3x + 2)(2x + 5)$$

4. 
$$6x + 3$$

5. 
$$x^2 + 8x + 15$$

**6.** 
$$2x^2 + 11x + 12$$

In Exercises 7-18, sketch and label a rectangle diagram to find the product or to factor the expression. As in Example B, do not show the individual pieces.

7. 
$$(x + 15)(x - 11)$$

8. 
$$(3x-7)(4x+5)$$

**9.** 
$$(x+4)^2$$
 or  $(x+4)(x+4)$ 

**10.** 
$$(2x+5)(2x-5)$$
 **11.**  $(a+b)^2$ 

11. 
$$(a+b)^2$$

**12.** 
$$(a+b)(a-b)$$

13. 
$$x^2 + 19x + 60$$

14. 
$$x^2 - 10x - 24$$

15. 
$$x^2 + x - 20$$

16. 
$$x^2 - 6x + 9$$

17. 
$$x^2 - 36$$

18. 
$$4x^2 - 49$$

In Exercises 19–22, solve the quadratic equation.

**19.** 
$$x^2 + 5x + 4 = 0$$

**20.** 
$$x^2 + 7x = 30$$

**21.** 
$$x(x-6) = 5x - 24$$

**22.** 
$$(x + 2)(x - 2) = -x^2 - 9x - 8$$

- 23. One base of an isosceles trapezoid is equal to the trapezoid's height and the other base is 4 feet longer than the height. The area of the trapezoid is 48 square feet.
  - a. Let h represent the trapezoid's height in feet. Sketch the trapezoid and label the height.
  - **b.** Write an expression that includes h for each base of the trapezoid. Add these to your diagram.
  - **c.** Write an equation that includes h for the area of the trapezoid.
  - **d.** Solve the equation in part c to find the dimensions of the trapezoid.

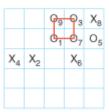
#### IMPROVING YOUR REASONING SKILLS

#### Tic-Tac-Square

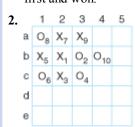
This is one of many variations on tic-tac-toe. Instead of trying to get your X's or O's collinear, the object is to get your X's or O's arranged at the vertices of a square. There are many ways to get four X's or O's arranged at the vertices of a square. Two completed example games are shown below. Numbers are used to show the sequence of moves in each game.

Answer the questions about each of the four unfinished games. You can identify a possible move by the letter of the row and number of the column. For example, the top-right square in the grid is a5.

Example A

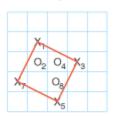


In this game, O went first and won.

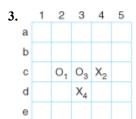


Explain why O's last move, b4, was a mistake

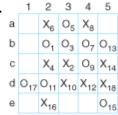
Example B



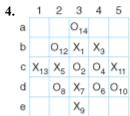
In this game, X went first and won.



Where should O play  $O_5$  and  $O_7$  to guarantee a win on  $O_9$ ?



Where should O play to prevent X from winning?



Which moves were forced? Who should win? Explain.



If I had to live my life again, I'd make the same mistakes, only sooner. TALLULAH BANKHEAD

# **Areas of Regular Polygons**

You can divide a regular polygon into congruent isosceles triangles by drawing segments from the center of the polygon to each vertex. The center of the polygon is actually the center of a circumscribed circle, so these congruent segments are sometimes called the radii of a regular polygon.



In this investigation you will divide regular polygons into triangles. Then you will write a formula for the area of any regular polygon.



## Investigation

## **Area Formula for Regular Polygons**

Consider a regular pentagon with side length s, divided into congruent isosceles triangles. Each triangle has a base s and a height a.



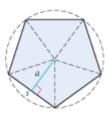
What is the area of one isosceles triangle in terms of a and s?

Step 2

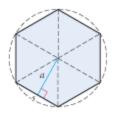
Step 3

What is the area of this pentagon in terms of a and s?

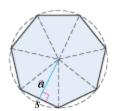
Repeat Steps 1 and 2 with other regular polygons and complete the table below.



Regular pentagon



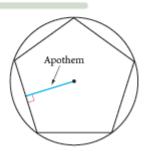
Regular hexagon



Regular heptagon

Number of sides	5	6	7	8	9	10	 12	 n
Area of regular polygon								

The distance a appears in the area formula for a regular polygon, and it has a special name—apothem. An apothem of a regular polygon is a perpendicular segment from the center of the polygon's circumscribed circle to a side of the polygon. You may also refer to the length of the segment as the apothem.



#### Regular Polygon Area Conjecture

C-79

The area of a regular polygon is given by the formula  $\mathcal{L}$  or  $\mathcal{L}$ , where A is the area, P is the perimeter, a is the apothem, s is the length of each side, and n is the number of sides.



#### **EXERCISES**

#### You will need





In Exercises 1–8, use the Regular Polygon Area Conjecture to find the unknown length accurate to the nearest unit, or the unknown area accurate to the nearest square unit. Recall that the symbol sused for measurements or calculations that are approximations.

1. 
$$A \approx \frac{?}{24}$$
 cm  
 $a \approx 24.9$  cm



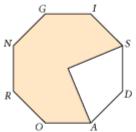
2. 
$$a \approx \frac{1}{s}$$
  
 $s = 107.5 \text{ cm}$   
 $A \approx 19.887.5 \text{ cm}^2$ 

3. 
$$P \approx \frac{?}{38.6}$$
 cm  
 $A \approx 4940.8$  cm<sup>2</sup>

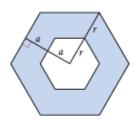


- **4.** Regular pentagon: a = 3 cm and  $s \approx 4.4$  cm,  $A \approx \frac{?}{}$
- **5.** Regular nonagon: a = 9.6 cm and  $A \approx 302.4$  cm<sup>2</sup>,  $P \approx 1$
- **6.** Regular *n*-gon: a = 12 cm and  $P \approx 81.6$  cm,  $A \approx 1$
- 7. Find the approximate perimeter of a regular polygon if a = 9 m and  $A \approx 259.2$  m<sup>2</sup>.
- **8.** Find the approximate length of each side of a regular n-gon if a = 80 feet, n = 20, and  $A \approx 20,000$  square feet.
- **9.** Construction Draw a segment 4 cm long. Use a compass and straightedge to construct a regular hexagon with sides congruent to this segment. Use the Regular Polygon Area Conjecture and a centimeter ruler to approximate the hexagon's area.
- **10.** Draw a regular pentagon with apothem 4 cm. Use the Regular Polygon Area Conjecture and a centimeter ruler to approximate the pentagon's area.
- 11. A square is also a regular polygon. How is the apothem of a square related to the side length? Show that the Regular Polygon Area Conjecture simplifies to  $s^2$  for the area of a square.
- **12.** *Technology* Use geometry software to construct a circle. Inscribe a pentagon that looks regular and measure its area. Now drag the vertices. How can you drag the vertices to increase the area of the inscribed pentagon? To decrease its area?

**13.** Find the approximate area of the shaded region of the regular octagon *ROADSIGN*. The apothem measures 20 cm. Segment *GI* measures about 16.6 cm.

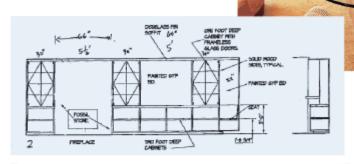


**14.** Find the approximate area of the shaded regular hexagonal donut. The apothem and sides of the smaller hexagon are half as long as the apothem and sides of the large hexagon.  $a \approx 6.9 \text{ cm}$  and  $r \approx 8 \text{ cm}$ 

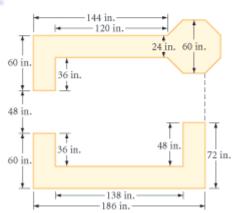


## Career CONNECTION

Interior designers, unlike interior decorators, are concerned with the larger planning and technical considerations of interiors, as well as with style and color selection. They have an intuitive sense of spatial relationships. They prepare sketches, schedules, and budgets for client approval and inspect the site until the job is complete.



**15.** *Application* An interior designer created the kitchen plan shown. The countertop will be constructed of colored concrete. What is its total surface area? If concrete countertops 1.5 inches thick cost \$85 per square foot, what will be the total cost of this countertop?



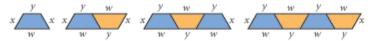
#### **Review**

In Exercises 16 and 17, graph the two lines, then find the area bounded by the *x*-axis, the *y*-axis, and both lines.

**16.** 
$$y = \frac{1}{2}x + 5, y = -2x + 10$$
 **(h)**

**17.** 
$$y = -\frac{1}{3}x + 6, y = -\frac{4}{3}x + 12$$

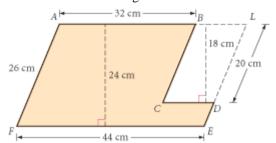
- **18.** *Technology* Construct a triangle and its three medians. Compare the areas of the six small triangles that the three medians formed. Make a conjecture and support it with a convincing argument.
- **19.** If the pattern continues, write an expression for the perimeter of the *n*th figure in the picture pattern.



**20.** *GHJK* is a rectangle. Find the area of pentagon *GHIJK*.



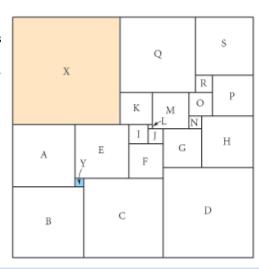
**21.** *FELA* and *CDLB* are parallelograms. Find the area of the shaded region.



## IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### The Squared Square Puzzle

The square shown is called a "squared square." A square 112 units on a side is divided into 21 squares. The area of square X is  $50^2$ , or 2500, and the area of square Y is  $4^2$ , or 16. Find the area of each of the other squares.



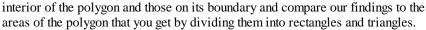
# Exploration

## Pick's Formula for Area

You know how to find the area of polygon regions, but how would you find the area of the dinosaur footprint at right?

You know how to place a polygon on a grid and count squares to find the area. About a hundred years ago, Austrian mathematician Georg Alexander Pick (1859–1943) discovered a relationship, now known as Pick's formula, for finding the area of figures on a square dot grid.

Let's start by looking at polygons on a square dot grid. The dots are called lattice points. Let's count the lattice points in the





Polygon A	Polygon B	Polygon C
5 boundary points 1 interior point	5 boundary points 0 interior points	3 boundary points 5 interior points
0.5	0.5	1.5 3 1 2
Area = 0.5 + 1 + 1 = 2.5	Area = $1 + 0.5 = 1.5$	Area = $12 - (1.5 + 3 + 2) = 5.5$

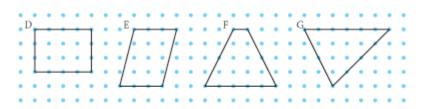
How can the boundary points and interior points help us find the area? An important technique for finding patterns is to hold one variable constant and see what happens with the other variables. That's what you'll do in the next activity.

In this activity you will first investigate patterns that emerge when you hold the area constant. Then you will investigate patterns that emerge when you hold the number of interior or boundary points constant. The goal is to find a formula that relates the area of a polygon to the number of interior and boundary points.

## **Dinosaur Footprints and Other Shapes**

#### You will need

- square dot paper or graph paper, or
- the worksheets Pick's Formula for Area and Irregular Shapes (optional)
- geoboards (optional)



- Step 1 Confirm that each polygon D through G above has area A = 12.
- Step 2 Let b be the number of boundary points and i be the number of interior points. Create and complete a table like this one for polygons with A = 12.

	D	Е	F	G
Number of boundary points (b)				
Number of interior points (i)				

Step 3 Study the table for patterns. Do you see a relationship between b and i? Graph the pairs (b, i) from your table and label each point. What do you notice? Write an equation that fits the points.

Now investigate what happens if you hold the interior points constant.

- Step 4 Polygon B has b = 5, i = 0, and A = 1.5. On square dot paper draw other polygons with no interior points. Calculate the area of each polygon.
- Step 5 Copy and complete this table for polygons with i = 0.

Number of boundary points (b)	3	4	5	6	7	8
Area			1.5			

- Step 6 Polygon A has b = 5, i = 1, and A = 2.5. On square dot paper draw other polygons with exactly *one* interior point. Calculate the area of each polygon.
- Step 7 Make a table like the one in Step 5, but for polygons with i = 1. When you hold the interior points constant, what happens to the area each time one boundary point is added?

Now investigate what happens if you hold the boundary points constant.

- Step 8 Polygon C has b = 3, i = 5, and A = 5.5. On square dot paper draw other polygons with exactly *three* boundary points. Calculate the area of each polygon.
- Step 9 Copy and complete this table for polygons with b = 3. When you hold the boundary points constant, what happens to the area each time one interior point is added?

Number of interior points (i)	0	1	2	3	4	5
Area						5.5

To find Pick's formula, it can be helpful to organize all your data in one place.

Step 10 Copy and complete the table below. Check the patterns by drawing more polygons on square dot paper.

Area (as a function of b and i)

		Number of boundary points (b)					
		3	4	5	6	7	8
	0			1.5			
points (i)	1			2.5			
	2						
	3						
	4						
	5	5.5					

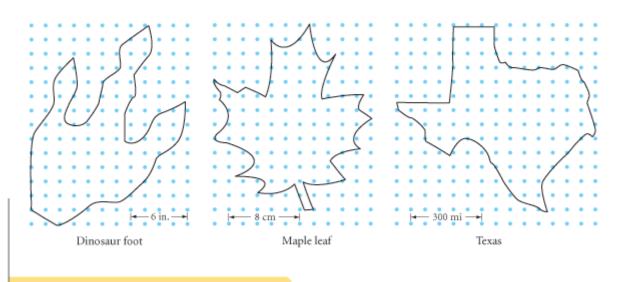
Step 11 Generalize the formula to find the area if you know the number of boundary points and the number of interior points. Copy and complete the conjecture.

#### Pick's Formula

If *A* is the area of a polygon whose vertices are lattice points, *b* is the number of lattice points on the boundary of the polygon, and *i* is the number of interior lattice points, then  $A = \frac{1}{2}b + \frac{1}{2}i + \frac{1}{2}$ .

Pick's formula is useful for approximating the area of an irregularly shaped region.

Step 12 | Use Pick's formula to find the approximate areas of these irregular shapes.





8.5

The moon is a dream of the sun.

PAUL KLEE

## **Areas of Circles**

So far, you have discovered the formulas for the areas of various polygons. In this lesson you'll discover the formula for the area of a circle. Most of the shapes you have investigated in this chapter could be divided into rectangles or triangles. Can a circle be divided into rectangles or triangles? Not exactly, but in this investigation you will see an interesting way to think about the area of a circle.

## Investigation

## **Area Formula for Circles**

be rearranged. Let's investigate.

Circles do not have straight sides like polygons do. However, the area of a circle can

You will need

a compass

scissors

Step 1

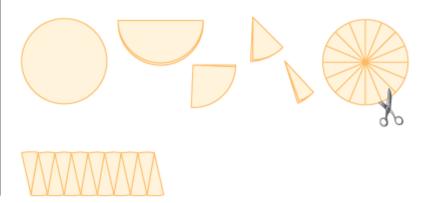
Step 2

Step 3

Use your compass to make a large circle. Cut out the circular region.

Fold the circular region in half. Fold it in half a second time, then a third time and a fourth time. Unfold your circle and cut it along the folds into 16 wedges.

Arrange the wedges in a row, alternating the tips up and down to form a shape that resembles a parallelogram.



If you cut the circle into more wedges, you could rearrange these thinner wedges to look even more like a rectangle, with fewer bumps. You would not lose or gain any area in this change, so the area of this new "rectangle," skimming off the bumps as you measure its length, would be closer to the area of the original circle.

If you could cut infinitely many wedges, you'd actually have a rectangle with smooth sides. What would its base length be? What would its height be in terms of *C*, the circumference of the circle?

Step 4

The radius of the original circle is r and the circumference is  $2\pi r$ . Give the base and the height of a rectangle made of a circle cut into infinitely many wedges. Find its area in terms of r. State your next conjecture.

#### Circle Area Conjecture

C-80

The area of a circle is given by the formula 1, where A is the area and r is the radius of the circle.

How do you use this new conjecture? Let's look at a few examples.

#### **EXAMPLE A**

The small apple pie has a diameter of 8 inches, and the large cherry pie has a radius of 5 inches. How much larger is the large pie?

#### Solution

First, find each area.

#### Small pie

$$A = \pi r^2$$

$$= \pi (4)^2$$

$$= \pi (16)$$

$$\approx 50.2$$

#### Large pie

$$A = \pi r^2$$
  
=  $\pi (5)^2$   
=  $\pi (25)$   
 $\approx 78.5$ 





The large pie is 78.5 in<sup>2</sup>, and the small pie is 50.2 in<sup>2</sup>. The difference in area is about 28.3 square inches. So the large pie is more than 50% larger than the small pie, assuming they have the same thickness. Notice that we used 3.14 as an approximate value for  $\pi$ .

#### **EXAMPLE B**

If the area of the circle at right is  $256\pi$  m<sup>2</sup>, what is the circumference of the circle?

#### Solution

Use the area to find the radius, then use the radius to find the circumference.

$$A = \pi r^2$$
  $C = 2\pi r$   
 $256\pi = \pi r^2$   $= 2\pi(16)$   
 $256 = r^2$   $= 32\pi$   
 $r = 16$   $\approx 100.5 \text{ m}$ 



The circumference is  $32\pi$  meters, or approximately 100.5 meters.

EXERCISES You will need



Use the Circle Area Conjecture to solve for the unknown measures in Exercises 1–8. Leave your answers in terms of  $\pi$ , unless the problem asks for an approximation. For approximations, use the  $\pi$  key on your calculator.

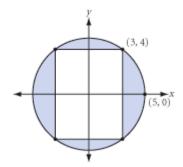
**1.** If 
$$r = 3$$
 in.,  $A = \frac{?}{}$ .

3. If 
$$r = 0.5$$
 m,  $A = \frac{?}{?}$ .

**5.** If 
$$A = 3\pi$$
 in<sup>2</sup>, then  $r = \frac{?}{}$ .

7. If 
$$C = 12\pi$$
 in., then  $A = \frac{?}{}$ .

**9.** What is the area of the shaded region between the circle and the rectangle?



- 11. Sketch and label a circle with an area of  $324\pi$  cm<sup>2</sup>. Be sure to label the length of the radius.
- **12.** Application The rotating sprinkler arms in the photo at right are all 16 meters long. What is the area of each circular farm? Express your answer to the nearest square meter.
- 13. Application A small college TV station can broadcast its programming to households within a radius of 60 kilometers. How many square kilometers of viewing area does the station reach? Express your answer to the nearest square kilometer.
- 14. Sampson's dog, Cecil, is tied to a post by a chain 7 meters long. How much play area does Cecil have? Express your answer to the nearest square meter.
- **15.** Application A muscle's strength is proportional to its cross-sectional area. If the cross section of one muscle is a circular region with a radius of 3 cm. and the cross section of a second, identical type of muscle is a circular region with a radius of 6 cm, how many times stronger is the second muscle?

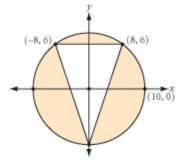
**2.** If 
$$r = 7$$
 cm,  $A = \frac{?}{}$ .

**4.** If 
$$A = 9\pi$$
 cm<sup>2</sup>, then  $r = \frac{?}{}$ .

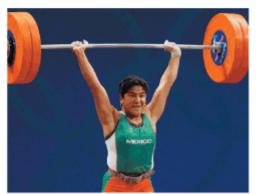
**6.** If 
$$A = 0.785 \text{ m}^2$$
, then  $r = \frac{1}{2}$ .

**8.** If 
$$C = 314$$
 m, then  $A = \frac{?}{4}$ .

**10.** What is the area of the shaded region between the circle and the triangle?





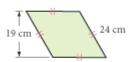


Champion weight lifter Soraya Jimenez extends barbells weighing almost double her own body weight.

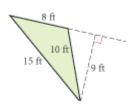
**16.** What would be a good approximation for the area of a regular 100-gon inscribed in a circle with radius r? Explain your reasoning.

Review

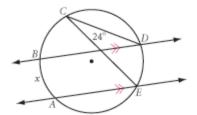
17. A = ?



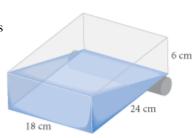
**18.**  $A = \frac{?}{}$ 



- **19.** *Technology* Construct a parallelogram and a point in its interior. Construct segments from this point to each vertex, forming four triangles. Measure the area of each triangle. Move the point to find a location where all four triangles have equal area. Is there more than one such location? Explain your findings.
- **20.** Developing Proof Explain why x must be  $48^{\circ}$ . **21.** Developing Proof What's wrong with this picture?



- 38°
- **22.** The 6-by-18-by-24 cm clear plastic sealed container is resting on a cylinder. It is partially filled with liquid, as shown. Sketch the container resting on its smallest face. Show the liquid level in this position.



#### IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### Random Points

What is the probability of randomly selecting from the 3-by-3 grid at right three points that form the vertices of an isosceles triangle?







LESSON

8.6

Cut my pie into four pieces—I don't think I could eat eight.
YOGI BERRA

## **Any Way You Slice It**

In Lesson 8.5, you discovered a formula for calculating the area of a circle. With the help of your visual thinking and problem-solving skills, you can calculate the areas of different sections of a circle.



Its makers claimed this was the world's largest slice of pizza.

If you cut a slice of pizza, each slice would probably be a sector of a circle. If you could make only one straight cut with your knife, your slice would be a segment of a circle. If you don't like the crust, you'd cut out the center of the pizza; the crust shape that would remain is called an annulus.



Sector of a circle



Segment of a circle



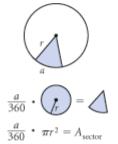
Annulus

A sector of a circle is the region between two radii and an arc of the circle.

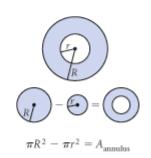
A segment of a circle is the region between a chord and an arc of the circle.

An annulus is the region between two concentric circles.

"Picture equations" are helpful when you try to visualize the areas of these regions. The picture equations below show you how to find the area of a sector of a circle, the area of a segment of a circle, and the area of an annulus.

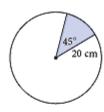


$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{a}{360} \pi r^2 - \frac{1}{2}bh = A_{\text{segment}}$$



#### EXAMPLE A

Find the area of the shaded sector.



#### ► Solution

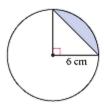
The sector is  $\frac{45^{\circ}}{360^{\circ}}$ , or  $\frac{1}{8}$ , of the circle.

$$A_{\rm sector} = \frac{a}{360} \cdot \pi r^2$$
 The area formula for a sector. 
$$= \frac{45}{360} \cdot \pi (20)^2$$
 Substitute  $r = 20$  and  $a = 45$ . 
$$= \frac{1}{8} \cdot 400\pi$$
 Reduce the fraction and square 20. 
$$= 50\pi$$
 Multiply.

The area is  $50\pi$  cm<sup>2</sup>.

#### EXAMPLE B

Find the area of the shaded segment.

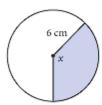


#### Solution

According to the picture equation on page 453, the area of a segment is equivalent to the area of the sector minus the area of the triangle. You can use the method in Example A to find that the area of the sector is  $\frac{1}{4}$  "  $36 \pi$  cm<sup>2</sup>, or  $9\pi$  cm<sup>2</sup>. The area of the triangle is  $\frac{1}{2}$  " 6" 6, or 18 cm<sup>2</sup>. So the area of the segment is  $9\pi - 18 \text{ cm}^2$ .

#### **EXAMPLE C**

The shaded area is  $14\pi$  cm<sup>2</sup>, and the radius is 6 cm. Find x.



#### ► Solution

The sector's area is  $\frac{x}{360}$  of the circle's area, which is 36  $\pi$ .

$$14\pi = \frac{x}{360} \cdot 36\pi$$

$$\frac{360 \cdot 14\pi}{36\pi} = x$$

$$x = 140$$

The central angle measures 140°.

### EXERCISES

Kleymallh.com Practice Your Skills

In Exercises 1–8, find the area of the shaded region. The radius of each circle is r. If two circles are shown, r is the radius of the smaller circle and R is the radius of the larger circle.



**1.** 
$$r = 6$$
 cm



**4.** 
$$r = 2$$
 cm



7. r = 2 cm



**10.** The shaded area is  $32\pi$  cm<sup>2</sup>. Find r.



**2.** r = 8 cm



**5.** r = 8 cm



**8.** R = 12 cmr = 9 cm



11. The shaded area is  $120\pi$  cm<sup>2</sup>, and the radius is 24 cm. Find x.



13. Application Suppose the pizza slice in the photo at the beginning of this lesson is a sector with a 36° arc, and the pizza has a radius of 20 ft. If one can of tomato sauce will cover 3 ft<sup>2</sup> of pizza, how many cans would you need to cover this slice?



**3.** r = 16 cm



**6.** R = 7 cmr = 4 cm



**9.** The shaded area is  $12\pi$  cm<sup>2</sup>. Find r.



12. The shaded area is  $10^{\pi}$  cm<sup>2</sup>. The radius of the large circle is 10 cm, and the radius of the small circle is 8 cm. Find x.





**14.** Utopia Park has just installed a circular fountain 8 meters in diameter. The Park Committee wants to pave a 1.5-meter-wide path around the fountain. If paving costs \$10 per square meter, find the cost to the nearest dollar of the paved path around the fountain.

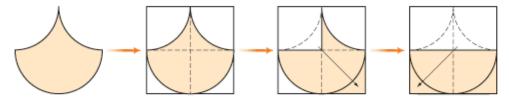


This circular fountain at the Chateau de Villandry in Loire Valley, France, shares a center with the circular path around it. How many concentric arcs and circles do you see in the picture?

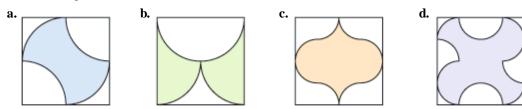
# Mathematics CONNECTION

Attempts to solve the famous problem of squaring a circle—finding a square with the same area as a given circle—led to the creation of some special shapes made up of parts of circles. The diagrams below are based on some that Leonardo da Vinci sketched while attempting to solve this problem.

**15.** The illustrations below demonstrate how to find a rectangle with the same area as the shaded figure.



In a series of diagrams, demonstrate how to find a rectangle with the same area as the shaded figure.



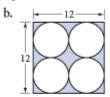
**16.** *Construction* Reverse the process you used in Exercise 15. On graph paper, draw a 12-by-6 rectangle. Use your compass to divide it into at least four parts, then rearrange the parts into a new curved figure. Draw its outline on graph paper.

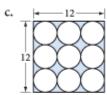
456 CHAPTER 8 Area © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

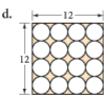
#### Review

17. Each set of circles is externally tangent. What is the area of the shaded region in each figure? What percentage of the area of the square is the area of the circle or circles in each figure? All given measurements are in centimeters.

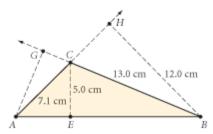
12







- 18. The height of a trapezoid is 15 m and the midsegment is 32 m. What is the area of the trapezoid? (h)
- **19.**  $\overline{CE}$ ,  $\overline{BH}$ , and  $\overline{AG}$  are altitudes. Find  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{AG}$ .



In Exercises 20–23, identify each statement as true or false. If true, explain why. If false, give a counterexample.

- **20.** If the arc of a circle measures  $90^{\circ}$  and has an arc length of  $24\pi$  cm, then the radius of the circle is 48 cm.
- 21. If the measure of each exterior angle of a regular polygon is 24°, then the polygon has 15 sides.
- 22. If the diagonals of a parallelogram bisect its angles, then the parallelogram is a square.
- 23. If two sides of a triangle measure 25 cm and 30 cm, then the third side must be greater than 5 cm, but less than 55 cm.

## IMPROVING YOUR REASONING SKILLS

## Code Equations

Each code below uses the first letters of words that will make the equation true. For example, 12M = a Y is an abbreviation of the equation 12 Months = a Year. Find the missing words in each code.

**1.**  $45D = \operatorname{an} AA \text{ of an } IRT$ 

**2.** 7 = S of a H

**3.**  $90D = \operatorname{each} A \text{ of a } R$ 

**4.** 5 = D in a P



# **Geometric Probability II**

You already know that a probability value is a number between 0 and 1 that tells you how likely something is to occur. For example, when you roll a die, three of the six rolls—namely, 2, 3, and 5—are prime numbers. Because each roll has the same chance of occurring,  $P(\text{prime number}) = \frac{3}{6}$ , or  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

In some situations, probability depends on area. For example, suppose a meteorite is headed toward Earth. If about  $\frac{1}{3}$  of Earth's surface is land, the probability that the

meteorite will hit land is about  $\frac{1}{3}$ , while the probability it will hit water is about  $\frac{2}{3}$ . Because Alaska has a greater area than Vermont, the probability the meteorite will land in Alaska is greater than the probability it will land in Vermont. If you knew the areas of these two states and the surface area of Earth, how could you calculate the probabilities that the meteorite would land in each state?

## Activity

You will need

graph paper

a rulera penny

a dime

## Where the Chips Fall

In this activity you will solve several probability problems that involve area.

#### The Shape of Things

At each level of a computer game, you must choose one of several shapes on a coordinate grid. The computer then randomly selects a point *anywhere* on the grid. If the point is outside your shape, you move to the next level. If the point is on or inside your shape, you lose the game.

On the first level, a trapezoid, a pentagon, a square, and a triangle are displayed on a grid that goes from 0 to 12 on both axes. The table below gives the vertices of the shapes.

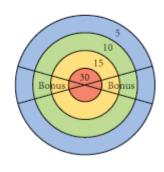
Shape	Vertices
Trapezoid	(1, 12), (8, 12), (7, 9), (4, 9)
Pentagon	(3, 1), (4, 4), (6, 4), (9, 2), (7, 0)
Square	(0, 6), (3, 9), (6, 6), (3, 3)
Triangle	(11, 0), (7, 4), (11, 12)

458 CHAPTER 8 Area © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

Step 1 For each shape, calculate the probability the computer will choose a point on or inside that shape. Express each probability to three decimal places. Step 2 What is the probability the computer will choose a point that is on or inside a quadrilateral? What is the probability it will choose a point that is outside all of the shapes? Step 3 If you choose a triangle, what is the probability you will move to the next level? Step 4 Which shape should you choose to have the best chance of moving to the next level? Why?

#### Right on Target

You are playing a carnival game in which you must throw one dart at the board shown at right. The score for each region is shown on the board. If your dart lands in a Bonus section, your score is tripled. The more points you get, the better your prize will be. The radii of the circles from the inside to the outside are 4 in., 8 in., 12 in., and 16 in. Assume your aim is not very good, so the dart will hit a random spot. If you miss the board completely, you get to throw again.



What is the probability your dart will land in the red region? Blue region? Step 5 Step 6 Compute the probability your dart will land in a Bonus section. (The central angle measure for each Bonus section is 30°.) Step 7 If you score 90 points, you will win the grand prize, a giant stuffed emu. What is the probability you will win the grand prize? If you score exactly 30 points, you win an "I V Carnivals" baseball cap. What is Step 8 the probability you will win the cap? Step 9 Now imagine you have been practicing your dart game, and your aim has improved. Would your answers to Steps 5–8 change? Explain.

#### The Coin Toss

You own a small cafe that is popular with the mathematicians in the neighborhood. You devise a game in which the customer flips a coin onto a red-and-white checkered tablecloth with 1-inch squares. If it lands completely within a square, the customer wins and doesn't have to pay the bill. If it lands touching or crossing the boundary of a square, the customer loses.



Step 10 Assuming the coin stays on the table, what is the probability of the customer winning by flipping a penny? A dime? (Hint: Where must the center of the coin land in order to win?)

Step 11 If the customer wins only if the coin falls within a red square, what is the probability of winning with a penny? A dime?

Step 12 Suppose the game is always played with a penny, and a customer wins if the penny lands completely inside any square (red or white). If your daily proceeds average \$300, about how much will the game cost you per day?

#### On a Different Note

Two opera stars—Rigoletto and Pollione—are auditioning for a part in an upcoming production. Because the singers have similar qualifications, the director decides to have a contest to see which man can hold a note the longest. Rigoletto has been known to hold a note for any length of time from 6 to 9 minutes. Pollione has been known to hold a note for any length of time from 5 to 7 minutes.

Step 13 Draw a rectangular grid in which the bottom side represents the range of times for Rigoletto and the left side represents the range of times for Pollione. Each point in the rectangle represents one possible outcome of the contest.

On your grid, mark all the points that represent a tie. Use your diagram to find the probability that Rigoletto will win the contest.



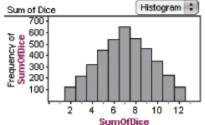
#### DIFFERENT DICE

Step 14

Understanding probability can improve your chances of winning a game. If you roll a pair of standard 6-sided dice, are you more likely to roll a sum of 6 or 12? It's fairly common to roll a sum of 6, because many combinations of two dice add up to 6. But a 12 is only possible if you roll a 6 on each die.

If you rolled a pair of standard 6-sided dice thousands of times, and recorded the number of times you got each sum, the histogram would resemble the one at right. If you rolled them far fewer times, your histogram would look more irregular.

Would the distribution be different if you used different dice? What if one die had odd numbers and the other had even numbers?



Fathom 2

You can use Fathom to simulate real events, such as rolling the dice that you have designed. You can obtain the results of hundreds of events very quickly, and use Fathom's graphing capabilities to make a histogram showing the distribution of different outcomes.

What if you used 8-sided dice? What if you rolled three 6-sided dice instead of two?

Choose one of these scenarios or one that you find interesting to investigate. Make your dice and roll them 20 times. Predict what the graph will look like if you roll the dice 100 times, then check your prediction.

Your project should include

- ▶ Your dice.
- ▶ Histograms of your experimental data, and your predictions and conclusions.

460 CHAPTER 8 Area © 2008 Key Curriculum Press



LESSON

8.7

No pessimist ever discovered the secrets of the stars, or sailed to an uncharted land, or opened a new doorway for the human spirit. HELEN KELLER

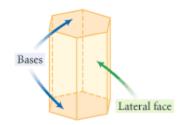
## **Surface Area**

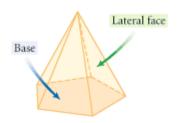
In Lesson 8.3, you calculated the surface areas of walls and roofs. But not all building surfaces are rectangular. How would you calculate the amount of glass necessary to cover a pyramid-shaped building? Or the number of tiles needed to cover a cone-shaped roof?

In this lesson you will learn how to find the surface areas of prisms, pyramids, cylinders, and cones. The **surface area** of each of these solids is the sum of the areas of all the faces or surfaces that enclose the solid. For prisms and pyramids, the faces include the solid's **bases** and its **lateral faces**.

In a prism, the bases are two congruent polygons and the lateral faces are rectangles or other parallelograms.

In a pyramid, the base can be any polygon. The lateral faces are triangles.

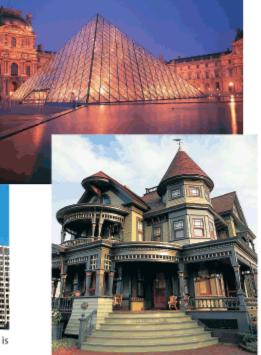




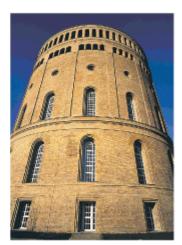
This glass pyramid was designed by I. M. Pei for the entrance of the Louvre museum in Paris, France.



This skyscraper in Chicago, Illinois, is an example of a prism.



A cone is part of the roof design of this Victorian house in Massachusetts.



This stone tower is a cylinder on top of a larger cylinder.

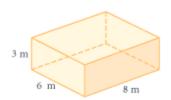
To find the surface areas of prisms and pyramids, follow these steps.

#### **Steps for Finding Surface Area**

- 1. Draw and label each face of the solid as if you had cut the solid apart along its edges and laid it flat. Label the dimensions.
- 2. Calculate the area of each face. If some faces are identical, you only need to find the area of one.
- **3.** Find the total area of all the faces.

#### **EXAMPLE** A

Find the surface area of the rectangular prism.

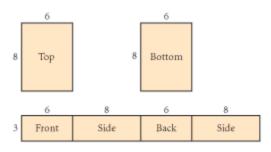




These shipping containers are rectangular prisms.

#### Solution

Draw and label the two congruent bases, and the four lateral faces unfolded into one rectangle. Then find the areas of all the rectangular faces.



surface area = 2( base area ) + ( lateral surface area )  
= 2( 
$$6 \cdot 8$$
 ) + 3(  $6 + 8 + 6 + 8$  )  
= 2(  $48$  ) + 3(  $28$  )  
=  $96 + 84$   
=  $180$ 

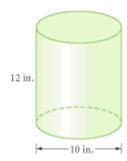
The surface area of the prism is 180 m<sup>2</sup>.

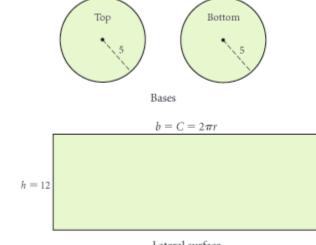
#### EXAMPLE B

Find the surface area of the cylinder.

#### ► Solution

Imagine cutting apart the cylinder. The two bases are circular regions, so you need to find the areas of two circles. Think of the lateral surface as a wrapper. Slice it and lay it flat to get a rectangular region. You'll need the area of this rectangle. The height of the rectangle is the height of the cylinder. The base of the rectangle is the circumference of the circular base.





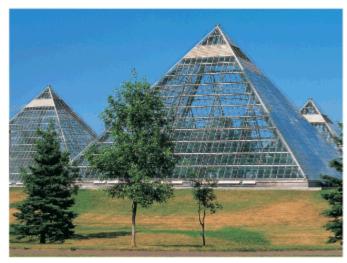
Lateral surface

surface area = 
$$2(\pi r^2) + (2\pi r)h$$
  
=  $2(\pi \cdot 5^2) + (2 \cdot \pi \cdot 5) \cdot 12$   
 $\approx 534$ 

The surface area of the cylinder is about 534 in<sup>2</sup>.



This ice cream plant in Burlington, Vermont, uses cylindrical containers for its milk and cream.



These conservatories in Edmonton, Canada, are glass pyramids.

The surface area of a pyramid is the area of the base plus the areas of the triangular faces. The height of each triangular lateral face is called the slant height. The slant height is labeled *l* and the pyramid height is labeled *h*.

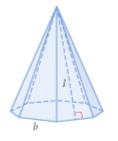
Height Slant height

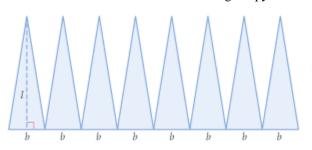
In the investigation you'll find out how to calculate the surface area of a pyramid with a regular polygon base.



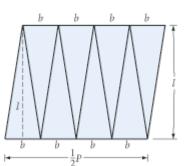
## Surface Area of a Regular Pyramid

You can cut and unfold the surface of a regular pyramid into these shapes.





- Step 1 | What is the area of each lateral face?
- Step 2 What is the total lateral surface area? What is the total lateral surface area for any pyramid with a regular *n*-gon base?
- Step 3 What is the area of the base for any regular *n*-gon pyramid?
- Step 4 Use your expressions from Steps 2 and 3 to write a formula for the surface area of a regular *n*-gon pyramid in terms of *n*, base length *b*, slant height *l*, and apothem *a*.
- Step 5 Write another expression for the surface area of a regular *n*-gon pyramid in terms of height *l*, apothem *a*, and perimeter of the base, *P*.



You can find the surface area of a cone using a method similar to the one you used to find the surface area of a pyramid.

Is the roof of this building in Kashan, Iran, a cone or a pyramid? What makes it hard to tell?



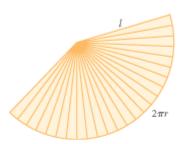


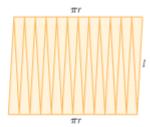
## **Investigation 2**

## Surface Area of a Cone

As the number of faces of a pyramid increases, it begins to look like a cone. You can think of the lateral surface as many small triangles or as a sector of a circle.







- Step 1 | What is the area of the base?
- Step 2 What is the lateral surface area in terms of *l* and *r*? What portion of the circle is the sector? What is the area of the sector?
- Step 3 Write the formula for the surface area of a cone.

This photograph of Sioux tepees was taken around 1902 in North or South Dakota. Is a tepee shaped more like a cone or a pyramid?



#### EXAMPLE C

Find the total surface area of the cone.



$$SA = \pi rl + \pi r^2$$
  
=  $(\pi)(5)(10) + \pi(5)^2$   
=  $75\pi$   
 $\approx 235.6$ 



The surface area of the cone is about 236 cm<sup>2</sup>.



Construction tools for Exercise 13

In Exercises 1–10, find the surface area of each solid. All quadrilaterals are rectangles, and all given measurements are in centimeters. Round your answers to the nearest 0.1 cm<sup>2</sup>.

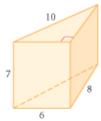
1.



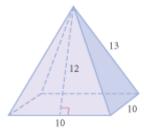
2.



3.



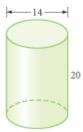
4.



5.



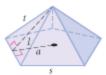
6.



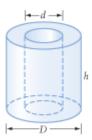
7. The base is a regular hexagon with apothem  $a \approx 12.1$ , side s = 14, and height h = 7.



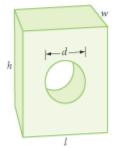
**8.** The base is a regular pentagon with apothem  $a \approx 11$  and side s = 16. Each lateral edge t = 17, and the height of a face l = 15.



**9.** D = 8, d = 4, h = 9



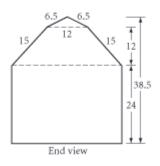
**10.** l = 8, w = 4, h = 10, d = 4

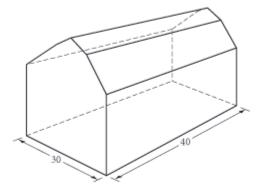


11. Explain how you would find the surface area of this obelisk.



**12.** *Application* Claudette and Marie are planning to paint the exterior walls of their country farmhouse (all vertical surfaces) and to put new cedar shingles on the roof. The paint they like best costs \$25 per gallon and covers 250 square feet per gallon. The wood shingles cost \$65 per bundle, and each bundle covers 100 square feet. How much will this home improvement cost? All measurements are in feet.





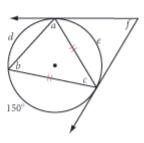
**13.** *Construction* The shapes of the spinning dishes in the photo are called **frustums** of cones. Think of them as cones with their tops cut off. Use your construction tools to draw pieces that you can cut out and tape together to form a frustum of a cone.



A Sri Lankan dancer balances and spins plates.

#### **Review**

- **14.** Use patty paper, templates, or pattern blocks to create a  $3^3.4^2/3^2.4.3.4/4^4$  tiling.
- **15.** Trace the figure at right. Find the lettered angle measures and arc measures.



**16.** *Application* Suppose a circular ranch with a radius of 3 km were divided into 16 congruent sectors. In a one-year cycle, how long would the cattle graze in each sector? What would be the area of each sector?

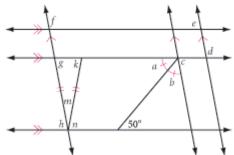
# History CONNECTION

In 1792, visiting Europeans presented horses and cattle to Hawaii's King Kamehameha I. Cattle ranching soon developed when Mexican *vaqueros* came to Hawaii to train Hawaiians in ranching. Today, Hawaiian cattle ranching is big business.

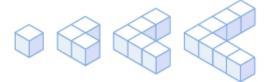
"Grazing geometry" is used on Hawaii's Kahua Ranch. Ranchers divide the grazing area into sectors. The cows are rotated through each sector in turn. By the time they return to the first sector, the grass has grown back and the cycle repeats.



**17. Developing Proof** Trace the figure at right. Find the lettered angle measures. Explain how you determined measures *f* and *k*.



**18.** If the pattern of blocks continues, what will be the surface area of the 50th solid in the pattern? (Every edge of each block has length 1 unit.)



## IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

## **Moving Coins**

Create a triangle of coins similar to the one shown. How can you move exactly three coins so that the triangle is pointing down rather than up? When you have found a solution, use a diagram to explain it.





468 CHAPTER 8 Area © 2008 Key Curriculum Press





## **Alternative Area Formulas**

n ancient Egypt, when the yearly floods of the Nile River receded, the river often followed a different course, so the shape of farmers' fields along the banks could change from year to year. Officials then needed to measure property areas in order to keep records and calculate taxes. Partly to keep track of land and finances, ancient Egyptians developed some of the earliest mathematics.

Historians believe that ancient Egyptian tax assessors used this formula to find the area of any quadrilateral:

$$A = \frac{1}{2}(a+c) \cdot \frac{1}{2}(b+d)$$

where a, b, c, and d are the lengths, in consecutive order, of the figure's four sides.

In this activity you will take a closer look at this ancient Egyptian formula, and another formula called Hero's formula, named after Hero of Alexandria.

## **Activity**

## **Calculating Area in Ancient Egypt**

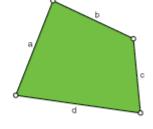
Investigate the ancient Egyptian formula for quadrilaterals.

Step 2 Change the labels of the sides to a, b, c, and d, consecutively.

Step 3 Measure the lengths of the sides and use the Sketchpad calculator to find the area according to the ancient Egyptian formula.

Step 4 Select the polygon interior and measure its area. How does the area given by the formula compare to the actual area? Is the ancient Egyptian formula correct?

Step 5 Does the ancient Egyptian formula always favor either the tax collector or the landowner, or does it favor one in some cases and the other in other cases? Explain.



Step 6 Describe the quadrilaterals for which the formula works accurately. For what kinds of quadrilaterals is it slightly inaccurate? Very inaccurate?

Step 7 State the ancient Egyptian formula in words, using the word *mean*.

Step 8

According to Hero's formula, if *s* is half the perimeter of a triangle with side lengths *a*, *b*, and *c*, the area *A* is given by the formula

$$A = \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$$

Use Sketchpad to investigate Hero's formula. Construct a triangle and its interior. Label the sides *a*, *b*, and *c*, and use the Sketchpad calculator to find the triangle's area according to Hero. Compare the result to the measured area of the triangle. Does Hero's formula work for all triangles?

Step 9

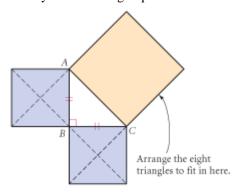
Devise a way of calculating the area of any quadrilateral. Use Sketchpad to test your method.

## IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

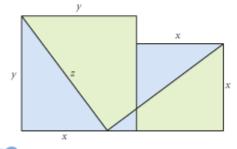
### Cover the Square

Trace each diagram below onto another sheet of paper.

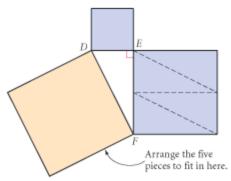
Cut out the four triangles in each of the two small equal squares and arrange them to exactly cover the large square.



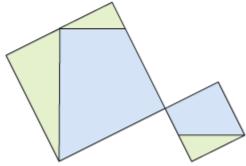
Two squares with areas  $x^2$  and  $y^2$  are divided into the five regions as shown. Cut out the five regions and arrange them to exactly cover a larger square with an area of  $z^2$ .



Cut out the small square and the four triangles from the square on leg  $\overline{EF}$  and arrange them to exactly cover the large square.



Two squares have been divided into three right triangles and two quadrilaterals. Cut out the five regions and arrange them to exactly cover a larger square.



# REVIEW

You should know area formulas for rectangles, parallelograms, triangles, trapezoids, regular polygons, and circles. You should also be able to show where these formulas come from and how they're related to one another. Most importantly, you should be able to apply them to solve practical problems involving area, including the surface areas of solid figures. What occupations can you list that use area formulas?



When you use area formulas for real-world applications, you have to consider units of measurement and accuracy. Should you use inches, feet, centimeters, meters, or some other unit? If you work with a circle or a regular polygon, is your answer exact or an approximation?



## Practice Your Skill EXERCISES

For Exercises 1–10, match the area formula with the shaded area.

Reymath.com





**2.** A = 0.5bh

3. 
$$A = 0.5h(b_1 + b_2)$$

**4.** 
$$A = 0.5d_1d_2$$

5. 
$$A = 0.5aP$$

6. 
$$A = \pi r^2$$

7. 
$$A = \frac{x}{360}\pi r^2$$

8. 
$$A = \pi (R^2 - r^2)$$

9. 
$$SA = 2\pi rl + 2\pi r^2$$

10. 
$$SA = \pi r l + \pi r^2$$



C.



D.

G.



E.









For Exercises 11–13, illustrate each term.

11. Apothem

12. Annulus

13. Sector of a circle

For Exercises 14-16, draw a diagram and explain in a paragraph how you derived the area formula for each figure.

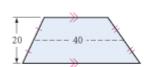
14. Parallelogram

15. Trapezoid

16. Circle

Solve for the unknown measures in Exercises 17–25. All measurements are in centimeters.

17. 
$$A = ?$$



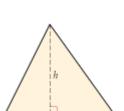
18. 
$$A \approx \frac{?}{a}$$
  
 $a = 36$   
 $s \approx 41.6$ 



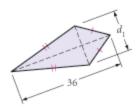
19. 
$$A = \frac{?}{8}$$



**20.** 
$$A = 576 \text{ cm}^2$$
  
 $h = ?$ 

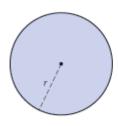


**21.** 
$$A = 576 \text{ cm}^2$$
  $d_1 = ?$ 

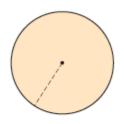


22. 
$$A = 126 \text{ cm}^2$$
  
 $a = 13 \text{ cm}$   
 $h = 9 \text{ cm}$   
 $b = ?$ 

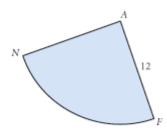
23. 
$$C = 18\pi \text{ cm}$$
  
 $A = ?$ 



24. 
$$A = 576\pi \text{ cm}^2$$
  
The circumference is  $?$ .

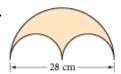


25. 
$$A_{\text{sector}} = 16\pi \text{ cm}^2$$
  
 $m\angle FAN = ?$ 

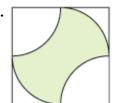


In Exercises 26–28, find the shaded area to the nearest 0.1 cm<sup>2</sup>. In Exercises 27 and 28, the quadrilateral is a square and all arcs are arcs of a circle of radius 6 cm.

26.



27.

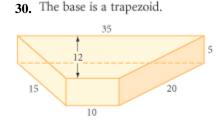


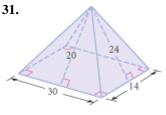
28.



In Exercises 29–31, find the surface area of each prism or pyramid. All given measurements are in centimeters. All quadrilaterals are rectangles, unless otherwise labeled.

29. 8



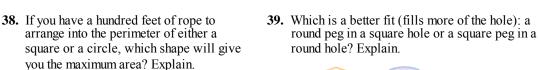


For Exercises 32 and 33, plot the vertices of each figure on graph paper, then find its area.

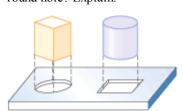
- **32.** Parallelogram *ABCD* with A(0,0), B(14,0), and D(6,8)
- **33.** Quadrilateral *FOUR* with F(0, 0), O(4, -3), U(9, 5), and R(4, 15)

**34.** The sum of the lengths of the two bases of a trapezoid is 22 cm, and its area is 66 cm<sup>2</sup>. What is the height of the trapezoid?

- **35.** Find the area of a regular pentagon to the nearest tenth of a square centimeter if the apothem measures about 6.9 cm and each side measures 10 cm.
- **36.** Find three noncongruent polygons, each with an area of 24 square units, on a 6-by-6 geoboard or a 6-by-6 square dot grid.
- 37. Lancelot wants to make a pen for his pet, Isosceles. What is the area of the largest rectangular pen that Lancelot can make with 100 meters of fencing if he uses a straight wall of the castle for one side of the pen?



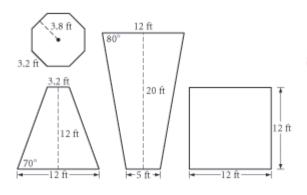


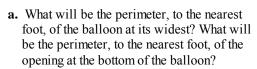


- **40.** Al Dente's Pizzeria sells pizza by the slice, according to the sign. Which slice is the best deal (the most pizza per dollar)?
- **41.** If you need 8 oz of dough to make a 12-inch diameter pizza, how much dough will you need to make a 16-inch pizza on a crust of the same thickness?
- **42.** Which is the biggest slice of pie: one-fourth of a 6-inch diameter pie, one-sixth of an 8-inch diameter pie, or one-eighth of a 12-inch diameter pie? Which slice has the most crust along the curved edge?

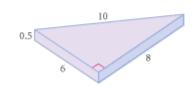


43. The Hot-Air Balloon Club at Da Vinci High School has designed a balloon for the annual race. The panels are a regular octagon, eight squares, and sixteen isosceles trapezoids, and club members will sew them together to construct the balloon. They have built a scale model, as shown at right. The approximate dimensions of the four types of panels are below, shown in feet.



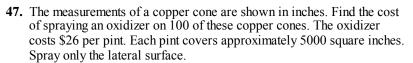


- **b.** What is the total surface area of the balloon to the nearest square foot?
- **44.** You are producing 10,000 of these metal wedges, and you must electroplate them with a thin layer of high-conducting silver. The measurements shown are in centimeters. Find the total cost for silver, if silver plating costs \$1 for each 200 square centimeters. Assume each quadrilateral is a rectangle.



474 CHAPTER 8 Area © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

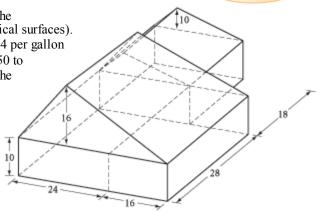
- **45.** The measurements of a chemical storage container are shown in meters. Find the cost of painting the exterior of nine of these large cylindrical containers with sealant. The sealant costs \$32 per gallon. Each gallon covers 18 square meters. Do not paint the bottom faces.
- **46.** Hector is a very cost-conscious produce buyer. He usually buys asparagus in large bundles, each 44 cm in circumference. But today there are only small bundles that are 22 cm in circumference. Two 22 cm bundles are the same price as one 44 cm bundle. Is this a good deal or a bad deal? Why?





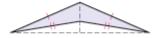


48. Tom and Betty are planning to paint the exterior walls of their cabin (all vertical surfaces). The paint they have selected costs \$24 per gallon and, according to the label, covers 150 to 300 square feet per gallon. Because the wood is very dry, they assume the paint will cover 150 square feet per gallon. How much will the project cost? (All measurements shown are in feet.)



## TAKE ANOTHER LOOK

- **1. Technology** Use geometry software to construct these shapes:
  - a. A triangle whose perimeter can vary, but whose area stays constant
  - **b.** A parallelogram whose perimeter can vary, but whose area stays constant
- Developing Proof True or false? The area of a triangle is equal to half the perimeter of the triangle times the radius of the inscribed circle. Support your conclusion with a convincing argument.
- **3. Developing Proof** Does the area formula for a kite hold for a dart? Support your conclusion with a convincing argument.



- **4. Developing Proof** How can you use the Regular Polygon Area Conjecture to arrive at a formula for the area of a circle? Use a series of diagrams to help explain your reasoning.
- 5. Use algebra to show that the total surface area of a prism with a regular polygon base is given by the formula SA = P(h + a), where h is height of the prism, a is the apothem of the base, and P is the perimeter of the base.

- **6.** Use algebra to show that the total surface area of a cylinder is given by the formula SA = C(h + r), where h is the height of the cylinder, r is the radius of the base, and C is the circumference of the base.
- **7. Developing Proof** Here is a different formula for the area of a trapezoid: A = mh, where m is the length of the midsegment and h is the height. Does the formula work? Use algebra or a diagram to explain why or why not. Does it work for a triangle?
- **8.** In Lesson 8.3, Exercise 10, you were introduced to Hero's formula for finding the area of a triangle. With the help of Hero's formula and some algebra, derive a formula for the area of any quadrilateral given the length of each of the four sides and one diagonal.
- **9. Developing Proof** True or false? If the diagonals of a quadrilateral are perpendicular, then the area of the quadrilateral is half the product of the diagonals. Support your conclusion with either a counterexample or a convincing argument.
- **10. Developing Proof** In Lesson 8.6, Exercise 17, you were asked to find the shaded area between the circles inscribed within a square. Did you notice that the ratio of the sum of the areas of all the circles to the area of the square was always the same? Is this always true? Can you prove it?

## **Assessing What You've Learned**



**UPDATE YOUR PORTFOLIO** Choose one of the more challenging problems you did in this chapter and add it to your portfolio. Write about why you chose it, what made it challenging, what strategies you used to solve it, and what you learned from it.



**ORGANIZE YOUR NOTEBOOK** Review your notebook to be sure it's complete and well organized. Be sure you have included all of this chapter's area formulas in your conjecture list. Write a one-page chapter summary.



WRITE IN YOUR JOURNAL Imagine yourself five or ten years from now, looking back on the influence this geometry class had on your life. How do you think you'll be using geometry? Will this course have influenced your academic or career goals?



**PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENT** While a classmate, a friend, a family member, or a teacher observes, demonstrate how to derive one or more of the area formulas. Explain each step, including how you arrive at the formula.



**WRITE TEST ITEMS** Work with group members to write test items for this chapter. Include simple exercises and complex application problems.

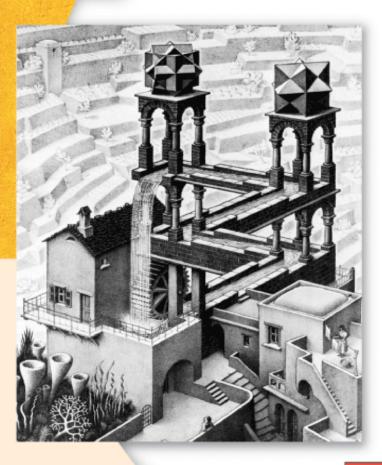


**GIVE A PRESENTATION** Create a poster, a model, or other visual aid, and give a presentation on how to derive one or more of the area formulas. Or present your findings from one of the Take Another Look activities.

476 CHAPTER 8 Area © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

**CHAPTER** 

# The Pythagorean **Theorem**



But serving up an action, suggesting the dynamic in the static, has become a hobby of mine . . . . The "flowing" on that motionless plane holds my attention to such a degree that my preference is to try and make it into a cycle.

M. C. ESCHER

Waterfall, M. C. Escher, 1961 ©2002 Cordon Art B. V.-Baarn-Holland.

#### **OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will

- explore the Pythagorean Theorem, one of the most important discoveries in mathematics
- use the Pythagorean Theorem to calculate the distance between any two points
- use conjectures related to the Pythagorean Theorem to solve problems



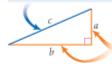


I am not young enough to know everything. OSCAR WILDE

# The Theorem of **Pythagoras**

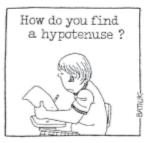
n a right triangle, the side opposite the right angle is called the hypotenuse. The other two sides are called **legs**. In the figure at right, a and b represent the lengths of the legs, and c represents the length of the hypotenuse.

In a right triangle, the side opposite the right angle is called the **hypotenuse**, here with length c.



The other two sides are legs, here with lengths a and b.







FUNKY WINKERBEAN by Batiuk. Reprinted with special permission of North America Syndicate.

There is a special relationship between the lengths of the legs and the length of the hypotenuse. This relationship is known today as the **Pythagorean Theorem**.

## **Investigation**

## The Three Sides of a Right Triangle

The puzzle in this investigation is intended to help you

recall the Pythagorean Theorem. It uses a dissection,

which means you will cut apart one or more

geometric figures and make the pieces fit into

#### You will need

- scissors
- a compass
- a straightedge
- the worksheet Dissection of Squares

Step 1

Separate the four diagrams on the worksheet so each person in your group starts with a different right triangle. Each diagram includes a right triangle with a square constructed on each side of the triangle. Label the legs a and b and the hypotenuse c. What is the area of each square in terms of its side?

Step 2

Locate the center of the square on the longer leg by drawing its diagonals. Label the center O.

Step 3

Through point O, construct line j perpendicular to the hypotenuse and line kperpendicular to line j. Line k is parallel to the hypotenuse. Lines j and k divide the square on the longer leg into four parts.

another figure.

Step 4

Cut out the square on the shorter leg and the four parts of the square on the longer leg. Arrange them to exactly cover the square on the hypotenuse.

Step 5

State the Pythagorean Theorem.

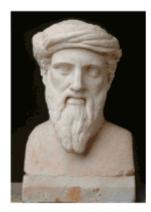
#### The Pythagorean Theorem

C-8

In a right triangle, the sum of the squares of the lengths of the legs equals

?..

# History CONNECTION



Pythagoras of Samos (ca. 569–475 B. C. E.), depicted in this statue, is often described as "the first pure mathematician." Samos was a principal commercial center of Greece and is located on the island of Samos in the Aegean Sea. The ancient town of Samos now lies in ruins, as shown in the photo at right.

Mysteriously, none of Pythagoras's writings still exist, and we know very little about his life. He founded a mathematical society in Croton, in

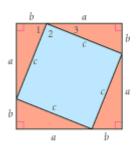


what is now Italy, whose members discovered irrational numbers and the five regular solids. They proved what is now called the Pythagorean Theorem, although it was discovered and used 1000 years earlier by the Chinese and Babylonians. Some math historians believe that the ancient Egyptians also used a special case of this property to construct right angles.

A **theorem** is a conjecture that has been proved. A demonstration, like the one in the investigation, is the first step toward proving the Pythagorean Theorem.

There are more than 200 proofs of the Pythagorean Theorem. Elisha Scott Loomis's *Pythagorean Proposition*, published in 1927, contains original proofs by Pythagoras, Euclid, Leonardo da Vinci, and U.S. President James Garfield. One well-known proof is included below. You will complete another proof as an exercise.

## Paragraph Proof: The Pythagorean Theorem



You can arrange four copies of any right triangle into a square, as shown at left. You need to show that  $a^2 + b^2$  equals  $c^2$ . The area of the entire square is  $(a + b)^2$ , or  $a^2 + 2ab + b^2$ . The area of each triangle is  $(\frac{1}{2})ab$ , so the sum of the areas of the four triangles is 2ab. Using subtraction, the area of the quadrilateral in the center is  $(a^2 + 2ab + b^2) - 2ab$ , or  $a^2 + b^2$ .

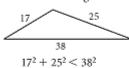
You now need to show that the quadrilateral in the center is a square with area  $c^2$ . You know that all the sides have length c, but you also need to show that the angles are right angles. The sum  $m \angle 1 + m \angle 2 + m \angle 3$  is  $180^\circ$  and the sum  $m \angle 1 + m \angle 3$  is  $90^\circ$  because the third angle in each triangle is a right angle. Using subtraction,  $m \angle 2$  is  $90^\circ$ , so  $\angle 2$  is a right angle. The same logic applies to all four angles of the quadrilateral, so it is a square with side length c and area  $c^2$ . Therefore,  $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$ , which proves the Pythagorean Theorem.

Acute triangle



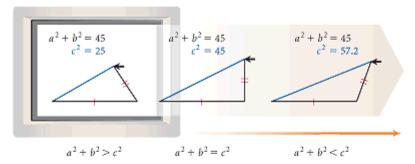
 $6^2 + 7^2 > 8^2$ 

#### Obtuse triangle



keymath.com/DG

The Pythagorean Theorem works for right triangles, but does it work for all triangles? A quick check demonstrates that it doesn't hold for other triangles.



For an interactive version of this sketch, see the Dynamic Geometry Exploration The Theorem of Pythagoras at www.keymath.com/DG . |

Let's look at a few examples to see how you can use the Pythagorean Theorem to find the distance between two points.

#### **EXAMPLE A**

How high up on the wall will a 20-foot ladder touch if the foot of the ladder is placed 5 feet from the wall?



The ladder is the hypotenuse of a right triangle, so  $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$ .

$$(5)^2 + (h)^2 = (20)^2$$
 Substitute.  
 $25 + h^2 = 400$  Multiply.  
 $h^2 = 375$  Subtract 25 from both sides.  
 $h = \sqrt{375} \approx 19.4$  Take the square root of each side.

The top of the ladder will touch the wall about 19.4 feet up from the ground.

Notice that the exact answer in Example A is  $\sqrt{375}$ . However, this is a practical application, so you need to calculate the approximate answer.

#### EXAMPLE B

Find the area of the rectangular rug if the width is 12 feet and the diagonal measures 20 feet.

#### Solution

Use the Pythagorean Theorem to find the length.

$$a^{2} + b^{2} = c^{2}$$
  
 $(12)^{2} + (L)^{2} = (20)^{2}$   
 $144 + L^{2} = 400$   
 $L^{2} = 256$   
 $L = \sqrt{256}$   
 $L = 16$ 

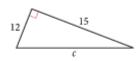
The length is 16 feet. The area of the rectangle is 12 • 16, or 192 square feet.



## EXERCISES

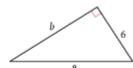


In Exercises 1–11, find each missing length. All measurements are in centimeters. Use the symbol = for approximate answers and round to the nearest tenth of a centimeter.



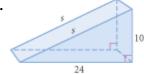


3.





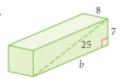
5.



6.



7.



8.



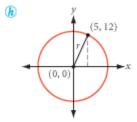
**9.** The base is a circle.



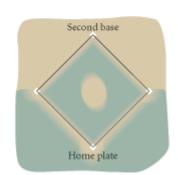
10.



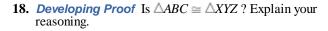
11.

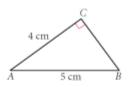


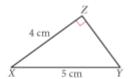
- 12. A baseball infield is a square, each side measuring 90 feet. To the nearest foot, what is the distance from home plate to second base?
- 13. The diagonal of a square measures 32 meters. What is the area of the square?
- **14.** What is the length of the diagonal of a square whose area is 64 cm<sup>2</sup>?
- 15. The lengths of the three sides of a right triangle are consecutive integers. Find them.
- 16. A rectangular garden 6 meters wide has a diagonal measuring 10 meters. Find the perimeter of the garden.

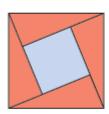


17. Developing Proof One very famous proof of the Pythagorean Theorem is by the Hindu mathematician Bhaskara. It is often called the "Behold" proof because, as the story goes, Bhaskara drew the diagram below and offered no verbal argument other than to exclaim, "Behold!" Use algebra to fill in the steps, explaining why this diagram proves the Pythagorean Theorem.







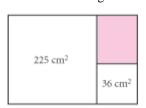


# History CONNECTION

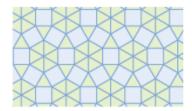
Bhaskara (1114–1185, India) was one of the first mathematicians to gain a thorough understanding of number systems and how to solve equations, several centuries before European mathematicians. He wrote six books on mathematics and astronomy, and led the astronomical observatory at Ujjain.

#### Review

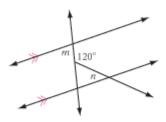
**19.** The two quadrilaterals whose areas are given are squares. Find the area of the shaded rectangle.



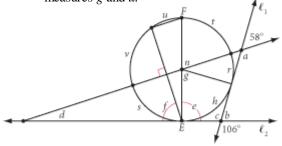
**20.** Give the vertex arrangement for the 2-uniform tessellation.



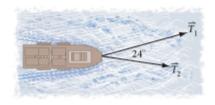
**21.** Developing Proof Explain why  $m + n = 120^{\circ}$ .



**22. Developing Proof** Calculate each lettered angle, measure, or arc.  $\overline{EF}$  is a diameter;  $\ell_1$  and  $\ell_2$  are tangents. Explain how you determined the measures g and u.



23. Two tugboats are pulling a container ship into the harbor. They are pulling at an angle of 24° between the tow lines. The vectors shown in the diagram represent the forces the two tugs are exerting on the container ship. Copy the vectors and complete the vector parallelogram to determine the resultant vector force on the container ship.





#### **CREATING A GEOMETRY FLIP BOOK**

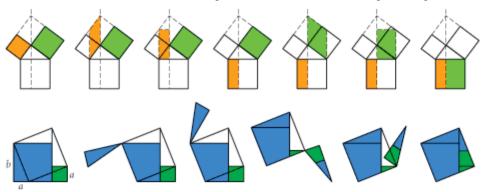
Have you ever fanned the pages of a flip book and watched the pictures seem to move? Each page shows a picture slightly different from the previous one. Flip books are basic to animation technique. For more information about flip books, see <a href="https://www.keymath.com/DG">www.keymath.com/DG</a>.





These five frames start off the photo series titled *The Horse in Motion*, by photographer, innovator, and motion picture pioneer Eadweard Muybridge (1830–1904).

Here are two dissections that you can animate to demonstrate the Pythagorean Theorem. (You used another dissection in the Investigation The Three Sides of a Right Triangle.)



You could also animate these drawings to demonstrate area formulas.



Choose one of the animations mentioned above and create a flip book that demonstrates the formula. Draw the figures in the same position on each page so they don't jump around when the pages are flipped. Use graph paper or tracing paper to help. A helpful hint: the smaller the change from picture to picture, and the more pictures there are, the smoother the motion will be.

Your project should include

- ▶ A finished flip book that demonstrates a geometric relationship.
- ▶ An explanation of how your flip book demonstrates the formula you chose.



LESSON

Any time you see someone more successful than you are, they are doing something you aren't. MALCOLM X

You will need

a protractor

string

a ruler paper clips

# The Converse of the **Pythagorean Theorem**

n Lesson 9.1, you saw that if a triangle is a right triangle, then the square of the length of its hypotenuse is equal to the sum of the squares of the lengths of the two legs. What about the converse? If x, y, and zare the lengths of the three sides of a triangle and they satisfy the Pythagorean equation,  $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$ , must the triangle be a right triangle? Let's find out.



## Investigation

## Is the Converse True?

Three positive integers that work in the Pythagorean equation are called Pythagorean triples. For example, 8-15-17 is a Pythagorean triple because  $8^2 + 15^2 = 17^2$ . Here are nine sets of Pythagorean triples.

3-4-5

5-12-13

7-24-25

8-15-17

6-8-10

10-24-26

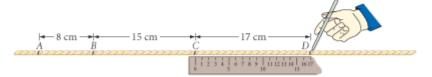
16-30-34

9-12-15

12-16-20

Step 1

Select one set of Pythagorean triples from the list above. Mark off four points, A, B, C, and D, on a string to create three consecutive lengths from your set of triples.



Step 2

Loop three paper clips onto the string. Tie the ends together so that points A and D meet.

Step 3

Three group members should each pull a paper clip at point A, B, or C to stretch the string tight.

Step 4 With your protractor or the corner of a piece of paper, check the largest angle. What type of triangle is formed?

Step 5 Select another set of triples from the list. Repeat Steps 1–4 with your new lengths.

Step 6 Compare results in your group. State your results as your next conjecture.

#### Converse of the Pythagorean Theorem

C-82

If the lengths of the three sides of a triangle satisfy the Pythagorean equation, then the triangle 2.

This ancient Babylonian tablet, called Plimpton 322, dates sometime between 1900 and 1600 B.C.E. It suggests several advanced Pythagorean triples, such as 1679-2400-2929.



# History CONNECTION

Some historians believe Egyptian "rope stretchers" used the Converse of the Pythagorean Theorem to help reestablish land boundaries after the yearly flooding of the Nile and to help construct the pyramids. Some ancient tombs show workers carrying ropes tied with equally spaced knots. For example, 13 equally spaced knots would divide the rope into 12 equal lengths. If one person held knots 1 and 13 together, and two others held the rope at knots 4 and 8 and stretched it tight, they could have created a 3-4-5 right triangle.





**Developing Proof** The standard proof of the Converse of the Pythagorean Theorem is interesting because it is an instance where the original theorem is used to prove the converse. One possible proof is started for you below. Finish it as a group.

#### **Proof: Converse of the Pythagorean Theorem**

**Conjecture:** If the lengths of the three sides of a triangle work in the Pythagorean equation, then the triangle is a right triangle.

**Given:** a, b, c are the lengths of the sides of  $\triangle ABC$  and  $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$ 

**Show:**  $\triangle ABC$  is a right triangle

**Plan:** Use the think backward strategy repeatedly. To show that  $\triangle ABC$  is a right triangle, you need to prove that  $\angle C$  is a right angle. One way to do this is to show that  $\angle C$  is congruent to another right angle. A familiar idea is to prove that both angles are



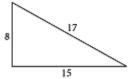
corresponding parts of congruent triangles. So you can construct a right triangle,  $\triangle DEF$ , with right angle F, legs of length a and b, and hypotenuse of length x. Now show that x = c to prove that the triangles are congruent.



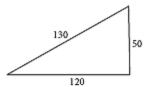
## EXERCISES

In Exercises 1–6, use the Converse of the Pythagorean Theorem to determine whether each triangle is a right triangle.

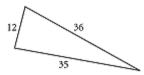
1.



2.



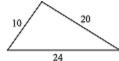
3.



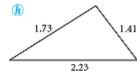
4.



5.



6.



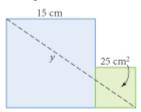
In Exercises 7 and 8, use the Converse of the Pythagorean Theorem to solve each problem.

- 7. Is a triangle with sides measuring 9 feet, 12 feet, and 18 feet a right triangle?
- 8. A window frame that seems rectangular has height 408 cm. length 306 cm, and one diagonal with length 525 cm. Is the window frame really rectangular? Explain.

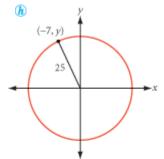


In Exercises 9–11, find y.

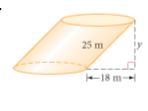
**9.** Both quadrilaterals are squares.



10.



11.



12. The lengths of the three sides of a right triangle are consecutive even integers. Find them.

**14.** How high on a building will a 15-foot ladder touch if the foot of the ladder is 5 feet from the building?

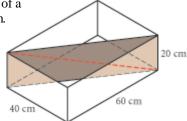
13. Find the area of a right triangle with hypotenuse length 17 cm and one leg length 15 cm.

**15.** The congruent sides of an isosceles triangle measure 6 cm, and the base measures 8 cm. Find the area.

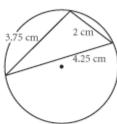
16. Find the amount of fencing in linear feet needed for the perimeter of a rectangular lot with a diagonal length 39 m and a side length 36 m.

17. A rectangular piece of cardboard fits snugly on a diagonal in this box.

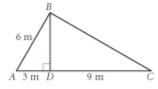
- **a.** What is the area of the cardboard rectangle?
- **b.** What is the length of the diagonal of the cardboard rectangle?



**18.** Developing Proof What's wrong with this picture? **19.** Developing Proof Explain why  $\triangle ABC$  is a

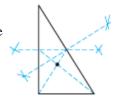


right triangle.



## Review

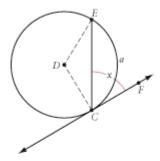
**20.** Identify the point of concurrency from the construction marks.



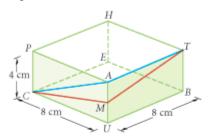
**21.** What is the probability of randomly selecting three points that form an isosceles triangle from the 10 points in this isometric grid?



22. **Developing Proof** Line CF is tangent to circle D at C. The arc measure of  $\overline{CE}$  is a. Explain why  $x = (\frac{1}{2}) a$ .



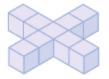
**23.** Two paths from C to T (traveling on the surface) are shown on the 8 cm-by-8 cm-by-4 cm prism below. M is the midpoint of edge  $\overline{UA}$ . Which is the shorter path from *C* to *T*: *C-M-T* or *C-A-T*? Explain. (h)

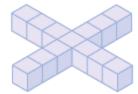


24. If the pattern of blocks continues, what will be the surface area of the 50th solid in the pattern?









25. Sketch the solid shown, but with the two blue cubes removed and the red cube moved to cover the visible face of the green cube.



26. How many 1-by-1-by-1 unit cubes are in this Sol Lewitt sculpture?

The outlines of stacked cubes create a visual impact in this untitled module unit sculpture by conceptual artist Sol Lewitt.



## IMPROVING YOUR REASONING SKILLS

#### Container Problem II

You have an unmarked 9-liter container, an unmarked 4-liter container, and an unlimited supply of water. In table, symbol, or paragraph form, describe how you might end up with exactly 3 liters in one of the containers.







#### **\LGEBRA 9**

# Radical Expressions

f you use the Pythagorean Theorem to find the length of the diagonal segment on square dot paper at right, you get the radical expression  $\sqrt{2}$ . Until now you may have left these expressions as radicals, or you may have found a decimal approximation using a calculator, such as  $\sqrt{2} \approx 1.4142$ . Geometrically, you can think of a radical expression as a side of a right triangle. In this case you can think of  $\sqrt{2}$ as the hypotenuse of a right triangle with both legs equal to 1.

Let's look at another case. By applying the Pythagorean Theorem to the diagram at right, you'll find that the hypotenuse of this right triangle is equal to  $\sqrt{50}$ .

$$y^2 = 5^2 + 5^2$$

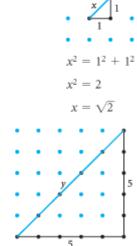
$$y^2 = 50$$

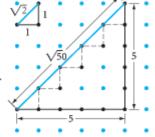
$$y = \sqrt{50}$$

So, you can think of  $\sqrt{50}$  as the hypotenuse of a right triangle with both legs equal to 5.

You can use this idea of radicals as sides of right triangles to simplify some radical expressions. Let's compare the previous two examples. How does the  $\sqrt{50}$  segment compare to the  $\sqrt{2}$  segment? Notice that one  $\sqrt{50}$  segment is made up of five of the  $\sqrt{2}$ segments, so we can write this equation:  $\sqrt{50} = 5\sqrt{2}$ .

The expression  $5\sqrt{2}$  is considered simplified because it expresses the radical using a simpler geometric representation, the diagonal of a 1-by-1 square.





You can also simplify a square root algebraically by taking the square root of any perfect square factors in the radical expression. As you will notice in this example, you get the same answer.

#### EXAMPLE A

Simplify  $\sqrt{50}$ .

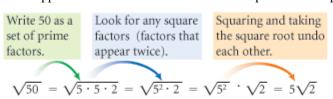
Solution

One way to simplify a square root is to look for perfect-square factors.

The largest perfect-square factor of 50 is 25.  $\sqrt{50} = \sqrt{25 \cdot 2} = \sqrt{25} \cdot \sqrt{2} = 5\sqrt{2}$ 25 is a perfect square, so you can take its square root.

#### ALGEBRA SKILLS 9 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 9 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 9 • USING

Another approach is to factor the number as far as possible with prime factors.



Giving an exact answer to a problem involving a square root is important in many situations. Some patterns are easier to find with simplified square roots than with decimal approximations. Standardized tests often give answers in simplified form. And when you multiply radical expressions, you often have to simplify the answer.

**EXAMPLE B** | Multiply  $3\sqrt{6}$  by  $5\sqrt{2}$ .

Solution

To multiply radical expressions, associate and multiply the quantities outside the radical sign, and associate and multiply the quantities inside the radical sign.

$$(3\sqrt{6})(5\sqrt{2}) = 3 \cdot 5 \cdot \sqrt{6 \cdot 2} = 15 \cdot \sqrt{12} = 15 \cdot \sqrt{4 \cdot 3} = 15 \cdot 2\sqrt{3} = 30\sqrt{3}$$



## EXERCISES

In Exercises 1–5, express each product in its simplest form.

1. 
$$(\sqrt{3})(\sqrt{2})$$
 2.  $(\sqrt{5})^2$ 

2. 
$$(\sqrt{5})^2$$

3. 
$$(3\sqrt{6})(2\sqrt{3})$$

4. 
$$(7\sqrt{3})^2$$

4. 
$$(7\sqrt{3})^2$$
 5.  $(2\sqrt{2})^2$ 

In Exercises 6–15, express each square root in its simplest form.

6. 
$$\sqrt{12}$$

7. 
$$\sqrt{18}$$

8. 
$$\sqrt{40}$$

7. 
$$\sqrt{18}$$
 8.  $\sqrt{40}$  9.  $\sqrt{75}$ 

10 
$$\sqrt{85}$$

11. 
$$\sqrt{96}$$

12. 
$$\sqrt{576}$$
 13.  $\sqrt{720}$ 

14. 
$$\sqrt{784}$$

15. 
$$\sqrt{828}$$

- 16. Give a geometric explanation for your answer to Exercise 7 using two right triangles on square dot paper.
- 17. Draw a right triangle on square dot paper with a base of 2 and a height of 1. What radical expression does the hypotenuse represent? Draw a second right triangle to explain geometrically why  $\sqrt{20} = 2\sqrt{5}$ .
- **18.** Represent  $\sqrt{10}$  geometrically on square dot paper, then explain why  $\sqrt{40} = 2\sqrt{10}$ .
- **19.** How could you represent  $\sqrt{13}$  geometrically on square dot paper?
- **20.** Each dot on isometric dot paper is exactly one unit from the six dots that surround it. Notice that you can connect any three adjacent dots to form an equilateral triangle. In the diagram at right, solve for x and y, and use this to give a geometric explanation for your answer to Exercise 6.
- 21. How could you represent  $\sqrt{7}$  geometrically on isometric dot paper?





LESSON

9.3

In an isosceles triangle, the sum of the square roots of the two equal sides is equal to the square root of the third side.

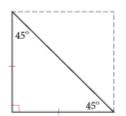
THE SCARECROW IN THE 1939 FILM THE WIZARD OF OZ

# **Two Special Right Triangles**

In this lesson you will use the Pythagorean Theorem to discover some relationships between the sides of two special right triangles.

One of these special triangles is an isosceles right triangle, also called a 45°-45°-90° triangle. Each isosceles right triangle is half a square, so these triangles show up often in mathematics and engineering.





An isosceles right triangle



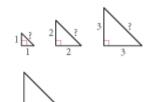
## **Investigation 1**

Length of each leg

Length of hypotenuse

## **Isosceles Right Triangles**

In this investigation you will simplify radicals to discover a relationship between the length of the legs and the length of the hypotenuse in a  $45^{\circ}\text{-}45^{\circ}\text{-}90^{\circ}$  triangle. To simplify a square root means to write it as a multiple of a smaller radical without using decimal approximations.



- Step 1
- Find the length of the hypotenuse of each isosceles right triangle at right. Simplify each square root.
- Step 2

Copy and complete this table. Draw additional triangles as needed.

				$\geq$	
		1			
6	7		10	 1	
					l

Step 3

Discuss the results with your group. Do you see a pattern between the length of the legs and the length of the hypotenuse? State your observations as your next conjecture.

3

2

5

4

## Isosceles Right Triangle Conjecture

C-83

In an isosceles right triangle, if the legs have length l, then the hypotenuse has length ?.

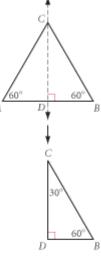
Another special right triangle is a 30°-60°-90° triangle, also called a 30°-60° right triangle, that is formed by bisecting any angle of an equilateral triangle. The 30°-60°-90° triangle also shows up often in mathematics and engineering because it is half of an equilateral triangle.



**Developing Proof** As a group, create a flowchart proof that the angle bisector through angle C in equilateral triangle ABC at right forms two congruent triangles,  $\triangle ACD$  and  $\triangle BCD$ . Then answer these questions:

- Why must the angles in △BCD (or △ACD) be 30°, 60°, and 90°?
- 2. How does BD compare to AB? How does BD compare to BC?
- 3. In any 30°-60°-90° triangle, how does the length of the hypotenuse compare to the length of the shorter leg?

Let's use this relationship between the shorter leg and the hypotenuse of a 30°-60°-90° triangle and the Pythagorean Theorem to discover another relationship.



A 30°-60°-90° triangle



## **Investigation 2**

## 30°-60°-90° Triangles

In this investigation you will simplify radicals to discover a relationship between the lengths of the shorter and longer legs in a 30°-60°-90° triangle.



Use the relationship from the developing proof group activity above to find the length of the hypotenuse of each  $30^{\circ}$ - $60^{\circ}$ - $90^{\circ}$  triangle at right. Then use the Pythagorean Theorem to calculate the length of the third side. Simplify each square root.



Copy and complete this table. Draw additional triangles as needed.

? <u>\_</u> ?	? ?	3
3	\*	
	a	

Length of shorter leg	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	 10	 а
Length of hypotenuse									
Length of longer leg									

Step 3

Discuss the results with your group. Do you see a pattern between the length of the longer leg and the length of the shorter leg? State your observations from this investigation and the developing proof group activity as your next conjecture.

#### 30°-60°-90° Triangle Conjecture

C-84

In a  $30^{\circ}$ - $60^{\circ}$ - $90^{\circ}$  triangle, if the shorter leg has length a, then the longer leg has length a and the hypotenuse has length a.

#### Proof: 30°-60°-90° Triangle Conjecture

$$(2a)^2 = a^2 + b^2$$

Start with the Pythagorean Theorem.

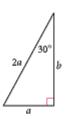
$$4a^2 = a^2 + b^2$$

$$3a^2 = b^2$$

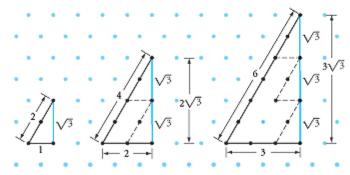
Subtract  $a^2$  from both sides.

$$a\sqrt{3} = b$$

Take the square root of both sides.



The proof shows that any number, even a non-integer, can be used for a. You can also demonstrate the  $30^{\circ}$ - $60^{\circ}$ - $90^{\circ}$  Triangle Conjecture for integer values on isometric dot paper.



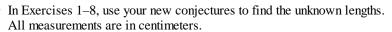
You will prove the Isosceles Right Triangle Conjecture and demonstrate it for integer values on square dot paper in the exercises.



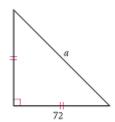
## **EXERCISES**

#### You will need

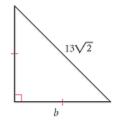




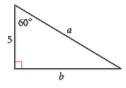




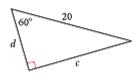
**2.** 
$$b = 1$$
 **(h)**



3. 
$$a = \frac{1}{2}$$
,  $b = \frac{1}{2}$ 



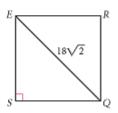
**4.** 
$$c = \frac{?}{?}, d = \frac{?}{?}$$



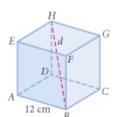
**5.** 
$$e = \frac{?}{f}, f = \frac{?}{f}$$



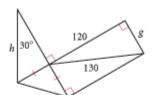
**6.** What is the perimeter of square *SQRE*?



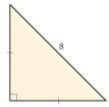
7. The solid is a cube.  $d = \frac{1}{2}$ 



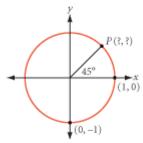
**8.** g = 1, h = 1

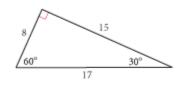


9. What is the area of the triangle?

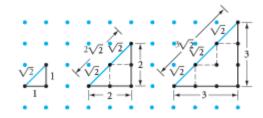


- **10.** Find the coordinates of P.
- **11. Developing Proof** What's wrong with this picture?

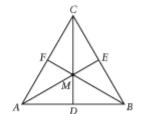




- 12. Sketch and label a figure on isometric dot paper to demonstrate that  $\sqrt{48}$  is equivalent to  $4\sqrt{3}$ .
- 13. You can demonstrate the Isosceles Right Triangle Conjecture for integer values on square dot paper, as shown at right. Sketch and label a figure on square dot paper or graph paper to demonstrate that  $\sqrt{32}$  is equivalent to  $4\sqrt{2}$ .



- **14.** Sketch and label a figure to demonstrate that  $\sqrt{45}$  is equivalent to  $3\sqrt{5}$ . (Use square dot paper or graph paper.)
- **15.** In equilateral triangle ABC,  $\overline{AE}$ ,  $\overline{BF}$ , and  $\overline{CD}$  are all angle bisectors, medians, and altitudes simultaneously. These three segments divide the equilateral triangle into six overlapping  $30^{\circ}$ - $60^{\circ}$ - $90^{\circ}$  triangles and six smaller, non-overlapping  $30^{\circ}$ - $60^{\circ}$ - $90^{\circ}$  triangles.



- **a.** One of the overlapping triangles is  $\triangle CDB$ . Name the other five triangles that are congruent to it.
- **b.** One of the non-overlapping triangles is  $\triangle MDA$ . Name the other five triangles congruent to it.
- **16. Developing Proof** Show that the Isosceles Right Triangle Conjecture holds true for any 45°-45°-90° triangle. Use the figure at right to represent the situation algebraically.



- 17. Find the area of an equilateral triangle whose sides measure 26 m. 🚯
- **18.** An equilateral triangle has an altitude that measures 26 m. Find the area of the triangle to the nearest square meter.
- **19.** Sketch the largest  $45^{\circ}$ - $45^{\circ}$ - $90^{\circ}$  triangle that fits in a  $30^{\circ}$ - $60^{\circ}$ - $90^{\circ}$  triangle so that the right angles coincide. What is the ratio of the area of the  $30^{\circ}$ - $60^{\circ}$ - $90^{\circ}$  triangle to the area of the  $45^{\circ}$ - $45^{\circ}$ - $90^{\circ}$  triangle?

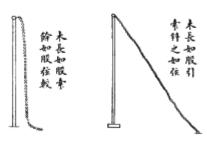
#### **Review**

**20.** Construction Given the segment with length a below, construct segments with lengths  $a\sqrt{2}$ ,  $a\sqrt{3}$ , and  $a\sqrt{5}$ . Use patty paper or a compass and a straightedge.

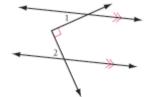
• a

- **21.** *Mini-Investigation* Draw a right triangle with sides of lengths 6 cm, 8 cm, and 10 cm. Locate the midpoint of each side. Construct a semicircle on each side with the midpoints of the sides as centers. Find the area of each semicircle. What relationship do you notice among the three areas?
- **22.** The *Jiuzhang suanshu* is an ancient Chinese mathematics text of 246 problems. Some solutions use the *gou gu*, the Chinese name for what we call the Pythagorean Theorem. The *gou gu* reads  $(gou)^2 + (gu)^2 = (xian)^2$ . Here is a *gou gu* problem translated from the ninth chapter of *Jiuzhang*.

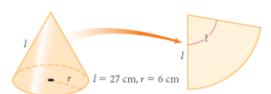
A rope hangs from the top of a pole with three *chih* of it lying on the ground. When it is tightly stretched so that its end just touches the ground, it is eight *chih* from the base of the pole. How long is the rope?



**23.** Developing Proof Explain why  $m \angle 1 + m \angle 2 = 90^{\circ}$ .



**24.** The lateral surface area of the cone below is unwrapped into a sector. What is the angle at the vertex of the sector?



#### IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### Mudville Monsters

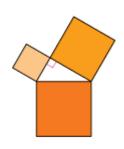
The 11 starting members of the Mudville Monsters football team and their coach, Osgood Gipper, have been invited to compete in the Smallville Punt, Pass, and Kick Competition. To get there, they must cross the deep Smallville River. The only way across is with a small boat owned by two very small Smallville football players. The boat holds just one Monster visitor or the two Smallville players. The Smallville players agree to help the Mudville players across if the visitors agree to pay \$5 each time the boat crosses the river. If the Monsters have a total of \$100 among them, do they have enough money to get all players and the coach to the other side of the river?



# Exploration

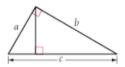
# A Pythagorean Fractal

f you wanted to draw a picture to state the Pythagorean Theorem without words, you'd probably draw a right triangle with squares on each of the three sides. This is the way you first explored the Pythagorean Theorem in Lesson 9.1.



Another picture of the theorem is even simpler: a right triangle divided into two right triangles. Here, a right triangle with hypotenuse c is divided into two smaller triangles, the smaller with

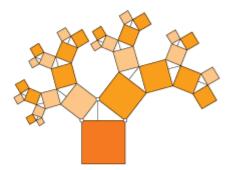
hypotenuse a and the larger with hypotenuse b. Clearly, their areas add up to the area of the whole triangle. What's surprising is that all three triangles have the same angle measures. Why? Though different in size, the three triangles all have the same shape. Figures that have the same shape but not necessarily the same size are called similar figures. You'll use these similar triangles to prove the Pythagorean Theorem in a later chapter.







A beautifully complex fractal combines both of these pictorial representations of the Pythagorean Theorem. The fractal starts with a right triangle with squares on each side. Then similar triangles are built onto the squares. Then squares are built onto the new triangles, and so on. In this exploration you'll create this fractal by using Sketchpad's **Iterate** command.



## Activity

## The Right Triangle Fractal

- Step 1 Construct a horizontal segment. Let it be the diameter of a circle. Use this circle to construct a semicircular arc.
- Step 2 Connect a point on the arc to the endpoints of the segment to form a triangle. What type of angle is inscribed in the semicircle?
- Step 3 Using one leg of the triangle as a side, construct a square. Then use the other leg to construct another square. You might use a custom square tool.
- Step 4 Construct the altitude from the right angle to the hypotenuse of the triangle.
- Step 5 Select the original two points, choose **Iterate** from the Transform menu, and map them to the two outer points of one square. Before closing the dialog box, choose **Add New Map** from the Structure submenu and map the two points to the outer points of the other square. If your iterated figure doesn't look like the one on the preceding page, experiment with the order that you map the points.
- Step 6 Using the hypotenuse as a side, construct a square below the triangle.
- Step 7 Observe how the fractal behaves when you drag the top vertex of the triangle and when you vary the number of iterations.
- Step 8 The diagram at the top of the previous page shows Stage 0 of your fractal—a single right triangle with a square built on each side. Sketch Stage 1 and explore these questions.
  - **a.** When you go from Stage 0 to Stage 1, you add four squares to your construction. How much shaded area is added, in total? How much shaded area is added when you go from Stage 1 to Stage 2? How much shaded area is added at any new stage of the construction?
  - **b.** A true fractal exists only after an infinite number of stages. If you could build a true fractal based on the construction in this activity, what would be its total area?
  - c. Consider the new squares that were created from Stage 0 to Stage 1. What do all of these squares have in common? How about all of the new squares that were created from Stage 1 to Stage 2? From Stage 2 to Stage 3? Use inductive reasoning to make a conjecture about the new squares created at any stage.
  - **d.** Make the original right triangle noticeably scalene. Observe just the squares that are created from Stage 0 to Stage 1 (the outer-most squares on the "tree"). How many different sizes of squares are there? How many squares are there of each size? Answer these questions again for Stage 2 and Stage 3. Then use inductive reasoning to answer the questions for any new stage.



You may be disappointed if you fail, but you are doomed if you don't try. **BEVERLY SILLS** 

# **Story Problems**

You have learned that drawing a diagram will help you to solve difficult problems. By now you know to look for many special relationships in your diagrams, such as congruent polygons, parallel lines, and right triangles.







FUNKY WINKERBEAN by Batluk Reprinted with special permission of North America Syndicate.

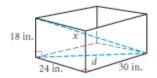
#### **EXAMPLE**

What is the longest stick that will fit inside a 24-by-30-by-18-inch box?

#### Solution

Draw a diagram.

You can lay a stick with length d diagonally at the bottom of the box. But you can position an even longer stick with length x along the diagonal of the box, as shown. How long is this stick?



Both d and x are the hypotenuses of right triangles, but finding  $d^2$  will help you find x.

$$30^{2} + 24^{2} = d^{2}$$

$$900 + 576 = d^{2}$$

$$d^{2} = 1476$$

$$1476 + 18^{2} = x^{2}$$

$$1476 + 324 = x^{2}$$

$$1800 = x^{2}$$

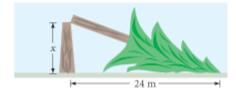
$$x \approx 42.4$$

The longest possible stick is about 42.4 in.



#### EXERCISES

- 1. Amir's sister is away at college, and he wants to mail her a 34 in, baseball bat. The packing service sells only one kind of box, which measures 24 in. by 20 in. by 12 in. Will the box be big enough?
- 2. A giant California redwood tree 36 meters tall cracked in a violent storm and fell as if hinged. The tip of the once beautiful tree hit the ground 24 meters from the base. Researcher Red Woods wishes to investigate the crack. How many meters up from the base of the tree does he have to climb?

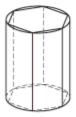


3. Meteorologist Paul Windward and geologist Rhaina Stone are rushing to a paleontology conference in Pecos Gulch. Paul lifts off in his balloon at noon from Lost Wages, heading east for Pecos Gulch Conference Center. With the wind blowing west to east, he averages a land speed of 30 km/h. This will allow him to arrive in 4 hours, just as the conference begins. Meanwhile, Rhaina is 160 km north of Lost Wages. At the moment of Paul's liftoff, Rhaina hops into an off-road vehicle and heads directly for the conference center. At what average speed must she travel to arrive at the same time Paul does?

# Career CONNECTION

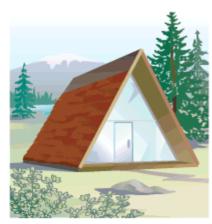
Meteorologists study the weather and the atmosphere. They also look at air quality, oceanic influence on weather, changes in climate over time, and even other planetary climates. They make forecasts using satellite photographs, weather balloons, contour maps, and mathematics to calculate wind speed or the arrival of a storm.

- **4.** A 25-foot ladder is placed against a building. The bottom of the ladder is 7 feet from the building. If the top of the ladder slips down 4 feet, how many feet will the bottom slide out? (It is not 4 feet.)
- 5. The front and back walls of an A-frame cabin are isosceles triangles, each with a base measuring 10 m and legs measuring 13 m. The entire front wall is made of glass 1 cm thick that costs \$120/m². What did the glass for the front wall cost?
- **6.** A regular hexagonal prism fits perfectly inside a cylindrical box with diameter 6 cm and height 10 cm. What is the surface area of the prism? What is the surface area of the cylinder?



- 7. Find the perimeter of an equilateral triangle whose median measures 6 cm.
- 8. Application According to the Americans with Disabilities Act, the slope of a wheelchair ramp must be no greater than 1/12. What is the length of ramp needed to gain a height of 4 feet? Read the Science Connection on the top of page 500, and then figure out how much constant force is required to go up the ramp if a person and a wheelchair together weigh 200 pounds.









It takes less effort to roll objects up an *inclined plane*, or ramp, than to lift them straight up. Work is a measure of continuous force applied over a distance, and you calculate it as a product of force and distance. For example, a force of 100 pounds is required to hold up a 100-pound object. The work required to lift it 2 feet is 200 foot-pounds. But if you distribute the work over the length of a 4-foot ramp, you can achieve 200 foot-pounds of work with only 50 pounds of force: 50 pounds times 4 feet equals 200 foot-pounds.



For Exercises 9 and 10, refer to the above Science Connection about inclined planes.

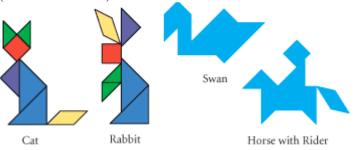
- **9.** Compare what it would take to lift an object these three different ways.
  - a. How much work, in foot-pounds, is necessary to lift 80 pounds straight up 2 feet?
  - **b.** If a ramp 4 feet long is used to raise the 80 pounds up 2 feet, how much constant force, in pounds, will it take?
  - c. If a ramp 8 feet long is used to raise the 80 pounds up 2 feet, how much constant force, in pounds, will it take?
- 10. If you can exert only 70 pounds of force at any moment and you need to lift a 160-pound steel drum up 2 feet, what is the minimum length of ramp you should set up?

#### Review

# Recreation

This set of enameled porcelain qi qiao bowls can be arranged to form a 37-by-37 cm square (as shown) or other shapes, or used separately. Each bowl is 10 cm deep. Dishes of this type are usually used to serve candies, nuts, dried fruits, and other snacks on special occasions.

The qi qiao, or tangram puzzle, originated in China and consists of seven pieces—five isosceles right triangles, a square, and a parallelogram. The puzzle involves rearranging the pieces into a square or hundreds of other shapes (a few are shown below).



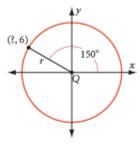


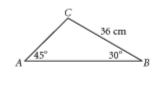
Private collection, Berkeley, California. Photo by Cheryl Fenton.

11. If the area of the red square piece is 4 cm<sup>2</sup>, what are the dimensions of the other six pieces?



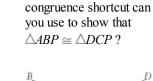
- 12. Make a set of your own seven tangram pieces and create the Swan and Horse with Rider, as shown on page 500.
- **13.** Find the radius of circle *Q*.
- **14.** Find the length of  $\overline{AC}$ .
- **15. Developing Proof** The two rays are tangent to the circle. What's wrong with this



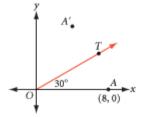


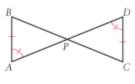
picture? 226

**16.** In the figure below, point A'is the image of point A after a reflection across  $\overline{OT}$ . What are the coordinates of A'?



17. Developing Proof Which 18. Identify the point of concurrency in  $\triangle QUO$ from the construction marks.





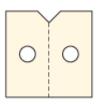
- 19. In parallelogram QUID,  $m \angle Q = 2x + 5^{\circ}$  and  $m \angle I = 4x 55^{\circ}$ . What is  $m \angle U$ ?
- **20.** In  $\triangle PRO$ ,  $m \angle P = 70^{\circ}$  and  $m \angle R = 45^{\circ}$ . Which side of the triangle is the shortest?

## IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### Fold, Punch, and Snip

A square sheet of paper is folded vertically, a hole is punched out of the center, and then one of the corners is snipped off. When the paper is unfolded it will look like the figure at right.

Sketch what a square sheet of paper will look like when it is unfolded after the following sequence of folds, punches, and snips.











Fold once.

Fold twice.

Snip double-fold corner.

Punch opposite corner.

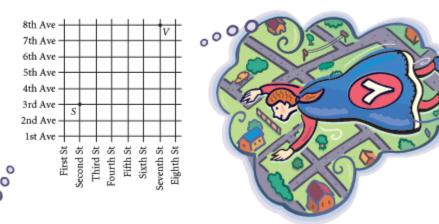


We talk too much; we should talk less and draw more.

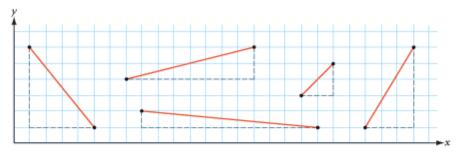
JOHANN WOLFGANG **VON GOETHE** 

# **Distance in Coordinate** Geometry

Viki is standing on the corner of Seventh Street and 8th Avenue, and her brother Scott is on the corner of Second Street and 3rd Avenue. To find her shortest sidewalk route to Scott, Viki can simply count blocks. But if Viki wants to know her diagonal distance to Scott, she would need the Pythagorean Theorem to measure across blocks.



You can think of a coordinate plane as a grid of streets with two sets of parallel lines running perpendicular to each other. Every segment in the plane that is not in the x- or y-direction is the hypotenuse of a right triangle whose legs are in the x- and y-directions. So you can use the Pythagorean Theorem to find the distance between any two points on a coordinate plane.



## Investigation

## The Distance Formula

#### You will need

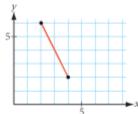
- graph paper, or
- the handout the Distance Formula (optional)

Step 1

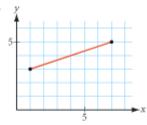
In Steps 1 and 2, find the length of each segment by using the segment as the hypotenuse of a right triangle. Simply count the squares on the horizontal and vertical legs, then use the Pythagorean Theorem to find the length of the hypotenuse.

Copy graphs a-d from the next page onto your own graph paper. Use each segment as the hypotenuse of a right triangle. Draw the legs along the grid lines. Find the length of each segment.

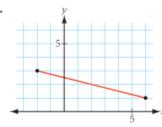
a.



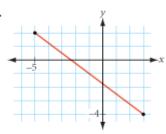
b.



c.



d.



Step 2

Graph each pair of points, then find the distances between them.

**a.** 
$$(-1, -2), (11, -7)$$

What if the points are so far apart that it's not practical to plot them? For example, what is the distance between the points A(15, 34) and B(42, 70)? A formula that uses the coordinates of the given points would be helpful. To find this formula, you first need to find the lengths of the legs in terms of the x- and y-coordinates. From your work with slope triangles, you know how to calculate horizontal and vertical distances.



Step 3

Write an expression for the length of the horizontal leg using the *x*-coordinates.

Step 4

Write a similar expression for the length of the vertical leg using the *y*-coordinates.

Step 5

Use your expressions from Steps 3 and 4, and the Pythagorean Theorem, to find the distance between points A(15, 34) and B(42, 70).

Step 6

Generalize what you have learned about the distance between two points in a coordinate plane. Copy and complete the conjecture below.

#### **Distance Formula**

C-85

The distance between points  $A(x_1, y_1)$  and  $B(x_2, y_2)$  is given by

$$(AB)^2 = (?)^2 + (?)^2$$
 or  $AB = \sqrt{(?)^2 + (?)^2}$ 

Let's look at an example to see how you can apply the distance formula.

**EXAMPLE** A Find the distance between A(8, 15) and B(-7, 23).

Solution

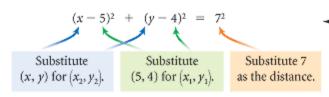
$$(AB)^2 = (x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2$$
 The distance formula.  
 $= (-7 - 8)^2 + (23 - 15)^2$  Substitute 8 for  $x_1$ , 15 for  $y_1$ , -7 for  $x_2$ , and 23 for  $y_2$ .  
 $= (-15)^2 + (8)^2$  Subtract.  
 $(AB)^2 = 289$  Square -15 and 8 and add.  
 $AB = 17$  Take the square root of both sides.

The distance formula is also used to write the equation of a circle.

**EXAMPLE B** Write an equation for the circle with center (5, 4) and radius 7 units.

Solution

Let (x, y) represent any point on the circle. The distance from (x, y) to the circle's center, (5, 4), is 7. Substitute this information in the distance formula.



So, the equation is  $(x-5)^2 + (y-4)^2 = 7^2$ .



#### EXERCISES

In Exercises 1–3, find the distance between each pair of points.

- 4. Look back at the diagram of Viki's and Scott's locations on page 502. Assume each block is approximately 50 meters long. What is the shortest distance, to the nearest meter, from Viki to Scott?
- **5.** Find the perimeter of  $\triangle ABC$  with vertices A(2,4), B(8,12), and C(24,0).
- **6.** Determine whether  $\triangle DEF$  with vertices D(6, -6), E(39, -12), and F(24, 18) is scalene, isosceles, or equilateral.

For Exercises 7–10, graph each quadrilateral using the given vertices. Then use the distance formula and the slope formula to determine the most specific name for each quadrilateral: trapezoid, kite, rectangle, rhombus, square, parallelogram, or just quadrilateral.

- 11. Mini-Investigation What is the equation of a circle with radius r and center (h, k)? Use graph paper and your compass, or geometry software, to investigate and make a conjecture.
  - a. Given its center and radius, graph each circle.

Circle A: center = 
$$(1, -2)$$
,  $r = 8$ 

Circle B: center = 
$$(0, 2)$$
,  $r = 6$ 

- **b.** On each circle, select any point and label it (x, y). Use the distance formula to write an equation for the distance from the center of the circle to (x, y).
- c. Look for patterns, then copy and complete the conjecture.

**Conjecture:** The equation of a circle with radius r and center (h, k) is

$$(x - \frac{?}{?})^2 + (y - \frac{?}{?})^2 = (\frac{?}{?})^2$$
 (Equation of a Circle)

- 12. Find the equation of the circle with center (2, 0) and radius 5.
- 13. Find the radius and center of the circle  $x^2 + (y 1)^2 = 81$ .
- 14. The center of a circle is (3, -1). One point on the circle is (6, 2). Find the equation of the circle. (h)

This point is the graph

of the ordered triple

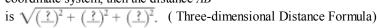
(2, -1, 3).

**15.** *Mini-Investigation* How would you find the distance between two points in a three-dimensional coordinate system?

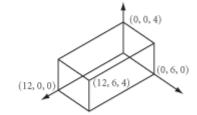
Investigate and make a conjecture.

- **a.** What is the distance from the origin (0, 0, 0)to (2, -1, 3)?
- **b.** What is the distance between P(1, 2, 3) and Q(5,6,15)?
- **c.** Use your observations to make a conjecture.

**Conjecture:** If  $A(x_1, y_1, z_1)$  and  $B(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ are two points in a three-dimensional coordinate system, then the distance AB



- **16.** Find the distance between the points (-12, 9, -13) and (28, 75, -52).
- 17. Find the longest possible diagonal in the prism at right.



#### **Review**

**18.** Find the rule for this number pattern:

$$1 \cdot 3 - 3 = 4 \quad 0$$

$$2 \cdot 4 - 3 = 5$$
 1

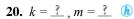
$$3 * 5 - 3 = 6 2$$

$$4 \cdot 6 - 3 = 7 \cdot 3$$

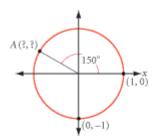
$$5 * 7 - 3 = 8 4$$

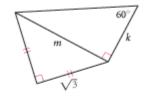
 $\vdots \\ n \cdot (?) - (?) = (?) \cdot (?)$ 

**19.** Find the coordinates of A.



**21.** The large triangle is equilateral. Find x and y.

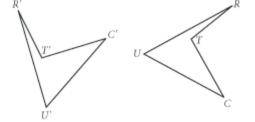




**22.** Antonio is a biologist studying life in a pond. He needs to know how deep the water is. He notices a water lily sticking straight up from the water, whose blossom is 8 cm above the water's surface. Antonio pulls the lily to one side, keeping the stem straight, until the blossom touches the water at a spot 40 cm from where the stem first broke the water's surface. How is Antonio able to calculate the depth of the water? What is the depth?



23. C' U' R' T' is the image of CURT under a rotation transformation. Copy the polygon and its image onto patty paper. Find the center of rotation and the measure of the angle of rotation. Explain your method.



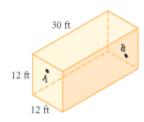
**24. Developing Proof** Explain why the opposite sides of a regular hexagon are parallel.

#### IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### The Spider and the Fly

(attributed to the British puzzlist Henry E. Dudeney, 1857–1930)

In a rectangular room, measuring 30 by 12 by 12 feet, a spider is at point A on the middle of one of the end walls, 1 foot from the ceiling. A fly is at point B on the center of the opposite wall, 1 foot from the floor. What is the shortest distance that the spider must crawl to reach the fly, which remains stationary? The spider never drops or uses its web, but crawls fairly.





## **Ladder Climb**

Suppose a house painter rests a 20-foot ladder against a building, then decides the ladder needs to rest 1 foot higher against the building. Will moving the ladder 1 foot toward the building do the job? If it needs to be 2 feet lower, will moving the ladder 2 feet away from the building do the trick? Let's investigate.



## Activity

## Climbing the Wall

#### You will need

a graphing calculator

Sketch a ladder leaning against a vertical wall, with the foot of the

ladder resting on horizontal ground. Label the sketch using y for height reached by the ladder and x for the distance from the base of the wall to the foot of the ladder.

- Step 1 Write an equation relating *x*, *y*, and the length of the ladder and solve it for *y*. You now have a function for the height reached by the ladder in terms of the distance from the wall to the foot of the ladder. Enter this equation into your calculator.
- Step 2 Before you graph the equation, think about the settings you'll want for the graph window. What are the greatest and least values possible for *x* and *y*? Enter reasonable settings, then graph the equation.
- Step 3 Describe the shape of the graph.
- Step 4 Trace along the graph, starting at x = 0. Record values (rounded to the nearest 0.1 unit) for the height reached by the ladder when x = 3, 6, 9, and 12. If you move the foot of the ladder away from the wall 3 feet at a time, will each move result in the same change in the height reached by the ladder? Explain.
- Step 5 Find the value for x that gives a y-value approximately equal to x. How is this value related to the length of the ladder? Sketch the ladder in this position. What angle does the ladder make with the ground?
- Step 6 Should you lean a ladder against a wall in such a way that *x* is greater than *y*? Explain.



You must do things you think you cannot do. **ELEANOR ROOSEVELT** 

# Circles and the **Pythagorean Theorem**

n Chapter 6, you discovered a number of properties that involved right angles in and around circles. In this lesson you will use the conjectures you made, along with the Pythagorean Theorem, to solve some challenging problems. Let's review two conjectures that involve right angles and circles.

**Tangent Conjecture:** A tangent to a circle is perpendicular to the radius drawn to the point of tangency.

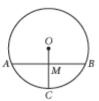
Angles Inscribed in a Semicircle Conjecture: Angles inscribed in a semicircle are right angles.

Here are two examples that use circle conjectures and dissections, special right triangles, and the Pythagorean Theorem.



**EXAMPLE A** 

If  $\overline{OC} \perp \overline{AB}$ , AB = 24 cm, and MC = 8 cm, find the diameter of circle O.



Solution

If AB = 24 cm, then AM = 12 cm. Let x = OM, so the radius of the circle is x + 8. Use the Pythagorean Theorem to solve for x.

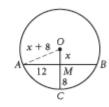
$$(x+8)^{2} = x^{2} + 12^{2}$$

$$x^{2} + 16x + 64 = x^{2} + 144$$

$$16x + 64 = 144$$

$$16x = 80$$

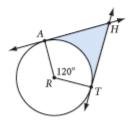
$$x = 5$$



The diameter is 2(5 + 8), or 26 cm.

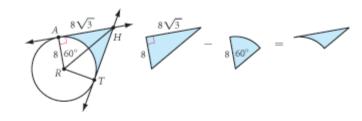
EXAMPLE B

 $HA = 8\sqrt{3}$  cm. Find the shaded area. Round your answer to the nearest tenth.



Solution

The auxiliary line  $\overline{RH}$  forms two 30°-60°-90° triangles. Because longer leg HA is equal to  $8\sqrt{3}$  cm, shorter leg  $\overline{RA}$  is equal to 8 cm. As shown in the picture equation, half the shaded area is equal to the difference of the right triangle area and the circle sector area.



$$A_{\text{triangle}} = \frac{1}{2}(8)(8\sqrt{3}) = 32\sqrt{3} \text{ cm}^2$$

$$A_{\rm sector} = \frac{60}{360}\pi(8^2) = \frac{1}{6}\pi \cdot 64 = \frac{32\pi}{3} \text{ cm}^2$$

$$A_{\rm shaded} = 2(A_{\rm triangle} - A_{\rm sector})$$

$$= 2\left(32\sqrt{3} - \frac{32\pi}{3}\right) = 2\left[32\left(\sqrt{3} - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)\right] = 64\left(\sqrt{3} - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) \text{cm}^2$$

The shaded area is about 43.8 cm<sup>2</sup>.



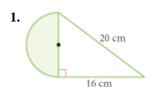
**Developing Proof** In your groups, prove that auxiliary line  $\overline{RH}$  in Example B forms two 30°-60°-90° triangles.



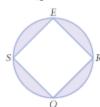
#### **EXERCISES**

In Exercises 1–8, find the area of the shaded region in each figure. Assume lines that appear tangent are tangent at the labeled points.

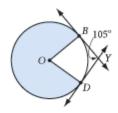




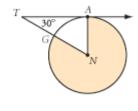
2. Square SQRE, with SQ = 4 m



3. OD = 24 cm



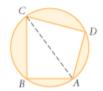
**4.**  $TA = 12\sqrt{3}$  cm



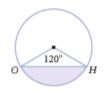
**5.**  $HT = 8\sqrt{3}$  m **(h)** 



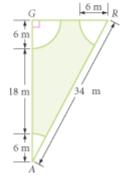
**6.** Kite ABCD, with AB = 6 cm and BC = 8 cm



7.  $HO = 8\sqrt{3}$  cm **h** 



8.



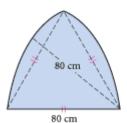
- 9. In her latest expedition, Ertha Diggs has uncovered a portion of circular, terra-cotta pipe that she believes is part of an early water drainage system. To find the diameter of the original pipe, she lays a meterstick across the portion and measures the length of the chord at 48 cm. The depth of the portion from the midpoint of the chord is 6 cm. What was the pipe's original diameter?
- **10. Developing Proof** Use the Pythagorean Theorem to prove the Tangent Segments Conjecture: Tangent segments to a circle from a point outside the circle are congruent.



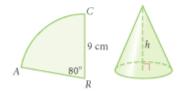
- 11. A 3-meter-wide circular track is shown at right. The radius of the inner circle is 12 meters. What is the longest straight path that stays on the track? (In other words, find AB.)
- 12. An annulus has a 36 cm chord of the outer circle that is also tangent to the inner concentric circle. Find the area of the annulus.



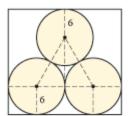
13. The Gothic arch shown is based on the equilateral triangle. If the base of the arch measures 80 cm, what is the area of the shaded region? (h)



15. Sector ARC has a radius of 9 cm and an angle that measures 80°. When sector ARC is cut out and  $\overline{AR}$  and  $\overline{RC}$  are taped together, they form a cone. The length of  $\overline{AC}$  becomes the circumference of the base of the cone. What is the height of the cone?



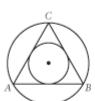
14. Each of three circles of radius 6 cm is tangent to the other two, and they are inscribed in a rectangle, as shown. What is the height of the rectangle? (h)



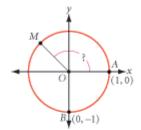
**16.** Application Will plans to use a circular cross section of wood to make a square table. The cross section has a circumference of 336 cm. To the nearest centimeter, what is the side length of the largest square that he can cut from it?



**17.** If  $\triangle ABC$  is equilateral with side length 6 cm, find the areas of the inscribed and circumscribed circles. How many times greater is the area of the circumscribed circle than the area of the inscribed circle?



**18.** The coordinates of point *M* are  $\left(-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$ . Find the measure of  $\angle AOM$ .



#### Review

- **19.** Find the equation of a circle with center (3, 3) and radius 6.
- **20.** Construction Construct a circle and a chord in a circle. With compass and straightedge, construct a second chord parallel and congruent to the first chord. Explain your method.
- 21. Application Felice wants to determine the diameter of a large heating duct. She places a carpenter's square up to the surface of the cylinder, and the length of each tangent segment is 10 inches.
  - **a.** What is the diameter? Explain your reasoning.
  - **b.** Describe another way she can find the diameter of the duct.



22. A circle of radius 6 has chord AB of length 6. If point C is selected randomly on the circle, what is the probability that  $\triangle ABC$  is obtuse?

### IMPROVING YOUR REASONING SKILLS

#### Reasonable 'rithmetic I

Each letter in these problems represents a different digit.

**1.** What is the value of *B*?

**2.** What is the value of J?

f 50 years from now you've forgotten everything else you learned in geometry, you'll probably still remember the Pythagorean Theorem. (Though let's hope you don't really forget everything else!) That's because it has practical applications in the mathematics and science that you encounter throughout your education.



It's one thing to remember the equation  $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$ . It's another to know what it means and to be able to apply it. Review your work from this chapter to be sure you understand how to use special triangle shortcuts and how to find the distance between two points in a coordinate plane.



## **EXERCISES**

For Exercises 1–4, measurements are given in centimeters.

Seymallh.com Practice

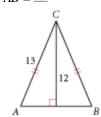




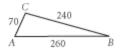
1.  $x = \frac{?}{}$ 



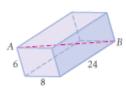
**2.**  $AB = \frac{?}{}$ 



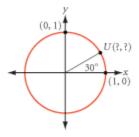
3. Is  $\triangle ABC$  an acute, obtuse, or right triangle?



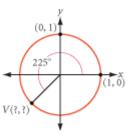
4. The solid is a rectangular prism. AB = 1



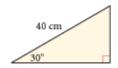
5. Find the coordinates of point U.



6. Find the coordinates of point V.



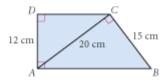
7. What is the area of the triangle?



**8.** The area of this square is  $144 \text{ cm}^2$ . Find d.

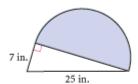


**9.** What is the area of trapezoid ABCD?

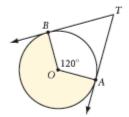


In Exercises 10–12, find the area of the shaded region.

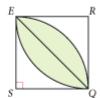
10. The arc is a semicircle.



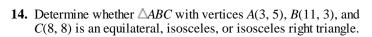
11. Rays TA and TB are tangent to circle O at A and B respectively, and  $BT = 6\sqrt{3}$  cm.



12. The quadrilateral is a square, the arcs are portions of circles centered at R and S, and  $QE = 2\sqrt{2}$  cm.

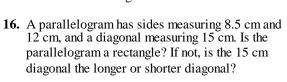


13. The area of circle Q is 350 cm<sup>2</sup>. Find the area of square ABCD to the nearest  $0.1 \text{ cm}^2$ .





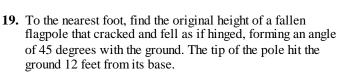
15. Sagebrush Sally leaves camp on her dirt bike, traveling east at 60 km/h with a full tank of gas. After 2 hours, she stops and does a little prospecting—with no luck. So she heads north for 2 hours at 45 km/h. She stops again, and this time hits pay dirt. Sally knows that she can travel at most 350 km on one tank of gas. Does she have enough fuel to get back to camp? If not, how close can she get?





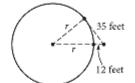
17. After an argument, Peter and Paul walk away from each other on separate paths at a right angle to each other. Peter is walking 2 km/h, and Paul is walking 3 km/h. After 20 min, Paul sits down to think. Peter continues for another 10 min, then stops. Both decide to apologize. How far apart are they? How long will it take them to reach each other if they both start running straight toward each other at 5 km/h?

**18.** Flora is away at camp and wants to mail her flute back home. The flute is 24 inches long. Will it fit diagonally within a box whose inside dimensions are 12 by 16 by 14 inches?





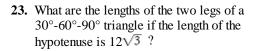
20. You are standing 12 feet from a cylindrical corn-syrup storage tank. The distance from you to a point of tangency on the tank is 35 feet. What is the radius of the tank?



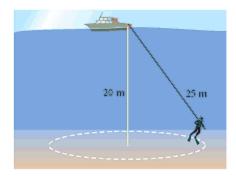
Radio and TV stations broadcast from high towers. Their signals are picked up by radios and TVs in homes within a certain radius. Because Earth is spherical, these signals don't get picked up beyond the point of tangency.



- **21.** *Application* Read the Technology Connection above. What is the maximum broadcasting radius from a radio tower 1800 feet tall (approximately 0.34 mile)? The radius of Earth is approximately 3960 miles, and you can assume the ground around the tower is smooth, not mountainous. Round your answer to the nearest 10 miles.
- **22.** A diver hooked to a 25-meter line is searching for the remains of a Spanish galleon in the Caribbean Sea. The sea is 20 meters deep and the bottom is flat. What is the area of circular region that the diver can explore?

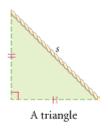


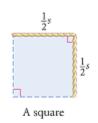
- **24.** Find the side length of an equilateral triangle with an area of  $36\sqrt{3}$  m<sup>2</sup>.
- 25. Find the perimeter of an equilateral triangle with a height of  $7\sqrt{3}$ .
- **26.** Al baked brownies for himself and his two sisters. He divided the square pan of brownies into three parts. He measured three 30° angles at one of the corners so that two pieces formed right triangles and the middle piece formed a kite. Did he divide the pan of brownies equally? Draw a sketch and explain your reasoning.
- 27. A circle has a central angle AOB that measures 80°. If point C is selected randomly on the circle, what is the probability that  $\triangle ABC$  is obtuse?

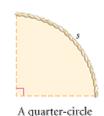




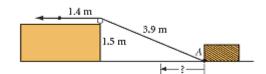
**28.** One of the sketches below shows the greatest area that you can enclose in a right-angled corner with a rope of length *s*. Which one? Explain your reasoning.







**29.** A wire is attached to a block of wood at point *A*. The wire is pulled over a pulley as shown. How far will the block move if the wire is pulled 1.4 meters in the direction of the arrow?



## **M**IXED REVIEW

- **30.** Construction Construct an isosceles triangle that has a base length equal to half the length of one leg.
- **31.** In a regular octagon inscribed in a circle, how many diagonals pass through the center of the circle? In a regular nonagon? A regular 20-gon? What is the general rule?
- **32.** A bug clings to a point two inches from the center of a spinning fan blade. The blade spins around once per second. How fast does the bug travel in inches per second?

In Exercises 33–40, identify the statement as true or false. For each false statement, explain why it is false or sketch a counterexample.

- **33.** The area of a rectangle and the area of a parallelogram are both given by the formula A = bh, where A is the area, b is the length of the base, and h is the height.
- **34.** When a figure is reflected over a line, the line of reflection is perpendicular to every segment joining a point on the original figure with its image.
- **35.** In an isosceles right triangle, if the legs have length x, then the hypotenuse has length  $x\sqrt{3}$ .
- **36.** The area of a kite or a rhombus can be found by using the formula  $A = (0.5)d_1d_2$ , where A is the area and  $d_1$  and  $d_2$  are the lengths of the diagonals.
- 37. If the coordinates of points A and B are  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$ , respectively, then  $AB = \sqrt{(x_1 y_1)^2 + (x_2 y_2)^2}$ .
- **38.** A glide reflection is a combination of a translation and a rotation.

- **39.** Equilateral triangles, squares, and regular octagons can be used to create monohedral tessellations.
- **40.** In a 30°-60°-90° triangle, if the shorter leg has length x, then the longer leg has length  $x\sqrt{3}$  and the hypotenuse has length 2x.

In Exercises 41–46, select the correct answer.

- **41.** The hypotenuse of a right triangle is always  $\perp$ .
  - A. opposite the smallest angle and is the shortest side
  - **B.** opposite the largest angle and is the shortest side
  - C. opposite the smallest angle and is the longest side
  - **D.** opposite the largest angle and is the longest side
- **42.** The area of a triangle is given by the formula  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$ , where A is the area, b is the length of the base, and b is the height.

**A.** 
$$A = bh$$

**B.** 
$$A = \frac{1}{2}bh$$

**C.** 
$$A = 2bh$$

**D.** 
$$A = b^2 h$$

**43.** If the lengths of the three sides of a triangle satisfy the Pythagorean equation, then the triangle must be a(n) <u>?</u> triangle.

**44.** The ordered pair rule  $(x, y) \rightarrow (y, x)$  is a. .

**A.** reflection over the 
$$x$$
-axis

C. reflection over the line 
$$y = x$$

**D.** rotation 
$$90^{\circ}$$
 about the origin

**45.** The composition of two reflections over two intersecting lines is equivalent to  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

**46.** The total surface area of a cone is equal to  $\frac{1}{2}$ , where r is the radius of the circular base and l is the slant height.

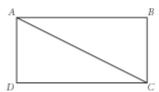
**A.** 
$$\pi r^2 + 2\pi r$$

B. 
$$\pi rl$$

**C.** 
$$\pi rl + 2\pi r$$

$$\mathbf{D}, \, \pi \, rl + \pi \, r^2$$

**47.** Create a flowchart proof to show that the diagonal of a rectangle divides the rectangle into two congruent triangles.

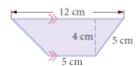


#### CHAPTER 9 REVIEW • CHAPTER 9 REVIEW • CHAPTER 9 REVIEW • CHAPTER 9 REVIEW • CHAPTE

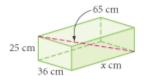
- **48.** Copy the ball positions onto patty paper.
  - **a.** At what point on the S cushion should a player aim so that the cue ball bounces off and strikes the 8-ball? Mark the point with the letter *A*.
  - **b.** At what point on the W cushion should a player aim so that the cue ball bounces off and strikes the 8-ball? Mark the point with the letter *B*.

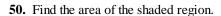


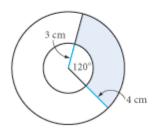
**49.** Find the area and the perimeter of the trapezoid.



- **51.** An Olympic swimming pool has length 50 meters and width 25 meters. What is the diagonal distance across the pool?
- **53.** The box below has dimensions 25 cm, 36 cm, and *x* cm. The diagonal shown has length 65 cm. Find the value of *x*.





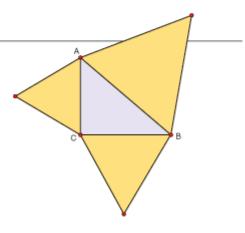


- **52.** The side length of a regular pentagon is 6 cm, and the apothem measures about 4.1 cm. What is the approximate area of the pentagon?
- **54.** The cylindrical container below has an open top. Find the surface area of the container (inside and out) to the nearest square foot.

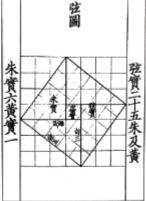


## TAKE ANOTHER LOOK

- 1. **Technology** Use geometry software to demonstrate the Pythagorean Theorem. Does your demonstration still work if you use a shape other than a square—for example, an equilateral triangle or a semicircle?
- **2. Developing Proof** Find Elisha Scott Loomis's *Pythagorean Proposition* and demonstrate one of the proofs of the Pythagorean Theorem from the book.



- 3. Developing Proof The Zhoubi Suanjing, one of the oldest sources of Chinese mathematics and astronomy, contains the diagram at right demonstrating the Pythagorean Theorem (called gou gu in China). Find out how the Chinese used and proved the gou gu, and present your findings.
- **4.** Developing Proof Use the SSS Congruence Conjecture to verify the converse of the 30°-60°-90° Triangle Conjecture. That is, show that if a triangle has sides with lengths x,  $x\sqrt{3}$ , and 2x, then it is a  $30^{\circ}$ - $60^{\circ}$ - $90^{\circ}$  triangle.
- **5. Developing Proof** In Lesson 9.1, Exercise 18, you were asked to determine whether the two triangles were congruent given that two sides and the non-included angle are congruent. Although you found that SSA is not a congruence shortcut in Lesson 4.4, this special case did result in congruent triangles. Prove this conjecture, sometimes called the Hypotenuse-Leg Conjecture: If the hypotenuse and leg of one right triangle are congruent to the hypotenuse and corresponding leg in another right triangle, then the two triangles are congruent.
- **6.** Construction Starting with an isosceles right triangle, use geometry software or a compass and straightedge to start a right triangle like the one shown. Continue constructing right triangles on the hypotenuse of the previous triangle at least five more times. Calculate the length of each hypotenuse and leave them in radical form.



## Assessing What You've Learned



**UPDATE YOUR PORTFOLIO** Choose a challenging project, Take Another Look activity, or exercise you did in this chapter and add it to your portfolio. Explain the strategies you used.



ORGANIZE YOUR NOTEBOOK Review your notebook and your conjecture list to be sure they are complete. Write a one-page chapter summary.



WRITE IN YOUR JOURNAL Why do you think the Pythagorean Theorem is considered one of the most important theorems in mathematics?



WRITE TEST ITEMS Work with group members to write test items for this chapter. Try to demonstrate more than one way to solve each problem.



**GIVE A PRESENTATION** Create a visual aid and give a presentation about the Pythagorean Theorem.

#### **CHAPTER**

# 10

# **Volume**



Perhaps all I pursue is astonishment and so I try to awaken only astonishment in my viewers. Sometimes "beauty" is a nasty business.

M. C. ESCHER

Verblifa tin, M. C. Escher, 1963 ©2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.

#### OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will

- explore and define many three-dimensional solids
- discover formulas for finding the volumes of prisms, pyramids, cylinders, cones, and spheres
- learn how density is related to volume
- derive a formula for the surface area of a sphere



Everything in nature adheres to the cone, the cylinder, and the cube. PAUL CEZANNE

# The Geometry of Solids

Most of the geometric figures you have worked with so far have been flat plane figures with two dimensions—base and height. In this chapter you will work with solid figures with three dimensions—length, width, and height. Most real-world solids, like rocks and plants, are very irregular, but many others are geometric. Some real-world geometric solids occur in nature: viruses, oranges, crystals, the earth itself. Others are human-made: books, buildings, baseballs, soup cans, ice cream cones.



This amethyst crystal is an irregular solid, but parts of it have familiar shapes.



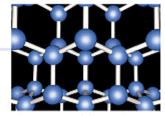
# Science CONNECTION •

Three-dimensional geometry plays an important role in the structure of molecules. For example, when carbon atoms are arranged in a very rigid network, they form diamonds, one of the earth's hardest materials. But when carbon atoms are arranged in planes of hexagonal rings, they form graphite, a soft material used in pencil lead.

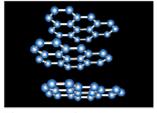
Carbon atoms can also bond into very large molecules. Named fullerenes, after U.S. engineer Buckminster

Fuller (1895–1983), these carbon molecules have the same symmetry as a soccer ball, as shown at left. They are popularly called buckyballs.

Researchers have recently discovered a similar phenomenon with gold atoms. Gold clusters



The geometry of diamonds

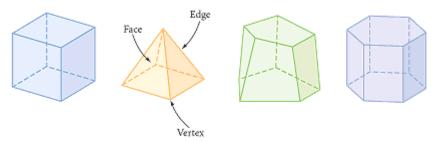


The geometry of graphite

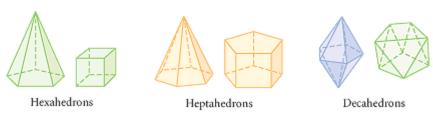
of fewer than 16 atoms are flat, and clusters of more than 18 atoms form a pyramid, but clusters of 16, 17, or 18 form a hollow cage. Like buckyballs, these hollow gold cages may be able to house other atoms, which may have applications in nanotechnology and medicine. For more information, visit <a href="https://www.keymath.com/DG">www.keymath.com/DG</a>.

520 CHAPTER 10 Volume © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

A solid formed by polygons that enclose a single region of space is called a **polyhedron.** The flat polygonal surfaces of a polyhedron are called its **faces.** Although a face of a polyhedron includes the polygon and its interior region, we identify the face by naming the polygon that encloses it. A segment where two faces intersect is called an **edge.** The point of intersection of three or more edges is called a **vertex** of the polyhedron.



Just as a polygon is classified by its number of sides, a polyhedron is classified by its number of faces. The prefixes for polyhedrons are the same as they are for polygons with one exception: A polyhedron with four faces is called a **tetrahedron**. Here are some examples of polyhedrons.



If each face of a polyhedron is enclosed by a regular polygon, and each face is congruent to the other faces, and the faces meet at each vertex in exactly the same way, then the polyhedron is called a **regular polyhedron**. The regular polyhedron shown at right is called a regular dodecahedron because it has 12 faces.



Regular dodecahedron

The Ramat Polin housing complex in Jerusalem, Israel, has many polyhedral shapes.



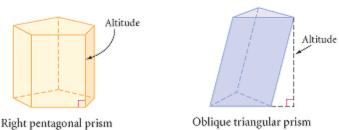
A **prism** is a special type of polyhedron, with two faces called **bases**, that are congruent, parallel polygons. The other faces of the polyhedron, called **lateral faces**, are parallelograms that connect the corresponding sides of the bases.

The lateral faces meet to form the lateral edges. Each solid shown below is a prism.



Prisms are classified by their bases. For example, a prism with triangular bases is a triangular prism, and a prism with hexagonal bases is a hexagonal prism.

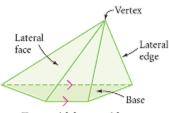
A prism whose lateral faces are rectangles is called a **right prism**. Its lateral edges are perpendicular to its bases. A prism that is not a right prism is called an **oblique prism**. The **altitude** of a prism is any perpendicular segment from one base to the plane of the other base. The length of an altitude is the **height** of the prism.



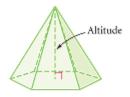
A **pyramid** is another special type of polyhedron. Pyramids have only one base. As in a prism, the other faces are called the lateral faces, and they meet to form the lateral edges. The common vertex of the lateral faces is the vertex of the pyramid.



Triangular pyramid



Trapezoidal pyramid



Hexagonal pyramid



Square pyramid

Like prisms, pyramids are also classified by their bases. The pyramids of Egypt are square pyramids because they have square bases.

The altitude of the pyramid is the perpendicular segment from its vertex to the plane of its base. The length of the altitude is the height of the pyramid.



Polyhedrons are geometric solids with flat surfaces. There are also geometric solids that have curved surfaces.

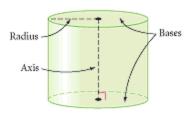
One solid with a curved surface is a **cylinder**. Soup cans, compact discs (CDs), and plumbing pipes are shaped like cylinders. Like a prism, a cylinder has two bases that are both parallel and congruent. Instead of polygons, however, the bases of cylinders are circles and their interiors. The segment connecting the centers of the bases is called the **axis** of the cylinder. The **radius** of the cylinder is the radius of a base.

If the axis of a cylinder is perpendicular to the bases, then the cylinder is a **right cylinder**. A cylinder that is not a right cylinder is an **oblique cylinder**.

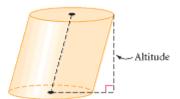
The altitude of a cylinder is any perpendicular segment from the plane of one base to the plane of the other. The height of a cylinder is the length of an altitude.



100 Cans (1962 oil on canvas), by pop art artist Andy Warhol (1925–1987), repeatedly uses the cylindrical shape of a soup can to make an artistic statement with a popular image.



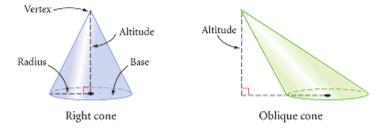
Right cylinder



Oblique cylinder

Another type of solid with a curved surface is a **cone**. Funnels and ice cream cones are shaped like cones. Like a pyramid, a cone has a base and a vertex.

The base of a cone is a circle and its interior. The radius of a cone is the radius of the base. The vertex of a cone is the point that is the greatest perpendicular distance from the base. The altitude of a cone is the perpendicular segment from the vertex to the plane of the base. The length of the altitude is the height of a cone. If the line segment connecting the vertex of a cone with the center of its base is perpendicular to the base, then the cone is a **right cone**.

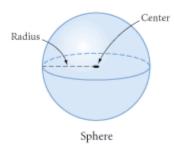


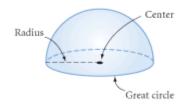
A third type of solid with a curved surface is a **sphere**. Basketballs, globes, and oranges are shaped like spheres. A sphere is the set of all points in space at a given distance from a given point. You can think of a sphere as a three-dimensional circle.

The given distance is called the **radius** of the sphere, and the given point is the **center** of the sphere. A **hemisphere** is



half a sphere and its circular base. The circle that encloses the base of a hemisphere is called a **great circle** of the sphere. Every plane that passes through the center of a sphere determines a great circle. All the longitude lines on a globe of Earth are great circles. The equator is the only latitude line that is a great circle.





Hemisphere



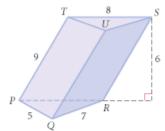
#### **EXERCISES**

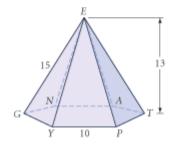
**1.** Complete this definition:

A pyramid is a \_\_\_\_\_ with one \_\_\_\_\_ face (called the base) and whose other faces (lateral faces) are \_\_\_\_\_ formed by segments connecting the vertices of the base to a common point (the vertex) not on the base.

For Exercises 2–9, refer to the figures below. All measurements are in centimeters.

- 2. Name the bases of the prism.
- 3. Name all the lateral faces of the prism.
- 4. Name all the lateral edges of the prism.
- **5.** What is the height of the prism?
- **6.** Name the base of the pyramid.
- **7.** Name the vertex of the pyramid.
- **8.** Name all the lateral edges of the pyramid.
- **9.** What is the height of the pyramid?





For Exercises 10–22, match each real object with a geometry term. You may use a geometry term more than once or not at all.

**10.** Tomb of Egyptian rulers



**12.** Die

**14.** Holder for a scoop of ice cream



**16.** Moon

18. Box of breakfast cereal

20. Plastic bowl with lid



22. Ingot of silver



11. Honeycomb



13. Stop sign

15. Wedge or doorstop



**17.** Can of tuna fish

**19.** Book

**21.** Pup tent



- A. Cylinder
- B. Cone
- **C.** Square prism
- **D.** Square pyramid
- E. Sphere
- **F.** Triangular pyramid
- G. Octagonal prism
- **H.** Triangular prism
- I. Trapezoidal prism
- J. Rectangular prism
- K. Heptagonal pyramid
- L. Hexagonal prism
- M. Hemisphere

For Exercises 23–26, draw and label each solid. Use dashed lines to show the hidden edges.

- **23.** A triangular pyramid whose base is an equilateral triangular region (Use the proper marks to show that the base is equilateral.)
- **24.** A hexahedron with two trapezoidal faces
- **25.** A cylinder with a height that is twice the diameter of the base (Use *x* and 2*x* to indicate the height and the diameter.)
- **26.** A right cone with a height that is half the diameter of the base

For Exercises 27–35, identify each statement as true or false. Sketch a counterexample for each false statement or explain why it is false.

- 27. A lateral face of a pyramid is always a triangular region.
- 28. A lateral edge of a pyramid is always perpendicular to the base.

- **29.** Every slice of a prism cut parallel to the bases is congruent to the bases.
- 30. When the lateral surface of a right cylinder is unwrapped and laid flat, it is a rectangle.
- 31. When the lateral surface of a right circular cone is unwrapped and laid flat, it is a triangle. (h)
- **32.** Every section of a cylinder, parallel to the base, is congruent to the base.
- 33. The length of a segment from the vertex of a cone to the circular base is the height of the cone.
- **34.** The length of the axis of a right cylinder is the height of the cylinder.
- **35.** All slices of a sphere passing through the sphere's center are congruent.
- **36.** *Mini-Investigation* An antiprism is a polyhedron with two congruent bases and lateral faces that are triangles. Complete the tables below for prisms and antiprisms. Describe any relationships you see between the number of lateral faces, total faces, edges, and vertices of related prisms and antiprisms.

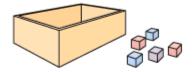
	Triangular prism	Rectangular prism	Pentagonal prism	Hexagonal prism		n-gonal prism
Lateral faces	3				:	
Total faces		6				
Edges				18		
Vertices			10			

	Triangular antiprism	Rectangular antiprism	Pentagonal antiprism	Hexagonal antiprism	n-gonal antiprism
Lateral faces	6				
Total faces		10			
Edges				24	
Vertices			10		

**37.** Write a paragraph describing the visual tricks that Belgian artist René Magritte (1898–1967) plays in his painting at right.

#### Review

For Exercises 38 and 39, how many cubes measuring 1 cm on each edge will fit into the container?



- 38. A box measuring 2 cm on each inside edge
- **39.** A box measuring 3 cm by 4 cm by 5 cm on the inside edges



The Promenades of Euclid (1935 oil on canvas), René Magritte

- **40.** What is the maximum number of boxes measuring 1 cm by 1 cm by 2 cm that can fit within a box whose inside dimensions are 3 cm by 4 cm by 5 cm?
- **41.** For each net, decide whether it folds to make a box. If it does, copy the net and mark each pair of opposite faces with the same symbol.









#### IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

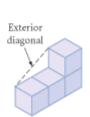
#### Piet Hein's Puzzle

In 1936, while listening to a lecture on quantum physics, the Danish mathematician Piet Hein (1905–1996) devised the following visual thinking puzzle:

What are all the possible nonconvex solids that can be created by joining four or fewer cubes face-to-face?

A nonconvex polyhedron is a solid that has at least one diagonal that is exterior to the solid. For example, four cubes in a row, joined face-to-face, form a convex polyhedron. But four cubes joined face-to-face into an L-shape form a nonconvex polyhedron.

Use isometric dot paper to sketch the nonconvex solids that solve Piet Hein's puzzle.



# Exploration

**Euler's Formula for Polyhedrons** 

In this activity you will discover a relationship among the vertices, edges, and faces of a polyhedron. This relationship is called Euler's Formula for Polyhedrons, named after Leonhard Euler. Let's first build some of the polyhedrons you learned about in Lesson 10.1.

# **Activity**

# **Toothpick Polyhedrons**

You will need
First, you'll model polyhedrons using toothpicks
as edges and using small balls of clay, gumdrops,
or dried peas as connectors.

gumdrops, or dried peas

modeling clay,

Step 1

Build and save the polyhedrons shown in parts a—d below and described in parts e—i on the top of page 531. You may have to cut or break some sticks. Share the tasks among the group.





b.



c.



d.



- e. Build a tetrahedron.
- f. Build an octahedron.
- g. Build a nonahedron.
- **h.** Build at least two different-shaped decahedrons.
- i. Build at least two different-shaped dodecahedrons.

Step 2

Classify all the different polyhedrons your class built as prisms, pyramids, regular polyhedrons, or just polyhedrons.

Next, you'll look for a relationship among the vertices, faces, and edges of the polyhedrons.

Step 3

Count the number of vertices (V), edges (E), and faces (F) of each polyhedron model. Copy and complete a chart like this one.

Polyhedron	Vertices (V)	Faces (F)	Edges (E)
:	:	:	:
,	,		,

Step 4

Look for patterns in the table. By adding, subtracting, or multiplying *V*, *F*, and *E* (or a combination of two or three of these operations), you can discover a formula that is commonly known as Euler's Formula for Polyhedrons.

Step 5

Now that you have discovered the formula relating the number of vertices, edges, and faces of a polyhedron, use it to answer each of these questions.

- **a.** Which polyhedron has 4 vertices and 6 edges? Can you build another polyhedron with a different number of faces that also has 4 vertices and 6 edges?
- **b.** Which polyhedron has 6 vertices and 12 edges? Can you build another polyhedron with a different number of faces that also has 6 vertices and 12 edges?
- **c.** If a solid has 8 faces and 12 vertices, how many edges will it have?
- **d.** If a solid has 7 faces and 12 edges, how many vertices will it have?
- **e.** If a solid has 6 faces, what are all the possible combinations of vertices and edges it can have?



How much deeper would oceans be if sponges didn't live there? STEVEN WRIGHT Volume of Prisms and Cylinders

In real life you encounter many volume problems. For example, when you shop for groceries, it's a good idea to compare the volumes and the prices of different items to find the best buy. When you fill a car's gas tank or when you fit last night's leftovers into a freezer dish, you fill the volume of an empty container.

Many occupations also require familiarity with volume. An engineer must calculate the volume and the weight of sections of a bridge to avoid putting too much stress on any one section. Chemists, biologists, physicists, and geologists must all make careful volume measurements in their research. Carpenters,

plumbers, and painters also know and use volume relationships. A chef must measure the correct volume of each ingredient in a cake to ensure a tasty success.

A father and son test the quality of the grain harvested on their family farm. The payment they receive from the processing plant is based on the volume of grain, not its weight.



**Volume** is the measure of the amount of space contained in a solid. You use cubic units to measure volume: cubic inches (in<sup>3</sup>), cubic feet (ft<sup>3</sup>), cubic yards (yd<sup>3</sup>), cubic centimeters (cm<sup>3</sup>), cubic meters (m<sup>3</sup>), and so on.

The volume of an object is the number of unit cubes that completely fill the space within the object.

\_1\_ Length: 1 unit 1 1

Volume: 1 cubic unit

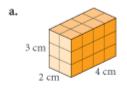
Volume: 20 cubic units

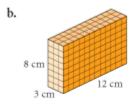


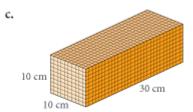
# The Volume Formula for Prisms and Cylinders

Step 1

Find the volume of each right rectangular prism below in cubic centimeters. That is, how many cubes measuring 1 cm on each edge will fit into each solid? Within your group, discuss different strategies for finding each volume. How could you find the volume of any right rectangular prism?







Notice that the number of cubes resting on the base equals the number of square units in the area of the base. The number of layers of cubes equals the number of units in the height of the prism. So you can use the area of the base and the height of the prism to calculate the volume.

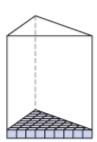
Step 2 | Complete the conjecture.

# Rectangular Prism Volume Conjecture

C-86a

If B is the area of the base of a right rectangular prism and H is the height of the solid, then the formula for the volume is  $V = \frac{2}{3}$ .

In Chapter 8, you discovered that you can reshape parallelograms, triangles, trapezoids, and circles into rectangles to find their area. You can use the same method to find the areas of bases that have these shapes. Then you can multiply the area of the base by the height of the prism to find its volume. For example, to find the volume of a right triangular prism, find the area of the triangular base (the number of cubes resting on the base) and multiply it by the height (the number of layers of cubes).



So, you can extend the Rectangular Prism Volume Conjecture to all right prisms and right cylinders.

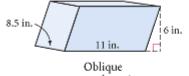
Step 3 | Complete the conjecture.

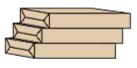
# Right Prism-Cylinder Volume Conjecture

C-86b

If B is the area of the base of a right prism (or cylinder) and H is the height the solid, then the formula for the volume is  $V = \mathcal{L}$ .

What about the volume of an oblique prism or cylinder? You can approximate the shape of this oblique rectangular prism with a staggered stack of three reams of 8.5-by-11-inch paper. If you nudge the individual pieces of paper into a slanted stack, then your approximation can be even better.









rectangular prism

Stacked reams of 8.5-by-11-inch paper

Stacked sheets of paper

Sheets of paper stacked straight

Rearranging the paper into a right rectangular prism changes the shape, but certainly the volume of paper hasn't changed. The area of the base, 8.5 by 11 inches, didn't change and the height, 6 inches, didn't change, either.

In the same way, you can use crackers, CDs, or coins to show that an oblique cylinder has the same volume as a right cylinder with the same base and height.



Step 4

Use the stacking model to extend the last conjecture to oblique prisms and cylinders. Complete the conjecture.

# **Oblique Prism-Cylinder Volume Conjecture**

The volume of an oblique prism (or cylinder) is the same as the volume of a right prism (or cylinder) that has the same  $\frac{1}{2}$  and the same  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

Finally, you can combine the last three conjectures into one conjecture for finding the volume of any prism or cylinder, whether it's right or oblique.

Copy and complete the conjecture. Step 5

# **Prism-Cylinder Volume Conjecture**

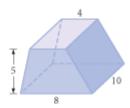
C-86

The volume of a prism or a cylinder is the ? multiplied by the ?.

If you successfully completed the investigation, you saw that the same volume formula applies to all prisms and cylinders, regardless of the shapes of their bases. To calculate the volume of a prism or cylinder, first calculate the area of the base using the formula appropriate to its shape. Then multiply the area of the base by the height of the solid. In oblique prisms and cylinders, the lateral edges are no longer at right angles to the bases, so you do not use the length of the lateral edge as the height.

#### **EXAMPLE A**

Find the volume of a right trapezoidal prism that has a height of 10 cm. The two bases of the trapezoid measure 4 cm and 8 cm, and its height is 5 cm.



### ► Solution

Find the area of the base.

$$B = \frac{1}{2}h(b_1 + b_2)$$

The base is a trapezoid, so use this formula to find the area of the base.

$$B = \frac{1}{2} (5)(4 + 8) = 30$$

Substitute the given values into the equation, then simplify.

Find the volume.

$$V = BH$$

The volume of a prism is equal to the area of its base multiplied by its height.

$$V = (30)(10) = 300$$

Substitute the calculated area and given height into the

The volume is 300 cm<sup>3</sup>.

### **EXAMPLE B**

Find the volume of an oblique cylinder that has a base with a radius of 6 inches and a height of 7 inches.



# Solution

Find the area of the base.

$$B = \pi r^2$$

The base is a circle, so use this formula to find the area of

$$B = \pi(6)^2 = 36\pi$$

Substitute the given values into the equation, then simplify.

Find the volume.

$$V = BH$$

The volume of a prism is equal to the area of its base

$$V = (36\pi) (7) = 252\tau$$

Substitute the calculated area and given height into the

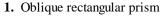
equation, then simplify.

The volume is  $252 \pi$  in<sup>3</sup>, or about 791.68 in<sup>3</sup>.



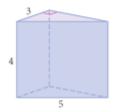
# **EXERCISES**

Find the volume of each solid in Exercises 1–6. All measurements are in centimeters. Round approximate answers to the nearest hundredths.

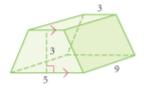




2. Right triangular prism 🌘



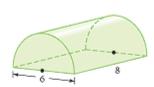
### 3. Right trapezoidal prism



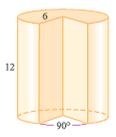
4. Right cylinder



**5.** Right semicircular cylinder **(h)** 



**6.** Right cylinder with a 90° slice removed **(h)** 



**7.** Use the information about the base and height of each solid to find the volume. All measurements are given in centimeters.

Information about base of solid	Height of solid	Right triangular prism	Right rectangular prism	Right trapezoidal prism	Right cylinder
		Н	h H	$H$ $b_2$ $h_i$ $b$	H
$b = 6, b_2 = 7,$ h = 8, r = 3	H=20	a. V = <b>(h</b> )	<b>d.</b> V =	<b>g.</b> V =	<b>j.</b> V =
$b = 9, b_2 = 12,$ h = 12, r = 6	H=20	<b>b.</b> V =	<b>e.</b> V =	<b>h.</b> V =	<b>k.</b> V =
$b = 8, b_2 = 19,  h = 18, r = 8$	H=23	<b>c.</b> V =	<b>f.</b> V =	i. V=	<b>l.</b> V =

For Exercises 8–9, sketch and label each solid described, then find the volume.

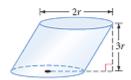
- **8.** An oblique trapezoidal prism. The trapezoidal base has a height of 4 in. and bases that measure 8 in. and 12 in. The height of the prism is 24 in.
- **9.** A right circular cylinder with a height of T. The radius of the base is  $\sqrt{Q}$ .
- **10.** Sketch and label two different rectangular prisms, each with a volume of 288 cm<sup>3</sup>.

In Exercises 11–13, express the volume of each solid with the help of algebra.

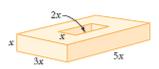
11. Right rectangular prism



**12.** Oblique cylinder



**13.** Right rectangular prism with a rectangular hole

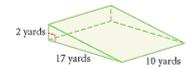


**14.** *Application* A cord of firewood is 128 cubic feet. Margaretta has three storage boxes for firewood that each measure 2 feet by 3 feet by 4 feet. Does she have enough space to order a full cord of firewood? A half cord? A quarter cord? Explain.

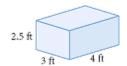


In construction and landscaping, sand, rocks, gravel, and fill dirt are often sold by the "yard," which actually means a cubic yard.

**15.** *Application* A contractor needs to build a ramp, as shown at right, from the street to the front of a garage door. How many cubic yards of fill will she need?



16. If an average rectangular block of limestone used to build the Great Pyramid of Khufu at Giza is approximately 2.5 feet by 3 feet by 4 feet, and limestone weighs approximately 170 pounds per cubic foot, what is the weight of one of the nearly 2,300,000 limestone blocks used to build the pyramid?



17. Although the Exxon *Valdez* oil spill (11 million gallons of oil) is one of the most notorious oil spills, it was small compared to the 250 million gallons of crude oil that were spilled during the 1991 Persian Gulf War. A gallon occupies 0.13368 cubic foot. How many rectangular swimming pools, each 20 feet by 30 feet by 5 feet, could be filled with 250 million gallons of crude oil?



The Great Pyramid of Khufu at Giza, Egypt, was built around 2500 B.C.E.

18. When folded, a 12-by-12-foot section of the AIDS Memorial Quilt requires about 1 cubic foot of storage. In 1996, the quilt consisted of 32,000 3-by-6-foot panels. What was the quilt's volume in 1996? If the storage facility had a floor area of 1,500 square feet, how high did the quilt panels need to be stacked?



The NAMES Project AIDS Memorial Quilt memorializes persons all around the world who have died of AIDS. In 1996, the 32,000 panels represented less than 10% of the AIDS deaths in the United States alone, yet the quilt could cover about 19 football fields.

## Review

For Exercises 19 and 20, draw and label each solid. Use dashed lines to show the hidden edges.

- **19.** An octahedron with all triangular faces and another octahedron with at least one nontriangular face
- **20.** A cylinder with both radius and height *r*, a cone with both radius and height *r* resting flush on one base of the cylinder, and a hemisphere with radius *r* resting flush on the other base of the cylinder

For Exercises 21 and 22, identify each statement as true or false. Sketch a counterexample for each false statement or explain why it is false.

- **21.** A prism always has an even number of vertices.
- **22.** A section of a cube is either a square or a rectangle.
- **23.** The tower below is an unusual shape. It's neither a cylinder nor a cone. Sketch a two-dimensional figure and an axis such that if you spin your figure about the axis, it will create a solid of revolution shaped like the tower.



The Sugong Tower Mosque in Turpan, China

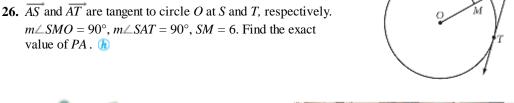
**24.** Do research to find a photo or drawing of a chemical model of a crystal. Sketch it. What type of polyhedral structure does it exhibit? You will find helpful Internet links at <a href="https://www.keymath.com/DG">www.keymath.com/DG</a>.

# Science CONNECTION

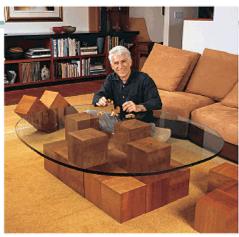
Ice is a well-known crystal structure. If ice were denser than water, it would sink to the bottom of the ocean, away from heat sources. Eventually the oceans would fill from the bottom up with ice, and we would have an ice planet. What a cold thought!



25. Six points are equally spaced around a circular track with a 20 m radius. Ben runs around the track from one point, past the second, to the third. Al runs straight from the first point to the second, and then straight to the third. How much farther does Ben run than A1?



If you solved Piet Hein's puzzle at the end of the previous lesson, you now have sketches of the seven nonconvex polyhedrons that can be assembled using four or fewer cubes. These seven polyhedrons consist of a total of 27 cubes: 6 sets of 4 cubes and 1 set of 3 cubes. These pieces can be arranged to form a 3-by-3-by-3 cube. The puzzle of how to put them together in a perfect cube is known as the Soma Cube puzzle. Go to www.keymath.com/DG to learn more about the Soma Cube.





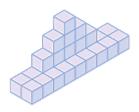
Use cubes (wood, plastic, or sugar cubes) to build one set of the seven pieces of the Soma Cube. Use glue, tape, or putty to connect the cubes.

Solve the Soma Cube puzzle: Put the pieces together to make a 3-by-3-by-3 cube. Then build these other shapes. How do you build the sofa? The tunnel? The castle? The aircraft carrier? Finally, create a shape of your own that uses all the pieces.









Aircraft Carrier

Your project should include

- ▶ The seven unique pieces of the Soma Cube.
- Solution to the Soma Cube puzzle and at least two of the other puzzles.
- An isometric drawing of your own shape that uses all seven pieces.



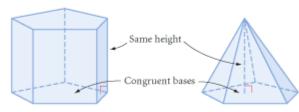
If I had influence with the good fairy ... I should ask that her gift to each child in the world be a sense of wonder so indestructible that it would last throughout life.

RACHEL CARSON

# **Volume of Pyramids and Cones**

There is a simple relationship between the volumes of prisms and pyramids with congruent bases and the same height, and between cylinders and cones

with congruent bases and the same height. You'll discover this relationship in the investigation.



Same volume?



# **Investigation**

# The Volume Formula for Pyramids and Cones



#### You will need

- container pairs of prisms and pyramids
- container pairs of cylinders and cones
- sand, rice, birdseed, or water
  - Step 1 Choose a prism and a pyramid that have congruent bases and the same height.
  - Step 2 Fill the pyramid, then pour the contents into the prism. About what fraction of the prism is filled by the volume of one pyramid?
  - Step 3 Check your answer by repeating Step 2 until the prism is filled.
  - Step 4 Choose a cone and a cylinder that have congruent bases and the same height and repeat Steps 2 and 3.
  - Step 5 Compare your results with the results of others. Did you get similar results with both your pyramid-prism pair and the cone-cylinder pair? You should be ready to make a conjecture.

# **Pyramid-Cone Volume Conjecture**

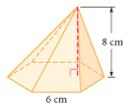
C-87

If *B* is the area of the base of a pyramid or a cone and *H* is the height of the solid, then the formula for the volume is  $V = \mathcal{L}$ .

If you successfully completed the investigation, you probably noticed that the volume formula is the same for all pyramids and cones, regardless of the type of base they have. To calculate the volume of a pyramid or cone, first find the area of its base. Then find the product of the fraction you discovered in the investigation, the area of the base, and the height of the solid.

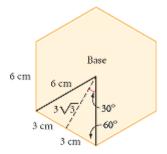
## EXAMPLE A

Find the volume of a regular hexagonal pyramid with a height of 8 cm. Each side of its base is 6 cm.



## Solution

First, find the area the base. To find the area of a regular hexagon, you need the apothem. By the  $30^{\circ}$ - $60^{\circ}$ - $90^{\circ}$  Triangle Conjecture, the apothem is  $3\sqrt{3}$  cm.



$$B = \frac{1}{2}ap$$

The area of a regular polygon is one-half the apothem times the perimeter.

$$B = \frac{1}{2}(3\sqrt{3})$$
 (36)

Substitute 3  $\sqrt{3}$  for a and 36 for p.

$$B = 54\sqrt{3}$$

Multiply.

The base has an area  $54\sqrt{3}$  cm<sup>2</sup>. Now find the volume of the pyramid.

$$V = \frac{1}{3}BH$$

The volume of a pyramid is one-third the area of the base times the height.

$$V = \frac{1}{3} (54\sqrt{3})$$
 (8)

Substitute  $54\sqrt{3}$  for B and 8 for H.

$$V = 144\sqrt{3}$$

Multiply.

The volume is  $144\sqrt{3}$  cm<sup>3</sup>, or approximately 249.4 cm<sup>3</sup>.

#### **EXAMPLE B**

A cone has a base radius 3 in. and a volume of  $24\pi$  in<sup>3</sup> . Find the height.



# Solution

Start with the volume formula and solve for H.

$$V = \frac{1}{3}BH$$

Volume formula for pyramids and cones.

$$V = \frac{1}{3} (\pi r^2) \ H$$

The base of a cone is a circle.

$$24\pi = \frac{1}{3}(\pi \cdot 3^2) H$$

Substitute  $24\pi$  for the volume and 3 for the radius.

$$24\pi = 3\pi H$$

Square the 3 and multiply by  $\frac{1}{3}$ .

$$8 = H$$

Solve for H.

The height of the cone is 8 in.



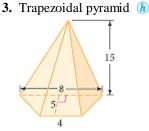
# **EXERCISES**

Find the volume of each solid named in Exercises 1–6. All measurements are in centimeters.

1. Square pyramid



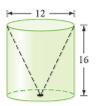
2. Cone



**4.** Triangular pyramid



5. Semicircular cone



**6.** Cylinder with cone removed

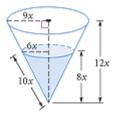
- 14
- In Exercises 7–9, express the total volume of each solid with the help algebra. In Exercise 9, what percentage of the volume is filled with the liquid? All measurements are in centimeters.
- 7. Square pyramid



8. Cone



9. Cone



10. Use the information about the base and height each solid to find the volume. All measurements are given in centimeters.

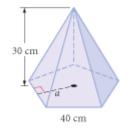
Information about base of solid	Height of solid	Triangular pyramid	Rectangular pyramid	Trapezoidal pyramid	Cone
		H	b		H.
$b = 6, b_2 = 7,$ h = 6, r = 3	H = 20	<b>a.</b> $V = \mathbf{h}$	<b>d.</b> V =	<b>g.</b> V =	<b>j.</b> V =
$b = 9, b_2 = 22,$ h = 8, r = 6	H = 20	<b>b.</b> V =	<b>e.</b> V =	<b>h.</b> V =	<b>k.</b> V =
$b = 13, b_2 = 29,$ h = 17, r = 8	H = 24	<b>c.</b> V =	<b>f.</b> V =	<b>i.</b> V =	<b>l.</b> V =

- 11. Sketch and label a square pyramid with height H feet and each side of the base M feet. The altitude meets the square base at the intersection of the two diagonals. Find the volume in terms H and M.
- 12. Sketch and label two different circular cones. each with a volume  $2304 \, \pi \, \text{cm}^3$ .
- 13. Mount Fuji, the active volcano in Honshu, Japan, is 3776 m high and has a slope of approximately 30°. Mount Etna, in Sicily, is 3350 m high and approximately 50 km across the base. If you assume they both can be approximated by cones, which volcano is larger?

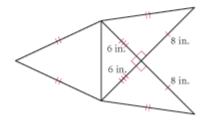


Mount Fuji is Japan's highest mountain. Legend claims that an earthquake created it.

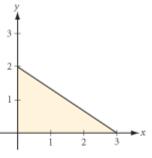
14. Bretislav has designed a crystal glass sculpture. Part of the piece is in the shape of a large regular pentagonal pyramid, shown at right. The apothem of the base measures 27.5 cm. How much will this part weigh if the glass he plans to use weighs 2.85 grams per cubic centimeter?



15. Jamala has designed a container that she claims will hold 50 in<sup>3</sup>. The net is shown at right. Check her calculations. What is the volume of the solid formed by this net?

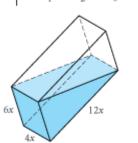


**16.** Find the volume of the solid formed by rotating the shaded figure about the *x*-axis.

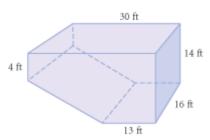


# Review

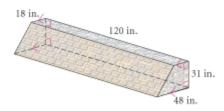
**17.** Find the volume of the liquid in this right rectangular prism. All measurements are given in centimeters.



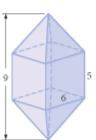
**18.** Application A swimming pool is in the shape of this prism. A cubic foot water is about 7.5 gallons. How many gallons of water can the pool hold? If a pump is able to pump water into the pool at a rate 15 gallons per minute, how long will it take to fill the pool?



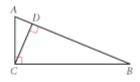
**19.** *Application* A landscape architect is building a stone retaining wall, as sketched at right. How many cubic feet stone will she need?



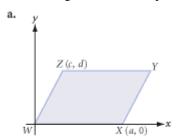
- 20. As bad as tanker oil spills are, they are only about 12% the 3.5 million tons of oil that enters the oceans each year. The rest comes from routine tanker operations, sewage treatment plants' runoff, natural sources, and offshore oil rigs. One month's maintenance and routine operation of a single supertanker produces up to 17,000 gallons of oil sludge that gets into the ocean! If a cylindrical barrel is about 1.6 feet in diameter and 2.8 feet tall, how many barrels are needed to hold 17,000 gallons of oil sludge? Recall that a cubic foot water is about 7.5 gallons.
- **21.** Find the surface area of each of the following polyhedrons. (See the shapes on page 544.) Give *exact* answers.
  - a. A regular tetrahedron with an edge 4 cm
  - **b.** A regular hexahedron with an edge 4 cm
  - c. A regular icosahedron with an edge 4 cm
  - **d.** The dodecahedron shown at right, made of four congruent rectangles and eight congruent triangles

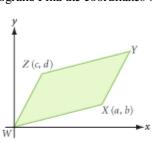


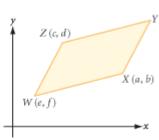
**22.** Given the triangle at right, reflect D over  $\overline{AC}$  to D'. Then reflect D over  $\overline{BC}$  to D". Explain why D', C, D" are collinear.



**23.** In each diagram, WXYZ is a parallelogram. Find the coordinates of Y.







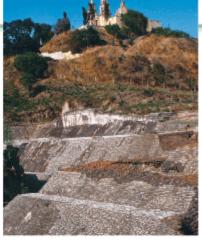
#### THE WORLD'S LARGEST PYRAMID

The pyramid at Cholula, Mexico, shown at right, was built between the 2nd and 8th centuries C.E. Like most pyramids of the Americas, it has a flat top. In fact, it is really two flattopped pyramids.

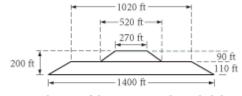
Some people claim it is the world's largest pyramid—even larger than the Great Pyramid of Khufu at Giza (shown on page 535) erected around 2500 B.C.E. Is it? Which of the two has the greater volume?

Your project should include

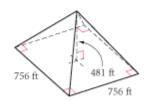
- Volume calculations for both pyramids.
- Scale models of both pyramids.



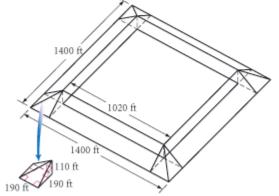
This church in Cholula appears to be on a hill, but it is actually built on top of an ancient pyramid!



Side view of the two pyramids at Cholula



Dimensions of the Great Pyramid at Giza



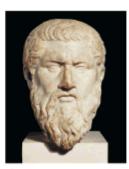
Dissected view of bottom pyramid at Cholula

# Exploration

# The Five Platonic Solids

Regular polyhedrons have intrigued mathematicians for thousands years. Greek philosophers saw the principles of mathematics and science as the guiding forces of the universe. Plato (429–347 B.C.E.) reasoned that because all objects are three-dimensional, their smallest parts must be in the shape regular polyhedrons. There are only five regular polyhedrons, and they are commonly called the **Platonic solids**.

Plato assigned each regular solid to one of the five "atoms": the tetrahedron to fire, the icosahedron to water, the octahedron to air, the cube or hexahedron to earth, and the dodecahedron to the cosmos.



Plato

Fire



Regular tetrahedron (4 faces)

Water



Regular icosahedron (20 faces)

Air



Regular octahedron (8 faces)

Earth



Regular hexahedron (6 faces)

Cosmos



Regular dodecahedron (12 faces)

# **Activity**

Solids

#### You will need

- poster board or cardboard
- a compass and straightedge
- a protractor
- scissors
- glue, paste, or cellophane tape
- colored pens or pencils for decorating the solids (optional)

# Modeling the Platonic

What would each of the five Platonic solids look like when unfolded? There is more than one way to unfold each polyhedron. Recall that a flat figure that you can fold into a polyhedron is called its net.



Step 1 One face is missing in the net at right. Complete the net to show what the regular tetrahedron would look like if it were cut open along the three lateral edges and unfolded into one piece.



Step 2 Two faces are missing in the net at right. Complete the net to show what the regular hexahedron would look like if it were cut open along the lateral edges and three top edges, then unfolded.



Step 3 Here is one possible net for the regular icosahedron. When the net is folded together, the five top triangles meet at one top point. Which edge—a, b, or c—does the edge labeled x line up with?



Step 4 The regular octahedron is similar to the icosahedron but has only eight equilateral triangles. Complete the octahedron net at right. Two faces are missing.



The regular dodecahedron has 12 regular pentagons as faces. If you cut the dodecahedron into two equal parts, they would look like two flowers, each having five pentagon-shaped petals around a center pentagon. Complete the net for half a dodecahedron.

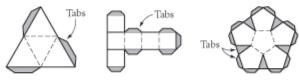


Now you know what the nets of the five Platonic solids could look like. Let's use the nets to construct and assemble models of the five Platonic solids. See the Procedure Note for some tips.

#### Procedure Note

Step 5

- 1. To save time, build solids with the same shape faces at the same time.
- 2. Construct a regular polygon template for each shape face.
- 3. Erase the unnecessary line segments.
- 4. Leave tabs on some edges for gluing.



- 5. Decorate each solid before you cut it out.
- **6.** Score on both sides of the net by running a pen or compass point over the fold lines.
- Step 6 Build nets for the icosahedron, octahedron, and tetrahedron with equilateral triangles.

#### Step 7

Build a net for the hexahedron, or cube, with squares.

#### Step 8

Build a net for the dodecahedron with regular pentagons. Create half of the net, consisting of five pentagons surrounding a central pentagon, by following these steps.

- **a.** Construct a circle and place a point on the top the circle. Use your protractor to lightly draw a sector equal to one-fifth the circle. What must the measure of this central angle equal?
- **b.** Continue using your protractor to draw five congruent sectors. Check your work by measuring the last central angle formed. Connect the five points on the circle.
- c. Erase all radii and the circle. You now have one large regular pentagon.







- **d.** Lightly draw all of the diagonals. The smaller regular pentagon formed by the intersecting diagonals will be one of the 12 faces the dodecahedron.
- **e.** Lightly draw the diagonals of the central pentagon and extend them to the sides of the larger pentagon.
- **f.** Find the five pentagons that encircle the central pentagon and erase all other marks. You now have half of the net.







**g.** Make a copy of the half net and assemble the two halves into the dodecahedron.

#### Step 9

#### Explore these extensions.

- a. Before you assemble your nets, decorate them according to the element that Plato assigned to each regular polyhedron, as described at the beginning of this exploration. Research how and why Plato assigned each of the five regular solids the elements Earth, Air, Fire, Water, and Cosmos.
- **b.** Can you explain from looking at the nets why there are only five Platonic solids? Search the Internet or library for a prothat there are only five regular polyhedrons.
- **c.** Complete a table of the vertices, faces, and edges the Platonic solids. Verify that they satisfy Euler's Formula for Polyhedrons. If a solid has a polyhedral hole, does the formula still hold?
- d. Use the Internet or library to research Platonic solids and dual solids. Does every Platonic solid have a dual? Is every dual of a Platonic solid also a Platonic solid?



If you have made mistakes... there is always another chance for you... for this thing we call failure" is not the falling down, but the staying down. MARY PICKFORD

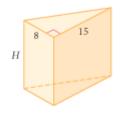
# **Volume Problems**

Volume has applications in science, medicine, engineering, and construction. For example, a chemist needs to accurately measure the volume of reactive substances. A doctor may need to calculate the volume of a cancerous tumor based on a body scan. Engineers and construction personnel need to determine the volume of building supplies such as concrete or asphalt. The volume of the rooms in a completed building will ultimately determine the size of mechanical devices such as air conditioning units.

Sometimes, if you know the volume of a solid, you can calculate an unknown length of a base or the solid's height. Here are two examples.

### **EXAMPLE** A

The volume of this right triangular prism is 1440 cm<sup>3</sup>. Find the height of the prism.



### Solution

$$V = BH$$

$$V = \left(\frac{1}{2}bh\right)H$$

$$1440 = \frac{1}{2} (8)(15)H$$

$$1440 = 60H$$

$$24 = H$$

Volume formula for prisms and cylinders.

The base of the prism is a triangle.

Substitute 1440 for the volume, 8 for the base of the triangle, and 15 for the height of the triangle.

Multiply.

Solve for H.

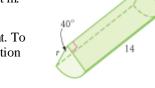
The height of the prism is 24 cm.

# **EXAMPLE B**

The volume of this sector a right cylinder is 2814 m<sup>3</sup>. Find the radius of the base of the cylinder to the nearest m.

# Solution

The volume is the area of the base times the height. To find the area of the sector, you first find what fraction the sector is of the whole circle:  $\frac{40}{460} = \frac{1}{4}$ .



$$V = BH$$

$$V = \left(\frac{1}{9}\pi r^2\right)H$$

$$2814 = \frac{1}{9}\pi r^2 \quad (14)$$

$$\frac{9 \cdot 2814}{14\pi} = r^2$$

$$575.8 \approx r^2$$

$$24 \approx r$$

The radius is about 24 m.

### **EXERCISES**



#### You will need



- 1. If you cut a 1-inch square out of each corner of an 8.5-by-11-inch piece of paper and fold it into a box without a lid, what is the volume of the container?
- 2. The prism at right has equilateral triangle bases with side lengths of 4 cm. The height of the prism is 8 cm. Find the volume.
- 3. A triangular pyramid has a volume of 180 cm<sup>3</sup> and a height of 12 cm. Find the length of a side of the triangular base if the triangle's height from that side is 6 cm.
- **4.** A trapezoidal pyramid has a volume of 3168 cm<sup>3</sup>, and its height is 36 cm. The lengths of the two bases of the trapezoidal base are 20 cm and 28 cm. What is the height of the trapezoidal base?
- 5. The volume of a cylinder is 628 cm<sup>3</sup>. Find the radius of the base if the cylinder has a height of 8 cm. Round your answer to the nearest 0.1 cm.
- **6.** If you roll an 8.5-by-11-inch piece of paper into a cylinder by bringing the two longer sides together, you get a tall, thin cylinder. If you roll an 8.5-by-11-inch piece of paper into a cylinder by bringing the two shorter sides together, you get a short, fat cylinder. Which of the two cylinders has the greater volume?
- 7. Sylvia has just discovered that the valve on her cement truck failed during the night and that all the contents ran out to form a giant cone of hardened cement. To make an insurance claim, she needs to figure out how much cement is in the cone. The circumference of its base is 44 feet, and it is 5 feet high. Calculate the volume to the nearest cubic foot.
- 8. A sealed rectangular container 6 cm by 12 cm by 15 cm is sitting on its smallest face. It is filled with water up to 5 cm from the top. How many centimeters from the bottom will the water level reach if the container is placed on its largest face?
- 9. To test his assistant, noted adventurer Dakota Davis states that the volume of the regular hexagonal ring at right is equal to the volume of the regular hexagonal hole in its center. The assistant must confirm or refute this, using dimensions shown in the figure. What should he say to Dakota?

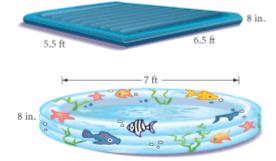






Use this information to solve Exercises 10–12: Water weighs about 63 pounds per cubic foot, and a cubic foot of water is about 7.5 gallons.

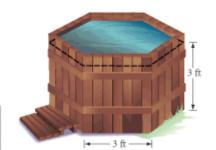
- **10.** Application A king-size waterbed mattress measures 5.5 feet by 6.5 feet by 8 inches deep. To the nearest pound, how much does the water in this waterbed weigh?
- 11. A child's wading pool has a diameter of 7 feet and is 8 inches deep. How many gallons of water can the pool hold? Round your answer to the nearest 0.1 gallon.



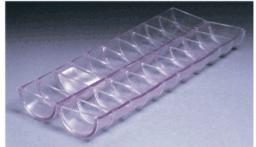
12. Madeleine's hot tub has the shape of a regular hexagonal prism. The chart on the hot-tub heater tells how long it takes to warm different amounts of water by 10°F. Help Madeleine determine how long it will take to raise the water temperature from 93°F to 103°F.

Minutes to Raise Temperature 10°F

Gallons								
Minutes	9	10	11	12	14	15	16	18



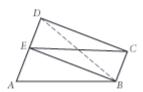
- **13.** A standard juice box holds 8 fluid ounces. A fluid ounce of liquid occupies 1.8 in<sup>3</sup>. Design a cylindrical can that will hold about the same volume as one juice box. What are some possible dimensions of the can?
- 14. The photo at right shows an ice tray that is designed for a person who has the use of only one hand—each piece of ice will rotate out of the tray when pushed with one finger. Suppose the tray has a length of 12 inches and a height of 1 inch. Approximate the volume of water the tray holds if it is filled to the top. (Ignore the thickness of the plastic.)



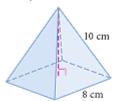
**15.** Application An auto tunnel through a mountain is being planned. It will be in the shape of a semicircular cylinder with a radius of 10 m and a length of 2 km. How many cubic meters of dirt will need to be removed? If the bed of each dump truck has dimensions 2.2 m by 4.8 m by 1.8 m, how many loads will be required to carry away the dirt?

# Review

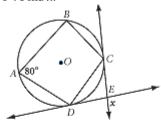
**16. Developing Proof** In the figure at right, ABCE is a parallelogram and BCDE is a rectangle. Write a paragraph proof showing that  $\triangle ABD$  is isosceles.



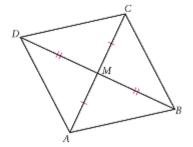
**17.** Find the height of this right square pyramid. Give your answer to the nearest 0.1 cm.



**18.**  $\overrightarrow{EC}$  is tangent at C.  $\overrightarrow{ED}$  is tangent at D.  $\overrightarrow{mBC} = 76^{\circ}$ . Find x.



- **19.** *Construction* Use your geometry tools to construct an inscribed and circumscribed circle for an equilateral triangle.
- **20.** Construction Use your compass and straightedge to construct an isosceles trapezoid with a base angle of 45° and the length of one base three times the length of the other base.
- **21.** M is the midpoint of  $\overline{AC}$  and  $\overline{BD}$ . For each statement, select always (A), sometimes (S), or never (N).
  - a. ABCD is a parallelogram.
  - **b.** *ABCD* is a rhombus.
  - **c.** ABCD is a kite.
  - **d.**  $\triangle$   $AMD \cong \triangle$  AMB
  - $\mathbf{e}$ .  $\angle DAM \cong \angle BCM$



# IMPROVING YOUR REASONING SKILLS

# Bert's Magic Hexagram

Bert is the queen's favorite jester. He entertains himself with puzzles. Bert is creating a magic hexagram on the front of a grid of 19 hexagons. When Bert's magic hexagram (like its cousin the magic square) is completed, it will have the same sum in every straight hexagonal row, column, or diagonal (whether it is three, four, or five hexagons long). For example, B+12+10 is the same sum as B+2+5+6+9, which is the same sum as C+8+6+11. Bert planned to use just the first 19 positive integers (his age in years), but he only had time to place the first 12 integers before he was interrupted. Your job is to complete Bert's magic hexagram. What are the values for

A, B, C, D, E, F, and G?



Eureka! I have found it!
ARCHIMEDES

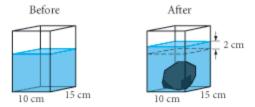
# **Displacement and Density**

What happens if you step into a bathtub that is filled to the brim? If you add a scoop of ice cream to a glass filled with root beer? In each case, you'll have a mess! The volume of the liquid that overflows in each case equals the volume of the solid below the liquid level. This volume is called an object's displacement.



### **EXAMPLE A**

Mary Jo wants to find the volume of an irregularly shaped rock. She puts some water into a rectangular prism with a base that measures 10 cm by 15 cm. When the rock is put into the container, Mary Jo notices that the water level rises 2 cm because the rock displaces its volume of water. This new "slice" of water has a volume of (2)(10)(15), or  $300 \text{ cm}^3$ . So the volume of the rock is  $300 \text{ cm}^3$ .



An important property of a material is its density. **Density** is the mass of matter in a given volume. You can find the mass of an object by weighing it. You calculate density by dividing the mass by the volume:

density = 
$$\frac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}}$$

#### **EXAMPLE B**

A clump of metal with mass 351.4 grams is dropped into a cylindrical container, causing the water level to rise 1.1 cm. The radius of the base of the container is

3.0 cm. What is the density of the metal? Given the table, and assuming the metal is pure, what is the metal?

Metal	Density	Metal	Density
Aluminum	2.81 g/cm <sup>3</sup>	Nickel	8.89 g/cm <sup>3</sup>
Copper	8.97 g/cm <sup>3</sup>	Platinum	21.40 g/cm <sup>3</sup>
Gold	19.30 g/cm <sup>3</sup>	Potassium	0.86 g/cm <sup>3</sup>
Lead	11.30 g/cm <sup>3</sup>	Silver	10.50 g/cm <sup>3</sup>
Lithium	0.54 g/cm <sup>3</sup>	Sodium	0.97 g/cm <sup>3</sup>

#### Solution

First, find the volume of displaced water. Then divide the mass by the volume to get the density of the metal.

volume = 
$$\pi(3.0)^2$$
 (1.1) density  $\approx \frac{351.4}{31.1}$   
=  $(\pi)$  (9)(1.1)  $\approx 11.3$ 

The density is 11.3 g/cm<sup>3</sup>. Therefore the metal is lead.

# History CONNECTION

Archimedes solved the problem of how to tell whether a crown was made of genuine gold by using displacement to calculate its density. Legend has it that the insight came to him while he was bathing. Thrilled by his discovery, Archimedes ran through the streets shouting "Eureka!" (Greek for "I have found it!") wearing just what he'd been wearing in the bathtub.

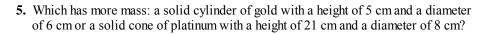


# EXERCISES

- 1. When you put a rock into a container of water, it raises the water level 3 cm. If the container is a rectangular prism whose base measures 15 cm by 15 cm, what is the volume of the rock?
- 2. You drop a solid glass ball into a cylinder with a radius of 6 cm, raising the water level 1 cm. What is the volume of the glass ball?
- 3. A fish tank 10 by 14 by 12 inches high is the home of a large goldfish named Columbia. She is taken out when her owner cleans the tank, and the water level in the tank drops \frac{1}{2} inch. What is Columbia's volume?

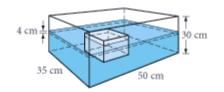
For Exercises 4–9, refer to the table on page 551.

**4.** What is the mass of a solid block of aluminum if its dimensions are 4 cm by 8 cm by 20 cm?



- **6.** Chemist Dean Dalton is given a clump of metal and is told that it is sodium. He finds that the metal has mass 145.5 g. He places it into a nonreactive liquid in a square prism whose base measures 10 cm on each edge. If the metal is indeed sodium, how high should the liquid level rise?
- 7. A square-prism container with a base 5 cm by 5 cm is partially filled with water. You drop a clump of metal with mass 525 g into the container, and the water level rises 2 cm. What is the density of the metal? Assuming the metal is pure, what is the metal?

8. When ice floats in water, one-eighth of its volume floats above the water level and seven-eighths floats beneath the water level. A block of ice placed into an ice chest causes the water in the chest to rise 4 cm. The right rectangular chest measures 35 cm by 50 cm by 30 cm high. What is the volume of the block of ice?

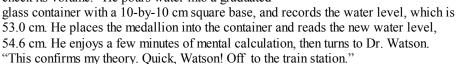


#### Science

# CONNECTION

Buoyancy is the tendency of an object to float in either a liquid or a gas. For an object to float on the surface of water, it must sink enough to displace the volume of water equal to its weight.

9. Sherlock Holmes rushes home to his chemistry lab, takes a mysterious medallion from his case, and weighs it. "It has mass 3088 grams. Now let's check its volume." He pours water into a graduated



"Holmes, you amaze me. Is it gold?" questions the good doctor.

"If it has a density of 19.3 grams per cubic centimeter, it is gold," smiles Mr. Holmes. "If it is gold, then Colonel Banderson is who he says he is. If it is a fake, then so is the Colonel."

"Well?" Watson queries.

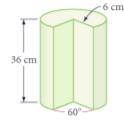
Holmes smiles and says, "It's elementary, my dear Watson. Elementary geometry, that is."

What is the volume of the medallion? Is it gold? Is Colonel Banderson who he says he is?

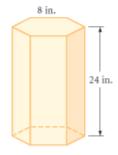


#### Review

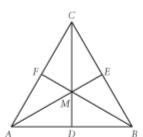
**10.** What is the volume of the slice removed from this right cylinder? Give your answer to the nearest cm<sup>3</sup>.



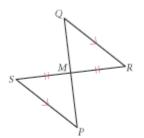
**11.** *Application* Ofelia has brought home a new aquarium shaped like the regular hexagonal prism shown at right. She isn't sure her desk is strong enough to hold it. The aquarium, without water, weighs 48 pounds. How much will it weigh when it is filled? (Water weighs 63 pounds per cubic foot.) If a small fish needs about 180 cubic inches of water to swim around in, about how many small fish can this aquarium house?



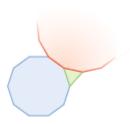
**12.**  $\triangle$  *ABC* is equilateral . *M* is the centroid. AB = 6Find the area of  $\triangle CEA$ .



**13. Developing Proof** Give a paragraph or flowchart proof explaining why M is the midpoint of  $\overline{PQ}$ .



**14.** The three polygons are regular polygons. How many sides does the red polygon have?



- **15.** A circle passes through the three points (4, 7), (6, 3), and (1, -2).
  - **a.** Find the center.
- **b.** Find the equation.
- **16.** A secret rule matches the following numbers:

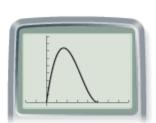
$$2 \rightarrow 4, 3 \rightarrow 7, 4 \rightarrow 10, 5 \rightarrow 13$$
  
Find  $20 \rightarrow \frac{7}{2}$ , and  $n \rightarrow \frac{7}{2}$ .



# MAXIMIZING VOLUME

Suppose you have a 10-inch-square sheet of metal and you want to make a small box by cutting out squares from the corners of the sheet and folding up the sides. What size corners should you cut out to get the biggest box possible?

To answer this question, consider the length of the corner cut x and write an equation for the volume of the box, y, in terms of x. Graph your equation using reasonable window values. You should see your graph touch the x-axis in at least two places and reach a maximum somewhere in between. Study these points carefully to find their significance.



- Your project should include
- ▶ The equation you used to calculate volume in terms of x and y.
- A sketch of the calculator graph and the graphing window you used.
- $\triangleright$  An explanation of important points, for example, when the graph touches the x-axis.
- ▶ A solution for what size corners make the biggest volume.

Lastly, generalize your findings. For example, what fraction of the side length could you cut from each corner of a 12-inch-square sheet to make a box of maximum volume?

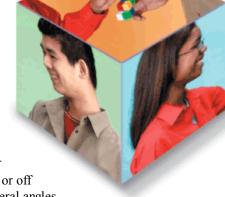
# Exploration

# **Orthographic Drawing**

f you have ever put together a toy from detailed instructions, or built a birdhouse from a kit, or seen blueprints for a building under construction, you have seen isometric drawings.

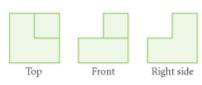
Isometric means "having equal measure," so the edges of a cube drawn isometrically all have the same length. In contrast, recall that when you drew a cube in two-point perspective, you needed to use edges of different lengths to get a natural look.

When you buy a product from a catalog or off the Internet, you want to see it from several angles. The top, front, and right side views are given in an orthographic drawing. Ortho means "straight," and the views of an orthographic drawing show the faces of a solid as though you are looking at them "head-on."





An isometric drawing



An orthographic drawing

# Career CONNECTION

Architects create blueprints for their designs, as shown at right. Architectural drawing plans use orthographic techniques to describe the proposed design from several angles. These front and side views are called building elevations.



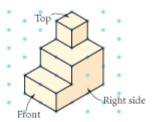






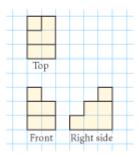
#### **EXAMPLE A**

Make an orthographic drawing of the solid shown in the isometric drawing at right.



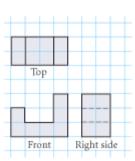
### Solution

Visualize how the solid would look from the top, the front, and the right side. Draw an edge wherever there is a change of depth. The top and front views must have the same width, and the front and right side views must have the same height.



# EXAMPLE B

Draw the isometric view of the object shown here as an orthographic drawing. The dashed lines mean that there is an invisible edge.



#### Solution

Find the vertices of the front face and make the shape. Use the width of the side and top views to extend parallel lines. Complete the back edges. You can shade parallel planes to show depth.





British pop artist David Hockney (b 1937) titled this photographic collage Sunday Moming Mayflower Hotel, N.Y., Nov-28, 1982. Each photo shows the view from a different angle, just as an orthographic drawing shows multiple angles at once.



# Activity

# **Isometric and Orthographic Drawings**

#### You will need

- isometric dot paper
- graph paper
- 12 cubes

In this investigation you'll build block models and draw their isometric and orthographic views.

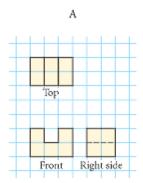
Step 1

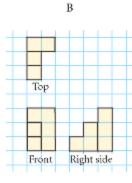
Practice drawing a cube on isometric dot paper. What is the shape of each visible face? Are they congruent? What should the orthographic views of a cube look like?

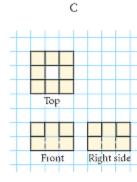
Step 2 Stack three cubes to make a two-step "staircase." Turn the structure so that you look at it the way you would walk up stairs. Call that view the front. Next,

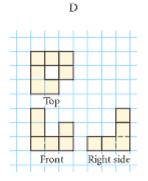
identify the top and right sides. How many planes are visible from each view? Make an isometric drawing of the staircase on dot paper and the three orthographic views on graph paper.

Step 3 Build solids A–D from their orthographic views, then draw their isometric views.





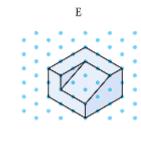


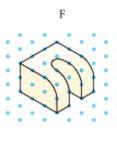


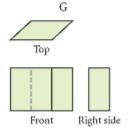
Step 4

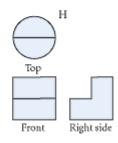
Make your own original 8- to 12-cube structure and agree on the orthographic views that represent it. Then trade places with another group and draw the orthographic views of their structure.

Step 5 Make orthographic views for solids E and F, and sketch the isometric views of solids G and H.











Satisfaction lies in the effort. not in the attainment. Full effort is full victory. MOHANDAS K. GANDHI

> You will need cylinder and

> > same radius

or water

hemisphere with the

sand, rice, birdseed.

# Volume of a **Sphere**

n this lesson you will develop a formula for the volume of a sphere. In the investigation you'll compare the volume of a right cylinder to the volume of a hemisphere.



# **Investigation**

# The Formula for the Volume of a Sphere

This investigation demonstrates the relationship between the volume of a hemisphere with radius r and the volume of a right cylinder with base radius r and height 2r—that is, the smallest cylinder that encloses a given sphere.



Fill the hemisphere.

Step 2

Carefully pour the contents of the hemisphere into the cylinder. What fraction of the cylinder does the hemisphere appear to fill?

Step 3

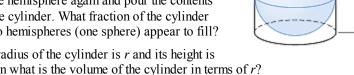
Fill the hemisphere again and pour the contents into the cylinder. What fraction of the cylinder do two hemispheres (one sphere) appear to fill?

Step 4

If the radius of the cylinder is r and its height is 2r, then what is the volume of the cylinder in terms of r?

Step 5

The volume of the sphere is the fraction of the cylinder's volume that was filled by two hemispheres. What is the formula for the volume of a sphere? State it as your conjecture.



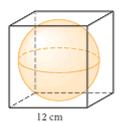
# **Sphere Volume Conjecture**

C-88

The volume of a sphere with radius r is given by the formula 1.

### EXAMPLE A

As an exercise for her art class, Mona has cast a plaster cube 12 cm on each side. Her assignment is to carve the largest possible sphere from the cube. What percentage of the plaster will be carved away?



### Solution

The largest possible sphere will have a diameter of 12 cm, so its radius is 6 cm. Applying the formula for volume of a sphere, you get  $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3 = \frac{4}{3}\pi (6)^3 = \frac{4}{3}\pi \cdot 216 = 288\pi$ , or about 905 cm<sup>3</sup>. The volume of the plaster cube is  $12^3$ , or 1728 cm<sup>3</sup>. You subtract the volume of the sphere from the volume of the cube to get the amount carved away, which is about 823 cm<sup>3</sup>. Therefore the percentage carved away is  $\frac{823}{1728} = 48\%$ .

#### EXAMPLE B

Find the volume of plastic (to the nearest cubic inch) needed for this hollow toy component. The outer-hemisphere diameter is 5.0 in. and the inner-hemisphere diameter is 4.0 in.



# **▶** Solution

The formula for volume of a sphere is  $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$ , so the volume of a hemisphere is half of that,  $V = \frac{2}{3}\pi r^3$ . A radius is half a diameter.

# **Outer Hemisphere**

# Inner Hemisphere

$$V_o = \frac{2}{3}\pi r^3$$

$$= \frac{2}{3}\pi (2.5)^3$$

$$= \frac{2}{3}\pi \cdot 15.625$$

$$= \frac{31.25\pi}{3} \approx 32.7$$

$$V_i = \frac{2}{3}\pi r^3$$

$$= \frac{2}{3}\pi (2)^3$$

$$= \frac{2}{3}\pi \cdot 8$$

$$= \frac{16\pi}{3} \approx 16.8$$

Subtracting the volume of the inner hemisphere from the volume of the outer one, approximately 16 in<sup>3</sup> of plastic are needed.

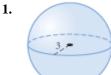
# **EXERCISES**





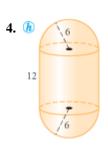
In Exercises 1–6, find the volume of each solid. All measurements are in centimeters.

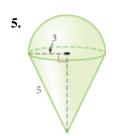
Reymetherm Practice Your Skills

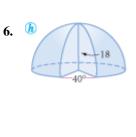




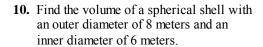






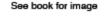


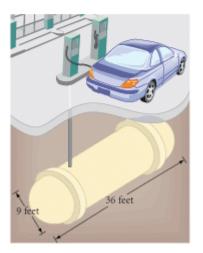
- 7. What is the volume of the largest hemisphere that you could carve out of a wooden block whose edges measure 3 m by 7 m by 7 m?
- 8. A sphere of ice cream is placed onto your ice cream cone. Both have a diameter of 8 cm. The height of your cone is 12 cm.If you push the ice cream into the cone, will all of it fit?
- 9. Application Lickety Split ice cream comes in a cylindrical container with an inside diameter of 6 inches and a height of 10 inches. The company claims to give the customer 25 scoops of ice cream per container, each scoop being a sphere with a 3-inch diameter. How many scoops will each container really hold?



- 11. Which is greater, the volume of a hemisphere with radius 2 cm or the total volume of two cones with radius 2 cm and height 2 cm?
- 12. A sphere has a volume of  $972\pi$  in<sup>3</sup>. Find its radius.
- 13. A hemisphere has a volume of  $18 \pi$  cm<sup>3</sup>. Find its radius.
- **14.** The base of a hemisphere has an area of  $256 \pi$  cm<sup>2</sup>. Find its volume.
- **15.** If the diameter of a student's brain is about 6 inches, and you assume its shape is approximately a hemisphere, then what is the volume of the student's brain?
- **16.** A cylindrical glass 10 cm tall and 8 cm in diameter is filled to 1 cm from the top with water. If a golf ball 4 cm in diameter is placed into the glass, will the water overflow?
- 17. Application This underground gasoline storage tank is a right cylinder with a hemisphere at each end. How many gallons of gasoline will the tank hold?
  (1 gallon = 0.13368 cubic foot.) If the service station fills twenty 15-gallon tanks from the storage tank per day, how many days will it take to empty the storage tank?







560 CHAPTER 10 Volume © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

### **Review**

- 18. Inspector Lestrade has sent a small piece of metal to the crime lab. The lab technician finds that its mass is 54.3 g. It appears to be lithium, sodium, or potassium, all highly reactive with water. Then the technician places the metal into a graduated glass cylinder of radius 4 cm that contains a nonreactive liquid. The metal causes the level of the liquid to rise 2.0 cm. Which metal is it? (Refer to the table on page 551.)
- 19. City law requires that any one-story commercial building supply a parking area equal in size to the floor area of the building. A-Round Architects has designed a cylindrical building with a 150-foot diameter. They plan to ring the building with parking. How far from the building should the parking lot extend? Round your answer to the nearest foot.



**20.** Plot A, B, C, and D onto graph paper.

A is (3, -5).

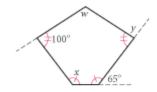
C is the reflection of A over the x-axis.

B is the rotation of C 180° around the origin.

D is a transformation of A by the rule  $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 6, y + 10)$ .

What kind of quadrilateral is ABCD? Give reasons for your answer.

- **21.** *Technology* Use geometry software to construct a segment  $A\overline{B}$  and its midpoint C. Trace C and B, and drag B around to sketch a shape. Compare the shapes they trace.
- **22.** *Technology* Use geometry software to construct a circle. Choose a point A on the circle and a point B not on the circle, and construct the perpendicular bisector of  $\overline{AB}$ . Trace the perpendicular bisector as you animate A around the circle. Describe the locus of points traced.
- **23.** Find *w*, *x*, and *y*.



# IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### Patchwork Cubes

The large cube at right is built from 13 double cubes like the one shown plus one single cube. All faces are identical. What color must the single cube be, and where must it be positioned?







Sometimes it's better to talk about difficult subjects lying down; the change in posture sort of tilts the world so you can get a different angle on things.

MARY WILLIS WALKER

# Surface Area of a Sphere

Earth is so large that it is reasonable to use area formulas for plane figures rectangles, triangles, and circles—to find the areas of most small land regions. But, to find Earth's entire surface area, you need a formula for the surface area of a



sphere. Now that you know how to find the volume of a sphere, you can use that knowledge to arrive at the formula for the surface area of a sphere.

Earth rises over the Moon's horizon. From there, the Moon's surface seems flat.

A horsefly's eyes resemble spheres covered



# Investigation

# The Formula for the Surface Area of a Sphere

In this investigation you'll visualize a sphere's surface covered by tiny shapes that are nearly flat. So the surface area, S. of the sphere is the sum of the areas of all the "near polygons." If you imagine radii connecting each of the vertices of the "near polygons" to the center of the sphere, you are mentally dividing the volume of the sphere into many "near pyramids." Each of the "near polygons" is a base for a pyramid, and the radius, r. of the sphere is the height of the pyramid. So the volume, V, of the sphere is the sum of the volumes of all the pyramids. Now get ready for some algebra.



Divide the surface of the sphere into 1000 "near polygons" with areas  $B_1, B_2, B_3, \ldots, B_{1000}$ . Then you can write the surface area, S, of the sphere as the sum of the 1000 B's:

$$S = B_1 + B_2 + B_3 + \dots + B_{1000}$$





by "near polygons,"

The volume of the pyramid with base  $B_1$  is  $\frac{1}{3}$   $(B_1)(r)$ , so the total volume of the sphere, V, is the sum of the volumes of the 1000 pyramids:

$$V = \frac{1}{3}(B_1)(r) + \frac{1}{3}(B_2)(r) + \dots + \frac{1}{3}(B_{1000})(r)$$

What common expression can you factor from each of the terms on the right side? Rewrite the last equation showing the results of your factoring.

Step 3

But the volume of the sphere is  $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$ . Rewrite your equation from Step 2 by substituting  $\frac{4}{3}\pi^3$  for V and substituting for S the sum of the areas of all the "near polygons."

Step 4

Solve the equation from Step 3 for the surface area, *S.* You now have a formula for finding the surface area of a sphere in terms of its radius. State this as your next conjecture and add it to your conjecture list.

# **Sphere Surface Area Conjecture**

C-89

The surface area, S, of a sphere with radius r is given by the formula  $\mathcal{L}$ .

#### **EXAMPLE**

Find the surface area of a sphere whose volume is  $12,348\pi$  m<sup>3</sup>.

Solution

First, use the volume formula for a sphere to find its radius. Then use the radius to find the surface area.

Radius Calculation Surface

Surface Area Calculation

$$V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^{3}$$

$$12,348\pi = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^{3}$$

$$12,348 = r^{3}$$

$$9261 = r^{3}$$

$$r = 21$$

$$S = 4\pi r^{2}$$

$$= 4\pi (21)^{2}$$

$$= 4\pi \cdot 441$$

$$S = 1764\pi = 5541.8$$

The radius is 21 m, and the surface area is  $1764 \, \pi$  m<sup>2</sup>, or about  $5541.8 \, \text{m}^2$ .



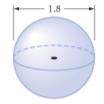
# **EXERCISES**

For Exercises 1–3, find the volume and total surface area of each solid. All measurements are in centimeters.

1.



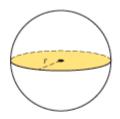
2.



3.

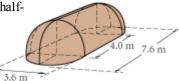


- **4.** The shaded circle at right has area  $40\pi$  cm<sup>2</sup>. Find the surface area of the sphere.
- 5. Find the volume of a sphere whose surface area is  $64\pi$  cm<sup>2</sup>.
- **6.** Find the surface area of a sphere whose volume is  $288\pi$  cm<sup>3</sup>.
- **7.** If the radius of the base of a hemisphere (which is bounded by a great circle) is *r*, what is the area of the great circle? What is the total surface area of the hemisphere, including the base? How do they compare?



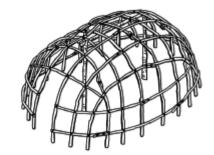


- **8.** If Jose used 4 gallons of wood sealant to cover the hemispherical ceiling of his vacation home, how many gallons of wood sealant are needed to cover the floor?
- **9.** Application Assume a Kickapoo wigwam is a semicylinder with a half-hemisphere on each end. The diameter of the semicylinder and each of the half-hemispheres is 3.6 meters. The total length is 7.6 meters. What is the volume of the wigwam and the surface area of its roof?





A wigwam was a domed structure that Native American woodland tribes, such as the Kickapoo, Iroquois, and Cherokee, used for shelter and warmth in the winter. They designed each wigwam with an oval floor pattern, set tree saplings vertically into the ground around the oval, bent the tips of the saplings into an arch, and tied all the pieces together to support the framework. They then wove more branches horizontally around the building and added mats over the entire dwelling, except for the doorway and smoke hole.



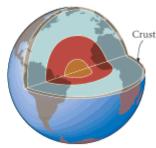
- **10.** Application A farmer must periodically resurface the interior (wall, floor, and ceiling) of his silo to protect it from the acid created by the silage. The height of the silo to the top of the hemispherical dome is 50 ft, and the diameter is 18 ft.
  - a. What is the approximate surface area that needs to be treated?
  - **b.** If 1 gallon of resurfacing compound covers about 250 ft<sup>2</sup>, how many gallons are needed?
  - **c.** There is 0.8 bushel per ft<sup>3</sup>. Calculate the number of bushels of grain this silo will hold.
- **11.** About 70% of Earth's surface is covered by water. If the diameter of Earth is about 12,750 km, find the area not covered by water to the nearest 100,000 km<sup>2</sup>.





From the early 13th century to the late 17th century, the Medici family of Florence, Italy, were successful merchants and generous patrons of the arts. The Medici family crest, shown here, features six spheres—five red spheres and one that resembles the earth. The use of three gold spheres to advertise a pawnshop could have been inspired by the Medici crest.

- **12.** A sculptor has designed a statue that features six hemispheres (inspired by the Medici crest) and three spheres (inspired by the pawnshop logo). He wants to use gold electroplating on the six hemispheres (diameter 6 cm) and the three spheres (diameter 8 cm), which will cost about 14¢ /cm<sup>2</sup>. (The bases of the hemispheres will *not* be electroplated.) Will he be able to stay under his \$150 budget? If not, what diameter spheres should he make to stay under budget?
- **13.** Earth has a thin outer layer called the *crust*, which averages about 24 km thick. Earth's diameter is about 12,750 km. What percentage of the volume of Earth is the crust?



#### Review

- 14. A piece of wood placed in a cylindrical container causes the container's water level to rise 3 cm. This type of wood floats half out of the water, and the radius of the container is 5 cm. What is the volume of the piece of wood?
- 15. Find the ratio of the area of the circle inscribed in an equilateral triangle to the area of the circumscribed circle.
- 16. Find the ratio of the area of the circle inscribed in a square to the area of the circumscribed circle.
- 17. Find the ratio of the area of the circle inscribed in a regular hexagon to the area of the circumscribed circle.
- **18.** Make a conjecture as to what happens to the ratio in Exercises 15–17 as the number of sides of the regular polygon increases. Make sketches to support your conjecture.
- **19.** Use inductive reasoning to complete each table.

a.	n	1	2	3	4	5	6	 п	 200
	f(n)	-2	1	4	7				

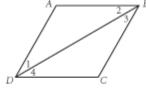
b.	n	1	2	3	4	5	6	 n	 200	
	f(n)	0	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	<u>3</u> 5					

**20.** *Developing Proof* Prove the Rhombus Angles Conjecture: The diagonals of a rhombus bisect the angles of the rhombus.

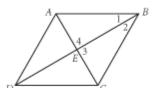
**Given:** Rhombus ABCD with diagonal  $\overline{BD}$ 

**Show:**  $\overline{BD}$  bisects  $\angle ABC$  and  $\angle ADC$ 

Explain why the logic of this proof would also apply to the other diagonal,  $\overline{AC}$ .



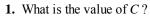
- **21.** *Developing Proof* Prove the Rhombus Diagonals Conjecture: The diagonals of a rhombus are perpendicular bisectors of each other. Start with rhombus *ABCD* in the figure below and follow these steps.
  - **a.** Use the Rhombus Angles Conjecture to prove that  $\triangle AEB \cong \triangle CEB$
  - **b.** Use part a to prove that  $\overline{BD}$  bisects  $\overline{AC}$ .
  - **c.** Use part a to prove that  $\angle 3$  and  $\angle 4$  are right angles.
  - **d.** You've proved most of the Rhombus Diagonals Conjecture. Explain what is missing and describe how you could complete the proof.



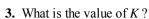
#### IMPROVING YOUR **REASONING** SKILLS

#### Reasonable 'rithmetic II

Each letter in these problems represents a different digit.







**4.** What is the value of N?

## **Solving for Any Variable**

Most formulas are defined to give you one variable in terms of other variables. But you can use algebra to rearrange the formula and define it in terms of any variable that you wish. Solving for a particular variable saves time when you have repeated calculations based on the same variables.

#### **EXAMPLE**

A chocolate manufacturer is experimenting with new cylindrical cans for hotcocoa mix. The can needs to hold 73 in<sup>3</sup> (roughly 40 oz). Find the can diameters that correspond to heights of 4 in., 5 in., 6 in., and 7 in.

#### Solution

The formula for the volume of a cylinder is  $V = \pi r^2 H$ , or  $V = \pi \left(\frac{d}{2}\right)^2 H$ . Repeatedly substituting values for V and H into the formula and solving for d is tedious. Instead, solve for d once and then substitute values for the other variables.

$$V = \pi \left(\frac{d}{2}\right)^2 H$$
 The original formula.

$$\frac{V}{\pi} = \left(\frac{d}{2}\right)^2 H$$
 Divide both sides by  $\pi$ .

$$\frac{V}{\pi H} = \left(\frac{d}{2}\right)^2$$
 Divide both sides by  $H$ .

$$\sqrt{\frac{V}{\pi H}} = \frac{d}{2}$$
 Take the positive square root of both sides.

$$2\sqrt{\frac{V}{\pi H}} = d$$
 Multiply both sides by 2.

To recall a formula that you've typed into a graphing calculator, press 2nd **ENTER** and change any values. This is helpful for finding values in a table.

Now use the formula to calculate the diameters. It may help to organize your information in a table. Remember that the volume in this situation is always 73 in<sup>3</sup>.

The corresponding can diameters are approximately 4.8 in., 4.3 in., 3.9 in., and 3.6 in.

Н	$d = 2\sqrt{\frac{V}{\pi H}}$
4	$d = 2\sqrt{\frac{73}{\pi(4)}} \approx 4.8$
5	$d = 2\sqrt{\frac{73}{\pi(5)}} \approx 4.3$
6	$d = 2\sqrt{\frac{73}{\pi(6)}} \approx 3.9$
7	$d=2\sqrt{\frac{73}{\pi(7)}}\approx 3.6$

#### **EXERCISES**



In Exercises 1–6, solve the formula for the given variable. These formulas should be familiar from geometry.

**1.** 
$$A = bh$$
 for  $h$ 

**2.** 
$$P = 2b + 2h$$
 for  $b$ 

3. 
$$V = \frac{1}{3} \pi r^2 H$$
 for  $r$ 

**4.** 
$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2$$
 for  $b$ 

**5.** 
$$SA = \frac{1}{2}P(l + a)$$
 for  $a$ 

**6.** 
$$m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$$
 for  $y_2$ 

In Exercises 7–9, solve the formula for the given variable. These formulas may be familiar from science. Can you identify what each original formula is used for?

7. 
$$d = vt$$
 for  $v$ 

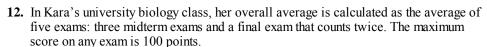
**8.** 
$$C = \frac{5}{9}(F - 32)$$
 for  $F$ 

9. 
$$T = 2\sqrt{\frac{L}{R}}$$
 for L

- **10.** In the Exploration Euler's Formula for Polyhedrons, you discovered a formula that relates the number of vertices (V), edges (E), and faces (F) of a polyhedron. One version of Euler's formula is F = E V + 2.
  - **a.** Solve Euler's formula for V.
  - **b.** Use the formula for *V* to find the number of vertices that each polyhedron listed in the table must have.

	Pentahedron	Hexahedron	Octahedron	Decahedron	Dodecahedron
Number of faces					
Number of edges	8	10	12	16	20
Number of vertices					

- 11. A manufacturer of ice cream cones wants to field-test cones of different sizes that each require the same amount of dough to make. The manufacturer's standard cone uses a surface area of about 114 cm<sup>2</sup> of dough.
  - **a.** Recall that the lateral surface area of a right cone is  $SA = \pi rl$ , where r is the radius of the base and l is the slant height. Find the cone radii that correspond to slant heights of 10 cm, 11 cm, 12 cm, and 13 cm.
  - **b.** Notice that the radius, height, and slant height form a right triangle, so  $r^2 + H^2 = l^2$ . Use your results from part a to find the height of each cone.
  - c. Calculate the volume of each cone to the nearest cubic centimeter.
  - d. As a consumer, which cone do you think you would prefer? Explain.
  - **e.** If you were the owner of an ice cream parlor, which cone do you think you would prefer? Explain.



- **a.** Let  $m_1$ ,  $m_2$ , and  $m_3$  represent scores on the three midterm exams, and let f represent the score on the final exam. Write a formula for Kara's overall average, A.
- **b.** Kara has already scored a 75, 80, and 83 on the three midterm exams. Find the score she must earn on the final exam to have an overall average of 60, 70, 80, or 90.



## Exploration

# Sherlock Holmes and Forms of Valid Reasoning





"That's logical!" You've probably heard that expression many times. What do we mean when we say someone is thinking logically? One dictionary defines *logical* as "capable of reasoning or using reason in an orderly fashion that brings out fundamental points."

"Prove it!" That's another expression you've probably heard many times. It is an expression that is used by someone concerned with logical thinking. In daily life, proving something often means you can present some facts to support a point.

The fictional character Sherlock Holmes, created by Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, was known as the master of deductive reasoning. The reasoning about his sidekick Watson in the examples and exercises below is adapted from a Sherlock Holmes story *The Adventure of the Dancing Men*.

When you apply deductive reasoning, you are "being logical" like detective Sherlock Holmes. The statements you take as true are called premises, and the statements that follow from them are conclusions.

When you translate a deductive argument into symbolic form, you use capital letters to stand for simple statements. When you write "If *P* then *Q*," you are writing a **conditional statement**. Here are two examples.



English argument	Symbolic translation
If Watson has chalk between his fingers, then he has been playing billiards. Watson has chalk between his fingers. Therefore Watson has been playing billiards.	P: Watson has chalk between his fingers. Q: Watson has been playing billiards. If P then Q. P ∴ Q
If \triangle ABC is isosceles, then the base angles are congruent. Triangle ABC is isosceles. Therefore its base angles are congruent.	P: Triangle ABC is isosceles. Q: Triangle ABC's base angles are congruent. If P then Q. P ∴ Q

The symbol  $\dot{}$  means "therefore." So you can read the last two lines "P,  $\dot{}$ . Q" as "P, therefore Q" or "P is true, so Q is true."

Both of these examples illustrate one of the well-accepted forms of valid reasoning. According to *Modus Ponens* (MP), if you accept "if P then Q" as true and you accept P as true, then you must logically accept Q as true.



In geometry—as in daily life—we often encounter "not" in a statement. "Not P" is the **negation** of statement P. If P is the statement "It is raining," then "not P," symbolized P, is the statement "It is not raining" or "It is not the case that it is raining." To remove negation from a statement, you remove the not. The negation of the statement "It is not raining" is "It is raining." You can also negate a "not" by adding yet another "not." So you can also negate the statement "It is not raining" by saying "It is not the case that it is not raining." This property is called **double negation.** 

According to *Modus Tollens* (MT), if you accept "if P then Q" as true and you accept  $\neg Q$  as true, then you must logically accept  $\neg P$  as true. Here are two examples.

English argument	Symbolic translation	
If Watson wished to invest money with Thurston, then he would have had his checkbook with him. Watson did not have his checkbook with him. Therefore Watson did not wish to invest money with Thurston.	<ul> <li>P: Watson wished to invest money with Thurston.</li> <li>Q: Watson had his checkbook with him. If P then Q.</li> <li>Q.</li> <li< td=""></li<></ul>	
If $\overline{AC}$ is the longest side in $\triangle ABC$ , then $\angle B$ is the largest angle in $\triangle ABC$ . $\angle B$ is not the largest angle in $\triangle ABC$ . Therefore $\overline{AC}$ is not the longest side in $\triangle ABC$ .	P: $\overline{AC}$ is the longest side in $\triangle ABC$ . Q: $\angle B$ is the largest angle in $\triangle ABC$ . If P then Q. $\sim Q$ $\therefore \sim P$	

## Activity

#### It's Elementary!

In this activity you'll apply what you have learned about *Modus Ponens* (MP) and *Modus Tollens* (MT). You'll also get practice using the symbols of logic such as P and P as statements and P for "so" or "therefore." To shorten your work even further, you can symbolize the conditional "If P then Q" as  $P \rightarrow Q$ . Then *Modus Ponens* and *Modus Tollens* written symbolically look like this:

Modus Ponens	Modus Tollens			
$P \rightarrow Q$	$R \rightarrow S$			
P	$\sim S$			
$\mathcal{L}Q$	∴. ~ <i>R</i>			

Use logic symbols to translate parts a-e. Tell whether *Modus Ponens* or *Modus* Step 1 *Tollens* is used to make the reasoning valid.

- **a.** If Watson was playing billiards, then he was playing with Thurston. Watson was playing billiards. Therefore Watson was playing with Thurston.
- **b.** Every cheerleader at Washington High School is in the 11th grade. Mark is a cheerleader at Washington High School. Therefore Mark is in the 11th grade.
- c. If Carolyn studies, then she does well on tests. Carolyn did not do well on her tests, so she must not have studied.
- **d.** If  $\overline{ED}$  is a midsegment in  $\triangle ABC$ , then  $\overline{ED}$  is parallel to a side of  $\triangle ABC$ .  $\overline{ED}$  is a midsegment in  $\triangle ABC$ . Therefore  $\overline{ED}$  is parallel to a side of  $\triangle ABC$ .
- **e.** If  $\overline{ED}$  is a midsegment in  $\triangle ABC$ , then  $\overline{ED}$  is parallel to a side of  $\triangle ABC$ .  $\overline{ED}$  is not parallel to a side of  $\triangle ABC$ . Therefore  $\overline{ED}$  is a not a midsegment in  $\triangle ABC$ .

Use logic symbols to translate parts a-e. If the two premises fit the valid Step 2 reasoning pattern of *Modus Ponens* or *Modus Tollens*, state the conclusion symbolically and translate it into English. Tell whether Modus Ponens or Modus Tollens is used to make the reasoning valid. Otherwise write "no valid conclusion."

- a. If Aurora passes her Spanish test, then she will graduate. Aurora passes the test.
- **b.** The diagonals of ABCD are not congruent. If ABCD is a rectangle, then its diagonals are congruent.
- c. If yesterday was Thursday, then there is no school tomorrow. There is no school tomorrow.
- **d.** If you don't use Shining Smile toothpaste, then you won't be successful. You do not use Shining Smile toothpaste.
- e. If squiggles are flitz, then ruggles are bodrum. Ruggles are not bodrum.

Identify each symbolic argument as *Modus Ponens* or *Modus Tollens*. If the argument is not valid, write "no valid conclusion."

**a.** 
$$P \rightarrow S$$
 **b.**  $\sim T \rightarrow P$   $\sim T$   $\therefore P$ 

c. 
$$R \rightarrow \sim Q$$

$$Q$$

$$\therefore \sim R$$

$$\mathbf{d.} \ Q \to S$$

$$S$$

$$\therefore \sim Q$$

$$\mathbf{f.} \sim R \longrightarrow S$$

$$\sim S$$

$$\therefore R$$

$$\mathbf{g.} \stackrel{\sim}{\sim} P \stackrel{\rightarrow}{\rightarrow} (R \stackrel{\rightarrow}{\rightarrow} Q)$$
$$\stackrel{\sim}{\sim} (R \stackrel{\rightarrow}{\rightarrow} Q)$$

$$\mathbf{h.} (T \to \sim P) \to Q$$

$$\sim Q$$

$$\begin{array}{lll} \mathbf{g.} & \sim P \to (R \to Q) & \quad & \mathbf{h.} \ (T \to \sim P) \to Q & \quad & \mathbf{i.} \ P \to (\sim R \to P) \\ \sim P & \quad & \sim Q & \quad & (\sim R \to P) \\ \therefore \ (R \to Q) & \quad & \therefore \ \sim (T \to \sim P) & \quad & \therefore \ P \end{array}$$



In this chapter you discovered a number of formulas for finding volumes. It's as important to remember how you discovered these formulas as it is to remember the formulas themselves. For example, if you recall pouring the contents of a cone into a cylinder with the same base and height, you may recall that the volume of the cone is one-third the volume of the cylinder. Making connections will help too. Recall that prisms and cylinders share the same volume formula because their shapes—two congruent bases connected by lateral faces—are alike.



You should also be able to find the surface area of a sphere. The formula for the surface area of a sphere was intentionally not included in Chapter 8, where you first learned about surface area. Look back at the investigations in Lesson 8.7 and explain why the surface area formula requires that you know volume.



As you have seen, volume formulas can be applied to many practical problems. Volume also has many extensions such as calculating displacement and density.



#### **EXERCISES**

- **1.** How are a prism and a cylinder alike?
- **2.** What does a cone have in common with a pyramid?

For Exercises 3–8, find the volume of each solid. Each quadrilateral is a rectangle. All solids are right (not oblique). All measurements are in centimeters.

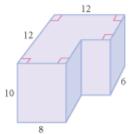
3.



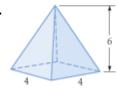
4.



5.



6.



7.

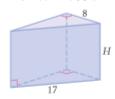


8.

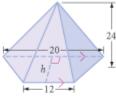


For Exercises 9–12, calculate each unknown length given the volume of the solid. All measurements are in centimeters.

**9.** Find  $H.V = 768 \text{ cm}^3$ 



**10.** Find  $h.V = 896 \text{ cm}^3$ 



10. Find  $n.v = 896 \, \text{cm}$ 



**11.** Find  $r.V = 1728 \text{ cm}^3$ 



**12.** Find  $r.V = 256r \text{ cm}^3$ 



- ice Lines ove
- 13. Find the volume of a rectangular prism whose dimensions are twice those of another rectangular prism that has a volume of 120 cm<sup>3</sup>.
- 14. Find the height of a cone with a volume of 138  $\pi$  cubic meters and a base area of  $46\pi$  square meters.
- **15.** Find the volume of a regular hexagonal prism that has a cylinder drilled from its center. Each side of the hexagonal base measures 8 cm. The height of the prism is 16 cm. The cylinder has a radius of 6 cm. Express your answer to the nearest cubic centimeter.
- **16.** Two rectangular prisms have equal heights but unequal bases. Each dimension of the smaller solid's base is half each dimension of the larger solid's base. The volume of the larger solid is how many times as great as the volume of the smaller solid?
- 17. The "extra large" popcorn container is a right rectangular prism with dimensions 3 in. by 3 in. by 6 in. The "jumbo" is a cone with height 12 in. and diameter 8 in. The "colossal" is a right cylinder with diameter 10 in. and height 10 in.
  - **a.** Find the volume of all three containers.
  - **b.** The volume of the "colossal" is approximately how many times as great as that of the "extra large"?
- **18.** Two solid cylinders are made of the same material. Cylinder A is six times as tall as cylinder B, but the diameter of cylinder B is four times the diameter of cylinder A. Which cylinder weighs more? How many times as much?



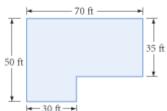




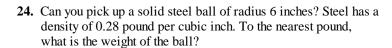


LUB by B. Grace. Reprinted with speci

- **19.** *Application* Rosa Avila is a plumbing contractor. She needs to deliver 200 lengths of steel pipe to a construction site. Each cylindrical steel pipe is 160 cm long, has an outer diameter of 6 cm, and has an inner diameter of 5 cm. Rosa needs to know whether her quarter-tonne truck can handle the weight of the pipes. To the nearest kilogram, what is the mass of these 200 pipes? How many loads will Rosa have to transport to deliver the 200 lengths of steel pipe? (Steel has a density of about 7.7 g/cm<sup>3</sup>. One tonne equals 1000 kg.)
- **20.** A ball is placed snugly into the smallest possible box that will completely contain the ball. What percentage of the box is filled by the ball?
- **21.** *Application* The blueprint for a cement slab floor is shown at right. How many cubic yards of cement are needed for ten identical floors that are each 4 inches thick?



- **22.** *Application* A prep chef has just made two dozen meatballs. Each meatball has a 2-inch diameter. Right now, before the meatballs are added, the sauce is 2 inches from the top of the 14-inch-diameter pot. Will the sauce spill over when the chef adds the meatballs to the pot?
- 23. To solve a crime, Betty Holmes, who claims to be Sherlock's distant cousin, and her friend Professor Hilton Gardens must determine the density of a metal art deco statue with mass 5560 g. She places it into a graduated glass prism filled with water and finds that the level rises 4 cm. Each edge of the glass prism's regular hexagonal base measures 5 cm. Professor Gardens calculates the statue's volume, then its density. Next, Betty Holmes checks the density table (see page 551) to determine if the statue is platinum. If so, it is the missing piece from her client's collection and Inspector Clouseau is the thief. If not, then the Baron is guilty of fraud. What is the statue made of?



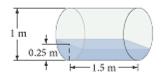
- **25.** To the nearest pound, what is the weight of a hollow steel ball with an outer diameter of 14; inches and a thickness of 2 inches?
- **26.** A hollow steel ball has a diameter of 14 inches and weighs 327.36 pounds. Find the thickness of the ball.



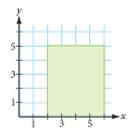


574 CHAPTER 10 Volume © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

27. A water barrel that is 1 m in diameter and 1.5 m long is partially filled. By tapping on its sides, you estimate that the water is 0.25 m deep at the deepest point. What is the volume of the water in cubic meters?

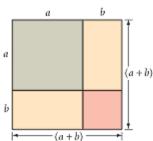


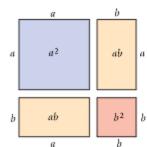
**28.** Find the volume of the solid formed by rotating the shaded figure about the *y*-axis.



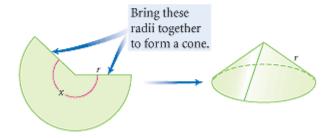
### TAKE ANOTHER LOOK

**1.** You may be familiar with the area model of the expression  $(a + b)^2$ , shown below. Draw or build a volume model of the expression  $(a + b)^3$ . How many distinct pieces does your model have? What's the volume of each type of piece? Use your model to write the expression  $(a + b)^3$  in expanded form.

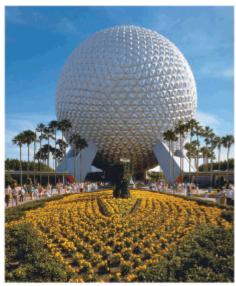




- 2. Use algebra to show that if you double all three dimensions of a prism, a cylinder, a pyramid, or a cone, the volume is increased eightfold, but the surface area is increased only four times.
- **3.** Any sector of a circle can be rolled into a cone. Find a way to calculate the volume of a cone given the radius and central angle of the sector.



- **4.** Build a model of three pyramids with equal volumes that you can assemble into a prism. It's easier to start with the prism and then separate it into the pyramids.
- 5. Derive the Sphere Volume Conjecture by using a pair of hollow shapes different from those you used in the Investigation The Formula for the Volume of a Sphere. Or use two solids made of the same material and compare weights. Explain what you did and how it demonstrates the conjecture.
- 6. Spaceship Earth, located at the Epcot center in Orlando, Florida, is made of polygonal regions arranged in little pyramids. The building appears spherical, but the surface is not smooth. If a perfectly smooth sphere had the same volume as Spaceship Earth, would it have the same surface area? If not, which would be greater, the surface area of the smooth sphere or of the bumpy sphere? Explain.



Spaceship Earth, the Epcot center's signature structure, opened in 1982 in Walt Disney World. It features a ride that chronicles the history of communication technology.

## Assessing What You've Learned



**UPDATE YOUR PORTFOLIO** Choose a project, a Take Another Look activity, or one of the more challenging problems or puzzles you did in this chapter to add to your portfolio.



WRITE IN YOUR JOURNAL Describe your own problem-solving approach. Are there certain steps you follow when you solve a challenging problem? What are some of your most successful problem-solving strategies?



**ORGANIZE YOUR NOTEBOOK** Review your notebook to be sure it's complete and well organized. Be sure you have all the conjectures in your conjecture list. Write a one-page summary of Chapter 10.



**PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENT** While a classmate, friend, family member, or teacher observes, demonstrate how to derive one or more of the volume formulas. Explain what you're doing at each step.



**WRITE TEST ITEMS** Work with classmates to write test items for this chapter. Include simple exercises and complex application problems. Try to demonstrate more than one approach in your solutions.



**GIVE A PRESENTATION** Give a presentation about one or more of the volume conjectures. Use posters, models, or visual aids to support your presentation.

576 CHAPTER 10 Volume © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

**CHAPTER** 

11

## **Similarity**



Nobody can draw a line that is not a boundary line, every line separates a unity into a multiplicity. In addition, every closed contour no matter what its shape, pure circle or whimsical splash accidental in form, evokes the sensation of "inside" and "outside," followed quickly by the suggestion of "nearby" and "far off," of object and background.

M. C. ESCHER

Path of Life I, M. C. Escher, 1958 ©2002 Cordon Art B.V.–Baarn–Holland. All rights reserved.

#### **OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will

- review ratio and proportion
- define similar polygons and solids
- discover shortcuts for similar triangles
- learn about area and volume relationships in similar polygons and solids
- use the definition of similarity to solve problems



## **Proportion and Reasoning**

Working with similar geometric figures involves ratios and proportions. A **ratio** is an expression that compares two quantities by division. You can write the ratio of quantity *a* to quantity *b* in these three ways:

$$\frac{a}{b}$$
  $a \text{ to } b$   $a:b$ 

This book will write ratios in fraction form. As with fractions, you can multiply or divide both parts of a ratio by the same number to get an equivalent ratio.

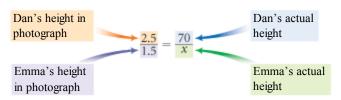
A **proportion** is a statement of equality between two ratios. The equality  $\frac{6}{18} = \frac{1}{3}$  is an example of a proportion. Proportions are useful for solving problems involving comparisons.

#### **EXAMPLE A**

In a photograph, Dan is 2.5 inches tall and his sister Emma is 1.5 inches tall. Dan's actual height is 70 inches. What is Emma's actual height?

#### Solution

The ratio of Dan's height to Emma's height is the same in real life as it is in the photo. Let *x* represent Emma's height. Set up a proportion.



Find Emma's height by solving for x.

$$\frac{2.5}{1.5} = \frac{70}{x}$$
Original proportion.
$$\frac{2.5}{1.5}x = 70$$
Multiply both sides by x.
$$2.5x = 105$$
Multiply both sides by 1.5.
$$x = 42$$
Divide both sides by 2.5.

Emma is 42 inches tall.

You could also have solved this proportion by inverting both ratios so that x is in the numerator, and then multiplying both sides by 70. Inverting both ratios is the same as comparing Emma's height to Dan's instead of Dan's to Emma's.

There are still other ways to use proportional reasoning to solve Example A. For instance, Dan is actually  $\frac{70}{2.5}$ , or 28 times as tall as he is in the photo, so Emma's height must be  $28 \cdot 1.5$ , or 42 inches. You could also have solved the proportion  $\frac{70}{2.5} = \frac{x}{1.5}$ , because the ratio of Dan's actual height to his height in the photo is equal to the ratio of Emma's actual height to her height in the photo.

Some proportions require more algebra to solve.

**EXAMPLE B** Solve 
$$\frac{3x-13}{x+40} = \frac{23}{10}$$
.

Solution

The least common denominator is 10(x + 40).

$$10(x + 40) \cdot \frac{3x - 13}{x + 40} = 10(x + 40) \cdot \frac{23}{10}$$

Multiply both sides by the least common denominator.

$$10(3x - 13) = 23(x + 40)$$

Simplify each side by dividing to "clear" the fractions.

$$30x - 130 = 23x + 920$$

Distribute on the left side and on the right side of the equation.

$$7x = 1050$$

Subtract 23x from both sides and add 130 to both sides.

$$x = 150$$

Divide both sides by 7.

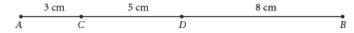


#### **EXERCISES**

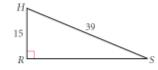
1. Look at the rectangle at right. Find the ratio of the shaded area to the area of the whole figure. Find the ratio of the shaded area to the unshaded area.



**2.** Use the figure below to find these ratios:  $\frac{AC}{CD}$ ,  $\frac{CD}{BD}$ , and  $\frac{BD}{BC}$ .



**3.** Consider these right triangles.





- **a.** Find the ratio of the perimeter of  $\triangle RSH$  to the perimeter of  $\triangle MFL$ .
- **b.** Find the ratio of the area of  $\triangle RSH$  to the area of  $\triangle MFL$ .

In Exercises 4–12, solve the proportion.

**4.** 
$$\frac{7}{21} = \frac{a}{18}$$

5. 
$$\frac{10}{b} = \frac{15}{24}$$

6. 
$$\frac{20}{13} = \frac{60}{6}$$

7. 
$$\frac{4}{5} = \frac{x}{7}$$

**8.** 
$$\frac{2}{y} = \frac{y}{32}$$

**9.** 
$$\frac{14}{10} = \frac{x+9}{15}$$

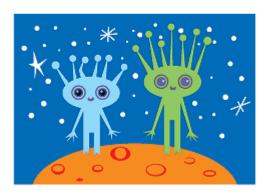
**10.** 
$$\frac{10}{10+z} = \frac{35}{56}$$

11. 
$$\frac{d}{5} = \frac{d+3}{20}$$

12. 
$$\frac{y-1}{2y+3} = \frac{4}{13}$$

In Exercises 13–16, use a proportion to solve the problem.

- 13. Application A car travels 106 miles on 4 gallons of gas. How far can it go on a full tank of 12 gallons?
- **14.** Application Ernie is a baseball pitcher. He gave up 34 runs in 152 innings last season. What is Ernie's earned run average—the number of runs he would give up in 9 innings? Give your answer to the nearest hundredth of a unit.
- **15.** Application The floor plan of a house is drawn to the scale of  $\frac{1}{4}$  in. = 1 ft. The master bedroom measures 3 in. by  $3\frac{3}{4}$  in. on the blueprints. What is the actual size of the room?
- **16.** Altor and Zenor are ambassadors from Titan, the largest moon of Saturn. The sum of the lengths of any Titan's antennae is a direct measure of that Titan's age. Altor has antennae with lengths 8 cm, 10 cm, 13 cm, 16 cm, 14 cm, and 12 cm. Zenor is 130 years old, and her seven antennae have an average length of 17 cm. How old is Altor?



17. If  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ , which of these statements are also true? Assume that a, b, c, and d are all nonzero values. For each proportion, use algebra to show it is true or give a counterexample to prove it is false.

**a.** 
$$ad = bc$$

**b.** 
$$ac = bd$$

c. 
$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{d}$$

**d.** 
$$\frac{b}{a} = \frac{d}{c}$$

e. 
$$\frac{a}{d} = \frac{c}{b}$$

**c.** 
$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{d}$$
  
**f.**  $\frac{d}{b} = \frac{c}{a}$ 

**18.** The sequence 6, 15, 24, 33, 42, . . . is an example of an arithmetic sequence—each term is generated by adding a constant, in this case 9, to the previous term. The sequence 6, 12, 24, 48, 96, . . . is an example of a **geometric sequence**—each term is generated by multiplying the previous term by a constant, in this case 2. Find the missing terms assuming each pattern is an arithmetic sequence, and then find the missing terms assuming each pattern is a geometric sequence.

- 19. Consider the pattern  $10, x, 40, \dots$ 
  - **a.** If the pattern is an arithmetic sequence, the value of x is called the arithmetic mean of 10 and 40. Use your algebra skills to explain how to calculate the arithmetic mean of any two numbers.
  - **b.** If the pattern is a geometric sequence, the positive value of x is called the **geometric mean** of 10 and 40. Use your algebra skills to explain how to calculate the geometric mean of any two positive numbers.
  - c. For any two positive numbers, the ratio of the smaller number to their geometric mean is equal to the ratio of the geometric mean to the larger number. Find the formula for the geometric mean of a and b by solving the proportion  $\frac{a}{c} = \frac{c}{b}$  for c. Are there any values for which this formula isn't true?
  - **d.** Use this formula to find the geometric mean of 2 and 50, and of 4 and 36.



Life is change. Growth is optional. Choose wisely. KAREN KAISER CLARK

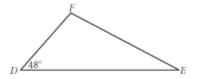
## Similar Triangles

In Lesson 11.1, you concluded that you must know about both the angles and the sides of two quadrilaterals in order to make a valid conclusion about their similarity.

However, triangles are unique. Recall from Chapter 4 that you found four shortcuts for triangle congruence: SSS, SAS, ASA, and SAA. Are there shortcuts for triangle similarity as well? Let's first look for shortcuts using only angles.

The figures below illustrate that you cannot conclude that two triangles are similar given that only one set of corresponding angles are congruent.





 $\angle A \cong \angle D$ , but  $\triangle ABC$  is not similar to  $\triangle DEF$  or to  $\triangle DFE$ .

How about two sets of congruent angles?



## Investigation 1

## Is AA a Similarity Shortcut?

#### You will need

- a compass
- a ruler

If two angles of one triangle are congruent to two angles of another triangle, must the two triangles be similar?

- Step 1
- Draw any triangle ABC.
- Step 2
- Construct a second triangle, *DEF*, with  $\angle D \cong \angle A$  and  $\angle E \cong \angle B$ . What will be true about  $\angle C$  and  $\angle F$ ? Why?
- Step 3
- Carefully measure the lengths of the sides of both triangles. Compare the ratios of the corresponding sides. Is  $\frac{AB}{DF} \approx \frac{AC}{DF} \approx \frac{BC}{FF}$ ?
- Step 4
- Compare your results with the results of others near you. You should be ready to state a conjecture.

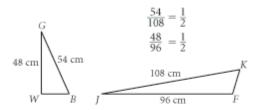
#### **AA Similarity Conjecture**

C-91

If <u>1</u> angles of one triangle are congruent to <u>1</u> angles of another triangle, then  $\underline{?}$ .

As you may have guessed from Step 2 of the investigation, there is no need to investigate the AAA, ASA, or SAA Similarity Conjectures. Thanks to the Triangle Sum Conjecture, or more specifically the Third Angle Conjecture, the AA Similarity Conjecture is all you need.

Now let's look for shortcuts for similarity that use only sides. The figures below illustrate that you cannot conclude that two triangles are similar given that two sets of corresponding sides are proportional.



 $\frac{GB}{IK} = \frac{GW}{IF}$ , but  $\triangle GWB$  is not similar to  $\triangle JFK$ .

How about all three sets of corresponding sides?



### Investigation 2

## Is SSS a Similarity Shortcut?

You will need

- a compass
- a straightedge
- a protractor

If three sides of one triangle are proportional to the three sides of another triangle, must the two triangles be similar?

Draw any triangle *ABC*. Then construct a second triangle, *DEF*, whose side lengths are a multiple of the original triangle. (Your second triangle can be larger or smaller.)

Compare the corresponding angles of the two triangles. Compare your results with the results of others near you and state a conjecture.

#### **SSS Similarity Conjecture**

C-92

If the three sides of one triangle are proportional to the three sides of another triangle, then the two triangles are ?

## Career CONNECTION

Similarity plays an important part in the design of cars, trucks, and airplanes, which is done with small-scale drawings and models.

This model airplane is about to be tested in a wind tunnel.



So SSS, AAA, ASA, and SAA are shortcuts for triangle similarity. That leaves SAS and SSA as possible shortcuts to consider.



## **Investigation 3**

## Is SAS a Similarity Shortcut?

#### You will need

- a compass
- a protractor
- a ruler

Is SAS a shortcut for similarity? Try to construct two different triangles that are not similar but have two pairs of sides proportional and the pair of included angles equal in measure.

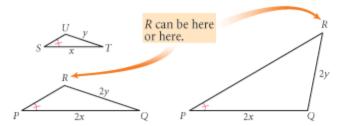
Compare the measures of corresponding sides and corresponding angles. Share your results with others near you and state a conjecture.

#### **SAS Similarity Conjecture**

C-93

If two sides of one triangle are proportional to two sides of another triangle and  $\frac{1}{2}$ , then the  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

One question remains: Is SSA a shortcut for similarity? Recall from Chapter 4 that SSA did not work for congruence because you could create two different triangles. Those two different triangles were neither congruent nor similar. So, no, SSA is not a shortcut for similarity.





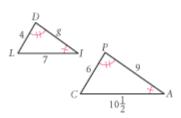
For an interactive version of all the investigations in this lesson, see the **Dynamic Geometry Exploration** Similar Triangles at www.keymath.com/DG . •

#### **E**XERCISES

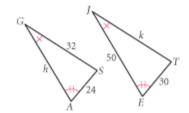


For Exercises 1–14, use your new conjectures. All measurements are in centimeters.

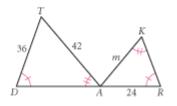




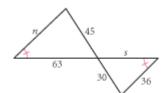
**2.** 
$$h = ?, k = ?$$



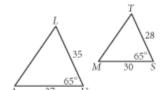
3. 
$$m = ?$$



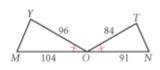
**4.** 
$$n = \frac{?}{?}$$
,  $s = \frac{?}{?}$ 



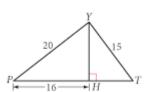
**5.** Is  $\triangle AUL \sim \triangle MST$ ? Explain why or why not.



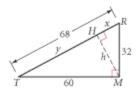
**6.** Is  $\triangle MOY \sim \triangle NOT$ ? Explain why or why not.



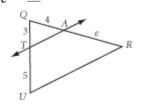
7. Is  $\triangle PHY \sim \triangle YHT$ ? Is  $\triangle PTY$  a right triangle? Explain why or why not.



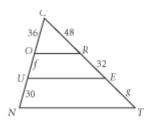
**8.** Why is  $\triangle TMR \sim \triangle THM \sim \triangle MHR$ ? Find x, y, and h.



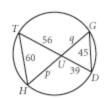
9.  $\overline{TA} \parallel \overline{UR}$ Is  $\angle QTA \cong \angle TUR$ ? Is  $\angle QAT \cong \angle ARU$ ? Why is  $\triangle QTA \sim \triangle QUR$ ?  $e = \frac{?}{}$ 



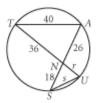
**10.**  $\overline{OR} \parallel \overline{UE} \parallel \overline{NT}$   $f = \underline{1}, g = \underline{1}$ 



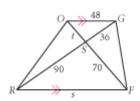
11. Is  $\angle THU \cong \angle GDU$ ? Is  $\angle HTU \cong \angle DGU$ ? p = ?, q = ?



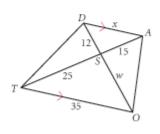
**12.** Why is  $\triangle SUN \sim \triangle TAN$ ? r = 1, s = 1



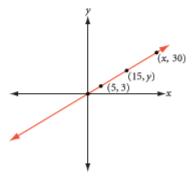
13. FROG is a trapezoid. Is  $\angle RGO \cong \angle FRG$ ? Is  $\angle GOF \cong \angle RFO$ ? Why is  $\triangle GOS \sim \triangle RFS$ ?  $t = \frac{?}{2}$ ,  $s = \frac{?}{2}$ 



**14.** TOAD is a trapezoid. w = 1, x = 1



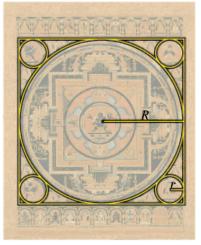
**15.** Find x and y.



#### Review

**16.** In the figure below right, find the radius, r, of one of the small circles in terms of the radius, R, of the large circle.





This Tibetan mandala is a complex design with a square inscribed within a circle and tangent circles inscribed within the corners of a larger circumscribed square.

17. Application Phoung volunteers at an SPCA that always houses 8 dogs. She notices that she uses seven 35-pound bags of dry dog food every two months. A new, larger SPCA facility that houses 20 dogs will open soon. Help Phoung estimate the amount of dry dog food that the facility should order every three months. Explain your reasoning.

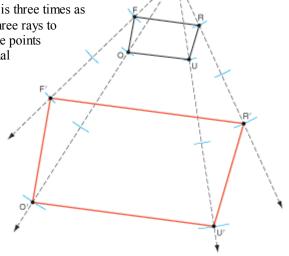


18. Application Ramon and Sabina are oceanography students studying the habitat of a Hawaiian fish called Humuhumunukunukuapua'a. They are going to use the capture-recapture method to determine the fish population. They first capture and tag 84 fish, which they release back into the ocean. After one week, Ramon and Sabina catch another 64. Only 12 have tags. Can you estimate the population of Humuhumunukunukuapua'a?

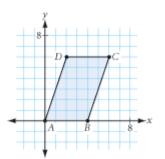


**19.** Mini-Investigation Construct quadrilateral FOUR, point P, and rays PF,  $\overline{PO}$ ,  $\overline{PU}$ , and  $\overline{PR}$ , as shown at right. With your compass, measure the distance PF. Use your compass to mark this distance two more times along  $\overline{PF}$ , and label point F' so that  $\overline{PF'}$  is three times as long as  $\overline{PF}$ . Repeat this process on the other three rays to mark points O', U', and R' so that all the image points are three times as far from point P as the original points. Connect the image points to form quadrilateral F'O'U'R', the image formed by dilating FOUR about point P by scale factor P.

Copy the original quadrilateral onto patty paper. Compare the corresponding angles of the two quadrilaterals. Are they congruent? Compare the corresponding sides with a compass or patty paper. What is the ratio of each side length of the dilated quadrilateral to its corresponding side length of the original quadrilateral? Is the dilated image similar to the original?



- **20.** Use the ordered pair rule,  $(x, y) \rightarrow (\frac{1}{2}x, \frac{1}{2}y)$ , to relocate the coordinates of the vertices of parallelogram *ABCD*. Call the new parallelogram *A'B'C'D'*. Is *A'B'C'D'* similar to *ABCD*? If they are similar, what is the ratio of the perimeter of *ABCD* to the perimeter of *A'B'C'D'*? What is the ratio of their areas?
- **21.** Points A(-9, 5), B(4, 13), and C(1, -7) are connected to form a triangle. Find the area of  $\triangle ABC$ .
- 22. The photo on page 584 shows a fragment from an ancient statue of the Roman Emperor Constantine. Use this photo to estimate how tall the entire statue was. List the measurements you need to make. List any assumptions you need to make. Explain your reasoning.



#### IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### Build a Two-Piece Puzzle

Construct two copies of Figure A, shown at right. Here's how to construct the figure.

- ► Construct a regular hexagon.
- ➤ Construct an equilateral triangle on two alternating edges, as shown.
- ➤ Construct a square on the edge between the two equilateral triangles, as shown.

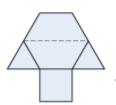




Figure A

Figure B

Cut out each copy and fold them into two identical solids, as shown in Figure B. Tape the edges. Now arrange your two solids to form a regular tetrahedron.





## Constructing a Dilation Design

n Lesson 11.1, you saw how to dilate a polygon on the coordinate plane about the original. On the previous page, you used a simple construction to dilate any polygon. Now you will use Sketchpad to construct a more elaborate design.

Take a closer look at *Path of Life I*, the M. C. Escher woodcut that begins this chapter. Notice that dilations transform the black fishlike creatures, shrinking them again and again as they approach the picture's center. The same is true for the white fish. (The black-and-white fish around the outside border are congruent to one another, but they're not similar to the other fish.) Also notice that rotations repeat the dilations in eight sectors. With Sketchpad, you can make a similar design.



In this sculpture, Tim Hawkinson has connected threads from many points on the actual chair to a single point at the end of the pole. Each thread holds a core sample of the chair that came from where the thread is attached, forming a dilated image.

## Activity

#### **Dilation Creations**

Step 1 Construct a circle with center point A and point B on the circle. Construct  $\overline{AB}$ .

Step 2 Use the Transform menu to mark point A as center, then rotate point B by an angle of 45°. Your new point is B'. Construct  $\overline{AB'}$ .

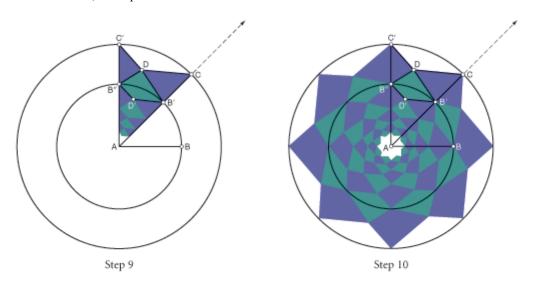
Step 3 Construct a larger circle with center point A and point C on  $\overline{AB'}$ . Hide  $\overline{AB'}$  and construct  $\overline{AC}$ .

Rotate  $\overline{AC}$ , point B', and point C by an angle Step 4 of 45°. You now have  $\overline{AC}'$ , point B", and point C'. Step 5 Construct  $C\overline{D}$  and  $\overline{DC}$ , where D is any point in the region between the circles and between B''C'and  $\overline{B'C}$ . Select, in order,  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{AC}$ . Step 6 **Choose Mark Segment Ratio** from the Transform menu. This marks a ratio of a shorter segment to a longer segment. Because this ratio is less than 1, dilating by this scale factor will shrink objects. Step 7 Select  $\overline{C'D}$ ,  $\overline{DC}$  and point D. Choose **Dilate** from the Transform menu and

dilate by the marked ratio. The dilated images are B''D',  $\overline{D'B'}$ , and D'.

Step 8 Construct three polygon interiors—two triangles and a quadrilateral.

Step 9 Select the three polygon interiors and dilate them by the marked ratio. Repeat this process two or three times.



Step 10 Select all the polygon interiors in the sector and rotate them by an angle of 45°. Repeat the rotation by 45° until you've gone all the way around the circle.

Now you have a design that has the same basic mathematical properties as Escher's Path of Life I.

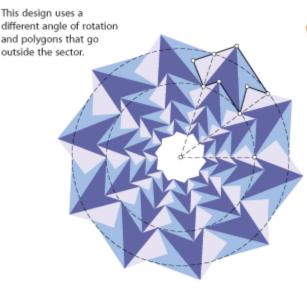
#### Step 11

Experiment with changing the design by moving different points. Answer these questions.

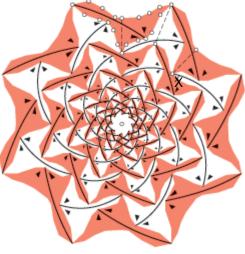
- **a.** What locations of point *D* result in both rotational and reflectional symmetry?
- **b.** Drag point *C* away from point *A*. What does this do to the numerical dilation ratio? What effect does that have on the geometric figure?
- **c.** Drag point *C* toward point *A*. What happens when the circle defined by point *C* becomes smaller than the circle defined by point *B*? Why?

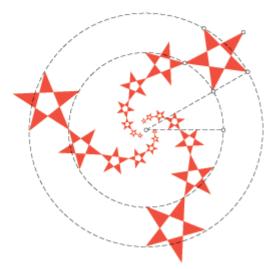
Experiment with other dilation-rotation designs of your own. Try different angles of rotation or different polygons. Here are some examples.

Mathematician Doris Schattschneider of Moravian College is an expert on M. C. Escher and the mathematics he explored. She made this sketch based on Path of Life I.



This design uses a two-step transformation, a dilation followed by a rotation, called a **spiral similarity**.







Never be afraid to sit awhile and think.

LORRAINE HANSBERRY

## **Indirect Measurement** with Similar Triangles

You can use similar triangles to calculate the height of tall objects that you can't reach. This is called **indirect measurement.** One method uses mirrors. Try it in the next investigation.



### **Investigation**

#### Mirror, Mirror

#### You will need

- metersticks
- masking tape or a soluble pen
- a mirror

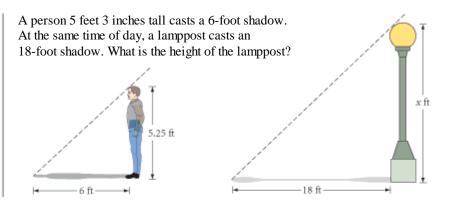
Choose a tall object with a height that would be difficult to measure directly, such as a football goalpost, a basketball hoop, a flagpole, or the height of your classroom.



- Step 1 Mark crosshairs on your mirror. Use tape or a soluble pen. Call the intersection point *X*. Place the mirror on the ground several meters from your object.
- An observer should move to a point *P* in line with the object and the mirror in order to see the reflection of an identifiable point *F* at the top of the object at point *X* on the mirror. Make a sketch of your setup, like this one.
- Step 3 Measure the distance PX and the distance from X to a point B at the base of the object directly below F. Measure the distance from P to the observer's eye level, E.
- Step 4 Think of  $\overline{FX}$  as a light ray that bounces back to the observer's eye along  $X\overline{E}$ . Why is  $\angle B \cong \angle P$ ? Name two similar triangles. Tell why they are similar.
- Step 5 Set up a proportion using corresponding sides of similar triangles. Use it to calculate *FB*, the approximate height of the tall object.
- Step 6 Write a summary of what you and your group did in this investigation. Discuss possible causes for error.

Another method of indirect measurement uses shadows.

#### **EXAMPLE**



#### Solution

You could also choose to set up a proportion using ratios of side lengths between similar triangles.

The light rays that create the shadows hit the ground at congruent angles. Assuming both the person and the lamppost are perpendicular to the ground, you have similar triangles by the AA Similarity Conjecture. Solve a proportion that relates corresponding lengths.

$$\frac{5.25}{6} = \frac{x}{18}$$
 Ratios of side lengths *within* similar triangles are equal.

$$18 \cdot \frac{5.25}{6} = x$$
 Multiply both sides by 18.

$$15.75 = x$$
 Simplify left side.

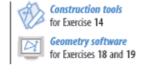
The height of the lamppost is 15 feet 9 inches.



#### EXERCISES



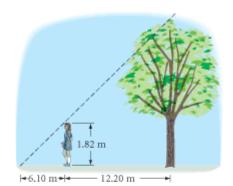
- 1. A flagpole 4 meters tall casts a 6-meter shadow. At the same time of day, a nearby building casts a 24-meter shadow. How tall is the building?
- 2. Five-foot-tall Melody casts an 84-inch shadow. How tall is her friend if, at the same time of day, his shadow is 1 foot shorter than hers?
- 3. A 26-ft rope from the top of a flagpole reaches to the end of the flagpole's 10-ft shadow. How tall is the nearby football goalpost if, at the same moment, it has a shadow of 12.5 ft? (h)
- **4.** Private eye Samantha Diamond places a mirror on the ground between herself and an apartment building and stands so that when she looks into the mirror, she sees into a window. The mirror's crosshairs are 1.22 meters from her feet and 7.32 meters from the base of the building. Sam's eye is 1.82 meters above the ground. How high is the window?



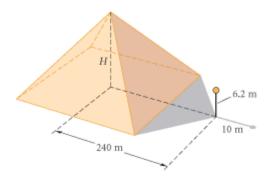
You will need



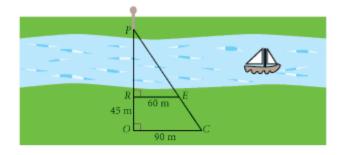
**5.** Application Juanita, who is 1.82 meters tall, wants to find the height of a tree in her backyard. From the tree's base, she walks 12.20 meters along the tree's shadow to a position where the end of her shadow exactly overlaps the end of the tree's shadow. She is now 6.10 meters from the end of the shadows. How tall is the tree?



**6.** While vacationing in Egypt, the Greek mathematician Thales calculated the height of the Great Pyramid. According to legend, Thales placed a pole at the tip of the pyramid's shadow and used similar triangles to calculate its height. This involved some estimating because he was unable to measure the distance from directly beneath the height of the pyramid to the tip of the shadow. From the diagram, explain his method. Calculate the height of the pyramid from the information given in the diagram.



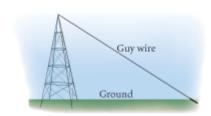
7. Calculate the distance across this river, PR, by sighting a pole, at point P, on the opposite bank. Points R and O are collinear with point P. Point C is chosen so that  $\overline{OC} \perp \overline{PO}$ . Lastly, point E is chosen so that P, E, and C are collinear and  $\overline{RE} \perp \overline{PO}$ . Also explain why  $\triangle PRE \sim \triangle POC$ .



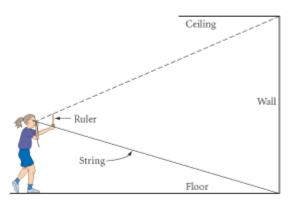
**8.** A pinhole camera is a simple device. Place unexposed film at one end of a shoe box, and make a pinhole at the opposite end. When light comes through the pinhole, an inverted image is produced on the film. Suppose you take a picture of a painting that is 30 cm wide by 45 cm high with a pinhole box camera that is 20 cm deep. How far from the painting should the pinhole be to make an image that is 2 cm wide by 3 cm high? Sketch a diagram of this situation.



**9.** Application A guy wire attached to a high tower needs to be replaced. The contractor does not know the height of the tower or the length of the wire. Find a method to measure the length of the wire indirectly.



10. Kristin has developed a new method for indirectly measuring the height of her classroom. Her method uses string and a ruler. She tacks a piece of string to the base of the wall and walks back from the wall holding the other end of the string to her eye with her right hand. She holds a 12-inch ruler parallel to the wall in her left hand and adjusts her distance to the wall until the bottom of the ruler is in line with the bottom edge of the wall and the top of the ruler is in line with the top edge of the wall. Now with two measurements, she is able to calculate

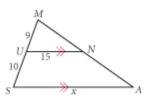


the height of the room. Explain her method. If the distance from her eye to the bottom of the ruler is 23 inches and the distance from her eye to the bottom of the wall is 276 inches, calculate the height of the room.

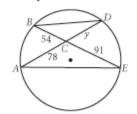
#### Review

For Exercises 11–13, first identify similar triangles and explain why they are similar. Then find the missing lengths.

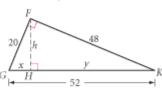
**11.** Find *x*. **(***b***)** 



**12.** Find y.



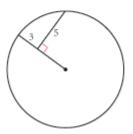
**13.** Find *x*, *y*, and *h*.



H

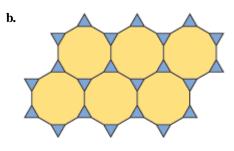
- **14.** Construction Draw an obtuse triangle.
  - **a.** Use a compass and straightedge to construct two altitudes.
  - **b.** Use a ruler to measure both altitudes and their corresponding bases.
  - **c.** Calculate the area using both altitude-base pairs. Compare your results.

**15.** Find the radius of the circle.

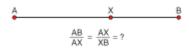


- **16.** *Developing Proof* Use a flowchart to prove the Parallelogram Opposite Sides Conjecture: The opposite sides of a parallelogram are congruent. Start by making a labeled diagram and drawing in one diagonal.
- 17. Give the vertex arrangement of each tessellation.

a.



**18.** Technology On a segment AB, point X is called the golden cut if  $\frac{AB}{AX} = \frac{AX}{XB}$ , where AX > XB. The golden ratio is the value of  $\frac{AB}{AX}$  and  $\frac{AX}{XB}$  when they are equal. Use geometry software to explore the location of the golden cut on any segment AB. What is the value of the golden ratio? Find a way to construct the golden cut.



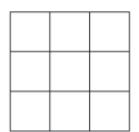
- **19.** *Technology* Imagine that a rod of a given length is attached at one end to a circular track and passes through a fixed pivot point. As one endpoint moves around the circular track, the other endpoint traces a curve.
  - a. Predict what type of curve will be traced.
  - b. Model this situation with geometry software. Describe the curve that is traced.
  - **c.** Experiment with changing the size of the circular track, the length of the rod, or the location of the pivot point. Describe your results.



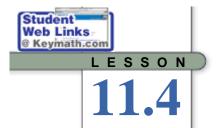
#### IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### TIC-TAC-NO!

Is it possible to shade six of the nine squares of a 3-by-3 grid so that no three of the shaded squares are in a straight line (row, column, or diagonal)?







Big doesn't necessarily mean better. Sunflowers aren't better than violets. EDNA FERBER

## **Corresponding Parts** of Similar Triangles

s there more to similar triangles than just proportional side lengths and congruent angles? For example, are there relationships between the lengths of corresponding altitudes, corresponding medians, or corresponding angle bisectors in similar triangles? Let's investigate.



## **Investigation 1**

## Corresponding Parts

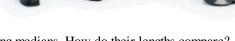
#### You will need

- a compass
- a straightedge

Use unlined paper for this investigation. Have each member of your group pick a different scale factor.

Step 1 Draw any triangle. Using your scale factor, construct a similar triangle of a different size.

Step 2 Construct a pair of corresponding altitudes and use your compass to compare their lengths. How do they compare? How does the comparison relate to the scale factor you used?



- Step 3 Construct a pair of corresponding medians. How do their lengths compare?
- Step 4 Construct a pair of corresponding angle bisectors. How do their lengths compare?
- Step 5 Compare your results with the results of others near you. You should be ready to make a conjecture.

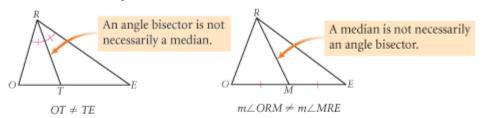


C-94

If two triangles are similar, then the lengths of the corresponding  $\frac{?}{?}$ ,  $\frac{?}{?}$ , and  $\frac{?}{?}$  are  $\frac{?}{?}$  to the lengths of the corresponding sides.

The discovery you made in this investigation may seem intuitive. The example at the end of this lesson will show you how you can prove one part of the conjecture. In the next two exercise sets, you will prove the other parts. Now we'll look at another proportional relationship involving an angle bisector of a triangle.

Recall when you first saw an angle bisector in a triangle. You may have thought that the bisector of an angle in a triangle divides the opposite side into two equal parts as well. A counterexample shows that this is not necessarily true. In  $\triangle ROE$ ,  $\overline{RT}$  bisects  $\angle R$ , but point T does not bisect  $\overline{OE}$ .



The angle bisector does, however, divide the opposite side in a particular way.



### Investigation 2

## **Opposite Side Ratios**

You will need In this investigation you'll discover

In this investigation you'll discover that there is a proportional relationship involving angle bisectors.

04--- 4

a compassa ruler

Step 1 | Draw any angle. Label it A.

Step 2 On one ray, locate point C so that AC is 6 cm. Use the same compass setting and locate point B on the other ray so that AB is 12 cm. Draw  $\overline{BC}$  to form  $\triangle ABC$ .

Step 3 Construct the bisector of  $\angle A$ . Locate point D where the bisector intersects side  $\overline{BC}$ 

Step 4 Measure and compare *CD* and *BD*.

Step 5 Calculate and compare the ratios  $\frac{CA}{BA}$  and  $\frac{CD}{BD}$ .

Step 6 Repeat Steps 1-5 with AC = 10 cm and AB = 15 cm.

Step 7 Compare your results with the results of others near you. State a conjecture.

#### Angle Bisector/Opposite Side Conjecture

C-95

12 cm

A bisector of an angle in a triangle divides the opposite side into two segments whose lengths are in the same ratio as  $\frac{1}{2}$ .



In this lesson you discovered proportional relationships within a triangle and between similar triangles. Do you think that proportional relationships exist between parts of other similar polygons? For example, what do you think might be true about the corresponding diagonals of similar quadrilaterals?

► To test your conjectures, see the **Dynamic Geometry Exploration** Similar Polygons at www.keymath.com/DG ...

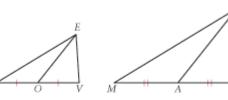
Now let's look at how you can use deductive reasoning to prove one part of the Proportional Parts Conjecture that you discovered through inductive reasoning earlier in this lesson.

#### **EXAMPLE**

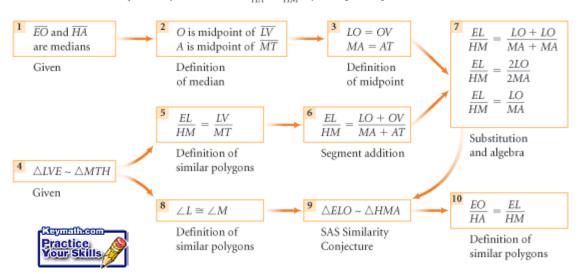
Prove that the lengths of the corresponding medians of similar triangles are proportional to the lengths of the corresponding sides.

#### Solution

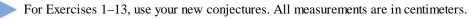
Consider similar triangles  $\triangle LVE$  and  $\triangle MTH$  with corresponding medians  $\overline{EO}$  and  $\overline{HA}$ . You need to show that the lengths of corresponding medians are proportional to the lengths of corresponding

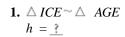


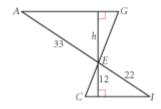
sides. For instance, you can show that  $\frac{EO}{HA} = \frac{EL}{HM}$ . Using the think backward reasoning strategy, you can see that similar triangles will help you prove that side lengths are proportional. If you accept the SAS Similarity Conjecture as true, you can show  $\frac{EO}{HA} = \frac{EL}{HM}$  by first proving that  $\triangle ELO \sim \triangle HMA$ .



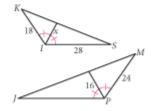
#### **EXERCISES**



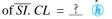


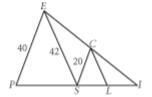


**2.** 
$$\triangle$$
 *SKI*  $\sim$   $\triangle$  *JMP*  $x = ?$ 

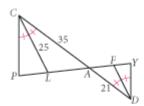


3.  $\triangle$  *PIE*~ $\triangle$  *SIC* Point *S* is the midpoint of  $\overline{PI}$ . Point *L* is the midpoint

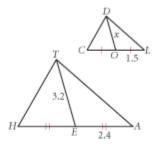




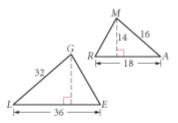
**4.**  $\triangle CAP \sim \triangle DAY$   $FD = \frac{?}{}$ 



5.  $\triangle HAT \sim \triangle CLD$ x = ?



**6.**  $\triangle ARM \sim \triangle LEG$ Area of  $\triangle ARM = 1$ Area of  $\triangle LEG = 1$ 

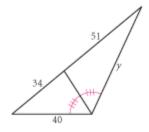


H

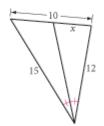
7.  $v = \frac{?}{}$ 



**8.** y = 1

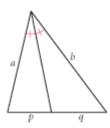


**9.** x = ?

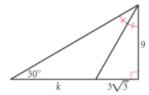


(h)

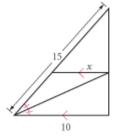
**10.**  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{?}{?} \cdot \frac{a}{p} = \frac{?}{?}$ 



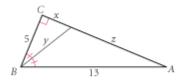
**11.** k = ?



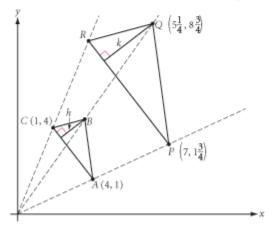
**12.** x = 1



**13.**  $x = \frac{1}{2}, y = \frac{1}{2}, z = \frac{1}{2}$ 



**14.** Triangle PQR is a dilated image of  $\triangle ABC$ . Find the coordinates of B and R. Find the ratio  $\frac{k}{h}$ .



- **15.** Aunt Florence has willed to her two nephews a plot of land in the shape of an isosceles right triangle. The land is to be divided into two unequal parts by bisecting one of the two congruent angles. What is the ratio of the greater area to the lesser area?
- **16. Developing Proof** Prove that corresponding angle bisectors of similar triangles are proportional to corresponding sides.



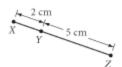
#### Review

- 17. Use algebra to show that if  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ , then  $\frac{a+b}{b} = \frac{c+d}{d}$ .
- **18.** A rectangle is divided into four rectangles, each similar to the original rectangle. What is the ratio of short side to long side in the rectangles?
- **19.** *Developing Proof* In Chapter 5, you discovered that when you construct the three midsegments in a triangle, they divide the triangle into four congruent triangles. Are the four triangles similar to the original? Explain why.



- **20.** A rectangle has sides a and b. For what values of a and b is another rectangle with sides 2a and  $\frac{b}{a}$ 
  - **a.** Congruent to the original?
- **b.** Equal in perimeter to the original?
- **c.** Equal in area to the original?
- **d.** Similar but not congruent to the original?
- **21.** Assume  $\frac{AB}{XY} = \frac{BC}{YZ}$ . Find AB and BC.





#### IMPROVING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS

#### Algebraic Magic Squares II

In this algebraic magic square, the sum of the entries in every row, column, and diagonal is the same. Find the value of *x*.

8 - x 15		14	11 - x	
12	x - 1	х	9	
8	x + 3	x + 4	5	
2x - 1	3	2	2x + 2	





All my life I've always wanted to be somebody. But I see now I should have been specific.

JANE WAGNER

## **Proportions with Area**

Suppose an artist uses 200 tiles to create a tessellation design that covers a rectangle with dimensions 2 ft by 3 ft. He is hired to cover a wall with dimensions 10 ft by 15 ft using the same design and tiles of the same size. Even though the wall is five times as long as the rectangle in each dimension, he finds that 1000 tiles cover only a small part of the wall. In this lesson you will discover why.





## Investigation 1

#### Area Ratios

You will need

graph paper

In this investigation you will find the relationship between areas of similar figures. Have each member of your group pick a different whole number scale factor.

Step 1

Draw a rectangle on graph paper. Calculate its area.

Step 2

Multiply each dimension of your rectangle by your scale factor and draw the enlarged similar rectangle. Calculate its area.

Step 3

What is the ratio of side lengths (larger to smaller) for your two rectangles? What is the ratio of their areas (larger to smaller)?

Step 4

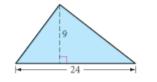
How many copies of the smaller rectangle would you need to fill the larger rectangle? Draw lines in your larger rectangle to show how you would place the copies to fill the area.

Step 5

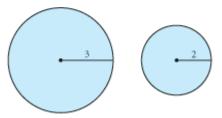
Find the areas of these two similar triangles. Write the ratio of the smaller area to the larger area as a fraction and reduce. Do the same with the side lengths. Compare these two ratios.

Step 6

Find the exact areas of these two circles in terms of  $\pi$ , not as approximate decimals. Write the ratio of the smaller area to the larger area as a fraction and reduce. Do the same with the radii. Compare these two ratios.







Step 7

Compare your results with those of others in your group and look for a pattern. This relationship between the ratio of corresponding sides (or radii) and the ratio of areas can be generalized to all similar polygons because all polygons can be divided into triangles. You should be ready to state a conjecture.

#### **Proportional Areas Conjecture**

C-96

If corresponding side lengths of two similar polygons or the radii of two circles compare in the ratio  $\frac{m}{n}$ , then their areas compare in the ratio  $\frac{2}{n}$ .

The reason behind the Proportional Areas Conjecture is that area is a two-dimensional measure. Notice in the diagram at right that the sides of the larger triangle are two times





those of the smaller triangle, yet the area of the larger triangle is four times that of the smaller triangle. Because the area of a triangle is related to the product of the base and height, when both dimensions are doubled, the area increases by a factor of four.



## Investigation 2

## **Surface Area Ratios**

#### You will need

- interlocking cubes
- isometric dot paper

In this investigation you will investigate whether the Proportional Areas Conjecture is also true for surface areas.

- Step 1
- Use cubes to construct a 3-by-2-by-1 rectangular prism. Calculate its surface area.
- Step 2
- Multiply each dimension by a scale factor of 2 and build the enlarged prism. Calculate its surface area.
- Step 3
- What is the ratio of the lengths of corresponding edges of the larger prism to the smaller prism? What is the ratio of their surface areas?
- Step 4
- Draw the solid at right on isometric dot paper. Calculate its surface area.
- Step 5
- Multiply each segment length by a scale factor of 4 and draw the resulting enlarged solid. Calculate its surface area.
- Step 6
- Calculate the ratio of lengths of corresponding edges and the ratio of surface areas of the two solids. Is the Proportional Areas Conjecture true for surface areas?

Let's look at an application of the Proportional Areas Conjecture.

**EXAMPLE** 

If you need 3 oz of shredded cheese to cover a medium 12 in. diameter pizza, how much shredded cheese would you need to cover a large 16 in. diameter pizza?

Solution

The ratio of the pizza diameters is  $\frac{16}{12}$ , or  $\frac{4}{3}$ . Therefore the ratio of the pizza areas is  $\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)^2$ , or  $\frac{16}{9}$ . Let x represent the amount of cheese needed for a large pizza and set up a proportion.

$$\frac{\text{area of large pizza}}{\text{area of small pizza}} = \frac{\text{amount of cheese for large pizza}}{\text{amount of cheese for small pizza}}$$

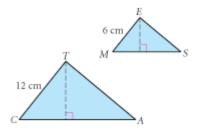
$$\frac{16}{9} = \frac{x}{3}$$

By solving for x, you find that a large pizza requires  $5\frac{1}{3}$  oz of shredded cheese.

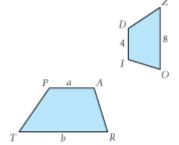


#### **E**XERCISES

1.  $\triangle CAT \sim \triangle MSE$ area of  $\triangle CAT = 72 \text{ cm}^2$ area of  $\triangle MSE = \frac{?}{!}$ 



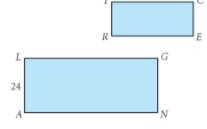
3.  $TRAP \sim ZOID$   $\frac{\text{area of } ZOID}{\text{area of } TRAP} = \frac{16}{25}$   $a = \frac{2}{5}, b = \frac{2}{5}$ 



2. RECT ~ ANGL area of RECT

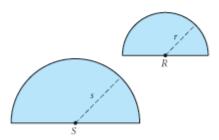
$$\frac{\text{area of } RECT}{\text{area of } ANGL} = \frac{9}{16}$$

$$TR = \frac{?}{}$$



**4.** semicircle  $R^-$  semicircle S

area of semicircle 
$$S=75\pi \text{ cm}^2$$
 area of semicircle  $R=\frac{?}{}$ 

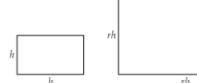


**5.** The ratio of the lengths of corresponding diagonals of two similar kites is  $\frac{1}{7}$ . What is the ratio of their areas?

- **6.** The ratio of the areas of two similar trapezoids is 1:9. What is the ratio of the lengths of their altitudes?
- 7. The ratio of the lengths of the edges of two cubes is  $\frac{m}{n}$ . What is the ratio of their surface areas?
- **8.** *Application* Annie works in a magazine's advertising department. A client has requested that his 5 cm-by-12 cm ad be enlarged: "Double the length and double the width, then send me the bill." The original ad cost \$1500. How much should Annie charge for the larger ad? Explain your reasoning.
- **9.** Solve the problem posed at the beginning of the lesson. An artist uses 200 tiles to create a tessellation design that covers a rectangle with dimensions 2 ft by 3 ft. He will cover a wall with dimensions 10 ft by 15 ft using the same design and tiles of the same size. How many tiles will he need to cover the entire wall?
- **10.** Assume that a small boy is similar in shape to his father. If the father is three times as tall as his son, what is the ratio of the surface area of the father's skin to that of his son's?
- **11.** Make four copies of the trapezoid at right. Arrange them into a similar but larger trapezoid. Sketch the final trapezoid and show how the smaller trapezoids fit inside it.

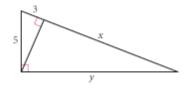


- 12. Consider a rectangle with base 2 cm and height 1 cm.
  - **a.** Imagine stretching the base by multiplying it by scale factor x, without changing the height. Make a table of the area of the rectangle for values of x from 1 to 6. Plot the points on a graph and write the function a(x) that gives the area as a function of x.
  - **b.** Now imagine stretching both the base *and* the height by multiplying them by scale factor x. As before, make a table of the new area of the rectangle for values of x from 1 to 6, plot the points, and write the function A(x) that gives the new area as a function of x.
  - **c.** How do the equations for a(x) and A(x) differ? How do their graphs differ?
- 13. Developing Proof In the diagram at right, the second rectangle is a dilation of the first rectangle by scale factor r. Given that the ratio of the corresponding sides of the similar rectangles is r, prove that the ratio of their areas is  $r^2$ .

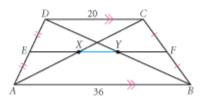


## Review

**14.**  $x = \frac{?}{}$ ,  $y = \frac{?}{}$ 



**15.**  $XY = \frac{?}{}$ 



- **16.** *Mini-Investigation* This investigation is in two parts. You will need to complete the conjecture in part a before moving on to part b.
  - **a.** The altitude to the hypotenuse has been constructed in each right triangle below. This construction creates two smaller right triangles within each original right triangle. Calculate the measures of the acute angles in each diagram.
    - **i.** a = 1, b = 1, c = 1
- **ii.** a = 1, b = 1, c = 1
- iii.  $a = \frac{?}{?}$ ,  $b = \frac{?}{?}$ ,  $c = \frac{?}{?}$



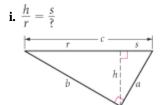




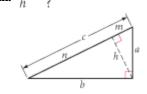
How do the smaller right triangles compare in each diagram? How do they compare to the original right triangle? You should be ready to state a conjecture.

**Conjecture:** The altitude to the hypotenuse of a right triangle divides the triangle into two right triangles that are <u>1</u> to each other and to the original <u>1</u>.

**b.** Complete each proportion for these right triangles.







Review the proportions you wrote. How are they alike? You should be ready to state a conjecture.

**Conjecture:** The altitude (length h) to the hypotenuse of a right triangle divides the hypotenuse into two segments (lengths p and q), such that  $\frac{p}{l} = \frac{1}{q}$ .

**c.** Solve for *h* in the conjecture from part b. The value for *h* is the geometric mean of *p* and *q*.



- **d.** Use the Pythagorean Theorem to solve for *x* and *y*, then show that these values support the conjecture in part b and the equation in part c.
- 17. Sara rents her goat, Munchie, as a lawn mower. Munchie is tied to a stake with a 10-m rope. Sara wants to find an efficient pattern for Munchie's stake positions so that all grass in a field 42 m by 42 m is mowed but overlap is minimized. Make a sketch showing all the stake positions needed.
- **18.** *Developing Proof* Prove that corresponding altitudes of similar triangles are proportional to corresponding sides.
- **19.** *Developing Proof* Find x and explain how you know.

- **20.** Find the area of a regular decagon with an apothem about 5.7 cm and a perimeter 37 cm.
- 21. Find the area of a triangle whose sides measure 13 feet, 13 feet, and 10 feet. 10 feet.
- **22.** True or false? Every section of a pyramid that is parallel to its base is also similar to the base.
- 23. Developing Proof What's wrong with this picture?





- **24.** Draw the orthographic views of the original solid in Investigation 2. Find the area of each orthographic view. How is the sum of these areas related to the surface area of the solid? Find the volume of the original solid and the volume of the enlarged solid. What is the ratio of their volumes?
- To further explore the effects of enlarging or reducing a solid on its surface area and volume, see the **Dynamic Geometry Exploration** Similar Solids at <a href="https://www.keymath.com/DG">www.keymath.com/DG</a>.





#### IN SEARCH OF THE PERFECT RECTANGLE

**A** square is a perfectly symmetric quadrilateral. Yet, people rarely make books, posters, or magazines that are square. Instead, most people seem to prefer rectangles. In fact, some people believe that a particular type of rectangle is more appealing because its proportions fit the golden ratio. You can learn more about the historical importance of the golden ratio by doing research with the links at <a href="https://www.keymath.com/DG">www.keymath.com/DG</a>.

Do people have a tendency to choose a particular length/width ratio when they design or build common objects? Find at least ten different rectangular objects in your classroom or home: books, postcards, desks, doors, and other everyday items. Measure the longer side and the shorter side of each one. Predict what a graph of your data will look like.

Now graph your data. Is there a pattern? Find the line of best fit. How well does it fit the data? What is the range of length/width ratios? What ratio do points on the line of best fit represent?

Your project should include

- A table and graph of your data.
- Your predictions and your analysis.
- ➤ A paragraph explaining your opinion about whether or not people have a tendency to choose a particular type of rectangle and why.



You can use Fathom to graph your data and find the line of best fit. Choose different types of graphs to get other insights into what your data mean.



It is easy to show that a hare could not be as large as a hippopotamus, or a whale as small as a herring. For every type of animal there is a most convenient size, and a large change in size inevitably carries with it a change of form. J.B.S. HALDANE

## **Proportions with Volume**

he statue below is a giant version of an Oscar, the Academy Awards statuette that is handed out each year for excellence in the motion-picture industry. Assume that this statue is similar to the actual Oscar, but six times as long in each dimension. If it costs \$250 to gold-plate the surface of the actual Oscar, how much would it cost to gold-plate the statue? As you learned in the last lesson, the surface area is not six times greater, but  $6^2$ , or 36 times greater, so the cost would be \$9,000!

How are their weights related? The actual Oscar weighs 8.5 pounds. If he statue were made of the same material as the actual Oscar, its weight would not be six times greater, or even 36 times greater. It would weigh 1836 pounds! In this lesson you will discover why.



Solids that have the same shape but not necessarily the same size are similar. All cubes are similar, but not all prisms are similar. All spheres are similar, but not all cylinders are similar. Two polyhedrons are similar if all their corresponding faces are similar and the lengths of their corresponding edges are proportional. Two right cylinders (or right cones) are similar if their radii and heights are proportional.

#### EXAMPLE A

Are these right rectangular prisms similar?



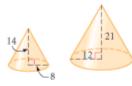
Solution

The two prisms are not similar because the corresponding edges are not proportional.

$$\frac{2}{2} \neq \frac{3}{6} = \frac{7}{14}$$

#### EXAMPLE B

Are these right circular cones similar?



#### Solution

The two cones are similar because the radii and heights are proportional.

$$\frac{8}{12} = \frac{14}{21}$$

## Investigation

#### **Volume Ratios**

#### You will need

- interlocking cubes
- isometric dot paper

How does the ratio of lengths of corresponding edges of similar solids compare with the ratio of their volumes? Let's find out.



- Step 1 Use blocks to build the "snake." Calculate its volume.
- Step 2 Multiply each edge length by a scale factor of 2 and build the enlarged snake. Calculate its volume.
- Step 3 What is the ratio of the lengths of corresponding edges of the larger snake to the smaller snake? What is the ratio of their volumes?
- Step 4 Build the "fish" or design your own solid using nine cubes or less. Draw the fish or other solid on isometric dot paper. Calculate its volume.
- Step 5 Multiply each edge length by a scale factor of 3 and draw the enlarged solid that would result. Calculate its volume.



Step 6 Calculate the ratio of edge lengths and the ratio of volumes of the two solids. How do your results compare with the area investigations you did in the previous lesson?

Step 7 Discuss how you would calculate the volumes of the snake and your other solid if you multiplied the edges by a scale factor of 5. You should be ready to state a conjecture.

#### **Proportional Volumes Conjecture**

C-97

If corresponding edge lengths (or radii, or heights) of two similar solids compare in the ratio  $\frac{m}{n}$ , then their volumes compare in the ratio  $\frac{2}{n}$ .

The reason behind the Proportional Volumes Conjecture is that volume is a three-dimensional measure. Because volume is related to the product of a two-dimensional base and height, when all three dimensions are doubled, the volume increases by a factor of eight.

Let's look at an application of both the Proportional Areas Conjecture and Proportional Volumes Conjecture.

#### **EXAMPLE C**

The diameter of a soccer ball is about 8.75 in. and the diameter of a tennis ball is about 2.5 in. How many times more surface material is needed to make the outside of a soccer ball than a tennis ball? How many times more air does a soccer ball hold than a tennis ball?

Solution

The ratio of the diameters is  $\frac{8.75}{2.5}$ , or  $\frac{7}{2}$ , so the ratio of the surface areas is  $(\frac{7}{2})^2$ , or  $\frac{49}{4}$ , and the ratio of the volumes is  $(\frac{7}{2})^3$ , or  $\frac{343}{8}$ . Therefore, the soccer ball requires  $12\frac{1}{4}$  times as much material to make and holds  $42\frac{7}{8}$  times as much air.

#### **EXERCISES**



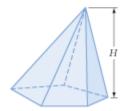
#### You will need



$$\frac{h}{H} = \frac{4}{7}$$

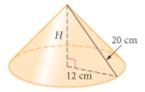
volume of large pyramid =  $\frac{?}{}$  volume of small pyramid = 320 cm<sup>3</sup>





$$H = ?, h = ?$$
volume of large cone = ?
volume of small cone = ?
volume of large cone
volume of small cone = ?





3. These right trapezoidal prisms are similar. volume of small prism =  $324 \text{ cm}^3$ 

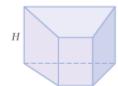
$$\frac{\text{area of base of small prism}}{\text{area of base of large prism}} = \frac{9}{25}$$

$$\frac{h}{H} = \underline{?}$$

volume of large prism volume of small prism = ?

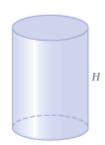
volume of large prism = ? ()





4. These right cylinders are similar. volume of large cylinder = 4608π ft³ volume of small cylinder = ?
 volume of large cylinder volume of small cylinder = ?
 H = ?





- 5. The ratio of the lengths of corresponding edges of two similar triangular prisms is  $\frac{5}{4}$ . What is the ratio of their volumes?
- **6.** The ratio of the volumes of two similar pentagonal prisms is 8:125. What is the ratio of their heights?
- 7. The ratio of the weights of two spherical steel balls is  $\frac{8}{27}$ . What is the ratio of their diameters?
- 8. Application The energy (and cost) needed to operate an air conditioner is proportional to the volume of the space that is being cooled. It costs ZAP Electronics about \$125 per day to run an air conditioner in their small rectangular warehouse. The company's large warehouse, a few blocks away, is 2.5 times as long, wide, and high as the small warehouse. Estimate the daily cost of cooling the large warehouse with the same model of air conditioner.
- **9.** Application A sculptor creates a small bronze statue that weighs 38 lb. She plans to make a version that will be four times as large in each dimension. How much will this larger statue weigh if it is also bronze?

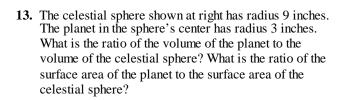


This bronze sculpture by Camille Claudel (1864–1943) is titled *La Petite Chatelaine*. Claudel was a notable French artist and student of Auguste Rodin, whose famous sculptures include *The Thinker*. 10. A tabloid magazine at a supermarket checkout exclaims, "Scientists Breed 4-Foot-Tall Chicken." A photo shows a giant chicken that supposedly weighs 74 pounds and will solve the world's hunger problem. What do you think about this headline? Assuming an average chicken stands 14 inches tall and weighs 7 pounds, would a 4-foot chicken weigh 74 pounds? Is it possible for a chicken to be 4 feet tall? Explain your reasoning.

11. The African goliath frog shown in this photo is the largest known frog—about 0.3 m long and 3.2 kg in weight. The Brazilian gold frog is one of the smallest known frogs about 9.8 mm long. Approximate the weight of a Brazilian gold frog. What assumptions do you need to make? Explain your reasoning.

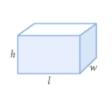


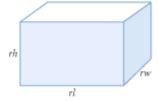
**12.** Orcas and dolphins both belong to the same family. Assume their bodies are similar. An orca is typically about 32 ft long, while a dolphin is about 8 ft long. What is the ratio of the surface area of the orca to that of the dolphin? What is the ratio of their volumes? Which animal has the greater surface area to volume ratio?





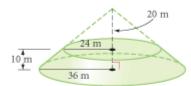
- 14. Imagine stretching all three dimensions of a 2-cm-by-3-cm-by-1-cm rectangular prism by multiplying them by scale factor x. Make a table of the surface area and volume of the prism for values of x from 1 to 5 and plot both sets of points on a graph. Write function S(x) that gives the surface area of the prism as a function of x and function V(x) that gives the volume of the prism as a function of x. How do their equations and graphs differ?
- 15. Developing Proof In the diagram at right, the second rectangular prism is a dilation of the first rectangular prism by scale factor r. Given that the ratio of the corresponding sides of the similar prisms is r, prove that the ratio of their volumes is  $r^3$ .



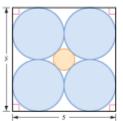


#### Review

to its base and has its top removed is called a **truncated** cone or pyramid, or a frustum. Find the volume of this truncated cone.



16. A cone or pyramid that is sliced parallel 17. The large circles are tangent to the square and tangent to each other. The smaller circle is tangent to each larger circle. Find the radius of the smaller circle in terms of s, the length of each side of the square. (h)



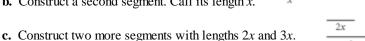
- **18.** Triangle *PQR* has side lengths 18 cm, 24 cm, and 30 cm. Is *PQR* a right triangle? Explain why or why not.
- 19. Construction Use the triangular figure at right and its rotated image.
  - **a.** Copy the figure and its image onto a piece of patty paper. Locate the center of rotation. Explain your method.
  - **b.** Copy the figure and its image onto a sheet of paper. Locate the center of rotation using a compass and straightedge. Explain your method.



- **20.** Construction The Angle Bisector/Opposite Side Conjecture gives you a way to divide a segment into lengths with a ratio of 2:3. Follow these steps.
  - **a.** Construct any segment AB.



**b.** Construct a second segment. Call its length x.



**d.** Construct a triangle with lengths 2x, 3x, and AB.



e. Explain what to do next and why it works.

## IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### Painted Faces II

Small cubes are assembled to form a larger cube, and then some of the faces of this larger cube are painted. After the paint dries, the larger cube is taken apart. Exactly 60 of the small cubes have no paint on any of their faces. What were the dimensions of the larger cube? How many of its faces were painted?

# Exploration

## Why Elephants **Have Big Ears**

The relationship between surface area and volume is of critical importance to all living things. It explains why elephants have big ears, why hippos and rhinos have short, thick legs and must spend a lot of time in water, and why movie monsters like King Kong and Godzilla can't exist.



## Activity

#### **Convenient Sizes**

#### **Body Temperature**

Every living thing processes food for energy. An animal's body produces energy in proportion to its volume. This energy creates heat that radiates from the animal's surface.



- Step 1 Imagine two similar animals, one with dimensions three times as large as those of the other.
- Step 2 How would the surface areas of these two animals compare? How much more heat could the larger animal radiate through its surface?
- Step 3 How would the volumes of these two animals compare? How many times as much heat would the larger animal produce?
- Step 4 Review your answers from Steps 2 and 3. How many times as much heat must each square centimeter of the larger animal radiate? Would this be good or bad?
- Step 5 Use what you have concluded to answer these questions. Consider size, surface area, and volume.
  - **a.** Why do large objects cool more slowly than similar small objects?
  - **b.** Why is a beached whale more likely than a beached dolphin to experience overheating?
  - **c.** Why are larger mammals found closer to the poles than the equator?
  - **d.** If a woman and a small child fall into a cold lake, why is the child in greater danger of hypothermia?

- **e.** When the weather is cold, iguanas hardly move. When it warms up, they become active. If a small iguana and a large iguana are sunning themselves in the morning sun, which one will become active first? Why? Which iguana will remain active longer after sunset? Why?
- **f.** Why do elephants have big ears?



#### **Bone and Muscle Strength**

The strength of a bone or a muscle is proportional to its cross-sectional area.

Step 6 Imagine a 7-foot-tall basketball player and a 42-inch-tall child. How would the dimensions of the bones of the basketball player compare to the corresponding bones of the child?

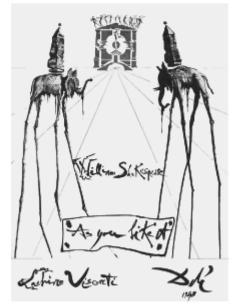
Step 7 How would the cross-sectional areas of their corresponding bones compare?

Step 8 How would their weights compare?

Step 9

How many times as much weight would each cross-sectional square inch of bone have to support in the basketball player? What are some factors that may explain why basketball players' bones don't usually break?

The Spanish artist Salvador Dalí (1904–1989) designed this cover for a 1948 program of the play As You Like It. What is the effect created by the elephants on long spindly legs? Could these animals really exist? Explain.



#### Step 10

Use what you have concluded to answer these questions. Consider size, surface area, and volume.

- **a.** Why are the largest living mammals, the whales, confined to the sea?
- **b.** Why do hippos and rhinos have short, thick legs?
- **c.** Why are champion weight lifters seldom able to lift more than twice their weight?
- **d.** Thoroughbred racehorses are fast runners but break their legs easily, while draft horses are slow moving and rarely break their legs. Why is this?
- e. Assume that a male gorilla can weigh as much as 450 pounds and can reach about 6 feet tall. King Kong is 30 feet tall. Could King Kong really exist?
- f. Professional basketball players are not typically similar in shape to professional football players. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of each body type in each sport.

Similarity is a theme in King Kong (1933), a movie about a giant gorilla similar in shape to a real gorilla. Willis O'Brien (1886–1962), an innovator of stop-motion animation, designed the models of Kong that brought the gorilla to life for moviegoers everywhere. Here, special effects master Ray Harryhausen holds a model that was used to create this captivating scene.

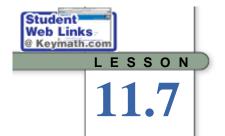


#### **Gravity and Air Resistance**

Objects in a vacuum fall at the same rate. However, an object falling through air is slowed by air resistance. The exact physics involved is complicated, but let's use a simplified model. Assume that air resistance is proportional to the surface area of the falling object. Also assume that the force of the impact of the object with the ground is proportional to the mass (and the volume) of the object, and that the force is inversely proportional to the surface area of the object.

- Step 11
- If a bowling ball and a golf ball with equal densities are dropped off a building, discuss how air resistance and mass affect the force of their impacts with the ground.
- Step 12

An ant can fall 100 times its height and live. This is not true for a human. Explain why.



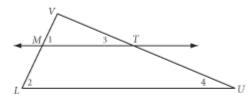
Mistakes are the portals of discovery. JAMES JOYCE

## **Proportional Segments Between Parallel Lines**

In the figure below,  $\overline{MT} \parallel \overline{LU}$ . Is  $\triangle LUV$  similar to  $\triangle MTV$ ? Yes, it is. A short paragraph proof can support this observation.

Given:  $\triangle LUV$  with  $MT \parallel LU$ 

**Show:**  $\triangle LUV \sim \triangle MTV$ 



#### Paragraph Proof

First assume that the Corresponding Angles Conjecture and the AA Similarity Conjecture are true.

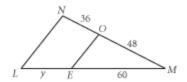
If  $MT \parallel LU$ , then  $\angle 1 \cong \angle 2$  and  $\angle 3 \cong \angle 4$  by the Corresponding Angles Conjecture.

If  $\angle 1 \cong \angle 2$  and  $\angle 3 \cong \angle 4$ , then  $\triangle LUV \sim \triangle MTV$  by the AA Similarity Conjecture.

Let's see how you can use this observation to solve problems.

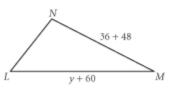
#### EXAMPLE A

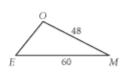
$$\overline{EO} \parallel \overline{LN}$$
$$y = \underline{1}$$



#### Solution

Separate  $\triangle EMO$  and  $\triangle LMN$  so that you can see the proportional relationships more clearly. Use the fact that  $\triangle EMO \sim \triangle LMN$ 





to write a proportion with lengths of corresponding sides.

$$\frac{LM}{EM} = \frac{NM}{OM}$$

$$\frac{y + 60}{M} = 36 + 48$$

Corresponding sides of similar triangles are proportional.

$$\frac{y+60}{60} = \frac{36+48}{48}$$

Substitute lengths given in the figure.

$$\frac{y + 60}{60} = \frac{7}{4}$$

Reduce the right side of the equation.

$$v + 60 = 105$$

Multiply both sides by 60 and reduce.

$$y = 45$$

Subtract 60 from both sides.

Notice that the ratio  $\frac{LE}{EM}$  is the same as the ratio  $\frac{NO}{OM}$ . So there are more relationships in the figure than the ones we find in similar triangles. Let's investigate.



## **Parallels and Proportionality**

You will need

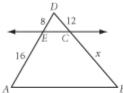
a ruler

a protractorStep 1

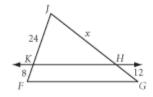
In this investigation we'll look at the ratios of segments that have been cut by parallel lines.

Separate each figure below into two triangles. Then find x and numerical values for the given ratios.

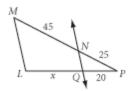
a. 
$$\overrightarrow{EC} \parallel \overrightarrow{AB}$$
  
 $x = ?$   
 $\frac{DE}{AE} = ?, \frac{DC}{BC} = ?$ 



**b.** 
$$\overrightarrow{KH} \parallel \overrightarrow{FG}$$
  
 $x = ?$   
 $\frac{JK}{KF} = ?, \frac{JH}{HG} = ?$ 



c. 
$$\overrightarrow{QN} \parallel \overrightarrow{LM}$$
  
 $x = ?$   
 $\frac{PQ}{QL} = ?, \frac{PN}{MN} = ?$ 



Step 2 What do you notice about the ratios of the lengths of the segments that have been cut by the parallel lines?

Is the converse true? That is, if a line divides two sides of a triangle proportionally, is it parallel to the third side? Let's see.

Step 3 | Draw an acute angle, P.

Step 4 Beginning at point *P*, use your ruler to mark off lengths of 8 cm and 10 cm on one ray. Label the points *A* and *B*.

Step 5 Mark off lengths of 12 cm and 15 cm on the other ray. Label the points C and D. Notice that  $\frac{8}{10} = \frac{12}{15}$ .

Step 6 Draw  $\overline{AC}$  and  $\overline{BD}$ .

Step 7 With a protractor, measure  $\angle PAC$  and  $\angle PBD$ . Are  $\overline{AC}$  and  $\overline{BD}$  parallel?

Step 8 Repeat Steps 3–7, but this time use your ruler to create your own lengths such that  $\frac{PA}{AB} = \frac{PC}{CD}$ .

Compare your results with the results of others near you. You should be ready to combine your observations from Steps 2 and 9 into one conjecture.

#### Parallel/Proportionality Conjecture

C-98

If a line parallel to one side of a triangle passes through the other two sides, then it divides the other two sides 1. Conversely, if a line cuts two sides of a triangle proportionally, then it is \(\frac{1}{2}\) to the third side.

If you assume that the AA Similarity Conjecture is true, you can use algebra to prove the Parallel/Proportionality Conjecture. Here's the first part.

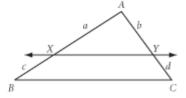
#### EXAMPLE B |

Step 9

Given:  $\triangle ABC$  with  $\overline{XY} \parallel \overline{BC}$ 

Show: 
$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{d}$$

(Assume that the lengths a, b, c, and d are all nonzero.)



#### Solution

First, you know that  $\triangle AXY \sim \triangle ABC$  (see the proof on page 623). Use a proportion of corresponding sides.

$$\frac{a}{a+c} = \frac{b}{b+d}$$
Lengths of corresponding sides of similar triangles are proportional.

$$\frac{a(a+c)(b+d)}{(a+c)} = \frac{b(a+c)(b+d)}{(b+d)}$$
Multiply both sides by  $(a+c)(b+d)$ .

$$a(b+d) = b(a+c)$$
Reduce.

$$ab+ad = ba+bc$$
Apply the distributive property.

$$ab+ad = ab+bc$$
Commute  $ba$  to  $ab$ .

$$ad = bc$$
Subtract  $ab$  from both sides.

$$\frac{ad}{cd} = \frac{bc}{cd}$$
We want  $c$  and  $d$  in the denominator, so divide both sides by  $cd$ .

$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{d}$$
Reduce.

You'll prove the converse of the Parallel/Proportionality Conjecture in Exercise 19. Can the Parallel/Proportionality Conjecture help you divide segments into several proportional parts? Let's investigate.

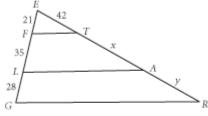
## Investigation 2

## **Extended Parallel/Proportionality**

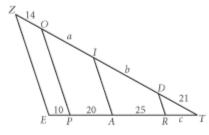
Step 1

Use the Parallel/Proportionality Conjecture to find each missing length. Are the ratios equal?

**a.** 
$$\overline{FT} \parallel \overline{LA} \parallel \overline{GR}$$
  
 $x = ?, y = ?$   
Is  $\frac{FL}{LG} = \frac{TA}{AR}?$ 



**b.** 
$$\overline{ZE} \parallel \overline{OP} \parallel \overline{IA} \parallel \overline{DR}$$
  
 $a = ?$ ,  $b = ?$ ,  $c = ?$   
Is  $\frac{DI}{IO} = \frac{RA}{AP}$ ? Is  $\frac{IO}{OZ} = \frac{AP}{PE}$ ?



Step 2

Compare your results with the results of others near you. Complete the conjecture below.

#### **Extended Parallel/Proportionality Conjecture**

C-99

If two or more lines pass through two sides of a triangle parallel to the third side, then they divide the two sides \_\_\_\_\_.

Exploring the converse of this conjecture has been left for you as a Take Another Look activity.

You already know how to use a perpendicular bisector to divide a segment into two, four, or eight equal parts. Now you can use your new conjecture to divide a segment into *any* number of equal parts.

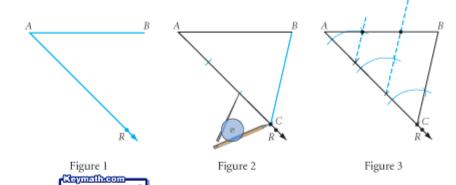
#### EXAMPLE C

Divide any segment AB into three congruent parts using only a compass and straightedge.

#### Solution

Draw segment AB. From one endpoint of  $\overline{AB}$ , draw any ray to form an angle (Figure 1). On the ray, mark off three congruent segments with your compass. Connect the third compass mark to the other endpoint of  $\overline{AB}$  to form a triangle (Figure 2).

Finally, through the other two compass marks on the ray, construct lines parallel to the third side of the triangle (Figure 3). The two parallel lines divide  $\overline{AB}$  into three equal parts.



## **EXERCISES**

#### You will need

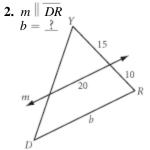
For Exercises 1–12, all measurements are in centimeters.

Practice Your Skill

1.  $\ell \parallel \overline{WE}$   $a = \underline{1}$ 

3.  $n \parallel \overline{SN}$ 

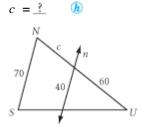


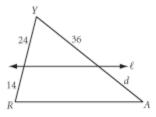


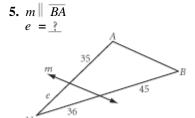
20



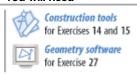
**6.** Is  $r \| \overline{AN}$ ?

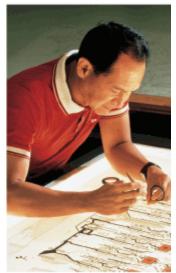






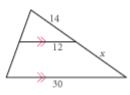
(h)



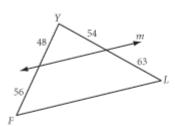


Similarity is used to create integrated circuits. Electrical engineers use large-scale maps of extremely small silicon chips. This engineer is making a scale drawing of a computer chip.

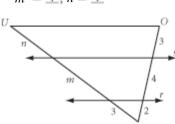
7. Alex and José have each found the value of x in the diagram at right in different ways and are explaining their methods. Alex says, "The proportion I used to solve this problem is  $\frac{x}{14} = \frac{30}{12}$ , so x is 35." José looks puzzled and responds, "I got x is 21 by using the proportion  $\frac{x+14}{30} = \frac{14}{12}$ ." Explain which method is correct and what is wrong with the incorrect method.



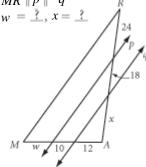
**8.** Is  $m \| \overline{FL}$ ?



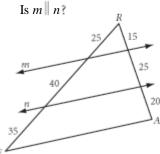
9.  $r \parallel s \parallel \overline{OU}$ m = 1, n = 1



**10.**  $\overline{MR} \parallel p \parallel q$ 

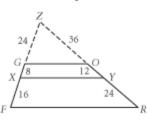


11. Is  $m \parallel \overline{EA}$ ?
Is  $n \parallel \overline{EA}$ ?
Is  $m \parallel n$ ?

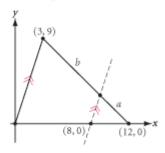


12. Is  $\overline{XY} \parallel \overline{GO}$ ? Is  $\overline{XY} \parallel \overline{FR}$ ?

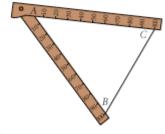
Is *FROG* a trapezoid?



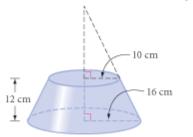
**13.** a = 1, b = 1



- **14.** *Construction* Draw segment *EF*. Use compass and straightedge to divide it into five equal parts.
- **15.** Construction Draw segment *IJ*. Construct a regular hexagon with *IJ* as the perimeter.
- **16.** You can use a sheet of lined paper to divide a segment into equal parts. Draw a segment on a piece of patty paper, and divide it into five equal parts by placing it over lined paper. Which conjecture explains why this works?
- **17.** The drafting tool shown at right is called a sector compass. You position a given segment between the 100-marks. What points on the compass should you connect to construct a segment that is three-fourths (or 75%) of *BC*? Explain why this works.



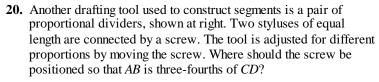
**18.** This truncated cone was formed by cutting off the top of a cone with a slice parallel to the base of the cone. What is the volume of the truncated cone?



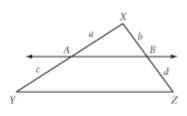
**19.** Assume that the SAS Similarity Conjecture and the Converse of the Parallel Lines Conjecture are true. Write a proof to show that if a line cuts two sides of a triangle proportionally, then it is parallel to the third side.

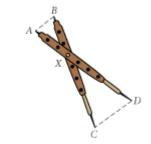
Given: 
$$\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{d}$$
 (Assume  $c \neq 0$  and  $d \neq 0$ .)

Show: 
$$\overrightarrow{AB} \parallel \overrightarrow{YZ}$$

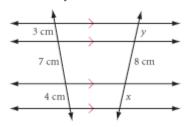


The Extended Parallel/Proportionality Conjecture can be extended even further. That is, you don't necessarily need a triangle. If three or more parallel lines intercept two other lines (transversals) in the same plane, they do so proportionally. For Exercises 21 and 22 use this extension.

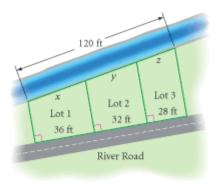




**21.** Find *x* and *y*.



22. A real estate developer has parceled land between a river and River Road as shown. The land has been divided by segments perpendicular to the road. What is the "river frontage" (lengths x, y, and z) for each of the three lots?



#### Review

- 23. The ratio of the surface areas of two cubes is  $\frac{49}{81}$ . What is the ratio of their volumes?
- **24.** *Application* Romunda's original recipe for her special "cannonball" cookies makes 36 spheres with 4 cm diameters. She reasons that she can make 36 cannonballs with 8 cm diameters by doubling the amount of dough. Is she correct? If not, how many 8 cm diameter cannonballs can she make by doubling the recipe?
- **25.** Find the surface area of a cube with edge x. Find the surface area of a cube with edge 2x. Find the surface area of a cube with edge 3x.



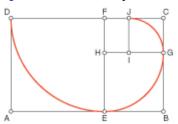
- **26.** A circle of radius r has a chord of length r. Find the length of the minor arc.
- 27. Technology In Lesson 11.3, Exercise 18, you learned about the golden cut and the golden ratio. A golden rectangle is a rectangle in which the ratio of the length to the width is the golden ratio. That is, a golden rectangle's length, l, and width, w, satisfy the proportion



A golden rectangle



- **a.** Use geometry software to construct a golden rectangle. Your construction for Exercise 18 in Lesson 11.3 will help.
- **b.** When a square is cut off one end of a golden rectangle, the remaining rectangle is a smaller, similar golden rectangle. If you continue this process over and over again, and then connect opposite vertices of the squares with quarter-circles, you create a curve called the golden spiral. Use geometry software to construct a golden **spiral.** The first three quarter-circles are shown below.



ABCD is a golden rectangle. EBCF is a golden rectangle.

HGCF is a golden rectangle. IJFH is a golden rectangle.

The curve from D to E to G to J is the beginning of a golden spiral.



Some researchers believe Greek architects used golden rectangles to design the Parthenon. You can learn more about the historical importance of golden rectangles using the links at www.keymath.com/DG .

- **28.** A circle is inscribed in a quadrilateral. Write a proof showing that the two sums of the opposite sides of the quadrilateral are equal.
- 29. Copy the figure at right onto your own paper. Divide it into four figures similar to the original figure.



## IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### **Connecting Cubes**

The two objects shown at right can be placed together to form each of the shapes below except one. Which one?





B.







## Exploration

# Two More Forms of Valid Reasoning

In the Chapter 10 Exploration Sherlock Holmes and Forms of Valid Reasoning, you learned about *Modus Ponens* and *Modus Tollens*. A third form of valid reasoning is called the Law of Syllogism.



According to the **Law of Syllogism** (LS), If you accept "If P then Q" as true and If you accept "If Q then R" as true, then you must logically accept "If P then R" as true.

Here is an example of the Law of Syllogism.

English statement	Symbolic translation
If I eat pizza after midnight, then I will have nightmares. If I have nightmares, then I will get very little sleep. Therefore, If I eat pizza after midnight, then I will get very little sleep.	P: I eat pizza after midnight. Q: I will have nightmares. R: I will get very little sleep. $P \rightarrow Q$ $Q \rightarrow R$ $P \rightarrow R$

To work on the next law, you need some new statement forms. Every conditional statement has three other conditionals associated with it. To get the converse of a statement, you switch the "if" and "then" parts. To get the **inverse**, you negate both parts. To get the **contrapositive**, you reverse and negate the two parts.

These new forms may be true or false.

Statement	If two angles are vertical angles, then they are congruent.	$P \rightarrow Q$	true
Converse	If two angles are congruent, then they are vertical angles.	$Q \rightarrow P$	false
Inverse	If two angles are not vertical angles, then they are not congruent.	$\sim P \rightarrow \sim Q$	false
Contrapositive	If two angles are not congruent, then they are not vertical angles.	$\sim Q \rightarrow \sim P$	true

Notice that the original conditional statement and its contrapositive have the same truth value. This leads to a fourth form of valid reasoning. The Law of Contrapositive (LC) says that if a conditional statement is true, then its contrapositive is also true. Conversely, if the contrapositive is true, then the original conditional statement must also be true. This also means that if a conditional statement is false, so is its contrapositive.

Often, a logical argument contains multiple steps, applying the same rule more than once or applying more than one rule. Here is an example.

English statement	Symbolic translation
If the consecutive sides of a parallelogram are congruent, then it is a rhombus. if a parallelogram is a rhombus, then its diagonals are perpendicular bisectors of each other. The diagonals are not perpendicular bisectors of each other. Therefore the consecutive sides of the parallelogram are not congruent.	<ul> <li>P: The consecutive sides of a parallelogram are congruent.</li> <li>Q: The parallelogram is a rhombus.</li> <li>R: The diagonals are perpendicular bisectors of each other.</li> <li>P → Q</li> <li>Q → R</li> <li>¬R</li> <li>∴ ¬P</li> </ul>

You can show that this argument is valid in three logical steps.

Step 1 
$$P \rightarrow Q$$
  
 $Q \rightarrow R$   
 $\therefore P \rightarrow R$  by the Law of Syllogism  
Step 2  $P \rightarrow R$   
 $\therefore R \rightarrow P$  by the Law of Contrapositive  
Step 3  $R \rightarrow P$   
 $R \rightarrow$ 

#### Literature

#### CONNECTION •

Lewis Carroll was the pseudonym of the English novelist and mathematician Charles Lutwidge Dodgson (1832-1898). He is often associated with his famous children's book Alice's Adventures in Wonderland.

In 1886 he published *The Game of Logic*, which used a game board and counters to solve logic problems. In 1896 he published Symbolic Logic, Part I, which was an elementary book intended to teach symbolic logic. Here is one of the silly problems from Symbolic Logic. What conclusion follows from these premises?

Babies are illogical.

Nobody is despised who can manage a crocodile.

Illogical persons are despised.

Lewis Carroll enjoyed incorporating mathematics and logic into all of his books. Here is a quote from *Through the Looking Glass*. Is Tweedledee using valid reasoning?

"Contrariwise," said Tweedledee, "if it was so, it might be; and if it were so, it would be, but as it isn't, it ain't. That's logic."

So far, you have learned four basic forms of valid reasoning.

Now let's apply them in symbolic proofs.

#### Four Forms of Valid Reasoning

$$P \rightarrow Q$$
 $P$ 

$$P \to Q$$
$$\sim Q$$

$$P \to Q$$
$$Q \to R$$

$$P \rightarrow Q$$
  
 $\therefore \sim Q \rightarrow \sim P$ 

$$\therefore Q$$
 by MP

$$\sim Q$$
  
∴  $\sim P$   
by MT

$$\therefore P \to R$$
 by LS

## Symbolic Proofs

Step 1

Determine whether or not each logical argument is valid. If it is valid, state what reasoning form or forms it follows. If it is not valid, write "no valid conclusion."

**a.** 
$$P \rightarrow \sim Q$$

**b.** 
$$\sim S \rightarrow P$$
 **c.**  $\sim Q \rightarrow \sim R$ 

$$Q$$
 $\therefore \sim P$ 

$$\therefore R \to P$$

**d.** 
$$R \rightarrow P$$
 $T \rightarrow \sim P$ 

 $\therefore R \rightarrow T$ 

e. 
$$\sim P \rightarrow \sim R$$
 f.  $P \rightarrow Q$ 

$$R \rightarrow R \rightarrow$$

... P

1. 
$$P \rightarrow Q$$
  
 $\sim R \rightarrow \sim Q$   
 $\therefore P \rightarrow R$ 

Step 2

Translate parts a–c into symbols, and give the reasoning form(s) or state that the conclusion is not valid.

- a. If I study all night, then I will miss my late-night talk show. If Jeannine comes over to study, then I study all night. Jeannine comes over to study. Therefore I will miss my late-night talk show.
- **b.** If I don't earn money, then I can't buy a computer. If I don't get a job, then I don't earn money. I have a job. Therefore I can buy a computer.
- **c.** If EF is not parallel to side AB in trapezoid ABCD, then EF is not a midsegment of trapezoid ABCD. If EF is parallel to side ABthen ABFE is a trapezoid.  $\overline{EF}$  is a midsegment of trapezoid ABCD. Therefore ABFE is a trapezoid.

Step 3

Show how you can use *Modus Ponens* and the Law of Contrapositive to make the same logical conclusions as Modus Tollens.



Similarity, like area, volume, and the Pythagorean Theorem, has many applications. Any scale drawing or model, anything that is reduced or enlarged, is governed by the properties of similar figures. So engineers, visual artists, and film-makers all use similarity. It is also useful in indirect measurement. Do you recall the two indirect measurement methods you learned in this chapter? The ratios of area and volume in similar figures are also related to the ratios of their dimensions. But recall that as the dimensions increase, the area increases by a squared factor and volume increases by a cubed factor.





#### **EXERCISES**



For Exercises 1–4, solve each proportion.

You will need



1. 
$$\frac{x}{15} = \frac{8}{5}$$

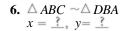
2. 
$$\frac{4}{11} = \frac{24}{x}$$

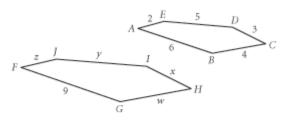
3. 
$$\frac{4}{x} = \frac{x}{9}$$

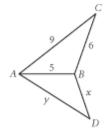
4. 
$$\frac{x}{x+3} = \frac{34}{40}$$

In Exercises 5 and 6, measurements are in centimeters.

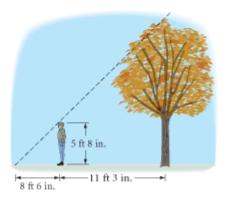
**5.** ABCDE 
$$\sim$$
 FGHIJ  $w = \frac{?}{?}, x = \frac{?}{?}, y = \frac{?}{?}, z = \frac{?}{?}$ 







7. Application David is 5 ft 8 in. tall and wants to find the height of an oak tree in his front yard. He walks along the shadow of the tree until his head is in a position where the end of his shadow exactly overlaps the end of the tree's shadow. He is now 11 ft 3 in. from the foot of the tree and 8 ft 6 in. from the end of the shadows. How tall is the oak tree?



- 8. A certain magnifying glass, when held 6 in. from an object, creates an image that is 10 times the size of the object being viewed. What is the measure of a 20° angle under this magnifying glass?
- **9.** Construction Construct KL. Then find a point P that divides  $\overline{KL}$  into two segments that have a ratio  $\frac{3}{4}$ .
- **10.** If two triangles are congruent, are they similar? Explain.



11. Patsy does a juggling act. She sits on a stool that sits on top of a rotating ball that spins at the top of a 20-meter pole. The diameter of the ball is 4 meters, and Patsy's eye is approximately 2 meters above the ball. Seats for the show are arranged on the floor in a circle so that each spectator can see Patsy's eyes. Find the radius of the circle of seats to the nearest meter.

- 12. Charlie builds a rectangular box home for his pet python and uses 1 gallon of paint to cover its surface. Lucy also builds a box for Charlie's pet, but with dimensions twice as great. How many gallons of paint will Lucy need to paint her box? How many times as much volume does her box have?
- 13. Suppose you had a real clothespin similar to the sculpture at right and made of the same material. What measurements would you make to calculate the weight of the sculpture? Explain your reasoning.
- **14.** The ratio of the perimeters of two similar parallelograms is 3:7. What is the ratio of their areas?
- **15.** The ratio of the surface areas of two spheres is  $\frac{25}{16}$ . What is the ratio of their radii? What is the ratio of their volumes?
- **16.** Application The Jones family paid \$150 to a painting contractor to stain their 12-by-15-foot deck. The Smiths have a similar deck that measures 16 ft by 20 ft. What price should the Smith family expect to pay to have their deck stained?

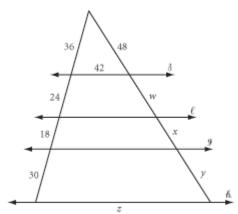


This sculpture, called Clothespin (1976), was created by Swedish-American sculptor Claes Oldenburg (b 1929). His art reflects how everyday objects can be intriguing.

17. The dimensions of the smaller cylinder are two-thirds of the dimensions of the larger cylinder. The volume of the larger cylinder is  $2160 \pi$  cm<sup>3</sup>. Find the volume of the smaller cylinder.



**18.**  $3 \parallel \ell \parallel g \parallel \hbar$ w = ?, x = ?, y = ?, z = ?



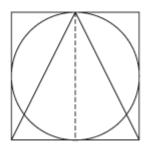
**19.** Below is a 58-foot statue of Bahubali, in Sravanabelagola, India. Every 12 years, worshipers of the Jain religion bathe the statue with coconut milk. Suppose the milk

of one coconut is just enough to cover the surface of the similar 2-foot statuette shown at right. How many coconuts would be required to cover the surface off the full-size statue?



This 58-foot statue is carved from a single stone.

- **20.** Greek mathematician Archimedes liked the design at right so much that he wanted it on his tombstone.
  - **a.** Calculate the ratio of the area of the square, the area of the circle, and the area of the isosceles triangle. Copy and complete this statement of proportionality.















- **c.** What is so special about this design?
- 21. Many fanciful stories are about people who accidentally shrink to a fraction of their original height. If a person shrank to one-twentieth his original height, how would that change the amount of food he'd require, or the amount of material needed to clothe him, or the time he'd need to get to different places? Explain.

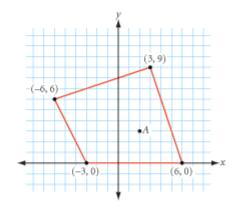
This scene is from the 1957 science fiction movie The Incredible Shrinking Man.

**22.** Would 15 pounds of 1-inch ice cubes melt faster than a 15-pound block of ice? Explain.



#### TAKE ANOTHER LOOK

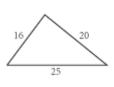
- **1.** You've learned that an ordered pair rule such as  $(x, y) \to (x + b, y + c)$  is a translation. You discovered in this chapter that an ordered pair rule such as  $(x, y) \to (kx, ky)$  is a dilation in the coordinate plane, centered at the origin. What transformation is described by the rule  $(x, y) \to (kx + b, ky + c)$ ? Investigate.
- 2. In Lesson 11.1, you dilated figures in the coordinate plane, using the origin as the center of dilation. What happens if a different point in the plane is the center of dilation? Copy the polygon at right onto graph paper. Draw the polygon's image under a dilation with a scale factor of 2 and with point A as the center of dilation. Draw another image using a scale factor of <sup>2</sup>/<sub>3</sub>. Explain how you found the image points. How does dilating about point A differ from dilating about the origin?
- 3. **Developing Proof** True or false? The angle bisector of one of the nonvertex angles of a kite will divide the diagonal connecting the vertex angles into two segments whose lengths are in the same ratio as two unequal sides of the kite. If true, explain why. If false, show a counterexample that proves it false.

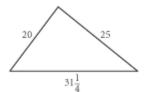


- **4. Developing Proof** A total eclipse of the Sun can occur because the ratio of the Moon's diameter to its distance from Earth is about the same as the ratio of the Sun's diameter to its distance to Earth. Draw a diagram and use similar triangles to explain why it works.
- **5. Developing Proof** It is possible for the three angles and two of the sides of one triangle to be congruent to the three angles and two of the sides of another triangle, and yet for the two triangles not to be congruent. Two such triangles are shown below. Use geometry software or patty paper to find another pair of similar (but not congruent) triangles in which five parts of one are congruent to five parts of the other.



A solar eclipse





Explain why these sets of side lengths work. Use algebra to explain your reasoning.

- **6. Developing Proof** Is the converse of the Extended Parallel Proportionality Conjecture true? That is, if two lines intersect two sides of a triangle, dividing the two sides proportionally, must the two lines be parallel to the third side? Prove that it is true or find a counterexample showing that it is not true.
- 7. **Developing Proof** If the three sides of one triangle are each parallel to one of the three sides of another triangle, what might be true about the two triangles? Use geometry software to investigate. Make a conjecture and explain why you think your conjecture is true.

## Assessing What You've Learned



**UPDATE YOUR PORTFOLIO** If you did the Project Making a Mural, add your mural to your portfolio.



**ORGANIZE YOUR NOTEBOOK** Review your notebook to be sure it's complete and well organized. Be sure you have each definition and conjecture. Write a one-page summary of Chapter 11.



**GIVE A PRESENTATION** Give a presentation about one or more of the similarity conjectures. You could even explain how an overhead projector produces similar figures!



WRITE IN YOUR JOURNAL Compare similarity with congruence.

**638** CHAPTER 11 Similarity

12

## **Trigonometry**



I wish I'd learn to draw a little better! What exertion and determination it takes to try and do it well....It is really just a question of carrying on doggedly, with continuous and, if possible, pitiless self-criticism.

M. C. ESCHER

Belvedere, M. C. Escher, 1958 ©2002 Cordon Art B. V.–Baarn–Holland. All rights reserved.

#### **OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will

- learn about the branch of mathematics called trigonometry
- define three important ratios between the sides of a right triangle
- use trigonometry to solve problems involving right triangles
- discover how trigonometry extends beyond right triangles





Research is what I am doing when I don't know what I'm doing. WERNHER VON BRAUN

## **Trigonometric Ratios**

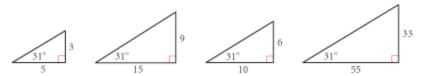
**Trigonometry** is the study of the relationships between the sides and the angles of triangles. In this lesson you will discover some of these relationships for right triangles.

## Astronomy CONNECTION

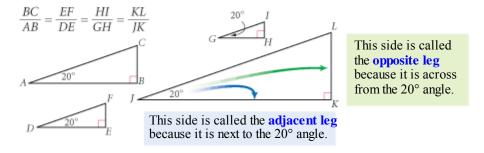
Trigonometry has origins in astronomy. The Greek astronomer Claudius Ptolemy (100–170 C.E.) used tables of chord ratios in his book known as *Almagest*. These chord ratios and their related angles were used to describe the motion of planets in what were thought to be circular orbits. This woodcut shows Ptolemy using astronomy tools.



When studying right triangles, early mathematicians discovered that whenever the ratio of the shorter leg's length to the longer leg's length was close to a specific fraction, the angle opposite the shorter leg was close to a specific measure. They found this (and its converse) to be true for all similar right triangles. For example, in every right triangle in which the ratio of the shorter leg's length to the longer leg's length is  $\frac{3}{5}$ , the angle opposite the shorter leg is almost exactly 31°.



What early mathematicians discovered is supported by what you know about similar triangles. If two right triangles each have an acute angle of the same measure, then the triangles are similar by the AA Similarity Conjecture. And if the triangles are similar, then corresponding sides are proportional. For example, in the similar right triangles shown below, these proportions are true:

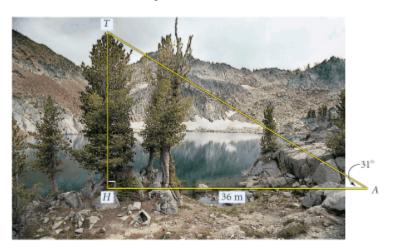


The ratio of the length of the opposite leg to the length of the adjacent leg in a right triangle came to be called the **tangent** of the angle.

In Chapter 11, you used mirrors and shadows to measure heights indirectly. Trigonometry gives you another indirect measuring method.

#### EXAMPLE A

At a distance of 36 meters from a tree, the angle from the ground to the top of the tree is 31°. Find the height of the tree.

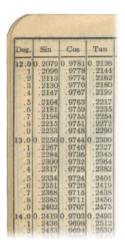


#### Solution

As you saw in the right triangles on page 640, the ratio of the length of the side opposite a 31° angle divided by the length of the side adjacent to a 31° angle is approximately  $\frac{3}{5}$ , or 0.6. You can set up a proportion using this tangent ratio.

$\frac{HT}{HA} \approx \tan 31^{\circ}$	The definition of tangent.
$\frac{HT}{HA} \approx 0.6$	The tangent of 31° is approximately 0.6.
$\frac{HT}{36} \approx 0.6$	Substitute 36 for HA.
<i>HT</i> ≈ 36 • 0.6	Multiply both sides by $36$ and reduce the left side.
$HT \approx 22$	Multiply.

The height of the tree is approximately 22 meters.



In order to solve problems like Example A, early mathematicians made tables that related ratios of side lengths to angle measures. They named six possible ratios. You will work with three.

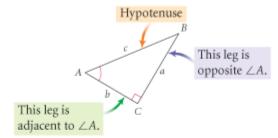
**Sine**, abbreviated sin, is the ratio of the length of the opposite leg to the length of the hypotenuse.

**Cosine**, abbreviated cos, is the ratio of the length of the adjacent leg to the length of the hypotenuse.

**Tangent,** abbreviated tan, is the ratio of the length of the opposite leg to the length of the adjacent leg.

This excerpt from a trigonometric table shows sine, cosine, and tangent ratios for angles measuring from 12.0° to 14.2°.

#### **Trigonometric Ratios**



For any acute angle *A* in a right triangle:

In 
$$\triangle ABC$$
 above:

sine of 
$$\angle A = \frac{\text{length of opposite leg}}{\text{length of hypotenuse}}$$

$$\sin A = \frac{a}{c}$$

cosine of 
$$\angle A = \frac{\text{length of adjacent leg}}{\text{length of hypotenuse}}$$

$$\cos A = \frac{b}{c}$$

tangent of 
$$\angle A = \frac{\text{length of opposite leg}}{\text{length of adjacent leg}}$$

$$\tan A = \frac{a}{b}$$



## **Investigation**

## **Trigonometric Tables**

You will need

- a protractor
- a ruler
- a calculator

Step 1

measuring 20° and 70°. Use your protractor to make a large right triangle ABC with  $m\angle A = 20^{\circ}$ ,

In this investigation you will make a small table of trigonometric ratios for angles

 $m \angle B = 90^{\circ}$ , and  $m \angle C = 70^{\circ}$ . Measure AB, AC, and BC to the nearest millimeter.

Step 2 Step 3

Use your side lengths and the definitions of sine, cosine, and tangent to complete a table like this. Round your calculations to the nearest thousandth.

Е				
	$m \angle A$	$\sin A$	$\cos A$	tan A
ſ	20°			

m∠C	sin C	cos C	tan C
70°			

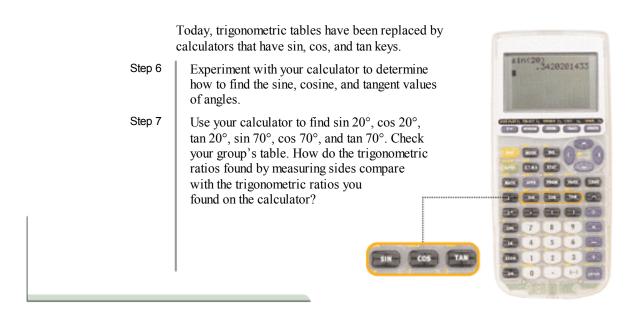
Step 4

Share your results with your group. Calculate the average of each ratio within your group. Create a new table with your group's average values.

Step 5

Discuss your results. What observations can you make about the trigonometric ratios you found? What is the relationship between the values for 20° and the values for 70°? Explain why you think these relationships exist.

Go to www.keymath.com/DG to find complete tables of trigonometric ratios.

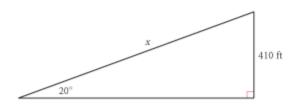


Using a table of trigonometric ratios, or using a calculator, you can find the approximate lengths of the sides of a right triangle given the measures of any acute angle and any side.

#### EXAMPLE B

Find the length of the hypotenuse of a right triangle if an acute angle measures 20° and the leg opposite the angle measures 410 feet.

#### Solution



Sketch a diagram. The trigonometric ratio that relates the lengths of the opposite leg and the hypotenuse is the sine ratio.

$$\sin 20^{\circ} = \frac{410}{x}$$

Substitute 20° for the measure of  $\angle A$  and substitute 410 for the length of the opposite side. The length

of the hypotenuse is unknown, so use x.

$$x \cdot \sin 20^\circ = 410$$

Multiply both sides by x and reduce the right side.

$$x = \frac{410}{\sin 20^{\circ}}$$

Divide both sides by sin 20° and reduce the left side.

From your table in the investigation, or from a calculator, you know that  $\sin 20^{\circ}$  is approximately 0.342.

$$x \approx \frac{410}{0.342}$$

Sin 20° is approximately 0.342.

$$x \approx 1199$$

Divide.

The length of the hypotenuse is approximately 1199 feet.

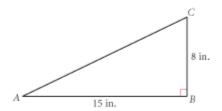
With the help of a calculator, it is also possible to determine the size of either acute angle in a right triangle if you know the length of any two sides of that triangle. For instance, if you know the ratio of the legs in a right triangle, you can find the measure of one acute angle by using the **inverse tangent**, or tan<sup>-1</sup>, function. Let's look at an example.

The inverse tangent of x is defined as the measure of the acute angle whose tangent is x. The tangent function and inverse tangent function undo each other. That is,  $\tan^{-1}(\tan A) = A$  and  $\tan(\tan^{-1} x) = x$ .

#### **EXAMPLE C**

A right triangle has legs of length 8 inches and 15 inches. Find the measure of the angle opposite the 8-inch leg.

#### Solution



Sketch a diagram. In this sketch the angle opposite the 8-inch leg is  $\angle A$ . The trigonometric ratio that relates the lengths of the opposite leg and the adjacent leg is the tangent ratio.

$$\tan A = \frac{8}{15}$$

Substitute 8 for the length of the opposite leg and substitute 15 for the length of the adjacent leg.

$$\tan^{-1}(\tan A) = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{8}{15}\right)$$

Take the inverse tangent of both sides.

$$A = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{8}{15}\right)$$

The tangent function and inverse tangent function undo each other.

$$A \approx 28$$

Use your calculator to evaluate  $\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{8}{15}\right)$ .

The measure of the angle opposite the 8-inch leg is approximately 28°.

To find the angle that has a specific tangent value, use the tan<sup>-1</sup> feature on your calculator.

You can also use inverse sine, or  $\sin^{-1}$ , and inverse cosine, or  $\cos^{-1}$ , to find angle measures.

## EXERCISES

accurate to the nearest ten thousandth.



For Exercises 1–3, use a calculator to find each trigonometric ratio

#### You will need



For Exercises 4–6, solve for x. Express each answer accurate to the nearest hundredth of a unit

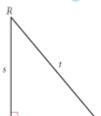
**4.** 
$$\sin 40^{\circ} = \frac{x}{18}$$

5. 
$$\cos 52^{\circ} = \frac{19}{x}$$

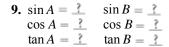
**6.** 
$$\tan 29^{\circ} = \frac{x}{112}$$

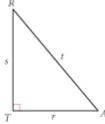
For Exercises 7–9, find each trigonometric ratio.

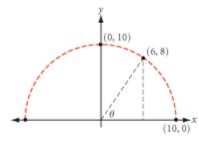
7.  $\sin A = \frac{?}{}$  $\cos A = ?$  $\tan A = \frac{1}{2}$ 

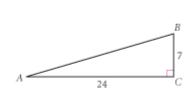


**8.**  $\sin \theta = \frac{?}{}$  $\cos\theta = \underline{?}$  $\tan \theta = \underline{?}$ 









For Exercises 10–13, find the measure of each angle accurate to the nearest degree.

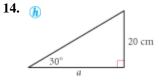
**10.**  $\sin A = 0.5$ 

**11.**  $\cos B = 0.6$ 

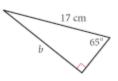
**12.**  $\tan C = 0.5773$ 

**13.**  $\tan x = \frac{48}{106}$ 

For Exercises 14–20, find the values of a-g accurate to the nearest whole unit.



**15.** 



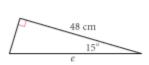
16.



**17.** 

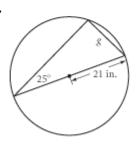


18.

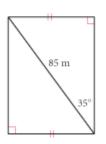




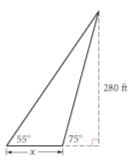
20.



21. Find the perimeter of this quadrilateral.



**22.** Find *x*.



#### **Review**

For Exercises 23 and 24, solve for x.

**23.** 
$$\frac{x}{3} = \frac{17}{8}$$

**24.** 
$$\frac{5}{x} = \frac{25}{11}$$

- **25.** *Application* Which is the better buy—a pizza with a 16-inch diameter for \$12.50 or a pizza with a 20-inch diameter for \$20.00?
- **26.** Application Which is the better buy—ice cream in a cylindrical container with a base diameter of 6 inches and a height of 8 inches for \$3.98 or ice cream in a box (square prism) with a base edge of 6 inches and a height of 8 inches for \$4.98?
- 27. A diameter of a circle is cut at right angles by a chord into a 12 cm segment and a 4 cm segment. How long is the chord?
- 28. Find the volume and surface area of this sphere.



## IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

### 3-by-3 Inductive Reasoning Puzzle II

Sketch the figure missing in the lower right corner of this pattern.

















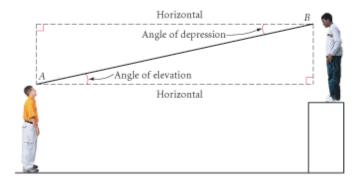




What science can there be more noble, more excellent, more useful... than mathematics? BENJAMIN FRANKLIN

# **Problem Solving with Right Triangles**

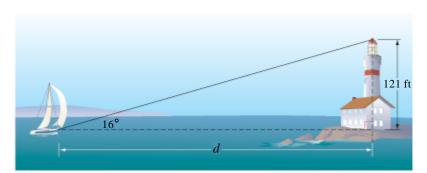
Right triangle trigonometry is often used indirectly to find the height of a tall object. To solve a problem of this type, measure the angle from the horizontal to your line of sight when you look at the top or bottom of the object.



If you look up, you measure the **angle of elevation**. If you look down, you measure the **angle of depression**.

#### **EXAMPLE**

The angle of elevation from a sailboat to the top of a 121-foot lighthouse on the shore measures 16°. How far is the sailboat from the lighthouse?



#### Solution

Distance means the shortest distance, which is the horizontal distance. The height of the lighthouse is opposite the  $16^{\circ}$  angle. The unknown distance is the adjacent side. Set up a tangent ratio.

$$\tan 16^\circ = \frac{121}{d}$$

$$d(\tan 16^\circ) = 121$$

$$d = \frac{121}{\tan 16^\circ}$$

$$d \approx 422$$

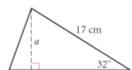
The sailboat is approximately 422 feet from the lighthouse.



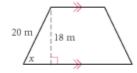
For Exercises 1–9, find each length or angle measure accurate to the nearest whole unit.



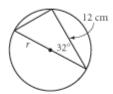
1.  $a \approx ?$ 



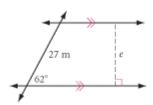
**2.**  $x \approx ?$ 



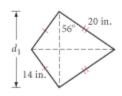
3.  $r \approx ?$ 



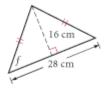
**4.** e = ?



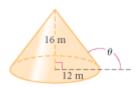
5.  $d_1 = ?$ 



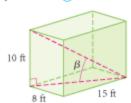
**6.**  $f \approx ?$ 



7.  $\theta \approx ?$ 

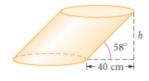


8. β ≈ <u>?</u>

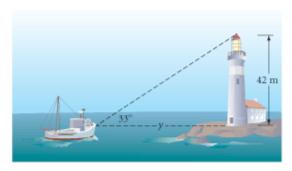


(h)

**9.**  $h \approx 1$ 



- **10.** According to a Chinese legend from the Han dynasty (206 B.C.E.–220 C.E.), General Han Xin flew a kite over the palace of his enemy to determine the distance between his troops and the palace. If the general let out 800 meters of string and the kite was flying at a 35° angle of elevation, how far away was the palace from General Han Xin's position?
- **11.** Benny is flying a kite directly over his friend Frank, who is 125 meters away. When he holds the kite string down to the ground, the string makes a 39° angle with the level ground. How high is Benny's kite?
- **12.** *Application* The angle of elevation from a ship to the top of a 42-meter lighthouse on the shore measures 33°. How far is the ship from the lighthouse? (Assume the horizontal line of sight meets the bottom of the lighthouse.)
- **13.** *Application* A salvage ship's sonar locates wreckage at a 12° angle of depression. A diver is lowered 40 meters to the ocean floor. How far does the diver need to walk along the ocean floor to the wreckage?



**14.** Application A ship's officer sees a lighthouse at a 42° angle to the path of the ship. After the ship travels 1800 m, the lighthouse is at a 90° angle to the ship's path. What is the distance between the ship and the lighthouse at this second sighting?



When there are no visible landmarks, sailors at sea depend on the location of stars or the Sun for navigation. For example, in the Northern Hemisphere, Polaris (the North Star), stays approximately at the same angle above the horizon for a given latitude. If Polaris appears higher overhead or closer to the horizon, sailors can tell that their course is taking them north or south respectively.

This painting by Winslow Homer (1836–1910) is titled *Breezing Up* (1876).

- **15.** *Application* A meteorologist shines a spotlight vertically onto the bottom of a cloud formation. He then places an angle-measuring device 165 meters from the spotlight and measures an 84° angle of elevation from the ground to the spot of light on the clouds. How high are the clouds?
- **16.** *Application* Meteorologist Wendy Stevens uses a theodolite (an angle-measuring device) on a 1-metertall tripod to find the height of a weather balloon. She views the balloon at a 44° angle of elevation. A radio signal from the balloon tells her that it is 1400 meters from her theodolite.
  - **a.** How high is the balloon?
  - **b.** How far is she from the point directly below the balloon?
  - c. If Wendy's theodolite were on the ground rather than on a tripod, would your answers change? Explain your reasoning.



The distance from the ground to a cloud formation is called the cloud ceiling.



Weather balloons carry into the atmosphere a *radiosonde*, an instrument with sensors that detect information about wind direction, temperature, air pressure, and humidity. Twice a day across the world, this upper-air data is transmitted by radio waves to a receiving station. Meteorologists use the information to forecast the weather.



#### **Review**

For Exercises 17–19, find the measure of each angle to the nearest degree.

**17.** 
$$\sin D = 0.7071$$

**18.** 
$$\tan E = 1.7321$$

**19.** 
$$\cos F = 0.5$$

# Technology CONNECTION

The earliest known navigation tool was used by the Polynesians, yet it didn't measure angles. Early Polynesians carried several different-length hooks made from split bamboo and shells. A navigator held a hook at arm's length, positioned the bottom of the hook on the horizon, and sighted the North Star through the top of the hook. The length of the hook indicated the navigator's approximate latitude. Can you use trigonometry to explain how this method works?



**20.** Solve for x.

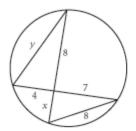
**a.** 
$$4.7 = \frac{x}{3.2}$$

**b.** 
$$8 = \frac{16.4}{x}$$

**c.** 
$$0.3736 = \frac{x}{14}$$

**d.** 0.9455= 
$$\frac{2.5}{x}$$

**21.** Find *x* and *y*.



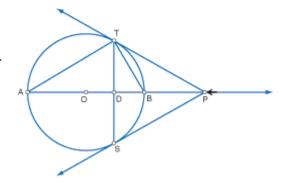
- **22.** A 3-by-5-by-6 cm block of wood is dropped into a cylindrical container of water with radius 5 cm. The level of the water rises 0.8 cm. Does the block sink or float? Explain how you know.
- **23.** Scalene triangle *ABC* has altitudes  $\overline{AX}$ ,  $\overline{BY}$ , and  $\overline{CZ}$ . If AB > BC > AC, write an inequality that relates the heights.
- **24.** In the diagram at right,  $\overline{PT}$  and  $\overline{PS}$  are tangent to circle O at points T and S, respectively. As point P moves to the right along  $\overline{AB}$ , describe what happens to each of these measures or ratios.
  - **a.**  $m \angle TPS$

**c.** 
$$m \angle ATB$$

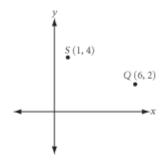
**d.** Area of 
$$\triangle ATB$$

e. 
$$\frac{AP}{BP}$$

f. 
$$\frac{AD}{RD}$$



**25.** Points *S* and *Q*, shown at right, are consecutive vertices of square *SQRE*. Find coordinates for the other two vertices, *R* and *E*. There are two possible answers. Try to find both.



# project

#### LIGHT FOR ALL SEASONS

You have seen that roof design is a practical application of slope—steep roofs shed snow and rain. But have you thought about the overhang of a roof?



In a hot climate, a deep overhang shelters windows from the sun.



In a cold climate, a narrow overhang lets in more light and warmth.

What roof design is common for homes in your area? What factors would an architect consider in the design of a roof relative to the position, size, and orientation of the windows? Do some research and build a shoebox model of the roof design you select.

What design is best for your area will depend on your latitude, because that determines the angle of the sun's light in different seasons. Research the astronomy of solar angles, then use trigonometry and a movable light source to illustrate the effects on your model.

Your project should include

- Research notes on seasonal solar angles.
- ► A narrative explanation, with mathematical support, for your choice of roof design, roof overhang, and window placement.
- ▶ Detailed, labeled drawings showing the range of light admitted from season to season, at a given time of day.
- ▶ A model with a movable light source.

# Exploration

## **Indirect Measurement**

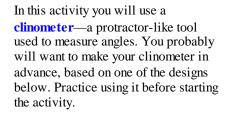
How would you measure the height of your school building? In Chapter 11, you used shadows, mirrors, and similar triangles to measure the height of tall objects that you couldn't measure directly. Right triangle trigonometry gives you yet another method of indirect measurement.

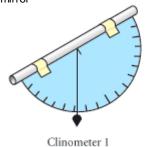
In this exploration you will use two or three different methods of indirect measurement. Then you will compare your results from each method.

## **Using a Clinometer**

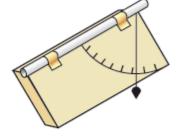
#### You will need

- a measuring tape or metersticks
- a clinometer (use the Making a Clinometer worksheet or make one of your own design)
- a mirror





Step 1



Clinometer 2

Locate a tall object that would be difficult to measure directly, such as a school building. Start a table like this one.

Na	me of object	Viewing angle	Height of observer's eye	Distance from observer to object	Calculated height of object		

Step 2 Use your clinometer to measure the viewing angle from the horizontal to the top of the object.

Step 3 Measure the observer's eye height. Measure the distance from the observer to the base of the object.

Step 4 Calculate the approximate height of the object.



U.S. Forest Service Ranger Al Sousi uses a clinometer to measure the angle of a mountain slope. In snowy conditions, a slope steeper than 35° can be a high avalanche hazard.

Step 5 Use either the shadow method or the mirror method or both to measure the height of the same object. How do your results compare? If you got different results, explain what part of each process could contribute to the differences.

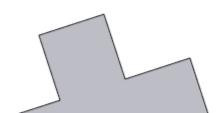
Repeat Steps 1–5 for another tall object. If you measure the height of the same object as another group, compare your results when you finish.

## IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

## Puzzle Shapes

Make five of these shapes and assemble them to form a square. Does it take three, four, or five of the shapes to make a square?

Step 6





© 2008 Key Curriculum Press EXPLORATION Indirect Measurement 653

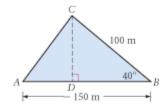


To think and to be fully alive are the same.

HANNAH ARENDT

## The Law of Sines

So far you have used trigonometry only to solve problems with right triangles. But you can use trigonometry with any triangle. For example, if you know the measures of two angles and one side of a triangle, you can find the other two sides with a trigonometric property called the **Law of Sines**. The Law of Sines is related to the area of a triangle. Let's first see how trigonometry can help you find area.



#### **EXAMPLE A**

Find the area of  $\triangle ABC$ .

Solution

Consider  $\overline{AB}$  as the base and use trigonometry to find the height, CD.

$$\sin 40^{\circ} = \frac{CD}{100}$$
 In  $\triangle BCD$ ,  $CD$  is the length of the opposite side and 100 is the length of the hypotenuse.

$$100 \cdot \sin 40^{\circ} = CD$$
 Multiply both sides by 100 and reduce the right side.

Now find the area.

$$A = 0.5bh$$
 Area formula for a triangle.

$$A = 0.5(AB)(CD)$$
 Substitute AB for the length of the base and CD

for the height.

$$A = 0.5(150)(100 \cdot \sin 40^{\circ})$$
 Substitute 150 for AB and substitute the expression

 $(100 \cdot \sin 40^\circ)$  for *CD*.

$$A \approx 4821$$
 Evaluate.

The area is approximately 4821 m<sup>2</sup>.

In the next investigation, you will find a general formula for the area of a triangle given the lengths of two sides and the measure of the included angle.

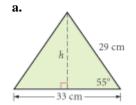


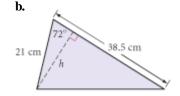
## Investigation 1

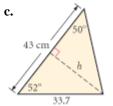
## Area of a Triangle

Step 1

Find the area of each triangle. Use Example A as a guide.

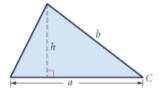






Step 2 Generalize Step 1 to find the area of this triangle in terms of a, b, and  $\angle C$ .

State your general formula as your next conjecture.



#### SAS Triangle Area Conjecture

C-100

The area of a triangle is given by the formula A = 1, where a and b are the lengths of two sides and C is the angle between them.

Now use what you've learned about finding the area of a triangle to derive the property called the Law of Sines.

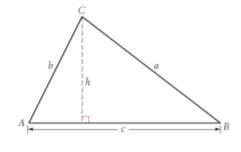


## **Investigation 2**

## The Law of Sines

Consider  $\triangle ABC$  with height h.

- Step 1 Find h in terms of a and the sine of an angle.
- Step 2 Find *h* in terms of *b* and the sine of an angle.
- Step 3 Use algebra to show  $\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin B}{b}$

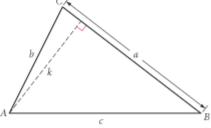


Now consider the same  $\triangle ABC$  using a different height, k.

- Step 4 Find k in terms of c and the sine of an angle.
- Step 5 Find *k* in terms of *b* and the sine of an angle.
- Step 6 Use algebra to show

$$\frac{\sin B}{b} = \frac{\sin C}{c}$$

Step 7 Combine Steps 3 and 6. Complete this conjecture.



Law of Sines C-101

For a triangle with angles A, B, and C and sides of lengths a, b, and c (a opposite A, b opposite B, and c opposite C),

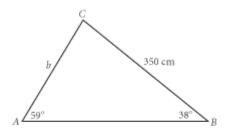
$$\frac{\sin A}{?} = \frac{?}{b} = \frac{?}{?}$$

Did you notice that you used deductive reasoning rather than inductive reasoning to discover the Law of Sines?

You can use the Law of Sines to find the lengths of a triangle's sides when you know one side's length and two angles' measures.

#### **EXAMPLE B**

Find the length of side  $A\overline{C}$ in  $\triangle ABC$ .



#### Solution

Start with the Law of Sines, and solve for b.

$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin B}{b}$$

 $b \sin A = a \sin B$ 

$$b = \frac{a \sin B}{\sin A}$$

$$b = \frac{(350)(\sin 38^{\circ})}{\sin 59^{\circ}}$$

$$b \approx 251$$

The Law of Sines.

Multiply both sides by ab and reduce.

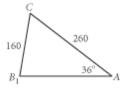
Divide both sides by sin A and reduce the left side.

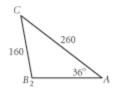
Substitute 350 for a, 38° for B, and 59° for A.

Multiply and divide.

The length of side  $\overline{AC}$  is approximately 251 cm.

You can also use the Law of Sines to find the measure of a missing angle, but only if you know whether the angle is acute or obtuse. Recall from Chapter 4 that SSA failed as a congruence shortcut. For example, if you know in  $\triangle ABC$  that BC = 160 cm, AC = 260 cm, and  $m\angle A = 36^{\circ}$ , you would not be able to find  $m \angle B$ . There are two possible measures for  $\angle B$ , one acute and one obtuse.

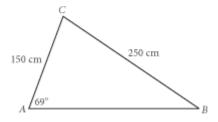




Because you've defined trigonometric ratios only for acute angles, you'll be asked to find only acute angle measures.

### **EXAMPLE C**

Find the measure of angle B in  $\triangle ABC$ .



#### Solution

Start with the Law of Sines, and solve for *B*.

$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin B}{b}$$

The Law of Sines.

$$\sin B = \frac{b \sin A}{a}$$

Solve for  $\sin B$ .

$$\sin B = \frac{(150)(\sin 69^{\circ})}{250}$$

Substitute known values.

$$B = \sin^{-1} \left[ \frac{(150)(\sin 69^{\circ})}{250} \right]$$

Take the inverse sine of both sides.

$$B \approx 34$$

Use your calculator to evaluate.

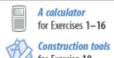
The measure of  $\angle B$  is approximately 34°.



In Exercises 1–4, find the area of each polygon to the nearest square

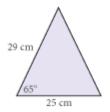
## **EXERCISES**

You will need

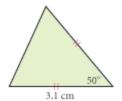


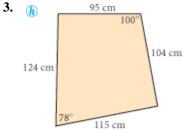
1.

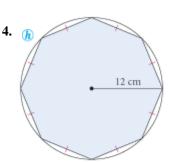
centimeter.



2.

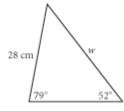




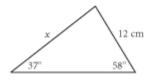


In Exercises 5–7, find each length to the nearest centimeter.

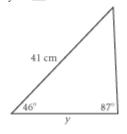




**6.** 
$$x \approx ?$$

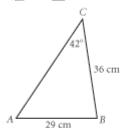


7.  $y \approx ?$ 

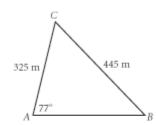


For Exercises 8–10, each triangle is an acute triangle. Find each angle measure to the nearest degree.

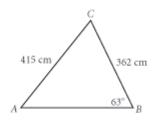
8.  $m \angle A \approx ?$ 



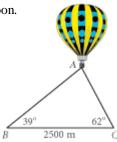
9.  $m \angle B \approx ?$ 



10.  $m \angle C \approx ?$ 



- **11.** Alphonse (point *A*) is over a 2500-meter landing strip in a hot-air balloon. At one end of the strip, Beatrice (point *B*) sees Alphonse with an angle of elevation measuring  $39^{\circ}$ . At the other end of the strip, Collette (point *C*) sees Alphonse with an angle of elevation measuring  $62^{\circ}$ .
  - **a.** What is the distance between Alphonse and Beatrice?
  - **b.** What is the distance between Alphonse and Collette?
  - **c.** How high up is Alphonse?

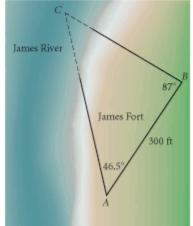


## History CONNECTION

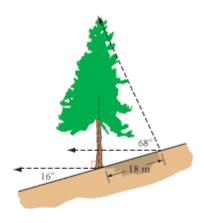
For over 200 years, people believed that the entire site of James Fort was washed into the James River. Archaeologists have recently uncovered over 250 feet of the fort's wall, as well as hundreds of thousands of artifacts dating to the early 1600s.

12. Application Archaeologists have recently started uncovering remains of James Fort (also known as Jamestown Fort) in Virginia. The fort was in the shape of an isosceles triangle. Unfortunately, one corner has disappeared into the James River. If the remaining complete wall measures 300 feet and the remaining corners measure 46.5° and 87°, how long were the two incomplete walls? What was the approximate area of the original fort?





13. A tree grows vertically on a hillside. The hill is at a 16° angle to the horizontal. The tree casts an 18-meter shadow up the hill when the angle of elevation of the sun measures 68°. How tall is the tree?



#### **Review**

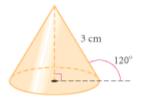
**14.** Read the History Connection below. Each step of El Castillo is 30 cm deep by 26 cm high. How tall is the pyramid, not counting the platform at the top? What is the angle of ascent?

## History CONNECTION •

One of the most impressive Mayan pyramids is El Castillo in Chichén Itzá, Mexico. Built in approximately 800 C.E., it has 91 steps on each of its four sides, or 364 steps in all. The top platform adds a level, so the pyramid has 365 levels to represent the number of days in the Mayan year.



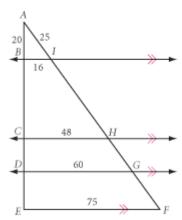
- **15.** According to legend, Galileo (1564–1642, Italy) used the Leaning Tower of Pisa to conduct his experiments in gravity. Assume that when he dropped objects from the top of the 55-meter tower (this is the measured length, not the height, of the tower), they landed 4.8 meters from the tower's base. What was the angle that the tower was leaning from the vertical?
- **16.** Find the volume of this cone.



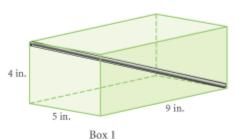
- 17. Use the circle diagram at right and write a paragraph proof to show that  $\triangle ABE$  is isosceles.
- **18.** *Construction* Put two points on patty paper. Assume these points are opposite vertices of a square. Find the two missing vertices.

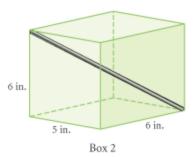


**19.** Find *AC*, *AE*, and *AF*. All measurements are in centimeters.



**20.** Both boxes are right rectangular prisms. In which is the diagonal rod longer? How much longer is it?



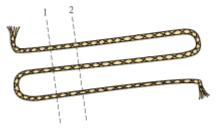




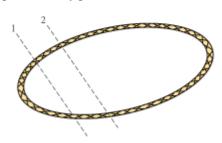
### Rope Tricks

Each rope will be cut 50 times as shown. For each rope, how many pieces will result?

1.



2.





LESSON

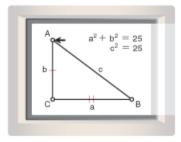
12.4

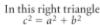
A ship in a port is safe, but that is not what ships are built for. JOHN A. SHEDD

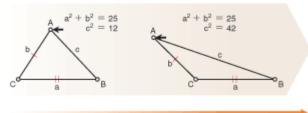
## The Law of Cosines

You've solved a variety of problems with the Pythagorean Theorem. It is perhaps your most important geometry conjecture. In Chapter 9, you found that the distance formula is really just the Pythagorean Theorem. You even used the Pythagorean Theorem to derive the equation of a circle.

The Pythagorean Theorem is very powerful, but its use is still limited to right triangles. Recall from Chapter 9 that the Pythagorean Theorem does not work for acute triangles or obtuse triangles. You might ask, "What happens to the Pythagorean equation for acute triangles or obtuse triangles?"







In this acute triangle  $c^2 < a^2 + b^2$ 

In this obtuse triangle  $c^2 > a^2 + b^2$ 



For an interactive version of this sketch, see the **Dynamic Geometry Exploration**The Law of Cosines at <a href="https://www.keymath.com/DG">www.keymath.com/DG</a>.

If the legs of a right triangle are brought closer together so that the right angle becomes an acute angle, you'll find that  $c^2 < a^2 + b^2$ . In order to make this inequality into an equality, you would have to subtract something from  $a^2 + b^2$ .

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - something$$

If the legs are widened to form an obtuse angle, you'll find that  $c^2 > a^2 + b^2$ . Here, you'd have to add something to make an equality.

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 + something$$

Mathematicians found that the "something" was 2*ab* cos *C*. The Pythagorean Theorem generalizes to all triangles with a property called the **Law of Cosines**.

#### Law of Cosines

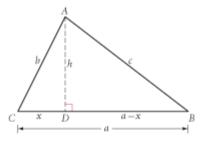
C-102

For any triangle with sides of lengths a, b, and c, and with C the angle opposite the side with length c,

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C$$

For obtuse angles, the expression  $2ab\cos C$  is negative, so subtracting it adds a positive quantity. Trigonometric ratios for angles larger than 90° are introduced in the Exploration Trigonometric Ratios and the Unit Circle.

To derive the Law of Cosines for an acute triangle, consider acute  $\triangle ABC$  with altitude AD, as shown at right. You can define the lengths of the sides opposite angles A, B, and C as a, b, and c, respectively, the height as h, and the length of  $\overline{CD}$  as x. The length of  $\overline{BD}$  is the difference between the lengths of  $B\overline{C}$ and CD or a - x.



Using the Pythagorean Theorem, you can write two equations. By algebra, you can expand  $(a - x)^2$ .

$$x^{2} + h^{2} = b^{2}$$
  $(a - x)^{2} + h^{2} = c^{2}$   
 $a^{2} - 2ax + x^{2} + h^{2} = c^{2}$ 

Notice that this new equation contains  $x^2 + h^2$ , which you know is equal to  $b^2$  from the first equation. Substitute, rearrange the terms, and reverse the equation.

$$a^{2} - 2ax + b^{2} = c^{2}$$
  
 $a^{2} + b^{2} - 2ax = c^{2}$   
 $c^{2} = a^{2} + b^{2} - 2ax$ 

Now you need to replace x with an expression containing the cosine of C. Using  $\triangle ACD$ , you can write the following equation and then solve for x.

$$\cos C = \frac{x}{b}$$

$$b \cos C = x$$

Substituting this expression for x into the equation above results in the Law of Cosines.

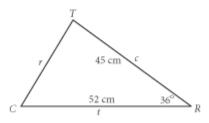
$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab\cos C$$

While this derivation of the Law of Cosines is for an acute triangle, it also works for obtuse triangles. Deriving the Law of Cosines for an obtuse triangle is left as a Take Another Look activity.

You can use the Law of Cosines when you are given three side lengths or two side lengths and the angle measure between them (SSS or SAS).

#### **EXAMPLE A**

Find the length of side CT in triangle CRT.



#### Solution

To find r, use the Law of Cosines:

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C$$

The Law of Cosines.

Using the variables in this problem, the Law of Cosines becomes

$$r^{2} = c^{2} + t^{2} - 2ct \cos R$$

$$r^{2} = 45^{2} + 52^{2} - 2(45)(52)(\cos 36^{\circ})$$

$$r = \sqrt{45^{2} + 52^{2} - 2(45)(52)(\cos 36^{\circ})}$$

$$r = 31$$

The length of side  $\overline{CT}$  is about 31 cm.

Substitute r for c, c for a, t for b, and R for C.

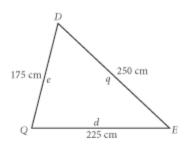
Substitute 45 for c,52 for t, and 36° for R.

Take the positive square root of both sides.

Evaluate.

#### EXAMPLE B

Find the measure of  $\angle Q$  in triangle *QED*.



#### Solution

Use the Law of Cosines and solve for Q.

$$q^{2} = e^{2} + d^{2} - 2ed \cos Q$$

$$\cos Q = \frac{q^{2} - e^{2} - d^{2}}{-2ed}$$

$$\cos Q = \frac{250^{2} - 175^{2} - 225^{2}}{-2(175)(225)}$$

$$Q = \cos^{-1} \left[ \frac{250^{2} - 175^{2} - 225^{2}}{-2(175)(225)} \right]$$

$$Q = 76$$

The measure of  $\angle Q$  is about 76°.

The Law of Cosines with respect to  $\angle Q$ .

Solve for cos O.

Substitute known values.

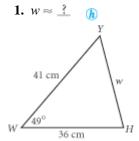
Take the inverse cosine of both sides.

Evaluate.



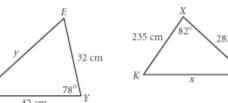
# **EXERCISES**

In Exercises 1–3, find each length to the nearest centimeter.



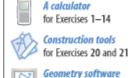


**2.**  $y \approx ?$ 

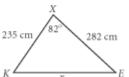


3.  $x \approx ?$ 

#### You will need



for Exercise 22

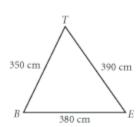


In Exercises 4–6, each triangle is an acute triangle. Find each angle measure to the nearest degree.

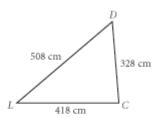
4.  $m \angle A \approx ?$ 



5.  $m \angle B \approx ?$ 



6.  $m \angle C \approx ?$ 



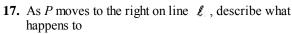
- 7. Two 24-centimeter radii of a circle form a central angle measuring 126°. What is the length of the chord connecting the two radii?
- 8. Find the measure of the smallest angle in a triangle whose side lengths are 4 m, 7 m, and 8 m.
- 9. Two sides of a parallelogram measure 15 cm and 20 cm, and one of the diagonals measures 19 cm. What are the measures of the angles of the parallelogram to the nearest degree?
- 10. Application Captain Malloy is flying a passenger jet. He is heading east at 720 km/h when he sees an electrical storm straight ahead. He turns the jet 20° to the north to avoid the storm and continues in this direction for 1 h. Then he makes a second turn, back toward his original flight path. Eighty minutes after his second turn, he makes a third turn and is back on course. By avoiding the storm, how much time did Captain Malloy lose from his original flight plan?



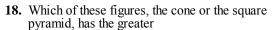
#### Review

- **11.** *Application* A cargo company loads truck trailers into ship cargo containers. The trucks drive up a ramp to a horizontal loading platform 30 ft off the ground, but they have difficulty driving up a ramp at an angle steeper than 20°. What is the minimum length that the ramp needs to be?
- of a square-based Egyptian pyramid. The base is intact and measures 130 meters on each side. The top of the pyramid has with the ground. What was the original height of the pyramid?

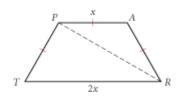
- **13.** *Application* A lighthouse 55 meters above sea level spots a distress signal from a sailboat. The angle of depression to the sailboat measures 21°. How far away is the sailboat from the base of the lighthouse?
- **14.** *Application* A painting company has a general safety rule to place ladders at an angle measuring between 55° and 75° from the level ground. Regina places the foot of her 25 ft ladder 6 ft from the base of a wall. What is the angle of the ladder? Is the ladder placed safely? If not, how far from the base of the wall should she place the ladder?
- **15.** Show that  $\frac{\sin A}{\cos A} = \tan A$ .
- **16.** TRAP is an isosceles trapezoid. **(h)** 
  - **a.** Find PR in terms of x
  - **b.** Write a paragraph proof to show that  $m\angle TPR = 90^{\circ}$ .

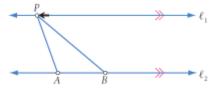


- **a.** *m*∠*ABP*
- **b.**  $m \angle PAB$
- **c.** *m*∠*APB*



- a. Base perimeter?
- **b.** Volume?
- c. Surface area?







Animate points



- **19.** What single transformation is equivalent to the composition of each pair of functions? Write a rule for each.
  - **a.** A reflection over the line x = -2 followed by a reflection over the line x = 3
  - **b.** A reflection over the *x*-axis followed by a reflection over the *y*-axis
- 20. Construction Construct two rectangles that are not similar.
- **21.** Construction Construct two isosceles trapezoids that are similar.
- 22. Technology Use geometry software to construct two circles. Connect the circles with a segment and construct the midpoint of the segment. Animate the endpoints of the segment around the circles and trace the midpoint of the segment. What shape does the midpoint of the segment trace? Try adjusting the relative size of the radii of the circles; try changing the distance between the centers of the circles; try starting the endpoints of the segment in different positions; or try animating the endpoints of the segment in different directions. Descriptions

segment in different positions; or try animating the endpoints of the segment in different directions. Describe how these changes affect the shape traced by the midpoint of the segment.



#### JAPANESE TEMPLE TABLETS

**F** or centuries it has been customary in Japan to hang colorful wooden tablets in Shinto shrines to honor the gods of this native religion. During Japan's historical period of isolation (1639–1854), this tradition continued with a mathematical twist. Merchants, farmers, and others who were dedicated to mathematical learning made tablets containing mathematical problems, called *sangaku*, to inspire and challenge visitors. See if you can answer this *sangaku* problem.

These circles are tangent to each other and to the line. How are the radii of the three circles related?

Research other *sangaku* problems, then design your own tablet. Your project should include

- ▶ Your solution to the problem above.
- ▶ Some problems you found during your research and your sources.
- Your own decorated *sangaku* tablet with its solution on the back.



These colorful tablets, some with gold engraving, usually contain geometry problems.

Photographs by Hiroshi Umeoka.





One ship drives east and another drives west With the self-same winds that blow.

not the gales
Which tells us the way to go.

ELLA WHEELER WILCOX

Tis the set of the sails and

# Problem Solving with Trigonometry

There are many practical applications of trigonometry. Some of them involve vectors. In earlier vector activities, you used a ruler or a protractor to measure the size of the resulting vector or the angle between vectors. Now you will be able to calculate the resulting vectors with the Law of Sines or the Law of Cosines.



#### **EXAMPLE**

Rowing instructor Calista Thomas is in a stream flowing north to south at 3 km/h. She is rowing northeast at a rate of 4.5 km/h. At what speed is she moving? In which direction (bearing) is she actually moving?

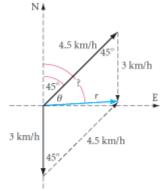
#### Solution

First, sketch and label the vector parallelogram. The resultant vector, *r*, divides the parallelogram into two congruent triangles. In each triangle you know the lengths of two sides and the measure of the included angle. Use the Law of Cosines to find the length of the resultant vector or the speed that it represents.

$$r^{2} = 4.5^{2} + 3^{2} - 2(4.5)(3)(\cos 45^{\circ})$$

$$r^{2} = 4.5^{2} + 3^{2} - 2(4.5)(3)(\cos 45^{\circ})$$

$$r = 3.2$$



Calista is moving at a speed of approximately 3.2km/h.

To find Calista's bearing (an angle measured clockwise from north), you need to find  $\theta$ , and add its measure to 45°. Use the Law of Sines.

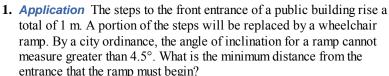
$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\sin \theta}{3} &= \frac{\sin 45^{\circ}}{3.2} \\ \sin \theta &= \frac{3 \cdot \sin 45^{\circ}}{3.2} \\ \theta &= \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{3 \cdot \sin 45^{\circ}}{3.2} \right) \approx 42^{\circ} \end{aligned}$$

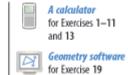
Add 42° and 45° to find that Calista is moving at a bearing of 87°.

#### EXERCISES

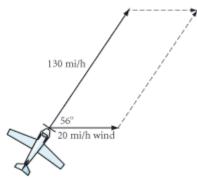


You will need





- **2.** Application Giovanni is flying his Cessna airplane on a heading as shown. His instrument panel shows an air speed of 130 mi/h. (Air speed is the speed in still air without wind.) However, there is a 20 mi/h crosswind. What is the resulting speed of the plane?
- **3.** Application A lighthouse is east of a Coast Guard patrol boat. The Coast Guard station is 20 km north of the lighthouse. The radar officer aboard the boat measures the angle between the lighthouse and the station to be 23°. How far is the boat from the station?



**4.** Application The Archimedean screw is a water-raising device that consists of a wooden screw enclosed within a cylinder. When the cylinder is turned, the screw raises water. The screw is very efficient at an angle measuring 25°. If a screw needs to raise water



cylinder be?

2.5 meters, how long should its

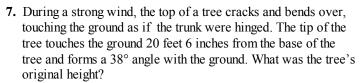
2.5 m

Used for centuries in Egypt to lift water from the Nile River, the Archimedean screw is thought to have been invented by Archimedes in the third century B.C.E., when he sailed to Egypt. It is also called an Archimedes Snail because of its spiral channels that resemble a snail shell. Once powered by people or animals, the device is now modernized to shift grain in mills and powders in factories.

- 5. Application Annie and Sashi are backpacking in the Sierra Nevada. They walk 8 km from their base camp at a bearing of 42°. After lunch, they change direction to a bearing of 137° and walk another 5 km.
  - **a.** How far are Annie and Sashi from their base camp?
  - b. At what bearing must Sashi and Annie travel to return to their base camp?

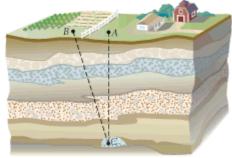


**6.** A surveyor at point A needs to calculate the distance to an island's dock, point C. He walks 150 meters up the shoreline to point B such that  $AB \perp AC$ . Angle ABC measures 58°. What is the distance between A and C?





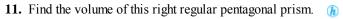
**8.** Application A pocket of matrix opal is known to be 24 meters beneath point *A* on Alan Ranch. A mining company has acquired rights to mine beneath Alan Ranch, but not the right to bring equipment onto the property. So the mining company cannot dig straight down. Brian Ranch has given permission to dig on its property at point *B*, 8 meters from point *A*. At what angle to the level ground must the mining crew dig to reach the opal? What distance must they dig?

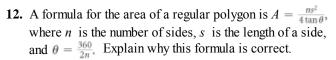


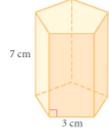
9. Todd's friend Olivia is flying her plane at an elevation of 6.3 km. From the ground, Todd sees the plane moving directly toward him from the west at a 49° angle of elevation. Three minutes later he turns and sees the plane moving away from him to the east at a 65° angle of elevation. How fast is Olivia flying in kilometers per hour?



- **10.** Draw a regular decagon with side length 6 cm. Divide the decagon into ten congruent isosceles triangles.
  - a. Find the length of the apothem, and then use the Regular Polygon Area Conjecture to find the area of the decagon.
  - **b.** Find the lengths of the legs of the isosceles triangles, and then use the SAS Triangle Area Conjecture to find the area of each isosceles triangle. Multiply to find the area of the decagon.
  - **c.** Compare your answers from parts a and b.



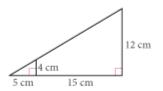




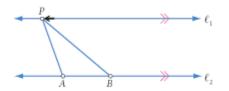
hill. Farmer Golden attaches a 14.5-meter rope to the pipe's entry point and an 11.2-meter rope to the exit point. When he pulls the ropes taut, their ends meet at a 58° angle. What is the length of pipe needed to go through the hill? At what angle with respect to the first rope should the pipe be laid so that it comes out of the hill at the correct exit point?

#### **Review**

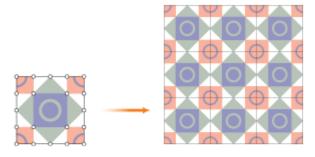
- 14. Find the volume of the largest cube that can fit into a sphere with a radius of 12 cm.
- **15.** How does the area of a triangle change if its vertices are transformed by the rule  $(x, y) \rightarrow (-3x, -3y)$ ? Give an example to support your answer.
- **16. Developing Proof** What's wrong with this picture?



- 17. As P moves to the right on line  $\ell_1$ , describe what happens to
  - **a.** *PA*
  - **b.** Area of  $\triangle APB$



- **18.** What single transformation is equivalent to the composition of each pair of functions? Write a rule for each.
  - **a.** A reflection across the line y = x followed by a counterclockwise 270° rotation about the origin
  - **b.** A rotation  $180^{\circ}$  about the origin followed by a reflection across the x-axis
- **19.** *Technology* Tile floors are often designed by creating simple, symmetric patterns on squares. When the squares are lined up, the patterns combine, often leaving the original squares hardly visible. Use geometry software to create your own tile-floor pattern.



### IMPROVING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS

#### Substitute and Solve

- 1. If 2x = 3y, y = 5w, and  $w = \frac{20}{3z^*}$  find x in terms of z.
- **2.** If 7x = 13y, y = 28w, and  $w = \frac{9}{26z^3}$  find x in terms of z.







# **Trigonometric Ratios** and the Unit Circle

In Lesson 12.1, trigonometric ratios are defined in terms of the sides of a right triangle, which limits you to acute angles. In the coordinate plane, it's possible to define trigonometric ratios for angles with measures less than 0° and greater than 90° by using the unit circle—a circle with center (0, 0) and radius 1 unit.

In this activity, you'll first use Sketchpad to explore how a unit circle simplifies the trigonometric ratios for acute angles. Then you'll use the unit circle to explore the ratios for all angles, from 0° to 360°, and even negative angle measures.



The height of a seat on a Ferris wheel can be modeled by unit-circle trigonometry. This Ferris wheel, called the London Eye, was built for London's year 2000 celebration.

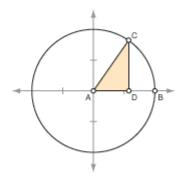
## Activity

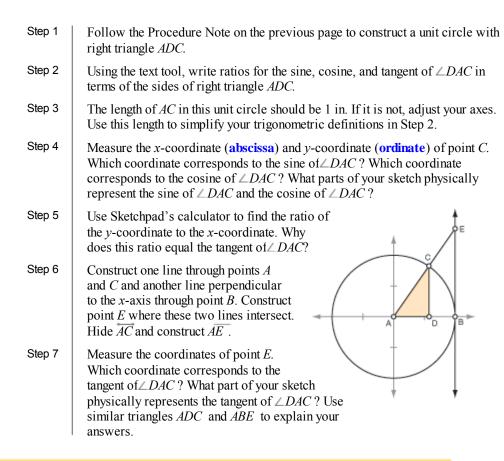
## **The Unit Circle**

#### Procedure Note

#### **Unit Circle Construction**

- Choose Preferences from the Edit menu. On the Units panel, set Angle Units to degrees and Distance Units to inches.
- 2. Choose **Define Coordinate System** from the Graph menu. Label the points at the origin and (1, 0) as *A* and *B*, respectively. Hide the grid.
- Construct a circle with center A and radius point B.
- **4.** Construct point *C* on the circle and move it to the first quadrant. Construct radius  $\overline{AC}$ .
- **5.** Construct a line perpendicular to the *x*-axis through point *C*.
- Construct point D where the line from the previous stepintersects thex-axis, and then hide the line. Construct CD.
- **7.** Select points *A*, *D*, and *C* and construct the triangle interior.



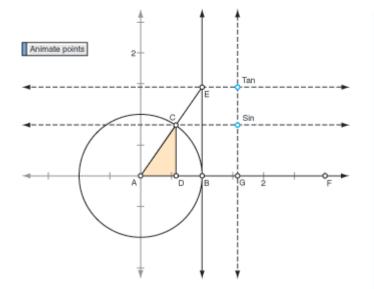


If you drag point C into another quadrant,  $\angle DAC$  is still an acute angle. In order to modify the definition of trigonometric ratios in a unit circle, you need to measure the amount of rotation from AB to  $\overline{AC}$ . You will do this by measuring the arc from point B to point C, which is equal to the measure of the central angle,  $\angle BAC$ .

- Select in order point B, point C, and the circle, and construct  $\overline{BC}$ . While it is still Step 8 selected, make the arc thick and measure the arc angle.
- Drag point Caround the circle and watch how the measure of BC changes. Step 9 Summarize your observations.
- Step 10 Use Sketchpad's calculator to calculate the value of the sine, cosine, and tangent of the measure of  $\overline{BC}$ . Compare these values to the coordinates of point C and point E. Do the values support your answers to Steps 4 and 7?
- Step 11 Drag point C around the circle and watch how the trigonometric ratios change for angle measures between 0° and 360°. Answer these questions.
  - a. How does the sine change as the measure of the arc angle (and therefore the angle of rotation) goes from 0° to 90° to 180°? From 180° to 270° to 360°?
  - **b.** How does the cosine change?

- **c.** If the sine of one angle is equal to the cosine of another angle, how are the angles related to each other?
- **d.** How does the tangent change? What happens to the tangent as the measure approaches  $90^{\circ}$  or  $270^{\circ}$ ? Based on the definition of tangent and the side lengths in  $\triangle ADC$ , what do you think is the value of the tangent of  $90^{\circ}$ ?

You can add an interesting animation that will graph the changing sine and tangent values in your sketch. You can construct points that will trace curves that represent the functions  $y = \sin(x)$  and  $y = \tan(x)$ .

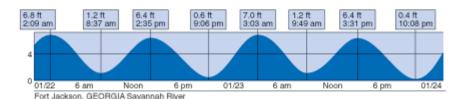


#### Procedure Note

#### **Animation of Sine and Tangent Curves**

- In your unit circle sketch from Step 12, move pointC into the first quadrant.
- **2.** Construct point F on the x-axis. Construct  $\overline{AF}$ .
- **3.** Construct point G on  $\overline{AF}$ .
- **4.** Construct a line perpendicular to  $\overline{AF}$  through point G.
- Construct lines parallel to the x-axis through pointsC andE.
- Construct a point where the horizontal line through C intersects the vertical line through G and label it Sin.
- Construct a point where the horizontal line through E intersects the vertical line through G and label it Tan.
- 8. Select points G and C. In the Edit menu, choose Animation from the Action Buttons submenu. On the Animate panel, change the settings to Animate point G forward at medium speed and point C counterclockwise at medium speed.
- Step 12 Follow the Procedure Note to add an animation that will trace curves representing the sine and tangent functions.
- Step 13 Measure the coordinates of point F, then locate it as close to (6.28, 0) as possible. Select points Sin and Tan and choose **Trace Intersections** from the Display menu. Move point G to the origin and move point G to G to G to the origin and move point G to G to G to the press the G to the G
- What's special about 6.28 as the *x*-coordinate of point *F*? Try other locations for point *F* to see what happens. Use what you know about circles to explain why 6.28 is a special value for the unit circle.

The high and low points of tides can be modeled with trigonometry. This tide table from the Savannah River in Fort Jackson, Georgia, shows a familiar pattern in its data.



Step 15

To explore negative angle measures, choose **Preferences** from the Edit menu. On the Units panel, set Angle Units to **directed degrees.** Select in order point B, point A, and point C, and measure  $\angle BAC$ . Drag point C around the circle and watch how the measure of  $\angle BAC$  changes. How is it related to the measure of BC?

Step 16

Go back to the Units panel and set Angle Units to radians. Observe how the radian measure of  $\angle BAC$  is related to the position of point C and the traced functions. You will probably learn much more about radians and unit-circle trigonometry in a future mathematics course.



#### GONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

You've seen many applications where you can use trigonometry to find distances or angle measures. Another important application of trigonometry is to model **periodic** phenomena, which repeat over time.

In this project you'll discover characteristics of the graphs of trigonometric functions, including their periodic nature. The three functions you'll look at are

$$y = \sin(x)$$
  $y = \cos(x)$   $y = \tan(x)$ 

These functions are defined not only for acute angles, but also for angles with measures less than 0° and greater than 90°.





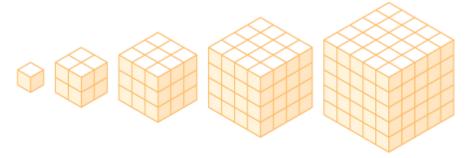
The swinging motion of a pendulum is an example of periodic motion that can be modeled by trigonometry.

Set your calculator in degree mode and set a window with an x-range of -360 to 360 and a y-range of -2 to 2. One at a time, graph each trigonometric function. Describe the characteristics of each graph, including maximum and minimum values for y and the period—the horizontal distance after which the graph starts repeating itself. Use what you know about the definitions of sine, cosine, and tangent to explain any unusual occurrences. Next, try graphing pairs of trigonometric functions. Describe any relationships you see between the graphs. Are there any values in common?

Prepare an organized presentation of your results. Your project should include

- ► Clear descriptions and sketches.
- Explanations of your findings, using what you know about sine, cosine, and tangent definitions.

## **Transforming Functions**



Consider how the various measurements of a cube are related to the length of an edge. The following table gives some measurements for the cubes shown above.

Edge length (cm)	1	2	3	4	5	 20.5	 x
Height (cm)	1	2	3	4	5	 20.5	 х
Face perimeter (cm)	4	8	12	16	20	 82	 4x
Face area (cm <sup>2</sup> )	1	4	9	16	25	 420.25	 $\chi^2$
Surface area (cm <sup>2</sup> )	6	24	54	96	150	 2521.5	 $6x^2$
Volume (cm <sup>3</sup> )	1	8	27	64	125	 8615.13	 $x^3$

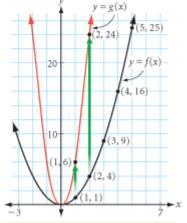
You can model these data using functions. For example, the area of a face can be modeled by the function  $f(x) = x^2$ , and the surface area can be modeled by the function  $g(x) = 6x^2$ , where x is the edge length.

You can use these functions to find values for any size cube, such as the surface area of a cube that has an edge length of 20.5. You substitute the value in for x and evaluate the function.

$$f(20.5) = 6(20.5)^2 = 2521.5 \text{ cm}^2$$

You can find points representing the area and surface area for several edge lengths on the graphs at right. Graphs of quadratic functions like these are called **parabolas**. How are the graphs of the points different from the graphs of the functions?

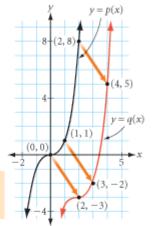
The graph of function g is the same as the graph of function f, except that it is stretched vertically by a factor of 6. A vertical stretch (or shrink) is one type of function transformation.



For any value of x, the point on the graph of g is six times farther from the x-axis than the point on the graph of f.

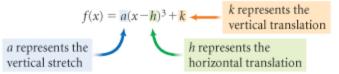
#### ALGEBRA SKILLS 12 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 12 • USING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS 12 • US

You are already familiar with another type of function transformation from your work with ordered pair rules and vectors. The rule  $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 2, y - 3)$  results in a translation by the vector (2, -3). This rule translates the graph of cubic function  $p(x) = x^3$  to produce the graph of cubic function  $q(x) = (x - 2)^3 - 3$ . In the equation for function q, note that the horizontal translation is subtracted from x.



This transformation consists of a horizontal translation of 2 and a vertical translation of -3.

In general, if a cubic function is translated by (h, k) and stretched by a factor of a, the function can be written like this.



You will be looking at the transformations of these families of functions, including some of those related to the trigonometry you have been studying in this chapter.

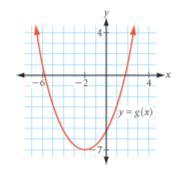
#### **Families of Functions**

$$f(x) = a(x - h) + k$$
 Linear functions  
 $f(x) = a(x - h)^2 + k$  Quadratic functions  
 $f(x) = a(x - h)^3 + k$  Cubic functions  
 $f(x) = a|x - h| + k$  Absolute-value functions  
 $f(x) = a\sin(x - h) + k$  Sine functions (one of the trigonometric functions)

Each family has a parent function that is the basic form of the function with a = 1, h = 0, and k = 0. Other members of a family result from transforming the parent function.

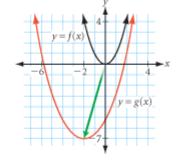
#### **EXAMPLE**

Write an equation for function g in the graph at right, and describe the function as a transformation of its parent function.



#### Solution

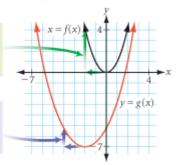
Because the graph is a parabola, the parent function is  $f(x) = x^2$ . The vertex of the parent function is (0, 0), while the vertex of function g is (-2, -7), so function g has horizontal translation -2 and vertical translation -7. The equation so far is  $g(x) = a[x - (-2)]^2 - 7$ , or simplifying the double negative,  $g(x) = a(x + 2)^2 - 7$ .



One method for finding the vertical stretch, *a*, is to think about corresponding points on the two graphs. For any horizontal distance

from the vertex, the corresponding vertical distance from the vertex of graph h is half that of graph f. So, the vertical stretch is  $a = \frac{1}{2}$ .

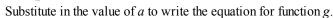
In parent function f, when you move 2 units left of the vertex, you move 4 units up to find a point on the graph.



In transformed function *g*, when you move 2 units left of the vertex, you move 2 units up to find a point on the graph.

Another method for finding a is to substitute one point from the graph (other than the vertex) into the equation containing the translation, then solve for a algebraically.

$$g(x) = a(x + 2)^2 - 7$$
 Equation with translation.  
 $-5 = a(-4 + 2)^2 - 7$  Use the point  $(-4, -5)$ .  
 $-5 = 4a - 7$  Simplify the parentheses and square.  
 $\frac{1}{2} = a$  Add 7 to both sides and divide by 4.

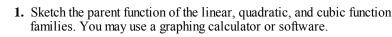


$$g(x) = \frac{1}{2}(x+2)^2 - 7$$

Function g has a vertical stretch by a factor of  $\frac{1}{2}$ , a horizontal translation left 2 units, and a vertical translation down 7 units.



#### EXERCISES You will need





**2.** Absolute value measures the distance from zero, so it is always positive or zero. For example, |-4| = 4. Sketch the parent absolute-value function f(x) = |x|, the function g(x) = |x - 5|, and the function h(x) = |x| - 5. Explain the similarities and differences between the three graphs.

- 3. Sketch the graphs  $f(x) = -x^2$ , g(x) = -|x|, and  $g(x) = -x^3$ . Explain how a vertical stretch by a factor of -1 transforms a graph.
- **4.** Graph the function p(x) = 2(x + 3) 5 using transformations. Simplify the expression on the right side of the equation and graph it again using the slope and *y*-intercept. How is the slope of a line related to the vertical stretch? What is the value of the *y*-intercept for the general linear function f(x) = a(x h) + k?

For Exercises 5–8, describe each function as a transformation of its parent function, then graph the function.

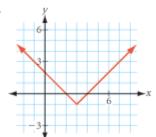
**5.** 
$$f(x) = 2x^3 - 5$$

**6.** 
$$g(x) = (x - 5)^3 + 2$$

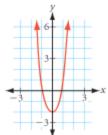
7. 
$$p(x) = \frac{1}{2}|x-2|-5$$

For Exercises 8–16, write the equation of each graph, and describe each function as a transformation of its parent function.

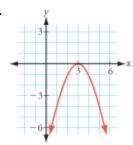
8.



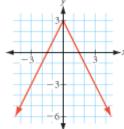
9.



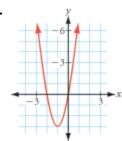
10.



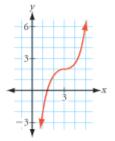
11.



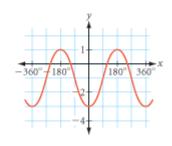
12.



13.



- **14.** Using the degree mode of your graphing calculator, set your graphing window so that x-values go from -360 to 360 and y-values go from -2 to 2. Sketch the parent trigonometric functions  $p(x) = \sin(x)$  and  $q(x) = \cos(x)$ . Explain the similarities and differences between the two graphs.
- **15.** What type of function transformation transforms the parent cosine function into the parent sine function? Find the values of a, h, and k so that the graph of function  $q(x) = a \cos(x h) + k$  is identical to the graph of function  $p(x) = \sin(x)$ .
- **16.** Sketch the graphs  $p(x) = 2 \sin x$ ,  $q(x) = \frac{1}{2} \sin x$ , and  $r(x) = -\sin x$ . How does changing the vertical stretch of the sine function compare with other families of functions?
- **17.** Write the equation of this graph and describe the function as a transformation of the parent sine function.



# Exploration

# **Three Types of Proofs**

n previous explorations, you learned four forms of valid reasoning: Modus Ponens (MP), Modus Tollens (MT), the Law of Syllogism (LS), and the Law of Contrapositive (LC). You can use these forms of reasoning to make logical arguments, or proofs. In this exploration you will learn the three basic types of proofs: direct proofs, conditional proofs, and indirect proofs.

In a **direct proof**, the given information or premises are stated, then valid forms of reasoning are used to arrive directly at a conclusion. Here is a direct proof given in two-column form. In a two-column proof, each statement in the argument is written in the left column, and the reason for each statement is written directly across in the right column.



Premises:  $P \rightarrow Q$ 

$$R \to P$$

$$\sim Q$$

Conclusion:  $\sim R$ 

1. 
$$P \rightarrow Q$$

2. 
$$\sim Q$$
  
3.  $\sim P$   
4.  $R \rightarrow P$ 

- 1. Premise
- 2. Premise
- 3. From lines 1 and 2, using MT

  - 5. From lines 3 and 4, using MT

A **conditional proof** is used to prove that a  $P \rightarrow Q$  statement follows from a set of premises. In a conditional proof, the first part of the conditional statement, called the **antecedent**, is assumed to be true. Then logical reasoning is used to demonstrate that the second part, called the **consequent**, must also be true. If this process is successful, it's demonstrated that if P is true, then Q must be true. In other words, a conditional proof shows that the antecedent implies the consequent. Here is an example.

#### **Conditional Proof**

**Premises:**  $P \rightarrow R$ 

$$P \rightarrow R$$

$$S \rightarrow \sim R$$

Conclusion:  $P \rightarrow \sim S$ 

1. P1. Assume the antecedent2.  $P \rightarrow R$ 2. Premise3. R3. From lines 1 and 2, using MP4.  $S \rightarrow \sim R$ 4. Premise5.  $\sim S$ 5. From lines 3 and 4, using MT

Assuming P is true, the truth of -S is established.

$$\therefore P \rightarrow \sim S$$

An **indirect proof** is a clever approach to proving something. To prove indirectly that a statement is true, you begin by assuming it is not true. Then you show that this assumption leads to a contradiction. For example, if you are given a set of premises and are asked to show that some conclusion P is true, begin by assuming that the opposite of P, namely  $\neg P$ , is true. Then show that this assumption leads to a contradiction of an earlier statement. If  $\sim P$  leads to a contradiction, it must be false and P must be true. Here is an example.

#### **Indirect Proof**

**Premises:**  $R \rightarrow S$ 

$$R \rightarrow S$$

$$\sim R \rightarrow \sim P$$

Conclusion: S

2. 
$$R \rightarrow S$$

- 1.  $\sim S$ 1. Assume the opposite of the conclusion2.  $R \rightarrow S$ 2. Premise3.  $\sim R$ 3. From lines 1 and 2, using MT4.  $\sim R \rightarrow \sim P$ 4. Premise5.  $\sim P$ 5. From lines 3 and 4, using MP6. P6. Premise

But lines 5 and 6 contradict each other. It's impossible for both P and Pto be true.

Therefore, -S, the original assumption, is false. If -S is false, then S is true.  $\therefore S$ 

Many logical arguments can be proved using more than one type of proof. For instance, you can prove the argument in the example above by using a direct proof. (Try it!) With practice you will be able to tell which method will work best for a particular argument.

# **Prove It!**

Step 1

Copy the direct proof below, including the list of premises and the conclusion. Provide each missing reason.

**Premises:**  $P \rightarrow Q$  $O \rightarrow \sim R$ 

Conclusion:  $\sim P$ 

 1.  $Q \rightarrow \neg R$  1.  $\frac{?}{?}$  

 2. R 2.  $\frac{?}{?}$  

 3.  $\neg Q$  3.  $\frac{?}{?}$  

 4.  $P \rightarrow Q$  4.  $\frac{?}{?}$ 

5. ∴ ~ *P* 

Step 2 Copy the conditional proof below, including the list of premises and the conclusion. Provide each missing statement or reason.

**Premises:**  $\sim R \rightarrow \sim Q$ 

 $T \rightarrow \sim R$ 

 $S \rightarrow T$ 

Conclusion:  $S \rightarrow \sim Q$ 

 1. S 1.  $\frac{?}{}$  

 2.  $S \rightarrow T$  2.  $\frac{?}{}$  

 3. T 3. From lines 1 and 2, using  $\frac{?}{}$  

 4.  $T \rightarrow \sim R$  4.  $\frac{?}{}$  

 5.  $\sim R$  5.  $\frac{?}{}$  

 6.  $\frac{?}{}$  6.  $\frac{?}{}$  

 7.  $\frac{?}{}$  7.  $\frac{?}{}$ 

Assuming S is true, the truth of Q is established.

Step 3 Copy the indirect proof below and at the top of page 682, including the list of premises and the conclusion. Provide each missing statement or reason.

**Premises:**  $P \rightarrow (Q \rightarrow R)$ 

 $Q \rightarrow \sim R$ 

Q

Conclusion: ~P

 1. P 1. Assume

 2.  $P \rightarrow (Q \rightarrow R)$  2.  $\frac{?}{}$  

 3.  $Q \rightarrow R$  3.  $\frac{?}{}$  

 4. Q 4.  $\frac{?}{}$ 

**1.** Assume the <u>1</u> of the <u>1</u>

Step 3 (continued)

5. *R*6. ?
7. ?

6. 🕺

7. From lines 1 and 1, using 1

But lines 1 and 1 contradict each other.

Therefore, P, the assumption, is false.

Step 4

Provide the steps and reasons to prove each logical argument. You will need to decide whether to use a direct, a conditional, or an indirect proof.

a. Premises:  $P \rightarrow Q$ 

 $O \rightarrow \sim R$ 

 $T \rightarrow R$ 

Conclusion:  $T \rightarrow P$ 

**b. Premises:**  $(R \rightarrow S) \rightarrow P$ 

 $T \rightarrow O$ 

 $\sim T \rightarrow \sim P$ ~ 0

Conclusion:  $\sim (R \rightarrow S)$ 

c. Premises:  $S \rightarrow Q$ 

 $P \rightarrow S$  $\sim R \rightarrow P$ 

~ 0 Conclusion: R

d. Premises:  $P \rightarrow Q$ 

 $\sim P \rightarrow S$ 

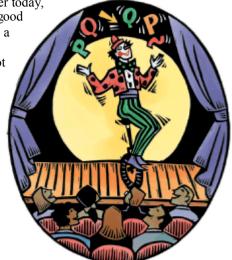
 $R \rightarrow \sim S$ ~ 0

Conclusion:  $\sim R$ 

Step 5

Translate each argument into symbolic terms, then prove it is valid.

- a. If all wealthy people are happy, then money can buy happiness. If money can buy happiness, then true love doesn't exist. But true love exists. Therefore, not all wealthy people are happy.
- **b.** If Clark is performing at the theater today, then everyone at the theater has a good time. If everyone at the theater has a good time, then Lois is not sad. Lois is sad. Therefore, Clark is not performing at the theater today.
- c. If Evette is innocent, then Alfa is telling the truth. If Romeo is telling the truth, then Alfa is not telling the truth. If Romeo is not telling the truth, then he has something to gain. Romeo has nothing to gain. Therefore, if Romeo has nothing to gain, then Evette is not innocent.



Trigonometry was first developed by astronomers who wanted to map the stars. Obviously, it is hard to directly measure the distances between stars and planets. That created a need for new methods of indirect measurement. As you've seen, you can solve many indirect measurement problems by using triangles. Using sine, cosine, and tangent ratios, you can find unknown lengths and angle measures if you know just a few measures in a right triangle. You can extend these methods to any triangle using the Law of Sines or the Law of Cosines.



What's the least you need to know about a right triangle in order to find all its measures? What parts of a nonright triangle do you need to know in order to find the other parts? Describe a situation in which an angle of elevation or depression can help you find an unknown height. teymath.com

## EXERCISES

to four decimal places.







A calculator for Exercises 1-3, 7-28, 51, and 53

1. sin 57°

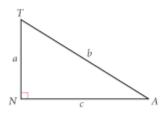
2. cos 9°

For Exercises 1–3, use a calculator to find each trigonometric ratio accurate

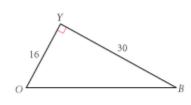
3. tan 88°

For Exercises 4–6, find each trigonometric ratio.

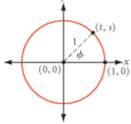
4. 
$$\sin A = \frac{?}{!}$$
  
 $\cos A = \frac{?}{!}$   
 $\tan A = \frac{?}{!}$ 



5. 
$$\sin B = \frac{?}{}$$
  
 $\cos B = \frac{?}{}$   
 $\tan B = \frac{?}{}$ 



6. 
$$\sin \phi = \frac{?}{\cos \phi} = \frac{?}{?}$$
  
 $\tan \phi = \frac{?}{?}$ 



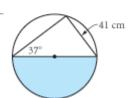
For Exercises 7–9, find the measure of each acute angle to the nearest degree.

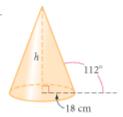
7.  $\sin A = 0.5447$ 

8.  $\cos B = 0.0696$ 

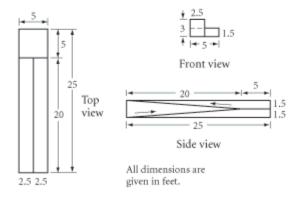
**9.**  $\tan C = 2.9043$ 

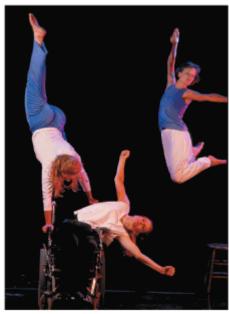
**10.** shaded area ≈ \_?





**12.** Application According to the Americans with Disabilities Act, enacted in 1990, the slope of a wheelchair ramp must be less than  $\frac{1}{12}$  and there must be a minimum 5-by-5 ft landing for every 2.5 ft of rise. These dimensions were chosen to accommodate handicapped people who face physical barriers in public buildings and at work. An architect has submitted the orthographic plan shown below. Does the plan meet the requirements of the act? What will be the ramp's angle of ascent?



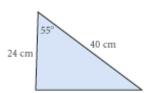


The Axis Dance Company includes performers in wheelchairs. Increased tolerance and accessibility laws have broadened the opportunities available to people with disabilities.

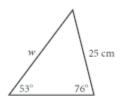
- 13. Application A lighthouse is east of a sailboat. The sailboat's dock is 30 km north of the lighthouse. The captain measures the angle between the lighthouse and the dock and finds it to be 35°. How far is the sailboat from the dock?
- **14.** Application An air traffic controller must calculate the angle of descent (the angle of depression) for an incoming jet. The jet's crew reports that their land distance is 44 km from the base of the control tower and that the plane is flying at an altitude of 5.6 km. Find the measure of the angle of descent.
- **15.** Application A new house is 32 feet wide. The rafters will rise at a 36° angle and meet above the center line of the house. Each rafter also needs to overhang the side of the house by 2 feet. How long should the carpenter make each rafter?
- **16.** Application During a flood relief effort, a Coast Guard patrol boat spots a helicopter dropping a package near the Florida shoreline. Officer Duncan measures the angle of elevation to the helicopter to be 15° and the distance to the helicopter to be 6800 m. How far is the patrol boat from the point where the package will land?
- 17. At an air show, Amelia sees a jet heading south away from her at a 42° angle of elevation. Twenty seconds later the jet is still moving away from her, heading south at a 15° angle of elevation. If the jet's elevation is constantly 6.3 km, how fast is it flying in kilometers per hour?

For Exercises 18–23, find each measure to the nearest unit or to the nearest square unit.

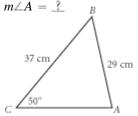
**18.** area = <u>?</u>



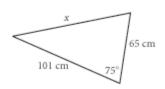
**19.** w = ?



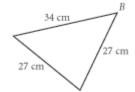
**20.**  $\triangle ABC$  is acute.



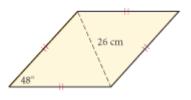
**21.** x = ?



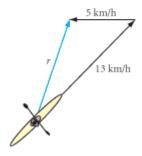
**22.**  $m \angle B = ?$ 



**23.** area =  $\frac{?}{}$ 

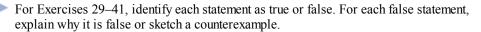


- 24. Find the length of the apothem of a regular pentagon with a side measuring 36 cm.
- 25. Find the area of a triangle formed by two 12 cm radii and a 16 cm chord in a circle.
- **26.** A circle is circumscribed about a regular octagon with a perimeter of 48 cm. Find the diameter of the circle.
- **27.** A 16 cm chord is drawn in a circle of diameter 24 cm. Find the area of the segment of the circle.
- 28. Leslie is paddling his kayak at a bearing of 45°. In still water his speed would be 13 km/h but there is a 5 km/h current moving west. What is the resulting speed and direction of Leslie's kayak?





# MIXED REVIEW



- 29. An octahedron is a prism that has an octagonal base.
- **30.** If the four angles of one quadrilateral are congruent to the four corresponding angles of another quadrilateral, then the two quadrilaterals are similar.
- **31.** The three medians of a triangle meet at the centroid.
- **32.** To use the Law of Cosines, you must know three side lengths or two side lengths and the measure of the included angle.
- **33.** If the ratio of corresponding sides of two similar polygons is  $\frac{m}{n}$ , then the ratio of their areas is  $\frac{m}{n}$ .
- **34.** The measure of an angle inscribed in a semicircle is always 90°.
- **35.** If  $\angle T$  is an acute angle in a right triangle, then

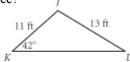
tangent of 
$$\angle T = \frac{\text{length of leg adjacent to } \angle T}{\text{length of leg opposite } \angle T}$$

- **36.** If  $C^2$  is the area of the base of a pyramid and C is the height of the pyramid, then the volume of the pyramid is  $\frac{1}{2}C^3$ .
- **37.** If two different lines intersect at a point, then the sum of the measures of at least one pair of vertical angles will be equal to or greater than 180°.
- **38.** If a line cuts two sides of a triangle proportionally, then it is parallel to the third side.
- **39.** If two sides of a triangle measure 6 cm and 8 cm and the angle between the two sides measures  $60^{\circ}$ , then the area of the triangle is  $12\sqrt{3}$  cm<sup>2</sup>.
- **40.** A nonvertical line  $\ell_1$  has slope m and is perpendicular to line  $\ell_2$ . The slope of  $\ell_2$  is also m.
- **41.** If two sides of one triangle are proportional to two sides of another triangle, then the two triangles are similar.

For Exercises 42–53, select the correct answer.

- **42.** The diagonals of a parallelogram
  - i. Are perpendicular to each other.
  - ii. Bisect each other.
  - iii. Form four congruent triangles.
  - **A.** i only
- **B.** ii only
- **C.** iii only
- **D.** i and ii

- **43.** What is the formula for the volume of a sphere?
  - **A.**  $V = 4\pi r^2$
- B.  $V = \pi r^2 h$
- C.  $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$  D.  $V = \frac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h$
- **44.** For the triangle at right, what is the measure of  $\angle L$  to the nearest degree?
  - **A.** 34°
- **B.** 44°
- C. 52°
- **D.** Cannot be determined



- **45.** The diagonals of a rhombus
  - i. Are perpendicular to each other.
  - ii. Bisect each other.
  - iii. Form four congruent triangles.
  - **A.** i only
- **B.** iii only
- C. i and ii
- **D.** All of the above
- **46.** The ratio of the surface areas of two similar solids is  $\frac{4}{9}$ . What is the ratio of the volumes of the solids?

C.  $\frac{64}{729}$ 

- **D.**  $\frac{16}{81}$
- **47.** A cylinder has height *T* and base area *K*. What is the volume of the cylinder?
  - A.  $V = \pi K^2 T$
- **B.** V = KT
- C.  $V = 2\pi KT$
- **D.**  $V = \frac{1}{3}KT$

- **48.** Which of the following is *not* a similarity shortcut?
  - A. SSA
- B. SSS

C. AA

- D. SAS
- **49.** If a triangle has sides of lengths a, b, and c, and C is the angle opposite the side of length c, which of these statements must be true?

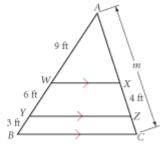
**A.** 
$$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2ab \cos C$$

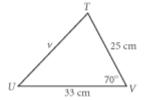
**B.** 
$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C$$

C. 
$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 + 2ab \cos C$$

**D.** 
$$a^2 = b^2 + c^2$$

- **50.** In the drawing at right,  $\overline{WX} \parallel \overline{YZ} \parallel \overline{BC}$ . What is the value of m?
  - **A.** 6 ft
- **B.** 8 ft
- **C.** 12 ft
- **D.** 16 ft
- 51. When a rock is added to a container of water, it raises the water level by 4 cm. If the container is a rectangular prism with a base that measures 8 cm by 9 cm, what is the volume of the rock?
  - $\mathbf{A}$ . 4 cm<sup>3</sup>
- **B.**  $32 \text{ cm}^3$
- $C_{\bullet}$  36 cm<sup>3</sup>
- **D.**  $288 \text{ cm}^3$
- **52.** Which law could you use to find the value of v?
  - A. Law of Supply and Demand
  - B. Law of Syllogism
  - C. Law of Cosines
  - D. Law of Sines





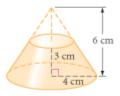
- **53.** A 32-foot telephone pole casts a 12-foot shadow at the same time a boy nearby casts a 1.75-foot shadow. How tall is the boy?
  - **A.** 4 ft 8 in.
- **B.** 4 ft 6 in.
- C. 5 ft 8 in.
- **D.** 6 ft

Exercises 54–56 are portions of cones. Find the volume of each solid.

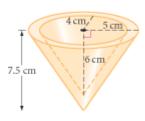
54.



55.

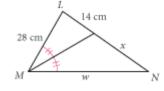


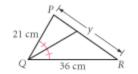
56.

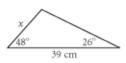


- **57.** Each person at a family reunion hugs everyone else exactly once. There were 528 hugs. How many people were at the reunion?
- **58.** Triangle TRI with vertices T(-7, 0), R(-5, 3), and I(-1, 0) is translated by the rule  $(x, y) \rightarrow (x+2, y-1)$ . Then its image is translated by the rule  $(x, y) \rightarrow (x-1, y-2)$ . What single translation is equivalent to the composition of these two translations?
- **59.**  $\triangle LMN \sim \triangle PQR$ . Find w, x, and y.

**60.** Find *x*.



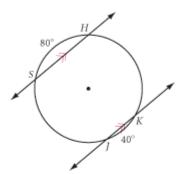




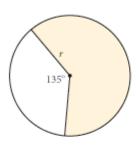
- **61.** The diameter of a circle has endpoints (5, -2) and (5, 4). Find the equation of the circle.
- **62.** Explain why a regular pentagon cannot create a monohedral tessellation.
- 63. Archaeologist Ertha Diggs uses a clinometer to find the height of an ancient temple. She views the top of the temple with a 37° angle of elevation. She is standing 130 meters from the center of the temple's base, and her eye is 1.5 meters above the ground. How tall is the temple?



**64.** In the diagram below, the length of  $\widehat{HK}$  is 20  $\pi$  ft. Find the radius of the circle.



65. The shaded area is 10



**66.** Triangle ABC is isosceles with  $\overline{AB}$ congruent to  $\overline{BC}$ . Point D is on  $\overline{AC}$  such that  $\overline{BD}$  is perpendicular to  $\overline{AC}$ . Make a sketch and answer these questions.

**a.** 
$$m \angle ABC = \frac{?}{} m \angle ABD$$

**b.** What can you conclude about *BD*?

# TAKE ANOTHER LOOK

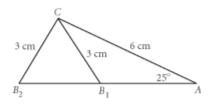
1. You learned the Law of Sines as

$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin B}{b} = \frac{\sin C}{c}$$

Use algebra to show that

$$\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C}$$

2. Recall that SSA does not determine a triangle. For that reason, you've been asked to find only acute angles using the Law of Sines. Take another look at a pair of triangles,  $\triangle AB_1C$  and  $\triangle AB_2C$ , determined by SSA. How is  $\angle CB_1A$  related to  $\angle CB_2A$ ? Find  $m\angle CB_1A$  and  $m\angle CB_2A$ . Find the sine of each angle. Find the sines of another pair of angles that are related in the same way, then complete this conjecture: For any angle  $\theta$ ,  $\sin \theta = \sin(\frac{\pi}{2})$ .



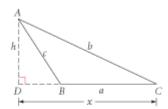
**3.** The Law of Cosines is generally stated using  $\angle C$ .

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C$$

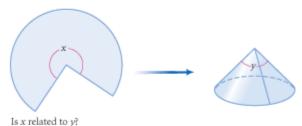
State the Law of Cosines in two different ways, using  $\angle A$  and  $\angle B$ .

**4.** Draw several triangles ABC where  $\angle C$  is obtuse. Measure the sides a and b and angle C. Use the Law of Cosines to calculate the length of side c, then measure side c and compare these two values. Does the Law of Cosines work for obtuse angles? What happens to the value of the term  $-2ab \cos C$  when  $\angle C$  is obtuse?

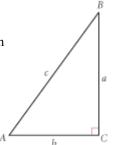
**5. Developing Proof** Derive the Law of Cosines for an obtuse triangle, using the diagram at right.



**6.** Is there a relationship between the measure of the central angle of a sector of a circle and the angle at the vertex of the right cone formed when rolled up?



7. **Developing Proof** Pick any measure of  $\angle A$  and find the value of the expression  $(\sin A)^2 + (\cos A)^2$ . Repeat for other measures of  $\angle A$  and make a conjecture. Then write ratios for sin A and cos A, using the diagram at right, and substitute these ratios into the expression above. Simplify, using algebra and the Pythagorean Theorem, to prove your conjecture.



# Assessing What You've Learned



**UPDATE YOUR PORTFOLIO** Choose a real-world indirect measurement problem that uses trigonometry, and add it to your portfolio. Describe the problem, explain how you solved it, and explain why you chose it for your portfolio.



**ORGANIZE YOUR NOTEBOOK** Make sure your notebook is complete and well organized. Write a one-page chapter summary. Reviewing your notes and solving sample test items are good ways to prepare for chapter tests.



Demonstrate how to use an angle-measuring device to GIVE A PRESENTATION make indirect measurements of actual objects. Use appropriate visual aids.

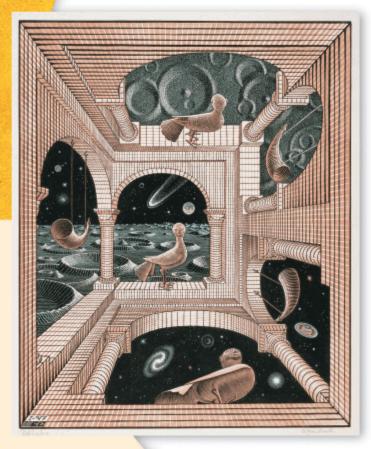


WRITE IN YOUR JOURNAL The last five chapters have had a strong problem-solving focus. What do you see as your strengths and weaknesses as a problem solver? In what ways have you improved? In what areas could you improve or use more help? Has your attitude toward problem solving changed since you began this course?

**CHAPTER** 

13

# Geometry as a Mathematical System



This search for new possibilities, this discovery of new jigsaw puzzle pieces, which in the first place surprises and astonishes the designer himself, is a game that through the years has always fascinated and enthralled me anew.

M. C. ESCHER

Another World (Other World), M. C. Escher, 1947 ©2002 Cordon Art B. V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.

#### **OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will

- look at geometry as a mathematical system
- see how some conjectures are logically related to each other
- review a number of proof strategies, such as working backward and analyzing diagrams





Geometry is the art of correct reasoning on incorrect figures. **GEORGE POLYA** 

# The Premises of Geometry

As you learned in previous chapters, for thousands of years Babylonian, Egyptian, Chinese, and other mathematicians discovered many geometry principles and

developed procedures for doing practical geometry.

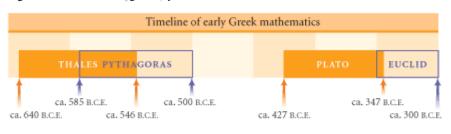
By 600 B.C.E., a prosperous new civilization had begun to grow in the trading towns along the coast of Asia Minor (present-day Turkey) and later in Greece, Sicily, and Italy. People had free time to discuss and debate issues of government and law. They began to insist on reasons to support statements made in debate. Mathematicians began to use logical reasoning to deduce mathematical ideas.



This map detail shows Sicily, Italy, Greece, and Asia Minor along the north coast of the Mediterranean Sea. The map was drawn by Italian painter and architect Pietro da Cortona (1596-1669).

#### **History** CONNECTION

Greek mathematician Thales of Miletus (ca. 625-547 B.C.E.) made his geometry ideas convincing by supporting his discoveries with logical reasoning. Over the next 300 years, the process of supporting mathematical conjectures with ΕΛΛΗΝΙΚΗ ΔΗΜΟΚΡΑΤΙΑ 90 logical arguments became more and more refined. Other Greek mathematicians, including Thales' most famous student, Pythagoras, began linking chains of logical reasoning. The tradition continued with Plato and his students. Euclid, in his famous work about geometry and number theory, *Elements*, established a single chain of deductive arguments for most of the geometry known then.



You have learned that Euclid used geometric constructions to study properties of lines and shapes. Euclid also created a **deductive system**—a set of **premises**, or accepted facts, and a set of logical rules—to organize geometry properties. He started from a collection of simple and useful statements he called **postulates**. He then systematically demonstrated how each geometry discovery followed logically from his postulates and his previously proved conjectures, or theorems. Up to now, you have been discovering geometry properties inductively, the way many mathematicians have over the centuries. You have studied geometric figures and have made conjectures about them. Then, to explain your conjectures, you turned to deductive reasoning. You used informal proofs to explain why a conjecture was true. However, you did not prove every conjecture. In fact, you sometimes made critical assumptions or relied on unproved conjectures in your proofs. A conclusion in a proof is true if and only if your premises are true and all your arguments are valid. Faulty assumptions can lead to the wrong conclusion. Have all your assumptions been reliable?





Inductive reasoning process

Deductive reasoning process

In this chapter you will look at geometry as Euclid did. You will start with premises: definitions, properties, and postulates. From these premises you will systematically prove your earlier conjectures. Proved conjectures will become theorems, which you can use to prove other conjectures, turning them into theorems, as well. You will build a logical framework using your most important ideas and conjectures from geometry.

#### **Premises for Logical Arguments in Geometry**

- **1.** Definitions and undefined terms
- 2. Properties of arithmetic, equality, and congruence
- **3.** Postulates of geometry
- **4.** Previously proved geometry conjectures (theorems)

You are already familiar with the first type of premise on the list: the undefined terms—point, line, and plane. In addition, you have a list of basic definitions in your notebook.

You used the second set of premises, properties of arithmetic and equality, in your algebra course.

#### **Properties of Arithmetic**

For any numbers *a*, *b*, and *c*:

#### Commutative property of addition

a + b = b + a

#### Commutative property of multiplication

ab = ba

#### Associative property of addition

$$(a + b) + c = a + (b + c)$$

#### Associative property of multiplication

$$(ab)c = a(bc)$$

#### Distributive property

$$a(b+c) = ab + ac$$

#### **Properties of Equality**

For any numbers *a*, *b*, *c*, and *d*:

#### Reflexive property

a = a (Any number is equal to itself.)

#### Transitive property

If a = b and b = c, then a = c. (This property often takes the form of the **substitution property,** which says that if b = c, you can substitute c for b.)

#### Symmetric property

If a = b, then b = a.

#### Addition property

If a = b, then a + c = b + c. (Also, if a = b and c = d, then a + c = b + d.)

#### Subtraction property

If a = b, then a - c = b - c. (Also, if a = b and c = d, then a - c = b - d.)

#### Multiplication property

If a = b, then ac = bc. (Also, if a = b and c = d, then ac = bd.)

#### **Division property**

If a = b, then  $\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{c}$  provided  $c \neq 0$ . (Also, if a = b and c = d, then  $\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{d}$  provided that  $c \neq 0$  and  $d \neq 0$ .)

#### Square root property

If  $a^2 = b$ , then  $a = \pm \sqrt{b}$ .

#### Zero product property

If ab = 0, then a = 0 or b = 0 or both a and b = 0.



These Mayan stone carvings, found in Tikal, Guatemala, show the glyphs, or symbols, used in the Mayan number system. Learn more about Mayan numerals at

www.keymath.com/DG .

Whether or not you remember their names, you've used these properties to solve algebraic equations. The process of solving an equation is really an algebraic proof that your solution is valid. To arrive at a correct solution, you must support each step by a property. The addition property of equality, for example, permits you to add the same number to both sides of an equation to get an equivalent equation.

#### **EXAMPLE**

Solve for x: 5x - 12 = 3(x + 2)

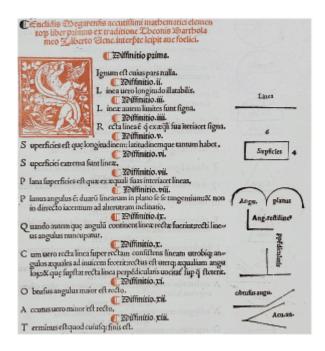
#### Solution

$$5x - 12 = 3(x + 2)$$
 Given.  
 $5x - 12 = 3x + 6$  Distributive property.  
 $5x = 3x + 18$  Addition property of equality.  
 $2x = 18$  Subtraction property of equality.  
 $x = 9$  Division property of equality.

Why are the properties of arithmetic and equality important in geometry? The lengths of segments and the measures of angles involve numbers, so you will often need to use these properties in geometry proofs. And just as you use equality to express a relationship between numbers, you use congruence to express a relationship between geometric figures.

#### **Definition of Congruence**

If AB = CD, then  $\overline{AB} \cong \overline{CD}$ , and conversely, if  $\overline{AB} \cong \overline{CD}$ , then AB = CD. If  $m\angle A = m\angle B$ , then  $\angle A \cong \angle B$ , and conversely, if  $\angle A \cong \angle B$ , then  $m\angle A = m\angle B$ .



A page from a Latin translation of Euclid's *Elements*. Which of these definitions do you recognize?

Congruence is defined by equality, so you can extend the properties of equality to a reflexive property of congruence, a transitive property of congruence, and a symmetric property of congruence. This is left for you to do in the exercises.

The third set of premises is specific to geometry. These premises are traditionally called postulates. Postulates should be very basic. Like undefined terms, they should be useful and easy for everyone to agree on, with little debate.

As you've performed basic geometric constructions in this class, you've observed some of these "obvious truths." Whenever you draw a figure or use an auxiliary line, you are using these postulates.

#### **Postulates of Geometry**

**Line Postulate** You can construct exactly one line through any two points. In other words, two points determine a line.

Line Intersection Postulate The intersection of two distinct lines is exactly one point.



#### **Segment Duplication Postulate**

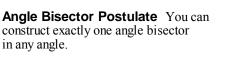
You can construct a segment congruent to another segment.

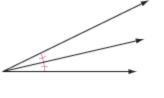
**Angle Duplication Postulate** You can construct an angle congruent to another angle.

Midpoint Postulate You can construct exactly one midpoint on any line segment.

in any angle.

line.



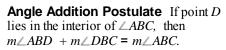


Parallel Postulate Through a point not on a given line, you can construct exactly one line parallel to the given

Perpendicular Postulate Through a point not on a given line, you can construct exactly one line perpendicular to the given line.

**Segment Addition Postulate** If point B is on  $\overline{AC}$  and between points

A and C, then AB + BC = AC.







There are certain rules that everyone needs to agree on so we can drive safely! What are the "road rules" of geometry?

**Linear Pair Postulate** If two angles are a linear pair, then they are supplementary.



Corresponding Angles Postulate (CA Postulate) If two parallel lines are cut by a transversal, then the corresponding angles are congruent. Conversely, if two coplanar lines are cut by a transversal forming congruent corresponding angles, then the lines are parallel.

**SSS Congruence Postulate** If the three sides of one triangle are

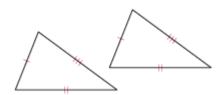




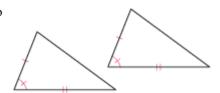
ENTER

congruent to three sides of another triangle, then the two triangles are congruent.

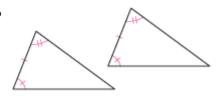
SAS Congruence Postulate I sides and the included angle in one



**SAS Congruence Postulate** If two sides and the included angle in one triangle are congruent to two sides and the included angle in another triangle, then the two triangles are congruent.



**ASA Congruence Postulate** If two angles and the included side in one triangle are congruent to two angles and the included side in another triangle, then the two triangles are congruent.





Euclid wrote 13 books covering, among other topics, plane geometry and solid geometry. He started with definitions, postulates, and "common notions" about the properties of equality. He then wrote hundreds of propositions, which we would call conjectures, and used constructions based on the definitions and postulates to show that they were valid. The statements that we call postulates were actually Euclid's postulates, plus a few of his propositions.

To build a logical framework for the geometry you have learned, you will start with the premises of geometry. In the exercises, you will see how these premises are the foundations for some of your previous assumptions and conjectures. You will also use these postulates and properties to see how some geometry statements are logical consequences of others.



#### **EXERCISES**

- 1. What is the difference between a postulate and a theorem?
- 2. Euclid might have stated the addition property of equality (translated from the Greek) in this way: "If equals are added to equals, the results are equal." State the subtraction, multiplication, and division properties of equality as Euclid might have stated them. (You may write them in English—extra credit for the original Greek!)
- 3. Write the reflexive property of congruence, the transitive property of congruence, and the symmetric property of congruence. Add these properties to your notebook. Include a diagram for each property. Illustrate one property with congruent triangles, another property with congruent segments, and another property with congruent angles. (These properties may seem ridiculously obvious. This is exactly why they are accepted as premises, which require no proof!)
- **4.** When you state AC = AC, what property are you using? When you state AC = AC, what property are you using? what property are you using?
- 5. Name the property that supports this statement: If  $\angle ACE = \angle BDF$  and  $\angle BDF \cong \angle HKM$ , then  $\angle ACE \cong \angle HKM$ .
- **6.** Name the property that supports this statement: If x + 120 = 180, then x = 60.
- 7. Name the property that supports this statement: If 2(x + 14) = 36, then x + 14 = 18.

In Exercises 8 and 9, provide the missing property of equality or arithmetic as a reason for each step to solve the algebraic equation or to prove the algebraic argument.

**8.** Solve for *x*: 
$$7x - 22 = 4(x + 2)$$

Solution: 
$$7x - 22 = 4(x + 2)$$
 Given.  
 $7x - 22 = 4x + 8$   $\stackrel{?}{=}$  property.  
 $3x - 22 = 8$   $\stackrel{?}{=}$  property of equality.  
 $3x = 30$   $\stackrel{?}{=}$  property of equality.  
 $x = 10$   $\stackrel{?}{=}$  property of equality.

**9. Conjecture:** If 
$$\frac{x}{m} - c = d$$
, then  $x = m(c + d)$ , provided that  $m \neq 0$ .

Proof: 
$$\frac{x}{m} - c = d$$

$$\frac{x}{m} = d + c$$

$$x = m(d + c)$$

$$x = m(c + d)$$
?

In Exercises 10–17, identify each statement as true or false. Then state which definition, property of algebra, property of congruence, or postulate supports your answer.

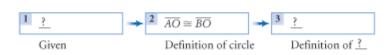
- **10.** If *M* is the midpoint of  $\overline{AB}$ , then AM = BM.
- **11.** If *M* is the midpoint of  $\overline{CD}$  and *N* is the midpoint of  $\overline{CD}$ , then *M* and *N* are the same point.
- **12.** If  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  bisects  $\angle CAD$ , then  $\angle CAB \cong \angle DAB$ .
- 13. If  $\overline{AB}$  bisects  $\angle CAD$  and  $\overline{AF}$  bisects  $\angle CAD$ , then  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{AF}$  are the same ray.
- **14.** Lines  $\ell$  and m can intersect at different points A and B.
- **15.** If line  $\ell$  passes through points A and B and line m passes through points A and B, lines  $\ell$  and m do not have to be the same line.
- **16.** If point *P* is in the interior of  $\angle RAT$ , then  $m\angle RAP + m\angle PAT = m\angle RAT$ .
- **17.** If point *M* is on  $\overline{AC}$  and between points *A* and *C*, then AM + MC = AC.
- 18. The Declaration of Independence states, "We hold these truths to be self-evident . . . ," then goes on to list four postulates of good government. Look up the Declaration of Independence and list the four self-evident truths that were the original premises of the United States government. You can find links to this topic at <a href="https://www.keymath.com/DG">www.keymath.com/DG</a>.

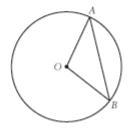
Arthur Szyk (1894–1951), a Polish American whose propaganda art helped aid the Allied war effort during World War II, created this patriotic illustrated version of the Declaration of Independence.



**19.** Copy and complete this flowchart proof. For each reason, state the definition, the property of algebra, or the property of congruence that supports the statement.

**Given:**  $\overline{AO}$  and  $\overline{BO}$  are radii **Show:**  $\triangle AOB$  is isosceles

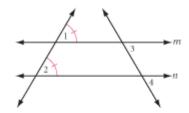




For Exercises 20–22, copy and complete each flowchart proof.

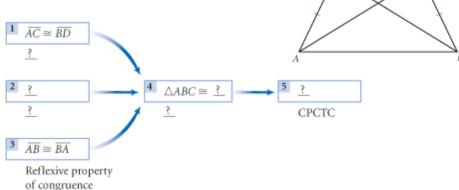
20. Given:  $\angle 1 \cong \angle 2$ 

Show:  $\angle 3 \cong \angle 4$ 

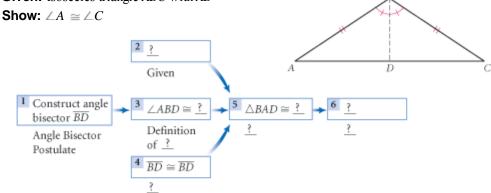


21. Given:  $\overline{AC} \cong \overline{BD}$ ,  $\overline{AD} \cong \overline{BC}$ 

Show:  $\angle D \cong \angle C$ 



**22. Given:** Isosceles triangle ABC with  $\overline{AB} \cong \overline{BC}$ 



23. You have probably noticed that the sum of two odd integers is always an even integer. The rule 2n generates even integers and the rule 2n - 1 generates odd integers. Let 2n - 1 and 2m - 1 represent any two odd integers, and prove that the sum of two odd integers is always an even integer.

- **24.** Let 2n-1 and 2m-1 represent any two odd integers, and prove that the product of any two odd integers is always an odd integer.
- 25. Show that the sum of any three consecutive integers is always divisible by 3.



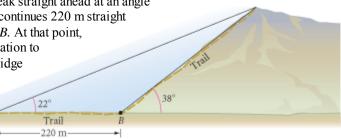
#### Review

26. Shannon and Erin are hiking up a mountain. Of course, they are packing the clinometer they made in geometry class. At point A along a flat portion of the trail, Erin sights the mountain peak straight ahead at an angle

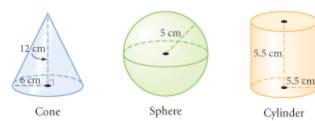
of elevation of 22°. The level trail continues 220 m straight to the base of the mountain at point B. At that point,

Shannon measures the angle of elevation to be  $38^{\circ}$ . From B the trail follows a ridge straight up the mountain to the

peak. At point B, how far are they from the mountain peak?



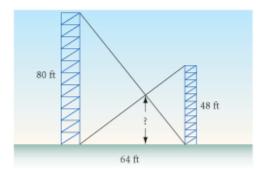
27.



Arrange the names of the solids in order, greatest to least.

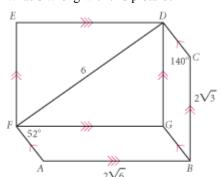
Volume:		- 3	_?_
Surface area:	?	?	_?_
Length of the longest rod that will fit inside:	?	-?	_?_

28. Two communication towers stand 64 ft apart. One is 80 ft high and the other is 48 ft high. Each has a guy wire from its top anchored to the base of the other tower. At what height do the two guy wires cross?

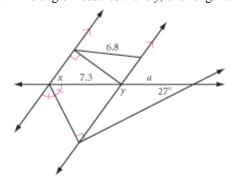


In Exercises 29 and 30, all length measurements are given in meters.

**29.** What's wrong with this picture?

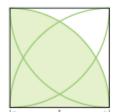


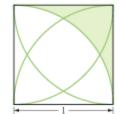
**30.** Find angle measures x and y, and length a.

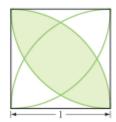


**31.** Each arc is a quarter of a circle with its center at a vertex of the square.

**Given:** Each square has side length 1 unit **Find:** The shaded area







## IMPROVING YOUR **REASONING** SKILLS

## Logical Vocabulary

Here is a logical vocabulary challenge. It is sometimes possible to change one word to another of equal length by changing one letter at a time. Each change, or move, you make gives you a new word. For example, DOG can be changed to CAT in exactly three moves.

$$DOG \Rightarrow DOT \Rightarrow COT \Rightarrow CAT$$

Change MATH to each of the following words in exactly four moves.

1. MATH 
$$\Rightarrow ? \Rightarrow ? \Rightarrow ? \Rightarrow ROSE$$

2. MATH 
$$\Rightarrow \stackrel{?}{\longrightarrow} \Rightarrow \stackrel{?}{\longrightarrow} \Rightarrow \stackrel{?}{\longrightarrow} \Rightarrow CORE$$

3. MATH 
$$\Rightarrow \stackrel{?}{=} \Rightarrow \stackrel{?}{=} \Rightarrow \stackrel{?}{=} \Rightarrow HOST$$

4. MATH 
$$\Rightarrow \stackrel{?}{:} \Rightarrow \stackrel{?}{:} \Rightarrow \stackrel{?}{:} \Rightarrow LESS$$

5. MATH 
$$\Rightarrow$$
  $?$   $\Rightarrow$   $?$   $\Rightarrow$  LIVE

Now create one of your own. Change MATH to another word in four moves. \\



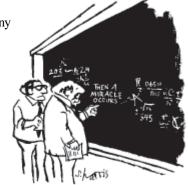
What is now proved was once only imagined. WILLIAM BLAKE

# **Planning a Geometry Proof**

A proof in geometry consists of a sequence of statements, starting with a given set of premises and leading to a valid conclusion. Each statement follows from one or more of the previous statements and is supported by a reason. A reason for a statement must come from the set of premises that you learned about in Lesson 13.1.

In earlier chapters you informally proved many conjectures. Now you can formally prove them, using the premises of geometry. In this lesson you will identify for yourself what is given and what you must show, in order to prove a conjecture. You will also create your own labeled diagrams.

As you have seen, you can state many geometry conjectures as conditional statements. For example, you can write the conjecture "Vertical angles are congruent" as a conditional statement: "If two angles are vertical angles, then they are congruent." To prove that a conditional



01977 by Sidney Hamis, American Scientist Magazine

THINK YOU SHOULD BE MORE EXPLICIT HERE IN STEP TWO."

statement is true, you assume that the first part of the conditional is true, then logically demonstrate the truth of the conditional's second part. In other words, you demonstrate that the first part implies the second part. The first part is what you assume to be true in the proof; it is the *given* information. The second part is the part you logically demonstrate in the proof; it is what you want to show.

#### Given

Two angles are vertical angles

They are congruent

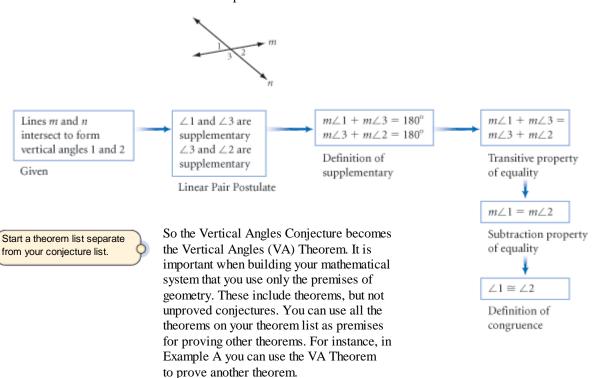
Next, draw and label a diagram that illustrates the given information. Then use the labels in the diagram to restate graphically what is given and what you must show.

Once you've created a diagram to illustrate your conjecture and you know where to start and where to go, make a plan using the reasoning strategies you've been developing. Use your plan to write the proof. Here's the complete process.

#### Writing a Proof

- **Task 1** From the conditional statement, identify what is given and what you
- **Task 2** Draw and label a diagram to illustrate the given information.
- **Task 3** Restate what is given and what you must show in terms of your diagram.
- **Task 4** Plan a proof using your reasoning strategies. Organize your reasoning mentally or on paper.
- **Task 5** From your plan, write a proof.

In Chapter 2, you proved the Vertical Angles Conjecture using conjectures that have now become postulates.



You may have noticed that in the previous lesson we stated the CA Conjecture as a postulate, but not the AIA Conjecture or the AEA Conjecture. In this first example you will see how to use the five tasks of the proof process to prove the AIA Conjecture.

#### **EXAMPLE A**

Prove the Alternate Interior Angles Conjecture: If two parallel lines are cut by a transversal, then the alternate interior angles are congruent.

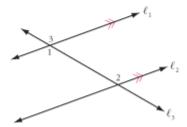
#### Solution

For Task 1, identify what is given and what you must show.

**Given:** Two parallel lines are cut by a transversal

**Show:** Alternate interior angles formed by the lines are congruent

For Task 2, draw and label a diagram.



For Task 3, restate what is given and what you must show in terms of the diagram.

**Given:** Parallel lines  $\ell_1$  and  $\ell_2$  cut by transversal  $\ell_3$  to form alternate interior

angles $\angle 1$  and  $\angle 2$ Show:  $\angle 1 \cong \angle 2$ 

For Task 4, plan a proof. Organize your reasoning mentally or on paper.

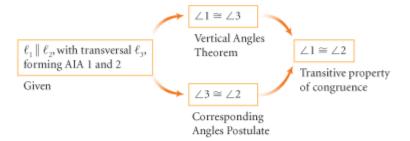
#### Plan:

I need to show that  $\angle 1 \cong \angle 2$ . Looking over the postulates and theorems, the ones that look useful are the CA Postulate and the VA Theorem. From the CA Postulate, I know that  $\angle 2 \cong \angle 3$  and from the VA Theorem,  $\angle 1 \cong \angle 3$ . If  $\angle 2 \cong \angle 3$  and  $\angle 1 \cong \angle 3$ , then by substitution  $\angle 1 \cong \angle 2$ .



For Task 5, create a proof from your plan.

#### Flowchart Proof

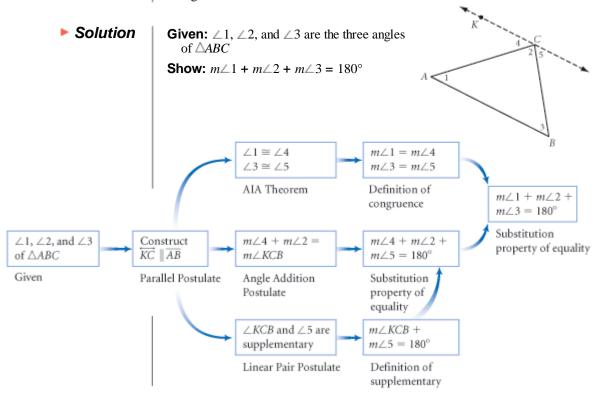


So, the AIA Conjecture becomes the AIA Theorem. Add this theorem to your theorem list.

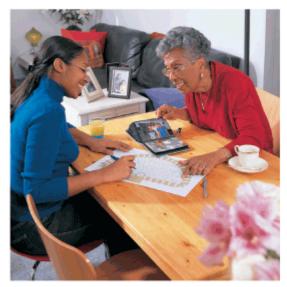
In Chapter 4, you informally proved the Triangle Sum Conjecture. The proof is short, but clever too, because it required the construction of an auxiliary line. All the steps in the proof use properties that we now designate as postulates. Example B shows the flowchart proof. For example, the Parallel Postulate guarantees that it will always be possible to construct an auxiliary line through a vertex, parallel to the opposite side.

#### **EXAMPLE B**

Prove the Triangle Sum Conjecture: The sum of the measures of the angles of a triangle is 180°.



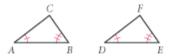
So, the Triangle Sum Conjecture becomes the Triangle Sum Theorem. Add it to your theorem list. Notice that each reason we now use in a proof is a postulate, theorem, definition, or property.

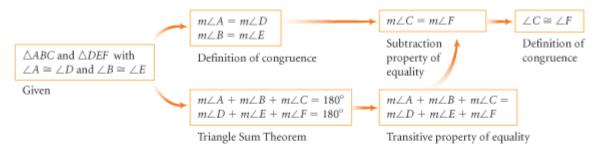


When you trace back your family tree, you include the names of your parents, the names of their parents, and so on.

To make sure a particular theorem has been properly proved, you can also check the "logical family tree" of the theorem. When you create a family tree for a theorem, you trace it back to all the postulates that the theorem relied on. You don't need to list all the definitions and properties of equality and congruence; list only the theorems and postulates used in the proof. For the theorems that were used in the proof, which postulates and theorems were used in their proofs, and so on. In Chapter 4, you informally proved the Third Angle Conjecture. Let's look again at the proof.

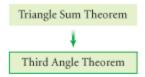
Third Angle Conjecture: If two angles of one triangle are congruent to two angles of a second triangle, then the third pair of angles are congruent.



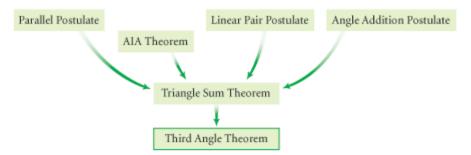


What does the logical family tree of the Third Angle Theorem look like?

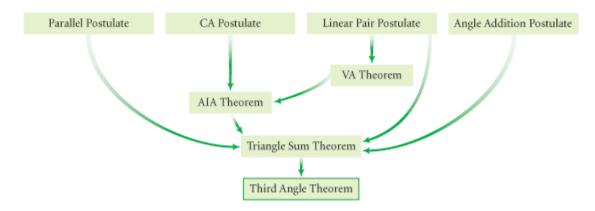
You start by putting the Third Angle Theorem in a box. Find all the postulates and theorems used in the proof. The only postulate or theorem used was the Triangle Sum Theorem. Put that box above it.



Next, locate all the theorems and postulates used to prove the Triangle Sum Theorem. Place them in boxes above the Triangle Sum Theorem. Connect the boxes with arrows showing the logical connection. Now the family tree looks like this:



To prove the AIA Theorem, we used the CA Postulate and the VA Theorem, and to prove the VA Theorem, we used the Linear Pair Postulate. The Linear Pair Postulate is already in the family tree, but move it up so it's above both the Triangle Sum Theorem and the VA Theorem. The completed family tree looks like this:



The family tree shows that, ultimately, the Third Angle Theorem relies on the Parallel Postulate, the CA Postulate, the Linear Pair Postulate, and the Angle Addition Postulate. You might notice that the family tree of a theorem looks similar to a flowchart proof. The difference is that the family tree focuses on the premises and traces them back to the postulates.

Notice how the Third Angle Theorem follows directly from the Triangle Sum Theorem without using any other theorems or postulates. A theorem that is the immediate consequence of another proven theorem is called a **corollary**. So, the Third Angle Theorem is a corollary of the Triangle Sum Theorem.

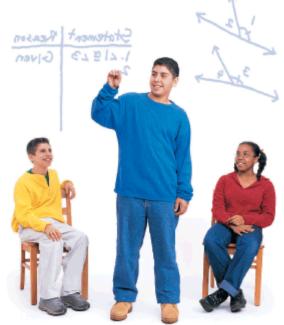


#### EXERCISES

- 1. Which postulate(s) does the VA Theorem rely on?
- **2.** Which postulate(s) does the Triangle Sum Theorem rely on?
- 3. If you need a parallel line in a proof, which postulate allows you to construct it?
- 4. If you need a perpendicular line in a proof, which postulate allows you to construct it?

In Exercises 5–14, write a paragraph proof or a flowchart proof of the conjecture. Once you have completed their proofs, add the statements to your theorem list.

- 5. If two angles are both congruent and supplementary, then each is a right angle. (Congruent and Supplementary Theorem)
- **6.** Supplements of congruent angles are congruent. (Supplements of Congruent Angles Theorem)
- 7. All right angles are congruent. (Right Angles Are Congruent Theorem)
- **8.** If two lines are cut by a transversal forming congruent alternate interior angles, then the lines are parallel. (Converse of the AIA Theorem)
- **9.** If two parallel lines are cut by a transversal, then the alternate exterior angles are congruent. (AEA Theorem)
- 10. If two lines are cut by a transversal forming congruent alternate exterior angles, then the
- lines are parallel. (Converse of the AEA Theorem)
- 11. If two parallel lines are cut by a transversal, then the interior angles on the same side of the transversal are supplementary. (Interior Supplements Theorem)
- 12. If two lines are cut by a transversal forming interior angles on the same side of the transversal that are supplementary, then the lines are parallel. (Converse of the Interior Supplements Theorem)

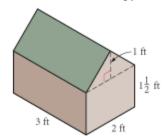


- 13. If two lines in the same plane are parallel to a third line, then they are parallel to each other. (Parallel Transitivity Theorem)
- 14. If two lines in the same plane are perpendicular to a third line, then they are parallel to each other. (Perpendicular to Parallel Theorem)
- 15. Prove that the acute angles in a right triangle are complementary. Explain why this is a corollary of the Triangle Sum Theorem.
- **16.** Draw a family tree of the Converse of the Alternate Exterior Angles Theorem.

#### Review

- 17. Suppose the top of a pyramid with volume 1107 cm<sup>3</sup> is sliced off and discarded, resulting in a truncated pyramid. If the cut was parallel to the base and two-thirds of the distance to the vertex, what is the volume of the truncated pyramid?
- **18.** Abraham is building a dog house for his terrier. His plan is shown at right.

He will cut a door and a window later. After he builds the frame for the structure, can he complete it using one piece of 4-by-8-foot plywood? If the answer is yes, show how he should cut the plywood. If no, explain why not.

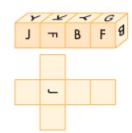


19. A triangle has vertices A(7, -4), B(3, -2), and C(4, 1). Find the coordinates of the vertices after a dilation with center (8, 2) and scale factor 2. Complete the mapping rule for the above dilation:  $(x, y) \rightarrow (?, ?)$ .

# IMPROVING YOUR **VISUAL THINKING** SKILLS

#### Mental Blocks

In the top figure at right, every cube is lettered exactly alike. Copy and complete the two-dimensional representation of one of the cubes to show how the letters are arranged on the six faces.





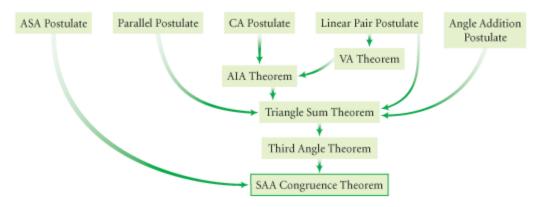


The most violent element in our society is ignorance. **EMMA GOLDMAN** 

# Triangle Proofs

Now that the theorems from the previous lesson have been proved, make sure you have added them to your theorem list. They will be useful to you in proving future theorems.

Triangle congruence is so useful in proving other theorems that we will focus next on triangle proofs. You may have noticed that in Lesson 13.1, three of the four triangle congruence conjectures were stated as postulates (the SSS Congruence Postulate, the SAS Congruence Postulate, and the ASA Congruence Postulate). The SAA Conjecture was not stated as a postulate. In Lesson 4.5, you used the ASA Conjecture (now the ASA Postulate) to explain the SAA Conjecture. The family tree for SAA congruence looks like this:



So the SAA Conjecture becomes the SAA Theorem. Add this theorem to your theorem list. This theorem will be useful in some of the proofs in this lesson.

Let's use the five-task proof process and triangle congruence to prove the Angle Bisector Conjecture.

#### **EXAMPLE**

Prove the Angle Bisector Conjecture: Any point on the bisector of an angle is equidistant from the sides of the angle.

#### Solution

**Given:** Any point on the bisector of an angle

**Show:** The point is equidistant from the sides of the angle



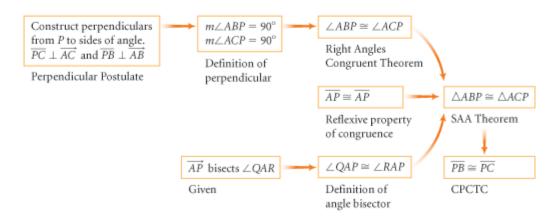
**Given:**  $\overrightarrow{AP}$  bisecting  $\angle QAR$ 

**Show:** P is equally distant from sides  $\overline{AO}$  and  $\overline{AR}$ 

**Plan:** The distance from a point to a line is measured along the perpendicular from the point to the line. So I begin by constructing  $P\overline{B} \perp A\overline{Q}$  and  $PC \perp AR$  (the Perpendicular Postulate permits me to do this). I can show that  $P\overline{B} \cong P\overline{C}$  if they are corresponding parts of congruent triangles.  $AP \cong AP$  by the identity property of congruence, and  $\angle QAP \cong \angle RAP$  by the definition of an angle bisector.  $\angle ABP$  and  $\angle ACP$  are right angles and thus they are congruent.

So  $\triangle ABP \cong \triangle ACP$  by the SAA Theorem. If the triangles are congruent, then  $\overline{PB} \cong \overline{PC}$  by CPCTC.

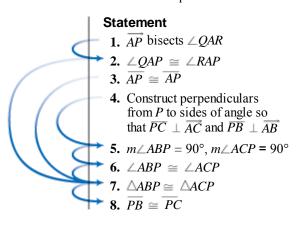
Based on this plan, I can write a flowchart proof.



Thus the Angle Bisector Conjecture becomes the Angle Bisector Theorem.

As our own proofs build on each other, flowcharts can become too large and awkward. You can also use a two-column format for writing proofs. A **two-column proof** is identical to a flowchart or paragraph proof, except that the statements are listed in the first column, each supported by a reason (a postulate, definition, property, or theorem) in the second column.

Here is the same proof from the example above, following the same plan, presented as a two-column proof. Arrows link the steps.



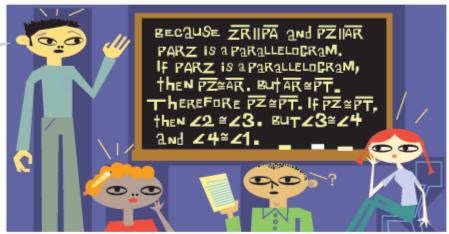
#### Reason

- 1. Given
- 2. Definition of angle bisector
- 3. Reflexive property of congruence
- 4. Perpendicular Postulate
- 5. Definition of perpendicular
- 6. Right Angles Congruent Theorem
- 7. SAA Theorem
- 8. CPCTC

Compare the two-column proof you just saw with the flowchart proof in Example A. What similarities do you see? What are the advantages of each format?

No matter what format you choose, your proof should be clear and easy for someone to follow.







#### **EXERCISES**

You will need

In Exercises 1–13, write a proof of the conjecture. Once you have completed the proofs, add the theorems to your list.

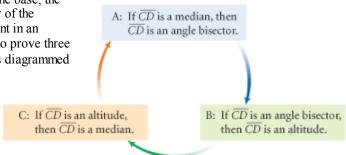


- 1. If a point is on the perpendicular bisector of a segment, then it is equally distant from the endpoints of the segment. (Perpendicular Bisector Theorem)
- 2. If a point is equally distant from the endpoints of a segment, then it is on the perpendicular bisector of the segment. (Converse of the Perpendicular Bisector Theorem)
- 3. If a triangle is isosceles, then the base angles are congruent. (Isosceles Triangle Theorem)
- **4.** If two angles of a triangle are congruent, then the triangle is isosceles. (Converse of the Isosceles Triangle Theorem)
- 5. If a point is equally distant from the sides of an angle, then it is on the bisector of the angle. (Converse of the Angle Bisector Theorem)
- **6.** The three perpendicular bisectors of the sides of a triangle are concurrent. (Perpendicular Bisector Concurrency Theorem)
- 7. The three angle bisectors of the sides of a triangle are concurrent. (Angle Bisector Concurrency Theorem)
- 8. The measure of an exterior angle of a triangle is equal to the sum of the measures of the two remote interior angles. (Triangle Exterior Angle Theorem)
- 9. The sum of the measures of the four angles of a quadrilateral is 360°. (Quadrilateral Sum Theorem)

- **10.** In an isosceles triangle, the medians to the congruent sides are congruent. (Medians to the Congruent Sides Theorem)
- 11. In an isosceles triangle, the angle bisectors to the congruent sides are congruent. (Angle Bisectors to the Congruent Sides Theorem)
- **12.** In an isosceles triangle, the altitudes to the congruent sides are congruent. (Altitudes to the Congruent Sides Theorem)
- **13.** In Lesson 4.8, you were asked to complete informal proofs of these two conjectures: The bisector of the vertex angle of an isosceles triangle is also the median to the base. The bisector of the vertex angle of an isosceles triangle is also the altitude to the base.

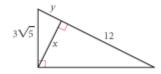
To demonstrate that the altitude to the base, the median to the base, and the bisector of the vertex angle are all the same segment in an isosceles triangle, you really need to prove three theorems. One possible sequence is diagrammed at right.

Prove the three theorems that confirm the conjecture, then add it as a theorem to your theorem list. (Isosceles Triangle Vertex Angle Theorem)

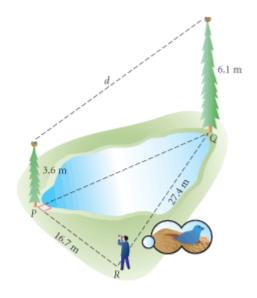


# Review

**14.** Find x and y.



- 15. Two bird nests, 3.6 m and 6.1 m high, are on trees across a pond from each other, at points P and Q. The distance between the nests is too wide to measure directly (and there is a pond between the trees). A birdwatcher at point R can sight each nest along a dry path. RP = 16.7 m and RQ = 27.4 m.  $\angle QPR$  is a right angle. What is the distance d between the nests?
- **16.** Apply the glide reflection rule twice to find the first and second images of the point A(-2, 9). Glide reflection rule: A reflection across the line x + y = 5 and a translation  $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 4, y 4)$ .



**17.** Explain why  $\angle 1 \cong \angle 2$ .

Given:

B, G, F, E are collinear

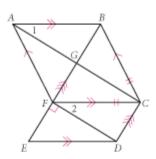
$$m \angle DFE = 90^{\circ}$$

$$BC = FC$$

$$\overline{AF} \parallel \overline{BC}$$

$$\overline{BE} \parallel \overline{CD}$$

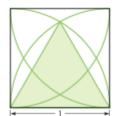
$$\overline{AB} \parallel \overline{FC} \parallel \overline{ED}$$



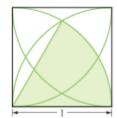
**18.** Each arc is a quarter of a circle with its center at a vertex of the square.

**Given:** The square has side length 1 unit **Find:** The shaded area

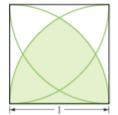
**a.** Shaded area =  $\frac{1}{2}$ 



**b.** Shaded area = ?



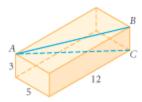
**c.** Shaded area = ?



**19.** Given an arc of a circle on patty paper but not the whole circle or the center, fold the paper to construct a tangent at the midpoint of the arc.



**20.** Find *m*∠*BAC* in this right rectangular prism.



- **21.** Choose **A** if the value of the expression is greater in Figure A.
  - Choose **B** if the value of the expression is greater in Figure B.
  - Choose  ${\bf C}$  if the values are equal for both figures.
  - Choose  $\mathbf{D}$  if it cannot be determined which value is greater.



Y, O, X are collinear.

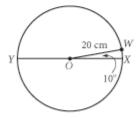
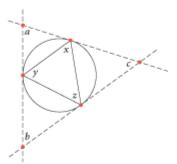


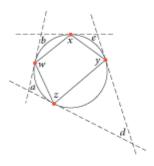
Figure A

Figure B

- **a.** Perimeter of  $\triangle WXY$
- **b.** Area of  $\triangle XOW$

- **22. Technology** Use geometry software to construct a circle and label any three points on the circle. Construct tangents at those three points to form a circumscribed triangle and connect the points of tangency to form an inscribed triangle.
  - **a.** Drag the points and observe the angle measures of each triangle. What relationship do you notice between *x*, *a*, and *c*? Is the same true for yand *z*?
- **b.** What is the relationship between the angle measures of a circumscribed quadrilateral and the inscribed quadrilateral formed by connecting the points of tangency?

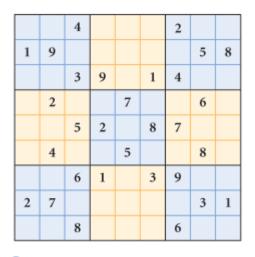




### IMPROVING YOUR REASONING SKILLS

#### Sudoku

Fill in every box with a digit from 1 through 9 so that every row, every column, and every  $3 \times 3$  region contains each digit exactly once. Can you solve these puzzles logically? Find links to free online sudokus a <a href="https://www.keymath.com/DG">www.keymath.com/DG</a>.



4		6	8					
7				1	4	3	6	2
		3		9				
								4
		4	2		9	8		
9								
				4		7		
2	3	8	6	7				1
					3	6		5



All geometric reasoning is. in the last result, circular. BERTRAND RUSSELL

# **Quadrilateral Proofs**

n Chapter 5, you discovered and informally proved several quadrilateral properties. As reasons for the statements in some of these proofs, you used conjectures that are now postulates or that you have proved as theorems. So those steps in the proofs are valid. Occasionally, however, you may have used unproven conjectures as reasons. In this lesson you will write formal proofs of some of these quadrilateral conjectures, using only definitions, postulates, and theorems. After you have proved the theorems, you'll create a family tree tracing them back to postulates and properties.

You can prove many quadrilateral theorems by using triangle theorems. For example, you can prove some parallelogram properties by using the fact that a diagonal divides a parallelogram into two congruent triangles. In the example below, we'll prove this fact as a lemma. A lemma is an auxiliary theorem used specifically to prove other theorems.

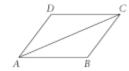
# **EXAMPLE**

**Prove:** A diagonal of a parallelogram divides the parallelogram into two congruent triangles.

# Solution

**Given:** Parallelogram ABCD with diagonal  $\overline{AC}$ 

Show:  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle CDA$ 



# **Two-Column Proof**

#### Statement

**1.** ABCD is a parallelogram

**2.** 
$$A\overline{B} \parallel \overline{DC}$$
 and  $A\overline{D} \parallel \overline{BC}$ 

3. 
$$\angle CAB \cong \angle ACD$$
 and  $\angle BCA \cong \angle DAC$ 

 $4.A\overline{C} \simeq \overline{AC}$ 

 $5. \triangle ABC \cong \triangle CDA$ 

#### Reason

- 1. Given
- 2. Definition of parallelogram
- 3. AIA Theorem
- 4. Reflexive property of congruence
- 5. ASA Congruence Postulate

We'll call the lemma proved in the example the Parallelogram Diagonal Lemma. You can now add it to your theorem list and use it to prove other parallelogram conjectures.



# Developing Proof

# **Proving Parallelogram Conjectures**

Work with your group to prove three of your previous conjectures about parallelograms. Remember to draw a diagram, restate what is given and what you must show in terms of your diagram, and then make a plan before you prove each conjecture.

Step 1

The Opposite Sides Conjecture states that the opposite sides of a parallelogram are congruent. Write a two-column proof of this conjecture.

Step 2 The Opposite Angles Conjecture states that the opposite angles of a parallelogram are congruent. Write a two-column proof of this conjecture.

Step 3 State the converse of the Opposite Sides Conjecture. Then write a two-column proof of this conjecture.

After you have successfully proved the parallelogram conjectures above, you can call them theorems and add them to your theorem list.

Step 4 Create a family tree that shows the relationship among these theorems in Steps 1–3 and that traces each theorem back to the postulates of geometry.



# **EXERCISES**

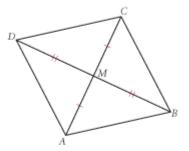
In Exercises 1–12, write a two-column proof or a flowchart proof of the conjecture. Once you have completed the proofs, add the theorems to your list.

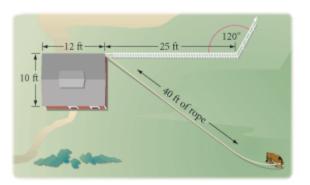
- 1. If the opposite angles of a quadrilateral are congruent, then the quadrilateral is a parallelogram. (Converse of the Opposite Angles Theorem)
- 2. If one pair of opposite sides of a quadrilateral are parallel and congruent, then the quadrilateral is a parallelogram. (Opposite Sides Parallel and Congruent Theorem)
- 3. Each diagonal of a rhombus bisects two opposite angles. (Rhombus Angles Theorem)
- **4.** The consecutive angles of a parallelogram are supplementary. (Parallelogram Consecutive Angles Theorem)
- 5. If a quadrilateral has four congruent sides, then it is a rhombus. (Four Congruent Sides Rhombus Theorem)
- If a quadrilateral has four congruent angles, then it is a rectangle. (Four Congruent Angles Rectangle Theorem)
- 7. The diagonals of a rectangle are congruent. (Rectangle Diagonals Theorem)
- **8.** If the diagonals of a parallelogram are congruent, then the parallelogram is a rectangle. (Converse of the Rectangle Diagonals Theorem)
- The base angles of an isosceles trapezoid are congruent. (Isosceles Trapezoid Theorem)
- The diagonals of an isosceles trapezoid are congruent. (Isosceles Trapezoid Diagonals Theorem)
- 11. If a diagonal of a parallelogram bisects two opposite angles, then the parallelogram is a rhombus. (Converse of the Rhombus Angles Theorem)

- **12.** If two parallel lines are intersected by a second pair of parallel lines that are the same distance apart as the first pair, then the parallelogram formed is a rhombus. (Double-Edged Straightedge Theorem)
- 13. Create a family tree for the Parallelogram Consecutive Angles Theorem.
- 14. Create a family tree for the Double-Edged Straightedge Theorem.

# **Review**

- **15.** M is the midpoint of  $\overline{AC}$  and  $\overline{BD}$ . For each statement, select always (A), sometimes (S), or never (N).
  - **a.**  $\angle BAD$  and  $\angle ADC$  are supplementary.
  - **b.**  $\angle ADM$  and  $\angle MAD$  are complementary.
  - c. AD + BC < AC
  - **d.** AD + CD < AC
- **16.** Yan uses a 40 ft rope to tie his horse to the corner of the barn to which a fence is attached. How many square feet of grazing, to the nearest square foot, does the horse have?





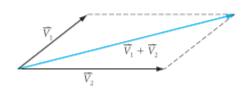
**17.** Complete the following chart with the symmetries and names of each type of special quadrilateral: parallelogram, rhombus, rectangle, square, kite, trapezoid, and isosceles trapezoid.

Name	Lines of symmetry	Rotational symmetry
	none	
trapezoid		
	1 diagonal	
		4-fold
	2 ⊥ bisectors of sides	
rhombus		
		none

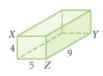
**18.** Find the length and the bearing of the resultant vector  $\vec{V}_1 + \vec{V}_2$ 

 $\overline{V}_1$  has length 5 and a bearing of 40°.

 $\overline{V}_2$  has length 9 and a bearing of 90°.



- 19. Consider the rectangular prisms in Figure A and Figure B.
  - Choose **A** if the value of the expression is greater in Figure A.
  - Choose  ${\bf B}\,$  if the value of the expression is greater in Figure B.
  - Choose C if the values are equal in both rectangular prisms.
  - Choose **D** if it cannot be determined which value is greater.



X 6 7

Figure A

Figure B

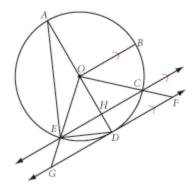
- **a.** Measure of  $\angle XYZ$
- **b.** Shortest path from *X* to *Y* along the surface of the prism

#### 20. Given:

A, O, D are collinear  $\overline{GF}$  is tangent to circle O at point D  $m \angle EOD = 38^{\circ}$   $\overline{OB} \parallel \overline{EC} \parallel \overline{GF}$ 

# Find:

- **a.** *m*∠*AEO*
- **b.** *m*∠*DGO*
- **c.** *m*∠*BOC*
- **d.** mEAB
- **e.** *m*∠*HED*



# IMPROVING YOUR VISUAL THINKING SKILLS Folding Cubes II Each cube has designs on three faces. When unfolded, which figure at right could it become? 1. A. B. C. D. 2. A. B. C. D.





# **Proof as Challenge** and Discovery

So far, you have proved many theorems that are useful in geometry. You can also use proof to explore and possibly discover interesting properties. You might make a conjecture, and then use proof to decide whether it is always true.

These activities have been adapted from the book Rethinking Proof with The Geometer's Sketchpad, 2003, by Michael deVilliers.

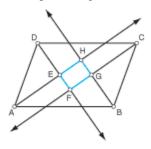
# Activity

# **Exploring Properties of Special Constructions**

Use Sketchpad to construct these figures. Drag them and notice their properties. Then prove your conjectures.

# Parallelogram Angle Bisectors

Construct a parallelogram and its angle bisectors. Label your sketch as shown.



Step 1 Is EFGH a special quadrilateral? Make a conjecture. Drag the vertices around. Are there cases when *EFGH* does not satisfy your conjecture?

Drag so that ABCD is a rectangle. What happens? Step 2

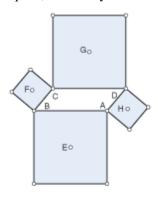
Step 3 Drag so that ABCD is a rhombus. What happens?

Step 4 Prove your conjectures for Steps 1–3.

Step 5 Construct the angle bisectors of another polygon. Investigate and write your observations. Make a conjecture and prove it.

# **Parallelogram Squares**

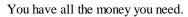
Construct parallelogram *ABCD* and a square on each side. Construct the center of each square, and label your sketch as shown.



- Step 6
- Connect *E*, *F*, *G*, and *H* with line segments. (Try using a different color.) Drag the vertices of *ABCD*. What do you observe? Make a conjecture. Drag your sketch around. Are there cases when *EFGH* does not satisfy your conjecture?
- Step 7
- Drag so that A, B, C, and D are collinear. What happens to EFGH?
- Step 8
- Prove your conjectures for Steps 6 and 7.
- Step 9
- Investigate other special quadrilaterals and the shapes formed by connecting the centers of the squares on their sides. Write your observations. Make a conjecture and prove it.

# IMPROVING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS

# A Precarious Proof



Let h = the money you have.

Let n = the money you need.

Most people think that the money they have is some amount less than the money they need. Stated mathematically, h = n - p for some positive p.

If 
$$h = n - p$$
, then

$$h(h-n) = (n-p)(h-n)$$

$$h^2 - hn = hn - n^2 - hp + np$$

$$h^2 - hn + hp = hn - n^2 + np$$

$$h(h-n+p)=n(h-n+p)$$

Therefore h = n.

So the money you have is equal to the money you need!

Is there a flaw in this proof?



How often have I said to you that when you have eliminated the impossible. whatever remains, however improbable, must be the truth?

SHERLOCK HOLMES IN THE SIGN OF THE FOUR BY SIR ARTHUR CONAN DOYLE

# **Indirect Proof**

In the proofs you have written so far, you have shown *directly*, through a sequence of statements and reasons, that a given conjecture is true. In this lesson you will write a different type of proof, called an indirect proof. In an indirect proof, you show something is true by eliminating all the other possibilities. You have probably used this type of reasoning when taking multiple-choice tests. If you are unsure of an answer, you can try to eliminate choices until you are left with only one possibility.

This mystery story gives an example of an indirect proof.



etective Sheerluck Holmes and three other people are alone on a tropical island. One morning, Sheerluck entertains the others by playing show tunes on his ukulele. Later that day, he discovers that his precious ukulele has been smashed to bits. Who could have committed such an antimusical act? Sheerluck eliminates himself as a suspect because he knows he didn't do it. He eliminates his girlfriend as a suspect because she has been with him all day. Colonel Moran recently injured both arms and therefore could not have smashed the ukulele with such force. There is only one other person on the island who could have committed the crime. So Sheerluck concludes that the fourth person, Sir Charles Mortimer, is the guilty one.

For a given mathematical statement, there are two possibilities: either the statement is true or it is not true. To prove indirectly that a statement is true, you start by assuming it is not true. You then use logical reasoning to show that this assumption leads to a contradiction. If an assumption leads to a contradiction, it must be false. Therefore, you can eliminate the possibility that the statement is not true. This leaves only one possibility—namely, that the statement is true!

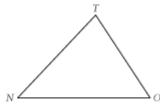
# **EXAMPLE A**

**Conjecture:** If  $m \angle N \neq m \angle O$  in  $\triangle NOT$ ,

then  $NT \neq OT$ .

**Given:**  $\triangle NOT$  with  $m \angle N \neq m \angle O$ 

Show:  $NT \neq OT$ 



# Solution

To prove indirectly that the statement  $NT \neq OT$  is true, start by assuming that it is *not* true. That is, assume NT = OT. Then show that this assumption leads to a contradiction.

# Paragraph Proof

Assume NT = OT. If NT = OT, then  $m \angle N = m \angle O$  by the Isosceles Triangle Theorem. But this contradicts the given fact that  $m \angle N \neq m \angle O$ . Therefore, the assumption NT = OT is false and so  $NT \neq OT$  is true.

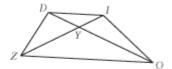
Here is another example of an indirect proof.

# **EXAMPLE B**

**Conjecture:** The diagonals of a trapezoid do not bisect each other.

**Given:** Trapezoid *ZOID* with parallel bases  $\overline{ZO}$  and  $\overline{ID}$  and diagonals  $\overline{DO}$  and  $\overline{IZ}$ intersecting at point Y

**Show:** The diagonals of trapezoid *ZOID* do not bisect each other; that is,  $DY \neq OY$ and  $ZY \neq IY$ 



# Solution

# **Paragraph Proof**

Assume that one of the diagonals of trapezoid ZOID, say ZI, does bisect the other. Then  $\overline{DY} \cong \overline{OY}$ . Also, by the AIA Theorem,  $\angle DIY \cong \angle OZY$ , and  $\angle IDY \cong \angle YOZ$ . Therefore,  $\triangle DYI \cong \triangle OYZ$  by the SAA Theorem. By CPCTC,  $\overline{ZO} \cong \overline{ID}$ . It is given that  $\overline{ZO} \parallel \overline{ID}$ . In Lesson 13.4, you proved that if one pair of opposite sides of a quadrilateral are parallel and congruent, then the quadrilateral is a parallelogram. So, ZOID is a parallelogram. Thus, ZOID has two pairs of opposite sides parallel. But because it is a trapezoid, it has exactly one pair of parallel sides. This is contradictory. Similarly, you can show that the assumption that  $\overline{OD}$  bisects  $\overline{ZI}$  leads to a contradiction. So the assumption that the diagonals of a trapezoid bisect each other is false and the conjecture is true.

In the developing proof activity you'll write an indirect proof of the Tangent Conjecture from Chapter 6.



# Developing Proof

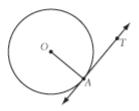
# **Proving the Tangent Conjecture**

Copy the information and diagram below, then work with your group to complete an indirect proof of the Tangent Conjecture.

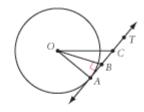
**Conjecture:** A tangent is perpendicular to the radius drawn to the point of tangency.

**Given:** Circle *O* with tangent  $\overline{AT}$  and radius  $\overline{AO}$ 

Show:  $\overline{AO} \perp \overrightarrow{AT}$ 



Step 1 Assume  $\overline{AO}$  is *not* perpendicular to  $\overline{AT}$ . Construct a perpendicular from point O to  $\overline{AT}$  and label the intersection point  $B(\overline{OB} \perp \overline{AT})$ . Which postulate allows you to do this?



- Step 2 Select a point C on AT, on the other side of B from A, such that  $\overline{BC} \cong \overline{AB}$ . Which postulate allows you to do this?
- Step 3 Next, construct  $\overline{OC}$ . Which postulate allows you to do this?
- Step 4  $\angle ABO \cong \angle CBO$ . Why?
- Step 5  $\overline{OB} \cong \overline{OB}$ . What property of congruence tells you this?
- Step 6 Therefore,  $\triangle ABO \cong \triangle CBO$ . Which congruence shortcut tells you the triangles are congruent?
- If  $\triangle ABO \cong \triangle CBO$ , then  $\overline{AO} \cong \overline{CO}$ . Why? Step 7
- Step 8 C must be a point on the circle (because a circle is the set of all points in the plane at a given distance from the center, and points A and C are both the same distance from the center). Therefore, AT intersects the circle in two points (A and C) and thus,  $A\overline{T}$  is not a tangent. But this leads to a contradiction. Why?
- Step 9 Discuss the steps with your group. What was the contradiction? What does it prove? Now write a complete indirect proof of the Tangent Conjecture.
- Step 10 Plan and write an indirect proof of the converse of the Tangent Conjecture: A line that is perpendicular to a radius at its endpoint on the circle is tangent to the circle.

Add the Tangent Conjecture and the Converse of the Tangent Theorem to your list of theorems.



# EXERCISES

For Exercises 1 and 2, the correct answer is one of the choices listed. Determine the correct answer by indirect reasoning, explaining how you eliminated each incorrect choice.

- 1. Which is the capital of Mali?
  - A. Paris
- **B.** Tucson
- C. London
- D. Bamako
- 2. Which Italian scientist used a new invention called the telescope to discover the moons of Jupiter?
  - **A.** Sir Edmund Halley **B.** Julius Caesar
- C. Galileo Galilei
- D. Madonna

- 3. Is the proof in Example A claiming that if two angles of a triangle are not congruent, then the triangle is not isosceles? Explain.
- **4.** Is the proof in Example B claiming that if one diagonal of a quadrilateral bisects the other, then the quadrilateral is not a trapezoid? Explain.
- **5.** Fill in the blanks in the indirect proof below.

**Conjecture:** No triangle has two right angles.

Given:  $\triangle ABC$ 

**Show:** No two angles are right angles

# **Two-Column Proof**

# Statement

- **1.** Assume  $\triangle ABC$  has two right angles (Assume  $m\angle A = 90^{\circ}$  and  $m\angle B = 90^{\circ}$ and  $0^{\circ} < m \angle C < 180^{\circ}$ .)
- **2.**  $m \angle A + m \angle B + m \angle C = 180^{\circ}$
- 3.  $90^{\circ} + 90^{\circ} + m \angle C = 180^{\circ}$
- **4.**  $m \angle C = \frac{?}{}$

# Reason

1. -?





But if  $m \angle C = 0$ , then the two sides  $\overline{AC}$  and  $\overline{BC}$  coincide, and thus there is no angle at C. This contradicts the given information. So the assumption is false. Therefore, no triangle has two right angles.

**6.** Write an indirect proof of the conjecture below.

**Conjecture:** No trapezoid is equiangular.

**Given:** Trapezoid *ZOID* with bases *ZO* and *ID* 

**Show:** *ZOID* is not equiangular



7. Write an indirect proof of the conjecture below.

**Conjecture:** In a scalene triangle, the median cannot be the altitude.

**Given:** Scalene triangle ABC with median  $\overline{CD}$ **Show:** Median  $\overline{CD}$  is not the altitude to  $\overline{AB}$ 

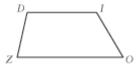


**8.** Write an indirect proof of the conjecture below.

**Conjecture:** The bases of a trapezoid have unequal lengths.

**Given:** Trapezoid *ZOID* with parallel bases and *ZO*and *ID* 

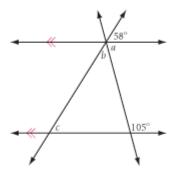
Show:  $ZO \neq ID$ 



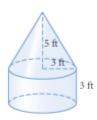
9. Write the "given" and the "show," and then plan and write the proof of the Perpendicular Bisector of a Chord Conjecture: The perpendicular bisector of a chord passes through the center of the circle. When you have finished your proof, add this to your list of theorems.

# Review

**10.** Find *a*, *b*, and *c*.



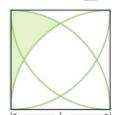
**11.** A clear plastic container is in the shape of a right cone atop a right cylinder, and their bases coincide. Find the volume of the container.



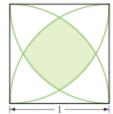
12. Each arc is a quarter of a circle with its center at a vertex of the square.

**Given:** The square has side length 1 unit **Find:** The shaded area

**a.** Shaded area = ?



**b.** Shaded area = ?



- 13. For each statement, select always (A), sometimes (S), or never (N).
  - **a.** An angle inscribed in a semicircle is a right angle.
  - **b.** An angle inscribed in a major arc is obtuse.
  - $\boldsymbol{c}. \ \, An \ arc$  measure equals the measure of its central angle.
  - **d.** The measure of an angle formed by two intersecting chords equals the measure of its intercepted arc.
  - **e.** The measure of the angle formed by two tangents to a circle equals the supplement of the central angle of the minor intercepted arc.

# IMPROVING YOUR **REASONING** SKILLS

# Symbol Juggling

If  $V = \frac{1}{3}BH$ ,  $B = \frac{1}{2}h(a+b)$ , h = 2x, a = 2b, b = x, and Hx = 12, find the value of V in terms of x.





13.6

When people say, "It can't be done, "or" You don't have what it takes," it makes the task all the more interesting.

LYNN HILL

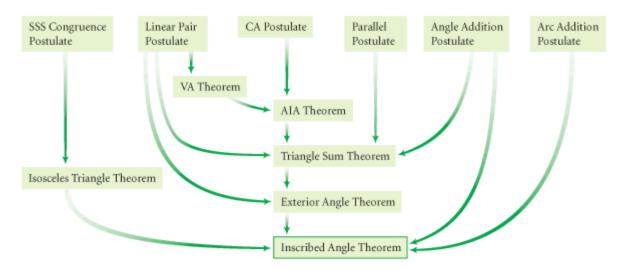
# **Circle Proofs**

In Chapter 6, you completed the proof of the three cases of the Inscribed Angle Conjecture: The measure of an inscribed angle in a circle equals half the measure of its intercepted arc. There was a lot of algebra in the proof. You may not have noticed that the Angle Addition Postulate was used, as well as a property that we called *arc addition*. Arc Addition is a postulate that you need to add to your list.

# Arc Addition Postulate

If point B is on  $\overline{AC}$  and between points A and C, then  $\overline{mAB} + \overline{mBC} = \overline{mAC}$ .

Is the proof of the Inscribed Angle Conjecture now completely supported by the premises of geometry? Can you call it a theorem? To answer these questions, trace the family tree.



So, the Inscribed Angle Conjecture is completely supported by premises of geometry; therefore you can call it a theorem and add it to your theorem list.

A double rainbow creates arcs in the sky over Stonehenge near Wiltshire, England. Built from bluestone and sandstone from 3000 to 1500 B.C.E., Stonehenge itself is laid out in the shape of a major arc.



In the exercises, you will create proofs or family trees for many of your earlier discoveries about circles.



# **EXERCISES**

You will need

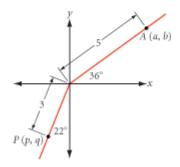
In Exercises 1–7, set up and write a proof of each conjecture. Once you have completed the proofs, add the theorems to your list.



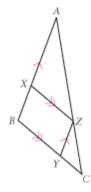
- 1. Inscribed angles that intercept the same or congruent arcs are congruent. (Inscribed Angles Intercepting Arcs Theorem)
- 2. The opposite angles of an inscribed quadrilateral are supplementary. (Cyclic Quadrilateral Theorem)
- **3.** Parallel lines intercept congruent arcs on a circle. (Parallel Secants Congruent Arcs Theorem)
- **4.** If a parallelogram is inscribed within a circle, then the parallelogram is a rectangle. (Parallelogram Inscribed in a Circle Theorem)
- **5.** Tangent segments from a point to a circle are congruent. (Tangent Segments Theorem)
- **6.** The measure of an angle formed by two intersecting chords is half the sum of the measures of the two intercepted arcs. (Intersecting Chords Theorem)
- 7. Write and prove a theorem about the arcs intercepted by secants intersecting outside a circle, and the angle formed by the secants. (Intersecting Secants Theorem)
- **8.** Prove the Angles Inscribed in a Semicircle Conjecture: An angle inscribed in a semicircle is a right angle. Explain why this is a corollary of the Inscribed Angle Theorem.
- 9. Create a family tree for the Tangent Segments Theorem.
- **10.** Create a family tree for the Parallelogram Inscribed in a Circle Theorem.

# Review

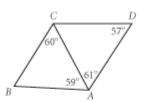
**11.** Find the coordinates of *A* and *P* to the nearest tenth.



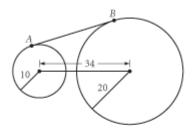
**12. Given:** AX = 6, XB = 2, BC = 4, ZC = 3 **Find:**  $BY = \frac{3}{2}$ ,  $YC = \frac{3}{2}$ ,  $AZ = \frac{3}{2}$ 



13. List the five segments in order from shortest to longest.



**14.**  $\overline{AB}$  is a common external tangent. Find the length of  $\overline{AB}$  (to a tenth of a unit).



**15.** Technology P is any point inside an equilateral triangle. Is there a relationship between the height h and the sum a + b + c? Use geometry software to explore the relationship and make a conjecture. Then write a proof of your conjecture.

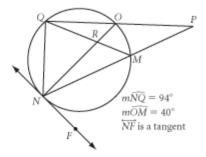


**16.** Find each measure or conclude that it "cannot be determined."

**c.** 
$$m \angle QRN$$

**e.** 
$$m \angle ONF$$

$$\mathbf{f.}$$
  $mMN$ 

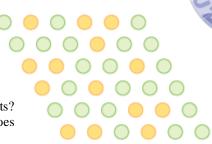


17. Construction Use a compass and straightedge to construct the two tangents to a circle from a point outside the circle.

# IMPROVING YOUR REASONING SKILLS

# Seeing Spots

The arrangement of green and yellow spots at right may appear to be random, but there is a pattern. Each row is generated by the row immediately above it. Find the pattern and add several rows to the arrangement. Do you think a row could ever consist of all yellow spots? All green spots? Could there ever be a row with one green spot? Does a row ever repeat itself?





Mistakes are part of the dues one pays for a full life. SOPHIA LOREN

# **Similarity Proofs**

To prove conjectures involving similarity, we need to extend the properties of equality and congruence to similarity.

# **Properties of Similarity**

# Reflexive property of similarity

Any figure is similar to itself.

# Symmetric property of similarity

If Figure A is similar to Figure B, then Figure B is similar to Figure A.

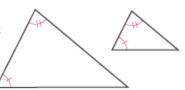
# Transitive property of similarity

If Figure A is similar to Figure B and Figure B is similar to Figure C, then Figure A is similar to Figure C.

The AA Similarity Conjecture is actually a similarity postulate.

# **AA Similarity Postulate**

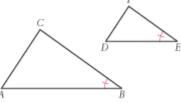
If two angles of one triangle are congruent to two angles of another triangle, then the two triangles are similar.



In Chapter 11, you also discovered the SAS and SSS shortcuts for showing that two triangles are similar. In the example that follows, you will see how to use the AA Similarity Postulate to prove the SAS Similarity Conjecture, making it the SAS Similarity Theorem.

# **EXAMPLE**

Prove the SAS Similarity Conjecture: If two sides of one triangle are proportional to two sides of another triangle and the included angles are congruent, then the two triangles are similar.

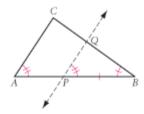


# ► Solution

**Given:**  $\triangle ABC$  and  $\triangle DEF$  such that  $\frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EF}$  and  $\angle B \cong \angle E$ 

**Show:**  $\triangle ABC = \angle DEF$ 

**Plan:** The only shortcut for showing that two triangles are similar is the AA Similarity Postulate, so you need to find another pair of congruent angles. One way of getting two congruent angles is to find two congruent triangles. You can draw a triangle within  $\triangle ABC$  that is congruent to  $\triangle DEF$ . The Segment Duplication Postulate allows you to locate a point P on AB such that PB = DE. The Parallel Postulate allows you to construct a line PQ parallel to AC. Then  $AC \cong AC$  by the CA Postulate.





Now, if you can show that  $\triangle PBO \cong \triangle DEF$ , then you will have two congruent pairs of angles to prove  $\triangle ABC = \triangle DEF$ . So, how do you show that  $\triangle PBQ \cong \triangle DEF$ ? If you can get  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle PBQ$ , then  $\frac{AB}{PB} = \frac{BC}{BQ}$ . It is given that  $\frac{AB}{DF} = \frac{BC}{FF}$ , and you constructed PB = DE. With some algebra and substitution, you can get EF = BQ. Then the two triangles will be congruent by the SAS Congruence Postulate.

Here is the two-column proof.

# Statement

- **1.** Locate P such that PB = DE
- **2.** Construct  $\overline{PQ} \parallel \overline{AC}$
- 3.  $\angle A \cong \angle QPB$
- 4.  $\angle B \cong \angle B$
- 5.  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle PBO$
- **6.**  $\frac{AB}{PB} = \frac{BC}{BQ}$
- 7.  $\frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{BQ}$
- **8.**  $\frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EF}$
- **10.** BQ = EF
- 11.  $\angle B \cong \angle E$
- **12.**  $\triangle PBQ \cong \triangle DEF$
- 13.  $\angle QPB \cong \angle D$
- 14.  $\angle A \cong \angle D$
- **15.**  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$

#### Reason

- 1. Segment Duplication Postulate
- 2. Parallel Postulate
- **3.** CA Postulate
- 4. Reflexive property of congruence
- 5. AA Similarity Postulate
- **6.** Corresponding sides of similar triangles are proportional (CSSTP)
- **7.** Substitution
- 8. Given
- 9. Transitive property of equality
- **10.** Algebra operations
- 11. Given
- 12. SAS Congruence Postulate
- 13. CPCTC
- **14.** Substitution
- 15. AA Similarity Postulate

This proves the SAS Similarity Conjecture.

The proof in the example above may seem complicated, but it relies on triangle congruence and triangle similarity postulates. Reading the plan again can help you follow the steps in the proof.

You can now call the SAS Similarity Conjecture the SAS Similarity Theorem and add it to your theorem list.

In the following developing proof activity you will use the SAS Similarity Theorem to prove the SSS Similarity Conjecture.



# Developing Proof

# **Proving the SSS Similarity Conjecture**

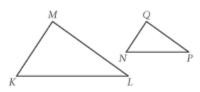
Similarity proofs can be challenging. Follow the steps and work with your group to prove the SSS Similarity Conjecture: If the three sides of one triangle are proportional to the three sides of another triangle, then the two triangles are similar.

Step 1

Identify the given and show.

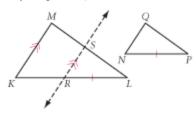
Step 2

Restate what is given and what you must show in terms of this diagram.



Step 3

Plan your proof. (Hint: Use an auxiliary line like the one in the example.)



Step 4

Copy the first ten statements and provide the reasons. Then write the remaining steps and reasons necessary to complete the proof.

#### Statement

- **1.** Locate R such that RL = NP
- 2. Construct RS | KM
- 3.  $\angle SRL \cong \angle K$
- **4.**  $\angle RSL \cong \angle M$
- 5.  $\triangle KLM = \triangle RLS$
- **6.**  $\frac{KL}{RL} = \frac{LM}{LS} = \frac{MK}{SR}$
- 7.  $\frac{KL}{NP} = \frac{LM}{LS}$
- 8.  $\frac{KL}{NP} = \frac{LM}{PQ}$
- 9.  $\frac{KL}{NP} = \frac{MK}{SR}$
- 10.  $\frac{KL}{NP} = \frac{MK}{QN}$

# Reason

- 1. Postulate
- 2. Postulate
- 3. Postulate
- 4. Postulate

- 10. 📑

Step 5

Draw arrows to show the flow of logic in your two-column proof.

When you have completed the proof, you can call the SSS Similarity Conjecture the SSS Similarity Theorem and add it to your theorem list.



# **EXERCISES**

#### You will need



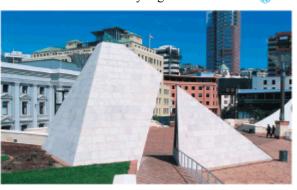
In Exercises 1 and 2, write a proof and draw the family tree of each theorem. If the family tree is completely supported by theorems and postulates, add the theorem to your list.

- 1. If two triangles are similar, then corresponding altitudes are proportional to the corresponding sides. (Corresponding Altitudes Theorem)
- 2. If two triangles are similar, then corresponding medians are proportional to the corresponding sides. (Corresponding Medians Theorem)

In Exercises 3–10, write a proof of the conjecture. Once you have completed the proofs, add the theorems to your list. As always, you may use theorems that have been proved in previous exercises in your proofs.

- 3. If two triangles are similar, then corresponding angle bisectors are proportional to the corresponding sides. (Corresponding Angle Bisectors Theorem)
- **4.** If a line passes through two sides of a triangle parallel to the third side, then it divides the two sides proportionally. (Parallel/Proportionality Theorem)
- 5. If a line passes through two sides of a triangle dividing them proportionally, then it is parallel to the third side. (Converse of the Parallel/Proportionality Theorem)
- **6.** If you drop an altitude from the vertex of a right angle to its hypotenuse, then it divides the right triangle into two right triangles that are similar to each other and to the original right triangle. (Three Similar Right Triangles Theorem)
- 7. The length of the altitude to the hypotenuse of a right triangle is the geometric mean of the lengths of the two segments on the hypotenuse. (Altitude to the Hypotenuse Theorem)
- **8.** The Pythagorean Theorem
- 10. If the hypotenuse and one leg of a right triangle are congruent to the hypotenuse and one leg of another right triangle, then the two right triangles are congruent. (Hypotenuse-Leg Theorem)
- **11.** Create a family tree for the Parallel/Proportionality Theorem.
- 12. Create a family tree for the SSS Similarity Theorem.
- 13. Create a family tree for the Pythagorean Theorem

**9.** Converse of the Pythagorean Theorem



This monument in Wellington, New Zealand, was designed by Maori architect Rewi Thompson. How would you describe the shape of the monument? How might the artist have used geometry in planning the construction?

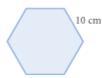
# **Review**

- **14.** A circle with diameter 9.6 cm has two parallel chords with lengths 5.2 cm and 8.2 cm. How far apart are the chords? Find two possible answers.
- **15.** Choose **A** if the value is greater in the regular hexagon.

Choose **B** if the value is greater in the regular pentagon.

Choose C if the values are equal in both figures.

Choose **D** if it cannot be determined which value is greater.



12 cm

Regular hexagon

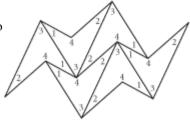
Regular pentagon

a. Perimeter

**b.** Apothem

c. Area

- **d.** Sum of interior angles
- e. Sum of exterior angles
- **16.** *Mini-Investigation* Cut out a small nonsymmetric concave quadrilateral. Number the vertices. Use your cut-out as a template to create a tessellation. Trace about 10 images that fit together to cover part of the plane. Number the vertices of each image to match the numbers on your cut-out.
  - a. Draw two different translation vectors that map your tessellation onto itself. How do these two vectors relate to your original quadrilateral?
  - **b.** Pick a quadrilateral in your tessellation. What transformation will map the quadrilateral you picked onto an adjacent quadrilateral? With that transformation, what happens to the rest of the tessellation?



- Technology Use geometry software to draw a small nonsymmetric concave quadrilateral.
  - **a.** Describe the transformations that will make the figure tessellate.
  - **b.** Describe two different translation vectors that map your tessellation onto itself.
- 18. Given:

Circles 
$$P$$
 and  $Q$ 
 $\overline{PS}$  and  $\overline{PT}$  are tangent to circle  $Q$ 
 $m \angle SPQ = 57^{\circ}$ 
 $m\overline{GS} = 118^{\circ}$ 

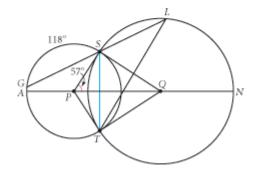
# Find:



**c.** 
$$m \angle TSQ$$

**d.** 
$$m\overline{SL}$$

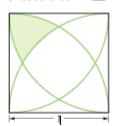
- **e.** Explain why *PSQT* is cyclic.
- **f.** Explain why  $\overline{SQ}$  is tangent.



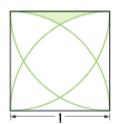
**19.** Each arc is a quarter of a circle with its center at a vertex of the square.

**Given:** The square has side length 1 unit **Find:** The shaded area

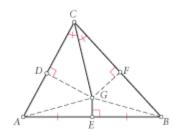
**a.** Shaded area =  $\frac{1}{2}$ 



- - **b.** Shaded area =  $\stackrel{?}{\perp}$   $\stackrel{?}{l}$



- **20.** Technology The diagram below shows a scalene triangle with angle bisector CG, and perpendicular bisector  $\overline{GE}$  of side  $\overline{AB}$ . Study the diagram.
  - a. Which triangles are congruent?
  - **b.** You can use congruent triangles to prove that  $\triangle ABC$  is isosceles. How?
  - c. Given a scalene triangle, you proved that it is isosceles. What's wrong with this proof?
  - **d.** Use geometry software to re-create the construction. What does the sketch tell you about what's wrong?
- 21. Dakota Davis is at an archaeological dig where he has uncovered a stone voussoir that resembles an isosceles trapezoidal prism. Each trapezoidal face has bases that measure 27 cm and 32 cm, and congruent legs that measure 32 cm each. Help Dakota determine the rise and span of the arch when it was standing, and the total number of voussoirs. Explain your method.

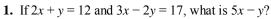




# IMPROVING YOUR ALGEBRA SKILLS

# The Eye Should Be Quicker Than the Hand

How fast can you answer these questions?



**2.** If 
$$4x - 5y = 19$$
 and  $6x + 7y = 31$ , what is  $10x + 2y$ ?

3. If 
$$3x + 2y = 11$$
 and  $2x + y = 7$ , what is  $x + y$ ?



# Coordinate Proof

You can prove conjectures involving midpoints, slope, and distance using analytic geometry. When you do this, you create a **coordinate proof**. Coordinate proofs rely on the premises of geometry and these three properties from algebra.

# **Coordinate Midpoint Property**

If  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$  are the coordinates of the endpoints of a segment, then the coordinates of the midpoint are  $(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2})$ .

# **Parallel Slope Property**

In a coordinate plane, two distinct lines are parallel if and only if their slopes are equal.

# **Perpendicular Slope Property**

In a coordinate plane, two nonvertical lines are perpendicular if and only if their slopes are opposite reciprocals of each other.

For coordinate proofs, you also use the coordinate version of the Pythagorean Theorem, the distance formula.

# **Distance Formula**

The distance between points  $A(x_1, y_1)$  and  $B(x_2, y_2)$  is given by

$$AB^2 = (x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2$$
 or  $AB = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$ .

The process you use in a coordinate proof contains the same five tasks that you learned in Lesson 13.2. However, in Task 2, you draw and label a diagram on a coordinate plane. Locate the vertices and other points of your diagram so that they reflect the given information, yet their coordinates do not restrict the generality of your diagram. In other words, do not assume any extra properties for your figure, besides the ones given in its definition.

# **EXAMPLE A**

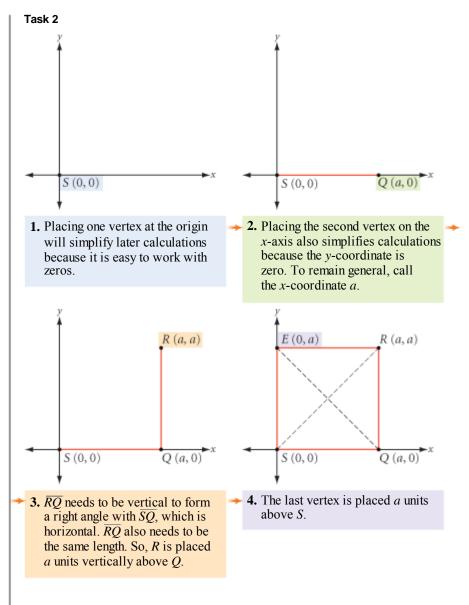
Write a coordinate proof of the Square Diagonals Conjecture: The diagonals of a square are congruent and are perpendicular bisectors of each other.

#### Solution

#### Task 1

**Given:** A square with both diagonals

**Show:** The diagonals are congruent and are perpendicular bisectors of each other



You can check that *SQRE* fits the definition of a square—an equiangular, equilateral parallelogram.

Slope of 
$$\overline{SQ} = \frac{0-0}{a-0} = \frac{0}{a} = 0$$
  
 $SQ = \sqrt{(a-0)^2 + (0-0)^2} = \sqrt{a^2} = a$ 

Slope of 
$$\overline{QR} = \frac{a-0}{a-a} = \frac{a}{0}$$
 (undefined)

$$QR = \sqrt{(a-a)^2 + (a-0)^2} = \sqrt{a^2} = a$$

Slope of 
$$\overline{RE} = \frac{a-a}{0-a} = \frac{0}{-a} = 0$$
  
 $RE = \sqrt{(0-a)^2 + (a-a)^2} = \sqrt{a^2} = a$ 

Slope of 
$$\overline{ES} = \frac{0 - a}{0 - 0} = \frac{-a}{0}$$
 (undefined)  
 $ES = \sqrt{(0 - 0)^2 + (0 - a)^2} = \sqrt{a^2} = a$ 

Opposite sides have the same slope and are therefore parallel, so SORE is a parallelogram. Also, from the slopes,  $\overline{SQ}$  and  $\overline{RE}$  are horizontal and  $\overline{QR}$ and ES are vertical, so all angles are right angles and the parallelogram is equiangular. Lastly, all the sides have the same length, so the parallelogram is equilateral. SORE is an equiangular, equilateral parallelogram and is a square by definition.

# Task 3

**Given:** Square *SQRE* with diagonals  $\overline{SR}$  and  $\overline{QE}$ 

**Show:**  $\overline{SR} \cong \overline{OE}$ ,  $\overline{SR}$  and  $\overline{OE}$  bisect each other, and  $\overline{SR} \perp \overline{OE}$ 

#### Task 4

To show that  $\overline{SR} = \overline{QE}$ , you must show that both segments have the same length. To show that  $\overline{SR}$  and  $\overline{QE}$  bisect each other, you must show that the segments share the same midpoint. To show that  $S\overline{R} \perp \overline{QE}$ , you must show that the segments have opposite reciprocal slopes. Because you know the coordinates of the endpoints of both SR and QE, you can use the distance formula, the coordinate midpoint property, and the definition of slope to do the necessary calculations, and to show that the perpendicular slope property is satisfied.

# Task 5

Use the distance formula to find SR and OE.

$$SR = \sqrt{(a-0)^2 + (a-0)^2} = \sqrt{2a^2} = a\sqrt{2}$$
  
 $QE = \sqrt{(a-0)^2 + (0-a)^2} = \sqrt{2a^2} = a\sqrt{2}$ 

So, by the definition of congruence,  $S\overline{R} \equiv \overline{OE}$  because both segments have the same length.

Use the coordinate midpoint property to find the midpoints of  $S\overline{R}$  and  $\overline{QE}$ .

Midpoint of 
$$\overline{SR} = \left(\frac{0+a}{2}, \frac{0+a}{2}\right) = (0.5a, 0.5a)$$
  
Midpoint of  $\overline{QE} = \left(\frac{0+a}{2}, \frac{a+0}{2}\right) = (0.5a, 0.5a)$ 

So,  $\overline{SR}$  and  $\overline{QE}$  bisect each other because both segments have the same midpoint.

Finally, compare the slopes of  $\overline{SR}$  and  $\overline{QE}$ .

Slope of 
$$\overline{SR} = \frac{a-0}{a-0} = 1$$

Slope of 
$$\overline{QE} = \frac{a-0}{0-a} = -1$$

So,  $\overline{SR} \perp \overline{QE}$  by the perpendicular slope property because the segments have opposite reciprocal slopes.

Therefore, the diagonals of a square are congruent and are perpendicular bisectors of each other.

Add the Square Diagonals Theorem to your list.

Here's another example. See if you can recognize how the five tasks result in this proof.

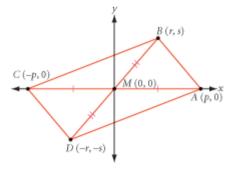
# **EXAMPLE B**

Write a coordinate proof of this conditional statement: If the diagonals of a quadrilateral bisect each other, then the quadrilateral is a parallelogram.

# Solution

**Given:** Quadrilateral <u>ABCD</u> with diagonals <u>AC</u> and <u>BD</u> that bisect each other (common midpoint *M*)

**Show:** ABCD is a parallelogram



#### **Proof**

Slope of 
$$\overline{AB} = \frac{s-0}{r-p} = \frac{s}{r-p}$$

Slope of 
$$\overline{BC} = \frac{0-s}{-p-r} = \frac{-(s)}{-(p+r)} = \frac{s}{p+r}$$

Slope of 
$$\overline{CD} = \frac{-s - 0}{-r - (-p)} = \frac{-(s)}{-(r - p)} = \frac{s}{r - p}$$

Slope of 
$$\overline{DA} = \frac{0 - (-s)}{p - (-r)} = \frac{s}{p + r}$$

Opposite sides  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{CD}$  have equal slopes  $\frac{s}{r-p}$ . Opposite sides  $\overline{BC}$  and  $\overline{DA}$  have equal slopes,  $\frac{s}{p+r}$  So, each pair is parallel by the parallel slope property. Therefore, quadrilateral ABCD is a parallelogram by definition. Add this theorem to your list.

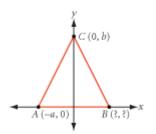
It is clear from these examples that creating a diagram on a coordinate plane is a significant challenge in a coordinate proof. The first seven exercises will give you some more practice creating these diagrams.



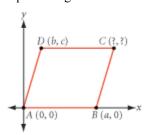
# **EXERCISES**

In Exercises 1–3, each diagram shows a convenient general position of a polygon on a coordinate plane. Find the missing coordinates.

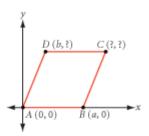
1. Triangle ABC is isosceles.



**2.** Quadrilateral *ABCD* is a parallelogram.



**3.** Quadrilateral *ABCD* is a rhombus.

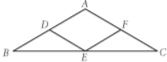


In Exercises 4–7, draw each figure on a coordinate plane. Assign general coordinates to each point of the figure. Then use the coordinate midpoint property, parallel slope property, perpendicular slope property, and/or the distance formula to check that the coordinates you have assigned meet the definition of the figure.

- 4. Rectangle RECT
- 5. Triangle TRI with its three midsegments
- **6.** Isosceles trapezoid *TRAP*
- 7. Equilateral triangle EQU

In Exercises 8–13, write a coordinate proof of each conjecture. If it cannot be proven, write "cannot be proven."

- **8.** The diagonals of a rectangle are congruent.
- **9.** The midsegment of a triangle is parallel to the third side and half the length of the third side.
- 10. The midsegment of a trapezoid is parallel to the bases.
- **11.** If only one diagonal of a quadrilateral is the perpendicular bisector of the other diagonal, then the quadrilateral is a kite.
- **12.** The figure formed by connecting the midpoints of the sides of a quadrilateral is a parallelogram.
- **13.** The quadrilateral formed by connecting the midpoint of the base to the midpoint of each leg in an isosceles triangle is a rhombus.



E is the midpoint of base  $\overline{BC}$ . D and F are the midpoints of the legs.



# SPECIAL PROOFS OF SPECIAL CONJECTURES

In this project your task is to research and present logical arguments in support of one or more of these special properties.

1. Prove that there are only five regular polyhedra.



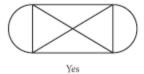


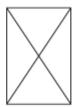






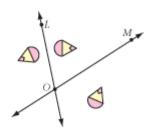
**2.** You discovered Euler's rule for determining whether a planar network can or cannot be traveled. Write a proof defending Euler's formula for networks.



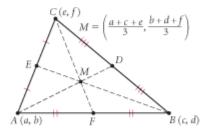


You discovered that the formula for the sum of the measures of the interior angles of an n-gon is (n - 2)180°. Prove that this formula is correct.





- **4.** You discovered that the composition of two reflections over intersecting lines is equivalent to one rotation. Prove that this always works.
- **5.** The coordinates of the centroid of a triangle are equal to the average of the coordinates of the triangle's three vertices. Prove that this is always true.
- **6.** Prove that  $\sqrt{2}$  is irrational.



7. When you explored all the 1-uniform tilings (Archimedean tilings), you discovered that there are exactly 11 Archimedean tilings of the plane. Prove that there are exactly 11.

# Exploration

# **Non-Euclidean Geometries**

Have you ever changed the rules of a game? Sometimes, changing just one simple rule creates a completely different game. You can compare geometry to a game whose rules are postulates. If you change even one postulate, you may create an entirely new geometry.

Euclidean geometry—the geometry you learned in this course—is based on several postulates. A postulate, according to the contemporaries of Euclid, is an obvious truth that cannot be derived from other postulates.

The list below contains the first five of Euclid's postulates.

Postulate 1: You can draw a straight line through any two points.

Postulate 2: You can extend any segment indefinitely.

Postulate 3: You can draw a circle with any given point as center and any given radius.

Postulate 4: All right angles are equal.

Postulate 5: Through a given point not on a given line, you can draw exactly one

line that is parallel to the given line.

The fifth postulate, known as the Parallel Postulate, does not seem as obvious as the others. In fact, for centuries, many mathematicians did not believe it was a postulate at all and tried to show that it could be proved using the other postulates. Attempting to use indirect proof, mathematicians began by assuming that the fifth postulate was false and then tried to reach a logical contradiction.

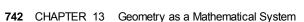
If the Parallel Postulate is false, then one of these assumptions must be true.

Assumption 1: Through a given point not on a given line, you can draw *more* than one line parallel to the given line.

Assumption 2: Through a given point not on a given line, you can draw *no line* parallel to the given line.



Hungarian mathematician
János Bolyai, one of the
discoverers of hyperbolic
geometry, said, "I have
discovered such wonderful
things that I was amazed . . .
out of nothing I have
created a strange new
universe."

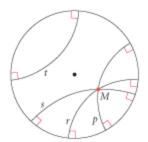


Interestingly, neither of these assumptions contradict any of Euclid's other postulates. Assumption 1 leads to a new deductive system of non-Euclidean geometry, called **hyperbolic geometry**. Assumption 2 leads to another non-Euclidean system, called **elliptic geometry**.

One type of elliptic geometry called **spherical geometry** applies to lines and angles on a sphere. On Earth, if you walk in a "straight line" indefinitely, what shape will your path take? Theoretically, if you walk long enough, you will end up back at the same point, after walking a complete circle around Earth! (Find a globe and check it!) So, on a sphere, a "straight line" is not a line at all, but a circle.

Hyperbolic geometry is confined to a circular disk.

The edges of the disk represent infinity so lines curve and come to an end at the edge of the circle. This may sound like a strange model, but it fits physicists' theory that we live in a closed universe.



In hyperbolic geometry, many lines can be drawn through a point parallel to another line. Lines p, r, and s all pass through point M and are parallel to line t.

In this activity you will explore spherical geometry.

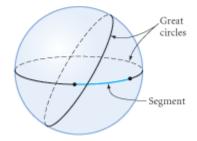
# **Activity**

# **Spherical Geometry**

# You will need

- a sphere that you can draw on
- a compass

You can use the surface of a sphere to explore spherical geometry. Of course, you can't draw a straight line on a sphere. On a plane, the shortest distance between two points is measured along a line. On a sphere, the shortest distance between two points is measured along a great circle. Recall that a **great circle** is a circle on the surface of a sphere whose diameter passes through the center of the sphere. So, in spherical geometry, a "segment" is an arc of a great circle.



In spherical geometry, "lines" (that is, great circles) never end; however, their length is finite! Because all great circles have the same diameter, all "lines" have the same length.

Any type of elliptic geometry must satisfy the assumption that, through a given point not on a given line, there are *no* lines parallel to the given line. Simply put, there are no parallel lines in elliptic geometry. In spherical geometry, all great circles intersect, so spherical geometry satisfies this assumption.

Step 1 Write a set of postulates for spherical geometry by rewriting Euclid's first five postulates. Replace the word *line* with the words *great circle*.

Step 2 In Euclidean geometry, two lines that are perpendicular to the same line are parallel to each other. This is not true in spherical geometry. On your sphere, draw an example of two "lines" that are perpendicular to the same "line" but that are not parallel to each other.

Step 3 On your sphere, show that two points do not always determine a unique "line."

Step 4 Draw an isosceles triangle on your sphere. (Remember, the "segments" that form the sides of a triangle must be arcs of great circles.) Does the Isosceles Triangle Theorem appear to hold in spherical geometry?

Step 5 In spherical geometry, the sum of the measures of the three angles of a triangle is always greater than 180°. Draw a triangle on your model and use it to help you explain why this makes sense.

Step 6 In Euclidean geometry, no triangle can have two right angles. But in spherical geometry, a triangle can have three right angles. Find such a triangle and sketch it.







Japanese temari balls, colorful balls made of thread or scrap material, are embroidered with geometric designs derived from nature, like flowers or trees. Also called "princess balls," they originated in 700 c.E., when young nobility made them from silk and gave them as gifts. Notice that each "line segment" in the design of a temari ball is actually an arc of a great circle.



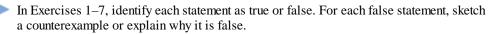
In this course you have discovered geometry properties and made conjectures based on inductive reasoning. You have also used deductive reasoning to explain why some of your conjectures were true. In this chapter you have focused on geometry as a deductive system. You learned about the premises of geometry. Starting fresh with these premises, you built a system of theorems.



By discovering geometry and then examining it as a mathematical system, you have been following in the footsteps of mathematicians throughout history. Your discoveries gave you an understanding of how geometry works. Proofs gave you the tools for taking apart your discoveries and understanding why they work.



# EXERCISES Practice



- 1. If one pair of sides of a quadrilateral are parallel and the other pair of sides are congruent, then the quadrilateral is a parallelogram.
- **2.** If consecutive angles of a quadrilateral are supplementary, then the quadrilateral is a parallelogram.
- **3.** If the diagonals of a quadrilateral are congruent, then the quadrilateral is a rectangle.
- **4.** Two exterior angles of an obtuse triangle are obtuse.

Reymatheom

- 5. The opposite angles of a quadrilateral inscribed within a circle are congruent.
- **6.** The diagonals of a trapezoid bisect each other.
- 7. The midpoint of the hypotenuse of a right triangle is equidistant from all three vertices.

In Exercises 8–12, complete each statement.

- **8.** A tangent is <u>1</u> to the radius drawn to the point of tangency.
- **9.** Tangent segments from a point to a circle are  $\perp$ .
- 10. The perpendicular bisector of a chord passes through  $\frac{1}{2}$ .
- 11. The three midsegments of a triangle divide the triangle into  $\perp$ .
- **12.** A lemma is <u>1</u>.
- **13.** Restate this conjecture as a conditional: The segment joining the midpoints of the diagonals of a trapezoid is parallel to the bases.

- **14.** Sometimes a proof requires a construction. If you need an angle bisector in a proof, which postulate allows you to construct one?
- **15.** If an altitude is needed in a proof, which postulate allows you to construct one?
- **16.** Describe the procedure for an indirect proof.
- 17. a. What point is this anti-smoking poster trying to make?
  - **b.** Write an indirect argument to support your answer to part a.

**Developing Proof** In Exercises 18–23, identify each statement as true or false. If true, prove it. If false, give a counterexample or explain why it is false.

- **18.** If the diagonals of a parallelogram bisect the angles, then the parallelogram is a square.
- **19.** The angle bisectors of one pair of base angles of an isosceles trapezoid are perpendicular.
- **20.** The perpendicular bisectors to the congruent sides of an isosceles trapezoid are perpendicular.
- **21.** The segment joining the feet of the altitudes on the two congruent sides of an isosceles triangle is parallel to the third side.
- 22. The diagonals of a rhombus are perpendicular.
- 23. The bisectors of a pair of opposite angles of a parallelogram are parallel.

**Developing Proof** In Exercises 24–27, devise a plan and write a proof of each conjecture.

**24.** Refer to the figure at right.

**Given:** Circle *O* with chords  $\overline{PN}$ ,  $\overline{ET}$ ,  $\overline{NA}$ ,  $\overline{TP}$ ,  $\overline{AE}$ 

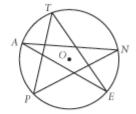
**Show:**  $m \angle P + m \angle E + m \angle N + m \angle T + m \angle A = 180^{\circ}$ 

- **25.** If a triangle is a right triangle, then it has at least one angle whose measure is less than or equal to  $45^{\circ}$ .
- **26.** Prove the Triangle Midsegment Conjecture.
- **27.** Prove the Trapezoid Midsegment Conjecture.

**Developing Proof** In Exercises 28–30, use construction tools or geometry software to perform each mini-investigation. Then make a conjecture and prove it.

- **28.** *Mini-Investigation* Construct a rectangle. Construct the midpoint of each side. Connect the four midpoints to form another quadrilateral.
  - **a.** What do you observe about the quadrilateral formed? From a previous theorem, you already know that the quadrilateral is a parallelogram. State a conjecture about the type of parallelogram formed.
  - **b.** Prove your conjecture.





- **29.** *Mini-Investigation* Construct a rhombus. Construct the midpoint of each side. Connect the four midpoints to form another quadrilateral.
  - **a.** You know that the quadrilateral is a parallelogram, but what type of parallelogram is it? State a conjecture about the parallelogram formed by connecting the midpoints of a rhombus.
  - **b.** Prove your conjecture.
- **30.** *Mini-Investigation* Construct a kite. Construct the midpoint of each side. Connect the four midpoints to form another quadrilateral.
  - State a conjecture about the parallelogram formed by connecting the midpoints of a kite.
  - **b.** Prove your conjecture.
- **31. Developing Proof** Prove this theorem: If two chords intersect in a circle, the product of the segment lengths on one chord is equal to the product of the segment lengths on the other chord.

# Assessing What You've Learned



WRITE IN YOUR JOURNAL How does the deductive system in geometry compare to the underlying organization in your study of science, history, and language?



**UPDATE YOUR PORTFOLIO** Choose a project or a challenging proof you did in this chapter to add to your portfolio.



**ORGANIZE YOUR NOTEBOOK**Review your notebook to be sure it's complete and well organized. Be sure you have all the theorems on your theorem list. Write a one-page summary of Chapter 13.



**PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENT** While a classmate, friend, family member, or teacher observes, demonstrate how to prove one or more of the theorems proved in this chapter. Explain what you're doing at each step.



**GIVE A PRESENTATION** Give a presentation on a puzzle, exercise, or project from this chapter. Work with your group, or try presenting on your own.

© 2008 Key Curriculum Press CHAPTER 13 REVIEW 747

# Hints for Selected Exercises

... there are no answers to the problems of life in the back of the book.

SØREN KIERKEGAARD

You will find hints below for exercises that are marked with an in the text. Instead of turning to a hint before you've tried to solve a problem on your own, make a serious effort to solve the problem without help. But if you need additional help to solve a problem, this is the place to look.



#### LESSON 0.1, PAGE 5

7. Here's the title of the sculpture.

Early morning calm

knotweed stalks

pushed into lake bottom

made complete by their own reflection

Derwent Water, Cumbria, February 20 and March 8–9, 1988

#### LESSON 0.2, PAGE 8

**3.** Design 1 Use one-half of the Astrid four times.

Design 2 Draw a triangle whose sides are the same length. Connect the midpoints of the sides with line segments and leave the middle triangle empty. Repeat the process on the three other triangles. Then repeat the rule again.

Design 3 Draw a 6-sided figure whose sides are the same length. Mark the point on each side that is one-third of the length of the side. Connect the points and repeat the process.

#### LESSON 0.3, PAGE 12

2. Use isometric dot paper, or draw a regular hexagon with sides of length 2. Each vertex of the hexagon will be the center of a circle with radius 1. Fit the seventh small circle inside the other six. The large circle has the same center as the seventh small circle, but with radius 3.

# LESSON 0.6, PAGE 23

**5.** Draw two identical squares, one rotated  $\frac{1}{8}$  turn, or 45°, from the other. Where is the center of each arc located?



# LESSON 1.2, PAGES 43-45

- **13.** Find  $m \angle CQA$  and  $m \angle BQA$  and subtract.
- **27.** Don't forget that at half past the hour, the hour hand will be halfway between the 3 and the 4.
- **37.** A  $\frac{1}{4}$  rotation =  $\frac{1}{4}$  · 360°. Subtract the sum of 15° and 21° from that result.

#### LESSON 1.3, PAGES 52-53

- **19.** Do not limit your thinking to just two dimensions.
- **27.** The measure of the incoming angle equals the measure of the outgoing angle (just as in pool).
- **28.** Start with point *C* and use trial and error.

# LESSON 1.4, PAGES 57-58

- **15.** The order of the letters matters.
- **20.** Look back at the investigation.
- **27.** Only one of these is impossible.

# LESSON 1.5, PAGES 62-63

- **14.** There are four possible locations for point *R*. The slope of  $\overline{CL}$  is  $\frac{1}{5}$ , so the slope of the perpendicular segment is  $\frac{-5}{1}$  or  $\frac{5}{1}$ .
- **23.** Locate the midpoint of each rod. Draw the segment that contains all the midpoints.

#### LESSON 1.6, PAGES 67-68

**14.** Label the width of each small rectangle as w and its length as l. The perimeter of the large rectangle is 5w + 4l = 198 cm.

**22.** Draw your diagram on patty paper or tracing paper. Test your diagram by folding your paper along the line of reflection to see whether the two halves coincide. Your diagram should have only one pair of parallel sides.

# LESSON 1.7, PAGE 73

**20.** This ordered pair rule tells you to double the x-coordinate and double the y-coordinate.

# LESSON 1.8, PAGES 78-80

- **8.** The biggest face is 3 m by 4 m. Your diagram will look similar to the diagram for Step 4 on page 75, except that the shortest segment will be vertical.
- **9.** How many boxes are in each layer? How many layers are in the solid?
- **22.** Do not limit your thinking to two dimensions. This situation can be modeled by using three pencils to represent the three lines.

#### LESSON 1.9, PAGES 84-86

- **5.** Try a vertical number line. Look closely at the last few days.
- **6.** The vertical distance from the top of the pole to the lowest point of the cable is 15 feet. Compare that distance with the length of the cable.
- 7. Draw a diagram. Draw two points, A and B, on your paper. Locate a point that appears to be equally spaced from points A and B. The midpoint of  $\overline{AB}$  is only one such point; find others. Connect the points into a line. For points in space, picture a plane between the two points.

- **12.** Copy trapezoid ABCD onto patty paper or tracing paper. Rotate the tracing paper 90°, or  $\frac{1}{4}$  turn, counterclockwise. Point A on the tracing paper should coincide with point A on the diagram in the book.
- **16.** The number of hexagons is increasing by one each time, but the perimeter is increasing by four.
- **23.** Cut out a rectangle like the one shown and tape it to your pencil. Rotate your pencil to see what shape the rotating rectangle forms.

CHAPTER 2 • CHAPTER 2 CHAPTER 2 • CHAPTER

#### LESSON 2.1, PAGES 98-101

- 1. Conjectures are statements that generalize from a number of instances to "all." Therefore, Stony is saying, "All \_\_."
- **4.** Change all fractions to the same denominator.

7. 
$$1 + 1 = 2$$
,  $1 + 2 = 3$ ,  $2 + 3 = 5$ ,  $3 + 5 = 8$ , ...

**8.** 
$$1^2$$
,  $2^2$ ,  $3^2$ ,  $4^2$ , ...

- 17. Substitute 1 for n and evaluate the expression to find the first term. Substitute 2 for n to find the second term, and so on.
- **21.** For example, "I learned by trial and error that you turn wood screws clockwise to screw them into wood and counterclockwise to remove them"
- **22.** Factor into length times width. See table below.
- **24.** Compare how many 1's there are in the numbers that are multiplied with the middle digit of the answer; then compare both quantities with the row number.

# **22.** (Lesson 2.1)

Term number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	 10
Number of dots in array	2	6	12	20	30	42	56	 110
Number of dots factored	1 · 2	2 · 3	3 • 4	4 • 5	5 · <u>?</u>			

- **28.** Imagine folding the square up and "wrapping" the two rectangles and the other triangle around the square.
- **29.** Turn your book so that the red line is vertical. Imagine rotating the figure so that the part jutting out is facing back to the right.
- **44.** Remember that a kite is a quadrilateral with two pairs of consecutive, congruent sides. One of the diagonals does bisect the angles of the kite, the other does not.

#### LESSON 2.2, PAGES 105-107

- 1. Look for a constant difference, then adjust the rule for the first term.
- **4.** Draw the polygons and all possible diagonals from one vertex. Fill in the table and look for a pattern. You should be able to see the pattern by the time you get to a hexagon.
- **5.** See table below. **18.** See table below.

#### LESSON 2.3, PAGES 112-113

- **4.** Compare this exercise with the Investigation Party Handshakes and with Exercise 3. What change can you make to each of those functions to fit this pattern?
- **5.** This is like Exercise 4 except that you add the number of sides to the number of diagonals.
- **6.** In other words, each time a new line is drawn, it passes through all the others. This also gives the maximum number of intersections.
- **9.** Let a point represent each team, and let the segments connecting the points represent *one* game played between them.
- **14.** What happens if points *A* and *B* are on the same side of point *E*?
- 20. See table below.

# LESSON 2.4, PAGES 117-118

- **9.** What is the smallest possible size for an obtuse angle?
- **19.** The number of rows increases by two, and the number of columns increases by one.

# **5.** (Lesson 2.2)

Figure number	1	2	3	4	5	6	n
Number of tiles	8	16	24	32			
Number of tiles factored	1 . 8	2 . 8	3 · 8	4 • _?_			

# **18.** (Lesson 2.2)

Term number	1	2	3	4	5	n
Number of squares in array	3	8	15	24	35	
Number of squares factored	1 • 3	2 • 4	3 • 5	4 · _?_		

#### **20.** (Lesson 2.3)

Term number	1	2	3	4	5	n
Number of circles in array	2	9	20	35	54	
Number of circles factored	2 • 1	3 • 3	4 • 5	5 · <u>-</u> 2		

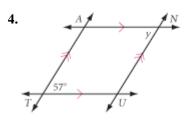
# LESSON 2.5, PAGES 125-127

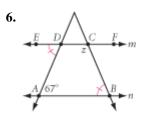
**4.** Here is how to begin:

 $a = 60^{\circ}$  because of the Vertical Angles Conjecture.  $b = 120^{\circ}$  because of the Linear Pair Conjecture.

- 23. Refer to Lesson 2.3, Exercise 5.
- **24.** Refer to Lesson 2.3, Exercise 6.
- **25.** Refer to Lesson 2.3, Exercise 5, but subtract the number of couples from each term because the couples don't shake hands.
- 27. Refer to Lesson 2.3, Exercise 4 and use trial and error.

#### LESSON 2.6, PAGES 132-134





 $\angle DAB$  and  $\angle EDA$  are congruent by the Alternate Interior Angles Conjecture. So are  $\angle CBA$  and  $\angle BCF$ .

- 7. Measures a, b, c, andd are all related by parallel lines. Measures e, f, g, h, i, j, k, and s are also all related by parallel lines.
- 11. If the horizontal dashed lines are perpendicular to the vertical dashed line in the diagram, then the incoming and outgoing angles are equal and complementary, so they each measure 45°.
- 18. Squares, rectangles, rhombuses, and kites are eliminated because they have reflectional symmetry.

- **22.** Proceed in an organized way.
  - Number of 1-by-1 squares =  $\frac{1}{2}$
  - Number of 2-by-2 squares =  $\stackrel{?}{\perp}$
  - Number of 3-by-3 squares =  $\frac{1}{2}$
  - Number of 4-by-4 squares =  $\stackrel{?}{\perp}$
- 23. Graph the original triangle and the new triangle on separate graphs. Cut one out and lay it on top of the other to see whether they are congruent.
- **26.** You can add the first two function rules to find the third function rule.

CHAPTER 3 • CHAPTER

CHAPTER 3 • CHAPTER

# LESSON 3.1, PAGES 147-148

- 2. Copy the first segment onto a ray. Copy the second segment immediately after the first.
- **10.** You duplicated a triangle in Exercise 7. You can think of the quadrilateral as two triangles stuck together (they meet at the diagonal).
- **14.** Fold the paper so that the two congruent sides of the triangle coincide.
- 17. It might be helpful to use pieces of dry spaghetti or to draw segments on patty paper and physically arrange them into a triangle.

#### LESSON 3.2, PAGES 151-153

- 2. Bisect, then bisect again.
- **3.** Construct one pair of intersecting arcs, then change your compass setting to construct a second pair of intersecting arcs on the same side of the line segment as the first pair.
- **4.** Bisect  $\overline{CD}$  to get the length  $\frac{1}{2}$  CD. Subtract this length from 2*AB*.
- **5.** The average is the sum of the two lengths divided by the number of segments (two). Construct a segment of length AB + CD. Bisect the segment to get the average length. Or, take half of each, then add them.
- 8. Construct the median from the vertex to the midpoint.

22. It might be helpful to draw the  $70^{\circ}$  angle on patty paper, slide it to the appropriate position, and then draw the triangle on the patty paper.

## LESSON 3.3, PAGES 156-158

- 3. Construct the perpendicular through point B to  $\overline{TO}$ . The altitude from point T is perpendicular to  $\overline{BO}$ .
- **4.** Does your method from Investigation 1 still work? Can you modify it?
- **5.** Construct right angles at *Q* and *R*.
- 13. Look at two columns as a "group."
  1st rectangle is 2 groups of 1
  2nd rectangle is 3 groups of 3
  3rd rectangle is 4 groups of 5
  4th rectangle is 5 groups of 7
  ...
  nth rectangle is n + 1 groups of 2n 1
- 17. Each central angle of a regular pentagon measures  $\frac{360^{\circ}}{5}$ , or 72°. Construct a circle, measure off the five central angles, and then connect the points where the sides of the central angles intersect the circle.



#### LESSON 3.4, PAGE 162

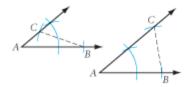
- 17. Each central angle of a regular octagon measures  $\frac{360^{\circ}}{8}$ , or 45°. Construct a circle, measure off the eight central angles, and then connect the points where the sides of the central angles intersect the circle.
- **18.** Construct two lines perpendicular to each other, and then bisect all four right angles.
- 21. For the second triangle, it might be helpful to draw the  $60^{\circ}$  angle on patty paper and slide it to the appropriate position.

## LESSON 3.5, PAGES 164-165

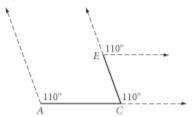
- 3. If the perimeter is z, then each side has length  $\frac{1}{4}z$ . Construct the perpendicular bisector of z to get  $\frac{1}{2}z$ . Construct the perpendicular bisector of  $\frac{1}{2}z$  to get  $\frac{1}{4}z$ .
- 13. According to the Perpendicular Bisector Conjecture, if a point is on the perpendicular bisector, then it is equidistant from the endpoints of the segment (which in this case represent fire stations). Therefore, if a point is on one side of the perpendicular bisector, it is closer to the fire station on that side of the perpendicular bisector.

#### LESSON 3.6, PAGES 172-173

**5.** Duplicate  $\angle A$  and  $\overline{AB}$  on one side of  $\angle A$ . Open the compass to length BC. If you put the compass point at point B, you'll find two possible locations to mark arcs for point C.



- **6.** y x is the sum of the two equal sides. Find this length and bisect it to get the length of the other two legs of your triangle.
- **16.** Start by drawing  $\overline{AC}$  and labeling the endpoints. Extend the segment into a ray through point C. Draw two corresponding 110° angles with vertices at points A and C. Use the same process with  $\overline{CE}$  to draw another corresponding 110° angle at point E as shown below, and finish by extending the line to find point E.



#### LESSON 3.7, PAGES 182-183

- **6.** Find the incenter.
- 7. Find the circumcenter.

- **8.** Draw a slightly larger circle on patty paper and try to fit it inside the triangle.
- **9.** Draw a slightly smaller circle on patty paper and try to fit it outside the triangle.
- **16.** Start by finding points whose coordinates add to 9, such as (3, 6) and (7, 2). Try writing an equation and graphing it.
- 17. One way is to construct the incenter by bisecting the two given angles. Then find two points with your compass on the unfinished sides, equidistant from the incenter and in the same direction (both closer to the missing point.) Now find a point equidistant from those two points with your compass. Draw the missing angle bisector through that point and the incenter.
- **21.** The diagonal *YE* is a line of symmetry for the kite, and thus it divides the kite into two congruent triangles.

## LESSON 3.8, PAGES 188-190

- **2.** If CM = 16, then  $UM = \frac{1}{2}$  (16) = 8. If TS = 21, then  $SM = \frac{1}{3}$  (21) = 7.
- **8.** A quadrilateral can be divided into two triangles in two different ways. How can you use the centroids of these triangles to find the centroid of the quadrilateral?
- **15.** Construct the altitudes for the two other vertices. From the point where the two altitudes meet, construct a line perpendicular to the southern boundary of the triangle.
- **16.** How many people does each person greet? Don't count any greeting twice.

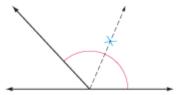
CHAPTER 4 • CHAPTER

4 CHAPTER 4 • CHAPTER

## LESSON 4.1, PAGES 203-205

- **4.** Ignore the  $100^{\circ}$  angle and the line that intersects the larger triangle. Find the three interior angles of the triangle. Then find z.
- **6.** The total measure of the three angles is  $3 \cdot 360^{\circ}$  minus the sum of the interior angles of the triangle.

- 7. The sum of a linear pair of angles is 180°. So the total measure of the three angles is 3 '180° minus the sum of the interior angles of the triangle.
- **8.** You can find a by looking at the large triangle that has  $40^{\circ}$  and  $71^{\circ}$  as its other measures. To find c, you first need to find the measure of the unmarked angle that is in the same triangle as a and b.
- 11. Draw a line and duplicate  $\angle L$ . Because the measures of the other two angles are equal, you can bisect the angle that is supplementary to  $\angle L$  to get the other angles.



- **12.** First, construct  $\angle E$ .
- **18.**  $m \angle A + m \angle B + x = 180^{\circ}$  and  $m \angle D + m \angle E + y = 180^{\circ}$ . Then use substitution to prove x = y.

## LESSON 4.2, PAGES 208-211

- 1.  $m \angle H + m \angle O = 180^{\circ} 22^{\circ}$  and  $m \angle H = m \angle O$ .
- **10.** Notice that d = e and  $d + e + e + 66^{\circ} = 180^{\circ}$ . Next, find the alternate interior angle to c.
- 11. Notice that all the triangles are isosceles!
- **15.** The sides do not have to be congruent.
- **16.** Make GK < MP. **18.** Find the slopes.
- **24.** Move each point right 5 units and down 3 units.

## LESSON 4.3, PAGES 218-220

- **5.** Find the value of the unmarked angle and use the Side-Angle Inequality Conjecture.
- **9.** Use the Side-Angle Inequality Conjecture to find an inequality of sides for each triangle, then combine the inequalities.

- 11. Any side must be smaller than the sum of the other two sides. What must it be larger than?
- **17.** You need to show that x = a + b. From the Triangle Sum Conjecture, you know that  $a + b + c = 180^{\circ}$ . Also,  $\angle BCA$  and  $\angle BCD$  are a linear pair, so  $x + c = 180^{\circ}$ .
- **21.** Try using the Triangle Sum Conjecture.
- **22.** All corresponding sides and angles are congruent. Can you see why? Remember to order the points correctly in stating the answer.

## LESSON 4.4, PAGES 224-225

- 4. Rotate one triangle 180°.
- **5.** The shared side is congruent to itself.
- 12. Match congruent sides.
- **15.** Take a closer look. Are congruent parts corresponding?
- **18.** UN = YA = 4, RA = US = 3,  $m \angle A = m \angle U = 90^{\circ}$

## LESSON 4.5, PAGES 229-230

- **6.** Flip one triangle over.
- **16.** Because  $\overline{BL} \parallel \overline{CK}$ , you can show that various pairs of angles are congruent; but can you show any sides congruent?
- **22.** The sides do not have to be congruent.

#### LESSON 4.6, PAGES 233-234

- **1.** Don't forget to mark the shared segment as congruent to itself.
- **2.** Use  $\triangle CRN$  and  $\triangle WON$ .
- **4.** Use  $\triangle ATI$  and  $\triangle GTS$ .
- **5.** Draw auxiliary line UF
- 7. Draw auxiliary line UT
- **10.** Count the lengths of the horizontal and vertical segments, and label the right angles congruent.
- **17.** Make the included angles different.

### LESSON 4.7, PAGES 241-242

- **8.** Don't forget about the shared side and the Side-Angle Inequality Conjecture.
- **10.** When you look at the larger triangles, ignore the marks for  $\overline{OS} \cong \overline{RS}$ . When you look at the smaller triangles, ignore the right-angle mark and the given statement  $\overline{PO} \cong \overline{PR}$ .
- **11.** First, mark the vertical angles. In  $\triangle ADM$ , the side is included between the two angles. In  $\triangle CRM$ , the side is not included between the two angles.
- **14.** Review incenter, circumcenter, orthocenter, and centroid.
- **17.** You might use sugar cubes.

## LESSON 4.8, PAGES 245-248

- 1. AB + BC + AC = 48 $AD = \frac{1}{2} AB$
- **8.** SL = LN = NS and SI = LE = NT. If you subtract equal lengths from equal lengths, then IL = NE = TS. If  $\triangle SNL$  is equilateral, then it is equiangular, so  $\angle S \cong N \cong \angle L$ . Now complete the explanation.
- **9.** Use the vertex angle bisector as your auxiliary line segment.
- **13.** At 3:15 the hands have not yet crossed each other. At 3:20 the hands have already crossed each other, because the minute hand is on the 4, but the hour hand is only one-third of its way from the 3 toward the 4. So, the hands overlap sometime between 3:15 and 3:20.
- **15.** Make a table and look for a pattern.
- **18.** Cycloheptane has seven carbons. How many H's branch off each C?

CHAPTER 5 · CHAPTER 5 · CHAPTER

## LESSON 5.1, PAGES 259-261

- **2.** All angles are equal in measure.
- **6.**  $d + 44^{\circ} + 30^{\circ} = 180^{\circ}$
- 7.  $3g + 117^{\circ} + 108^{\circ} = 540$

13.  $(n-2) \cdot 180^{\circ} = 2700^{\circ}$ 

**14.** 
$$\frac{(n-2)\cdot 180^{\circ}}{n} = 156^{\circ}$$

17. Use the Triangle Sum Conjecture and angle addition. What does i + j + k + l equal?

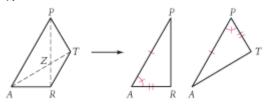
## LESSON 5.2, PAGES 264-265

3.  $24^{\circ} = \frac{360^{\circ}}{}$ 

- 7. First, find the measure of an angle of the equiangular heptagon. Then find c by the Linear Pair Conjecture.
- 12. An obtuse angle measures greater than 90°, and the sum of exterior angles of a polygon is always 360°.
- **16.** Look at  $\triangle RAC$  and  $\triangle DCA$ .
- **17.** Draw auxiliary line AT

#### LESSON 5.3. PAGES 272-274

7.



- 10. Add YE to the diagram in Exercise 9. You can show that the resulting triangles are congruent, and use this to show that  $Y\overline{E}$  is bisected and that the angles formed at the intersection of the diagonals are right angles. Or, you can show that B and Y lie on the perpendicular bisector of YE because they both are equidistant from the endpoints of  $\overline{YE}$ .
- **15.** Construct  $\angle I$  and  $\angle W$  at the ends of WI. Construct  $\overline{IS}$ . Construct a line through point Sparallel to  $\overline{WI}$ .
- **18.** Look at  $\triangle AFG$  and  $\triangle BEH$ .

#### LESSON 5.4, PAGES 277-278

- **2.**  $PO = \frac{1}{2}RA$
- **4.** Use the Three Midsegments Conjecture.
- **9.** Draw a diagonal of the original quadrilateral. Note that it's parallel to two other segments.

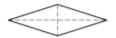
## LESSON 5.5, PAGES 283-284

**4.**  $VN = \frac{1}{2}VF$  and  $NI = \frac{1}{2}EI$ 

- **8.** With the midpoint of the longer diagonal as center and using the length of half the shorter diagonal as radius, construct a circle.
- **10.** Complete the parallelogram with the given vectors as sides. The resultant vector is the diagonal of the parallelogram. Refer to the diagram right before the exercises.
- **11.** PR = a. Therefore, MA = a. Solve for the x-coordinate of M:  $\frac{1}{2} + a = b$ . The height of M is equal to the height of A.

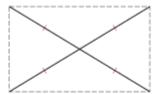
#### LESSON 5.6, PAGES 294-297

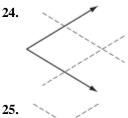
**1.** Consider the parallelogram below.

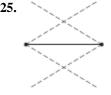


- **12.**  $\angle P$  and  $\angle PAR$  are supplementary.
- 17. The diagonals of a square are equal in length and are perpendicular bisectors of each other.
- **18.** Construct  $\angle B$ , then bisect it. Mark off the length of diagonal  $\overline{BK}$  on the angle bisector. Then construct the perpendicular bisector of BK.
- **20.** Start by showing that two congruent segments that bisect each other form four congruent segments. To prove that the quadrilateral connecting the endpoints is a rectangle, use SAS to find two congruent pairs of triangles. Then show that the angle at each vertex of the quadrilateral is made up of the same two congruent angles. To show that the opposite

sides are parallel, use the Converse of the AIA Conjecture.







**27.** Use the Quadrilateral Sum Conjecture to prove the measure of each angle is 90°. Use the Converse of the Parallel Lines Conjecture to prove that the opposite sides are parallel.

## LESSON 5.7, PAGES 301-303

- **4.** Use what is given, the AIA Conjecture and that fact that auxiliary line  $\overline{PO}$  is shared by both triangles, to show that  $\triangle SOP \cong \triangle APO$  by SAS. Then use CPCTP and the Converse of the AIA Conjecture to show that  $\overline{PA} \parallel \overline{SO}$ .
- **6.** Look at  $\triangle YIO$  and  $\triangle OGY$ .
- 7. Break up the rectangle into four triangles ( $\triangle EAR$ , etc.), and show that they are congruent triangles.
- **10.** Imagine what happens to the rectangles when you pull them at their vertices.
- 11. Calculate the measures of the angles of the regular polygons. Remember that there are 360° around any point.
- 15. You miss 5 minutes out of 15 minutes.
- **16.** The container is  $\frac{8}{12} = \frac{2}{3}$  full. It will be  $\frac{2}{3}$  full no matter which face it rests on.

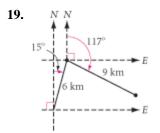


#### LESSON 6.1, PAGES 313-316

2. 
$$x + x + 70^{\circ} = 180^{\circ}$$

**5.** 
$$CP = PA = AO = OR$$
,  $CT = TD = DS = SR$ 

- **8.** From the Tangent Conjecture, you know that the tangent is perpendicular to the radius at the point of tangency.
- **15.** Draw a diameter. Then bisect it repeatedly to find the centers of the circles.
- **16.** Look at the angles in the quadrilateral formed.



## LESSON 6.2, PAGES 320-323

9. 
$$x + x + x + 72^{\circ} = 360^{\circ}$$

- **21.** Calculate the slope and midpoint of  $\overline{AB}$ . Recall that slopes of perpendicular lines are opposite reciprocals.
- **25.** Draw the triangle formed by the three light switches. The center of the circumscribed circle would be equidistant from the three points.
- **26.** Make a list of the powers of 3, beginning with  $3^{\circ} = 1$ . Look for a pattern in the units digit.
- **27.** Use a protractor and a centimeter ruler to make an accurate drawing. Let 1 cm represent 1 mile.

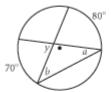
## LESSON 6.3, PAGES 327-329

3. 
$$c + 120^{\circ} = 2(95^{\circ})$$

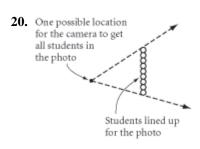
**4.** Draw in the radius to the tangent to form a right triangle.

**14.** The measure of each of the five angles is half the measure of its intercepted arc. But the five arcs add up to the complete circle.

**15.** 
$$a = \frac{1}{2}(70^{\circ}), b = \frac{1}{2}(80^{\circ}), y = a + b$$



**19.** Draw the altitude to the point where the side of the triangle (extended if necessary) intersects the circle.

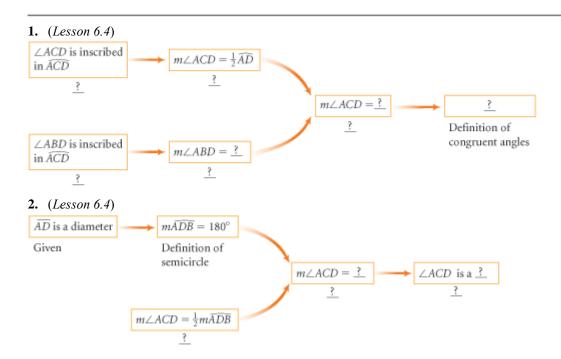


**25.** Start with an equilateral triangle whose vertices are the centers of the three congruent circles. Then locate the center of the triangle to find the center of the larger circle.

## LESSON 6.4, PAGES 332-334

- 1. See flowchart below. 2. See flowchart below.
- 3. Note that  $mYLI + mYCI = 360^{\circ}$ .
- **4.**  $\angle 1 \cong \angle 2$  by AIA, and  $\angle 1$  and  $\angle 2$  are inscribed angles.
- 5. Apply the Cyclic Quadrilateral Conjecture.
- **7.** Draw four radii and use the Parallel Lines Intercepted Arcs Conjecture.
- **9.** What type of triangle is  $\triangle OAB$ ? What can you say about  $\angle OBC$ ? How is  $\overline{AB}$  related to any of the numbered angles? Use the Isosceles Triangle Conjecture, the Triangle Sum Conjecture, the Tangent Conjecture, and use the Substitution Property more than once.
- **21.** Number the points in the grid 1–9. Make a list of all the possible combinations of three numbers. Do this in a logical manner.

Order doesn't matter, so the list beginning with 2 will be shorter than the list beginning with 1. The 3 list will be shorter than the 2 list, and so on. See how many of the possibilities are collinear, and divide that by the total number of possibilities.



**22.** Show that right triangles inside congruent isosceles triangles are congruent.

## LESSON 6.5, PAGES 338-340

- 9.  $C = 2\pi r$ ,  $44 \approx 2(3.14)r$
- 12. The diameter of the circle is 6 cm.
- **17.** Use the Inscribed Angle Conjecture and the Triangle Exterior Angle Conjecture.
- **21.** Think about the pair of angles that form a linear pair and the isosceles triangle.

## LESSON 6.6, PAGES 342-344

1. speed = 
$$\frac{\text{distance}}{\text{time}} = \frac{\text{circumference}}{12 \text{ hours}}$$
  
=  $\frac{2\pi(2000 + 6400) \text{ km}}{12 \text{ hours}}$ 

- **8.** Calculate the distance traveled in one revolution, or the circumference, at each radius. Multiply this by the rpm to get the distance traveled in 1 minute. Remember, your answer is in inches. Divide your answer by 12 and then by 60 to change its units into feet per second.
- **10.** Use the Inscribed Angle Conjecture and the Triangle Exterior Angle Conjecture.

#### LESSON 6.7, PAGES 351-354

- 3.  $\frac{210}{360}(24\pi)$
- 8.  $\overrightarrow{mAR} + 70^{\circ} + \overrightarrow{mAR} + 146^{\circ} = 360^{\circ},$  $\frac{\overrightarrow{mAR}}{360^{\circ}}(2\pi r) = 40\pi$
- **9.** The length of one lap is equal to  $(2 \cdot 100) + (2 \cdot 20 \pi)$ . The total distance covered in 6 minutes is 4 laps.
- 11.  $\frac{1}{9}(2\pi r)$  12 meters
- **16.** Refer to Lesson 6.6, Exercise 10.
- **17.** The midsegment of a trapezoid is parallel to the bases, and the median to the base of an isosceles triangle is also the altitude.

- **18.** The overlaid figure consists of two pairs of congruent equilateral triangles. The length of the side of the smaller pair is half the length of the side of the larger pair. All of the arcs use the lengths of the sides of the triangles as radii.
- **19.** It is not 180°. What fraction of a complete cycle has the minute hand moved since 10:00? Hasn't the little hand moved that same fraction of the way from 10:00 to 11:00?
- 23. Make an orderly list. Here is a beginning: RA to  $\overline{AL}$  to  $\overline{LG}$  RA to  $\overline{AN}$  to  $\overline{NG}$

CHAPTER 7 • CHAPTER 7 • CHAPTER

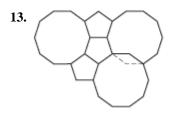
#### LESSON 7.2. PAGES 380-381

- **2.** All positive y's become negative y's; therefore, the figure is reflected across the x-axis.
- **7.** Compare the ordered pairs for V and V', R and R', and Y and Y'.

#### LESSON 7.3, PAGES 387-388

- 7. Connect a pair of corresponding points with a segment. Construct two perpendiculars to the segment with half the distance between the two given figures between them.
- **17.** Find the midpoint of the segment connecting the two points. Connect the midpoint to one of the endpoints with a curve. Copy the curve onto patty paper and rotate it about the midpoint.

#### LESSON 7.4, PAGE 393



**18.** Work backward. Reflect a point of the 8-ball over the S cushion. Then reflect this image over the N cushion. Aim at this second image.

#### LESSON 7.5, PAGE 396

2. Connect centers across the common side.

## LESSON 7.6, PAGE 401

9. If you are still unsure, use patty paper to trace the steps in the "Pegasus" example.

## LESSON 7.7, PAGE 407

**14.** 
$$5 \cdot 0 + 3 \cdot 2 = 6, 5 \cdot 0 + 3 \cdot -1 = -3, \dots$$
  
 $4 \cdot 10 + 20 \cdot 0 + 2 \cdot 3 = 46, \dots$ 

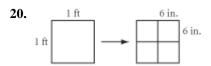
### LESSON 7.8, PAGE 412

5. If you are still unsure, use patty paper to trace the steps in either Escher example.

CHAPTER 8 • CHAPTER

CHAPTER 8 • CHAPTER

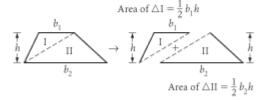
## LESSON 8.1, PAGE 426



#### LESSON 8.2, PAGES 431-432

**8.** 
$$50 = \frac{1}{2}h(7 + 13)$$

- 12. The area of the triangle can be calculated in three different ways, but each should give the same area:  $\frac{1}{2}(5)y = \frac{1}{2}(15)x = \frac{1}{2}(6)(9)$
- **22.** Refer to the diagram below.

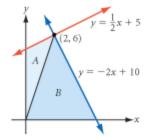


#### LESSON 8.3, PAGE 436

**6.** Total cost is  $20/yd^2 = 20/9$  ft<sup>2</sup>;  $A_{\text{carnet}} = 17 \cdot 27 - (6 \cdot 10 + 7 \cdot 9) \text{ ft}^2$ 

#### LESSON 8.4, PAGES 443-445

- 9. Construct a circle with radius 4 cm. Mark off six 4 cm chords around the circle.
- **10.** Draw a regular pentagon circumscribed about a circle with radius 4 cm. Use your protractor to create five 72° angles from the center. Use your protractor to draw five tangent segments.
- **14.** Find the area of the large hexagon and subtract from it the area of the small hexagon. Because they are regular hexagons, the distance from the center to each vertex equals the length of each side.
- **16.** Divide the quadrilateral into two triangles (A and B). Find the areas of the two triangles and add them.



#### LESSON 8.5, PAGES 451-452

15. Calculate the area of two circles, one with radius 3 cm and one with radius 6 cm. Compare the two areas.

16.



Hexagon



Dodecagon

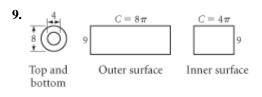


100-gon

- **6.** The shaded area is equal to the area of the whole circle less the area of the smaller circle.
- **12.**  $10 \pi = \frac{x}{360} \cdot \pi (10^2 8^2)$
- **18.**  $A = \frac{1}{2}(b_1 + b_2)h$ . Because the length of the midsegment is  $\frac{1}{2}(b_1 + b_2)$ , the formula can be rewritten  $A = \text{midsegment} \cdot \text{height}$ .

## LESSON 8.7, PAGE 466

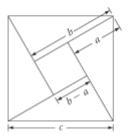
7. Use the formula for finding the area of a regular hexagon to find the area of each base. To find the area of the six lateral faces, imagine unfolding the six rectangles into one rectangle. The lateral area of this unfolded rectangle is the height times the perimeter.





## LESSON 9.1, PAGES 481-482

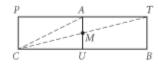
- **6.**  $6^2 + 6^2 = c^2$
- **11.** The radius of the circle is the hypotenuse of the right triangle.
- 13. Let s represent the length of the side of the square. Then  $s^2 + s^2 = 32^2$ .
- **15.** Three consecutive integers can be written algebraically as n, n + 1, and n + 2.
- 17. Show that the area of the entire square  $(c^2)$  is equal to the sum of the areas of the four right triangles and the area of the smaller square.



**10.** Drop a perpendicular from the ordered

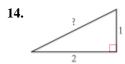
**6.**  $a^2 + b^2$  must exactly equal  $c^2$ .

- 10. Drop a perpendicular from the ordered pair to the x-axis to form a right triangle.
- **12.** Check the list of Pythagorean triples in the beginning of this lesson for a right triangle that has three consecutive even integers.
- **22.** Because a radius is perpendicular to a tangent,  $m \angle DCF = 90^{\circ}$ . Because all radii in a circle are congruent,  $\triangle DCE$  is isosceles.
- **23.** You could use the Pythagorean Theorem, but what if you just draw the prism unfolded?



#### LESSON 9.3, PAGES 493-495

- 2.  $b = \text{hypotenuse} + \sqrt{2}$
- **4.**  $d = \frac{1}{2}$  **.** 20,  $c = d \sqrt{3}$
- 7. Draw diagonal  $\overline{DB}$ to form a right triangle on the base of the cube and another right triangle in the interior of the cube.
- **9.** Divide by  $\sqrt{2}$  for the length of the leg.
- 12. Refer to Exercise 20 on page 490.

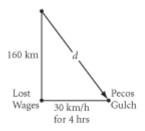


- 17. Draw an altitude of the equilateral triangle to form two  $30^{\circ}$ - $60^{\circ}$ - $90^{\circ}$  triangles.
- **20.** Construct an isosceles right triangle with legs of length a; construct an equilateral triangle with sides of length 2a and construct an altitude; and construct a right triangle with legs of lengths  $a\sqrt{2}$  and  $a\sqrt{3}$ .
- **23.** Make the rays that form the right angle into lines, or draw an auxiliary line parallel to the other parallel lines through the vertex of the right angle.

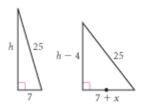
**2.** The length of the hypotenuse is (36 - x). Solve for x.

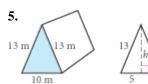


3. average speed =  $\frac{d}{4 \text{ hours}}$ 



**4.** This is a two-step problem, so draw two right triangles. Find h, the height of the first triangle. The height of the second is 4 ft less than the height of the first. Then find x.





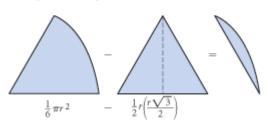
- **6.** Find the apothem of the hexagon.
- **16.** Use the Reflection Line Conjecture and special right triangles.

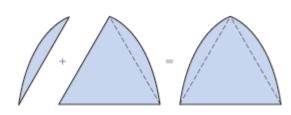
- **14.** Use the distance formula to find the length of the radius.
- **15.** This is the same as finding the length of the space diagonal of the rectangular prism.
- **20.** In the 45°-45°-90° triangle,  $m = \sqrt{3} \cdot \sqrt{2}$ ; in the 30°-60°-90° triangle,  $m = k\sqrt{3}$ .
- **22.**  $(x + 8)^2 = 40^2 + x^2$

## LESSON 9.6, PAGES 509-511

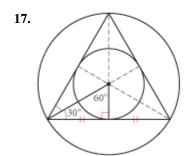
- **3.** Find  $m \angle DOB$  using the Quadrilateral Sum Conjecture.
- **5.**  $\triangle HRT$  is a 30°-60°-90° triangle with longer leg  $8\sqrt{3}$  cm; so shorter leg RT is 8 cm long and hypotenuse HT is 16 cm long. The shaded area is the difference of the semicircle area and right triangle area.
- 7. From the center of the circle, drop a perpendicular to chord  $\overline{HO}$ , forming two  $30^{\circ}-60^{\circ}-90^{\circ}$  triangles with longer legs  $4\sqrt{3}$ .
- **11.** When  $\overline{OT}$  and  $\overline{OA}$  are drawn, they form a right triangle, with  $\overline{OA}$  = 15 (length of hypotenuse) and  $\overline{OT}$  = 12 (length of leg).
- **12.** Draw the radius  $\overline{OB}$  of the larger circle and the radius  $\overline{OT}$  of the smaller circle. Because  $\overline{AB}$  is tangent to the smaller circle,  $\triangle OTB$  is a right triangle. By the Pythagorean Theorem,  $OT^2 + 18^2 = OB^2$ , or  $OB^2 OT^2 = 18^2$ . But the area of the annulus is  $\pi OB^2 \pi OT^2$ , or  $\pi (OB^2 OT^2)$ .
- 13. See picture equations below.

**13.** (Lesson 9.6)





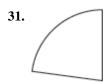
- **14.** The triangle formed by the centers of the three circles is an equilateral triangle with height  $6\sqrt{3}$ .
- 15. The arc length of  $\widehat{AC}$  is  $\frac{80}{360} [2\pi(9)] = 4\pi$ . Therefore, the circumference of the base of the cone is  $4\pi$ . From this you can determine the radius of the base. The radius of the sector (9) becomes the slant height (the distance from the tip of the cone to the circumference of the base). The radius of the base, the slant height, and the height of the cone form a right triangle.



CHAPTER 10 - CHAPTER 10 - CHAPTER

#### **LESSON 10.1. PAGE 526**

**29.** Think of a prism as a stack of thin copies of the bases.

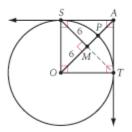


#### LESSON 10.2, PAGES 533-537

- **2.** What is the shape of the base and how do you find its area? Use the Pythagorean Theorem to find the missing length.
- 5. You have only  $\frac{1}{2}$  of a cylinder.  $B = \frac{1}{2}\pi r^2$
- **6.**  $\frac{90}{360}$ , or  $\frac{1}{4}$ , of the cylinder is removed. Therefore, you need to find  $\frac{3}{4}$  of the volume of the whole cylinder.

- **7a.** What is the difference between this prism and the one in Exercise 2? Does it make a difference in the formula for the volume?
- 9. Cutie pie!

**26.** SOTA is a square, so the diagonals,  $\overline{ST}$  and  $\overline{OA}$ , are congruent and are perpendicular bisectors of each other, and SM = OM = 6. Use right triangle SMO to find OS, which also equals OP. Find PA with the equation PA = OA - OP.



## LESSON 10.3, PAGES 540-542

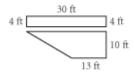
3. 
$$V = \frac{1}{3}BH = \frac{1}{3} \left( \frac{b_1 + b_2}{2} \cdot h \right) H$$

6. 
$$V = V_{\text{cylinder}} - V_{\text{cone}}$$
  
=  $BH - \frac{1}{3}BH$ 

**10a.** What is *B*, the area of the triangular base?

15.

**18.** The swimming pool is a pentagonal prism resting on one of its lateral faces. The area of the pentagonal base can be found by dividing it into a rectangular region and a trapezoidal region.



## LESSON 10.4, PAGES 548-549

## 2. The base of the prism looks like this.



- **3.** Substituting the given values into  $V = \frac{1}{3}BH$  gives  $180 = \frac{1}{3}$  B(12). Solve for B. Then substitute this value and the given value for h into  $B = \frac{1}{2}bh$  and solve for b.
- **4.**  $V = \frac{1}{3}BH$ ;  $3168 = \frac{1}{3} \left[ \frac{1}{2}(20 + 28)h \right](36)$
- 9.  $V_{\rm ring} = V_{\rm larger\ prism} V_{\rm missing\ prism} = \left[\frac{1}{2}\left(3\sqrt{3}\right)\!\left(36\right)\right]\!\left(2\right) \left[\frac{1}{2}\left(2\sqrt{3}\right)\!\left(24\right)\right]\!\left(2\right)$ Then compare  $V_{\rm ring}$  to  $V_{\rm missing\ prism}$
- 10. First, change 8 inches to  $\frac{2}{3}$  foot.

## LESSON 10.5, PAGES 552-553

- **6.**  $0.97 = \frac{145.5}{V_{\text{displacement}}}$  and  $V_{\text{displacement}} = (10)(10)H$
- 8.  $V_{\text{displacement}} = \frac{7}{8}(V_{\text{block of ice}})$  or  $\frac{8}{7}V_{\text{displacement}} = V_{\text{block of ice}}$

#### LESSON 10.6, PAGES 559-560

- 4.  $V_{\text{capsule}} = 2 V_{\text{hemisphere}} + V_{\text{cylinder}} = 2 \left[ \frac{2}{3} \pi (6)^3 \right] + [\pi (6)^2 (12)]$
- **6.**  $\frac{40}{360}$ , or  $\frac{1}{9}$ , of the hemisphere is missing. What fraction is still there?
- 12.  $972\pi = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$

### LESSON 10.7, PAGES 563-565

- **3.** The surface area is the curved hemisphere *and* the circular bottom.
- **4.** The surface area of a sphere is how many times the area of a circle with the same radius?
- **19b.** Change  $\frac{1}{2}$  to  $\frac{2}{4}$ , and a more recognizable pattern emerges in both the numerators and denominators.

CHAPTER 11 • CHAPTER



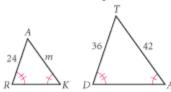
CHAPTER 11 • CHAPTER

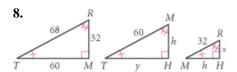
#### LESSON 11.1, PAGE 586

- **8.** All the corresponding angles are congruent. (Why?) Are all these ratios equal?  $\frac{150}{165} = \frac{?}{165}$ ,  $\frac{120}{128} = \frac{?}{154}$ ,  $\frac{180}{192} = \frac{?}{192}$
- 13. Because the segments are parallel,  $\angle B \cong \angle AED$  and  $\angle C \cong \angle ADE$ .

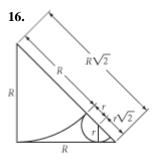
## LESSON 11.2, PAGES 591-593

**3.** It helps to rotate  $\triangle ARK$  so that you can see which sides correspond.

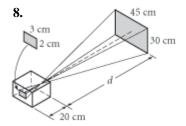




- **11.** Because  $\angle H$  and  $\angle D$  are two angles inscribed in the same arc, they are congruent.  $\angle T$  and  $\angle G$  are congruent for the same reason.
- **15.** Draw a perpendicular segment from each point to the *x*-axis. Then use similar triangles.



- 3. Use the Pythagorean Theorem to first find the height of the flagpole.
- 7. Because  $\triangle PRE \sim \triangle POC$ , then  $\frac{PR}{RE} = \frac{PO}{OC}$ . Let x = PR. Then  $\frac{x}{60} = \frac{x+45}{90}$ .



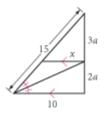
- **9.** Think about what Juanita did in Exercise 5.
- 11. Draw the large and two small triangles separately to label and see them more clearly.



**18.** The golden ratio is  $\frac{2}{\sqrt{5}-1}$ . Let AB = 2 units. How would you construct the length  $\sqrt{5}$ ? How would you construct the length  $\sqrt{5}$  -1?

#### LESSON 11.4, PAGES 605-607

- 3.  $\frac{CL}{FS} = \frac{CS}{FP}$  9.  $\frac{12}{15} = \frac{x}{10 x}$
- 12. You don't know the length of the third side, but you do know the ratio of its two parts is  $\frac{2}{3}$ .



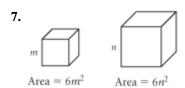
- 13. Applying the Pythagorean Theorem to  $\triangle ABC$  gives  $AC^2 + 5^2 = 13^2$ . Solve for AC, and then write an expression for z in terms of this value and x. From the Angle Bisector/Opposite Side Conjecture we know  $\frac{5}{13} = \frac{x}{x}$ . Substitute your expression in for z and use your algebra skills to solve the proportion for x. Then solve for z and y.
- **16.** Use the AA Similarity Conjecture for this proof. One pair of corresponding angles will be a nonbisected pair. The other pair of corresponding angles will consist of one-half of each bisected angle.

17. 
$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$$
, then  $\frac{a}{b} + 1 = \frac{c}{d} + 1$ , then  $\frac{a}{b} + \frac{b}{b} = \frac{c}{d} + \frac{d}{d}$ .

## LESSON 11.5, PAGES 610-613

1. 
$$\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{\text{Area of }\triangle MSE}{72}$$

3. If  $\frac{\text{Area of }ZOID}{\text{Area of }TRAP} = \frac{16}{25}$ , then the ratio of the lengths of corresponding sides is  $\frac{4}{5}$ .



21. What kind of triangle is this?

## LESSON 11.6, PAGES 616-619

1. 
$$\left(\frac{4}{7}\right)^3 = \frac{320}{\text{Volume of large pyramid}}$$

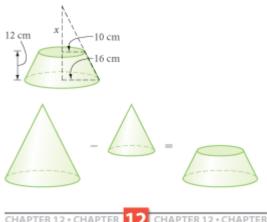
3. 
$$\left(\frac{h}{H}\right)^2 = \frac{9}{25}$$
;  $\frac{\text{Volume of large prism}}{\text{Volume of small prism}} = \left(\frac{h}{H}\right)^3$ 

- **8.** Volume of large warehouse =  $2.5^{3}$ . (Volume of small warehouse)
- 17. Copy the diagram on your own paper, and connect the centers of two large circles and the center of the small circle to form a 45°-45°-90° triangle. Each radius of the larger circles will be . Use the properties of special right triangles and algebra to find the radius of the smaller circle.

19. During a rotation, each vertex of the triangle will trace the path of a circle. So, if you connect any vertex of the original figure to its corresponding vertex in the image, you will get a chord. Now recall that the perpendicular bisector of a chord passes through the center of a circle.

#### LESSON 11.7, PAGES 627-628

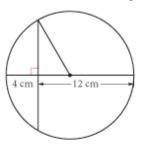
- 1.  $\frac{4}{4+12} = \frac{a}{20}$
- 3.  $\frac{60}{40} = \frac{c + 60}{70}$
- 6.  $\frac{15}{36} \stackrel{?}{=} \frac{25}{55}$
- **13.**  $a + b = \sqrt{(12 3)^2 + (0 9)^2}$ . Once you have solved for a + b, then  $\frac{4}{12} = \frac{a}{a + b^*}$
- **18.**  $\frac{x}{10} = \frac{x+12}{16}$ ; x is the height of the small missing cone.



#### LESSON 12.1, PAGES 645-646

- 7. The length of the side opposite  $\angle A$  is s; the length of the side adjacent to  $\angle A$  is r; the length of the hypotenuse is t.
- 10. Use your calculator to find  $\sin^{-1}(0.5)$ .
- **14.**  $\tan 30^\circ = \frac{20}{a}$
- 21. Use  $\sin 35^\circ = \frac{b}{85}$  to find the length of the base, and then use  $\cos 35^\circ = \frac{b}{85}$  to find the height.
- **27.** First, find the length of the radius of the circle and the length of the segment between the chord

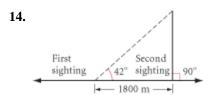
and the center of the circle. Use the Pythagorean Theorem to find the length of half of the chord.



#### LESSON 12.2, PAGES 648-649

5. 
$$\frac{\frac{1}{2}d_1}{20} = \cos 56^\circ$$

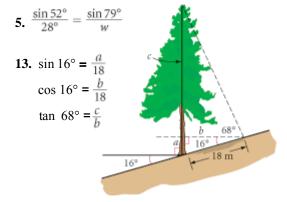
**8.** First find the length of the diagonal of the base. Then,  $\tan \beta = \frac{10}{17}$ 



**16a.**  $\sin 44^\circ = \frac{h}{1400^\circ}$  where h is the height of the balloon above Wendy's sextant.

### LESSON 12.3, PAGES 657-659

- **3.** Sketch a diagonal connecting the vertices of the unmeasured angles. Then find the area of the two triangles.
- **4.** Divide the octagon into eight isosceles triangles. Then use trigonometry to find the area of each triangle.



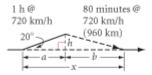
## LESSON 12.4, PAGES 663-665

1.  $w^2 = 36^2 + 41^2 - 2(36)(41)\cos 49^\circ$ 

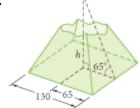
**4.**  $42^2 = 34^2 + 36^2 - 2(34)(36)\cos A$ 

**8.** The smallest angle is opposite the shortest side.

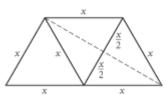
**10.** One approach divides the triangle into two right triangles, where x = a + b. When you have the straight-line distance, compare that time against the detour.



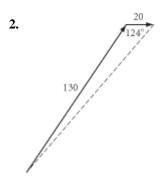
12.



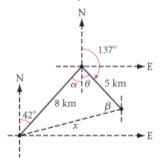
**16.** The midpoint of the base can be used to create three equilateral triangles.

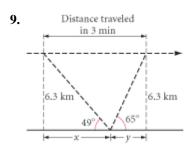


### LESSON 12.5, PAGES 668-669

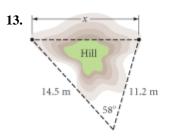


5. To find the angle between the 8 km side and the 5 km side, first find  $\theta_*$  and then find  $\alpha_*$ 





**11.** To find the area of the base, divide the pentagon into five congruent isosceles triangles and use either method in Exercise 10.





## LESSON 13.1, PAGES 698-701

- **4.** It's also called the identity property.
- 9. 1, 1, multiplication property of equality, 2
- **11.** The Midpoint Postulate says that a segment has exactly one midpoint.
- **25.** Two consecutive integers can be written as n and n + 1.

## LESSON 13.2, PAGE 709

19. Center

#### LESSON 13.3, PAGES 712-713

- **2.** Draw an auxiliary line from the point to the midpoint of the segment.
- **5.** Draw an auxiliary line that creates two isosceles triangles. Use isosceles triangle properties and angle subtraction.
- **14.** Use similarity of triangles to set up two proportions.
- **16.** Graph point A and the line. Fold the graph paper along the line to see where point A reflects.

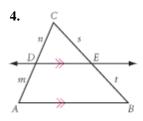
#### LESSON 13.4, PAGE 717

1. Use the Quadrilateral Sum Theorem.

## LESSON 13.6, PAGE 729

- **15.** Divide the triangle into three triangles with common vertex *P*.
- 17. Draw a segment from the point to the center of the circle. Using this segment as a diameter, draw a circle. How does this help you find the points of tangency?

#### LESSON 13.7, PAGES 733-735



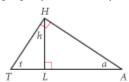
$$\frac{m+n}{n} = \frac{t+s}{s}$$

$$\frac{m}{n} + \frac{n}{n} = \frac{t}{s} + \frac{s}{s}$$

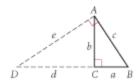
$$\frac{m}{n} + 1 = \frac{t}{s} + 1$$

$$\therefore \frac{m}{n} = \frac{t}{s}$$

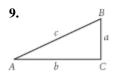
- **5.** Try revising the steps of the proof for the Parallel Proportionality Theorem.
- **6.** In  $\triangle ATH$ , let  $m \angle A = a$ ,  $m \angle T = t$ , then a + t = 90. In  $\triangle LTH$ ,  $m \angle T = t$ ,  $m \angle H = h$ , then h + t = 90. Therefore, h + t = a + t and so h = a. Therefore,  $\triangle ATH \sim \triangle HTL$  by AA. In like manner you can demonstrate that  $\triangle ATH \sim \triangle AHL$ , and thus by the transitive property of similarity all three are similar.



- 7. If a is the geometric mean of b and c, then  $\frac{b}{a} = \frac{a}{c^2}$  or  $a^2 = bc$ .
- **8.** Construct  $\overline{AD}$  so that it's perpendicular to  $\overline{AB}$  and intersects  $\overline{BC}$  at point D.



Use the Three Similar Right Triangles Theorem to write proportions and solve.



Construct right triangle DEF with legs of lengths a and b and hypotenuse of length x.

Then  $x^2 = a^2 + b^2$  by the Pythagorean Theorem. It is given that  $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$ . Therefore,  $x^2 = c^2$ , or x = c.

If x = c, then  $\triangle DEF \cong \triangle ABC$ .

10. See Exercise 18 in Lesson 9.1.









19b.







## **Answers for Chapter Reviews**

CHAPTER 0 • CHAPTER

0

CHAPTER 0 • CHAPTER

## CHAPTER REVIEW

- 1. Possible answer: Islamic, Hindu, Celtic
- **2.** Sometimes the large hexagons appear as blocks with a corner removed, and sometimes they appear as corners with small cubes nestled in them.
- **3.** Compass: A geometry tool used to construct circles.

Straightedge: A geometry tool used to construct straight lines.

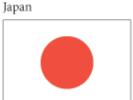
**4.** Possible answer:



5.



- **6.** Possible answers: hexagon: honeycomb, snowflake; pentagon: starfish, flower
- **7.** Answers will vary. Should be some form of an interweaving design.
- **8.** Wheel A has four lines of reflectional symmetry; Wheel C has five lines of reflectional symmetry. Wheels B and D do not have reflectional symmetry.
- **9.** Wheels B and D have only rotational symmetry. Wheels A and B have 4-fold, Wheel C has 5-fold, and Wheel D has 3-fold rotational symmetry.
- 10, 11. Drawing should contain concentric circles and symmetry in some of the rings.
- **12.** The mandala should contain all the required elements.
- **13a.** The flag of Puerto Rico is not symmetric because of the star and the colors.
- **13b.** The flag of Kenya does not have rotational symmetry because of the spearheads.
- **13c.** Possible answers:





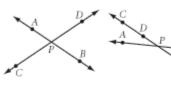
CHAPTER 1 • CHAPTER

1

CHAPTER 1 · CHAPTER

#### CHAPTER REVIEW

- 1. True
- **2.** False; it is written as  $\overline{QP}$ .
- 3. True
- **4.** False; the vertex is point *D*.
- 5. True
- 6. True
- 7. False; its measure is less than 90°.
- **8.** False; two possible counterexamples:

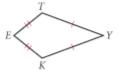


∠APD and ∠APC are a linear pair.

 $\angle APD$  and  $\angle APC$ are the same angle.

- **9.** True
- **10.** True
- **11.** False; they are supplementary.
- **12.** True
- **13.** True
- **14.** True
- **15.** False; it has five diagonals.
- **16.** True
- **17.** F
- 18. G
- **19.** L
- 20. J
- **21.** C
- **22.** I
- 23. No match
- **24.** A
- 25. No match

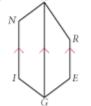
26.

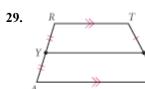


27.

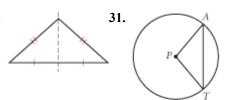


28.

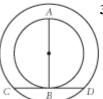




30.



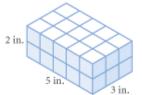
32.



33.



34.



35.



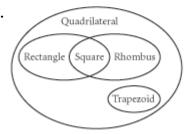


37.



- **38.** 114°
- **39.** x = 2, y = 1
- **40.** x = 12, y = 4
- **41.** x = 4, y = 2.5
- **42.** x = 10; y = 8
- **43.** AB = 16 cm
- **44.** 96°
- **45.** 105°
- **46.** 30°

47.



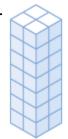
- **48.** 66 inches
- **49.** 3 feet

**50.** The path taken by the midpoint of the ladder is an arc of a circle or a quarter-circle if the ladder slides all the way from the vertical to the horizontal.



- **51.** He will get home at 5:46 (assuming he goes inside before he gets blown back again).
- **52.** (2, 3)

53.



54.



55.



**56.** 



57.



CHAPTER 2 • CHAPTER

## CHAPTER REVIEW

- 1. Poor inductive reasoning, but Diana was probably just being funny
- 2. Answers will vary. 3. Answers will vary.
- **4.** 19, 30
- **5.** S, 36
- **6.** 2, 5, 10, 17, 26, 37 **7.** 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32



9.



- **10.** 900
- 11. 930

12. nth term = -3n + 5; 20th term = -55

13. nth term =  $\frac{n(n+1)}{2}$ ; 20th term = 210

**14.**  $n^2$ ,  $30^2 = 900$ 

15.  $\frac{n(n+1)}{2}$ ,  $\frac{100(101)}{2} = 5050$ 

**16.**  $\frac{n(n-1)}{2} = 741$ ; therefore, n = 39

17.  $\frac{n(n-1)}{2}$  = 2926; therefore, n = 77

**18.** n-2, 54-2=52

**19a.** Possible answers:  $\angle EFC$  and  $\angle AFG$ ,  $\angle AFE$  and  $\angle CFG$ ,  $\angle FGD$  and  $\angle BGH$ , or  $\angle BGF$  and  $\angle HGD$ 

**19b.** Possible answers:  $\angle AFE$  and  $\angle EFC$ ,  $\angle AFG$  and  $\angle CFG$ ,  $\angle BGF$  and  $\angle FGD$ , or  $\angle BGH$  and  $\angle HGD$  (there are four other pairs)

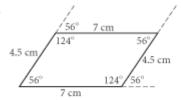
**19c.** Possible answers:  $\angle EFC$  and  $\angle FGD$ ,  $\angle AFE$  and  $\angle BGF$ ,  $\angle CFG$  and  $\angle DGH$ , or  $\angle AFG$  and  $\angle BGH$ 

**19d.** Possible answers:  $\angle AFG$  and  $\angle FGD$  or  $\angle CFG$  and  $\angle BGF$ 

**20.** Possible answers:  $\angle GFC$  by the Vertical Angles Conjecture,  $\angle BGF$  by the Corresponding Angles Conjecture, and  $\angle DGH$ , using the Alternate Exterior Angles Conjecture

**21.** True. Converse: "If two polygons have the same number of sides, then the two polygons are congruent"; false. Counterexamples may vary; you might draw a concave quadrilateral and a convex quadrilateral.

22.



**23.**  $\overrightarrow{PV} \parallel \overrightarrow{RX}$  and  $\overrightarrow{SU} \parallel \overrightarrow{VX}$ ; explanations will vary.

**24.** The bisected angle measures 50° because of AIA. So each half measures 25°. The bisector is a transversal, so the measure of the other acute angle in the triangle is also 25° by AIA. However, this angle forms a linear pair with the angle measuring  $165^{\circ}$ , and  $25^{\circ} + 165^{\circ} \neq 180^{\circ}$ , which contradicts the Linear Pair Conjecture.

**25.** 
$$a = 38^{\circ}$$
,  $b = 38^{\circ}$ ,  $c = 142^{\circ}$ ,  $d = 38^{\circ}$ ,  $e = 50^{\circ}$ ,  $f = 65^{\circ}$ ,  $g = 106^{\circ}$ ,  $h = 74^{\circ}$ .

The angle with measure e forms a linear pair with an angle with measure 130° because of the

Corresponding Angles Conjecture. So e measures 50° because of the Linear Pair Conjecture. The angle with measure f is half of the angle with measure 130°, so  $f = 65^\circ$ . The angle with measure g is congruent to the angle with measure 106° by the Corresponding Angles Conjecture, so  $g = 106^\circ$ .

CHAPTER 3 · CHAPTER



CHAPTER 3 · CHAPTER

### CHAPTER REVIEW

**1.** False; a geometric construction uses a straightedge and a compass.

2. False; a diagonal connects two non-consecutive vertices.

**3.** True

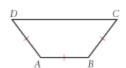
4. True

5. False



**6.** False; the lines can't be a given distance from a segment because the segment has finite length and the lines are infinite.

7. False



**8.** True

9. True

**10.** False; the orthocenter does not always lie inside the triangle.

11. A

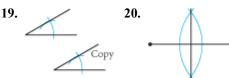
**12.** B or K **13.** I

14. H 18. C

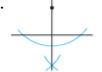
**15.** G

**16.** D

**17.** J



21.



22.



23. Construct a 90° angle and bisect it twice.

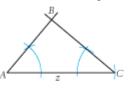
24.



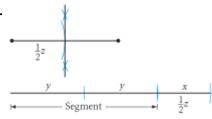
25. Incenter

**26.** Dakota Davis should locate the circumcenter of the triangular region formed by the three stones, which is the location equidistant from the stones.

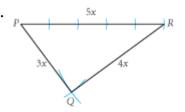
27.



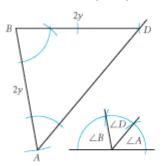
28.



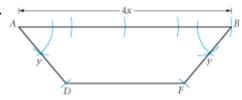
29



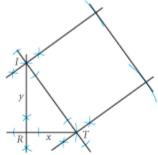
**30.**  $m \angle A = m \angle D$ . You must first find  $\angle B$ .  $m \angle B = 180^{\circ} - 2(m \angle A)$ .



31.



32.



## MIXED REVIEW

- **33.** Rotational symmetry
- **34.** Neither
- **35.** Both
- **36.** Reflectional symmetry
- **37.** D **38.** A
- **39.** C
- **40.** B
- **41.** False; an isosceles triangle has two congruent sides.
- **42.** True
- **43.** False; any non-acute triangle is a counterexample.
- **44.** False; possible explanation: The orthocenter is the point of intersection of the three altitudes.
- **45.** True
- **46.** False; any linear pair of angles is a counterexample.
- **47.** False; each side is adjacent to one congruent side and one noncongruent side, so two consecutive sides may not be congruent.
- 48. False



- **49.** False; the measure of an arc is equal to the measure of its central angle.
- **50.** False; TD = 2DR
- **51.** False; a radius is not a chord.
- **52.** True
- **53.** False; inductive reasoning is the process of observing data, recognizing patterns, and making generalizations about those patterns.
- **54.** Paradox
- **55a.**  $\angle 2$  and  $\angle 6$  or  $\angle 3$  and  $\angle 5$
- **55b.**  $\angle 1$  and  $\angle 5$
- **55c.** 138°
- **56.** 55

**57.** Possible answer:

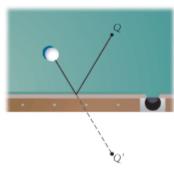


**58a.** Yes

**58b.** If the month has 31 days, then the month is October.

**58c.** No

59.



**60.** f(n) = 3n - 4; 20th term = 56

**61.**  $f(n) = n^2 - 1$ ; 20th term = 399

**62.** 
$$a = 38^{\circ}$$
,  $b = 38^{\circ}$ ,  $c = 142^{\circ}$ ,  $d = 38^{\circ}$ ,  $e = 50^{\circ}$ ,  $f = 65^{\circ}$ ,  $g = 106^{\circ}$ ,  $h = 74^{\circ}$ .

Possible explanation: The angle with measure c is congruent to an angle with measure  $142^{\circ}$  because of the Corresponding Angles Conjecture, so  $c = 142^{\circ}$ . The angle with measure  $130^{\circ}$  is congruent to the bisected angle by the Corresponding Angles Conjecture. The angle with measure f has half the measure of the bisected angle, so  $f = 65^{\circ}$ .

- **63.** Triangles will vary. Check that the triangle is scalene and that at least two angle bisectors have been constructed.
- **64.**  $m\angle FAD = 30^{\circ}$  so  $m\angle ADC = 30^{\circ}$ , but its vertical angle has measure 26°. This is a contradiction
- **65.** Minimum: 101 regions by 100 parallel lines; maximum: 5051 regions by 100 intersecting, noncurrent lines

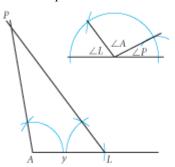
CHAPTER 4 • CHAPTER 4 • CHAPTER

#### CHAPTER REVIEW

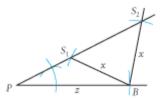
- 1. Their rigidity gives strength.
- **2.** The Triangle Sum Conjecture states that the sum of the measures of the angles in every triangle is 180°. Possible answers: It applies to all triangles; many other conjectures rely on it.
- **3.** The angle bisector of the vertex angle is also the median and the altitude.

- **4.** The distance between A and B is along the segment connecting them. The distance from A to C to B can't be shorter than the distance from A to B. Therefore, AC + CB > AB. Points A, B, and C form a triangle. Therefore, the sum of the lengths of any two sides is greater than the length of the third side.
- 5. SSS, SAS, ASA, or SAA
- **6.** In some cases, two different triangles can be constructed using the same two sides and non-included angle.
- 7. Cannot be determined
- **8.** ZAP by SAA
- **9.** *OSU* by SSS
- **10.** Cannot be determined
- 11. APR by SAS
- 12. NGI by SAS
- 13. Cannot be determined
- **14.** *DCE* by SAA or ASA
- **15.** *RBO* or *OBR* by SAS
- **16.**  $\triangle AMD \cong \triangle UMT$  by SAS; UT by CPCTC
- 17. Cannot be determined
- 18. Cannot be determined
- **19.**  $\triangle TRI \cong \triangle ALS$  by SAA;  $\overline{AL}$  by CPCTC
- **20.**  $\triangle SVE \cong \triangle NIK$  by SSS;  $\overline{KV}$  by overlapping segments property
- 21. Cannot be determined
- 22. Cannot be determined
- **23.**  $\triangle LAZ \cong \triangle IAR$  by ASA,  $\triangle LRI \cong \triangle IZL$  by ASA, and  $\triangle LRD \cong \triangle IZD$  by ASA
- **24.** Yes;  $\triangle PTS \cong \triangle TPO$  by ASA or SAA
- **25.**  $\triangle ANG$  is isosceles, so  $\triangle A \cong \triangle G$ . However, the sum of  $m \angle A + m \angle N + m \angle G = 188^{\circ}$ . The measures of the three angles of a triangle must sum to  $180^{\circ}$ .
- **26.**  $\triangle ROW \cong \triangle NOG$  by ASA, implying that  $\overline{OW} \cong \overline{OG}$ . However, the two segments shown are not equal in measure.
- **27.** a = g < e = d = b = f < c. Thus, c is the longest segment, and a and g are the shortest.
- **28.**  $x = 20^{\circ}$
- **29.** Yes.  $\triangle TRE \cong \triangle SAE$  by SAA, so sides are congruent by CPCTC.
- **30.** Yes.  $\triangle FRM \cong \triangle RFA$  by SAA.  $\angle RFM \cong \triangle FRA$  by CPCTC. Because base angles are congruent,  $\triangle FRD$  is isosceles.
- **31.**  $x = 48^{\circ}$

- **32.** The legs form two triangles that are congruent by SAS. Because alternate interior angles are congruent by CPCTC, the seat must be parallel to the floor.
- **33.** Construct  $\angle P$  and  $\angle A$  to be adjacent. The angle that forms a linear pair with the conjunction of  $\angle P$  and  $\angle A$  is  $\angle L$ . Construct  $\angle A$ . Mark off the length AL on one ray. Construct  $\angle L$ . Extend the unconnected sides of the angles until they meet. Label the point of intersection *P*.



**34.** Construct  $\angle P$ . Mark off the length PB on one ray. From point B, mark off the two segments that intersect the other ray of  $\angle P$  at distance x.



- **35.** See flowchart below.
- **36.** Given three sides, only one triangle is possible; therefore, the shelves on the right hold their shape. The shelves on the left have no triangles and move freely as a parallelogram.

- **37.** Possible method: Construct an equilateral triangle and bisect one angle to obtain 30°. Adjacent to that angle, construct a right angle and bisect it to obtain 45°.
- **38.** d, a = b, c, e, f



#### CHAPTER REVIEW

- 1. 360° divided by the number of sides
- 2. Sample answers: Using an interior angle, set interior angle measure formula equal to the angle and solve for n. Using an exterior angle, divide into 360°. Or find the interior angle measure and go from there.
- **3.** Trace both sides of the ruler as shown below.

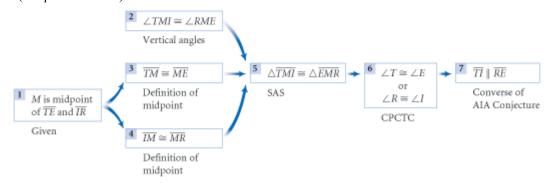


**4.** Make a rhombus using the double-edged straightedge, and draw a diagonal connecting the angle vertex to the opposite vertex.



5. Sample answer: Measure the diagonals with string to see if they are congruent and bisect each other.

## **35.** (Chapter 4 Review)



**6.** Possible answer: Draw a third point and connect it with each of the two points to form two sides of a triangle. Find the midpoints of the two sides and connect them to construct the midsegment. The distance between the two points is twice the length of the midsegment.

7. 
$$x = 10^{\circ}, y = 40^{\circ}$$

**8.** 
$$x = 60 \text{ cm}$$

**9.** 
$$a = 116^{\circ}, c = 64^{\circ}$$

11. 
$$x = 38 \text{ cm}$$

**12.** 
$$y = 34$$
 cm,  $z = 51$  cm

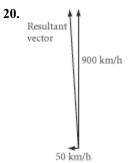
**13.** See table below. **14.** 
$$a = 72^{\circ}$$
,  $b = 108^{\circ}$ 

**15.** 
$$a = 120^{\circ}, b = 60^{\circ}, c = 60^{\circ}, d = 120^{\circ},$$

$$e = 60^\circ$$
,  $f = 30^\circ$ ,  $g = 108^\circ$ ,  $m = 24^\circ$ ,  $p = 84^\circ$ ;  
Possible explanation: Because  $c = 60^\circ$ , the angle that forms a linear pair with  $e$  and its congruent adjacent angle measures  $60^\circ$ . So  $60^\circ + 2e = 180^\circ$ , and  $e = 60^\circ$ . The triangle containing  $f$  has a  $60^\circ$  angle. The other angle is a right angle because it forms a linear pair with a right angle. So  $f = 30^\circ$  by the Triangle Sum Conjecture. Because  $g$  is an interior angle in an equiangular pentagon, divide  $540^\circ$  by 5 to get  $g = 108^\circ$ .

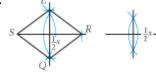
**18.** When the swing is motionless, the seat, the bar at the top, and the chains form a rectangle. When you swing left to right, the rectangle changes to a parallelogram. The opposite sides stay equal in length, so they stay parallel. The seat and the bar at the top are also parallel to the ground.

**19.** 
$$a = 60^{\circ}, b = 120^{\circ}$$

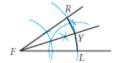


Speed: ≈ 901.4 km/h. Direction: slightly west of north. Figure is approximate.



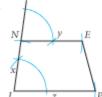


**22.** Possible answers:



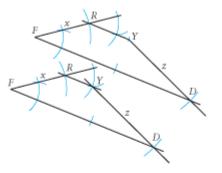






13. (Chapter 5 Review)		Kite	Isosceles trapezoid	Parallelogram	Rhombus	Rectangle	Square
	Opposite sides are parallel	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Opposite sides are congruent	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Opposite angles are congruent	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Diagonals bisect each other	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Diagonals are perpendicular	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
	Diagonals are congruent	No	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes
	Exactly one line of symmetry	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No
	Exactly two lines of symmetry	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	No

## **24.** Possible answers:



- **25.** 20 sides
- **26.** 12 cm
- **27.** See flowchart below.
- 28. See flowchart below.

# CHAPTER 6 • CHAPTER 6 • CHAPTER

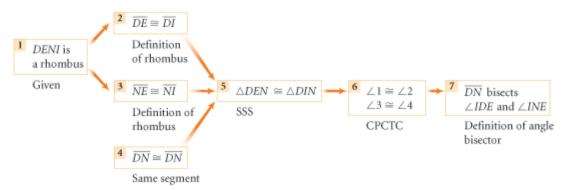
#### CHAPTER REVIEW

- 1. Answers will vary.
- **2.** Draw two nonparallel chords. The intersection of their perpendicular bisectors is the center of the circle.

Fold the paper so that two semicircles coincide. Repeat with two different semicircles. The center is the intersection of the two folds.

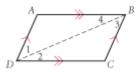
Place the outside or inside corner of the **L** in the circle so that it is an inscribed right angle. Trace the sides of the corner. Draw the hypotenuse of the right triangle (which is the diameter of the circle). Repeat. The center is the intersection of the two diameters.

## **27.** (Chapter 5 Review)



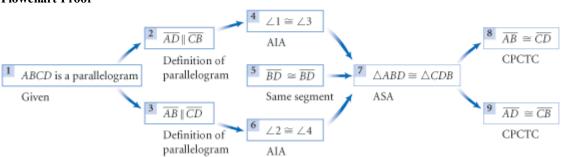
## **28.** (Chapter 5 Review)

Possible answer:



Given: Parallelogram ABCDShow:  $\overline{AB} \cong \overline{CD}$  and  $\overline{AD} \cong \overline{CB}$ 

**Flowchart Proof** 



- 3. The velocity vector is always perpendicular to the radius at the point of tangency to the object's circular path.
- **4.** Sample answer: An arc measure is between 0° and 360°. An arc length is proportional to arc measure and depends on the radius of the circle.

**5.** 55°

**6.** 65°

7. 128°

8. 118°

9. 91°

10. 66°

**11.** 125.7 cm

**12.** 42.0 cm

13.  $15 \pi$  cm

14.  $14 \pi$  ft

**15.**  $2 \cdot 57^{\circ} + 2 \cdot 35^{\circ} \neq 180^{\circ}$ 

16.  $84^{\circ} + 56^{\circ} + 56^{\circ} + 158^{\circ} \neq 360^{\circ}$ 

17.  $m\angle EKL = \frac{1}{2}m\widehat{EL} = \frac{1}{2}$   $(180^{\circ} - 108^{\circ}) = 36^{\circ} =$  $m \angle KLY$ . Therefore  $\overline{KE} \parallel \overline{YL}$  by Converse of the Parallel Lines Conjecture.

**18.**  $mJI = 360^{\circ} - 56^{\circ} - 152^{\circ} = 152^{\circ} = mMI$ . Therefore  $m \angle JMI = \frac{1}{2}mJI = \frac{1}{2}mMI = m \angle MJI$ , so  $\triangle JIM$  is isosceles.

**19.**  $mKIM = 2m / KEM = 140^{\circ}$ , so mKI = $140^{\circ} = 70^{\circ} = 70^{\circ} = mMI$ . Therefore  $m \angle IKM =$  $\frac{1}{2}mMI = \frac{1}{2}mKI = m \angle IMK$ , so  $\triangle KIM$  is isosceles.

- **20.** Ertha can trace the incomplete circle on paper. She can lay the corner of the pad on the circle to trace an inscribed right angle. Then Ertha should mark the endpoints of the intercepted arc and use the pad to construct the hypotenuse of the right triangle, which is the diameter of the circle.
- 21. Sample answer: Construct perpendicular bisectors of two sides of the triangle. The point at which they intersect (the circumcenter) is the center of the circle. The distance from the circumcenter to each vertex is the radius.

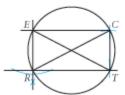


22. Sample answer: Construct the incenter (from the angle bisectors) of the triangle. From the incenter, which is the center of the circle, construct a perpendicular to a side. The distance

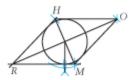
from the incenter to the foot of the perpendicular is the radius.



23. Sample answer: Construct a right angle and label the vertex R. Mark off  $\overline{RE}$  and  $\overline{RT}$  with any lengths. From point E, swing an arc with radius RT. From point T, swing an arc with radius RE. Label the intersection of the arcs as C. Construct the diagonals  $\overline{ET}$  and  $\overline{RC}$ . Their intersection is the center of the circumscribed circle. The circle's radius is the distance from the center to a vertex. It is not possible to construct an inscribed circle in a rectangle unless it is a square.



**24.** Sample answer: Construct acute angle *R*. Mark off equal lengths RM and RH. From points M and H, swing arcs of lengths equal to RM. Label the intersection of the arcs as O. Construct RHOM. The intersection of the diagonals is the center of the inscribed circle. Construct a perpendicular to a side to find the radius. It is not possible to construct a circumscribed circle unless the rhombus is a square.



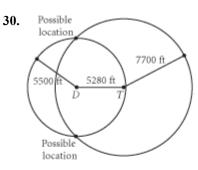
**25.** 4x + 3y = 32

**26.** (-3, 2)

**27.** d = 0.318 m

28. Melanie: 151 m/min or 9 km/h; Melody: 94 m/min or 6 km/h.

**29.** 
$$\frac{2\pi(6357)}{360 \cdot 60} \approx 1.849 < 1.852 < 1.855$$
  
  $\approx \frac{2\pi(6378)}{360 \cdot 60}$ 

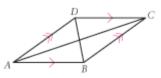


- 31.  $\frac{200}{\pi}$ ft = 63.7 ft 32.  $8\pi$ m = 25.1 m
- 33. The circumference is  $\frac{48}{360}$   $2\pi(45) = 12\pi$ ; 12 cm is the diameter.

## MIXED REVIEW

- **34.** False.  $20^{\circ} + 20^{\circ} + 140^{\circ} = 180^{\circ}$ . An angle with measure 140° is obtuse.
- **35.** True

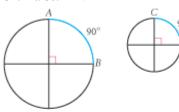




- **38.** True **39.** True **40.** True
- **41.** False.  $(7-2) \cdot 180^{\circ} = 900^{\circ}$ . It could have seven sides.
- **42.** False. The sum of the measures of any triangle is 180°.
- **43.** False. The sum of the measures of one set of exterior angles for any polygon is 360°. The sum of the measures of the interior angles of a triangle is 180° and of a quadrilateral is 360°. Neither is greater than 360°, so these are two counterexamples.
- **44.** False. The consecutive angles between the bases are supplementary.
- **45.** False.  $48^{\circ} + 48^{\circ} + 132^{\circ} \neq 180^{\circ}$
- 46. False. Inscribed angles that intercept the same arc are congruent.
- **47.** False. The measure of an inscribed angle is half the measure of the arc.
- **48.** True
- **49.** False,  $\overline{AC}$  and  $\overline{BD}$  bisect each other, but  $\overline{AC}$ is not perpendicular to  $\overline{BD}$ .

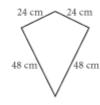


- **50.** False. It could be isosceles.
- **51.** False.  $100^{\circ} + 100^{\circ} + 100^{\circ} + 60^{\circ} = 360^{\circ}$
- **52.** False,  $\overrightarrow{AB} \not\equiv \overrightarrow{CD}$



**53.** False. The ratio of the circumference to the diameter is  $\pi$ .

$$24 + 24 + 48 + 48 + \neq 96$$



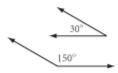
- **55.** True
- **56.** This is a paradox.

**57.** 
$$a = 58^{\circ}, b = 61^{\circ}, c = 58^{\circ}, d = 122^{\circ},$$
  $e = 58^{\circ}, f = 64^{\circ}, g = 116^{\circ}, h = 52^{\circ}, i = 64^{\circ},$   $k = 64^{\circ}, l = 105^{\circ}, m = 105^{\circ}, n = 105^{\circ}, p = 75^{\circ},$   $q = 116^{\circ}, r = 90^{\circ}, s = 58^{\circ}, t = 122^{\circ}, u = 105^{\circ},$   $v = 75^{\circ}, w = 61^{\circ}, x = 29^{\circ}, y = 151^{\circ}$ 

- **58.**  $\triangle TAR \cong \triangle YRA$  by SAS
- **59.**  $\triangle FTO \cong \triangle YTO$  by SAA,

 $\triangle FLO \cong \triangle YLO$  by SAA,  $\triangle FTL \cong \triangle YTL$  by SSS

- **60.**  $\triangle PTR \cong \triangle ART$  by SAS,  $\triangle TPA \cong \triangle RAP$ by SAS
- **61.** ASA
- **62.**  $mAC = 84^{\circ}$ , length of  $AC = 11.2 \pi \approx 35.2$  in.
- **63.**  $x = 63^{\circ}, y = 27^{\circ}, w = 126^{\circ}$
- **64.** Sample answer:



- **65.** f(n) = 9 4n; 20th term = -71
- **66a.** The circle with its contents has 3-fold rotational symmetry, the entire tile does not.
- **66b.** No, it does not have reflectional symmetry.



69.



70.



CHAPTER 7 • CHAPTER

7

CHAPTER 7 • CHAPTER

### CHAPTER REVIEW

- 1. True
- 2. True
- 3. True

- 4. True
- 5. True
- **6.** True
- 7. False; a regular pentagon does not create a monohedral tessellation and a regular hexagon does.
- 8. True
- 9. True
- **10.** False; two counterexamples are given in Lesson 7.5.
- 11. False; any hexagon with all opposite sides parallel and congruent will create a monohedral tessellation.
- 12. This statement can be both true and false.
- **13.** 6-fold rotational symmetry
- 14. Translational symmetry
- **15.** Reflectional; color arrangements will vary, but the white candle must be in the middle.
- **16.** The two towers are not the reflection (or even the translation) of each other. Each tower individually has bilateral symmetry. The center portion has bilateral symmetry.
- 17. Answers will vary.
- **18.** Answers will vary.
- **19.** 3<sup>6</sup>/3<sup>2</sup>.4.3.4; 2- uniform

- **20.**  $4.8^2$ ; semiregular
- 21. See diagram below.
- **22.** See diagram below.
- **23.** Use a grid of squares. Tessellate by translation.
- **24.** Use a grid of equilateral triangles. Tessellate by rotation.
- **25.** Use a grid of parallelograms. Tessellate by glide reflection.
- **26.** Yes. It is a glide reflection for one pair of sides and midpoint rotation for the other two sides.



**27.** No. Because the shape is suitable for glide reflection, the rows of parallelograms should alternate the direction in which they lean (row 1 leans right, row 2 leans left, row 3 leans right, . . .).

28.

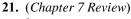


CHAPTER 8 • CHAPTER

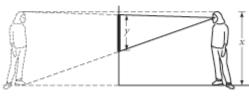
CHAPTER 8 • CHAPTER

## CHAPTER REVIEW

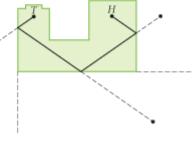
- **1.** B (parallelogram)
- 2. A (triangle)
- 3. C (trapezoid)
- **4.** E (kite)
- **5.** F (regular polygon)
- **6.** D (circle)







**22.** (Chapter 7 Review)



- 7. J (sector)
- 9. G (cylinder)

11. Apothem

- **8.** I (annulus)
- **10.** H (cone)
- 12.



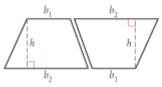
13.



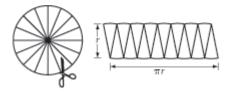
**14.** Sample answer: Construct an altitude from the vertex of an obtuse angle to the base. Cut off the right triangle and move it to the opposite side, forming a rectangle. Because the parallelogram's area hasn't changed, its area equals the area of the rectangle. Because the area of the rectangle is given by the formula A = bh, the area of the parallelogram is also given by A = bh.



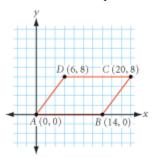
15. Sample answer: Make a copy of the trapezoid and put the two copies together to form a parallelogram with base  $(b_1 + b_2)$  and height h. Thus the area of one trapezoid is given by the formula  $A = \frac{1}{2}(b_1 + b_2)h$ .



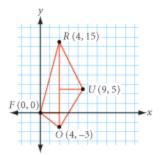
16. Sample answer: Cut a circular region into 16 wedges and arrange them into a shape that resembles a rectangle. The base length of this "rectangle" is  $\pi r$  and the height is r, so its area is  $\pi r^2$ . Thus the area of a circle is given by the formula  $A = \pi r^2$ .



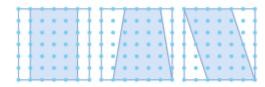
- 17. 800 cm<sup>2</sup>
- **18.** 5990.4 cm<sup>2</sup>
- **19.**  $60\pi \text{cm}^2$  or about  $188.5 \text{ cm}^2$
- **20.** 32 cm
- **21.** 32 cm
- **22.** 15 cm
- 23.  $81\pi \text{cm}^2$
- **24.** 48πcm
- **25.** 40°
- **26.** 153.9 cm<sup>2</sup>
- **27.** 72 cm<sup>2</sup>
- **28.** 30.9 cm<sup>2</sup>
- **29.** 300 cm<sup>2</sup>
- **30.** 940 cm<sup>2</sup>
- **31.** 1356 cm<sup>2</sup>
- **32.** Area is 112 square units.



**33.** Area is 81 square units.



- **34.** 6 cm
- **35.** 172.5 cm<sup>2</sup>
- **36.** Sample answers:



- **37.** 1250 m<sup>2</sup>
- **38.** Circle. For the square, 100 = 4s, s = 25,  $A = 25^2 = 625 \text{ ft}^2$ . For the circle,  $100 = 2\pi r$ ,  $r \approx 15.9, A \approx \pi (15.9)^2 \approx 795 \text{ ft}^2.$
- **39.** A round peg in a square hole is a better fit. The round peg fills about 78.5% of area of the square hole, whereas the square peg fills only about 63.7% of the area of the round hole.
- 40. Giant
- **41.** About 14 oz

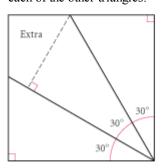
- **42.** One-eighth of a 12-inch diameter pie; one-fourth of a 6-inch pie and one-eighth of a 12-inch pie both have the same length of crust, and more than one-sixth of an 8-inch pie
- **43a.** 96 ft; 40 ft
- **43b.** 3290 ft<sup>2</sup>
- 44. \$3000
- **45.** \$4160
- **46.** It's a bad deal.  $2\pi r_1 = 44$  cm.  $2\pi r_2 = 22$  cm, which implies  $4\pi r_2 = 44$  cm. Therefore  $r_1 = 2r_2$ . The area of the large bundle is  $4\pi (r_2)^2$ . The combined area of two small bundles is  $2\pi (r_2)^2$  cm<sup>2</sup>. Thus he is getting half as much for the same price.
- **47.** \$2002
- **48.** \$384 (16 gal)

## CHAPTER 9 • CHAPTER

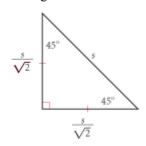
G CHAPTER 9 • CHAPTER

### CHAPTER REVIEW

- **1.** 20 cm **2.** 10 cm **3.** obtuse **4.** 26 cm
- 5.  $\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$
- 6.  $\left(-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$
- 7.  $200\sqrt{3} \text{ cm}^2$
- **8.**  $d = 12\sqrt{2}$  cm
- **9.** 246 cm<sup>2</sup>
- 10.  $72\pi \text{ in}^2$
- 11.  $24\pi \text{ cm}^2$
- 12.  $(2\pi 4)$  cm<sup>2</sup>
- **13.** 222.8 cm<sup>2</sup>
- 14. isosceles right
- **15.** No. The closest she can come to camp is 10 km.
- **16.** No. The 15 cm diagonal is the longer diagonal.
- 17. 1.4 km; $8\frac{1}{2}$  min
- **18.** Yes **19.** 29 ft **20.** st 45 ft **21.** 50 mi
- **22.** 707 m<sup>2</sup>
- **23.**  $6\sqrt{3}$  and 18
- **24.** 12 m
- **25.** 42
- **26.** No. If you reflect one of the right triangles into the center piece, you'll see that the area of the kite is almost half again as large as the area of each of the other triangles.



- Or you might compare areas by assuming the short leg of the 30°-60°-90° triangle is 1. The area of each triangle is then  $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$  and the area of the kite is  $3 \sqrt{3}$ .
- 27.  $\frac{7}{9}$
- **28.** The quarter-circle gives the maximum area. Triangle:



$$A = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{s}{\sqrt{2}} \cdot \frac{s}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{s^2}{4}$$

Square:







$$A = \frac{1}{2}s \cdot \frac{1}{2}s = \frac{s^2}{4}$$

$$s = \frac{1}{4} \cdot 2\pi r$$

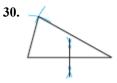
$$r = \frac{2s}{\pi}$$

$$A = \frac{1}{4} \pi \left(\frac{2s}{\pi}\right)^2 = \frac{s^2}{\pi}$$

$$\frac{s^2}{\pi} > \frac{s^2}{4}$$

**29.** 1.6 m

#### MIXED REVIEW



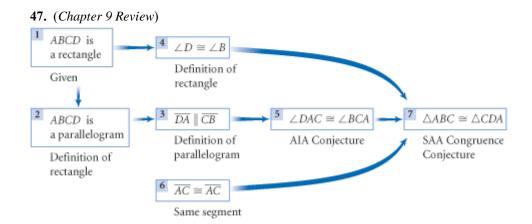
- **31.** 4; 0; 10. The rule is  $\frac{n}{2}$  if n is even, but 0 if n is odd.
- **32.**  $4\pi$ , or approximately 12.6 in./s
- **33.** True
- **34.** True

- **35.** False. The hypotenuse is of length  $x \sqrt{2}$ .
- **36.** True
- **37.** False;  $AB = \sqrt{(x_2 x_1)^2 + (y_2 y_1)^2}$
- **38.** False. A glide reflection is a combination of a translation and a reflection.
- **39.** False. Equilateral triangles, squares, and regular hexagons can be used to create monohedral tessellations.
- **40.** True
  - **41.** D

43. A

- 44. C
- 45. C
- **42.** B 46. D
- 47. See flowchart below.
- 48. N 8-ball W Cue ball
- **49.** 34 cm<sup>2</sup>;  $22 + 4\sqrt{2} \approx 27.7$  cm
- 50.  $\frac{40\pi}{3}$  cm<sup>2</sup>
- **51.** About 55.9 m
- **52.** About 61.5 cm<sup>2</sup>
- **53.** 48 cm
- **54.** 322 ft<sup>2</sup>

- 1. They have the same formula for volume: V = BH.
- **2.** They have the same formula for volume:  $V = \frac{1}{3}BH$ .
- **3.** 6240 cm<sup>3</sup>
- 4.  $1029\pi \text{cm}^3$
- 5.  $1200 \text{ cm}^3$
- **6.**  $32 \text{ cm}^3$
- 7.  $100\pi \text{cm}^3$
- 8.  $2250\pi \text{cm}^3$
- 9. H = 12.8 cm
- 10. h = 7 cm
- 11. r = 12 cm
- 12. r = 8 cm
- **13.** 960 cm<sup>3</sup>
- **14.** 9 m
- **15.** 851 cm<sup>3</sup>
- 16. Four times as great
- 17a.  $V_{\text{extra large}} = 54 \text{ in}^3$  $V_{\text{jumbo}} = 201.1 \text{ in}^3$  $V_{\rm colossal} = 785.4 \text{ in}^3$
- **17b.** 14.5 times as great
- **18.** Cylinder B weighs times as much as cylinder A.
- **19.** 2129 kg; 9 loads
- **20.** H = 2r.  $\frac{V_{\text{quare}}}{V_{\text{long}}} = \frac{4}{3} \frac{\pi r^3}{(2r)^3}$ . Thus, 52.4% of the box is filled by the ball.
- 21. Approximately 358 yd<sup>3</sup>
- 22. No. The unused volume is  $98\pi$  in<sup>3</sup>, and the volume of the meatballs is  $32\pi$  in<sup>3</sup>.
- 23. Platinum



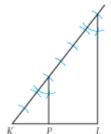
- 24. No. The ball weighs 253 lb.
- **25.** 256 lb
- 26. Approximately 3 in.
- 27.  $\left(\frac{\pi}{8} \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{32}\right)$  m<sup>3</sup>  $\approx 0.23$  m<sup>3</sup>
- **28.** 160π cubic units

CHAPTER 11 • CHAPTER 11 CHAPTER 11 • CHAPT

## CHAPTER REVIEW

- 1. x = 24
- 2. x = 66
- **3.**  $x = \pm 6$
- **4.** x = 17
- **5.** w = 6 cm; x = 4.5 cm; y = 7.5 cm; z = 3 cm
- **6.**  $x = 4\frac{1}{6}$  cm;  $y = 7\frac{1}{2}$  cm
- 7. 13 ft 2 in.
- **8.** It would still be a 20° angle.

9



- **10.** Yes. If two triangles are congruent, corresponding angles are congruent and corresponding sides are proportional with ratio 1. so the triangles are similar.
- **11.** 15 m
- 12. 4 gal; 8 times
- **13.** Possible answer: You would measure the height and weight of the real clothespin and the height of the sculpture.

$$\frac{W_{\text{sculpture}}}{W_{\text{clothespin}}} = \left(\frac{H_{\text{sculpture}}}{H_{\text{clothespin}}}\right)^{3}$$

If you don't know the height of the sculpture, you could estimate it from this photo by setting up a ratio, for example

$$\frac{H_{\rm person}}{H_{\rm person's~photo}} = \frac{H_{\rm sculpture}}{H_{\rm sculpture's~photo}}$$

- **14.** 9:49 or  $\frac{9}{49}$
- **15.** Ratio of radii =  $\frac{5}{4}$ ; ratio of volumes =  $\frac{125}{64}$

- **16.** \$266.67
- 17.  $640\pi \text{cm}^3$
- **18.** w = 32; x = 24; y = 40; z = 126
- 19. 841 coconuts
- **20a.** 1 to  $\frac{\pi}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$ , or 4 to  $\pi$  to 2
- **20b.** 3 to 2 to 1
- 20c. Answers will vary.
- **21.** Possible answer: If food is proportional to body volume, then  $\frac{1}{8000}$  of the usual amount of food is required. If clothing is proportional to surface area, then  $\frac{1}{400}$  of the usual amount of clothing is required. It would take 20 times longer to walk a given distance.
- **22.** The ice cubes would melt faster because they have greater surface area.

# CHAPTER 12 · CHAPTER 12 · CHAPTER 12 · CHAPT

#### CHAPTER REVIEW

- **1.** 0.8387
- **2.** 0.9877
- **3.** 28.6363
- **4.**  $\sin A = \frac{a}{b}$ ;  $\cos A = \frac{c}{b}$ ;  $\tan A = \frac{a}{c}$
- 5.  $\sin B = \frac{8}{17}$ ;  $\cos B = \frac{15}{17}$ ;  $\tan B = \frac{8}{15}$
- **6.**  $\sin \phi = s$ ;  $\cos \phi = t$ ;  $\tan \phi = \frac{s}{t}$
- 7. 33°
- **8.** 86°
- **9.** 71°
- **10.** 1823 cm<sup>2</sup>
- **11.** 15,116 cm<sup>3</sup>
- **12.** Yes, the plan meets the act's requirements. The angle of ascent is approximately 4.3°.
- 13. Approximately 52 km
- **14.** Approximately 7.3°
- **15.** Approximately 22 ft
- **16.** Approximately 6568 m
- 17. Approximately 2973 km/h
- **18.** 393 cm<sup>2</sup>
- **19.** 30 cm
- **20.** 78 °
- **21.** 105 cm
- **22.** 51°
- **23.** 759 cm<sup>2</sup>
- 24. Approximately 25 cm
- **25.** 72 cm<sup>2</sup>
- 26. Approximately 15.7 cm
- 27. Approximately 33.5 cm<sup>2</sup>
- **28.** Approximately 10.1 km/h at an approximate bearing of  $24.5^{\circ}$

- 29. False; an octahedron is a polyhedron with eight faces.
- 30. False

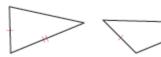




- **31.** True
- **32.** True
- **34.** True
- **35.** False;

length of leg opposite  $\angle T$ tangent of  $\angle T =$ length of leg adjacent to  $\angle T$ 

- **36.** True
- **37.** True
- **38.** True
- **39.** True
- **40.** False; the slope of line  $\ell_2$  is  $-\frac{1}{m}$ .
- 41. False



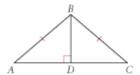
- **42.** B
- **43.** C
- **44.** A
- 45. D

- **46.** B
- **47.** B
- **48.** A
- **49.** B

- **50.** C
- 51. D
- **52.** C
- 53. A

- 54.  $\frac{100\pi}{2}$  cm<sup>3</sup>
- **55.**  $28\pi \text{ cm}^3$
- **56.**  $30.5\pi$  cm<sup>3</sup>
- **57.** 33
- **58.**  $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 1, y 3)$
- **59.** w = 48 cm, x = 24 cm, y = 28.5 cm
- **60.** Approximately 18 cm
- **61.**  $(x-5)^2 + (y-1)^2 = 9$
- **62.** Sample answer: Each interior angle in a regular pentagon is 108°. Three angles would have a sum of 324°, 36° short of 360°, leaving a gap. Four angles would have a sum exceeding 360°, creating an overlap.
- 63. Approximately 99.5 m
- **64.** 30 ft
- 65. 4 cm

**66.** 

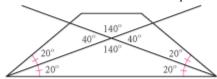


**66a.**  $m \angle ABC = 2 \cdot m \angle ABD$ 

**66b.** Possible answers: *BD* is the perpendicular bisector of  $\overline{AC}$ . It is the angle bisector of  $\angle ABC$ ; a median, and divides  $\triangle ABC$  into two congruent right triangles.

#### CHAPTER REVIEW

- 1. False. It could be an isosceles trapezoid.
- 2. True
- **3.** False. It could be an isosceles trapezoid or a kite.
- **5.** False. The angles are supplementary, but not necessarily congruent.
- **6.** False. See Lesson 13.5, Example B.
- 7. True
- **8.** perpendicular
- 9. congruent
- 10. the center of the circle
- 11. four congruent triangles that are similar to the original triangle
- 12. an auxiliary theorem proven specifically to help prove other theorems
- 13. If a segment joins the midpoints of the diagonals of a trapezoid, then it is parallel to the bases.
- **14.** Angle Bisector Postulate
- 15. Perpendicular Postulate
- **16.** Assume the opposite of what you want to prove, then use valid reasoning to derive a contradiction.
- **17a.** Smoking is *not* glamorous.
- **17b.** If smoking were glamorous, then this smoker would look glamorous. This smoker does not look glamorous, therefore smoking is not glamorous.
- **18.** False. The parallelogram could be any rhombus.
- **19.** False. Possible counterexample:



**20.** False. The sum of measures of the interior angles formed by the perpendicular bisectors is  $540^{\circ}$ , so  $x + 90^{\circ} + b + b + 90^{\circ} = 540^{\circ}$ , which simplifies to  $x = 360^{\circ} - 2b$ . So  $x = 90^{\circ}$  only if  $b = 135^{\circ}$ .



**21.** True (except in the special case of an isosceles right triangle, in which the segment is not defined because the feet coincide).

Given: Isosceles  $\triangle ABC$  with  $AC \cong BC$ ; altitudes  $\overline{AD}$  and  $\overline{BE}$ ;  $\overline{ED}$ 

Show:  $\overline{ED} \parallel \overline{AB}$ 

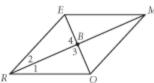
## Paragraph Proof:

 $\angle EAB$   $\cong$   $\angle DBA$  by the Isosceles  $_A$   $_B$  Triangle Theorem.  $\angle AEB$   $\cong$   $\angle BDA$  by the definition of altitude and the Right Angles Are Congruent Theorem. AB  $\cong$  AB by the reflexive property of congruence.  $\triangle AEB$   $\cong$   $\triangle BDA$  by SAA. Therefore  $\overline{AE}$   $\cong$   $\overline{BD}$  by CPCTC. By the definition of congruence, AC = BC and AE = BD, so EC = DC by the subtraction property of equality. By the division property of equality,  $\overline{AE}$  =  $\overline{BD}$  so  $\overline{ED}$  divides the sides of  $\triangle ABC$  proportionally. Therefore  $\overline{ED}$  ||  $\overline{AB}$  by the Converse of the Parallel/Proportionality Theorem.

**22.** True

Given: Rhombus ROME with diagonals  $\overline{RM}$  and

 $\overline{EO}$  intersecting at B Show:  $\overline{RM} \perp \overline{EO}$ 



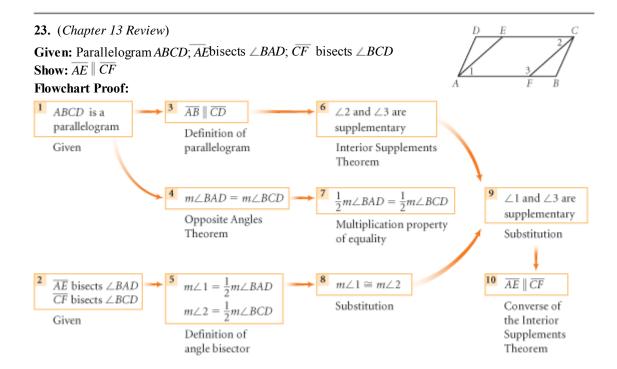
### Statement

- 1.  $\angle 1 \cong \angle 2$
- 2. RO = RE
- 3.  $\overline{RO} \cong \overline{RE}$
- 4. *RB*≅ *RB*

## Reason

- 1. Rhombus Angles Theorem
- 2. Definition of rhombus
- 3. Definition of congruence
- 4. Reflexive property of congruence
- 5.  $\triangle ROB \cong \triangle REB$  5. SAS Congruence Postulate
- 6. ∠3 ≅ ∠4
- 6. CPCTC
- 7. ∠3 and ∠4 are a linear pair
- 7. Definition of linear pair
- 8. ∠3 and ∠4 are supplementary9. ∠3 and ∠4 are
- 8. Linear Pair Postulate
- right angles
- Congruent and Supplementary Theorem
- 10.  $\overline{RM} \perp \overline{EO}$
- 10. Definition of perpendicular
- **23.** True. See flowchart proof below.

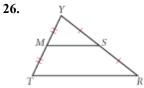
*NOTE:* The answers to Exercises 21–23 are models of what a thorough proof should look like. The answers to Exercises 24–31 explain the logic of each proof without showing the details required for a thorough proof.



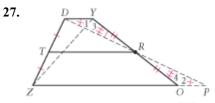
**24.** Use the Inscribed Angle Theorem, the addition property, and the distributive property to get  $m \angle P + m \angle E + m \angle N + m \angle T + m \angle A = \frac{1}{2}(mTN + mAT + mPA + mEP + mNE)$ . Because there are 360° in a circle,  $m \angle P + m \angle E + m \angle N + m \angle T + m \angle A = 180°$ .

25. T

Assume  $m \angle H > 45^{\circ}$  and  $m \angle T > 45^{\circ}$ . Use the Triangle Sum Theorem, the substitution property, and the subtraction property to get  $m \angle H + m \angle T > 90^{\circ}$ , which creates a contradiction. Therefore  $m \angle H \le 45^{\circ}$  or  $m \angle T \le 45^{\circ}$ .

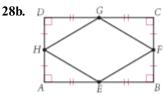


Use the definition of midpoint, the Segment Addition Postulate, the substitution property, and the division property to get  $\frac{MY}{TY} = \frac{1}{2}$  and  $\frac{YS}{YR} = \frac{1}{2}$ . Then use the reflexive property and the SAS Similarity Theorem to get  $\triangle MSY \sim \triangle TRY$ . Therefore,  $MS = \frac{1}{2}$  TR by CSSTP and the multiplication property and  $\overline{MS} \parallel \overline{TR}$  by CASTC and the CA Postulate.



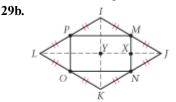
Use the Line Postulate to extend  $\overline{ZO}$  and  $\overline{DR}$ . Then use the Line Intersection Postulate to label P as the intersection of  $\overline{ZO}$  and  $\overline{DR}$ .  $\triangle DYR \cong \triangle POR$  by the SAA Theorem; thus  $\overline{DY} \cong \overline{OP}$  by CPCTC. Use the Triangle Midsegment Theorem and the substitution property to get  $TR = \frac{1}{2}(ZO + DY)$ .

**28a.** The quadrilateral formed when the midpoints of the sides of a rectangle are connected is a rhombus.



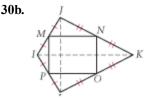
Use the Right Angles Are Congruent Theorem and the SAS Congruence Postulate to get  $\triangle AEH \cong \triangle BEF \cong \triangle DGH \cong \triangle CGF$ . Then use CPCTC to prove that EFGH is a rhombus.

**29a.** The quadrilateral formed when the midpoints of the sides of a rhombus are connected is a rectangle.

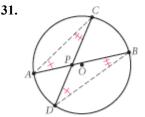


By the Triangle Midsegment Theorem both  $\overline{PM}$  and  $\overline{ON}$  are parallel to  $\overline{LJ}$  and both  $\overline{PO}$  and  $\overline{MN}$  are parallel to  $\overline{IK}$  Because  $\overline{LJ}$  and  $\overline{IK}$  are perpendicular, we can use corresponding angles on parallel lines to prove that the lines that are adjacent sides of the quadrilateral are also perpendicular.

**30a.** The quadrilateral formed when the midpoints of the sides of a kite are connected is a rectangle.



By the Triangle Midsegment Theorem both  $\overline{PM}$  and  $\overline{ON}$  are parallel to  $\overline{LJ}$  and both  $\overline{PO}$  and  $\overline{MN}$  are parallel to  $\overline{IK}$  Because  $\overline{LJ}$  and  $\overline{IK}$  are perpendicular, we can use the CA Postulate to prove that the lines that are adjacent sides of the quadrilateral are also perpendicular.



Use the Line Postulate to construct chords  $\overline{DB}$  and  $\overline{AC}$ . Then use the Inscribed Angles Intercepting Arcs Theorem and the AA Similarity Postulate to get  $\triangle APC \sim \triangle DPB$ . Therefore, by CSSTP and the multiplication property,

$$AP \cdot PB = DP \cdot PC$$
.

# **Glossary**

The number in parentheses at the end of each definition gives the page where each term is introduced in the text. Some terms have multiple page numbers listed because they have different applications in different lessons. Most terms, including those that you define in investigations, include either a visual representation or a reference to a related definition that includes a visual representation.



**abscissa** The x-coordinate in an ordered pair (x, y), measuring horizontal distance from the y-axis on a coordinate plane. (672)

**absolute value** A number's distance from zero on the number line. (679)

## acute angle



You define this term in the Investigation Defining Angles. (49)

## acute triangle



If  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$ , and  $\angle C$  are acute angles, △ ABC is an acute triangle.

You define this term in the Investigation Triangles. (60)

## adjacent angles



∠1 and ∠2 are adjacent angles.

Two non-overlapping angles with a common vertex and one common side. (43)

adjacent interior angle The angle of a polygon that forms a linear pair with a given exterior angle of a polygon. See **remote interior angles.** (217)

**adjacent leg** (of an acute angle in a right triangle)

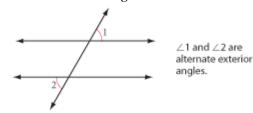


 $\overline{JK}$  is the side adjacent to  $\angle J$ .

The side of the angle that is not the hypotenuse. (640)

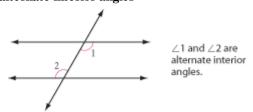
adjacent sides See consecutive sides.

## alternate exterior angles



A pair of angles, formed by a transversal intersecting two lines, that do not lie between the two lines and are on opposite sides of the transversal. (128)

## alternate interior angles



A pair of angles, formed by a transversal intersecting two lines, that lie between the two lines and are on opposite sides of the transversal. (128)

altitude (of a cone, pyramid, or triangle)

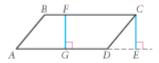




AD is an altitude

A perpendicular segment from a vertex to the base or to the line or plane containing the base. See cone, pyramid, and triangle. (156)

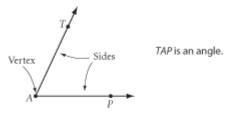
**altitude** (of a parallelogram, trapezoid, prism, or cylinder)



CE and FG are altitudes of ABCD.

A perpendicular segment from a base to the parallel base or to the line or plane containing the parallel base. See **cylinder**, **parallelogram**, **prism**, and **trapezoid**. (424)

## angle



Two noncollinear rays having a common endpoint. (38)

**angle** (of a polygon) An angle having two adjacent sides of the polygon as its sides. See **polygon**. (54)

**angle addition** A property that states if *D* is in the interior of  $\angle CAB$ , then  $m\angle CAD + m\angle DAB = m\angle CAB$ . (73)

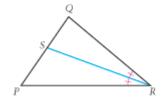
## angle bisector



 $\overline{CD}$  is the angle bisector of  $\angle BCA$ .

A ray that has its endpoint at the vertex of the angle and that divides the angle into two congruent angles. (40)

## angle bisector (of a triangle)

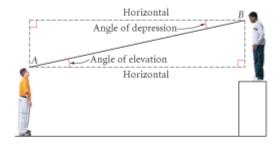


 $\overline{RS}$  is an angle bisector of  $\triangle PQR$ .

A segment that lies on an angle bisector and that has one endpoint at the vertex and the other on the opposite side of the triangle. (159)

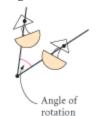
**angle of depression** The angle formed by a horizontal line and the line of sight of a viewer looking down. See **angle of elevation.** (647)

## angle of elevation



The angle formed by a horizontal line and the line of sight of a viewer looking up. (647)

## angle of rotation



The image has been rotated by the angle of rotation.

The angle between a point and its image under a rotation, with its vertex at the center of the rotation and sides that go through the point and its image. (369)

**angular velocity** (of an object moving around a circle) The rate of change, with respect to time, of the measure of the arc between an object and its starting position. (352)

#### annulus



The shaded region between the circles is an annulus.

The region between two concentric circles of unequal radius. (453)

**antecedent** The first or "if" clause of a conditional statement. (679)

**788** GLOSSARY © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

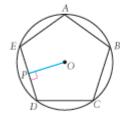
# antiprism





A polyhedron with two parallel, congruent bases and triangular lateral faces. (543)

apothem (of a regular polygon)



OP is the apothem of ABCDE.

A perpendicular segment from the center of the polygon's circumscribed circle to a side of the polygon. Also, the length of that segment. (442)

arc

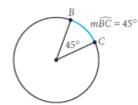


 $\widehat{AB}$  is an arc.

Two points on a circle and the continuous part of the circle between them. (71)

**arc length** The portion of the circumference of the circle described by an arc, measured in units of length. (349)

#### arc measure



The measure of arc BC is 45°.

The measure of the central angle that intercepts an arc, measured in degrees. (71)

**Archimedean tiling** A regular or semiregular tessellation. See regular tessellation and semiregular tessellation. (391)

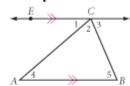
**area** The measure of the size of the interior of a figure, expressed in square units. (422)

arithmetic mean See mean.

arithmetic sequence A pattern in which each term is generated by adding a constant to the previous term. (580)

**assume** To accept as true without facts or proof. (59)

# auxiliary line



EC is an auxiliary line that helps prove that  $m\angle 2 + m\angle 4 + m\angle 5$ eguals 180°.

An extra line or line segment drawn in a figure to help with a proof. (201)

axis (of a cone or cylinder) The line segment connecting the center of the base to the vertex or center of the other base. See **cone** and **cylinder.** (523)



base (of a polygon) A side of the polygon used for reference to determine an altitude or other feature. See parallelogram, trapezoid, and triangle. (61, 269, 423)

base (of a solid) A polygon or circle used for reference to determine an altitude or other feature of the solid, or to classify the solid. See cone, **cylinder, prism,** and **pyramid.** (461, 522, 523)

base angles (of an isosceles triangle) The two angles opposite the two congruent sides. See isosceles triangle. (61)

base angles (of a trapezoid) A pair of angles with a base of the trapezoid as a common side. See trapezoid. (269)

**bearing** The clockwise measure of the angle from due north to the path of travel. (316)

**biconditional statement** A statement that includes both a conditional statement and its converse. usually written in "if and only if" form. (254)

bilateral symmetry Reflectional symmetry with only one line of symmetry. (3)

**bisect** To divide into two congruent parts. (31)



**center** (of a circle) The coplanar point from which all points of the circle are the same distance. See **circle**. (69)

**center** (of a sphere) The point from which all points on the sphere are the same distance. See **sphere.** (524)

**center of gravity** The balancing point of an object. (187)

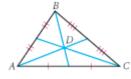
#### central angle



∠SPT is a central angle of circle P.

An angle whose vertex is the center of a circle and whose sides pass through the endpoints of an arc. (71)

#### centroid



Point D is the centroid of  $\triangle ABC$ .

The point of concurrency of a triangle's three medians. (185)

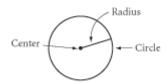
#### chord



AB is a chord of circle Q.

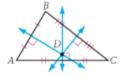
You define this term in the Investigation Defining Circle Terms. (70)

# circle



The set of all points in a plane at a given distance from a given point. (69)

#### circumcenter

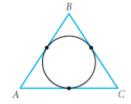


Point D is the circumcenter of  $\triangle ABC$ .

The point of concurrency of a triangle's three perpendicular bisectors. (179)

**circumference** The perimeter of a circle, which is the distance around the circle. Also, the curved path of the circle itself. (335)

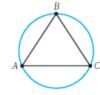
# circumscribed (about a circle)



△ ABC is circumscribed about the circle.

Having all sides tangent to the circle, such as a triangle circumscribed about a circle. (86)

# circumscribed (about a polygon)



The circle is circumscribed about  $\triangle ABC$ .

Passing through each vertex of the polygon, such as a circle circumscribed about a triangle. (181)

**classify and differentiate** Defining a term by categorizing it, then distinguishing it from other members of the same group, according to chosen characteristics. (48)

**clinometer** A tool for measuring an angle of elevation or depression, consisting of an edge to sight along, a plumb line, and a protractor. (652)

**coincide** To lie exactly on top of each other. (3)

#### collinear



Points A, B, and C are collinear.

On the same line. (29)

**compass** A tool used to construct circles. (4)

# complementary angles



∠1 and ∠2 are complementary angles.

You define this term in the Investigation Defining Angles. (50)

**composition** (of transformations) The single transformation that gives the same image as a transformation applied to a figure followed by a second transformation applied to the image of the first. (383)

# concave polygon



ABCDE is a concave polygon.

A polygon with at least one diagonal outside the polygon. (54)

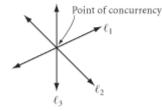
#### concentric circles



Three concentric circles

Circles that share the same center. (71)

#### concurrent lines



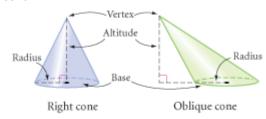
Lines  $\ell_1$ ,  $\ell_2$ , and  $\ell_3$ are concurrent.

Two or more lines that intersect in a single point. (178)

conditional proof A proof of a conditional statement. (679)

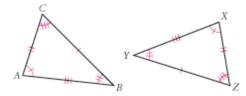
**conditional statement** A statement that can be expressed in "if-then" form. (569)

#### cone



A solid consisting of a circle and its interior, a point not in the plane of the circle, and all points on line segments connecting that point to points on the circle. (76, 523)

**congruent** (angles, line segments, or polygons)

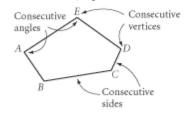


 $\triangle$  ABC is congruent to  $\triangle$ XYZ. All corresponding parts are congruent. For instance,  $\overline{AB}$  is congruent to  $\overline{XY}$ , and  $\angle C$  is congruent to  $\angle Z$ .

Identical in shape and size. (31, 40, 55)

conjecture A generalization resulting from inductive reasoning. (96)

consecutive (angles, sides, or vertices of a polygon)



Two angles that share a common side, two sides that share a common vertex, or two vertices that are the endpoints of one side. Consecutive sides are also called adjacent sides. (54)

consequent The second or "then" clause of a conditional statement. (679)

**contrapositive** The statement formed by exchanging and negating the antecedent and the consequent of a conditional statement. (631)

**converse** The statement formed by exchanging the antecedent and the consequent of a conditional statement. (124)

**convex polygon** A polygon with no diagonal outside the polygon. See **concave polygon.** (54)

coordinate proof A proof using coordinates of points in a coordinate system. (736)

# coplanar

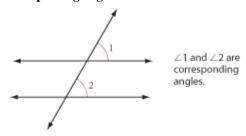


Points D, E, and F are coplanar.

In the same plane. (29)

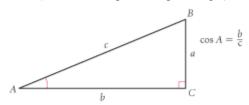
**corollary** A theorem that is the immediate consequence of another proven theorem. (708)

# corresponding angles



Two angles formed by a transversal intersecting two lines that lie in the same position relative to the two lines and the transversal. (128)

**cosine** (of an acute angle in a right triangle)



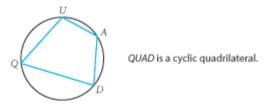
The cosine of  $\angle A$  is the ratio of AC to AB.

The ratio of the length of the leg adjacent to the angle to the length of the hypotenuse. (641)

**counterexample** An example that shows a conjecture to be incorrect or a definition to be inadequate. (47)

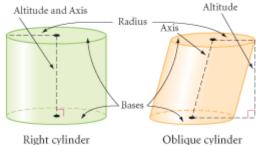
**cube** A regular polyhedron with six faces. See hexahedron. (78)

# cyclic quadrilateral



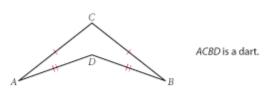
A quadrilateral that can be inscribed in a circle. (326)

# cylinder



A solid consisting of two congruent, parallel circles and their interiors, and the segments having an endpoint on each circle that are parallel to the segment between the centers of the circles. (76, 523)





A concave kite. (298)

**decagon** A polygon with ten sides. (54)

deductive argument Support for a conjecture based on deductive reasoning. (115)

**deductive reasoning** The process of showing that certain statements follow logically from agreed-upon assumptions and proven facts. (114)

**deductive system** A set of premises and logical rules used to organize the properties of geometry, in which each theorem can be proved by deductive reasoning using only the premises and previous

theorems, and in which each definition uses only terms that have been defined previously in the system. (692)

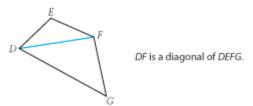
**definition** A statement that clarifies or explains the meaning of a word or phrase. (29)

**degree** A unit of measure for angles and arcs equivalent to  $\frac{1}{360}$  of a rotation around a circle. (39)

**density** The ratio of the mass of an object to its volume. (551)

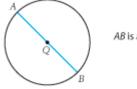
**determine** To provide the characteristics necessary to specify a figure. For example, three sides determine a triangle; three angles do not determine a triangle. (86, 170, 696)

# diagonal



A line segment connecting two nonconsecutive vertices of a polygon or polyhedron. (54)

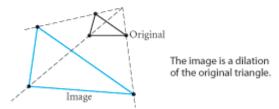
# diameter



AB is a diameter of circle Q.

A chord of a circle that contains the center, or the length of that chord. (70)

# dilation



A nonrigid transformation that enlarges or reduces a geometric figure by a scale factor relative to a point. (584)

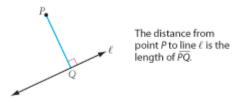
**direct proof** A proof requiring a statement of premises and the use of valid forms of reasoning to arrive at a conclusion in the simplest way without need for any assumptions. (679)

**displacement** The volume of fluid that rises above the original fluid line when a solid object is submerged in the fluid. (551)

**dissection** The result of dividing a figure into pieces. (478)

**distance** (between two points) The length of the line segment between the two points. (30)

**distance** (from a point to a line or plane)



The length of the perpendicular line segment from the point to the line or plane. (156)

distance (of a translation) The length of the line segment between a point and its image in a translation. (368)

**dodecagon** A polygon with 12 sides. (54)

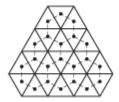
# dodecahedron



The faces of this dodecahedron are regular pentagons.

A polyhedron with 12 faces. (521)

**dual** (of a tessellation)



The new tessellation formed by constructing line segments between the centers of polygons having a common edge in a tessellation. (392)



**edge** The intersection of two faces in a polyhedron. See **polyhedron.** (521)

**elliptic geometry** A deductive system of geometry in which there are no parallel lines. (743)

# endpoint



The point at either end of a segment or an arc, or the first point of a ray. (30)

# equiangular polygon



This octagon is equiangular.

You define this term in the Investigation Special Polygons. (56)

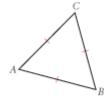
# equilateral polygon



This octagon is equilateral.

You define this term in the Investigation Special Polygons. (56)

# equilateral triangle



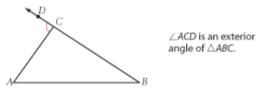
△ ABC is an equilateral triangle.

You define this term in the Investigation Triangles. (61)

**Euler line** The line through three of the four points of concurrency of a triangle. (191)

**Euler segment** The line segment on the Euler line determined by the three points of concurrency of the triangle. (192)

# exterior angle



An angle that forms a linear pair with one of the interior angles of a polygon. (217)

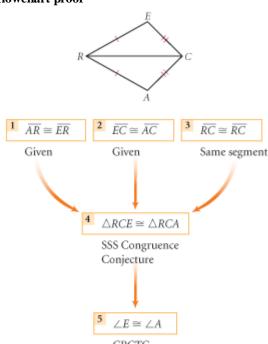
**externally tangent circles** Two tangent circles having centers on opposite sides of their common tangent. See **tangent circles**. (313)



**face** A surface of a polyhedron formed by a polygon and its interior. (521)

**flowchart** A concept map that shows a step-bystep process. Boxes represent the steps and arrows connect the boxes to show how they are sequenced. (237)

# flowchart proof



A logical argument presented in the form of a flowchart. (237)

#### fractal



This fractal is formed by connecting midpoints of the sides of triangles.

A self-similar geometric figure. See self-similar. (137)

**frustum** (of a cone or pyramid)





A solid formed by cutting a cone or pyramid with a plane parallel to the base and removing the vertex portion. Also called a truncated cone or truncated pyramid. (467, 619)

**function notation** A convention for expressing a function rule in terms of its input. For example, f(x) is the output of a function f whose input is x. (103)

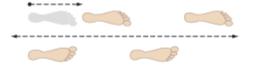
**function rule** A rule that, when applied to one set of numbers, generates another set of numbers with at most one output value for each input value. (102)



**geometric mean** The positive number whose square equals the product of two given positive numbers. (580)

**geometric sequence** A pattern in which each term is generated by multiplying the previous term by a constant. (580)

# glide reflection



Footsteps are an example of a glide reflection.

An isometry that is a composition of a translation and a reflection across a line parallel to the translation vector. (386)

**glide-reflectional symmetry** The property that a figure coincides with its image under a glide reflection. (386)

# golden cut

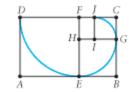


The point that divides a line segment into two segments so that the ratio of their lengths is the golden ratio. (602)

**golden ratio** The ratio of two numbers whose ratio to each other equals the ratio of their sum to the larger number. (602)

**golden rectangle** A rectangle in which the ratio of the lengths of the sides is the golden ratio. (630)

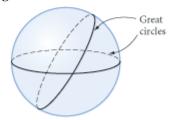
# golden spiral



ABCD is a golden rectangle. The curve from D to E to G to J is the beginning of a golden spiral.

A spiral through vertices of nested golden rectangles. (630)

#### great circle

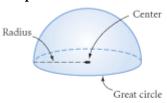


The intersection of a sphere with a plane that passes through its center. (524)



height The length of an altitude. See cone, cylinder, parallelogram, prism, pyramid, trapezoid, and triangle. (522)

# hemisphere



Half of a sphere and its great circle base. (77, 524)

**heptagon** A polygon with seven sides. (54)

# hexagon





The first hexagon is a regular hexagon.

A polygon with six sides. (54)

#### hexahedron





The second hexahedron is a regular hexahedron.

A polyhedron with six faces. (544)

horizon line A horizontal line representing eye level in a perspective drawing, containing one or two vanishing points, toward which lines from foreground to background converge. See one-point perspective and two-point perspective. (174)

**hyperbolic geometry** A deductive system of geometry in which there are infinitely many lines parallel to a given line through a point not on the line. (743)

**hypotenuse** The side opposite the right angle in a right triangle. See **right triangle**. (478)

# 1

#### icosahedron



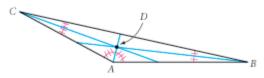
This is a regular icosahedron.

A polyhedron with 20 faces. (544)

# if-then statement See conditional statement.

**image** The result of moving all points of a figure according to a transformation. (368)

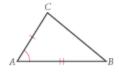
#### incenter



Point D is the incenter of  $\triangle ABC$ .

The point of concurrency of a triangle's three angle bisectors. (179)

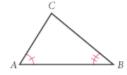
# included angle



 $\angle A$  is included by  $\overline{AB}$  and  $\overline{AC}$ .

An angle formed between two consecutive sides of a polygon. (222)

#### included side

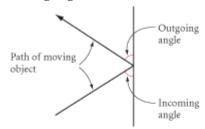


 $\overline{AB}$  is included by  $\angle A$  and  $\angle B$ .

A side of a polygon between two consecutive angles. (227)

**796** GLOSSARY © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

# incoming angle



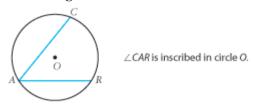
The angle formed between the path of an approaching object and the surface from which it rebounds, such as a billiard ball rolling toward a cushion or a ray of light traveling toward a mirror. (41)

**indirect measurement** Finding a distance or length by using properties of similar triangles or trigonometry. (618)

**indirect proof** A proof of a statement that begins by assuming that the statement is not true and then shows that this leads to a contradiction. (680)

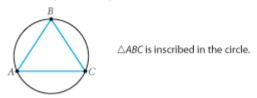
**inductive reasoning** The process of observing data, recognizing patterns, and making generalizations about those patterns. (96)

# inscribed angle



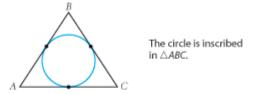
You define this term in the Investigation Defining Angles in a Circle. (317)

# inscribed (in a circle)



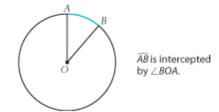
Having each vertex on the circle, such as a triangle inscribed in a circle. (181)

# inscribed (in a polygon)



Intersecting each side of the polygon exactly once, such as a circle inscribed in a triangle. (181)

# intercepted arc

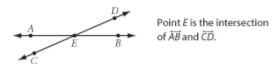


An arc that lies in the interior of an angle with endpoints on the sides of the angle. (313)

**interior angle** An angle of a polygon that lies inside the polygon. (262)

**internally tangent circles** Two tangent circles having centers on the same side of their common tangent. See **tangent circles**. (313)

#### intersection



The point or set of points common to two geometric figures. (53)

**inverse cosine, sine,** or **tangent** (of a number) A function that gives the measure of an acute angle whose cosine, sine, or tangent is the given number. (644)

**inverse** (of a conditional statement) The statement formed by negating the antecedent and the consequent. (631)

# isometric drawing



An isometric drawing of a prism using isometric dot paper.

A drawing of a three-dimensional object that shows three faces in one view. Also called an edge view. (75)

**isometry** A transformation that preserves size and shape. The image of a figure under an isometry is congruent to the original figure. Also called a rigid transformation. See **reflection**, **rotation**, and **translation**. (368)

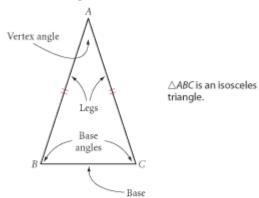
# isosceles trapezoid



TRAP is an isosceles trapezoid.

A trapezoid whose two nonparallel sides are congruent. (183)

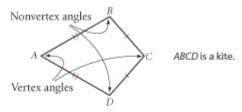
# isosceles triangle



You define this term in the Investigation Triangles. (61)



#### kite



You define this term in the Investigation Special Quadrilaterals. (64)



**lateral edge** The intersection of two lateral faces of a polyhedron. See **prism** and **pyramid.** (522)

**lateral face** A face of a polyhedron other than a base. See **prism** and **pyramid.** (522)

**Law of Contrapositive** A type of valid reasoning that concludes the truth of a statement from the truth of its contrapositive. (632)

**Law of Syllogism** A type of valid reasoning that uses "if P then Q" and "if Q then R" to conclude that "if P then R." (631)

**leg** (of an isosceles triangle) One of the congruent sides of an isosceles triangle. See **isosceles triangle.** (206)

**leg** (of a right triangle) One of the perpendicular sides of a right triangle. See **right triangle**. (478)

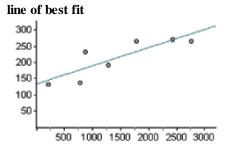
**lemma** An auxiliary theorem used specifically to prove other theorems. (716)

# line



An undefined term thought of as a straight, continuous arrangement of infinitely many points extending forever in two directions. A line has length, but no width or thickness, so it is one-dimensional. (28)

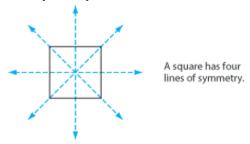
798 GLOSSARY © 2008 Key Curriculum Press



The line that passes closest to all of a given collection of points. (107)

**line of reflection** The line over which every point of a figure is moved by a reflection. See reflection. (370)

# line of symmetry



The line of reflection of a figure having reflectional symmetry. (3)

# line segment



Two points and all the points between them that are collinear with the two points. Also called a segment. The measure of a line segment is its length. (30)

**linear function** A function rule that, when applied to consecutive whole numbers, generates a sequence with a constant difference between consecutive terms. (104)

# **linear pair** (of angles)



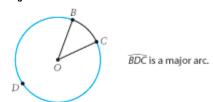
You define this term in the Investigation Defining Angles. (50)

**locus** The set of all points that satisfy some given conditions. (83)

**logical argument** A set of premises followed by statements, each of which relies on the premises or on previous statements, and ending with a final statement called a conclusion. An argument is valid if the conclusion has been arrived at through deductive reasoning. (114)



# major arc

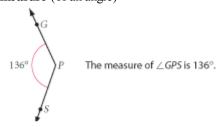


An arc of a circle that is greater than a semicircle. (71)

mathematical model A mathematical way of representing a real-world situation, such as a geometric figure, graph, table, or equation. (108)

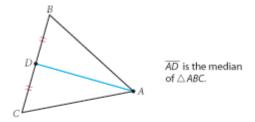
**mean** The number obtained by dividing the sum of the values in a data set by the number of values. Often called the average or the arithmetic mean. (580)

# measure (of an angle)



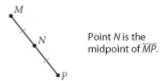
The smallest amount of rotation about the vertex from one ray to the other, measured in degrees. (39)

#### median



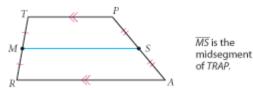
A line segment connecting a vertex of a triangle to the midpoint of the opposite side. (151)

# midpoint



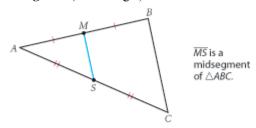
The point on the line segment that is the same distance from both endpoints. The midpoint bisects the segment. (31)

# midsegment (of a trapezoid)



The line segment connecting the midpoints of the two nonparallel sides of the trapezoid. (275)

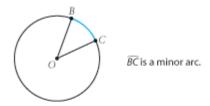
# **midsegment** (of a triangle)



A line segment connecting the midpoints of two sides of the triangle. (151)

minimal path The path of shortest length. (318)

#### minor arc



An arc of a circle that is less than a semicircle. (71)

**Modus Ponens** The type of valid reasoning that uses "if P then Q" and the statement P to conclude that Q must be true. (570)

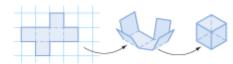
**Modus Tollens** The type of valid reasoning that uses "if P then Q" and the statement "not Q" to conclude that "not P" must be true. (570)

**monohedral tessellation** A tessellation that uses only one shape. See **regular tessellation**. (389)



**negation** (of a statement) A statement that is false if the original statement is true, and true if the original statement is false. The negation can usually be made by adding or removing the word *not* to the statement. (570)

#### net



This net folds into a cube.

A two-dimensional pattern that can be folded to form a three-dimensional figure. (78)

**network** A collection of points connected by paths. (108)

n-gon A polygon with n sides. (259)

**nonagon** A polygon with nine sides. (54)

**nonrigid transformation** A transformation that does not preserve the size of the original figure, such as a dilation by a scale factor other than zero or one. (368)

**nonvertex angle** (of a kite) An angle formed by two noncongruent sides. See **kite**. (268)

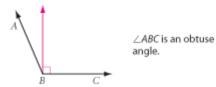
**nth term** The number that a function rule generates as output for a counting number n.(102)

numerical name See vertex arrangement.



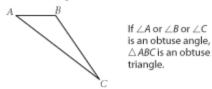
**oblique** (cone, cylinder, prism) A cone or cylinder in which the axis is not perpendicular to the base(s), or a prism in which the lateral edges are not perpendicular to the bases. See **cone**, **cylinder**, and **prism**. (522, 523)

# obtuse angle



You define this term in the Investigation Defining Angles. (49)

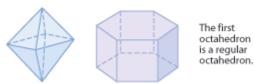
# obtuse triangle



You define this term in the Investigation Triangles. (60)

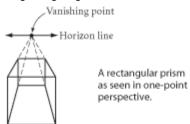
**octagon** A polygon with eight sides. (54)

#### octahedron



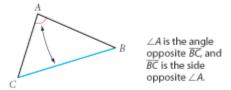
An polyhedron with eight faces. (544)

# one-point perspective



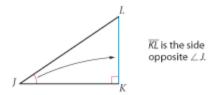
A perspective drawing that uses one vanishing point. (175)

# **opposite angle** or **side** (in a triangle)



The angle that does not contain a given side, or the side that is not a side of a given angle. (61)

opposite leg (of an acute angle in a right triangle)



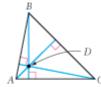
The side of the triangle that is not a side of the angle. (640)

**opposite sides** (of a quadrilateral) Two sides that do not share a vertex. (117)

**ordered pair rule** A rule that describes how to transform points on a coordinate plane. For example, the ordered pair rule  $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + h, y + k)$  describes a translation horizontally by h units and vertically by k units. (63)

**ordinate** The y-coordinate in an ordered pair (x, y), measuring vertical distance from the x-axis on a coordinate plane. (672)

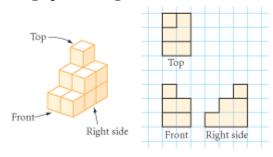
#### orthocenter



Point D is the orthocenter of  $\triangle ABC$ .

The point of concurrency of a triangle's three altitudes (or of the lines containing the altitudes). (179)

# orthographic drawing



A drawing of the top, front, and right side views of a solid. (555)

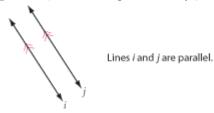
**outgoing angle** The angle formed between the path of a rebounding object and the surface it collided with, such as a billiard ball bouncing off a cushion or a ray of light reflecting off a mirror. See **incoming angle.** (41)



parabola See quadratic equation.

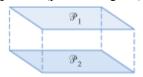
**paragraph proof** A logical explanation presented in the form of a paragraph. (201)

**parallel** (lines, line segments, or rays)



Lines are parallel if they lie in the same plane and do not intersect. Line segments or rays are parallel if they lie on parallel lines. (48)

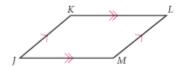
# parallel (planes or figures)



 $\mathcal{P}_1$  and  $\mathcal{P}_2$  are parallel planes.

Planes are parallel if they do not intersect. Figures are parallel if they lie in parallel planes. (80)

# parallelogram



*JKLM* is a parallelogram.

You define this term in the Investigation Special Ouadrilaterals. (65)

**parent function** The most basic form of a function. (676)

# pentagon





PLATE and HOMER are both pentagons. HOMER is a regular pentagon.

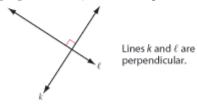
A polygon with five sides. (54)

**perimeter** The length of the boundary of a two-dimensional figure. For a polygon, the perimeter is the sum of the lengths of its sides. (55)

**period** (of a function) The horizontal distance after which the graph of the function starts repeating itself. (674)

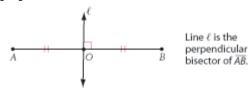
**periodic** Repeating at regular intervals. (674)

perpendicular (lines, line segments, or rays)



Lines are perpendicular if they meet at 90° angles. Line segments and rays are perpendicular if they lie on perpendicular lines. (48)

# perpendicular bisector



A line that divides a line segment into two congruent parts and is perpendicular to the line segment. (149)

**perspective** A technique of portraying solid objects and spatial relationships on a flat surface by drawing objects smaller as they recede into the distance. See one-point perspective and two-point perspective. (174)

 $\mathbf{pi}(\pi)$  The ratio of the circumference of a circle to its diameter. (335)

# plane



An undefined term thought of as a flat surface that extends infinitely along its edges. A plane has length and width but no thickness, so it is twodimensional. (28)

**Platonic solids** The five regular polyhedrons. See dodecahedron, hexahedron, icosahedron, octahedron, and tetrahedron. (544)

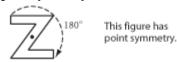
# point



An undefined term thought of as a location with no size or dimension. It is the most basic building block of geometry. In a two-dimensional coordinate system, a point's location is represented by an ordered pair of numbers (x, y). (28)

**point of concurrency** The point at which two or more lines, line segments, or rays intersect. See concurrent lines. (178)

# point symmetry



The property that a figure coincides with itself under a rotation of 180°. Also called two-fold rotational symmetry. (371)

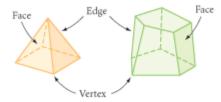
**point of tangency** The point of intersection of a tangent line and a circle. See **tangent line**. (70)

# polygon



A closed figure in a plane, formed by connecting line segments endpoint to endpoint with each segment intersecting exactly two others. (54)

### polyhedron

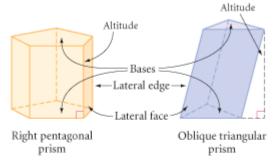


A solid formed by polygonal surfaces that enclose a single region of space. (521)

**postulates** A collection of simple and useful statements about geometry accepted without proof. (692)

**premises** (of a deductive system) A set of accepted facts, including undefined terms, definitions, properties of algebra and equality, and postulates, used to organize the properties of the system and to prove further conclusions. (569)

# prism



A polyhedron with two congruent, parallel bases connected by lateral faces that are parallelograms. (76, 522)

**probability** The likelihood of a particular outcome, expressed as the ratio of the number of successful outcomes to the number of possible outcomes. (88)

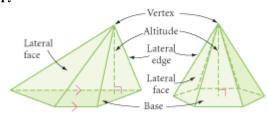
**proportion** A statement of equality between two ratios. (214, 578)

# protractor



A tool used to measure the size of an angle in degrees. (39)

# pyramid

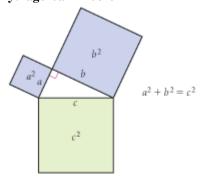


Trapezoidal pyramid

Hexagonal pyramid

A polyhedron consisting of a polygon base and triangular lateral faces that share a common vertex. (77, 522)

# Pythagorean Theorem

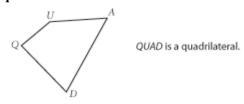


The relationship among the lengths of the sides of a right triangle that the sum of the squares of the lengths of the legs equals the square of the length of the hypotenuse. (478)

**Pythagorean triple** Three positive integers with the property that the sum of the squares of two of the integers equals the square of the third. (484)



# quadrilateral



A polygon with four sides. (54)

**quadratic equation** An equation of the form  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$  where a, b, and c are constants. The graph of the quadratic function  $y = ax^2 + bx + c$  is called a parabola. The point where a parabola intersects its line of symmetry is called its vertex. (440)



#### radius

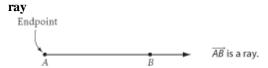




Segment r is a radius.

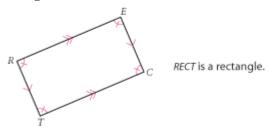
A line segment from the center of a circle or sphere to a point on the circle or sphere. Also, the length of that line segment. (69)

**ratio** An expression that compares two quantities by division. (88)



A point on a line, and all the points of the line that lie on one side of this point. (32)

# rectangle

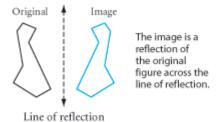


You define this term in the Investigation Special Quadrilaterals. (65)

**rectangular numbers** Numbers that can be represented by a rectangular array of dots or squares. (111)

**recursive rule** A rule that uses the previous term(s) of a sequence to find the current term. (137)

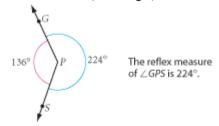
# reflection



An isometry in which every point and its image are on opposite sides and the same distance from a fixed line. (370)

**reflectional symmetry** The property that a figure coincides with itself under a reflection. Also called line symmetry or mirror symmetry. (3)

# reflex measure (of an angle)



The largest amount of rotation less than 360° about the vertex from one ray to the other, measured in degrees. (39)

**regular hexagon** A polygon with six congruent sides and angles that can be constructed using a single compass setting. See **hexagon.** (11)

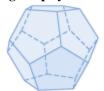
# regular polygon



This octagon is a regular polygon.

You define this term in the Investigation Special Polygons. (56)

# regular polyhedron



A polyhedron whose faces are enclosed by congruent regular polygons, which meet at all vertices in exactly the same way. (521)

#### regular tessellation



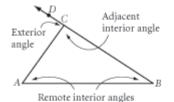




Equilateral triangles, squares, or regular hexagons form regular tessellations.

A tessellation of congruent regular polygons. (390)

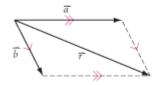
# remote interior angles (of a triangle)



∠A and ∠B are the remote interior angles of exterior angle ACD.

Interior angles of the triangle that do not share a vertex with a given exterior angle. (217)

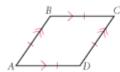
#### resultant vector



 $\hat{r}$  is the resultant vector of  $\hat{a}$  and  $\hat{b}$ .

The result of adding two vectors. Also called a vector sum. (283)

#### rhombus



ABCD is a rhombus.

You define this term in the Investigation Special Quadrilaterals. (65)

**right** (cone, cylinder, or prism) A cone or cylinder in which the axis is perpendicular to the base(s), or a prism in which the lateral edges are perpendicular to the bases. See **cone**, **cylinder**, and **prism**. (522, 523)

# right angle



 $\angle ABC$  is a right angle.

You define this term in the Investigation Defining Angles. (49)

#### right triangle

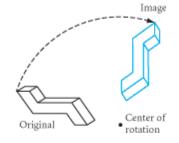


△ABC is a right triangle.

You define this term in the Investigation Triangles. (60)

# rigid transformation See isometry.

#### rotation



The image is a rotation of the original figure about the center of rotation.

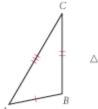
An isometry in which each point is moved by the same angle measure in the same direction along a circular path about a fixed point. (369)

**rotational symmetry** The property that a figure coincides with itself under some rotation. If the angle of rotation is  $\frac{360}{n}$  degrees for some positive integer n, the symmetry is called n-fold rotational symmetry. (3)



**scale factor** The ratio of corresponding lengths in similar figures. (585)

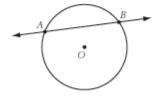
# scalene triangle



 $\triangle$  ABC is a scalene triangle.

You define this term in the Investigation Triangles. (61)

#### secant



 $\overline{AB}$  is a secant of circle O.

A line that intersects a circle in two points. (326)

806 GLOSSARY © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

**section** The intersection of a solid and a plane. (79)

#### sector of a circle



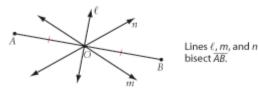
The shaded region bounded by  $\overline{OA}$ ,  $\overline{OB}$ , and  $\overline{AB}$  is a sector of circle O.

The region between two radii and an arc of the circle. (362)

segment See line segment.

**segment addition** A property that states if A, B, and C are collinear and B is between A and C. then AB + BC = AC. (46)

# segment bisector



A line, ray, or segment that passes through the midpoint of a line segment in a plane. (149)

# segment of a circle

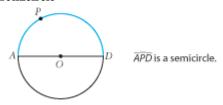


The shaded region between  $\overline{AB}$ and AB is a segment of circle O.

The region between a chord and an arc of the circle. (453)

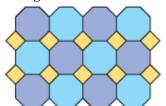
**self-similar** The property that a figure is similar to part of itself. (137)

#### semicircle



An arc of a circle whose endpoints are the endpoints of a diameter. (71)

# semiregular tessellation



This semiregular tessellation, formed by regular octagons and squares, has a vertex arrangement of 4.8.8.

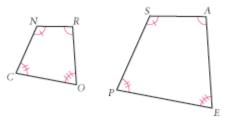
A tessellation of two or more different kinds of regular polygons that meet in the same order at each vertex. (390)

side (of a polygon) A line segment connecting consecutive vertices of the polygon. See **polygon.** (54)

**side** (of an angle) One of the two rays that form the angle. See angle. (38)

Sierpiński triangle A fractal based on recursively removing the interior of the triangle formed by connecting the midpoints of the sides of a triangle. See **fractal.** (137)

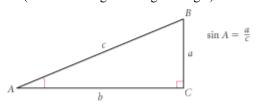
**similar** (figures, polygons, or solids)



CORN is similar to PEAS if and only if  $\frac{CO}{PE} = \frac{OR}{FA} = \frac{RN}{AS} = \frac{NC}{SP}$ .

Identical in shape but not necessarily in size. Two figures are similar if and only if all corresponding angles are congruent and lengths of all corresponding sides, edges, or other one-dimensional measures are proportional. (496, 583, 614)

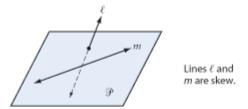
sine (of an acute angle in a right triangle)



The sine of  $\angle A$  is the ratio of BC to AB.

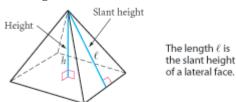
The ratio of the length of the leg opposite the angle to the length of the hypotenuse. (641)

#### skew lines



Lines that are not in the same plane and do not intersect. (48)

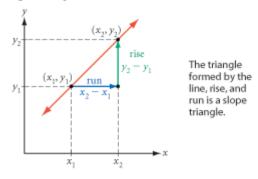
# slant height



The height of each triangular lateral face of a pyramid. (463)

**slope** In a two-dimensional coordinate system, the ratio of the vertical change to the horizontal change between two points on a line. (138)

# slope triangle



A right triangle used to find the slope of a line. The hypotenuse of a slope triangle is the segment between two points on the line and its legs are parallel to the coordinate axes. (135)

**solid** A three-dimensional geometric figure that completely encloses a region of space. See **cone**, **cylinder**, **hemisphere**, **polyhedron**, **prism**, **pyramid**, and **sphere**. (75)

#### solid of revolution

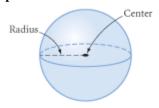


The solid is formed by a revolution of the triangle.

A solid formed by rotating a two-dimensional figure about a line. (86)

**space** An undefined term thought of as the set of all points. Space extends infinitely in all directions, so it is three-dimensional. (75)

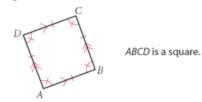
#### sphere



The set of all points in space at a given distance from a given point. (77, 524)

**spherical geometry** A model of elliptic geometry which applies to lines and angles on a sphere. (743)

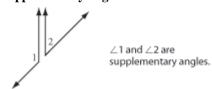
#### square



You define this term in the Investigation Special Quadrilaterals. (65)

**straightedge** A tool used to construct lines, rays, and line segments. (4)

# supplementary angles



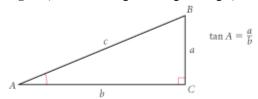
You define this term in the Investigation Defining Angles. (50)

**surface area** The sum of the areas of all the surfaces of a solid. (461)

**symmetry** The property that a figure coincides with itself under an isometry. (3)



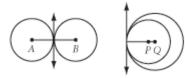
tangent (of an acute angle in a right triangle)



The tangent of  $\angle A$  is the ratio of BC to AC.

The ratio of the length of the leg opposite the angle to the length of the leg adjacent to the angle. (70)

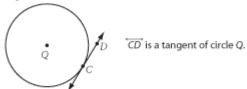
# tangent circles



Circles A and B are externally tangent. Circles P and Q are internally tangent.

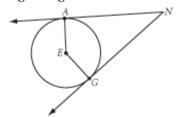
Circles that are tangent to the same line at the same point. They can be internally tangent or externally tangent. (313)

# tangent line



You define this term in the Investigation Defining Circle Terms. (311)

# tangent segment

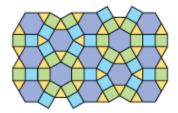


AN and GN are tangent segments from point N to circle E.

A line segment that lies on a tangent line with one endpoint at the point of tangency. (511)

tangential velocity The speed of an object at a point as it moves around the circumference of a circle. (353)

#### tessellation



A repeating pattern of shapes that completely cover a plane without overlaps or gaps. (20, 389)

# tetrahedron



This is a regular tetrahedron.

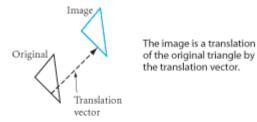
A polyhedron with four faces. (521)

**theorem** A conjecture that has been proved within a deductive system. (496)

tiling See tessellation.

**transformation** A rule that assigns to each point of a figure another point in the plane, called its image. See dilation, reflection, rotation, and translation. (368)

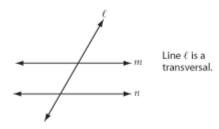
#### translation



An isometry in which each point is moved by the same translation vector. (368)

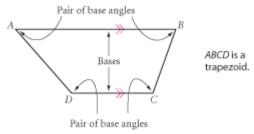
**translation vector** A directed line segment from a point to its translated image. See **translation.** (368)

#### transversal



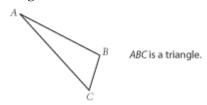
A line that intersects two or more other coplanar lines. (128)

# trapezoid



You define this term in the Investigation Special Quadrilaterals. (64)

#### triangle



A polygon with three sides. (54)

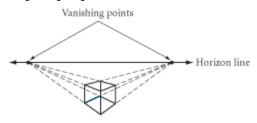
**triangular numbers** Numbers that can be represented by a triangular array of dots or squares. (111)

**trigonometry** The study of the relationships between the measures of sides and angles of triangles. See **cosine**, sine, and **tangent**. (640)

truncated (cone or pyramid) See frustum.

**two-column proof** A form of proof in which each statement in the argument is written in the left column, and the reason for each statement is written directly across from it in the right column. (679)

# two-point perspective



A rectangular prism as seen in two-point perspective.

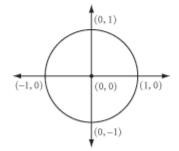
A perspective drawing that uses two vanishing points. (176)



**undecagon** A polygon with 11 sides. (54)

undefined term In a deductive system, terms whose general meaning is assumed and whose characteristics are understood only from the postulates or axioms that use them. See line, plane, point, and space. (693)

#### unit circle



A circle on the coordinate plane with center (0, 0) and radius 1 unit. (689)



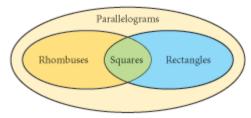
**valid reasoning** An argument that reaches its conclusion through accepted forms of reasoning. (569)

vanishing point A point at the horizon line toward which parallel lines converge in a perspective drawing. See one-point perspective and **two-point perspective.** (174)

vector A quantity that has both magnitude and direction. A vector is represented by an arrow whose length and direction represent the magnitude and direction of the vector. (282)

vector sum See resultant vector.

# Venn diagram



A Venn diagram showing the relationships among some quadrilaterals.

A concept map of overlapping circles or ovals that shows the relationships among members of different sets. (83)

**vertex** A point of intersection of two or more rays or line segments in a geometric figure. The plural of vertex is vertices. See angle, polygon, and **polyhedron.** (38, 54, 521)

vertex angle (of an isosceles triangle) The angle between the two congruent sides. See isosceles triangle. (206)

vertex angles (of a kite) The angles between the pairs of congruent sides. See kite. (268)

**vertex arrangement** A notation that uses positive integers and other symbols to describe the arrangement of regular polygons about vertices of a semiregular tessellation. Also called the numerical name. (390)

# vertical angles



 $\angle 1$  and  $\angle 2$  are vertical angles.

You define this term in the Investigation Defining Angles. (50)

**volume** A measure of the amount of space contained in a solid, expressed in cubic units. (520)



work The measure of force applied over distance, calculated as the product of the force and the distance. (500)



**y-intercept** The y-coordinate of the point at which a line or a curve crosses the y-axis. (287)



**zero-product property** The property of equality that if the product of two or more factors is zero, at least one of the factors is zero. (440)

# **Table of Symbols**

ĀB	line AB	△ABC	triangle ABC
$\overline{AB}$	ray <i>AB</i>	ABCD	polygon with consecutive vertices A, B, C, D,
$\overline{AB}$	line segment AB		
$AB$ or $m\overline{AB}$	length of line segment AB	$\odot A$	circle with center at point A
$\angle A$	angle A	$rac{\pi}{\widehat{AB}}$	pi, approximately equal to 3.14
$\angle ABC$	angle with vertex at point B		arc AB
$m \angle A$	measure of angle A	mĀB mĀBĒ	measure of arc AB
0	degree(s)		measure of major arc ABC
=	is equal to	(a, b)	ordered pair with x-coordinate a and
≈	is approximately equal to		y-coordinate b
<b>≠</b>	is not equal to	$\langle a, b \rangle$	vector with horizontal component a and vertical
<u>?</u>	is this equal to?		component b
>	is greater than	$\overline{A}$	vector A
<	is less than	A'	image of point A resulting from a transformation
≅	is congruent to	$\frac{a}{b}$ or $a:b$	ratio of a to b
~	is similar to	$P \rightarrow Q$	if P then Q
	is parallel to	~ P	not P
$\perp$	is perpendicular to		therefore
**************************************	j is parallel to $k$	sin	sine
-71 K		cos	cosine
1) k	j is perpendicular to $k$	tan	tangent
•		sin−1	inverse sine
B C	$\overline{AB}$ is congruent to $\overline{CD}$	cos -1	inverse cosine
AI VD		tan -1	inverse tangent
A	$\angle A$ is congruent to $\angle B$	$\sqrt{a}$	nonnegative square root of a
B	= 11 15 congruent to = D	a	absolute value of a

# Index

AA Similarity Conjecture, 589
AA Similarity Postulate, 720
AAA (Angle-Angle-Angle), 221,
228–229, 589, 591
absolute value, 677
absolute-value functions, 676
Achuleta-Sagel, Teresa, 267
Acoma, 66
Activities
Boxes in Space, 175–176
Calculating Area in Ancient
Egypt, 469–470
Chances Are, 88–89
Climbing the Wall, 507
Convenient Sizes, 620–622
Conway Hexagons, 408-409
Dilation Creations, 595–597
Dinosaur Footprints and Other
Shapes, 447–448
Exploring Properties of Special
Constructions, 720–721
Exploring Secants and Chords,
355–357
Exploring Star Polygons, 266–267
Exploring Tangents, 357–358
Isometric and Orthographic
Drawings, 557
It's Elementary!, 570–571
Modeling the Platonic Solids,
544–546
Napoleon Triangles, 249–250
Prove It!, 681–682
The Right Triangle Fractal, 497
Spherical Geometry, 743–744
The Sierpin'ski Triangle, 138–139

Symbolic Proofs, 633 Three Out of Four, 191-192 Toothpick Polyhedrons, 528–529 Traveling Networks, 120–121 The Unit Circle, 671-674 Using a Clinometer, 652–653 Where the Chips Fall, 458–460 acute angle, 49 acute triangle, 60, 656, 661, 60 addition of angles, 73, 696 of segments, 46, 696 properties of, 694 addition property of equality, 212, 694 adjacent interior angles, 217 adjacent leg, 640 AEA Conjecture, 129 AEA Theorem, 708 Africa, 18, 51, 126, 374

agriculture. See Applications AIA Conjecture, 129, 131 AIA Theorem, 704–705 AIDS Memorial Quilt, 535 aircraft. See Applications Alexander the Great, 18 algebra properties of, in proofs, 670-671, 736 See also Improving Your Algebra Skills; Using Your Algebra Skills Alhambra, 20, 399 Alice's Adventures in Wonderland (Carroll), 632 alkanes, 106, 248 alkenes, 126 alkynes, 189 Almagest (Ptolemy), 640 alternate exterior angles (AEA), 128 - 130Alternate Exterior Angles Conjecture (AEA Conjecture), 129 Alternate Exterior Angles Theorem (AEA Theorem), 708 alternate interior angles, 128–129, 131, 704–705 Alternate Interior Angles Conjecture (AIA Conjecture), 129, 131 Alternate Interior Angles Theorem (AIA Theorem), 704-705 altitude of a cone, 523 of a cylinder, 523 of a parallelogram, 424 of a prism, 522 of a pyramid, 522 of a triangle, 156, 179, 243-244, 413,603 See also orthocenter Altitude Concurrency Conjecture, 179 Altitude to the Hypotenuse Theorem, 733 Altitudes to the Congruent Side Theorem, 713 Amador, Andres, 182 Amish quilts, 297 analytic geometry. See coordinate geometry Andrade, Edna, 24 angle(s) acute, 49 addition, 73, 696 and arcs, 318, 324-325 base. See base angles

bisectors of, 40-41, 115, 159-160, 178-181, 239, 604 central. See central angle complementary, 50 congruent, 40 consecutive. See consecutive angles corresponding, 128, 129, 130, 697 definitions of, 38 of depression, 647 duplicating, 146 of elevation, 647 exterior. See exterior angles included, 222 incoming, 41 inscribed, 317, 324-325, 330-332, 508 interior. See interior angles linear, 50, 51, 122-124 measure of, 39-40 naming of, 38-39 obtuse, 49, 115 outgoing, 41 picture angle, 328 proving conjectures about, 704-705, 710-712 of recovery, 40 right, 49 of rotation, 369 sides of, 38 supplementary, 50 symbols for, 38 tessellations and total measure of, 389-390 transversals forming, 128 vertical, 50, 123-124, 131, 703-704 Angle Addition Postulate, 696, 707-708 Angle-Angle (AAA), 221, 228-229, 589, 591 angle bisector(s) of an angle, 40-41, 115, 159-160, 178-181, 239, 604 incenter, 179, 180, 181, 191 of a triangle, 178–181, 603, 604 of a vertex angle, s244-245 Angle Bisector Concurrency Conjecture, 178 Angle Bisector Concurrency Theorem, 712 Angle Bisector Conjecture, 159 Angle Bisector/Opposite Side Conjecture, 604 Angle Bisector Postulate, 696 Angle Bisector Theorem, 710-711

© 2008 Key Curriculum Press INDEX 813

bearing, 316, 667

Angle Bisectors to the Congruent	61, 67, 72, 84, 86, 90, 112, 125,	451, 459, 481, 517, 520, 580,
Sides Theorem, 713	158, 161, 165, 172, 177, 181,	667, 668, 685
Angle Duplication Postulate, 696	182, 188, 189, 273, 302, 343,	surveying land, 36, 96, 200,
Angle-Side-Angle (ASA), 221, 227,	361, 362, 365, 372, 381, 396,	469, 485
591, 697	399–401, 426, 433, 436, 444,	technology, 237, 265, 274, 285,
Angles Inscribed in a Semicircle	474, 481, 517, 534, 541, 549,	312, 328, 343, 435, 514, 649,
Conjecture, 325	554, 561, 574, 580, 590, 613,	650, 668
Angles Inscribed in a Semicircle	635, 668, 684	telecommunications, 451, 514
Theorem, 728	distance calculations, 85, 93, 118,	velocity and speed calculations,
Angola, 18, 126	125, 152, 225, 235, 242, 278,	136, 282–283, 341, 352–353,
angular velocity, 352	279, 352, 361, 401, 407, 480,	361, 499, 668, 669, 685
animal care. See Applications	498, 506, 513, 514, 515, 594,	approximately equal to,symbol for,40
annulus, 453	598–600, 601, 634, 641, 647	arc(s)
Another World (Other World)	648, 659, 664, 668, 669, 688,	addition of, 727
(Escher), 691	703, 713	and angles, 318, 324–325
antecedent, 679–680	earth science, 541, 669	and chords, 318
antiprism(s), 526	engineering, 84, 96, 136, 224, 235,	defined, 71
Apache, 3	285, 549, 590, 627	endpoints of, 71
aperture, 265	environment, 535, 542, 593	inscribed angles intercepting, 325
apothem, 442	flags, 4, 26	intercepted, 313, 325, 326
Applications	forestry, 653	length of, and circumference,
agriculture, 72, 125, 451, 468, 469,	genetics, 18	349–351
564, 669	geography, 341, 352, 361, 407,	major, 71, 313
aircraft, 107, 282–283, 323, 341,	458, 564, 565, 618	measure of, 71, 313, 324–326,
344, 402, 435, 664, 668,	geology, 520	349–351
669, 684	government, 699	minor, 71, 313
animal care, 426, 433, 451, 552,	landscape architecture, 436,	nautical mile and, 361
553, 593, 612, 709, 718	535, 542	parallel lines intercepting, 326
archaeology, 260, 278, 305, 321,	law and law enforcement, 78,	semicircles, 71, 325, 508
360, 364, 510, 658, 664,	114, 426	symbol, 71
688, 735	manufacturing, 222, 474, 475, 510, 565, 568, 617	Arc Addition Postulate, 727 Arc Length Conjecture, 350
architecture, 6, 7, 9, 12, 15, 20, 22, 23, 38, 64, 75, 78, 136, 176, 206		archaeology. See Applications
215, 251, 273, 280, 324, 352,	584, 692	arches, 273, 280, 324, 510
353, 373, 389, 426, 461, 464,	medicine and health, 40, 107	Archimedean screw, 668
465, 510, 521, 522, 536, 555,	meteorology and climatology,	Archimedean tilings, 391
561, 564, 580, 582, 630, 651,	116, 338, 499, 649	Archimedes, 391, 552, 636, 668
659, 733	moviemaking, 581, 614, 622	architecture. See Applications
astronomy, 315, 349, 363, 638, 640		Archuleta-Sagel, Teresa, 267
biology, 270, 317, 373, 389, 451,	navigation, 133, 219, 235, 316,	area
506, 560, 562, 618,	323, 648–649, 650, 665,	ancient Egyptian formula for, 469
620–622, 637	668, 684	ancient Greek formula for,
botany, 338, 342	oceanography, 593, 673	437, 470
business, 435, 475, 611, 629	optics, 45, 52, 133, 274, 317, 375,	of an annulus, 453
chemistry, 9, 97, 106, 126, 189,	600, 635	of a circle, 449–450, 453–454,
248, 520, 552, 561	photography, 265, 328, 600	508-509
computers, 50, 237, 627	physics, 69, 187, 274, 312, 500,	defined, 422
construction and maintenance,	520, 551–553, 553, 574,	Hero's formula for, 437, 470
200, 247, 254, 261, 280, 295,	622, 659	of irregularly shaped figures, 423,
305, 323, 339, 422, 426, 431,	public transit, 89	434, 446–448
432, 434, 435, 436, 456, 467,	resources, consumption of, 435,	of a kite, 430
475, 486, 511, 535, 542, 549,	560, 580, 617, 651, 669	maximizing, 433
564, 574, 587, 608, 611, 635,	seismology, 231	as model for product of two
665, 684, 709	sewing and weaving, 3, 7, 9, 10,	numbers, 438–439
consumer awareness, 342, 348,	14, 49, 51, 60, 67, 267, 293, 303,	modeled by functions, 675
436, 456, 467, 474, 475, 548,	371, 373, 374, 427	of a parallelogram, 424–425
549, 560, 573, 580, 587, 617,	shipping, 482, 498, 513, 664	Pick's formula for, 446–448
635, 646	sound, 45, 248, 361	of a polygon, 23, 442–443
cooking, 455, 474, 514, 574, 629	sports, 40, 71, 84, 113, 187, 188,	probability and, 458–460
design, 3–4, 7, 10, 12, 18, 20–22,	219, 314, 316, 338, 348, 373,	proportion and, 608–610, 616
24–25, 35, 46, 49, 51, 55, 60,	377–378, 379–380, 381, 412,	of a rectangle, 422–423, 438–440

814 INDEX © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

of a regular polygon, 442–443 Austria, 66 of a sector of a circle, 453-454 auxiliary line, 201, 330, 331, 705 of a segment of a circle, 453-454 Axis Dance Company, 684 CA Conjecture (Corresponding surface. See surface area axis of a cylinder, 523 Angles Conjecture), 129, 131 Aztecs, 25 of a trapezoid, 429–430 CA Postulate (Corresponding of a triangle, 423, 429, 470, Angles Postulate), 697, 707–708 654-655 calendars, 25 units of measure of, 25 Canada, 463 arithmetic mean, 580 Babylonia, 96, 479, 485 carbon molecules, 520 arithmetic sequences, 580 Balance (Amador), 182 Carroll, Lewis, 632 Around the World in Eighty Days Cartesian coodinate geometry. (Verne), 341 of a cone, 523 See coordinate geometry art of a cylinder, 523 ceiling of cloud formation, 649 circle designs, 10-11 of an isosceles triangle, 61, 206 Celsius conversion, 287 Cubist, 262 of a prism, 461, 522 Celtic knot designs, 2, 16 Dada Movement, 262 of a pyramid, 461, 522 center geometric patterns in, 3-4 of a rectangle, 423 of a circle, 69, 319, 330-331 Islamic tile designs, 20–22 of solids, 461 of gravity, 46, 186-187 knot designs, 2, 16, 16-17, 406 of a trapezoid, 269 of rotation, 369 line designs, 7–8 base angles of a sphere, 524 mandalas, 25, 593 of an isosceles trapezoid, 271 Center of Gravity Conjecture, 187 murals, 588 of an isosceles triangle, 61, 206, central angle op art, 13–14, 15 207-208 of a circle, 71, 313, 317-318 perspective, 174 of a trapezoid, 269 intercepting arc, 313 proportion and, 584, 608, 614, bearing, 316, 667 of a regular polygon, 286 617, 621, 622, 635, 636 "Behold" proof, 482 centroid, 185-187, 191 similarity and, 587, 636 Belvedere (Escher), 639 finding, 414 spiral designs, 35 Benson, Mabry, 303 Centroid Conjecture, 186 symbolic, 19 best-fit line, 107 Chagall, Marc, 55 symmetry in, 5, 372, 374 Bhaskara, 482 chemistry. See Applications See also drawing biconditional statements, 243 Chichén Itzá, 66, 659 ASA (Angle-Side-Angle), 221, 227, bilateral symmetry, 3 China, 10, 29, 36, 324, 337, 479, 495, 591,697 billiards geometry of, 41-42, 45, 500, 518, 536, 648 ASA Congruence Conjecture, 227 377-378 Chokwe, 18 ASA Congruence Postulate, 697 binoculars, 274 Cholula pyramid, 543 Asian art/architecture. See China; biology. See Applications chord(s) India; Japan bisector arcs and, 318 Assessing What You've Learned of an angle, 40–41, 115, 159–160, center of circle and, 319 Giving a Presentation, 308, 366, 178-181, 239, 604 central angles and, 317-318 420, 476, 518, 576, 638, of a kite, 269 defined, 70 690, 747 perpendicular. See perpendicular intersections and, 355-357, 358 Keeping a Portfolio, 26, 94, 142, bisectors perpendicular bisectors of, 198, 256, 308, 366, 420, 476, of a segment, 31, 149-151 319-320 518, 576, 638, 690, 747 of a triangle, 178–181, 603, 604 properties of, 317–320 Organize Your Notebook, 94, 142, of a vertex angle, 24–25 tangent intersections, 358 198, 256, 308, 366, 420, 476, body temperature, 620-621 Chord Arcs Conjecture, 318 518, 576, 638, 690, 747 Bolyai, János, 742 Chord Central Angles Performance Assessment, 198, bone and muscle strength, 621-622 Conjecture, 318 256, 308, 366, 420, 476, Bookplate for Albert Ernst Bosman Chord Distance to Center 576, 747 (Escher), 81 Conjecture, 319 Write in Your Journal, 142, 198, Borromean Rings, 18 Christian art and architecture, 12, 256, 308, 366, 420, 476, 518, Borromini, Francesco, 176 25, 161, 251, 353, 417, 543 576, 638, 690, 747 botany. See Applications circle(s) Write Test Items, 256, 366, 476, Botswana, 374 annulus of concentric, 453 518, 576 Breezing Up (Homer), 649 arcs of. See arc(s) associative property Brewster, David, 402 area of, 449-450, 453-454, of addition, 694 Brickwork, Alhambra (Escher), 399 508-509 of multiplication, 694 buckyballs, 520 center of, 69, 319, 330-331 assumptions, diagrams and, 59-60 buoyancy, 553 central angles of, 71, 313, astrid, 8 business. See Applications 317-318 astronomy. See Applications

chords of. See chord(s)	concave kite. See dart	Connections
circumference of, 335–337,	concave polygons, 54	architecture, 9, 23, 66, 206,
349–351	concentric circles, 71	251, 273
circumscribed, 181	conclusion, 114, 115	art, 172, 182, 353, 372, 427, 581
concentric, 71	concurrency, point of. See point(s) of	astronomy, 315, 640
congruent, 71	concurrency	career, 34, 40, 55, 222, 237, 293,
defined, 69	concurrent lines, 112, 178	434, 436, 444, 499, 555, 590
designs, 10–11	conditional proof, 679-680	consumer, 4
diameter of. See diameter	conditional statement(s), 569	cultural, 25, 132, 349, 374, 396,
equations of, 504	biconditional, 243	426, 564
externally tangent, 313	contrapositive of, 631–632	geography, 361, 584
inscribed, 181	converse of, 124, 631	history, 36, 335, 370, 468, 479, 482,
inscribed angles of, 317, 324–325,	forming, 703	485, 552, 565, 658, 659, 692
330–332, 508	inverse of, 631	language, 96, 168, 299
internally tangent, 313	proving. See logic; proof(s)	literature, 341, 632
intersecting lines through,	symbol for, 551	mathematics, 144, 337, 391, 395,
355–358	cone(s)	456, 697
naming of, 69	altitude of, 523	recreation, 65, 219, 343, 500
in nature and art, 2	base of, 523	science, 18, 69, 116, 126, 187, 270,
proofs involving, 723–724, 727	defined, 523	274, 338, 500, 520, 536, 553, 649
proving properties of, 330–332	drawing, 76	technology, 265, 312, 435, 514,
and Pythagorean Theorem, 504, 508–509	frustum of, 467, 619 height of, 523	650, 668
radius of, 69	radius of, 523	consecutive angles, 54, 281 of a parallelogram, 282
secants of, 326, 355–356, 357–358	right, 523, 615	of a trapezoid, 270
sectors of, 362, 453–454	similar, 615	consecutive sides, 54
segments of, 453–454	surface area of, 464–465	consecutive vertices, 54
squaring a, 456	vertex of, 523	consequent, 679–680
tangent, 313	volume of, 538–540	constant difference, 102-104
tangents to. See tangent(s)	congruence	Constantine the Great, 584
trigonometry using, 671–674	of angles, 40	Constantinople, 584
Circle Area Conjecture, 450	ASA, 221, 227, 591, 697	construction, 144–146
circumcenter	of circles, 71	of altitudes, 156
defined, 179	CPCTC (corresponding parts	of angle bisectors, 159–160
finding, 346–347	of congruent triangles are	of angles, 146
properties of, 179, 191	congruent), 232–233 defined, 695	of auxiliary lines, proofs and, 201
Circumcenter Conjecture, 179, 180–181	diagramming of, 59	with compass and straightedge, 144, 145–146
circumference, 335–337, 349–351	Hypotenuse-Leg Conjecture, 518	defined, 144–145
Circumference Conjecture, 336	of polygons, 55	of a dilation design, 595–597
circumference/diameter ratio,	as premise of geometric	of an equilateral triangle, 145
335–337	proofs, 695	Euclid and, 144
circumscribed circle, 181	properties of, 695	of Islamic design, 158
circumscribed triangle, 72, 181	SAA, 221, 228, 591, 710	of an isosceles triangle, 207
Claudel, Camille, 617	SAS, 221, 223, 591, 662–663, 697,	of a line segment, 145
clinometer, 652–653	730–731	of medians, 151
clocks, 38, 315, 349	of segments, 31	of midpoints, 150–151
clockwise rotations, 369	SSA, 221, 223, 591, 656	of midsegments, 151
Clothespin (Oldenburg), 635	SSS, 221, 222, 590, 662, 663, 697	of parallel lines, 163–164
coinciding patty papers, 149	symbols for, and use of, 31,	with patty paper,144,145,146,149
collinear points, 29 combining like terms, 212	40, 59 of triangle(s), 170–171, 221–223,	of a perpendicular bisector, 149–151
commutative property	227–229, 232–233, 518	of perpendiculars, 154–156
of addition, 694	Congruent and Supplementary	of Platonic solids, 545–546
of multiplication, 694	Theorem, 708	of points of concurrency,
compass, 7, 144, 145	conjectures	178–181, 185–186
sector, 628	data quality and quantity and, 98	of a regular hexagon, 11
complementary angles, 50	defined, 96	of a regular pentagon, 546
composition of isometries, 383-386	proving. See proof(s)	of a rhombus, 291–292
computer programming, 237	See also specific conjectures listed	of a triangle, 145, 170–171,
computers. See Applications	by name	202, 207

816 INDEX © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

construction and maintenance. <i>See</i> Applications Construction, 24, 147, 151, 152, 156–157, 160–161, 164, 171–172,	orthocenter, finding, 413 points of concurrency on,346–347 proofs with, 736–739 reflection in, 377	oblique, 523, 532–533 radius of, 523 right, 523, 531–532, 614 similar, 614
182, 183, 188, 194–195, 204, 210, 225, 230, 231, 234, 247, 254, 273, 278, 280, 283, 284, 295, 296, 297,	slope and, 167–168 systems of equations in, 413–414 three-dimensional system, 505	surface area of, 462–463 volume of, 531–533 Czech Republic, 315
306, 314, 315, 316, 321, 329, 353, 360, 361, 365, 366, 373, 382, 396, 412, 443, 456, 467, 495, 511, 515, 518, 550, 588, 601, 619, 628, 635,	translation in, 369, 376, 383 trigonometry and, 671–674 Coordinate Midpoint Property, 36, 736	Dada Movement, 262
660, 665, 729	Coordinate Transformations	daisy designs, 11
consumer awareness. See Applications contrapositive, 631–632	Conjecture, 377 coplanar points, 29	Dali, Salvador, 621
Contrapositive, Law of, 632	corollary, 708	dart defined, 298
converse of a statement, 124, 243, 631 Converse of Parallel/Proportionality	Corresponding Altitudes Theorem, 733	nonperiodic tessellations with, 398
Conjecture, 733	Corresponding Angle Bisectors	properties of, 298–299
Converse of Parallel/Proportionality Theorem, 733	Theorem, 733 corresponding angles, 128, 129,	data quantity and quality,
Converse of the AEA Theorem, 708	130, 697	conjecture and, 98
Converse of the AIA Theorem, 708	Corresponding Angles Conjecture	Day and Night (Escher), 419 decagon, 54
Converse of the Angle Bisector	(CA Conjecture), 129, 131	Declaration of Independence, 699
Theorem, 712	Corresponding Angles Postulate	deductive reasoning, 114–116
Converse of the Equilateral Triangle Conjecture (Equiangular	(CA Postulate), 697, 707–708 Corresponding Medians	defined, 114
Triangle Conjecture), 245	Theorem, 733	geometric. See proof(s)
Converse of the Interior	corresponding parts of congruent	inductive reasoning compared with, 115
Supplements Theorem, 708	triangles are congruent	logic as. See logic
Converse of the Isosceles Triangle	(CPCTC), 232–233	deductive system, 692
Conjecture, 208 Converse of the Isosceles Triangle	corresponding sides of similar triangles are proportional	definitions, 29
Theorem, 712	(CSSTP), 623, 731	undefined terms, building
Converse of the Opposite Angles	Cortona, Pietro da, 692	blocks of geometry as, 29 using a labeled diagram, 51
Theorem, 717	cosine ratio (cos), 641–642	writing, tips on, 47–51
Converse of the Opposite Sides	Cosines, Law of, 661–663, 667	degrees, 39
Theorem, 717 Converse of the Parallel Lines	counterclockwise rotation, 369 counterexamples, 47–48	dendroclimatology, 338
Conjecture, 130	CPCTC, 232–233	density, 531–532
Converse of the Perpendicular	Crawford, Ralston, 156	design. <i>See</i> Applications determining
Bisector Conjecture, 151	Crazy Horse Memorial, 587	a line, 696
Converse of the Perpendicular Bisector Theorem, 712	CSSTP, 623, 731	a plane, 86
Converse of the Pythagorean	cube(s) net for, 78	a triangle, 170
Theorem, 484–486	table relating measurements	Developing Proof
Converse of the Rectangle Diagonals	of, 675	activities, 116, 123, 131, 181, 201, 218, 239, 244, 259, 271, 331,
Theorem, 717 Converse of the Rhombus Angles	cubic functions, 676 cubic units, 530, 535	486, 492, 509, 518
Theorem, 717	Cubist style, 262	exercises,117,118,125,132,133,
convex polygons, 54	Curl-Up (Escher), 309	141,142,165,166,197,198,204,
Conway criterion, 408–409	cyclic quadrilateral, 326	205,209,219,225,226,230,233, 234,239,240,241,246,247,252,
Conway, John Horton, 408	Cyclic Quadrilateral Conjecture, 326	253,254,255,256,260,261,264,
cooking. See Applications	Cyclic Quadrilateral Theorem, 728	265,274,278,279,284,286,294,
coordinate geometry as analytic geometry, 168	cycloparaffins, 248 cylinder(s)	295,296,300–302,305,307,
centroid, finding, 414	altitude of, 523	308,316,321,322,323,328,329,
circumcenter, finding, 346–347	axis of, 523	332,333,334,339,344,353,364, 365,366,375,402,428,433,437
dilation in, 585, 637	bases of, 523	365,366,375,402,428,433,437, 452,468,475,476,482,487,488,
distance in, 502–504	defined, 523	494,495,501,506,510,517,518,
linear equations and, 287–288 ordered pair rules, 376	drawing, 76	549,554,566,607,611,613,618,
ordered pair rules, 3/0	height of, 523	637,638,670,690,709,746,747

Proving Parallelogram	double negation, 570	for functions, solving, 677–678
Conjectures, 716–717	Double Splash Evidence (Greve), 310	linear. See linear equations
Proving the SSS Similarity	doubling the angle on the bow, 219	properties for solving, 212–213
Conjecture, 732	drawing	solution to, 212
Proving the Tangent Conjecture,	circle designs, 10–11	variable of, solving for any, 567
723–724	congruence markings in, 145	equator, 361, 524
de Villiers, Michael, 720	daisy designs, 11	equiangular polygon, 56
diagonal(s)	defined, 144	Equiangular Polygon
of a kite, 269	equilateral triangle, 144	Conjecture, 263
of a parallelogram, 282	geometric solids, 75–77	equiangular triangle. See equilateral
of a polygon, 54	isometric, 75–77, 555–557	triangle(s)
of a rectangle, 293	knot designs, 16, 406	Equiangular Triangle
of a regular pentagon, 214	line designs, 708	Conjecture, 245
of a rhombus, 292	mandalas, 25, 593	equidistant, defined, 150
of a square, 294	op art, 13–14, 15	Equilateral/Equiangular Triangle
of a trapezoid, 271, 723	orthographic, 555–557	Conjecture, 244–245
diagrams	perspective, 174–177	equilateral polygon, 56
assumptions possible and not	polygons, regular, 286	equilateral triangle(s)
possible with, 59–60	to scale, 585	angle measures of, 244
geometric proofs with, 703	tessellations, 399–401,	constructing, 145
labeled, definitions and, 51	403–406	defined, 61
problem solving with, 81–83, 498	Drawing Hands (Escher), 143	drawing, 144
rectangle, area as model for	dual of a tessellation, 392	as equiangular, 244–245
products and, 438–439	Dudeney, Henry E., 506	as isosceles triangle, 207, 244
vector diagrams, 282–283	Dukes, Pam, 314	Napoleon's theorem and,
Venn diagrams, 83	duplication of geometric figures,	249–250
diameter	144–146	properties of, 207–208
defined, 70	defined, 145	tessellations with, 389–391,
ratio to circumference, 335–337 solving formula for, 567	<b>Dynamic Geometry Explorations,</b> 11, 35, 39, 49, 83, 131, 138, 183,	404–405 and 30°-60°-90° triangles, 492
dice, probability and, 88	185, 191, 210, 210216, 235, 243,	Equilateral Triangle Conjecture,
dilation(s), 585, 637	263, 268, 277, 282, 283, 294, 339,	244–245
constructing design with,	343, 425, 430, 480, 604, 661	Eratosthenes, 352
595–597	313, 123, 130, 100, 001, 001	Escher, M. C., 1, 27, 81, 95, 143, 199,
Dilation Similarity Conjecture, 585		257, 309, 367, 399, 419, 421, 477,
direct proof, 679	E	519, 577, 639, 691
direction of a translation, 368	_	dilation and rotation designs of,
disabilities, persons with, 499,	earth science. See Applications	595, 597
668, 684	edge, 521	knot designs of, 17
displacement, 551–552	Edison, Thomas, 343	and Napoleon's Theorem, 250
dissection, 478	Egypt, 2, 36, 96, 144, 247, 337, 396,	and tessellations, 399, 403–405,
distance	469, 479, 485, 522, 535, 600, 668	410–411, 419
in coordinate geometry, 502–504	8-pointed star, 8	Euclid, 144, 299, 479, 692, 695,
defined, from point to line, 156	El Niño, 116	697, 742
formula, 502–504, 736	Elements (Euclid), 144, 299, 692, 695	Euclidean geometry, 144, 692–698,
of a translation, 368	elimination method of solving	742–743
distance calculations. See	equation systems, 345–346,	Euler, Leonhard, 120, 191, 528
Applications	413–414	Euler line, 191–192
distributive property, 212, 213, 694	elliptic geometry, 743–744	Euler Line Conjecture, 191
division property of equality, 212,	Emerging Order (Hoch), 262	Euler segment, 192
213, 694	endpoints	Euler Segment Conjecture, 192
DO YOU THINK A IS B?	of an arc, 71	Euler's Formula for Networks,
(Williams), 87	of a line segment, 30	120–121
dodecagon, 54, 390	engineering. See Applications	Euler's Formula for Polyhedrons,
dodecahedron, 521	England, 38, 727	528-529
Dodgson, Charles Lutwidge, 632	environment. See Applications	"Eureka!," 552
Dome of the Rock, 20	equal symbol, use of, 31, 40	European art and architecture, 15,
Double-Edged Straightedge	equality, properties of, 212, 213, 694–695	17, 18, 25, 38, 161, 174, 176, 193,
Conjecture, 291	equations	280, 315, 353, 406, 417, 461,
Double-Edged Straightedge	of a circle, 504	659, 727
Theorem, 718	defined, 212	Evans, Minnie, 416
	defined, 212	

#### **Explorations** Fahrenheit conversion, 287 genealogy, 706 Alternate Area Formulas, Fallingwater (Wright), 9 genetics. See Applications 469-470 families of functions, 676 geography. See Applications geology. See Applications Constructing a Dilation Design, family tree, logical, 706–708 595-597 **Fathom Projects** Geometer's Sketchpad The Euler Line, 191-192 Best-Fit Lines, 107 **Explorations** Euler's Formula for Polyhedrons, Different Dice, 460 Alternate Area Formulas, In Search of the Perfect 469-470 528-529 The Five Platonic Solids, 544–546 Rectangle, 613 Constructing a Dilation Design, Geometric Probability I. 88-89 Needle Toss, 340 595-597 Geometric Probability II, Random Rectangles, 428 Intersecting Lines Through a Circle, 355–358 458-460 Random Triangles, 220 Indirect Measurement, 652-653 flags. See Applications Napoleon's Theorem, 249-250 Intersecting Lines Through a flowchart, 237 Patterns in Fractals, 137–139 Circle, 355-358 flowchart proofs, 237-239 Proof as Challenge and Ladder Climb, 507 circle conjectures, procedures for, Discovery, 720-721 A Pythagorean Fractal, 496–497 Napoleon's Theorem, 249–250 330-331 Star Polygons, 266-267 Non-Euclidean Geometries. quadrilateral conjectures, 742-744 procedures for, 298–299 Tessellating with the Conway Orthographic Drawing, 555–557 triangle conjectures, procedures Criterion, 408–409 Patterns in Fractals, 137–139 Trigonometric Ratios and the for, 710-711 Perspective Drawing, 174–177 forestry. See Applications Unit Circle, 671-674 formulas, solving for any variable Geometer's Sketchpad Projects Pick's Formula for Area, 446–448 Proof as Challenge and Is There More to the in, 567 Discovery, 720-721 45°-45°-90° triangle, 491–492 Orthocenter?, 192 A Pythagorean Fractal, 496–497 Four Congruent Angles Rectangle geometric figures The Seven Bridges of Theorem, 717 congruent. See congruence Königsberg, 120-121 Four Congruent Sides Rhombus constructing. See construction Sherlock Holmes and Forms of Theorem, 717 drawing. See drawing Valid Reasoning, 569-571 fractals numbers corresponding to, Star Polygons, 266–267 defined, 137 100, 111 Tessellating with the Conway Pythagorean, 496–497 relationships of, 83 Criterion, 408-409 Sierpin'ski triangle, 138-139 similar. See similarity Three Types of Proofs, 679–682 as term, 139 sketching, 144, 145 Trigonometric Ratios and the fractions, 578 squaring, 456 Unit Circle, 671-674 See also specific figures listed See also ratio Two More Forms of Valid by name France, 25, 64, 280, 353, 417, 456, Reasoning, 631–633 geometric mean, 580 461, 584, 617 Why Elephants Have Big Ears, frustum of a cone, 467, 619 geometric proofs. See proof(s) 620 - 622Fuller, Buckminster, 520 geometric sequences, 580 Extended Parallel/Proportionality fullerenes, 520 geometric solids. See solid(s) Conjecture, 626, 629 function(s) geometry Exterior Angle Sum Conjecture, 263 coordinate. See coordinate cubic, 676 exterior angles defined, 102 geometry Euclidean, 144, 692-698, 742-743 alternate, 128-130 evaluating, 675 of a polygon, 262-263 families of, 676 non-Euclidean, 742-744 as word, 96 sum of, 263 linear, 104, 676 transversal forming, 128 notation for, 103 Gerdes, Paulus, 126 of a triangle, 217–218 parent, 676 Girodet, Anne-Louis, 249 externally tangent circles, 313 quadratic, 675-677 given. See antecedent rule, 102-104 Exxon Valdez, 535 glide reflection, 386, 410-411 sine, 676 glide-reflectional symmetry, 386 transforming, 675–677 Goethe, Johann Wolfgang von golden cut, 602 trigonometric. See trigonometry golden ratio, 602, 613 face(s) golden rectangle, 613, 630 and area, 461 golden spiral, 630 lateral, 461, 522 golden triangle, 214 Galileo Galilei, 659 naming of, 521 Goldsworthy, Andy, 5 of a polyhedron, 521 Gardner, Martin, 395

Garfield, James, 479

Gaudí, Antoni, 15

factors, area of rectangle as model

and,, 438-440

Golomb, Solomon, 53

Gordian knot, 18

hexagon(s), 54

gou gu, 495, 518 Conway, 408-409 Hundreds Puzzle, 211 government. See Applications in nature and art, 2, 389 Logical Liars, 407 **Graphing Calculator Projects** regular. See regular hexagon(s) Logical Vocabulary, 702 Drawing Regular Polygons, 286 hexagonal prism, 522 Lunar Lockout, 290 Line Designs, 134 hexagonal pyramid, 522 Pick a Card, 242 Lines and Isosceles Triangles, 250 hexahedron, 521 Puzzling Patterns, 101 Maximizing Area, 433 hexominoes, 87 Reasonable 'rithmetic I, 511 Maximizing Volume, 554 Hindus, 25, 337, 482 Reasonable 'rithmetic II, 566 Trigonometric Functions, 674 Hmong, 373 Seeing Spots, 729 Spelling Card Trick, 173 graphs and graphing Hoch, Hannah, 262 intersections of lines found by, Hockney, David, 556 Sudoku, 715 288-289 Homer, Winslow, 649 Symbol Juggling, 726 of linear equations, 287-288 horizon line, 174 Think Dinosaur, 329 of linear functions, 104 The Horse in Motion (Muybridge),483 Tic-Tac-Square, 441 Horseman (Escher), 410 **Improving Your Visual Thinking** of quadratic functions, 675, 677 of system of equations, 345, Hot Blocks (Andrade), 24 Skills 413-414 Hundertwasse, Friedensreich, 66 Build a Two-Piece Puzzle, 594 of three-dimensional coordinate Hungary, 3, 742 Coin Swap I, 46 hyperbolic geometry, 743 Coin Swap II, 58 system, 505 Coin Swap III, 162 of trigonometric functions, 674 hypotenuse, 478 Hypotenuse-Leg Conjecture, 518 Colored Cubes, 316 gravity and air resistance, 622 Hypotenuse-Leg Theorem, 733 Connecting Cubes, 630 center of, 46, 186-187 Cover the Square, 470 Dissecting a Hexagon I, 205 satellites and, 312 great circle(s), 361, 524, 743-744 Dissecting a Hexagon II, 265 Great Pyramid of Khufu, 535, 600 Equal Distances, 80 ice, 536, 553, 637 Greeks, ancient, 18, 29, 36, 66, 144, Fold, Punch, and Snip, 501 icosahedron, 544 235, 352, 391, 437, 479, 544, 600, Folding Cubes I, 153 identity property, 694 630, 636, 640, 692 Folding Cubes II, 719 if-and-only-if statement, 55, 243 Guatemala, 7, 694 Four-Way Split, 437 if-then statements. See conditional Hexominoes, 87 statement(s) Mental Blocks, 709 image, 368 Moving Coins, 468 image matrix, 420 Mudville Monsters, 495 Impossible Structures-111 Hall, Diana, 365 Net Puzzle, 261 (Roelofs), 406 Hand with Reflecting Sphere Painted Faces I, 393 Improving Your Algebra Skills (Escher), 95 Painted Faces II, 619 Harlequin (Vasarely), 13 Algebraic Magic Squares I, 12 Patchwork Cubes, 561 Harryhausen, Ray, 622 Algebraic Magic Squares II, 607 Pentominoes I, 63 Hawaii, 468, 593 Algebraic Sequences I, 231 Pentominoes II, 113 Hawkinson, Tim, 595 Algebraic Sequences II, 323 Pickup Sticks, 6 height The Difference of Squares, 375 Picture Patterns I, 344 of a cone, 523 The Eye Should Be Quicker Than Picture Patterns II, 397 of a cylinder, 523 the Hand, 735 Piet Hein's Puzzle, 527 of a parallelogram, 424 Fantasy Functions, 412 Polyominoes, 53 of a prism, 522 Number Line Diagrams, 127 The Puzzle Lock, 184 of a pyramid, 463, 522 Number Tricks, 248 A Puzzle Quilt, 297 of a rectangle, 423 A Precarious Proof, 721 Puzzle Shapes, 653 Pyramid Puzzle I, 9 of a trapezoid, 429 Random Points, 452 of a triangle, 156, 654-655 Pyramid Puzzle II, 148 Rolling Quarters, 334 Hein, Piet, 527 Substitute and Solve, 670 Rope Tricks, 660 Helios Prototype, 435 Improving Your Reasoning Skills Rotating Gears, 119 hemisphere(s) Bagels, 15 The Spider and the Fly, 506 defined, 524 Bert's Magic Hexagram, 550 The Squared Square Puzzle, 445 Checkerboard Puzzle, 74 drawing, 77 3-by-3 Inductive Reasoning volume of, 558-559 Chew on This for a While, 382 Puzzle I, 388 Code Equations, 457 heptagon, 54, 442 3-by-3 Inductive Reasoning heptahedron, 521 Container Problem I, 226 Puzzle II, 646 Container Problem II, 488 Hero, 437 TIC-TAC-NO!, 602 Hero's formula for area, 437, 470 The Dealer's Dilemma, 190 Visual Analogies, 166 Hesitate (Riley), 13 How Did the Farmer Get to the incenter, 179, 180, 181, 191

© 2008 Key Curriculum Press 820 INDEX

Other Side?, 274

Incenter Conjecture, 180	Interwoven Patterns-v (Roeiois), 406	Exterior Angles of a Triangle,
inclined plane, 500	inverse cosine (cos-1), 644	217–218
included angle, 222	inverse of a conditional	Finding a Minimal Path, 377–378
incoming angle, 41	statement, 631	Finding the Arcs, 350
India, 6, 25, 337, 482, 636	inverse sine (sin -1), 644	Finding the Right Bisector, 149
indirect measurement	inverse tangent (tan <sup>-1</sup> ), 644	Finding the Right Line, 154–155
with similar triangles, 598–599	Investigations ), 644	Finding the Rule, 102–103
with string and ruler, 601	Angle Bisecting by Folding, 159	Finding the Square Route, 300
	0 0 0	
with trigonometry, 641	Angle Bisecting with	The Formula for the Surface Area
indirect proof, 680, 722–724	Compass, 160	of a Sphere, 562–563
inductive reasoning, 96–98	Angles Inscribed in a	The Formula for the Volume of a
deductive reasoning compared	Semicircle, 325	Sphere, 558
to, 115	Arcs by Parallel Lines, 326	Four Parallelogram
defined, 96	Are Medians Concurrent?	Properties, 281
figurate numbers, 111	185–186	Going Off on a Tangent, 311
finding <i>n</i> th term, 102–104, 102–111	Area Formula for Circles, 449	Incenter, 180
mathematical modeling, 108–111	Area Formula for Kites, 430	Inscribed Angle Properties, 324
inequalities, triangle, 215–218	Area Formula for	Inscribed Angles Intercepting the
inscribed angle(s), 317, 324–325,	Parallelograms, 424	Same Arc, 325
330–332, 508	Area Formula for Regular	Is AA a Similarity
Inscribed Angle Conjecture, 324,	Polygons, 442	Shortcut?, 589
330–332	Area Formula for Trapezoids,	Is AAA a Congruence
Inscribed Angle Theorem, 727	429–430	Shortcut?, 228
Inscribed Angles Intercepting Arcs	Area Formula for Triangles, 429	Is ASA a Congruence
Conjecture, 325	Area of a Triangle, 654–655	Shortcut?, 227
Inscribed Angles Intercepting Arcs	Area Ratios, 608–609	Is SAA a Congruence
Theorem, 728	Balancing Act, 186–187	Shortcut?, 228
inscribed circle, 181	Base Angles in an Isosceles	Is SAS a Congruence
inscribed quadrilateral. See cyclic	Triangle, 207	Shortcut?, 223
quadrilateral	The Basic Property of a	Is SAS a Similarity Shortcut?, 591
inscribed triangle, 72, 181	Reflection, 370–371	Is SSA a Congruence
integers	Chords and the Center of the	Shortcut?, 223
Pythagorean triples, 484–485	Circle, 319	Is SSS a Congruence
rule generating, 102–104  See also numbers	Chords and Their Central	Shortcut?, 222
	Angles, 318	Is SSS a Similarity
intercepted arc, 313, 325, 326	Circumcenter, 179	Shortcut?, 590
interior angles	Concurrence, 178–179	Is the Converse True?, 130, 208,
adjacent, 217	Constructing Parallel Lines by	484–485
alternate, 128–129, 131,	Folding, 163	Is There a Polygon Sum
704–705	Constructing the Perpendicular	Formula?, 258–259
of polygons, 258–259, 263	Bisector, 150–151	Is There an Exterior Angle Sum?,
remote, 217	Corresponding Parts, 603	262–263
transversal forming, 128	Cyclic Quadrilaterals, 326	Isosceles Right Triangles, 491
of a triangle, 217	Defining Angles, 49	The Law of Sines, 655
interior design, 444	Defining Angles in a	The Linear Pair Conjecture, 122
Interior Supplements Theorem, 708	Circle, 317	Mathematical Models, 32
internally tangent circles, 313	Defining Circle Terms, 70	Mirror Mirror, 598
Intersecting Chords Conjecture,	Dilations on the Coordinate	Opposite Side Ratios, 604
339, 356	Plane, 585	Overlapping Segments, 116
Intersecting Chords Theorem, 728	The Distance Formula, 502–503	Parallels and Proportionality,
Intersecting Secants Conjecture,	Do All Quadrilaterals	624–625
, 356	Tessellate?, 395	Party Handshakes, 108–110
Intersecting Secants Theorem, 728	Do All Triangles Tessellate?, 394	Patty Paper Perpendiculars, 155
Intersecting Tangents Conjecture,	Do Rectangle Diagonals Have	Perpendicular Bisector of a
322, 358	Special Properties?, 293	Chord, 319–320
intersection of lines	Do Rhombus Diagonals Have	Reflections across Two
in circles, 355–358	Special Properties?, 292	Intersecting Lines, 385
finding, 288–289	Duplicating a Segment, 145	Reflections across Two Parallel
reflection images and, 385	Duplicating an Angle, 146	Lines, 384
See also perpendicular lines;	Extended Parallel	The Semiregular Tessellations,
		390–391
point(s) of concurrency	Proportionality, 626	370-371

Shape Shifters, 98 properties of, 376-380 King Kong, 622 Solving Problems with Area types of. See reflection; rotation; kite(s) Formulas, 434 translation area of, 430 Space Geometry, 77 isosceles right triangle, 491–492 concave. See dart Special Polygons, 56 Isosceles Right Triangle defined, 64 nonperiodic tessellations Special Quadrilaterals, 64–65 Conjecture, 491 491 Surface Area of a Cone, 465 isosceles trapezoid(s), 183, 270–271 with, 398 Surface Area of a Regular Isosceles Trapezoid Conjecture, 271 nonvertex angles of, 268 Pyramid, 464 Isosceles Trapezoid Diagonals properties of, 268–269 Surface Area Ratios, 609-610 Conjecture, 271 tessellations with, 398, 410 The Symmetry Line in an Isosceles Trapezoid Diagonals vertex angles of, 268 Isosceles Triangle, 244 Theorem, 717 Kite Angle Bisector Conjecture, 269 Tangent Segments, 312 Isosceles Trapezoid Theorem, 717 Kite Angles Conjecture, 269 A Taste of Pi, 336 isosceles triangle(s), 206-208 Kite Area Conjecture, 430 30°-60°-90° Triangles, 492 base angles of, 61, 206, 207-208 Kite Diagonal Bisector The Three Sides of a Right base of, 61, 206 Conjecture, 269 Triangle, 478–479 construction of, 207 Kite Diagonals Conjecture, 269 Transformations on a Coordinate defined, 61 kites (recreational), 65, 268, 431,648 Plane, 377 golden, 214 legs of, 206 Trapezoid Midsegment knot designs, 2, 16-17, 18, 406 Properties, 276-277 plumb level and, 247 koban (Japenese architecture), 78, 426 Triangle Midsegment Properties, proofs involving, 722-723 Königsberg, 120 275 - 276right, 491–492 The Triangle Sum, 200-201 symmetry and properties of, Triangles, 60-61 243-245 Trigonometric Tables, 642–643 vertex angle bisector, 244–245 La Petite Chatelaine (Claudel), 617 Vertical Angles Conjecture, 123 vertex angle of, 61, 206, 244-245 Lahori, Ustad Ahmad, 6 Virtual Pool, 41 See also equilateral triangle(s) landscape architecture. See The Volume Formula for Prisms Isosceles Triangle Conjecture, 207, Applications 244-245 and Cylinders, 531 Laos, 373 The Volume Formula for converse of, 208 lateral edges Pyramids and Cones, 538 Isosceles Triangle Theorem, 712 oblique, and volume, 532 Volume Ratios, 615-616 Isosceles Triangle Vertex Angle of a prism, 522 What Are Some Properties of Theorem, 715 of a pyramid, 522 Kites?, 268-269 Israel, 521 lateral faces What Are Some Properties of Italy, 18, 161, 176, 193, 370, 391, 479, of a prism, 461, 522 Trapezoids?, 270 541, 565, 659, 692 of a pyramid, 461 What Can You Draw with and surface area, 461 the Double-Edged latitude, 524 Straightedge?, 291 law and law enforcement. See What Is the Shortest Path from Jainism, 636 Applications A to B?, 216 Jamaica, 4 Law of Contrapositive, 632 What Makes Polygons James Fort, 658 Law of Cosines, 661-663, 667 Similar?, 582 James, Richard, III, 395 Law of Sines, 654-657, 667 Where Are the Largest and Law of Syllogism, 631-633 Japan, 4, 7, 14, 17, 19, 72, 78, 303, Smallest Angles?, 217 396, 426, 541, 666, 744 Leaning Tower of Pisa, 659 Which Angles Are Congruent?, Jerusalem, 20 128 - 129Jewish architecture, 373, 521 of an isosceles triangle, 206 Iran, 368, 464 Jimenez, Soraya, 451 of a right triangle, 478 irrational numbers, 337 Jiuzhang suanshu, 495 lemma, 716 ISEKI/PY XVIII (Nagaoka), 19 journal, defined, 142 length Islamic art and architecture, 2, 6, Juchi, Hajime, 14 of an arc, 349-351 20-22, 23, 158, 209, 302, 389, 399, symbols to indicate, 30 464, 536 Leonardo da Vinci, 370, 456, 479 isometric drawing, 75–77, 555–557 LeWitt, Sol, 61, 488 isometry light. See optics kaleidoscopes, 402 composition of, 383-386 Lin, Maya, 132 Kamehameha I, 468 on coordinate plane, 369, line(s) Kente cloth, 51 376-377, 383 auxiliary, 201, 705 defined, 368 Kickapoo, 564 of best-fit, 107 matrices and, 420 King (Evans), 416 concurrent, 112, 178

description of, 28, 29	Linear Pair Conjecture, 122	symbol for, 30
designs, 7–8	linear pair(s) of angles, 50, 51,	See also units
determining, 696	122–124	Median Concurrency Conjecture, 185
diagrams of, 59	Linear Pair Postulate, 697,	median(s) of a triangle, 151, 185–187.
equations of. See linear equations	707–708	243-244,414,603-604,605
intersecting. See intersection	locus of points, 83	See also centroid
of lines	logic	Medians to the Congruent Sides
models of, 28	and flowchart proofs, 237–238	Theorem, 713
naming of, 28	forms of, 569–571, 631–633	Medici crest, 565
in non-Euclidean geometries,	history of, 692	medicine and health. See
742–744	language of, 569–570	Applications
		metals, densities of, 551–552
parallel. See parallel lines	Law of Syllogism, 631–633	
perpendicular. See	Law of the Contrapositive, 632	meteorology and climatology. See
perpendicular lines	Modus Ponens, 570–571	Applications
postulates of, 696	Modus Tollens, 570–571	Mexico, 66, 349, 543, 659
segments of. See line segment(s)	and paragraph proofs, 237	midpoint, 31, 36–37, 51, 150–151,
skew, 48	proofs of, approaches to,	696, 736
slope of. See slope	679–682	Midpoint Postulate, 696
symbol for, 28	symbols and symbolic form of,	midsegment(s)
tangent. See tangent(s)	569-571, 631-633	of a trapezoid, 275, 276–277
transversal, 128	See also proof(s)	of a triangle, 151, 275–276, 277
Line Intersection Postulate, 696	logical argument, 569	Mini-Investigations, 117, 118, 165
line of reflection, 370–371	longitude, 524	183, 189, 204, 322, 333, 339, 343
line of symmetry, 3, 371	Loomis, Elisha Scott, 479	353, 374, 427, 495, 505, 526, 594
Line Postulate, 696	lusona patterns, 18, 126	611, 734, 746, 747
line segment(s)		minimal path, 377–380
addition, 46	B.A.	Minimal Path Conjecture, 378
bisectors of, 31, 149–151	M	mining, 669
and concurrency. See point(s)	_	minor arc, 71, 313
of concurrency	Magic Mirror (Escher), 367	mirror line. See line of reflection
•	Magritte, René, 527	
congruent, 31	major arc, 71, 313	mirror symmetry. See reflectional
construction of, 145	Malaysia, 23	symmetry
defined, 30	mandalas, 25, 593	mirrors
divided by parallel lines,	Mandelbrot, Benoit, 139	in indirect measurement, 598
proportion of, 624–627	Mandelbrot set, 139	light reflecting off, 45
duplicating, 145	manufacturing. See Applications	partial, 52
endpoints of, 30	Maori, 733	Mississippi River, 118
of Euler, 192	maps and mapping. See Applications	models. See mathematical models
golden cut on, 602	mathematical models, 108–111	Modus Ponens (MP), 570–571
measure of, notation, 30	area of a rectangle as, 438–440	Modus Tollens (MT), 570–571
medians, 151, 185-187, 243-244,	defined, 108	Mohist philosophers, 29
414, 603–604, 605	mathematics journal, defined, 142	monohedral tessellation, 389–390,
midpoint of, 31, 36–37, 51,		394–395
150–151, 696, 736	matrix (matrices)	Morgan, Julia, 251
midsegments, 151, 275–277	addition, 388	Morocco, 22
overlapping, 116	multiplication, 407	moviemaking. See Applications
postulates of, 696	representing a polygon as, 420	Mozambique, 126
similarity and, 623–627	transformations with, 420	multiplication
symbol for, 30	maximizing area, 433	of radical expressions, 490
tangent segments, 312–313	maximizing volume, 554	properties of, 694
line symmetry. See reflectional	Maya, 349, 659, 694	multiplication property of equality,
symmetry	mean	212, 213, 694
3 3	arithmetic, 580	
linear equations, 287–289	and the centroid, 414–415	murals, 588
intersections, finding with,	geometric, 580	muscle and bone strength, 621–622
288–289	measure	music. See Applications
slope-intercept form, 287–289	of an angle, 39–40	Muybridge, Eadweard, 483
systems of, solving, 345–347,	of arcs, 71, 313, 324–326, 349–351	My Blue Vallero Heaven
413–414	indirect. See indirect	(Achuleta-Sagel), 267
See also equations	measurement	
linear functions, 104, 676		

© 2008 Key Curriculum Press INDEX 823

N	obtuse triangle, 60, 661, 662	Extended Parallel/
IN	oceanography. See Applications	Proportionality, 626, 629
54.250	octagon, 54, 390	Parallel/Proportionality
n-gon, 54, 259	O'Hare, Nesli, 41	Theorem, 733
See also polygon(s)	oil spills, 535, 542	Parallel Secants Congruent Arcs
Nadelstern, Paula, 297	Oldenburg, Claes, 635	Theorem, 728
Nagaoka, Kunito, 19	Olympic Games logo, 16	Parallel Slope Property, 167, 736
NAMES Project AIDS Memorial	100 Cans (Warhol), 523	Parallel Transitivity Theorem, 709
Quilt, 535	one-point perspective, 175	parallelogram(s)
Napoleon Bonaparte, 249	op art, 13–14, 15	altitude of, 424
Napoleon's Theorem, 249–250	opposite angles of a parallelogram,	area of, 424–425
Native Americans, 3, 49, 371, 465,	281, 716–717	defined, 65
564, 587	opposite leg, 640	height of, 424
nature	opposite sides of a parallelogram,	proofs involving, 716–717,
fractals in, 137	282, 716–717	720–721
geometric solids in, 520	Opposite Sides Parallel and	properties of, 281–283, 291–294
geometry in, 2–4	Congruent Theorem, 717	relationships of, 83
op art in, 15	optics. See Applications	special, 291–294
symmetry in, 3, 4, 373	ordered-pair rules, 376	tessellations with, 411
tessellation in, 389	•	
nautical mile, 361	ordered triple, 505	in vector diagrams, 282–283
Navajo, 49, 371	orthocenter	Venn diagram of, 83
navigation. See Applications	defined, 179	See also specific parallelograms
negation, 570	finding, 413–414	listed by name
negative numbers, area of rectangle	properties of, 191, 192	Parallelogram Area Conjecture, 424
as model for products and, 439	orthographic drawing, 555–557	Parallelogram Consecutive Angles
Netherlands, 406	outgoing angle, 41	Conjecture, 282
nets, 78–79, 544–546	Overlapping Angles Conjecture, 118	Parallelogram Consecutive Angles
networks, 120-121	Overlapping Segments	Theorem, 717
New Zealand, 733	Conjecture, 116	Parallelogram Diagonal Lemma, 716
Nigeria, 16	_	Parallelogram Diagonals
non-Euclidean geometries,	P	Conjecture, 282
742–744		Parallelogram Inscribed in a Circle
nonagon, 54	Palestinian art, 10	Theorem, 728
nonperiodic tiling, 398	parabolas, 675, 677	Parallelogram Opposite Angles
nonrigid transformation, 368, 585,	paragraph proofs, 201, 202,	Conjecture, 281, 716–717
595–597	flowchart proofs compared to,	Parallelogram Opposite Sides
nonvertex angles, 268	237–238	Conjecture, 282, 717
North Star, 649	quadrilateral conjectures,	parent function, 676
notation. See symbols and notation	procedures for, 299	Parthenon, 630
notebook, defined, 94	parallel lines	partial mirror, 52
nth term, finding, 102–104, 102–111	arcs on circle and, 326	Path of Life I (Escher), 577,
numbers	construction of, 163–164	595, 597
integers. See integers	defined, 48, 163	patterns. See inductive reasoning
irrational, 337	diagrams of, 59	patty papers, 144, 145, 146, 149
rectangular, 100, 111	in elliptic geometry, 744	Pei, I. M., 206, 461
rounding, 435	proofs involving, 704–705,	Pelli, Cesar, 23
square roots, 489–490	716–717	pendulum, 674
triangular, 111	properties of, 129–131, 696	Penrose, Sir Roger, 398
numerical name for tiling. See vertex	proportional segments by,	Penrose tilings, 398
arrangement	623–627	pentagon(s)
arrangement	and reflection images, 384	area of, 442
	slope of, 167–168, 736	congruent, 55
0	symbol for, 48	diagonals of, golden triangle
_	Parallel Lines Conjecture, 129	and, 214
oblique cylinder, 523, 532–533	converse of, 130	naming of, 54
oblique prism, 522, 532–533	Parallel Lines Intercepted Arcs	in nature and art, 2
Oblique Prism-Cylinder Volume	Conjecture, 326	sum of angles of, 258-259
Conjecture, 532	Parallel Postulate, 696, 705, 742–743	tessellations with, 389, 395, 396
oblique triangular prism, 522	Parallel/Proportionality	Pentagon Sum Conjecture, 258
O'Brien, Willis, 622	Conjecture, 625	pentominoes, 63
obtuse angle, 49, 115		performance assessment, 198
=	converse of, 733	·

824 INDEX © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

perimeter, 55	plane figures. See geometric figures	See also specific polygons listed
period, 674	Plato, 544, 692	by name
periodic phenomena, trigonometry	Platonic solids (regular	Polygon Sum Conjecture, 259
and, 674	polyhedrons), 521, 544–546	polyhedron(s)
periscope, 133	Plimpton 322, 485	defined, 521
Perpendicular Bisector Concurrency	plumb level, 247	edges of, 521
Conjecture, 179	point(s)	Euler's formula for, 528-529
Perpendicular Bisector Concurrency	collinear, 29	faces of, 521
Theorem, 712	coplanar, 29	models of, building, 528–529,
Perpendicular Bisector	description of, 28, 29	544–546
Conjecture, 150	diagrams of, 59	naming of, 521
3		9 1
converse of, 151	locus of, 83	nets of, 78–79, 544–546
Perpendicular Bisector of a Chord	models of, 28	regular, 521
Conjecture, 320	naming of, 28	similar, 614
Perpendicular Bisector Theorem, 712	symbol for, 28	vertex of a, 521
perpendicular bisectors	vanishing, 174, 175–177	See also solid(s); specific
of a chord, 319–320	point(s) of concurrency, 178–181,	polyhedrons listed by name
constructing, 149–151	185–187	Polynesian navigation, 650
defined, 149	centroid, 185–187, 191, 414	polyominoes, 53
linear equations for, 288–289,	circumcenter, , 191, , 346–347	pool, geometry of, 41–42, 45,
346–347	construction of, 178–181, 185–186	377–378
of a rhombus, 292	coordinates for, finding, 346–347,	portfolio, defined, 26
of a triangle, 178–181	413–415	postulates of geometry, 692, 695–697,
See also bisector; circumcenter;	defined, 178	727, 730, 742–743
perpendiculars	incenter, , 180, 181, 191	premises of geometric proofs,
perpendicular lines		692–698, 704, 736
•	orthocenter, 179, 191, 192,	
defined, 48	413–414	presentations, giving, 308
diagrams of, 59	point of tangency, 70	Print Gallery (Escher), 1
in elliptic geometry, 744	point symmetry. See rotational	prism(s)
slope of, 167, 736	symmetry	altitude of, 522
symbol for, 48	Polaris (North Star), 649	antiprisms, 526
Perpendicular Postulate, 696	pollution. See environment	bases of, 461, 522
Perpendicular Slope Property,	Polya, George, 236	defined, 522
167, 736	polygon(s), 54–56	drawing, 75, 76
Perpendicular to a Chord	area of, 23, 442–443	height of, 522
Conjecture, 319	circumscribed circles and, 181	inverted images and, 274
Perpendicular to Parallel	classification of, 54	lateral faces of, 461, 522
Theorem, 709	concave, 54	oblique, 522, 532–533
perpendiculars	congruent, 55	right, 522, 531–532, 614
constructing, 154–156	convex, 54	similarity and, 614
defined, 154	defined, 54	surface area of, 462
postulate of, 696	diagonals of, 54	volume of, 531–533
perspective, 174–177	drawing, 286	Prism-Cylinder Volume
Petronas Twin Towers, 23	equiangular, 56	Conjecture, 532
Philippines, 146	equilateral, 56	probability
phonograph, 343	exterior angles of, 262–263	area and, 458–460
photography. See Applications	inscribed circles and, 181	defined, 88
physics. See Applications	interior angles of, 258–259, 263	geometric problems using,
pi, 335–337, 341	naming of, 54	88-89, 458-460
symbol for, 335	perimeter of, 55	problem solving
Pick, Georg Alexander, 446	regular. See regular polygon(s)	acting it out, 108-109
Pick's formula, 446–448	sides of, 54	with diagrams, 81–83, 498
picture angle, 328	similar. See similarity	mathematical modeling, 108–111
pinhole camera, 600	star, 266–267	products, area of rectangle as model
plane(s)	sum of angle measures, 258–259,	for, 438–440
concurrent, 178	262–263	Projects
determining, 86	symmetries of, 372	Best-Fit Lines, 107
models of, 28	tesellations with, 389–391,	,
	394–395, 396	Building an Arch, 280
naming of, 28		Constructing a Tile
as undefined term, 29	vertex of a, 54	Design, 158

© 2008 Key Curriculum Press INDEX 825

Creating a Geometry Flip Book, 483	of quadrilateral conjectures,	Pythagorean Theorem, 478–480
	298–299, 716–717, 720–721,	and circle equations, 504
Different Dice, 460	723, 736–739	circles and, 504, 508–509
Drawing Regular Polygons, 286	of similarity, 730–733	converse of, 484–486
Drawing the Impossible, 68	symbols and symbolic form of,	cultural awareness of principle
In Search of the Perfect	569–571, 631–633	of, 480, 485
Rectangle, 613	of triangle conjectures, 705–710,	and distance formula,
Is There More to the	710–712, 730–733	502–504, 736
Orthocenter?, 192	two-column, 679, 711–712	fractal based on, 496–497
Japanese Puzzle Quilts, 303	See also logic	and isosceles right triangle,
Japanese Temple Tablets, 666	proportion, 578–579	491–492
Kaleidoscopes, 402	with area, 608–610, 616	and Law of Cosines, 661
Light for All Seasons, 651	of corresponding parts of	picture representations of,
Line Designs, 134	triangles, 603–605	478, 496
Lines and Isosceles Triangles, 250	defined, 578	problem solving with, 498
Making a Mural, 588	indirect measurement and,	proofs of, 479–480, 482
Maximizing Area, 433	598–599	and similarity, 496
Maximizing Volume, 554	of segments by parallel lines,	and square roots, 489
Needle Toss, 340	623–627	statement of, 479
Penrose Tilings, 398	similarity and, 578-579, 433-584,	and 30°-60°-90° triangle,
Photo or Video Safari, 23	603–605	492–493
Polya's Problem, 236	with volume, 614–616	trigonometry and, relationship
Racetrack Geometry, 354	See also ratio; trigonometry	of, 661
Random Rectangles, 428	Proportional Areas Conjecture,	Pythagorean triples, 484–485
Random Triangles, 220	609–610, 616	,
The Soma Cube, 537	proportional dividers, 629	
Special Proofs of Special	Proportional Parts Conjecture,	Q
Conjectures, 741	603, 605	
Spiral Designs, 35	Proportional Volumes	Q.E.D., defined, 299
Symbolic Art, 19	Conjecture, 616	qi qiao (tangram puzzle), 500
Trigonometric Functions, 674	protractor	quadratic equations, 440
The World's Largest Pyramid, 543543	angle measure with, 39, 144	quadratic functions, 675–677
See also Geometer's Sketchpad	and clinometers, 652	quadrilateral(s)
Projects; Graphing Calculator	construction as not using, 145	architecture and, 66
Projects; Fathom Projects	defined, 47	area of, ancient Egyptian formula
Promenades of Euclid, The	Ptolemy, Claudius, 640	for, 469
(Magritte), 527	public transit. See Applications	congruent, 55
proof(s)		cyclic, 326
1 ()	puzzles. See Improving Your Algebra	definitions of, 64–65
of angle conjectures, 704–705,	Skills; Improving Your Reasoning	linkages of, 285
710–712	Skills; Improving Your Visual	naming of, 54
auxiliary lines in, 201, 331, 705	Thinking Skills	proofs involving, 298–299,
of circle conjectures, 330–332,	pyramid(s)	716–717, 720–721, 723,
723–724, 727	altitude of, 522	736–739
conditional, 679–680	base of, 461	proving properties of, 298–299
with coordinate geometry,	defined, 522	special, 64–65
736–739	drawing, 77	sum of angles of, 258–259
direct, 679	height of, 463, 522	tessellations with, 389–391, 395
flowchart. See flowchart proofs	lateral faces of, 461, 522	See also specific quadrilaterals
indirect, 680, 722–726	net for, 78	listed by name
lemmas used in, 716	slant height of, 463	quadrilateral linkages, 285
logical family tree used in,	surface area of, 462, 463–464	Quadrilateral Sum Conjecture, 258
706–708	truncated, 619	Quadrilateral Sum Theorem, 712
paragraph. See paragraph	vertex of, 522	quilts and quiltmaking, 9, 14, 67,
proofs	volume of, 538–540	297, 303, 427
planning and writing of,	Pyramid-Cone Volume	_,,,,,,,,,
298–299, 703–708	Conjecture, 538	
postulates of, 692, 695–697, 727,	pyramids (architectural structures),	R
730, 742–743	64, 66, 206, 247, 461, 433522, 535,	
premises of, 692–698, 704, 736	543, 600, 659	racetrack geometry, 354
of the Pythagorean Theorem,	Pythagoras of Samos, 479, 692	radians, 674
479–480, 482	Pythagorean Proposition	radical expressions, 489–490
Q.E.D. at end of, 299	(Loomis), 479	radiosonde, 649

radius	minimal path and, 377–380	right pentagonal prism, 522
and arc length, 350–351	as type of isometry, 368	right prism, 522, 531-532, 614
of a circle, 69	Reflection Line Conjecture, 371	Right Prism Volume Conjecture, 53
and circumference formula, 336	reflectional symmetry, 3, 4, 371	right triangle(s)
of a cone, 523	Reflections across Intersecting Lines	adjacent side of, 640
of a cylinder, 523	Conjecture, 385	altitude of, 156
defined, 69	Reflections across Parallel Lines	defined, 60
of a sphere, 524	Conjecture, 384	hypotenuse of, 478
tangents and, 311–312	reflex measure of an angle, 39	isosceles, 491–492
ratio	reflexive property of congruence, 695	legs of, 478
circumference/diameter,	reflexive property of equality, 694	opposite side of, 640
335–337	reflexive property of similarity, 730	properties of. See Pythagorean
defined, 578	regular dodecagon, 390	Theorem; trigonometry
equal. See proportion	regular dodecahedron, 521, 544–546	similarity of, 496, 640
of Euler segment, 192	regular heptagon, 442	30°-60°-90° type, 492–493
golden, 602, 613	regular hexagon(s), 11	rigid transformation. See isometry
probability, 88	area of, 442	Riley, Bridget, 13
slope. See slope	tessellations with, 389–391, 400,	Rock and Roll Hall of Fame and
trigonometric. See trigonometry	403–404	Museum, 206
See also proportion; similarity	regular hexahedron, 544–546	Roelofs, Rinus, 406
ray(s)	regular icosahedron, 544–546	Romans, ancient, 36, 273, 280, 584
angles defined by, 38	regular octagon, 390,	rotation
concurrent, 178	regular octahedron, 544–546	defined>, 369
defined, 32	regular pentagon, 42, 214	matrices and, 420
naming of, 32	regular polygon(s)	model of, 369
symbol of, 32	apothem of, 442	spiral similarity, 597
reasoning	area of, 442–443	tessellations by, 403–405
deductive. See deductive	defined, 56	as type of isometry, 368
reasoning; logic	drawing, 286	rotational symmetry, 3, 4, 371
inductive. See inductive reasoning	symmetries of, 372 tessellations with, 389–391	rounding numbers 435, ruler, 7, 144, 145
strategies, 115, 180, 201, 218,	Regular Polygon Area	Russia, 17
298, 330, 703	Conjecture, 443	Kussia, 17
record players, 343	regular polyhedrons (Platonic	
rectangle(s)	solids), 521, 544–546	S
area of, 422–423, 438–440	regular pyramid, surface area of,	
base of, 423	463–464	SAA Congruence Conjecture, 228
defined, 65	regular tessellation, 390	SAA Congruence Theorem, 710
golden, 613, 630	regular tetrahedron, 544–546	SAA (Side-Angle-Angle), 221, 228,
height of, 423	217	591,710
properties of, 293	Renaissance, 174	sailing. See navigation
sum of angles of, 293	Reptiles (Escher), 404	sangaku, 666 SAS Congruence Conjecture, 223
Venn diagram of, 83	resources, consumption of. See	SAS Congruence Postulate, 697
Rectangle Area Conjecture, 423	Applications	SAS (Side-Angle-Side), 221, 223,
Rectangle Diagonals Conjecture, 293	resultant vector, 283	591, 662–663, 697, 730–731
Rectangle Diagonals Theorem, 717	revolution, solid of, 86	SAS Similarity Conjecture, 591
rectangular numbers, 100, 111	Rhombus Angles Conjecture, 292	SAS Similarity Theorem, 730–731
rectangular prism, 75, 462, 522	Rhombus Angles Theorem, 717	SAS Triangle Area Conjecture, 655
Rectangular Prism Volume	Rhombus Diagonals Conjecture, 292	satellites, 312, 315, 342, 435
Conjecture, 531	rhombus(es)	Savant, Marilyn vos, 84
rectangular solid(s), drawing, 75	construction of, 291–292	scale drawings, 585
recursive rules, 137–139	defined, 65	scale factor, 585
Red and Blue Puzzle (Benson), 303	properties of, 291–292	scalene triangle, 61, 394
reflection	Venn diagram of, 83	Schattschneider, Doris, 395, 595
composition of isometries and, 384–386	Rice, Marjorie, 395, 396 right angle, 49	sculpture, geometry and, 584, 614,
in coordinate plane, 377	Right Angles Are Congruent	617, 635, 636
defined, 370	Theorem, 708	secant, 326, 355–356, 357–358
glide, 386, 410–411	right cone, 523, 615	section, 79
line of, 370–371	right cylinder, 523, 531–532, 614	sector compass, 628
matrices and, 420	5 - J, , 00 - 00 <b>-</b> , 01 1	sector of a circle, 362, 453–454

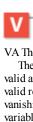
segment(s)	simplification of radical expressions,	Sphere Volume Conjecture, 558
addition, 46	489–490	spherical coordinates, 743–744
bisector, 31, 149–151	sine function, 677	spherical geometry, 743–744
of a circle, 453–454	sine ratio (sin), 641–642	spiral(s)
line. See line segment(s)	Sines, Law of, 654–657, 667 Sioux, 465	designs, 35
in spherical geometry, 743 Segment Addition Postulate, 696	sketching, 144, 145	golden, 630 in nature and art, 14, 35
Segment Duplication Postulate, 696	skew lines, 48	similarity, 597
seismology. See Applications	slant height, 463	sports. See Applications
self-similarity, 137	slope	square(s)
semicircle(s), 71, 325, 508	calculating, 135–136	defined, 65, 294
semiregular tessellation, 390–391	defined, 135	proofs involving, 736–739
sequences, 580	formula, 135	properties of, 294
sewing and weaving. See	of parallel lines, 167–168, 736	pyramid, 522
Applications	of perpendicular lines, 167, 736	roots, 489–490
shadows, indirect measurement	positive and negative, 136	spiral, 14
and, 599	triangle, 135	symmetry of, 372
Shah Jahan, 6	slope-intercept form, 287–289	tessellations with, 389–391, 399
Shintoism, 666	smoking cigarettes, 748	units, 425
shipping. See Applications	Snakes (Escher), 17	Venn diagram of, 83
Shortest Distance Conjecture, 155	solar technology, 435	Square Diagonals Conjecture, 294
show. See consequent	solid(s)	Square Diagonals Theorem, 736–739
shrinking and stretching functions,	bases of, 461	Square Limit (Escher), 421
675–678	with curved surfaces, 522–524	square root property of equality, 694
Sicily, 692	drawing, 75–77	squaring a circle, 456
side(s)	faces of, 521	Sri Lanka, 467
of an angle, 38 of a parallelogram, 282	lateral faces of, 461, 522 nets of, 78–79, 544–546	SSA (Side-Side-Angle), 221, 223, 591, 656
of a polygon, 54	Platonic, 521, 544–546	SSS Congruence Conjecture, 222
Side-Angle-Angle (SAA), 221, 228,	of revolution, 86	SSS Congruence Postulate, 697
591, 710	section, 79	SSS (Side-Side), 221, 222, 590,
Side-Angle Inequality	similar, 614–616	662, 663, 697
Conjecture, 217	surface area of. See surface area	SSS Similarity Conjecture, 590
Side-Angle-Side (SAS), 221, 223,	See also polyhedron(s); specific	SSS Similarity Theorem, 731–733
591, 662–663, 697, 730–731	solids listed by name	star polygons, 266–267
Side-Side-Angle (SSA), 221, 223,	solution	steering linkage, 285
591, 656	of an equation, 212	Stein, Rolf,, 395
Side-Side-Side (SSS), 221, 222, 590,	of a system of equations, 345	Still Life and Street (Escher), 257
662, 663, 697	sona patterns (lusona), 18, 126	Stonehenge, 727
Sierpiński triangle, 137–139	sound. See Applications	straightedge, 7, 145
similarity, 581–584	South America, 116	double-edged, 291–292
and area, 608–610	space, 75–77	stretching and shrinking
defined, 583	defined, 75	functions, 675–678
dilation and, 585, 595–597	See also solid(s)	substitution method of solving
indirect measurement and,	Spaceship Earth (Disney), 576	equation systems, 345–346
598–599 mural making and, 588	Spain, 15, 20 speed. See velocity and speed	substitution property of equality, 212, 213, 694
and polygons, 581–585	calculations in Applications	subtraction property of equality,
proofs involving, 730–733	sphere(s)	212, 694
properties of, 730	center of, 524	Sumners, DeWitt, 18
and Pythagorean fractal, 496	coordinates on, 743–744	Sunday Morning Mayflower Hotel
and Pythagorean Theorem, 496	defined, 524	(Hockney), 556
ratio and proportion in, 578–579,	drawing, 77	supplementary angles, 50
583-584, 603-605	great circles of, 361, 524, 743-744	Supplements of Congruent Angles
segments and, 623-627	hemisphere. See hemisphere	Theorem, 708
of solids, 614–616	radius of, 524	surface area
spiral, 597	spherical geometry and, 743–744	of a cone, 464–465
symbol for, 583	surface area of, 562–563	of a cylinder, 462–463
of triangles, 589–591, 603–605	volume of, 558–559	defined, 461
trigonometry and, 640	Sphere Surface Area Conjecture, 563	
and volume, 614–616		

828 INDEX © 2008 Key Curriculum Press

modeled by functions, 675	T	telecommunications. See
of a prism, 462	-	Applications
of a pyramid, 462, 463-464	Tei Mehel 6	temari balls, 744
ratios of, 609-610	Taj Mahal, 6	temperature conversion,, 287
of a sphere, 562–563	Take Another Look	tepees, 465
and volume, relationship of,	angle measures, 255	term, nth, 102–104, 111
620–622	area, 475–476	Tessellating Quadrilaterals
surveying land. See Applications	congruence shortcuts,	Conjecture, 395
Syllogism, Law of, 631–633	255–256, 518	Tessellating Triangles Conjecture,394
symbolic art, 19	cyclic quadrilaterals, 365	tessellation (tiling)
Symbolic Logic, Part I (Dodgson), 632	dilation, 637	Conway criterion for, 408–409
symbols and notation	line of best fit, 365	creation of, 21, 398, 399–401,
angle, 38	matrices, 420	403–406
approximately equal to, 40	polygon conjectures, 308	defined, 20
arc, 71	pool geometry, 419	dual of, 392
conditional statement, 569	proportionality, 637–638	glide reflection, 410–411
congruence, 31, 40, 59	proving constructions, 255–256	monohedral, 389–390,
equal, use of, 31, 40	Pythagorean Theorem,	394–395
flowchart proofs, 238	507–508, 690	nonperiodic, 398
glide reflection, 410	quadrilateral conjectures,	with nonregular polygons,
height, 423	255–256	394–395
image point label, 368	secants, intersecting, 366	regular, 390
line, 28	similarity, 637–638	rotation, 403–405
line segment, 3	spherical geometry, 255–256, 307	semiregular, 390–391
of logic, 569–571, 631–633	surface area, 475–476, 576	translation, 399–400
	tangents, 365, 366	svertex arrangement, 390, 391
measure, 30	tessellation, 419	<b>C</b> , ,
negation (logic), 570	transformations, 420	test problems, writing, 256
parallel, 48	triangle conjectures, 255	tetrahedron, 521
perpendicular, 48	trigonometry, 689-690	Thales of Miletus, 235, 600, 692
pi, 335	volume, 575–576	theodolite, 649
plane, 28	tangent(s)	Theorem of Pythagoras.
point, 28	circles, 313	See Pythagorean Theorem
ray, 32	defined, 70	theorems, 692
similarity, 583	external, 313	corollary, 708
slant height, 463	internal, 313	defined, 479
therefore, 238, 570	intersections and, 357–358	logical family tree of, 706–708
triangle, 54	point of, 70	proving. See proof(s)
symmetric property of	proofs involving, 723–724	See also specific theorems listed
congruence, 695	properties of, 311–313	by name
symmetric property of	and Pythagorean Theorem,	therefore
equality, 694	508–509	arrow for, 238
symmetric property of	radius and, 311–312	arrow for, 238
similarity, 730	ratio (tan), 640, 641–642, 644	symbol for, 238, 570
symmetry, 3–4, 371–372	segments, 312–313	thinking backward, 298
bilateral, 3	as term, use of, 70	Third Angle Conjecture, 204–205
glide-reflectional, 386	Tangent-Chord Conjecture, 333, 358	Third Angle Theorem, 706–708
in an isosceles trapezoid, 271	Tangent Conjecture, 311	30°-60°-90° triangle, 492–493
in an isosceles triangle, 243–245	Tangent-Secant Conjecture, 353, 358	30°-60°-90° Triangle Conjecture,
in a kite, 268	Tangent Segments Conjecture, 312	492–493
line of, 3, 371	Tangent Segments Theorem, 728	Thompson, Rewi, 733
of polygons, 372	Tangent Theorem, 723–724	three-dimensional coordinate
reflectional, 3, 4, 371	tangent incorein, 725–724	system, 505
rotational, 3, 4, 371	tangram puzzle, 500	Three Midsegments Conjecture, 275
Symmetry drawing E25 (Escher), 403	Taoism, 315	Three Similar Right Triangles
Symmetry drawing E99 (Escher), 405		Theorem, 733
Symmetry drawing E103 (Escher),199	tatami, 396, 397	3-uniform tiling, 391
Symmetry drawing E105 (Escher),399	technology. See Applications <b>Technology</b> , 125, 147, 152, 162, 172,	Three Worlds (Escher), 27
Symmetry drawing E108 (Escher),411		Tibet, 593
systems of linear equations, 345–347,	183, 188, 203, 261, 314, 328, 354,	tide tables, 673
413–414	392, 407, 443, 445, 452, 475, 517,	tiling. See tessellation
Szyk, Arthur, 699	561, 602, 630, 665, 670, 715, 729,	Transamerica Building, 206
-	734, 735	

© 2008 Key Curriculum Press INDEX 829

transformation(s), 368	determining, 170	history of, 620
of functions, 675–678	equiangular. See equilateral	inverse cosine (cos <sup>-1</sup> ), 644
nonrigid, 368, 585, 595–597	triangle	inverse sine $(\sin^{-1})$ , 644
rigid. See isometry	equilateral. See equilateral	inverse tangent (tan -1), 644
transitive property of	triangle(s)	Law of Cosines, 661-663, 667
congruence, 695	exterior angles of, 217–218	Law of Sines, 654-657, 667
transitive property of equality, 694	golden, 214	opposite leg, 640
transitive property of similarity, 730	height of, 156, 654–655	and periodic phenomena, 674
translation, 368–369	incenter. See incenter	problem solving with, 647
and composition of isometries,	included angle, 222	sine function, 676
383–384, 386	inequalities, 215–218	sine ratio (sin), 641–642
defined, 368	inscribed, 72, 181	tables and calculators for,
direction of, 368	interior angles of, 217	642–643, 674
distance of, 368	isosceles. See isosceles triangle(s)	tangent ratio (tan), 640,
of functions, 676–677	matrix, 420	641–642, 644
matrices and, 420	medians of, 151, 185–187,	unit circle and, 671–674
tessellations by, 399–400	243–244, 414, 603–604, 605	vectors and, 667
as type of isometry, 358	midsegments of,151, 275–276, 277	truncated cone or pyramid
vector, 368, 676	naming of, 54	(frustum), 467, 619
transversal line, 128	obtuse, 60, 661, 662	Tsiga series (Vasarely), 3
trapezium, 270	orthocenter. See orthocenter	Turkey, 389, 692
trapezoid(s)	perpendicular bisectors of,	Twain, Mark, 118
arch design and, 273	178–181	two-column proof, 679, 711–712
area of, 429–430	points of concurrency of.	two-point perspective, 176
base angles of, 269	See point(s) of concurrency	2-uniform tiling, 391, 419
bases of, 269	proofs involving, 705–710,	_
defined, 64	710–712, 730–733	U
diagonals of, 271, 723	quadrilaterals constructed	
height of, 429	with, 64	undecagon, 54
isosceles, 183, 270–271	remote interior angles of, 217	unit circle, 671–674
linkages of, 285	right. See right triangle(s)	units
midsegments of, 275, 276–277	rigidity of, 200, 251	area and, 425
proofs involving, 723	scalene, 61, 394	line segments and, 30
properties of, 270–271	similarity of, 589–591, 603–605	nautical mile, 361
as term, 270	spherical geometry and, 744	not stated, 30
Trapezoid Area Conjecture, 430	sum of angles of, 200–202,	volume and, 530, 535
Trapezoid Consecutive Angles	705–706	Using Your Algebra Skills
Conjecture, 270	symbol for, 54	Coordinate Proof, 736–739
Trapezoid Midsegment	tessellations with, 389–391, 394,	Finding Points of Concurrency,
Conjecture, 277	404–405	413–415
trapezoidal prisms, 274	Triangle Area Conjecture, 429	Midpoint, 36
triangle(s)	Triangle Exterior Angle	Products, Factors, and Quadratic
acute, 60, 656, 661, 662	Conjecture, 218 Triangle Exterior Angle Theorem 712	Equations, 438–440
adjacent interior angles of, 217	Triangle Exterior Angle Theorem, 712	Proportion and Reasoning,
altitudes of, 156, 179, 243–244,	Triangle Inequality Conjecture, 216 Triangle Midsegment Conjecture, 276	578–579
413, 603 angle bisectors of, 178–181,	Triangle Sum Conjecture, 200–202	Radical Expressions, 489–490
603, 604	Triangle Sum Theorem, 705–706,	Slope, 135–136
area of, 423, 429, 470, 654–655	707–708	Slopes of Parallel and
centroid. See centroid	triangular numbers, 111	Perpendicular Lines, 167–168
circumcenter. See circumcenter	triangular prism, 522	Solving Equations, 212–213
circumscribed, 72, 181	triangular pyramid, 522	Solving for Any Variable, 567
congruence of, 170–171,	triangulation, 200	Solving Systems of Linear
221–223, 227–229,	trigonometry, 640	Equations, 345–347
232–233, 518	adjacent leg, 640	Tranforming Functions, 675–678
constructing, 145, 170–171,	cosine ratio (cos), 641–642	Writing Linear Equations,
202, 207	graphs of functions, 674	287–289
definitions of, 60–61	,	Uzbekistan, 60



VA Theorem (Vertical Angles Theorem), 703-705, 707-708 valid argument, 114, 115 valid reasoning. See logic vanishing point(s), 174, 175–177 variable, solving for any, 567 Vasarely, Victor, 3, 13 vector sum, 283 vectors defined, 282 diagrams with, 282-283 resultant, 283 translation, 368, 676 trigonometry with, 667 velocity angular, 352 calculations of speed and. See **Applications** tangential, 353 vectors of, 282-283 Venn diagram, 83 Venters, Diane, 67 Verblifa tin (Escher), 519 Verne, Jules, 341 vertex angle(s) bisector of, 244-245 of an isosceles triangle, 61, 206, 244-245 of a kite, 268 VertexAngle Bisector Conjecture,244 vertex arrangement, 390, 391 vertex (vertices) of a cone, 523

defined, 38 naming angles by, 38-39 of a parabola, 677 of a polygon, 54 of a polyhedron, 521 of a pyramid, 522 tessellation arrangement, 390, 391 vertical angles, 50, 123-124, 131, 703-704 Vertical Angles Conjecture, 123-124, 131 Vertical Angles Theorem (VA Theorem), 703-705, 707-708 vertical stretch of a function, 675 VietnamVeterans Memorial Wall.132 vintas, 146 volume of a cone, 538-540 of a cylinder, 531–533 defined, 530 displacement and density and, 551-552 of a hemisphere, 558–559 maximizing, 554 of a prism, 531-533 problems in, 547 proportion and, 614-616 of a pyramid, 538-540 solving formula for particular variable, 567 of a sphere, 558-559 and surface area, relationship of, 620-622 units used to measure, 530



Wall Drawing #652 (LeWitt), 61 Warhol, Andy, 523 water and buoyancy, 553 and volume, 536, 553 Water Series (Greve), 310 Waterfall (Escher), 477 waves, radiation of, 69 wavy letter, 13 weather balloons, 649 weaving and sewing. See Applications Wick, Walter, 68 wigwams, 564 Williams, William T., 87 woodworking, 34 work, 500 World Book Encyclopedia, 26 Wright, Frank Lloyd, 9 writing test problems, 256



y-intercept, 287 yard (unit of measure), 535 yin-and-yang symbol, 315



zero-product property of equality, 440,694 Zhoubi Suanjing, 518 zillij, 22

consecutive, 54

# **Photo Credits**

Abbreviations: top (T), center (C), bottom (B), left (L), right (R). Cover

Background image: Doug Wilson/Corbis; Construction image: Sonda Dawes/The Image Works; All other images: Ken Karp Photography.

#### Front Matter

v (T): Ken Karp Photography; v (C): Cheryl Fenton; v (B): Cheryl Fenton; vi (T): Ken Karp Photography; vii (T): Ken Karp Photography; vii (C): Courtesy, St. John's Episcopal Church; vii (B): Hillary Turner; viii (T): Ken Karp Photography; viii (B): Corbis/Stockmarket; ix (T): Cheryl Fenton; ix (B): Cheryl Fenton; x (T): Ken Karp Photography; xi (T): Ken Karp Photography; xi (B): Cheryl Fenton; xii: Ken Karp Photography; xiii (T): Ken Karp Photography; xiii (B): Cheryl Fenton. Chapter 0

1: Print Gallery, M. C. Escher, 1956/@2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.; 2 (TL): NASA; 2 (TR): Comstock; 2 (C): Cheryl Fenton; 2 (B): ©1993 Metropolitan Museum of Art, Bequest of Edward C. Moore, 1891 (91.1.)2064; 3 (T): Tsiga I, II, III (1991), Victor Vasarely, Courtesy of the artist.; 3 (CR): RF; 3 (BR): Christie's Images; 4 (TL): Cheryl Fenton; 4 (TC): RF; 4 (TR): Cheryl Fenton; 4 (CR): Hillary Turner; 5 (TL): Cheryl Fenton; 5 (TL-A): Cheryl Fenton; 5 (TC): Cheryl Fenton; 5 (TL-D): Getty Images; 5 (TR): RF; 5 (C): Cheryl Fenton; 5 (B): OAndy Goldsworthy, Courtesy of the artist and Galerie Lelong; 6: Corbis; 7 (CL): Rex Butcher/Bruce Coleman Inc.; 7 (CR): Randy Juster; 7 (BL): Dave Bartruff/Stock Boston; 7 (BR): Robert Frerck/Woodfin Camp & Associates; 9: Schumacher & Co./Frank Lloyd Wright Foundation; 10 (TC): Christie's Images/Corbis; 10 (L): Corbis; 10 (R): Sean Sprague/Stock Boston; 12: W. Metzen/Bruce Coleman Inc.; 13 (L): Hesitate, Bridget Riley/Tate Gallery, London/Art Resource, NY; 13 (R): Harlequin by Victor Vasarely, Courtesy of the artist.; 15 (T): Tim Davis/Photo Researchers; 15 (C): National Tourist Office of Spain; 16: Cheryl Fenton; 17: Snakes, M. C. Escher, 1969/@2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved .; 18: Will & Deni McIntyre/Photo Researchers Inc.; 19 (B): SEKI/PY XVIII (1978), Kunito Nagaoka/Courtesy of the artist.; 19 (TL): Cheryl Fenton; 19 (TR): Cheryl Fenton; 20 (T): Nathan Benn/Corbis; 20 (B): Corbis; 22 (TL): Peter Sanders Photography; 22 (TR): Peter Sanders Photography; 22 (C): Peter Sanders Photography; 22 (B): Ken Karp Photography; 23: Photo Researchers Inc.; 24: Hot Blocks (1966-67) ©Edna Andrade, Philadelphia Museum of Art, Purchased by Philadelphia Foundation Fund; 25 (C): Courtesy LMP Media; 25 (BL): Comstock; 25 (BR): Scala/Art Resource. Chapter 1

27: Three Worlds, M. C. Escher, 1955/@2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.; 28 (T): Hillary Turner; 28 (C): Cheryl Fenton; 28 (B): Spencer Grant/Photo Researchers Inc.; 29: By permission of Johnny Hart and Creators Syndicate, Inc.; 30: Bachman/Photo Researchers Inc.; 32 (T): S. Craig/Bruce Coleman Inc.; 32 (B): Timothy Bell/Corbis; 33 (L): Michael Daly/Corbis Stock Market; 33 (R): Grafton Smith/Corbis Stock Market; 34: Addison Geary/Stock Boston; 35: Bob Stovall/Bruce Coleman Inc.; 36: Archivo Iconografico, S.A./Corbis; 38 (TL): Bruce Coleman Inc.: 38 (TR): David Leah/Getty Images: 38 (BL): Cheryl Fenton; 38 (BR): Comstock; 39: RF; 40: Ken Karp Photography; 41: Pool & Billiard Magazine; 46: (C) Steve Smith and World of Stock; 47: Illustration by John Tenniel; 48: Osentoski & Zoda/ Envision; 49: Christie's Images; 50: Corbis; 51: Hillary Turner; **54:** Cheryl Fenton; **55:** Ira Lipsky/International Stock Photography; 57 (TL): Hillary Turner; 57 (TC): Hillary Turner; 57 (TR): Hillary Turner; 59: Spencer Swanger/Tom Stack & Associates; 60: Gerard

Degeorge/Corbis; 61: Sol LeWitt-Wall Drawing #652-On three walls, continuous forms with color ink washes superimposed, Color in wash. Collection: Indianapolis Museum of Art, Indianapolis, IN. September, 1990. Courtesy of the Artist.; 64: Stefano Amantini/ Bruce Coleman Inc.; 65: Cheryl Fenton; 66 (L): Larry Brownstein/ Rainbow; 66 (C): Michael Moxter/Photo Researchers Inc.; 66 (R): Friedensreich ©Erich Lessing/Art Resource, NY; 67: Quilt by Diane Venters/More Mathematical Quilts; 68: From WALTER WICK'S OPTICAL TRICKS. Published by Cartwheel books, a division of Scholastic Inc. @1998 by Walter Wick. Reprinted by permission.; 69 (T): Joel Tribhout/Agence Vandystadt/Getty Images; 69 (C): By permission of Johnny Hart and Creators Syndicate Inc.; 69 (B): Corbis; 71 (L): Cheryl Fenton; 71 (R): Getty Images; 72 (L): Corbis; 72 (R): Corbis; 75 (L): Cheryl Fenton; 75 (C): Cheryl Fenton; 75 (R): Cheryl Fenton; 76: Cheryl Fenton; 77: Cheryl Fenton; 78: Courtesy of Kazumata Yamashita, Architect; 79: Ken Karp Photography; 80: T. Kitchin/Tom Stack & Associates; 81: Bookplate for Albert Ernst Bosman, M. C. Escher, 1946/©2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.; 86 (TL): Corbis; 86 (TC): Corbis; 86 (TR): Corbis; 86 (B): Mike Yamashita/Woodfin Camp & Associates; 87: William Thomas Williams, "DO YOU THINK A IS B," Acrylic on Canvas, 1975–77, Fisk University Galleries, Nashville, Tennessee; 88 (C): Cheryl Fenton; 88 (T): Ken Karp Photography; 90: Paul Steel/Corbis-Stock Market; 92: Cheryl Fenton.

95: Hand with Reflecting Sphere (Self-Portrait in Spherical Mirror), M. C. Escher/©2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland.All rights reserved.; 96 (T): Ken Karp Photography; 96 (B): Barry Rosenthal/ FPG; 97: Andrew McClenaghan/Photo Researchers Inc.; 102: Drabble reprinted by permission of United Feature Syndicate, Inc.; 108 (L): National Science Foundation Network; 108 (R): Hank Morgan/Photo Researchers Inc.; 109: Hillary Turner; 111: Cheryl Fenton; 114: Bob Daemmrich/Stock Boston; 116: California Institute of Technology and Carnegie Institution of Washington; 118: NASA; 120 (T): Culver Pictures; 120 (B): Ken Karp Photography; 123: Ken Karp Photography; 128 (T): Alex MacLean/ Landslides; 128 (B): Ken Karp Photography; 130: Hillary Turner; 132: James Blank/Bruce Coleman Inc.; 136 (L): Photo Researchers; 136 (R): Mark Gibson/Index Stock; 137 (C): Ken Karp Photography; 137 (B): Ted Scott/Fotofile, Ltd.; 139: Art Matrix.

143: Drawing Hands, M. C. Escher, 1948/@2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved .; 144 (T): Bettmann/Corbis; 144 (BL): Hillary Turner; 144 (BR): Hillary Turner; 145 (L): Hillary Turner; 145 (R): Hillary Turner; 146: Travel Ink/Corbis; 156: Overseas Highway by Ralston Crawford, 1939 by Ralston Crawford / Art Resource, NY; 158: Rick Strange/Picture Cube; 161: Corbis; 173: RF; 172: Corbis; 174 (T): Greg Vaughn/Tom Stack & Associates; 174 (BL): Ken Karp Photography; 174 (BR): Dover Publications; 176: Art Resource; 177: Timothy Eagan/ Woodfin Camp & Associates; 178: Ken Karp Photography; 182: Courtesy of Andres Amador; 187 (T): Ken Karp Photography; 187 (B): Wally McNamee/Corbis; 188: Keith Gunnar/Bruce Coleman Inc.; 191: Ken Karp Photography; 193: Victoria and Albert Museum, London/Art Resource, NY.

#### Chapter 4

199: Symmetry Drawing E103, M. C. Escher, 1959/©2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.; 200 (TL): PhotoEdit, Inc.; 200 (TR): Cheryl Fenton; 200 (B): Ken Karp Photography; 204: The Far Side® by Gary Larson ©1987 FarWorks, Inc. All rights reserved. Used with permission.: 205: Hillary Turner: 206 (L): David L. Brown/Picture Cube; 206 (R): Joe Sohm/The Image Works;

832 PHOTO CREDITS © 2008 Key Curriculum Press 209: Art Stein/Photo Researchers Inc.; 215: Robert Frerck/Woodfin Camp & Associates; 215 (B): Key Curriculum Press; 219: Judy March/Photo Researchers Inc.; 222: Adamsmith Productions/ Corbis; 224: Carolyn Schaefer/Gamma Liaison; 225 (BR): NASA; 236 (T): AP/Wide World; 236 (B): Ken Karp Photography; 242: Ken Karp Photography; 243: Eric Schweikardt/The Image Bank; 249: Archivo Iconografico, SA/Corbis; 251: Courtesy, St. John's Presbyterian Church; 253: Ken Karp Photography; 254 (L): Cheryl Fenton; 254 (R): Cheryl Fenton; 255: Cheryl Fenton.

#### Chapter 5

257: Still Life and Street, M. C. Escher, 1967-1968/@2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.; 258: Ken Karp Photography; 258 (T): Cheryl Fenton; 262: Emerging Order by Hannah Hoch/Christie's Images/Corbis; 265: Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs; 267: Courtesy of the artist, Teresa Archuleta-Sagel; 268: Steve Dunwell/The Image Bank; 270 (T): Photo Researchers Inc.; 270 (C): Lindsay Hebberd/ Woodfin Camp & Associates; 273: Cheryl Fenton; 280: Malcolm S. Kirk/Peter Arnold Inc.; 291: Bill Varie, The Image Bank; 293: Ken Karp Photography; 294: Cheryl Fenton; 295: Bill Varie/The Image Bank; 296: Bill Varie/The Image Bank; 297: ©Paula Nadelstern/Photo by Bobby Hansson; 303: Red and Blue Puzzle (1994) Mabry Benson/Photo by Carlberg Jones; 306: Ken Karp Photography; 307: Boy With Birds by David C. Driskell/Collection of Mr. and Mrs. David C. Driskell.

#### Chapter 6

309: Curl-Up, M. C. Escher, 1951/@2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.; 310 (BL): Stephen Saks/Photo Researchers, Inc.; 310 (BL): Corbis; 311 (L): Stephen A. Smith; 311 (R): Mark Burnett/Stock Boston; 312: NASA; 314: Gray Mortimore/Getty Images; 315 (L): Corbis; 315 (R): Jim Zuckerman/Corbis; 316: Tony Freeman/PhotoEdit; 318: Tom Sanders/Corbis Stock Market; 321: NASA; 324: Xinhua/Gamma Liaison; 334: Cheryl Fenton; 335 (T): Ken Karp Photography; 335 (B): Cheryl Fenton; 336: Hillary Turner; 338 (T): Ken Karp Photography; 338 (C): David R. Frazier/Photo Researchers Inc.; 338 (B): Don Mason/Corbis Stock Market; 341: Photofest; 343: Calvin and Hobbes ©Watterson. Reprinted with permission of UNIVERSAL PRESS SYNDICATE.All rights reserved.; 344: Guido Cozzi/Bruce Coleman Inc.; 348: Corbis; 349: Grant Heilman Photography; 352 (T): Charles Feil/Stock Boston; 352 (B): Nick Gunderson/Corbis; 353: Cathedrale de Reims; 354: Bob Daemmrich/Stock Boston; 357: Gamma Liaison; 361: Ken Karp Photography; 362: The Far Side® by Gary Larson ©1990 FarWorks, Inc. All rights reserved. Used with permission.; 363: David Malin/Anglo-Australian Telescope Board; 365: Private collection, Berkeley, California/Ceramist, Diana Hall.

# Chapter 7

357: Magic Mirror, M. C. Escher, 1946/@2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.; 368 (T): Giraudon/Art Resource; 368 (B): Ken Karp Photography; 370: Corbis; 371: Grant Heilman Photography; 373 (TL): Phil Cole/Getty Images; 373 (TR): Corbis; 373 (BL): Michael Lustbader/Photo Researchers; 373 (BC): Denver Museum of Natural History; 373 (BR): Richard Cummins/Corbis; 374: Oxfam; 379: Corbis; 382: By Holland ©1976 Punch Cartoon Library; 383: Gina Minielli/Corbis; 388: Ken Karp Photography; 389 (L): W. Treat Davison/Photo Researchers; 389 (R): Ancient Art and Architecture Collection; 391: Springer-Verlag; 395: Courtesy Doris Schattschneider; 396: Lucy Birmingham/Photo Researchers Inc.; 398: Carleton College/photo by Hilary N. Bullock; 399 (T): Brickwork, Alhambra, M. C. Escher/©2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.; 399 (C): Symmetry Drawing E105, M. C. Escher 1960/©2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.; 403: Symmetry Drawing E25, M. C. Escher, 1939/©2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.; 404: Reptiles, M. C. Escher, 1943/©2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights

reserved.; 405 (TL): Symmetry Drawing E99, M. C. Escher, 1954/©2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.: 406 (L): Interwoven patterns-V-structure 17 by Rinus Roelofs/ Courtesy of the artist & ©2002 Artist Rights Society (ARS), New York/Beeldrecht, Amsterdam; 406 (R): Impossible structures-IIIstructure 24 by Rinus Roelofs/Courtesy of the artist & ©2002 Artist Rights Society (ARS), New York/Beeldrecht, Amsterdam; 410 (T): Horseman, M. C. Escher, 1946/@2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.; 410 (B): Horseman sketch, M. C. Escher/©2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.; 411: Symmetry Drawing E108, M. C. Escher, 1967/©2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.; 416: King by Minne Evans/Corbis & Luise Ross Gallery; 417 (C): Paul Schermeister/ Corbis; 417 (TR): Comstock; 418: Ken Karp Photography; 419: Day and Night, M. C. Escher, 1938/@2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.

421: Square Limit, M. C. Escher, 1964/@2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.; 422: Spencer Grant/Stock Boston; 426 (T): Courtesy Naoko Hirakura Associates; 426 (B): Karl Weatherly/Corbis; 433: Ken Karp Photography; 434: Joseph Nettis/Photo Researchers Inc.; 435 (C): Ken Karp Photography; 435 (B): NASA; 436: Phil Schermeister/Corbis; 444: Cheryl Fenton; 450: Cheryl Fenton; 451 (C): Georg Gerster/Photo Researchers Inc.; 451 (B): Reuters NewMedia Inc./Corbis; 453: Shahn Kermani/ Gamma Liaison; 456: Eye Ubiquitous/Corbis; 458: Ken Karp Photography; 460: Cheryl Fenton; 461 (BL): Stefano Amantini/ Bruce Coleman Inc.; 461 (BR): Alain Benainous/Gamma Liaison; 461 (CB): Joan Iaconetti/Bruce Coleman Inc.; 461 (CT): Bill Bachmann/The Image Works; 462: Greg Pease/Corbis; 463 (L): Sonda Dawes/The Image Works; 463 (R): John Mead/Photo Researchers Inc.; 464: RF; 465: Library of Congress; 467: Bryn Campbell/Getty Images; 468: Douglas Peebles; 474: Ken Karp Photography.

#### Chapter 9

477: Waterfall, M. C. Escher, 1961/@2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.; 478: FUNKY WINKERBEAN by Batiuk. Reprinted with special permission of North American Syndicate; 479 (L): Corbis; 479 (R): Corbis; 480: Will & Deni McIntyre/Photo Researchers Inc.; 483 (T): Ken Karp Photography; 483 (C): Corbis; 484: Ken Karp Photography; 485: Rare Book and Manuscript Library/Columbia University; 486: John Colett/Stock Boston; 488: Christie's Images/©2002 Sol LeWitt/Artists Rights Society (ARS), New York; 491: Turner Entertainment ©1939.All rights reserved.; 498: FUNKY WINKERBEAN by Batiuk. Reprinted with special permission of North American Syndicate; 499: Bob Daemmrich/The Image Works; 500 (T): Ken Karp Photography 500 (B): Private collection, Berkeley, California/Photo by Cheryl Fenton;; 506: David Muench/Corbis; 510: Bruno Joachim/Gamma Liaison; 511: Ken Karp Photography; 514: Ken Karp Photography.

#### Chapter 10

519: Verblifa tin, M. C. Escher, 1963/@2002 Cordon Art B.V.-Baarn-Holland. All rights reserved.; 520 (TR): Cheryl Fenton; 520 (TL): Runk-Schoenberger/Grant Heilman Photography; 520 (BR): Ken Eward/Photo Researchers Inc.; 520 (BL): J. Bernholc, et al./North Carolina State/Photo Researchers Inc.; 521: Esaias Baitel/Gamma Liaison; 522: Larry Lee Photography/Corbis; 523: Burstein Collection/Corbis/© Andy Warhol/Artists Rights Society (ARS), New York; 524: Cheryl Fenton; 527: ©1996 C. Herscovici, Brussels, Artists Rights Society (ARS) NY/Photo courtesy Minneapolis Institute of Art; 528: Ken Karp Photography; 530: Richard Hamilton Smith/Corbis; 532: Key Curriculum Press; 535 (T): Larry Lee Photography/Corbis; 535 (B): Jeff Tinsly/Names Project: 536 (C): Eve Ubiquitous/Corbis: 536 (B): Thomas Kitchin/Tom Stack & Associates; 537 (C): Cheryl Fenton; 537 (B): Cheryl Fenton; 538: Ken Karp Photography; 541: Masao